

Statements on Auditing Standards

Issued by the Auditing Standards Board

122–124
October 2011

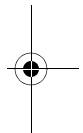
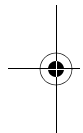
**Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122,
*Clarification and Recodification***

**Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123,
*Omnibus Statement on Auditing
Standards—2011***

**Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124,
*Financial Statements Prepared in
Accordance With a Financial Reporting
Framework Generally Accepted in Another
Country***

10616-344

AICPA[®]

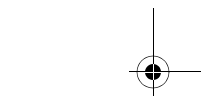
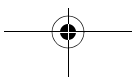


Copyright © 2011 by
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc.
New York, NY 10036-8775

All rights reserved. For information about the procedure for requesting permission to make copies of any part of this work, please e-mail copyright@aicpa.org with your request. Otherwise, requests should be written and mailed to the Permissions Department, AICPA, 220 Leigh Farm Road, Durham, NC 27707-8110.

This Statement on Auditing Standards uses certain International Federation of Accountants (IFAC) copyright material, used with the permission of IFAC.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 AAS 1 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



Executive Summary

This book contains the following Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs):

- SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*
- SAS No. 123, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2011*
- SAS No. 124, *Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country*

To help readers easily locate one or more SASs within this pronouncement, a contents page following this summary lists the three statements. In addition, a detailed table of contents is available at the beginning of each SAS.

SAS No. 122

This statement contains the *Preface to Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards, Principles Underlying an Audit Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and 39 clarified SASs. This statement recodifies and supersedes all outstanding SASs through No. 121 except

- SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*;
- SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended;
- SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*;
- SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*; and
- the following clarified SASs that were issued to address practice issues timely and are already effective:
 - SAS No. 117, *Compliance Audits* (issued December 2009);
 - SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (issued February 2010);
 - SAS No. 119, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (issued February 2010); and
 - SAS No. 120, *Required Supplementary Information* (issued February 2010).

This statement also withdraws SAS No. 26, *Association With Financial Statements*, as amended.

This statement contains “AU-C” section numbers instead of “AU” section numbers. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this statement becomes fully effective for all engagements.

This statement recodifies the AU section numbers as designated by SAS Nos. 1–121. AU-C section numbers for clarified SASs based on equivalent International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) are the same as the equivalent ISA numbers. AU-C section numbers for clarified SASs with no equivalent ISAs have been assigned new numbers. The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) believes that this recodification structure will aid firms and practitioners that use both ISAs and generally accepted auditing standards. The exhibit, “List of AU-C Sections Designated by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*,

iv Statements on Auditing Standards No. 122–124

Cross Referenced to List of AU Sections in AICPA *Professional Standards*,” to this statement contains a complete two-part cross-reference listing of AU-C and AU section numbers as designated by this statement.

This statement is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Refer to individual AU-C sections for specific effective date language.

This statement is a stand-alone SAS and is not a codification of all clarified SASs. This statement has been codified in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which contains a complete codification of the Statements on Auditing Standards and is available in the AICPA Store at www.cpa2biz.com/AST/Main/CPA2BIZ_Primary/Ethics/PRDOVR~PC-005102/PC-005102.jsp.

SAS No. 123

This statement contains amendments to

- SAS Nos. 117–118
- SAS No. 122, AU-C sections
 - 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*
 - 230, *Audit Documentation*
 - 260, *The Auditor’s Communication With Those Charged With Governance*
 - 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report*
 - 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*

These amendments conform SAS Nos. 117–118 to SAS No. 122 and address other changes necessitated by the Clarity Project.

These amendments, which have been issued in this statement to aid transparency in following the disposition of the amendments proposed in the exposure draft of this SAS, have been codified in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which contains a complete codification of the Statements on Auditing Standards and is available in the AICPA Store at www.cpa2biz.com/AST/Main/CPA2BIZ_Primary/Ethics/PRDOVR~PC-005102/PC-005102.jsp.

This statement is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Refer to individual amendments for specific effective date language.

SAS No. 124

SAS No. 124 supersedes the requirements and guidance in SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Another Country*, and redrafts that statement to apply the ASB’s established clarity drafting conventions. This statement requires the auditor, in instances when a report that is to be used in the United States was prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph to highlight the foreign financial reporting framework, but permits the auditor to express an unqualified opinion.

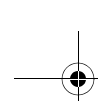
This statement has been codified in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which contains a complete codification of the Statements on Auditing Standards and is available in the AICPA Store at www.cpa2biz.com/AST/Main/CPA2BIZ_Primary/Ethics/PRDOVR~PC-005102/PC-005102.jsp.

This statement is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Sincerely,

Darrel R. Schubert
Chair
Auditing Standards Board

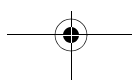
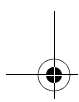
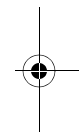
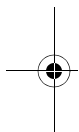
Charles E. Landes
Vice President
Professional Standards and Services

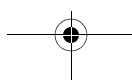
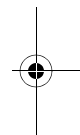
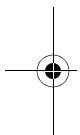
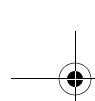


Contents

Page

Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122 <i>Clarification and Recodification</i>	1
Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123 <i>Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2011</i>	805
Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124 <i>Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country</i>	827





Statement on Auditing Standards

Issued by the Auditing Standards Board

122

October 2011

Clarification and Recodification

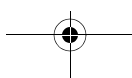
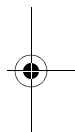
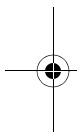
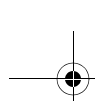
(Withdraws Statement on Auditing Standards No. 26, Association With Financial Statements, as amended [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 504]; Supersedes all outstanding Statements on Auditing Standards through No. 121 except

- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 51, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 534 and AU-C[†] sec. 910[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 59, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, as amended [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 341 and AU-C sec. 570[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 65, The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 322 and AU-C sec. 610[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87, Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 532 and AU-C sec. 905[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 117, Compliance Audits [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 801 and AU-C sec. 935[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 118, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 550 and AU-C sec. 720[†]];*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 119, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 551 and AU-C sec. 725[†]]; and*
- *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 120, Required Supplementary Information [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU sec. 558 and AU-C sec. 730[†]].*

* This statement contains "AU-C" section numbers instead of "AU" section numbers. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA Professional Standards. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this statement becomes fully effective for all engagements.

† Refer to the exhibit, "List of AU-C Sections Designated by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, Cross Referenced to List of AU Sections in AICPA Professional Standards," in this Statement on Auditing Standards for a complete two-part cross-reference listing of AU-C and AU section numbers as designated by this Statement on Auditing Standards.

AICPA[®]



Foreword

Clarity Project

To address concerns over the clarity, length, and complexity of its standards, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has made a significant effort to clarify the Statements on Auditing Standards (SAS).¹ The ASB established clarity drafting conventions and undertook to redraft all of its SASs in accordance with those conventions, which include the following:

- Establishing objectives for each clarified SAS
- Including a definitions section, where relevant, in each clarified SAS
- Separating requirements from application and other explanatory material
- Numbering application and other explanatory material paragraphs using an A- prefix and presenting them in a separate section that follows the requirements section
- Using formatting techniques, such as bulleted lists, to enhance readability
- Including, when appropriate, special considerations relevant to audits of smaller, less complex entities within the text of the clarified SAS
- Including, when appropriate, special considerations relevant to audits of governmental entities within the text of the clarified SAS

Convergence

Consistent with the ASB's strategy to converge its SASs with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) promulgated by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board while avoiding unnecessary conflict with standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board,² clarified SASs have been developed using equivalent ISAs as a base, when applicable. Substantive differences in objectives, definitions, or requirements between a clarified SAS and the equivalent ISA are identified in an exhibit to each applicable clarified SAS.

Issuance of Clarified SASs

SAS Nos. 117–120

In order to address practice issues timely, the following clarified SASs have already been issued in the clarity format and are already effective:

- SAS No. 117, *Compliance Audits* (issued December 2009)
- SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (issued February 2010)
- SAS No. 119, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (issued February 2010)
- SAS No. 120, *Required Supplementary Information* (issued February 2010)

SAS No. 122

This statement contains 39 additional clarified SASs. This statement recodifies and supersedes all outstanding SASs through No. 121 except

- SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*;
- SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended;
- SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*;

¹ The pamphlet *Clarification and Convergence* provides information about the Auditing Standards Board's (ASB's) Clarity Project and is available online at [www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/FRC/AuditAttest/DownloadableDocuments/ASB_Clarify_%20and_Convergence_\(8.5x11\).pdf](http://www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/FRC/AuditAttest/DownloadableDocuments/ASB_Clarify_%20and_Convergence_(8.5x11).pdf).

² The ASB's convergence paper is available online at www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/FRC/AuditAttest/DownloadableDocuments/ASB_Convergence_Plan.pdf.

4 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*; and
- SAS Nos. 117–120.

This statement also withdraws SAS No. 26, *Association With Financial Statements*, as amended.

This statement contains “AU-C” section numbers instead of “AU” section numbers. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this statement becomes fully effective for all engagements.

This statement recodifies the AU section numbers as designated by SAS Nos. 1–121. AU-C section numbers for clarified SASs based on equivalent ISAs are the same as the equivalent ISA numbers. AU-C section numbers for clarified SASs with no equivalent ISAs have been assigned new numbers. The ASB believes that this recodification structure will aid firms and practitioners that use both ISAs and generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). The exhibit, “List of AU-C Sections Designated by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, Cross Referenced to List of AU Sections in *AICPA Professional Standards*,” to this statement contains a complete two-part cross-reference listing of AU-C and AU section numbers as designated by this statement.

This statement is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Refer to individual AU-C sections for specific effective date language.

SASs Not Yet Clarified and Not Superseded by This Statement

SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, and 87 are currently being redrafted and will be issued as one or more SASs when finalized.

Authority of the SASs

SASs are issued by the ASB, the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters applicable to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for entities that are nonissuers. Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. 01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires an AICPA member who performs an audit (the auditor) of the financial statements of a nonissuer to comply with standards promulgated by the ASB. An auditor is required to comply with an unconditional requirement in all cases in which the circumstances exist to which the unconditional requirement applies. An auditor is also required to comply with a presumptively mandatory requirement in all cases in which the circumstances exist to which the presumptively mandatory requirement applies; however, in rare circumstances, an auditor may depart from a presumptively mandatory requirement provided the auditor documents his or her justification for the departure and how the alternative procedures performed in the circumstances were sufficient to achieve the objectives of the presumptively mandatory requirement.

Exhibits to SASs are *interpretive publications*, as defined in AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. AU-C section 200 requires the auditor to consider applicable interpretive publications in planning and performing the audit. Interpretive publications are not auditing standards. Interpretive publications are recommendations on the application of the SASs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the ASB after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with the SASs. Auditing interpretations of GAAS are included in AU-C sections of *AICPA Professional Standards*. AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Auditing Statements of Position are listed in AU-C appendix D, “AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Statements of Position,” of *AICPA Professional Standards*.

AUDITING STANDARDS BOARD
Darrel R. Schubert, *Chair*
Charles E. Landes, *Vice President—*
Professional Standards and Services

Auditing Standards Board**(2010–2011)**

Darrel R. Schubert, *Chair*
Ernest F. Baugh, Jr.
Brian R. Bluhm
Robert E. Chevalier
Samuel K. Cotterell
James R. Dalkin
David D. Duree
Edwin G. Jolicoeur
David M. Morris
Kenneth R. Odom

Thomas A. Ratcliffe
Brian R. Richson
Thomas M. Stemplar
Mark H. Taylor
Kim L. Tredinnick
H. Steven Vogel
Phil D. Wedemeyer
Kurtis A. Wolff
Megan F. Zietsman

(2009–2010)

Darrel R. Schubert, *Chair*
Ernest F. Baugh, Jr.
Sheila M. Birch
Brian R. Bluhm
Robert E. Chevalier
Jacob J. Cohen
David D. Duree
Charles E. Frasier
Andrew M. Mintzer
David M. Morris

Kenneth R. Odom
Thomas A. Ratcliffe
Brian R. Richson
Randy C. Roberts
Thomas M. Stemplar
Mark H. Taylor
H. Steven Vogel
Phil D. Wedemeyer
Megan F. Zietsman

(2008–2009)

Harold L. Monk, Jr., *Chair*
Ernest F. Baugh, Jr.
Sheila M. Birch
Jacob J. Cohen
Walton T. Conn, Jr.
Anthony J. Costantini
Charles E. Frasier
Nicholas J. Mastracchio, Jr.
Jorge Milo
Andrew M. Mintzer

Thomas A. Ratcliffe
Randy C. Roberts
Darrel R. Schubert
Thomas M. Stemplar
Mark H. Taylor
Phil D. Wedemeyer
Stephanie A. Westington
Arthur M. Winstead, Jr.
Megan F. Zietsman

(2007–2008)

Harold L. Monk, Jr., *Chair*
Sheila M. Birch
Jacob J. Cohen
Walton T. Conn, Jr.
Anthony J. Costantini
Robert D. Dohrer
Charles E. Frazier
Nicholas J. Mastracchio, Jr.
Jorge Milo
Andrew M. Mintzer

Keith O. Newton
Patricia P. Piteo
Douglas F. Prawitt
Randy C. Roberts
Darrel R. Schubert
Thomas M. Stemplar
Stephanie A. Westington
Arthur M. Winstead, Jr.
Megan F. Zietsman

6 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Clarity Task Force**

John A. Fogarty, *Chair*
Robert E. Chevalier
Maria C. Manasses

Susan Jones (former)
Nicholas J. Mastracchio, Jr. (former)

Darrel R. Schubert
Gail F. Vallieres

Keith O. Newton (former)
Patricia P. Piteo (former)

AICPA Staff

Charles E. Landes
Vice President
Professional Standards and Services

Richard I. Miller
General Counsel
and Secretary

Linda C. Delahanty
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Ahava Z. Goldman
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Michael P. Glynn
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Hiram Hasty
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Andrew Mrakovcic
Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Judith M. Sherinsky
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Sharon Walker
Technical Manager (former)
Audit and Attest Standards

The Auditing Standards Board gratefully acknowledges the contributions of Julie Anne Dilley, Diane L. Hardesty, Maria C. Manasses, Mindy K. Montgomery, and Tania Sergott in the development of this Statement on Auditing Standards.

Note: *Statements on Auditing Standards are issued by the Auditing Standards Board, the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters. Rule 202, Compliance With Standards, (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 202 par. 01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires compliance with these standards in an audit of a nonissuer.*

Contents

Section	Paragraph
Preface	
<i>Preface to Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards, Principles Underlying an Audit Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i> 01–.07	
	Purpose of an Audit and Premise Upon Which an Audit Is Conducted 01–.02
	Responsibilities..... .03
	Performance 04–.06
	Reporting..... .07
200	General Principles and Responsibilities
200	<i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i> 01–A86
	Introduction
	Scope of This Section..... .01–.02
	An Audit of Financial Statements 03–.09
	Effective Date 10
	Overall Objectives of the Auditor 11–.12
	Definitions 13
	Requirements
	Ethical Requirements Relating to an Audit of Financial Statements 14
	Professional Skepticism 15
	Professional Judgment 16
	Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence and Audit Risk 17
	Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With GAAS 18–.27
	Application and Other Explanatory Material
	An Audit of Financial Statements A1–.A14
	Ethical Requirements Relating to an Audit of Financial Statements. .A15–.A20
	Professional Skepticism A21–.A25
	Professional Judgment A26–.A30
	Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence and Audit Risk A31–.A55
	Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With GAAS A56–.A85
	Exhibit—Comparison of Section 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards, and International Standard on Auditing 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing A86

8 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

210	<i>Terms of Engagement</i>	.01–A43

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Effective Date	.02

Objective	.03

Definitions	.04–.05

Requirements

Preconditions for an Audit.....	.06–.08
Agreement on Audit Engagement Terms	.09–.10
Initial Audits, Including Reaudit Engagements	.11–.12
Recurring Audits	.13
Acceptance of a Change in the Terms of the Audit Engagement.....	.14–.17
Additional Considerations in Engagement Acceptance	.18

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	A1
Preconditions for an Audit.....	A2–A19
Agreement on Audit Engagement Terms	A20–A26
Initial Audits, Including Reaudit Engagements	A27–A32
Recurring Audits	A33–A34
Acceptance of a Change in the Terms of the Audit Engagement....	A35–A39
Additional Considerations in Engagement Acceptance	A40–A41

Exhibit A—Example of an Audit Engagement Letter	A42

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 210, <i>Terms of Engagement</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 210, <i>Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements</i>	A43

220	<i>Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	.01–A37

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
System of Quality Control and the Role of the Engagement Teams....	.03–.06
Effective Date	.07

Objective	.08

Definitions	.09

Requirements

Leadership Responsibilities for Quality on Audits	.10
Relevant Ethical Requirements.....	.11–.13
Acceptance and Continuance of Client Relationships and Audit Engagements.....	.14–.15
Assignment of Engagement Teams.....	.16
Engagement Performance	.17–.23
Monitoring.....	.24
Documentation	.25–.26

Application and Other Explanatory Material

System of Quality Control and the Role of the Engagement Teams...	.A1–.A2
Leadership Responsibilities for Quality on Audits	.A3
Relevant Ethical Requirements.....	.A4–.A6
Acceptance and Continuance of Client Relationships and Audit Engagements.....	.A7–.A8
Assignment of Engagement Teams.....	.A9–.A11
Engagement Performance	.A12–.A31
Monitoring.....	.A32–.A34
Documentation	.A35–.A36

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 220, <i>Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 220, <i>Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	.A37

230	<i>Audit Documentation</i>	.01–.A31

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Nature and Purposes of Audit Documentation	.02–.03
Effective Date	.04

Objective.....	.05

Definitions	.06

Requirements

Timely Preparation of Audit Documentation	.07
Documentation of the Audit Procedures Performed and Audit Evidence Obtained	.08–.14
Assembly and Retention of the Final Audit File	.15–.18

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions.....	.A1–.A2
Timely Preparation of Audit Documentation	.A3
Documentation of the Audit Procedures Performed and Audit Evidence Obtained	.A4–.A23
Assembly and Retention of the Final Audit File	.A24–.A29

Exhibit A—Audit Documentation Requirements in Other AU-C Sections	.A30

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 230, <i>Audit Documentation</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 230, <i>Audit Documentation</i>	.A31

240	<i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>	.01–.A78

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Characteristics of Fraud.....	.02–.03
Responsibility for the Prevention and Detection of Fraud.....	.04–.08
Effective Date	.09

10 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Objectives	.10
Definitions	.11
Requirements	
Professional Skepticism	.12–.14
Discussion Among the Engagement Team.....	.15
Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.16–.24
Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud	.25–.27
Responses to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud.....	.28–.33
Evaluation of Audit Evidence.....	.34–.37
Auditor Unable to Continue the Engagement.....	.38
Communications to Management and With Those Charged With Governance	.39–.41
Communications to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities.....	.42
Documentation	.43–.46
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Characteristics of Fraud.....	.A1–.A8
Professional Skepticism	.A9–.A11
Discussion Among the Engagement Team.....	.A12–.A13
Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.A14–.A32
Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud	.A33–.A37
Responses to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud.....	.A38–.A55
Evaluation of Audit Evidence.....	.A56–.A62
Auditor Unable to Continue the Engagement.....	.A63–.A66
Communications to Management and With Those Charged With Governance	.A67–.A71
Communications to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities.....	.A72–.A74
Appendix A—Examples of Fraud Risk Factors	.A75
Appendix B—Examples of Possible Audit Procedures to Address the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud	.A76
Appendix C—Examples of Circumstances That Indicate the Possibility of Fraud	.A77
Exhibit—Comparison of Section 240, <i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 240, <i>The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	.A78

250	<i>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements...</i>	.01–.A31

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Effect of Laws and Regulations.....	.02
Responsibility for Compliance With Laws and Regulations	.03–.08
Effective Date	.09

	Objectives	.10
	Definition	.11
	Requirements	
	The Auditor's Consideration of Compliance With Laws and Regulations	.12–.16
	Audit Procedures When Noncompliance Is Identified or Suspected ..	.17–.20
	Reporting of Identified or Suspected Noncompliance	.21–.27
	Documentation	.28
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Responsibility for Compliance With Laws and Regulations	A1–A7
	The Auditor's Consideration of Compliance With Laws and Regulations	A8–A18
	Audit Procedures When Noncompliance Is Identified or Suspected	A19–A25
	Reporting of Identified or Suspected Noncompliance	A26–A29
	Documentation	A30
	Exhibit—Comparison of Section 250, <i>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 250, <i>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	A31
260	<i>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>	<i>.01–A49</i>
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section	.01–.03
	Effective Date	.04
	Objectives	.05
	Definitions	.06
	Requirements	
	Those Charged With Governance	.07–.09
	Matters to Be Communicated	.10–.14
	The Communication Process	.15–.19
	Documentation	.20
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Objectives	A1–A5
	Those Charged With Governance	A6–A12
	Matters to Be Communicated	A13–A32
	The Communication Process	A33–A45
	Documentation	A46
	Appendix—Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices	A47
	Exhibit A—Requirements to Communicate With Those Charged With Governance in Other AU-C Sections	A48
	Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 260, <i>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 260, <i>Communication with Those Charged with Governance</i>	A49

12 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

265	<i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>	.01–.A40

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.04
Effective Date	.05

Objective	.06

Definitions	.07

Requirements

Determination of Whether Deficiencies in Internal Control Have Been Identified.....	.08
Evaluating Identified Deficiencies in Internal Control	.09–.10
Communication of Deficiencies in Internal Control.....	.11–.16

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Determination of Whether Deficiencies in Internal Control Have Been Identified.....	.A1–.A4
Evaluating Identified Deficiencies in Internal Control	.A5–.A14
Communication of Deficiencies in Internal Control.....	.A15–.A36

Appendix—Examples of Circumstances That May Be Deficiencies, Significant Deficiencies, or Material Weaknesses	.A37

Exhibit A—Illustrative Written Communication	.A38

Exhibit B—Illustrative No Material Weakness Communication	.A39

Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 265, <i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 265, <i>Communicating Deficiencies in Internal Control to Those Charged with Governance and Management</i>	.A40

300–499 Risk Assessment and Response to Assessed Risks

300	<i>Planning an Audit</i>	.01–.A26

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
The Role and Timing of Planning.....	.02
Effective Date	.03

Objective	.04

Requirements

Involvement of Key Engagement Team Members	.05
Preliminary Engagement Activities.....	.06
Planning Activities.....	.07–.11
Determining the Extent of Involvement of Professionals Possessing Specialized Skills.....	.12
Additional Considerations in Initial Audit Engagements.....	.13
Documentation	.14

Application and Other Explanatory Material

The Role and Timing of Planning	.A1–.A3
Involvement of Key Engagement Team Members	.A4–.A5
Preliminary Engagement Activities.....	.A6–.A8

	Planning Activities.....	A9–A17
	Determining the Extent of Involvement of Professionals	
	Possessing Specialized Skills.....	A18–A19
	Additional Considerations in Initial Audit Engagements.....	A20
	Documentation	A21–A24
	Appendix—Considerations in Establishing the Overall Audit Strategy	A25
	Exhibit—Comparison of Section 300, <i>Planning an Audit</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 300, <i>Planning an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	A26
315	<i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>	.01–A145
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01
	Effective Date	.02
	Objective	.03
	Definitions	.04
	Requirements	
	Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.05–.11
	Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including the Entity’s Internal Control	.12–.25
	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement.....	.26–.32
	Documentation	.33
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	A1–A16
	Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including the Entity’s Internal Control	A17–A107
	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement....	A108–A137
	Documentation	A138–A141
	Appendix A—Understanding the Entity and Its Environment	A142
	Appendix B—Internal Control Components	A143
	Appendix C—Conditions and Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement	A144
	Exhibit—Comparison of Section 315, <i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 315, <i>Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment</i>	A145
320	<i>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</i>	.01–A17
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01
	Materiality in the Context of an Audit	.02–.06
	Effective Date	.07
	Objective	.08
	Definition	.09

14 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Requirements**

Determining Materiality and Performance Materiality When Planning the Audit	.10–.11
Revision as the Audit Progresses	.12–.13
Documentation	.14

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Materiality in the Context of an Audit	.A1
Definition	.A2
Determining Materiality and Performance Materiality When Planning the Audit	.A3–.A14
Revision as the Audit Progresses	.A15–.A16

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 320, <i>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 320, <i>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</i>	.A17

330	<i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>	<i>.01–.A77</i>

Introduction

Scope of This Section	.01
Effective Date	.02

Objective	.03

Definitions	.04

Requirements

Overall Responses	.05
Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Relevant Assertion Level	.06–.24
Selecting Items for Testing to Obtain Audit Evidence	.25
Adequacy of Presentation and Disclosure	.26
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence	.27–.29
Documentation	.30–.33

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Overall Responses	.A1–.A3
Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Relevant Assertion Level	.A4–.A64
Selecting Items for Testing to Obtain Audit Evidence	.A65–.A71
Adequacy of Presentation and Disclosure	.A72
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence ..	.A73–.A75
Documentation	.A76

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 330, <i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 330, <i>The Auditor's Responses to Assessed Risks</i>	.A77

402	<i>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</i>	<i>.01–.A45</i>

Introduction

Scope of This Section	.01–.05
Effective Date	.06

Objectives	.07
Definitions	.08
Requirements	
Obtaining an Understanding of the Services Provided by a Service Organization, Including Internal Control	.09–.14
Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement	.15–.17
Type 1 and Type 2 Reports That Exclude the Services of a Subservice Organization	.18
Fraud, Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations, and Uncorrected Misstatements Related to Activities at the Service Organization	.19
Reporting by the User Auditor	.20–.22
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Obtaining an Understanding of the Services Provided by a Service Organization, Including Internal Control	.A1–.A24
Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement	.A25–.A40
Type 1 and Type 2 Reports That Exclude the Services of a Subservice Organization	.A41
Fraud, Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations, and Uncorrected Misstatements Related to Activities at the Service Organization	.A42
Reporting by the User Auditor	.A43–.A44
Exhibit—Comparison of Section 402, <i>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 402, <i>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</i>	.A45
450 <i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</i>	.01–.A29
Introduction	
Scope of This Section	.01
Effective Date	.02
Objective	.03
Definitions	.04
Requirements	
Accumulation of Identified Misstatements	.05
Consideration of Identified Misstatements as the Audit Progresses	.06
Communication and Correction of Misstatements	.07–.09
Evaluating the Effect of Uncorrected Misstatements	.10–.11
Documentation	.12
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Definitions	.A1
Accumulation of Identified Misstatements	.A2–.A3
Consideration of Identified Misstatements as the Audit Progresses ...	.A4–.A5
Communication and Correction of Misstatements	.A6–.A15
Evaluating the Effect of Uncorrected Misstatements	.A16–.A27
Documentation	.A28
Exhibit—Comparison of Section 450, <i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 450, <i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit</i>	.A29

16 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**500 Audit Evidence**

500	<i>Audit Evidence</i>	.01–A54

Introduction

Scope of This Section	.01–.02

Effective Date	.03

Objective	.04

Definitions	.05

Requirements

Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence	.06

Information to Be Used as Audit Evidence	.07–.09

Inconsistency in, or Doubts Over Reliability of, Audit Evidence	.10

Application and Other Explanatory Material Sufficient

Appropriate Audit Evidence	A1–A26

Information to Be Used as Audit Evidence	A27–A52

Inconsistency in, or Doubts Over Reliability of, Audit Evidence	A53

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 500, <i>Audit Evidence</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 500, <i>Audit Evidence</i>	A54

501	<i>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</i>	.01–A72

Introduction

Scope of This Section	.01

Effective Date	.02

Objective	.03

Requirements

Investments in Securities and Derivative Instruments	.04–.10

Inventory	.11–.15

Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	.16–.24

Segment Information	.25

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Investments in Securities and Derivative Instruments	A1–A19

Inventory	A20–A38

Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	A39–A65

Segment Information	A66–A68

Appendix—Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to Legal Counsel	A69

Exhibit A—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers’ Responses to Auditors’ Requests for Information	A70

Exhibit B—Report of the Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses	A71

Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 501, <i>Audit Evidence</i> Specific Considerations for Selected Items, and International Standard on Auditing 501, <i>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</i>	A72

505	<i>External Confirmations</i>	.01–A35

Introduction

Scope of This Section	.01

External Confirmation Procedures to Obtain Audit Evidence	.02–.03
Effective Date	.04
Objective.....	.05
Definitions	.06
Requirements	
External Confirmation Procedures	.07
Management’s Refusal to Allow the Auditor to Perform External Confirmation Procedures	.08–.09
Results of the External Confirmation Procedures.....	.10–.14
Negative Confirmations	.15
Evaluating the Evidence Obtained	.16
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Definitions	A1
External Confirmation Procedures	A2–A8
Management’s Refusal to Allow the Auditor to Perform External Confirmation Procedures	A9–A11
Results of the External Confirmation Procedures.....	A12–A31
Negative Confirmations	A32
Evaluating the Evidence Obtained	A33–A34
Exhibit—Comparison of Section 505, <i>External Confirmations</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 505, <i>External Confirmations</i>	A35
 510 <i>Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements...</i>	<i>.01–A22</i>
Introduction	
Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
Effective Date	.03
Objective.....	.04
Definitions	.05
Requirements	
Audit Procedures.....	.06–.13
Audit Conclusions and Reporting	.14–.18
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Objective.....	A1
Definitions.....	A2
Audit Procedures.....	A3–A16
Audit Conclusions and Reporting	A17–A18
Exhibit A—Illustration of Report With Disclaimer of Opinion on Results of Operations and Cash Flows and Unmodified Opinion on Financial Position.....	A19
Exhibit B—Illustrative Entity Consent and Acknowledgment Letter...	A20
Exhibit C—Illustrative Successor Auditor Acknowledgment Letter....	A21
Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 510, <i>Opening Balances— Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 510, <i>Initial Audit Engagements—Opening Balances</i>	A22

18 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

520	<i>Analytical Procedures</i>	.01–A31

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Effective Date	.02

Objectives	.03

Definition	.04

Requirements

Substantive Analytical Procedures	.05
Analytical Procedures That Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion...	.06
Investigating Results of Analytical Procedures	.07
Documentation	.08

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Objectives	A1
Definition	A2–A6
Substantive Analytical Procedures	A7–A24
Analytical Procedures That Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion.....	A25–A27
Investigating Results of Analytical Procedures	A28–A29
Documentation	A30

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 520, <i>Analytical Procedures</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 520, <i>Analytical Procedures</i>	A31

530	<i>Audit Sampling</i>	.01–A29

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
Effective Date	.03

Objective	.04

Definitions	.05

Requirements

Sample Design, Size, and Selection of Items for Testing	.06–.08
Performing Audit Procedures.....	.09–.11
Nature and Cause of Deviations and Misstatements	.12
Projecting the Results of Audit Sampling	.13
Evaluating the Results of Audit Sampling	.14

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	A1–A2
Definitions	A3–A6
Sample Design, Size, and Selection of Items for Testing	A7–A17
Performing Audit Procedures.....	A18–A20
Nature and Cause of Deviations and Misstatements	A21–A23
Projecting the Results of Audit Sampling	A24–A25
Evaluating the Results of Audit Sampling	A26–A28

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 530, <i>Audit Sampling</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 530, <i>Audit Sampling</i>	A29

540	<i>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</i>	.01–A137
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01
	Nature of Accounting Estimates	.02–.04
	Effective Date	.05
	Objective	.06
	Definitions	.07
	Requirements	
	Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.08–.09
	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement.....	.10–.11
	Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement	.12–.14
	Further Substantive Procedures to Respond to Significant Risks	.15–.17
	Evaluating the Reasonableness of the Accounting Estimates and Determining Misstatements.....	.18
	Disclosures Related to Accounting Estimates	.19–.20
	Indicators of Possible Management Bias	.21
	Documentation	.22
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Nature of Accounting Estimates	.A1–.A10
	Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.A11–.A44
	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement.....	.A45–.A51
	Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement	.A52–.A107
	Further Substantive Procedures to Respond to Significant Risks	.A108–.A121
	Evaluating the Reasonableness of the Accounting Estimates and Determining Misstatements.....	.A122–.A127
	Disclosures Related to Accounting Estimates	.A128–.A132
	Indicators of Possible Management Bias	.A133–.A134
	Documentation	.A135
	Exhibit A—Examples of Accounting Estimates	.A136
	Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 540, <i>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 540, <i>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</i>	.A137
550	<i>Related Parties</i>	.01–A53
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
	Nature of Related Party Relationships and Transactions.....	.03
	Responsibilities of the Auditor	.04–.07
	Effective Date	.08
	Objectives	.09
	Definitions	.10–.11

20 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Requirements**

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.12–.18
Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions	.19–.20
Responses to the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions.....	.21–.25
Evaluation of the Accounting for, and Disclosure of, Identified Related Party Relationships and Transactions	.26
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	.27
Documentation	.28

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Nature of Related Party Relationships and Transactions.....	.A1–.A6
Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities	.A7–.A30
Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions	.A31–.A33
Responses to the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions.....	.A34–.A49
Evaluation of the Accounting for, and Disclosure of, Identified Related Party Relationships and Transactions	.A50–.A51
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	.A52

**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 550, *Related Parties*,
and International Standard on Auditing 550, *Related Parties*.....**

560	<i>Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts</i>	.01–.A31

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts.....	.02–.03
Effective Date	.04

Objectives 05–.06**Definitions 07–.08****Requirements**

Subsequent Events.....	.09–.11
Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor Before the Report Release Date	.12–.14
Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor After the Report Release Date	.15–.18
Predecessor Auditor's Reissuance of the Auditor's Report in Comparative Financial Statements	.19–.20

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	.A1
Subsequent Events.....	.A2–.A10
Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor Before the Report Release Date	.A11–.A17
Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor After the Report Release Date	.A18–.A26
Predecessor Auditor's Reissuance of the Auditor's Report in Comparative Financial Statements	.A27–.A30

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, and International Standard on Auditing 560, *Subsequent Events*..... A31

570	<i>[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 59, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, as amended]</i>	
580	<i>Written Representations</i>	.01–A38
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
	Written Representations as Audit Evidence	.03–.04
	Effective Date	.05
	Objectives	.06
	Definition	.07–.08
	Requirements	
	Management From Whom Written Representations Are Requested.....	.09
	Written Representations About Management's Responsibilities.....	.10–.11
	Other Written Representations	.12–.19
	Date of, and Period(s) Covered by, Written Representations	.20
	Form of Written Representations	.21
	Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations and Requested Written Representations Not Provided.....	.22–.26
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Written Representations as Audit Evidence	A1
	Management From Whom Written Representations Are Requested...	A2–A6
	Written Representations About Management's Responsibilities.....	A7–A10
	Other Written Representations	A11–A22
	Date of, and Period(s) Covered by, Written Representations	A23–A26
	Form of Written Representations	A27–A29
	Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations and Requested Written Representations Not Provided.....	A30–A34
	Exhibit A—Illustrative Representation Letter	A35
	Exhibit B—Illustrative Specific Written Representations	A36
	Exhibit C—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Written Representations	A37
	Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 580, <i>Written Representations</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 580, <i>Written Representations</i>	A38
585	<i>Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date</i>	.01–A5
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
	Effective Date	.03
	Objectives	.04
	Definition	.05
	Requirements	.06–.08
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	A1–A5

22 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**600 Using the Work of Others**

600	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>	.01–A97

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.08
Effective Date	.09

Objectives 10**Definitions 11–.12****Requirements**

Responsibility	.13
Acceptance and Continuance	.14–.17
Overall Audit Strategy and Audit Plan	.18–.19
Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments	.20–.21
Understanding a Component Auditor.....	.22–.23
Determining Whether to Make Reference to a Component Auditor in the Auditor's Report on the Group Financial Statements	.24–.30
Materiality	.31
Responding to Assessed Risks	.32
Consolidation Process	.33–.38
Subsequent Events.....	.39
Communication With a Component Auditor	.40–.41
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence Obtained.....	.42–.44
Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance of the Group	.45–.48
Documentation	.49
Additional Requirements Applicable When Assuming Responsibility for the Work of a Component Auditor.....	.50–.64

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions.....	.A1–.A12
Responsibility	.A13–.A14
Acceptance and Continuance	.A15–.A29
Overall Audit Strategy and Audit Plan	.A30
Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments.....	.A31–.A39
Understanding a Component Auditor.....	.A40–.A51
Determining Whether to Make Reference to a Component Auditor in the Auditor's Report on the Group Financial Statements	.A52–.A59
Materiality	.A60–.A64
Responding to Assessed Risks	.A65
Consolidation Process	.A66
Subsequent Events.....	.A67
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence Obtained.....	.A68–.A69

	Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance of the Group	A70–A72
	Additional Requirements Applicable When Assuming Responsibility for the Work of a Component Auditor.....	A73–A90
	Appendix A—Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments—Examples of Matters About Which the Group Engagement Team Obtains an Understanding.....	A91
	Appendix B—Examples of Conditions or Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement of the Group Financial Statements ...	A92
	Appendix C—Required and Additional Matters Included in the Group Engagement Team’s Letter of Instruction	A93
	Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on Group Financial Statements	A94
	Exhibit B—Illustrative Component Auditor’s Confirmation Letter	A95
	Exhibit C—Sources of Information	A96
	Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 600, <i>Special Considerations— Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 600, <i>Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>	A97
610	<i>[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 65, The Auditor’s Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements]</i>	
620	<i>Using the Work of an Auditor’s Specialist.....</i>	<i>.01–A46</i>
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
	The Auditor’s Responsibility for the Audit Opinion.....	.03
	Effective Date	.04
	Objectives	.05
	Definitions	.06
	Requirements	
	Determining the Need for an Auditor’s Specialist	.07
	Nature, Timing, and Extent of Audit Procedures.....	.08
	The Competence, Capabilities, and Objectivity of the Auditor’s Specialist	.09
	Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor’s Specialist	.10
	Agreement With the Auditor’s Specialist.....	.11
	Evaluating the Adequacy of the Work of the Auditor’s Specialist	.12–.13
	Reference to the Auditor’s Specialist in the Auditor’s Report	.14–.15
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Definitions.....	A1–A4
	Determining the Need for an Auditor’s Specialist	A5–A10
	Nature, Timing, and Extent of Audit Procedures.....	A11–A14
	The Competence, Capabilities, and Objectivity of the Auditor’s Specialist	A15–A22

24 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

	Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor's Specialist	A23–A24
	Agreement With the Auditor's Specialist	A25–A34
	Evaluating the Adequacy of the Work of the Auditor's Specialist ...	A35–A43
	Reference to the Auditor's Specialist in the Auditor's Report	A44
	Appendix—Considerations for Agreement Between the Auditor and an Auditor's External Specialist.....	A45
	Exhibit—Comparison of Section 620, <i>Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 620, <i>Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert</i>.....	A46
700	Audit Conclusions and Reporting	
700	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>	.01–A60
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01–.08
	Effective Date	.09
	Objectives	.10
	Definitions	.11–.12
	Requirements	
	Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements	.13–.18
	Form of Opinion	.19–.21
	Auditor's Report	.22–.43
	Comparative Financial Statements and Comparative Information	.44–.57
	Information Presented in the Financial Statements.....	.58
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Scope of This Section.....	A1
	Objectives	A2
	Definitions.....	A3
	Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements	A4–A13
	Form of Opinion	A14–A15
	Auditor's Report	A16–A42
	Comparative Financial Statements and Comparative Information .	A43–A55
	Information Presented in the Financial Statements.....	A56–A57
	Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements	A58
	Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 700, <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 700, <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>	A59
	Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 700, <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 710, <i>Comparative Information— Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements</i>	A60

705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report* 01–A32

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Types of Modified Opinions	.02–.03
Effective Date	.04

Objective..... .05

Definitions 06

Requirements

Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor's Opinion Is Required	.07
Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor's Opinion.....	.08–.15
Form and Content of the Auditor's Report When the Opinion Is Modified	.16–.27
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	.28

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Types of Modified Opinions	A1
Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor's Opinion Is Required	A2–A12
Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor's Opinion....	A13–A18
Form and Content of the Auditor's Report When the Opinion Is Modified	A19–A29
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	A30

Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports

With Modifications to the Opinion A31

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and International Standard on Auditing 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*..... A32

706 *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*..... .01–A16

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.02
Effective Date	.03

Objective..... .04

Definitions 05

Requirements

Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report.....	.06–.07
Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report	.08
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	.09

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	A1
Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report.....	A2–A5
Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report	A6–A11
Communication With Those Charged With Governance	A12

26 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

	Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports With Emphasis-of-Matter or Other-Matter Paragraphs	A13
	Exhibit B—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs	A14
	Exhibit C—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Other-Matter Paragraphs.....	A15
	Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 706, <i>Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report</i>, and International Standard on Auditing 706, <i>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report</i>	A16
708	<i>Consistency of Financial Statements</i>	<i>.01–A16</i>
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section.....	.01
	Effective Date	.02
	Objectives	.03
	Definition	.04
	Requirements	
	Evaluating Consistency.....	.05–.06
	Change in Accounting Principle.....	.07–.12
	Correction of a Material Misstatement in Previously Issued Financial Statements.....	.13–.15
	Change in Classification.....	.16
	Application and Other Explanatory Material	
	Evaluating Consistency.....	A1–A3
	Change in Accounting Principle.....	A4–A11
	Correction of a Material Misstatement in Previously Issued Financial Statements.....	A12–A14
	Change in Classification.....	A15–A16
720	<i>[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 118, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements]</i>	
725	<i>[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 119, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole]</i>	
730	<i>[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 120, Required Supplementary Information]</i>	
800	Special Considerations	
800	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks</i>	<i>.01–A36</i>
	Introduction	
	Scope of This Section	.01–.04
	Effective Date	.05
	Objective.....	.06
	Definitions	.07–.09

Requirements

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement.....	.10–.11
Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit.....	.12–.13

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations 14–.23
Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions.....	.A1–.A5
Considerations When Accepting the Engagement	.A6–.A11
Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit	.A12–.A15
Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations	.A16–.A32

Appendix A—Overview of Reporting Requirements A33**Appendix B—Fair Presentation and Adequate Disclosures A34****Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on Special Purpose
Financial Statements A35****Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 800, *Special Considerations—
Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special
Purpose Frameworks*, and International Standard on Auditing 800,
*Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared
in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks* A36**

805	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement</i>	.01–.A26

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.03
Effective Date	.04

Objective..... .05**Definitions 06–.07****Requirements**

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement.....	.08–.11
Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit.....	.12–.14
Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations	.15–.24

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	.A1–.A3
Definitions.....	.A4
Considerations When Accepting the Engagement.....	.A5–.A11
Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit	.A12–.A16
Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations	.A17–.A23

**Appendix—Examples of Specific Elements, Accounts,
or Items of a Financial Statement A24****Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on a Single Financial
Statement and a Specific Element of a Financial Statement A25****Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 805, *Special Considerations—
Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements,
Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, and International
Standard on Auditing 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single
Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a
Financial Statement* A26**

28 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

806 *Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements
or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements* .01–A8

Introduction

Scope of This Section..... .01–.04

Effective Date 05

Objective..... .06

Requirements

Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements
or Regulatory Requirements 07–.13

Application and Other Explanatory Material Scope of This Section .A1–.A2

Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements
or Regulatory Requirements A3–.A7

**Exhibit—Illustrations of Reports on Compliance With Aspects of
Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection
With Audited Financial Statements A8**

810 *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements* 01–A23

Introduction

Scope of This Section..... .01–.03

Effective Date 04

Objectives 05

Definitions 06–.07

Requirements

Engagement Acceptance 08–.10

Nature of Procedures..... .11

Written Representations..... .12–.13

Form of Opinion 14–.16

Auditor's Report on Summary Financial Statements 17–.20

Restriction on Use or Alerting Readers to the Basis of Accounting 21

Comparatives..... .22–.24

Unaudited Information Presented With Summary Financial Statements .. .25

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary
Financial Statements..... .26–.27

Auditor Association 28–.29

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section..... .A1

Engagement Acceptance A2–.A8

Nature of Procedures..... .A9

Form of Opinion A10–.A11

Auditor's Report on Summary Financial Statements A12–.A16

Comparatives..... .A17–.A18

Unaudited Information Presented With Summary Financial Statements .A19

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary
Financial Statements..... .A20

Auditor Association A21

Exhibit A—Illustrations of Reports on Summary Financial Statements .A22**Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements* A23****900 Special Considerations in the United States**

- 905 *[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 87, Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report]*
- 910 *[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 51, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries]*
- 915 *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework 01–A8*

Introduction

- Scope of This Section 01–.05
- Effective Date 06

Objective 07**Definitions 08****Requirements**

- Engagement Acceptance 09–.11
- Engagement Planning and Performance 12–.13
- Written Report 14

Application and Other Explanatory Material

- Scope of This Section A1
- Engagement Planning and Performance A2–A4
- Written Report A5–A7

Exhibit—Illustrative Written Report to the Requesting Party A8

- 920 *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties 01–A93*

Introduction

- Scope of This Section 01–.04
- Effective Date 05

Objectives 06**Definitions 07–.08****Requirements**

- Engagement Acceptance 09–.14
- Agreeing Upon the Scope of Services 15–.23
- Format and Contents of Comfort Letters 24–.40
- Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements 41–.75

Application and Other Explanatory Material

- Definitions A1
- Engagement Acceptance A2–A7
- Agreeing Upon the Scope of Services A8–A23

30 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Format and Contents of Comfort Letters.....	A24–A43
Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements	A44–A90

Appendix—Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K	A91
Exhibit A—Illustration of Representation Letter From Requesting Party	A92
Exhibit B—Examples of Comfort Letters	A93

925	<i>Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933</i>	<i>.01–A15</i>

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01
Effective Date	.02

Objective.....	.03

Definitions	.04–.05

Requirements

Effective Date of the Registration Statement.....	.06
The Prospectus and Other Information	.07–.08
Subsequent Events Procedures	.09–.12
Unaudited Annual Financial Statements or Unaudited Interim Financial Information	.13–.16

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section.....	A1
Definitions	A2
Effective Date of the Registration Statement.....	A3
The Prospectus and Other Information	A4–A8
Subsequent Events Procedures	A9–A11
Exhibits	A12–A13

Exhibit A—Background	A14

Exhibit B—Illustrative Disclosures and Reports	A15

930	<i>Interim Financial Information.....</i>	<i>.01–A58</i>

Introduction

Scope of This Section.....	.01–.03
Effective Date	.04

Objective.....	.05

Definition	.06

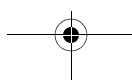
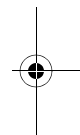
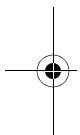
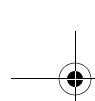
Requirements

Acceptance	.07–.10
Procedures for a Review of Interim Financial Information	.11–.18
Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures.....	.19–.20
Written Representations From Management.....	.21–.22

Communications With Management and Those Charged With Governance	.23–.28
The Auditor’s Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information ..	.29–.36
Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor’s Review Report	.37
Other Considerations	.38–.39
Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements.....	.40–.41
Documentation	.42–.43
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Scope of This Section.....	.A1–.A3
Objective.....	.A4–.A5
Acceptance	.A6
Procedures for a Review of Interim Financial Information	.A7–.A25
Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures.....	.A26–.A28
Written Representations From Management.....	.A29–.A32
Communications With Management and Those Charged With Governance	.A33–.A38
The Auditor’s Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information ..	.A39–.A48
Other Considerations	.A49
Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements.....	.A50–.A51
Documentation	.A52–.A53
Appendix A—Analytical Procedures the Auditor May Consider Performing When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information	.A54
Appendix B—Unusual or Complex Situations to Be Considered by the Auditor When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information.....	.A55
Exhibit A—Illustrative Management Representation Letters for a Review of Interim Financial Information.....	.A56
Exhibit B—Illustrations of Auditor’s Review Reports on Interim Financial Information	.A57
Exhibit C—Illustrations of Example Modifications to the Auditor’s Review Report Due to Departures From the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework.....	.A58

935 [Designated for Clarified SAS No. 117, Compliance Audits]

**Exhibit—List of AU-C Sections Designated by Statement on Auditing
Standards No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and
Recodification*, Cross Referenced to List of AU Sections in AICPA
Professional Standards**



AU-C Preface*

Preface to Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards, Principles Underlying an Audit Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

This preface contains the principles underlying an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (the principles). These principles are not requirements and do not carry any authority.

The Auditing Standards Board has developed the principles to provide a framework that is helpful in understanding and explaining an audit. The principles are organized to provide a structure for the codification of Statements on Auditing Standards in this statement. This structure addresses the purpose of an audit (purpose), personal responsibilities of the auditor (responsibilities), auditor actions in performing the audit (performance), and reporting (reporting).

Purpose of an Audit and Premise Upon Which an Audit Is Conducted

.01 The purpose of an audit is to provide financial statement users with an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. An auditor's opinion enhances the degree of confidence that intended users can place in the financial statements.

.02 An audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is conducted on the premise that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, have responsibility

- a. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- b. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- c. to provide the auditor with
 - i. access to all information of which management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - ii. additional information that the auditor may request from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance for the purpose of the audit; and
 - iii. unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

Responsibilities

.03 Auditors are responsible for having appropriate competence and capabilities to perform the audit; complying with relevant ethical requirements; and maintaining professional skepticism and exercising professional judgment throughout the planning and performance of the audit.

Performance

.04 To express an opinion, the auditor obtains reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.



34 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.05 To obtain reasonable assurance, which is a high, but not absolute, level of assurance, the auditor

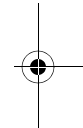
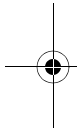
- plans the work and properly supervises any assistants.
- determines and applies appropriate materiality level or levels throughout the audit.
- identifies and assesses risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, based on an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.
- obtains sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether material misstatements exist, through designing and implementing appropriate responses to the assessed risks.

.06 The auditor is unable to obtain absolute assurance that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement because of inherent limitations, which arise from

- the nature of financial reporting;
- the nature of audit procedures; and
- the need for the audit to be conducted within a reasonable period of time and so as to achieve a balance between benefit and cost.

Reporting

.07 Based on an evaluation of the audit evidence obtained, the auditor expresses, in the form of a written report, an opinion in accordance with the auditor's findings, or states that an opinion cannot be expressed. The opinion states whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.



AU-C Section 200* **GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**

AU-C Section 200*

Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the independent auditor's overall responsibilities when conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Specifically, it sets out the overall objectives of the independent auditor (the auditor) and explains the nature and scope of an audit designed to enable the auditor to meet those objectives. It also explains the scope, authority, and structure of GAAS and includes requirements establishing the general responsibilities of the auditor applicable in all audits, including the obligation to comply with GAAS.

.02 GAAS are developed and issued in the form of Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs) and are codified into AU-C sections in *AICPA Professional Standards*. GAAS are written in the context of an audit of financial statements by an auditor. They are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to audits of other historical financial information. GAAS do not address the responsibilities of the auditor that may exist in legislation, regulation, or otherwise, in connection with, for example, the offering of securities to the public. Such responsibilities may differ from those established in GAAS. Accordingly, although the auditor may find aspects of GAAS helpful in such circumstances, it is the responsibility of the auditor to ensure compliance with all relevant legal, regulatory, or professional obligations.

An Audit of Financial Statements

.03 The purpose of an audit is to provide financial statement users with an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, which enhances the degree of confidence that intended users can place in the financial statements. An audit conducted in accordance with GAAS and relevant ethical requirements enables the auditor to form that opinion. (Ref: par. .A1)

.04 The financial statements subject to audit are those of the entity, prepared and presented by management of the entity with oversight from those charged with governance. GAAS do not impose responsibilities on management or those charged with governance and do not override laws and regulations that govern their responsibilities. However, an audit in accordance with GAAS is conducted on the premise that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged certain responsibilities that are fundamental to the conduct of the audit. The audit of the financial statements does not relieve management or those charged with governance of their responsibilities. (Ref: par. .A2–.A13)

.05 As the basis for the auditor's opinion, GAAS require the auditor to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Reasonable assurance is a high, but not absolute, level of assurance. It is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

36 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. Reasonable assurance is not an absolute level of assurance because there are inherent limitations of an audit that result in most of the audit evidence, on which the auditor draws conclusions and bases the auditor's opinion, being persuasive rather than conclusive. (Ref: par. .A31–.A55)

.06 The concept of materiality is applied by the auditor when both planning and performing the audit, and in evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements.¹ In general, misstatements, including omissions, are considered to be material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users that are taken based on the financial statements. Judgments about materiality are made in light of surrounding circumstances, and involve both qualitative and quantitative considerations. These judgments are affected by the auditor's perception of the financial information needs of users of the financial statements, and by the size or nature of a misstatement, or both. The auditor's opinion addresses the financial statements as a whole. Therefore, the auditor has no responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance that misstatements, whether caused by fraud or error, that are not material to the financial statements as a whole, are detected. (Ref: par. .A14)

.07 GAAS contain objectives, requirements, and application and other explanatory material that are designed to support the auditor in obtaining reasonable assurance. GAAS require that the auditor exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the planning and performance of the audit and, among other things,

- identify and assess risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, based on an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.
- obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether material misstatements exist, through designing and implementing appropriate responses to the assessed risks.
- form an opinion on the financial statements, or determine that an opinion cannot be formed, based on an evaluation of the audit evidence obtained.

.08 The form of opinion expressed by the auditor will depend upon the applicable financial reporting framework and any applicable law or regulation.

.09 The auditor also may have certain other communication and reporting responsibilities to users, management, those charged with governance, or parties outside the entity, regarding matters arising from the audit. These responsibilities may be established by GAAS or by applicable law or regulation.²

Effective Date

.10 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Overall Objectives of the Auditor

- .11** The overall objectives of the auditor, in conducting an audit of financial statements, are to
- a. obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and
 - b. report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by GAAS, in accordance with the auditor's findings.

¹ See section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

² For examples, see section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, and paragraph .42 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

.12 In all cases when reasonable assurance cannot be obtained and a qualified opinion in the auditor's report is insufficient in the circumstances for purposes of reporting to the intended users of the financial statements, GAAS require that the auditor disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Definitions

.13 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Applicable financial reporting framework. The financial reporting framework adopted by management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance in the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements that is acceptable in view of the nature of the entity and the objective of the financial statements, or that is required by law or regulation.

Audit evidence. Information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and other information. *Sufficiency of audit evidence* is the measure of the quantity of audit evidence. The quantity of the audit evidence needed is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement and also by the quality of such audit evidence. *Appropriateness of audit evidence* is the measure of the quality of audit evidence; that is, its relevance and its reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based.

Audit risk. The risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate audit opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated. Audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk.

Auditor. The term used to refer to the person or persons conducting the audit, usually the engagement partner or other members of the engagement team, or, as applicable, the firm. When an AU-C section expressly intends that a requirement or responsibility be fulfilled by the engagement partner, the term *engagement partner* rather than *auditor* is used. *Engagement partner* and *firm* are to be read as referring to their governmental equivalents when relevant.

Detection risk. The risk that the procedures performed by the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level will not detect a misstatement that exists and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements.

Financial reporting framework. A set of criteria used to determine measurement, recognition, presentation, and disclosure of all material items appearing in the financial statements; for example, U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), or a special purpose framework.³

The term *fair presentation framework* is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework and

- a. acknowledges explicitly or implicitly that, to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, it may be necessary for management to provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework; or
- b. acknowledges explicitly that it may be necessary for management to depart from a requirement of the framework to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements. Such departures are expected to be necessary only in extremely rare circumstances.

A financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework, but does not contain the acknowledgments in (a) or (b) is not a fair presentation framework.

³ See section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*.

38 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Financial statements. A structured representation of historical financial information, including related notes, intended to communicate an entity's economic resources and obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time in accordance with a financial reporting framework. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The term *financial statements* ordinarily refers to a complete set of financial statements as determined by the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, but can also refer to a single financial statement.

Historical financial information. Information expressed in financial terms regarding a particular entity, derived primarily from that entity's accounting system, about economic events occurring in past time periods or about economic conditions or circumstances at points in time in the past.

Interpretive publications. Auditing interpretations of GAAS, exhibits to GAAS, auditing guidance included in AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides, and AICPA Auditing Statements of Position (SOP).

Management. The person(s) with executive responsibility for the conduct of the entity's operations. For some entities, management includes some or all of those charged with governance; for example, executive members of a governance board or an owner-manager.

Misstatement. A difference between the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure of a reported financial statement item and the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure that is required for the item to be presented fairly in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error.

Other auditing publications. Publications other than interpretive publications; these include AICPA auditing publications not defined as interpretive publications; auditing articles in the *Journal of Accountancy* and other professional journals; continuing professional education programs and other instruction materials, textbooks, guide books, audit programs, and checklists; and other auditing publications from state CPA societies, other organizations, and individuals.

Premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit is conducted (the premise). Management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged and understand that they have the following responsibilities that are fundamental to the conduct of an audit in accordance with GAAS; that is, responsibility

- a. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- b. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- c. to provide the auditor with
 - i. access to all information of which management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements, such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - ii. additional information that the auditor may request from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance for the purpose of the audit; and
 - iii. unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

The *premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit is conducted* may also be referred to as the *premise*.

Professional judgment. The application of relevant training, knowledge, and experience, within the context provided by auditing, accounting, and ethical standards, in making informed decisions about the courses of action that are appropriate in the circumstances of the audit engagement.

Professional skepticism. An attitude that includes a questioning mind, being alert to conditions that may indicate possible misstatement due to fraud or error, and a critical assessment of audit evidence.

Reasonable assurance. In the context of an audit of financial statements, a high, but not absolute, level of assurance.

Risk of material misstatement. The risk that the financial statements are materially misstated prior to the audit. This consists of two components, described as follows at the assertion level:

Inherent risk. The susceptibility of an assertion about a class of transaction, account balance, or disclosure to a misstatement that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, before consideration of any related controls.

Control risk. The risk that a misstatement that could occur in an assertion about a class of transaction, account balance, or disclosure and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis by the entity's internal control.

Those charged with governance. The person(s) or organization(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and the obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. Those charged with governance may include management personnel; for example, executive members of a governance board or an owner-manager.

Requirements

Ethical Requirements Relating to an Audit of Financial Statements

.14 The auditor should comply with relevant ethical requirements relating to financial statement audit engagements. (Ref: par. .A15–.A20)

Professional Skepticism

.15 The auditor should plan and perform an audit with professional skepticism, recognizing that circumstances may exist that cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. (Ref: par. .A21–.A25)

Professional Judgment

.16 The auditor should exercise professional judgment in planning and performing an audit of financial statements. (Ref: par. .A26–.A30)

Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence and Audit Risk

.17 To obtain reasonable assurance, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level and thereby enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion. (Ref: par. .A31–.A55)

Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With GAAS

Complying With AU-C Sections Relevant to the Audit

.18 The auditor should comply with all AU-C sections relevant to the audit. An AU-C section is relevant to the audit when the AU-C section is in effect and the circumstances addressed by the AU-C section exist. (Ref: par. .A56–.A61)

.19 The auditor should have an understanding of the entire text of an AU-C section, including its application and other explanatory material, to understand its objectives and to apply its requirements properly. (Ref: par. .A62–.A70)

.20 The auditor should not represent compliance with GAAS in the auditor's report unless the auditor has complied with the requirements of this section and all other AU-C sections relevant to the audit.

40 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Objectives Stated in Individual AU-C Sections***

.21 To achieve the overall objectives of the auditor, the auditor should use the objectives stated in individual AU-C sections in planning and performing the audit considering the interrelationships within GAAS to (Ref: par. .A71–.A73)

- a. determine whether any audit procedures in addition to those required by individual AU-C sections are necessary in pursuance of the objectives stated in each AU-C section; and (Ref: par. .A74)
- b. evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained. (Ref: par. .A75)

Complying With Relevant Requirements

.22 Subject to paragraph .24, the auditor should comply with each requirement of an AU-C section unless, in the circumstances of the audit,

- a. the entire AU-C section is not relevant; or
- b. the requirement is not relevant because it is conditional and the condition does not exist. (Ref: par. .A76–.A77)

Defining Professional Responsibilities in GAAS

.23 GAAS use the following two categories of professional requirements, identified by specific terms, to describe the degree of responsibility it imposes on auditors:

- Unconditional requirements. The auditor must comply with an unconditional requirement in all cases in which such requirement is relevant. GAAS use the word “must” to indicate an unconditional requirement.
- Presumptively mandatory requirements. The auditor must comply with a presumptively mandatory requirement in all cases in which such a requirement is relevant except in rare circumstances discussed in paragraph .24. GAAS use the word “should” to indicate a presumptively mandatory requirement. (Ref: par. .A78)

.24 In rare circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement. In such circumstances, the auditor should perform alternative audit procedures to achieve the intent of that requirement. The need for the auditor to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement is expected to arise only when the requirement is for a specific procedure to be performed and, in the specific circumstances of the audit, that procedure would be ineffective in achieving the intent of the requirement. (Ref: par. .A79)

Interpretive Publications

.25 The auditor should consider applicable interpretive publications in planning and performing the audit. (Ref: par. .A80)

Other Auditing Publications

.26 In applying the auditing guidance included in an other auditing publication, the auditor should, exercising professional judgment, assess the relevance and appropriateness of such guidance to the circumstances of the audit. (Ref: par. .A81–.A83)

Failure to Achieve an Objective

.27 If an objective in a relevant AU-C section cannot be achieved, the auditor should evaluate whether this prevents the auditor from achieving the overall objectives of the auditor and thereby requires the auditor, in accordance with GAAS, to modify the auditor’s opinion or withdraw from the engagement (when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation). Failure to achieve an objective represents a significant finding or issue requiring documentation in accordance with section 230, Audit Documentation.⁴ (Ref: par. .A84–.A85)

⁴ Paragraph .08c of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

An Audit of Financial Statements

Scope of the Audit (Ref: par. .03)

.A1 The auditor's opinion on the financial statements addresses whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Such an opinion is common to all audits of financial statements. The auditor's opinion, therefore, does not assure, for example, the future viability of the entity nor the efficiency or effectiveness with which management has conducted the affairs of the entity. In some circumstances, however, applicable law or regulation may require auditors to provide opinions on other specific matters, such as the effectiveness of internal control. Although GAAS include requirements and regarding such matters to the extent that they are relevant to forming an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor would be required to undertake further work if the auditor had additional responsibilities to provide such opinions.

Preparation and Fair Presentation of the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .04)

.A2 An audit in accordance with GAAS is conducted on the premise that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged and understand that they have responsibility

- a. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- b. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- c. to provide the auditor with
 - i. access to all information of which management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements, such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - ii. additional information that the auditor may request from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance for the purpose of the audit; and
 - iii. unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

.A3 The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements by management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance require

- the identification of the applicable financial reporting framework, in the context of any relevant laws or regulations.
- the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with that framework.
- the inclusion of an adequate description of that framework in the financial statements.

The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements require management to exercise judgment in making accounting estimates that are reasonable in the circumstances, as well as in selecting and applying appropriate accounting policies. These judgments are made in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A4 The auditor may make suggestions about the form or content of the financial statements, or assist management by drafting them, in whole or in part, based on information provided to the auditor by management during the performance of the audit. However, the auditor's responsibility for the audited financial statements is confined to the expression of the auditor's opinion on them.

.A5 The financial statements may be prepared in accordance with the following:

- A general purpose framework (a financial reporting framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users); or

42 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- A special purpose framework (a financial reporting framework, other than generally accepted accounting principles, which is a cash, tax, regulatory, or contractual basis of accounting).

.A6 The applicable financial reporting framework often encompasses financial accounting standards promulgated by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization, or legislative or regulatory requirements. In some cases, the financial reporting framework may encompass both financial accounting standards promulgated by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization and legislative or regulatory requirements. Other sources may provide direction on the application of the applicable financial reporting framework. In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may encompass such other sources, or may even consist only of such sources. Such other sources may include the following:

- The legal and ethical environment, including statutes, regulations, court decisions, and professional ethical obligations regarding accounting matters;
- Published accounting interpretations of varying authority issued by standards-setting, professional, or regulatory organizations;
- Published views of varying authority on emerging accounting issues issued by standards-setting, professional, or regulatory organizations;
- General and industry practices widely recognized and prevalent; and
- Accounting literature.

When conflicts exist between the financial reporting framework and the sources from which direction on its application may be obtained, or among the sources that encompass the financial reporting framework, the source with the highest authority prevails.

.A7 The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements. Although the framework may not specify how to account for or disclose all transactions or events, it ordinarily embodies sufficiently broad principles that can serve as a basis for developing and applying accounting policies that are consistent with the concepts underlying the requirements of the framework.

.A8 The financial accounting standards promulgated by organizations that are authorized or recognized to promulgate standards to be used by entities for preparing financial statements in accordance with a general purpose framework include Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*, issued by FASB; IFRSs, issued by the IASB; Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards, issued by the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board for U.S. federal government entities; and Statements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, issued by the Government Accounting Standards Board for U.S. state and local governmental entities.

.A9 The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework also determine what constitutes a complete set of financial statements. In the case of many frameworks, financial statements are intended to provide information about the financial position, financial performance, and cash flows of an entity. For example, a complete set of financial statements might include a balance sheet, an income statement, a statement of changes in equity, a cash flow statement, and related notes. For some other financial reporting frameworks, a single financial statement and the related notes might constitute a complete set of financial statements. Examples of a single financial statement, each of which would include related notes, include the following:

- Balance sheet
- Statement of income or statement of operations
- Statement of retained earnings
- Statement of cash flows
- Statement of assets and liabilities
- Statement of changes in owners' equity
- Statement of revenue and expenses
- Statement of operations by product lines

.A10 Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, establishes requirements and provides guidance on determining the acceptability of the applicable financial reporting framework.⁵ Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, addresses engagements in which the auditor issues a report in connection with financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.

.A11 Because of the significance of the premise to the conduct of an audit, the auditor is required to obtain the agreement of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, that they acknowledge and understand that they have the responsibilities set out in paragraph .A2 as a precondition for accepting the audit engagement.⁶

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A12 The requirements for audits of the financial statements of governmental entities may be broader than those of other entities. As a result, the premise, relating to management's responsibilities, on which an audit of the financial statements of a governmental entity is conducted, may include additional responsibilities, such as the responsibility for the execution of transactions and events in accordance with law, regulation, or other authority. (See paragraph .A61.)

.A13 In audits of governmental entities, auditors may have a responsibility under law, regulation, contract, or grant agreement to report to third parties, such as funding agencies or oversight bodies.

Materiality (Ref: par. .06)

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A14 For most state or local governmental entities, the applicable financial reporting framework is based on multiple reporting units, and therefore requires the presentation of financial statements for its activities in various reporting units. Consequently, a reporting unit, or aggregation of reporting units, of the governmental entity represents an opinion unit to the auditor. Generally, the auditor expresses or disclaims an opinion on a government's financial statements as a whole by expressing an opinion or disclaiming an opinion on each opinion unit. In this context, the auditor is responsible for the detection of misstatements that are material to an opinion unit within a governmental entity, but is not responsible for the detection of misstatements that are not material to an opinion unit.

Ethical Requirements Relating to an Audit of Financial Statements (Ref: par. .14)

.A15 The auditor is subject to relevant ethical requirements relating to financial statement audit engagements. Ethical requirements consist of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct together with rules of state boards of accountancy and applicable regulatory agencies that are more restrictive.

.A16 The AICPA Code of Professional Conduct establishes the fundamental principles of professional ethics, which include the following:

- Responsibilities
- The public interest
- Integrity
- Objectivity and independence
- Due care
- Scope and nature of services

.A17 In the case of an audit engagement, it is in the public interest and, therefore, required by the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, that the auditor be independent of the entity subject to the audit. The concept of independence refers to both independence in fact and independence in appearance. The auditor's independence from the entity safeguards the auditor's ability to form

⁵ Paragraph .06a of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

⁶ Paragraph .06b of section 210.

44 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

an audit opinion without being affected by influences that might compromise that opinion. Independence enhances the auditor's ability to act with integrity, to be objective, and to maintain an attitude of professional skepticism. Independence implies an impartiality that recognizes an obligation to be fair not only to management and those charged with governance of an entity but also users of the financial statements who may rely upon the independent auditor's report. Guidance on threats to independence is set forth in the AICPA's *Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 100-1).

.A18 Due care requires the auditor to discharge professional responsibilities with competence and to have the appropriate capabilities to perform the audit and enable an appropriate auditor's report to be issued.

.A19 Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10), sets out the firm's responsibilities to establish and maintain its system of quality control for audit engagements, and to establish policies and procedures designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that the firm and its personnel comply with relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence.⁷ Section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, addresses the engagement partner's responsibilities regarding relevant ethical requirements. These include remaining alert for evidence of noncompliance with relevant ethical requirements by members of the engagement team, determining, in consultation with others in the firm as appropriate, the appropriate action if matters come to the engagement partner's attention, through the firm's system of quality control or otherwise, that indicate that members of the engagement team have not complied with relevant ethical requirements, and forming a conclusion on compliance with independence requirements that apply to the audit engagement.⁸ Section 220 recognizes that the engagement team is entitled to rely on a firm's system of quality control in meeting its responsibilities with respect to quality control procedures applicable to the individual audit engagement, unless the engagement partner determines that it is inappropriate to do so based on information provided by the firm or other parties.

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A20 In addition to the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct and GAAS, *Government Auditing Standards*, which may be required by law, regulation, contract, or grant agreement in audits of governmental entities and entities that receive government awards, set forth relevant ethical principles and auditing standards, including standards on auditor independence, professional judgment, competence, and audit quality control and assurance.

Professional Skepticism (Ref: par. .15)

.A21 Professional skepticism includes being alert to the following, for example,

- Audit evidence that contradicts other audit evidence obtained.
- Information that brings into question the reliability of documents and responses to inquiries to be used as audit evidence.
- Conditions that may indicate possible fraud.
- Circumstances that suggest the need for audit procedures in addition to those required by GAAS.

.A22 Maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit is necessary if the auditor is, for example, to reduce the risks of

- overlooking unusual circumstances.
- over-generalizing when drawing conclusions from audit observations.

⁷ Paragraphs 21–25 of Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).

⁸ Paragraphs .11–.13 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

- using inappropriate assumptions in determining the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures and evaluating the results thereof.

.A23 Professional skepticism is necessary to the critical assessment of audit evidence. This includes questioning contradictory audit evidence and the reliability of documents and responses to inquiries and other information obtained from management and those charged with governance. It also includes consideration of the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained in light of the circumstances; for example, in the case when fraud risk factors exist and a single document, of a nature that is susceptible to fraud, is the sole supporting evidence for a material financial statement amount.

.A24 The auditor may accept records and documents as genuine unless the auditor has reason to believe the contrary. Nevertheless, the auditor is required to consider the reliability of information to be used as audit evidence.⁹ In cases of doubt about the reliability of information or indications of possible fraud (for example, if conditions identified during the audit cause the auditor to believe that a document may not be authentic or that terms in a document may have been falsified), GAAS require that the auditor investigate further and determine what modifications or additions to audit procedures are necessary to resolve the matter.¹⁰

.A25 The auditor neither assumes that management is dishonest nor assumes unquestioned honesty. The auditor cannot be expected to disregard past experience of the honesty and integrity of the entity's management and those charged with governance. Nevertheless, a belief that management and those charged with governance are honest and have integrity does not relieve the auditor of the need to maintain professional skepticism or allow the auditor to be satisfied with less than persuasive audit evidence when obtaining reasonable assurance.

Professional Judgment (Ref: par. .16)

.A26 Professional judgment is essential to the proper conduct of an audit. This is because interpretation of relevant ethical requirements and GAAS and the informed decisions required throughout the audit cannot be made without the application of relevant knowledge and experience to the facts and circumstances. In particular, professional judgment is necessary regarding decisions about the following:

- Materiality and audit risk
- The nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures used to meet the requirements of GAAS and gather audit evidence
- Evaluating whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained, and whether more needs to be done to achieve the objectives of GAAS and thereby, the overall objectives of the auditor
- The evaluation of management's judgments in applying the entity's applicable financial reporting framework
- The drawing of conclusions based on the audit evidence obtained; for example, assessing the reasonableness of the estimates made by management in preparing the financial statements

.A27 The distinguishing feature of professional judgment expected of an auditor is that such judgment is exercised based on competencies necessary to achieve reasonable judgments, developed by the auditor through relevant training, knowledge, and experience.

.A28 The exercise of professional judgment in any particular case is based on the facts and circumstances that are known by the auditor. Consultation on difficult or contentious matters during the course of the audit, both within the engagement team and between the engagement team and others at the appropriate level within or outside the firm, such as those required by section 220, assists the auditor in making informed and reasonable judgments.¹¹

⁹ Paragraphs .07–.09 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

¹⁰ Paragraph .10 of section 500 and paragraphs .10–.11 and .16 of section 505, *External Confirmations*.

¹¹ Paragraph .20 of section 220.

46 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A29 Professional judgment can be evaluated based on whether the judgment reached reflects a competent application of auditing standards and accounting principles and is appropriate in light of, and consistent with, the facts and circumstances that were known to the auditor up to the date of the auditor's report.

.A30 Professional judgment needs to be exercised throughout the audit. It also needs to be appropriately documented. In this regard, the auditor is required to prepare audit documentation sufficient to enable an experienced auditor, having no previous connection with the audit, to understand the significant professional judgments made in reaching conclusions on significant findings or issues arising during the audit.¹² Professional judgment is not to be used as the justification for decisions that are not otherwise supported by the facts and circumstances of the engagement or by sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence and Audit Risk (Ref: par. .17)***Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence***

.A31 Audit evidence is necessary to support the auditor's opinion and report. It is cumulative in nature and is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the course of the audit. It may, however, also include information obtained from other sources such as previous audits (provided the auditor has determined whether changes have occurred since the previous audit that may affect its relevance to the current audit)¹³ or a firm's quality control procedures for client acceptance and continuance. In addition to other sources inside and outside the entity, the entity's accounting records are an important source of audit evidence. Also, information that may be used as audit evidence may have been prepared by a specialist employed or engaged by the entity. Audit evidence comprises both information that supports and corroborates management's assertions and any information that contradicts such assertions. In addition, in some cases, the absence of information (for example, management's refusal to provide a requested representation) is used by the auditor, and, therefore, also constitutes audit evidence. Most of the auditor's work in forming the auditor's opinion consists of obtaining and evaluating audit evidence.

.A32 The sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence are interrelated. *Sufficiency* is the measure of the quantity of audit evidence. The quantity of audit evidence needed is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of misstatement (the higher the assessed risks, the more audit evidence is likely to be required) and also by the quality of such audit evidence (the higher the quality, the less may be required). Obtaining more audit evidence, however, may not compensate for its poor quality.

.A33 *Appropriateness* is the measure of the quality of audit evidence; that is, its relevance and its reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based. The reliability of evidence is influenced by its source and by its nature, and is dependent on the individual circumstances under which it is obtained.

.A34 Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level, and thereby to enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion, is a matter of professional judgment. Section 500, *Audit Evidence*, and other relevant AU-C sections, establish additional requirements and provide further guidance applicable throughout the audit regarding the auditor's considerations in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Audit Risk

.A35 Audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk. The assessment of risks is based on audit procedures to obtain information necessary for that purpose and evidence obtained throughout the audit. The assessment of risks is a matter of professional judgment, rather than a matter capable of precise measurement.

¹² Paragraph .08 of section 230.

¹³ Paragraph .10 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

.A36 For purposes of GAAS, audit risk does not include the risk that the auditor might express an opinion that the financial statements are materially misstated when they are not. This risk is ordinarily insignificant. Further, audit risk is a technical term related to the process of auditing; it does not refer to the auditor's business risks, such as loss from litigation, adverse publicity, or other events arising in connection with the audit of financial statements.

Risks of Material Misstatement

.A37 The risks of material misstatement exist at two levels:

- The overall financial statement level
- The assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures

.A38 Risks of material misstatement at the overall financial statement level refer to risks of material misstatement that relate pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many assertions.

.A39 Risks of material misstatement at the assertion level are assessed in order to determine the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. This evidence enables the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements at an acceptably low level of audit risk. Auditors use various approaches to accomplish the objective of assessing the risks of material misstatement. For example, the auditor may make use of a model that expresses the general relationship of the components of audit risk in mathematical terms to arrive at an acceptable level of detection risk. Some auditors find such a model to be useful when planning audit procedures.

.A40 The risks of material misstatement at the assertion level consist of two components: inherent risk and control risk. Inherent risk and control risk are the entity's risks; they exist independently of the audit of the financial statements.

.A41 Inherent risk is higher for some assertions and related classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures than for others. For example, it may be higher for complex calculations or for accounts consisting of amounts derived from accounting estimates that are subject to significant estimation uncertainty. External circumstances giving rise to business risks may also influence inherent risk. For example, technological developments might make a particular product obsolete, thereby causing inventory to be more susceptible to overstatement. Factors in the entity and its environment that relate to several or all of the classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures may also influence the inherent risk related to a specific assertion. Such factors may include, for example, a lack of sufficient working capital to continue operations or a declining industry characterized by a large number of business failures.

.A42 Control risk is a function of the effectiveness of the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control by management to address identified risks that threaten the achievement of the entity's objectives relevant to preparation and fair presentation of the entity's financial statements. However, internal control, no matter how well designed and operated, can only reduce, but not eliminate, risks of material misstatement in the financial statements, because of the inherent limitations of internal control. These include, for example, the possibility of human errors or mistakes, or of controls being circumvented by collusion or inappropriate management override. Accordingly, some control risk will always exist. GAAS provide the conditions under which the auditor is required to, or may choose to, test the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures to be performed.¹⁴

.A43 GAAS do not ordinarily refer to inherent risk and control risk separately, but rather to a combined assessment of the risks of material misstatement. However, the auditor may make separate or combined assessments of inherent and control risk depending on preferred audit techniques or methodologies and practical considerations. The assessment of the risks of material misstatement may be expressed in quantitative terms, such as in percentages or in nonquantitative

¹⁴ Paragraph .08 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

48 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

terms. In any case, the need for the auditor to make appropriate risk assessments is more important than the different approaches by which they may be made.

.A44 Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, establishes requirements and provides guidance on identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and assertion levels.

Detection Risk

.A45 For a given level of audit risk, the acceptable level of detection risk bears an inverse relationship to the assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level. For example, the greater the risks of material misstatement the auditor believes exists, the less the detection risk that can be accepted and, accordingly, the more persuasive the audit evidence required by the auditor.

.A46 Detection risk relates to the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures that are determined by the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level. It is therefore a function of the effectiveness of an audit procedure and of its application by the auditor. The following matters assist to enhance the effectiveness of an audit procedure and of its application and reduce the possibility that an auditor might select an inappropriate audit procedure, misapply an appropriate audit procedure, or misinterpret the audit results:

- Adequate planning
- Proper assignment of personnel to the engagement team
- The application of professional skepticism
- Supervision and review of the audit work performed

.A47 Section 300, *Planning an Audit*, and section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, establish requirements and provide guidance on planning an audit of financial statements and the auditor's responses to assessed risks. Detection risk, however, can only be reduced, not eliminated, because of the inherent limitations of an audit. Accordingly, some detection risk will always exist.

Inherent Limitations of an Audit

.A48 The auditor is not expected to, and cannot, reduce audit risk to zero and cannot, therefore, obtain absolute assurance that the financial statements are free from material misstatement due to fraud or error. This is because inherent limitations of an audit exist, which result in most of the audit evidence on which the auditor draws conclusions and bases the auditor's opinion being persuasive rather than conclusive. The principal inherent limitations of an audit arise from

- the nature of financial reporting;
- the nature of audit procedures; and
- the need for the audit to be conducted within a reasonable period of time and so as to achieve a balance between benefit and cost.

The Nature of Financial Reporting

.A49 The preparation and fair presentation of financial statements involves judgment by management in applying the requirements of the entity's applicable financial reporting framework to the facts and circumstances of the entity. In addition, many financial statement items involve subjective decisions or assessments or a degree of uncertainty, and a range exists of acceptable interpretations or judgments that may be made. Consequently, some financial statement items are subject to an inherent level of variability that cannot be eliminated by the application of additional auditing procedures. For example, this is often the case with respect to certain accounting estimates that are dependent on predictions of future events. Nevertheless, GAAS require the auditor to give specific consideration to whether accounting estimates are reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework and to related disclosures, and to the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including indicators of possible bias in management's judgments.¹⁵

¹⁵ See section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, and section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

The Nature of Audit Procedures

.A50 There are practical and legal limitations on the auditor's ability to obtain audit evidence. For example:

- There is the possibility that management or others may not provide, intentionally or unintentionally, the complete information that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements or that has been requested by the auditor. Accordingly, the auditor cannot be certain of the completeness of information, even though the auditor has performed audit procedures to obtain assurance that all relevant information has been obtained.
- Fraud may involve sophisticated and carefully organized schemes designed to conceal it. Therefore, audit procedures used to gather audit evidence may be ineffective for detecting an intentional misstatement that involves, for example, collusion to falsify documentation that may cause the auditor to believe that audit evidence is valid when it is not. The auditor is neither trained as nor expected to be an expert in the authentication of documents.
- An audit is not an official investigation into alleged wrongdoing. Accordingly, the auditor is not given specific legal powers, such as the power of search, which may be necessary for such an investigation.

Timeliness of Financial Reporting and the Balance Between Benefit and Cost

.A51 The matter of difficulty, time, or cost involved is not in itself a valid basis for the auditor to omit an audit procedure for which there is no alternative or to be satisfied with audit evidence that is less than persuasive. Appropriate planning assists in making sufficient time and resources available for the conduct of the audit. Notwithstanding this, the relevance of information, and thereby its value, tends to diminish over time, and there is a balance to be struck between the reliability of information and its cost. This is recognized in certain financial reporting frameworks (see, for example, FASB's Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts). Therefore, there is an expectation by users of financial statements that the auditor will form an opinion on the financial statements within a reasonable period of time and so as to achieve a balance between benefit and cost, recognizing that it is impracticable to address all information that may exist or to pursue every matter exhaustively on the assumption that information is fraudulent or erroneous until proved otherwise.

.A52 Consequently, it is necessary for the auditor to

- plan the audit so that it will be performed in an effective manner;
- direct audit effort to areas most expected to contain risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, with correspondingly less effort directed at other areas; and
- use testing and other means of examining populations for misstatements.

.A53 In light of the approaches described in paragraph .A52, GAAS contain requirements for the planning and performance of the audit and requires the auditor, among other things, to

- have a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and assertion levels by performing risk assessment procedures and related activities;¹⁶ and
- use testing and other means of examining populations in a manner that provides a reasonable basis for the auditor to draw conclusions about the population.¹⁷

Other Matters That Affect the Inherent Limitations of an Audit

.A54 In the case of certain assertions or subject matters, the potential effects of the inherent limitations on the auditor's ability to detect material misstatements are particularly significant. Such assertions or subject matters include the following:

- Fraud, particularly fraud involving senior management or collusion. See section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, for further discussion.

¹⁶ See section 315.

¹⁷ See section 330, section 500, section 520, *Analytical Procedures*, and section 530, *Audit Sampling*.

50 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- The existence and completeness of related party relationships and transactions. See section 550, *Related Parties*, for further discussion.
- The occurrence of noncompliance with laws and regulations. See section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, for further discussion.
- Future events or conditions that may cause an entity to cease to continue as a going concern. See section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).[†]

Relevant AU-C sections identify specific audit procedures to assist in lessening the effect of the inherent limitations.

.A55 Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, there is an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements of the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with GAAS. Accordingly, the subsequent discovery of a material misstatement of the financial statements resulting from fraud or error does not by itself indicate a failure to conduct an audit in accordance with GAAS. However, the inherent limitations of an audit are not a justification for the auditor to be satisfied with less than persuasive audit evidence. Whether the auditor has performed an audit in accordance with GAAS is determined by the audit procedures performed in the circumstances, the sufficiency and appropriateness of the audit evidence obtained as a result thereof, and the suitability of the auditor's report based on an evaluation of that evidence in light of the overall objectives of the auditor.

Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With GAAS

Nature of GAAS (Ref: par. .18)

.A56 Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires an AICPA member who performs an audit to comply with standards promulgated by the Auditing Standards Board (ASB). The ASB develops and issues standards in the form of SASs through a process that includes deliberation in meetings open to the public, public exposure of proposed SASs, and a formal vote. The SASs are codified in AU-C sections in AICPA *Professional Standards*.

.A57 GAAS provide the standards for the auditor's work in fulfilling the overall objectives of the auditor. GAAS address the general responsibilities of the auditor, as well as the auditor's further considerations relevant to the application of those responsibilities to specific topics.

.A58 The scope, effective date, and any specific limitation of the applicability of a specific AU-C section are made clear in the AU-C section. Unless otherwise stated in the AU-C section, the auditor is permitted to apply an AU-C section before the effective date specified therein.

.A59 In certain audit engagements, the auditor also may be required to comply with other auditing requirements in addition to GAAS. GAAS do not override law or regulation that governs an audit of financial statements. In the event that such law or regulation differs from GAAS, an audit conducted only in accordance with law or regulation will not necessarily comply with GAAS.

.A60 The auditor may also conduct the audit in accordance with both GAAS and

- auditing standards promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board,
- International Standards on Auditing,
- *Government Auditing Standards*, or
- auditing standards of a specific jurisdiction or country.

[†] SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

In such cases, in addition to complying with each of the AU-C sections relevant to the audit, it may be necessary for the auditor to perform additional audit procedures in order to comply with the other auditing standards.

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A61 GAAS are relevant to financial statement audits of governmental entities. The auditor's responsibilities, however, may be affected by law, regulation, or other authority (such as government policy requirements or resolutions of the legislature), which may encompass a broader scope than an audit of financial statements in accordance with GAAS. These additional responsibilities are not addressed in GAAS. *Government Auditing Standards* are relevant for engagements to audit U.S. government entities, and when required by law, regulation, contract, or grant agreement. The appendix to *Government Auditing Standards* includes a listing of some of the laws, regulations, and guidelines that require use of *Government Auditing Standards*.

Contents of GAAS (Ref: par. .19)

.A62 In addition to objectives and requirements, an AU-C section contains related guidance in the form of application and other explanatory material. It may also contain introductory material that provides context relevant to a proper understanding of the AU-C section and definitions. The entire text of an AU-C section, therefore, is relevant to an understanding of the objectives stated in an AU-C section and the proper application of the requirements of an AU-C section.

.A63 When necessary, the application and other explanatory material provides further explanation of the requirements of an AU-C section and guidance for carrying them out. In particular, it may

- explain more precisely what a requirement means or is intended to cover.
- include examples of procedures that may be appropriate in the circumstances.

Although such guidance does not in itself impose a requirement, it is relevant to the proper application of the requirements of an AU-C section. The auditor is required by paragraph .19 to understand the application and other explanatory material; how the auditor applies the guidance in the engagement depends on the exercise of professional judgment in the circumstances consistent with the objective of the AU-C section. The words "may," "might," and "could" are used to describe these actions and procedures. The application and other explanatory material may also provide background information on matters addressed in an AU-C section.

.A64 Appendixes form part of the application and other explanatory material. The purpose and intended use of an appendix are explained in the body of the related AU-C section or within the title and introduction of the appendix itself.

.A65 Introductory material may include, as needed, such matters as explanation of the following:

- The purpose and scope of the AU-C section, including how the AU-C section relates to other AU-C sections.
- The subject matter of the AU-C section.
- The respective responsibilities of the auditor and others regarding the subject matter of the AU-C section.
- The context in which the AU-C section is set.

.A66 An AU-C section may include, in a separate section under the heading "Definitions," a description of the meanings attributed to certain terms for purposes of GAAS. These are provided to assist in the consistent application and interpretation of GAAS, and are not intended to override definitions that may be established for other purposes, whether in law, regulation, or otherwise. Unless otherwise indicated, those terms will carry the same meanings throughout GAAS.

.A67 When appropriate, additional considerations specific to audits of smaller, less complex entities and governmental entities are included within the application and other explanatory material of an AU-C section. These additional considerations assist in the application of the requirements of GAAS in the audit of such entities. They do not, however, limit or reduce the responsibility of the auditor to apply and comply with the requirements of GAAS.

52 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Considerations Specific to Audits of Smaller, Less Complex Entities*

.A68 For purposes of specifying additional considerations to audits of smaller, less complex entities, a *smaller, less complex entity* refers to an entity that typically possesses qualitative characteristics, such as the following:

- a. Concentration of ownership and management in a small number of individuals; and
- b. One or more of the following:
 - i. Straightforward or uncomplicated transactions
 - ii. Simple record keeping
 - iii. Few lines of business and few products within business lines
 - iv. Few internal controls
 - v. Few levels of management with responsibility for a broad range of controls
 - vi. Few personnel, many having a wide range of duties

These qualitative characteristics are not exhaustive, they are not exclusive to smaller, less complex entities, and smaller, less complex entities do not necessarily display all of these characteristics.

.A69 GAAS refer to the proprietor of a smaller entity who is involved in running the entity on a day-to-day basis as the *owner-manager*.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A70 Considerations specific to governmental entities may also be applicable to nongovernmental entities that receive government awards. In audits of governmental entities, the considerations specific to audits of smaller, less complex entities may not apply, even if the governmental entity has few employees, simple operations, or a relatively small budget, because small governmental entities (1) may have complex transactions with federal and state governments, (2) are required to comply with laws, regulations, policies, and systems determined by a higher level of government, and (3) are subject to additional public expectations of accountability and transparency.

Objectives Stated in Individual AU-C Sections (Ref: par. .21)

.A71 Each AU-C section contains one or more objectives that provide a link between the requirements and the overall objectives of the auditor. The objectives in individual AU-C sections serve to focus the auditor on the desired outcome of the AU-C section, while being specific enough to assist the auditor in

- understanding what needs to be accomplished and, when necessary, the appropriate means of doing so; and
- deciding whether more needs to be done to achieve the objectives in the particular circumstances of the audit.

.A72 Objectives are to be understood in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor stated in paragraph .11. As with the overall objectives of the auditor, the ability to achieve an individual objective is equally subject to the inherent limitations of an audit.

.A73 In using the objectives, the auditor is required to consider the interrelationships among the AU-C sections. This is because, as indicated in paragraph .A57, the AU-C sections in some cases address general responsibilities and in others address the application of those responsibilities to specific topics. For example, this section requires the auditor to adopt an attitude of professional skepticism; this is necessary in all aspects of planning and performing an audit but is not repeated as a requirement of each AU-C section. At a more detailed level, section 315 and section 330 contain, among other things, objectives and requirements that address the auditor's responsibilities to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement and to design and perform further audit procedures to respond to those assessed risks, respectively; these objectives and requirements apply throughout the audit. An AU-C section addressing specific aspects of the audit may expand on how the objectives and requirements of other AU-C sections are to be applied regarding the subject of that AU-C section, but does not repeat those objectives and requirements. For example, section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, expands on how the objectives and requirements of section 315

and section 330 are to be applied regarding the subject of section 540, but section 540 does not repeat those objectives and requirements. Thus, in achieving the objective stated in section 540, the auditor considers the objectives and requirements of other relevant AU-C sections.

Use of Objectives to Determine Need for Additional Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .21a)

.A74 The requirements of GAAS are designed to enable the auditor to achieve the objectives specified in GAAS, and thereby the overall objectives of the auditor. The proper application of the requirements of GAAS by the auditor is therefore expected to provide a sufficient basis for the auditor's achievement of the objectives. However, because the circumstances of audit engagements vary widely and all such circumstances cannot be anticipated in GAAS, the auditor is responsible for determining the audit procedures necessary to fulfill the requirements of GAAS and to achieve the objectives. In the circumstances of an engagement, there may be particular matters that require the auditor to perform audit procedures in addition to those required by GAAS to meet the objectives specified in GAAS.

Use of Objectives to Evaluate Whether Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence Has Been Obtained (Ref: par. .21b)

.A75 The auditor is required by paragraph .21b to use the objectives stated in the relevant AU-C sections to evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor. If, as a result, the auditor concludes that the audit evidence is not sufficient and appropriate, then the auditor may follow one or more of the following approaches to meeting the requirement of paragraph .21b:

- Evaluate whether further relevant audit evidence has been, or will be, obtained as a result of complying with other AU-C sections
- Extend the work performed in applying one or more requirements
- Perform other procedures judged by the auditor to be necessary in the circumstances

When none of the preceding is expected to be practical or possible in the circumstances, the auditor will not be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence and is required by GAAS to determine the effect on the auditor's report or on the auditor's ability to complete the engagement.

Complying With Relevant Requirements

Relevant Requirements (Ref: par. .22)

.A76 In some cases, an AU-C section (and therefore all of its requirements) may not be relevant in the circumstances. For example, if an entity does not have an internal audit function, nothing in section 610, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] is relevant.

.A77 Within a relevant AU-C section, there may be conditional requirements. Such a requirement is relevant when the circumstances envisioned in the requirement apply and the condition exists. In general, the conditionality of a requirement will either be explicit or implicit, for example:

- The requirement to modify the auditor's opinion if there is a limitation of scope¹⁸ represents an explicit conditional requirement.

[†] SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 65 has been included in section 610 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁸ See section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

54 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- The requirement to communicate significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control identified during the audit to management and those charged with governance,¹⁹ which depends on the existence and identification of such deficiencies, represents an implicit conditional requirement.

In some cases, a requirement may be expressed as being conditional on applicable law or regulation. For example, the auditor may be required to withdraw from the audit engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, or the auditor may be required to perform a certain action, unless prohibited by law or regulation. Depending on the jurisdiction, the legal or regulatory permission or prohibition may be explicit or implicit.

Presumptively Mandatory Requirements (Ref: par. .23)

.A78 If an AU-C section provides that a procedure or action is one that the auditor *should consider*, consideration of the procedure or action is presumptively required. Whether the auditor performs the procedure or action is based upon the outcome of the auditor's consideration and the auditor's professional judgment.

Departure From a Requirement (Ref: par. .24)

.A79 Section 230 establishes documentation requirements in those exceptional circumstances when the auditor departs from a relevant requirement.²⁰ GAAS do not call for compliance with a requirement that is not relevant in the circumstances of the audit.

Interpretive Publications (Ref: par. .25)

.A80 Interpretive publications are not auditing standards. *Interpretive publications* are recommendations on the application of GAAS in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the ASB after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with GAAS. Auditing interpretations of GAAS are included in AU-C sections in *AICPA Professional Standards*. AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and auditing SOPs are listed in AU-C appendix D, "AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Statements of Position," of *AICPA Professional Standards*.

Other Auditing Publications (Ref: par. .26)

.A81 Other auditing publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply GAAS. The auditor is not expected to be aware of the full body of other auditing publications.

.A82 Although the auditor determines the relevance of these publications in accordance with paragraph .26, the auditor may presume that other auditing publications published by the AICPA that have been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff are appropriate. These other auditing publications are listed in AU-C appendix F, "Other Auditing Publications," of *AICPA Professional Standards*.

.A83 In determining whether an other auditing publication that has not been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff is appropriate to the circumstances of the audit, the auditor may wish to consider the degree to which the publication is recognized as being helpful in understanding and applying GAAS and the degree to which the issuer or author is recognized as an authority in auditing matters.

Failure to Achieve an Objective (Ref: par. .27)

.A84 Whether an objective has been achieved is a matter for the auditor's professional judgment. That judgment takes account of the results of audit procedures performed in complying with the requirements of GAAS, and the auditor's evaluation of whether sufficient appropriate

¹⁹ Paragraph .11 of section 265.

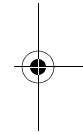
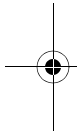
²⁰ Paragraph .13 of section 230.



audit evidence has been obtained and whether more needs to be done in the particular circumstances of the audit to achieve the objectives stated in GAAS. Accordingly, circumstances that may give rise to a failure to achieve an objective include those that

- prevent the auditor from complying with the relevant requirements of an AU-C section.
- result in it not being practicable or possible for the auditor to carry out the additional audit procedures or obtain further audit evidence as determined necessary from the use of the objectives in accordance with paragraph .21; for example, due to a limitation in the available audit evidence.

.A85 Audit documentation that meets the requirements of section 230 and the specific documentation requirements of other relevant AU-C sections provides evidence of the auditor's basis for a conclusion about the achievement of the overall objectives of the auditor. Although it is unnecessary for the auditor to document separately (as in a checklist, for example) that individual objectives have been achieved, the documentation of a failure to achieve an objective assists the auditor's evaluation of whether such a failure has prevented the auditor from achieving the overall objectives of the auditor.



.A86

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and International Standard on Auditing 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

The ISAs provide for reporting on financial statements that are prepared in accordance with fair presentation financial reporting frameworks and compliance financial reporting frameworks. In the ISAs, compliance frameworks do not necessarily require fair presentation. GAAS address reporting on financial statements that are prepared in accordance with fair presentation frameworks only, because the ASB believes that fair presentation frameworks are the only financial reporting frameworks used in the United States.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

GAAS, as described in paragraph .23 of section 200, contain two categories of professional requirements: unconditional requirements and presumptively mandatory requirements. Paragraph .23 of section 200 describes the auditor's obligation to comply with (1) an unconditional requirement in all cases where such requirement is relevant, and (2) a presumptively mandatory requirement in all cases where such a requirement is relevant except in rare circumstances. The ISAs contain only one category of professional requirements, with which paragraphs .22–.23 of ISA 200 require the auditor to comply when such requirements are relevant except in rare circumstances. The ASB retained two categories of professional requirements so as not to create unnecessary differences with the application of the auditing standards promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, which contain the same two categories of professional requirements as described in section 200.

Paragraphs .25–.26 of section 200 contain requirements relating to interpretive publications and other auditing publications. The ISAs do not address interpretive publications or other auditing publications.

AU-C Section 210*

Terms of Engagement

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities in agreeing upon the terms of the audit engagement with management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance. This includes establishing that certain preconditions for an audit, for which management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance are responsible, are present. Section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, addresses those aspects of engagement acceptance that are within the control of the auditor. (Ref: par. .A1)

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.03 The objective of the auditor is to accept an audit engagement for a new or existing audit client only when the basis upon which it is to be performed has been agreed upon through

- a. establishing whether the preconditions for an audit are present and
- b. confirming that a common understanding of the terms of the audit engagement exists between the auditor and management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.

Definitions

.04 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Preconditions for an audit. The use by management of an acceptable financial reporting framework in the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements and the agreement of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, to the premise¹ on which an audit is conducted.

Recurring audit. An audit engagement for an existing audit client for whom the auditor performed the preceding audit.

.05 For purposes of this section, references to *management* are to be read hereafter as "management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance" unless the context suggests otherwise.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraphs .04 and .A2 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

58 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Requirements****Preconditions for an Audit**

.06 In order to establish whether the preconditions for an audit are present, the auditor should

- a. determine whether the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the financial statements is acceptable and (Ref: par. .A2–.A8)
- b. obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility (Ref: par. .A9–.A12 and .A17)
 - i. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; (Ref: par. .A13)
 - ii. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and (Ref: par. .A14–.A16)
 - iii. to provide the auditor with
 - (1) access to all information of which management is aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements, such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - (2) additional information that the auditor may request from management for the purpose of the audit; and
 - (3) unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

Management-Imposed Limitation on Scope Prior to Audit Engagement Acceptance That Would Result in a Disclaimer of Opinion

.07 If management or those charged with governance of an entity that is not required by law or regulation to have an audit impose a limitation on the scope of the auditor's work in the terms of a proposed audit engagement, such that the auditor believes the limitation will result in the auditor disclaiming an opinion on the financial statements as a whole, the auditor should not accept such a limited engagement as an audit engagement. If management or those charged with governance of an entity that is required by law or regulation to have an audit imposes such a scope limitation and a disclaimer of opinion is acceptable under the applicable law or to the regulator, the auditor is permitted, but not required, to accept the engagement. (Ref: par. .A18–.A19)

Other Factors Affecting Audit Engagement Acceptance

.08 If the preconditions for an audit are not present, the auditor should discuss the matter with management. Unless the auditor is required by law or regulation to do so, the auditor should not accept the proposed audit engagement

- a. if the auditor has determined that the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the financial statements is unacceptable or
- b. if the agreement referred to in paragraph .06b has not been obtained.

Agreement on Audit Engagement Terms

.09 The auditor should agree upon the terms of the audit engagement with management or those charged with governance, as appropriate. (Ref: par. .A20–.A21)

.10 The agreed-upon terms of the audit engagement should be documented in an audit engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement and should include the following: (Ref: par. .A22–.A26)

- a. The objective and scope of the audit of the financial statements
- b. The responsibilities of the auditor
- c. The responsibilities of management
- d. A statement that because of the inherent limitations of an audit, together with the inherent limitations of internal control, an unavoidable risk exists that some material misstate-

- ments may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with GAAS
- e. Identification of the applicable financial reporting framework for the preparation of the financial statements
 - f. Reference to the expected form and content of any reports to be issued by the auditor and a statement that circumstances may arise in which a report may differ from its expected form and content

Initial Audits, Including Reaudit Engagements

.11 Before accepting an engagement for an initial audit, including a reaudit engagement, the auditor should request management to authorize the predecessor auditor to respond fully to the auditor's inquiries regarding matters that will assist the auditor in determining whether to accept the engagement. If management refuses to authorize the predecessor auditor to respond, or limits the response, the auditor should inquire about the reasons and consider the implications of that refusal in deciding whether to accept the engagement.

.12 The auditor should evaluate the predecessor auditor's response, or consider the implications if the predecessor auditor provides no response or a limited response, in determining whether to accept the engagement. (Ref: par. .A27–.A32)

Recurring Audits

.13 On recurring audits, the auditor should assess whether circumstances require the terms of the audit engagement to be revised. If the auditor concludes that the terms of the preceding engagement need not be revised for the current engagement, the auditor should remind management of the terms of the engagement, and the reminder should be documented. (Ref: par. .A33–.A34)

Acceptance of a Change in the Terms of the Audit Engagement

.14 The auditor should not agree to a change in the terms of the audit engagement when no reasonable justification for doing so exists. (Ref: par. .A35–.A37)

.15 If, prior to completing the audit engagement, the auditor is requested to change the audit engagement to an engagement for which the auditor obtains a lower level of assurance, the auditor should determine whether reasonable justification for doing so exists. (Ref: par. .A38–.A39)

.16 If the terms of the audit engagement are changed, the auditor and management should agree on and document the new terms of the engagement in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.

.17 If the auditor concludes that no reasonable justification for a change of the terms of the audit engagement exists and is not permitted by management to continue the original audit engagement, the auditor should

- a. withdraw from the audit engagement when possible under applicable law or regulation
- b. communicate the circumstances to those charged with governance, and
- c. determine whether any obligation, either legal, contractual, or otherwise, exists to report the circumstances to other parties, such as owners, or regulators.

Additional Considerations in Engagement Acceptance

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation

.18 If law or regulation prescribes a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report that significantly differs from the requirements of GAAS, the auditor should evaluate

- a. whether users might misunderstand the auditor's report and, if so,
- b. whether the auditor would be permitted to reword the prescribed form to be in accordance with the requirements of GAAS or attach a separate report.²

² Paragraphs .22–.23 of section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*.

If the auditor determines that rewording the prescribed form or attaching a separate report would not be permitted or would not mitigate the risk of users misunderstanding the auditor's report, the auditor should not accept the audit engagement unless the auditor is required by law or regulation to do so. An audit performed in accordance with such law or regulation does not comply with GAAS. Accordingly, for such an audit, the auditor should not include any reference to the audit having been performed in accordance with GAAS within the auditor's report.³ (Ref: par. .A40–.A41)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)

.A1 The auditor's responsibilities regarding relevant ethical requirements in the context of the acceptance of an audit engagement, insofar as they are within the control of the auditor, are addressed in section 220. This section addresses those matters (or preconditions) that are within the control of the entity and upon which it is necessary for the auditor and the entity's management to agree.

Preconditions for an Audit

The Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .06a)

.A2 An applicable financial reporting framework provides the criteria for management to present the financial statements of an entity, including the fair presentation of those financial statements. The criteria used by the auditor to evaluate or measure the subject matter, including, when relevant, a basis for presentation and disclosure, are also provided by the financial reporting framework. These criteria enable reasonably consistent evaluation or measurement of a subject matter within the context of professional judgment.

.A3 Without an acceptable financial reporting framework, management does not have an appropriate basis for the preparation of the financial statements, and the auditor does not have suitable criteria for auditing the financial statements. In many cases, the auditor may presume that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable, as described in paragraphs .A6–.A8.

Determining the Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework

.A4 Factors that are relevant to the auditor's determination of the acceptability of the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the financial statements include the following:

- The nature of the entity (for example, whether it is a business enterprise, a governmental entity, or a not-for-profit organization)
- The purpose of the financial statements (for example, whether they are prepared to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users)
- The nature of the financial statements (for example, whether the financial statements are a complete set of financial statements or a single financial statement)
- Whether law or regulation prescribes the applicable financial reporting framework

.A5 Many users of financial statements are not in a position to demand financial statements tailored to meet their specific information needs. Although all the information needs of specific users cannot be met, financial information needs that are common to a wide range of users exist. Financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users are referred to as *general purpose financial statements*.

General Purpose Frameworks

.A6 The sources of established accounting principles that are generally accepted are accounting principles promulgated by a body designated by the Council of the AICPA to establish such prin-

³ Paragraph .22 of section 800.

ciples, pursuant to Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Such financial reporting standards often are identified as the applicable financial reporting framework in law or regulation governing the preparation of general purpose financial statements.

Special Purpose Frameworks

.A7 In some cases, the financial statements will be prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. For example, law or regulation may prescribe the financial reporting framework to be used in the preparation of financial statements for certain types of entities. Such financial statements are referred to as *special purpose financial statements*. Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, addresses the acceptability of special purpose frameworks.⁴

.A8 After the audit engagement has been accepted, the auditor may encounter deficiencies in the applicable financial reporting framework that indicate that the framework is not acceptable. When use of that framework is not prescribed by law or regulation, management may decide to adopt another framework that is acceptable. When management does so, the previously agreed-upon terms will have changed, and the auditor is required by paragraph .16 to agree upon new terms of the audit engagement that reflect the change in the framework.

Agreement of the Responsibilities of Management (Ref: par. .06b)

.A9 An audit in accordance with GAAS is conducted on the premise that management has acknowledged and understands that it has the responsibilities set out in paragraph .06b.⁵ The auditor may assist in drafting the financial statements, in whole or in part, based on information provided to the auditor by management during the performance of the audit. However, the concept of an independent audit requires that the auditor's role does not involve assuming management's responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements or assuming responsibility for the entity's related internal control and that the auditor has a reasonable expectation of obtaining the information necessary for the audit insofar as management is able to provide or procure it. Accordingly, the premise is fundamental to the conduct of an independent audit. To avoid misunderstanding, agreement is reached with management that it acknowledges and understands that it has such responsibilities as part of agreeing and documenting the terms of the audit engagement as required by paragraphs .09–.10.

.A10 The way in which the responsibilities for financial reporting are divided between management and those charged with governance will vary according to the resources and structure of the entity and any relevant law or regulation and the respective roles of management and those charged with governance within the entity. In most cases, management is responsible for execution and those charged with governance have oversight of management. In some cases, those charged with governance will have, or will assume, responsibility for approving the financial statements or monitoring the entity's internal control related to financial reporting. In larger entities, a subgroup of those charged with governance, such as an audit committee, may be charged with certain oversight responsibilities.

.A11 Section 580, *Written Representations*, requires the auditor to request management to provide written representations that it has fulfilled certain of its responsibilities.⁶ It may therefore be appropriate to make management aware that receipt of such written representations will be expected, together with written representations required by other AU-C sections and, when necessary, written representations to support other audit evidence relevant to the financial statements or one or more specific assertions in the financial statements.

⁴ Paragraph .10 of section 800.

⁵ Paragraphs .04 and .A2 of section 200.

⁶ Paragraphs .10–.11 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

62 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A12 If management will not acknowledge its responsibilities or indicates that it will not provide written representations as requested, the auditor will be unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.⁷ In such circumstances, it would not be appropriate for the auditor to accept the audit engagement unless law or regulation requires the auditor to do so. In cases when the auditor is required to accept the audit engagement, the auditor may need to explain to management the importance of these matters and the implications for the auditor's report.

Preparation and Fair Presentation of the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .06b(i))

.A13 In an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor is required by section 800 to obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility to include all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the special purpose framework used to prepare the entity's financial statements.⁸ This agreement is a precondition of the audit included in the terms of the engagement.

Internal Control (Ref: par. .06b(ii))

.A14 Management maintains such internal control as it determines is necessary to enable the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Internal control, no matter how effective, can provide an entity with only reasonable assurance about achieving the entity's financial reporting objectives, due to the inherent limitations of internal control.

.A15 An independent audit conducted in accordance with GAAS does not act as a substitute for the maintenance of internal control necessary for the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements by management. Accordingly, the auditor is required to obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands that it has responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control necessary for this purpose. However, the agreement required by paragraph .06b(ii) does not imply that the auditor will find that internal control maintained by management has achieved its purpose or will be free from deficiencies.

.A16 Management has the responsibility to determine what internal control is necessary to enable the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements. The term *internal control* encompasses a wide range of activities within components that may be described as the control environment; the entity's risk assessment process; the information system, including the related business processes relevant to financial reporting, and communication; control activities; and monitoring of controls. This division, however, does not necessarily reflect how a particular entity may design, implement, and maintain its internal control or how it may classify any particular component.⁹ An entity's internal control will reflect the needs of management, the complexity of the business, the nature of the risks to which the entity is subject, and relevant laws or regulations.

Considerations Relevant to Smaller Entities (Ref: par. .06b)

.A17 One of the purposes of agreeing upon the terms of the audit engagement is to avoid misunderstanding about the respective responsibilities of management and the auditor. For example, when the auditor or a third party has assisted with drafting the financial statements, it may be useful to remind management that the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework remains its responsibility.

⁷ Paragraph .A34 of section 580.

⁸ Paragraph .11 of section 800.

⁹ Paragraph .A51 and appendix B, "Internal Control Components," of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

Management-Imposed Limitation on Scope Prior to Audit Engagement Acceptance That Would Result in a Disclaimer of Opinion (Ref: par. .07)

.A18 Scope limitations may be imposed by management or by circumstances. Examples of scope limitations that would not preclude the auditor from accepting the engagement include the following:

- A restriction imposed by management that the auditor believes will result in a qualified opinion
- A restriction imposed by circumstances beyond the control of management

.A19 Employee benefit plans are an example of entities that are required to have an audit by law or regulation and a disclaimer of opinion is acceptable under the applicable law or to the regulator. For such entities, the auditor is neither precluded from accepting, nor required to accept, the engagement, regardless of whether management imposes a scope limitation that is expected to result in the auditor disclaiming an opinion on the financial statements as a whole.

Agreement on Audit Engagement Terms***Agreeing Upon the Terms of the Audit Engagement (Ref: par. .09)***

.A20 The roles of management and those charged with governance in agreeing upon the terms of the audit engagement for the entity depend on the governance structure of the entity and relevant law or regulation. Depending on the entity's structure, the agreement may be with management, those charged with governance, or both. When the agreement on the terms of engagement is only with those charged with governance, nonetheless in accordance with paragraph .06, the auditor is required to obtain management's agreement that it acknowledges and understands its responsibilities.

.A21 When a third party has contracted for the audit of the entity's financial statements, agreeing the terms of the audit with management of the entity is necessary in order to establish that the preconditions for an audit are present.

Audit Engagement Letter or Other Form of Written Agreement¹⁰ (Ref: par. .10)

.A22 Both management and the auditor have an interest in documenting the agreed-upon terms of the audit engagement before the commencement of the audit to help avoid misunderstandings with respect to the audit. For example, it reduces the risk that management may inappropriately rely on the auditor to protect management against certain risks or to perform certain functions that are management's responsibility.

Form and Content of the Audit Engagement Letter

.A23 The form and content of the audit engagement letter may vary for each entity. Information included in the audit engagement letter on the auditor's responsibilities may be based on section 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards.¹¹ Paragraph .06b of this section addresses the description of the responsibilities of management. In addition to including the matters required by paragraph .10, an audit engagement letter may make reference to, for example, the following:

- Elaboration of the scope of the audit, including reference to applicable legislation, regulations, GAAS, and ethical and other pronouncements of professional bodies to which the auditor adheres
- The form of any other communication of results of the audit engagement
- Arrangements regarding the planning and performance of the audit, including the composition of the audit team

¹⁰ In the paragraphs that follow, any reference to an audit engagement letter is to be taken as a reference to an audit engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.

¹¹ Paragraphs .03–.09 of section 200.

64 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- The expectation that management will provide written representations (see also paragraph .A11)
- The agreement of management to make available to the auditor draft financial statements and any accompanying other information in time to allow the auditor to complete the audit in accordance with the proposed timetable
- The agreement of management to inform the auditor of events occurring or facts discovered subsequent to the date of the financial statements, of which management may become aware, that may affect the financial statements
- The basis on which fees are computed and any billing arrangements
- A request for management to acknowledge receipt of the audit engagement letter and to agree to the terms of the engagement outlined therein, as may be evidenced by their signature on the engagement letter

.A24 When relevant, the following points also could be made in the audit engagement letter:

- Arrangements concerning the involvement of other auditors and specialists in some aspects of the audit
- Arrangements concerning the involvement of internal auditors and other staff of the entity
- Arrangements to be made with the predecessor auditor, if any, in the case of an initial audit
- Any restriction of the auditor's liability when not prohibited
- Any obligations of the auditor to provide audit documentation to other parties
- Additional services to be provided, such as those relating to regulatory requirements
- A reference to any further agreements between the auditor and the entity

.A25 Reference to the expected form and content of any reports to be issued by the auditor may include a description of the types of reports to be issued. The auditor need not describe the type of opinion expected to be expressed. An example of an audit engagement letter is set out in exhibit A, "Example of an Audit Engagement Letter."

Audits of Components

.A26 When the auditor of a parent entity is also the auditor of a component, the factors that may influence the decision whether to obtain a separate audit engagement letter from the component include the following:

- Who engages the component auditor
- Whether a separate auditor's report is to be issued on the component
- Legal requirements regarding the appointment of the auditor
- Degree of ownership by parent
- Degree of independence of the component management from the parent entity

Initial Audits, Including Reaudit Engagements (Ref: par. .11–.12)

.A27 An auditor may make a proposal for an audit engagement before being granted permission to make inquiries of a predecessor auditor. The auditor may advise management in the proposal or otherwise that the auditor's acceptance of the engagement cannot be final until the inquiries have been made and the responses of the predecessor auditor have been evaluated.

.A28 When more than one auditor is considering accepting an engagement, the predecessor auditor is not expected to be available to respond to inquiries until an auditor has been selected by the entity and has accepted the engagement, subject to the evaluation of the communications with the predecessor auditor as provided in paragraph .12.

.A29 Relevant ethical and professional requirements guide the auditor's communications with the predecessor auditor and management, as well as the predecessor auditor's response. Such requirements provide that, except as permitted by the rules of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, an auditor is precluded from disclosing confidential information obtained in the course of an engagement unless management specifically consents. Such requirements also provide that

both the auditor and the predecessor auditor hold in confidence information obtained from each other. This obligation applies regardless of whether the auditor accepts the engagement.

.A30 In accordance with the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, which states that members have a responsibility to cooperate with each other, the predecessor auditor is expected to respond to the auditor's inquiries promptly and, in the absence of unusual circumstances, fully, on the basis of known facts. If, due to unusual circumstances, such as pending, threatened, or potential litigation; disciplinary proceedings; or other unusual circumstances, the predecessor auditor decides not to respond fully to the inquiries, the predecessor auditor is expected to clearly state that the response is limited.

.A31 The communication with the predecessor auditor may be either written or oral. Matters subject to the auditor's inquiry of the predecessor auditor may include the following:

- Information that might bear on the integrity of management
- Disagreements with management about accounting policies, auditing procedures, or other similarly significant matters
- Communications to those charged with governance regarding fraud and noncompliance with laws or regulations by the entity
- Communications to management and those charged with governance regarding significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control
- The predecessor auditor's understanding about the reasons for the change of auditors

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A32 When the auditor is required by law or regulation to audit a governmental entity, inquiries of the predecessor auditor for the purpose of obtaining information about whether to accept the engagement may not be relevant. However, inquiries of the predecessor auditor may still be relevant for the purpose of obtaining information that is used by the auditor in planning and performing the audit.¹²

Recurring Audits (Ref: par. .13)

.A33 The following factors may make it appropriate to revise the terms of the audit engagement:

- Any indication that management misunderstands the objective and scope of the audit
- Any revised or special terms of the audit engagement
- A change of senior management
- A significant change in ownership
- A significant change in the nature or size of the entity's business
- A change in legal or regulatory requirements
- A change in the financial reporting framework adopted in the preparation of the financial statements
- A change in other reporting requirements

.A34 The auditor may remind management of the terms of the engagement in writing or orally. A written reminder might be a letter confirming that the terms of the preceding engagement will govern the current engagement. If the reminder is oral, audit documentation may include with whom the discussion took place, when, and the significant points discussed.

Acceptance of a Change in the Terms of the Audit Engagement

Request to Change the Terms of the Audit Engagement (Ref: par. .14)

.A35 A request from management for the auditor to change the terms of the audit engagement may result from a change in circumstances affecting the need for the service, a misunderstanding about the nature of an audit as originally requested, or a restriction on the scope of the audit engagement, whether imposed by management or caused by other circumstances. The auditor, as

¹² Section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to opening balances when conducting an initial audit engagement.

66 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

required by paragraph .14, considers the justification given for the request, particularly the implications of a restriction on the scope of the audit engagement.

.A36 A change in circumstances that affects management's requirements or a misunderstanding concerning the nature of the service originally requested may be considered a reasonable basis for requesting a change in the audit engagement.

.A37 In contrast, a change may not be considered reasonable if the change appears to relate to information that is incorrect, incomplete, or otherwise unsatisfactory. An example might be when the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding receivables and management asks for the audit engagement to be changed to a review engagement to avoid a qualified opinion or a disclaimer of opinion.

Request to Change to a Review or Other Service (Ref: par. .15)

.A38 Before agreeing to change an audit engagement to a review or other service, an auditor who was engaged to perform an audit in accordance with GAAS may need to assess, in addition to the matters referred to in paragraphs .A35–.A37, any legal or contractual implications of the change.

.A39 If the auditor concludes that reasonable justification to change the audit engagement to a review or other service exists, the audit work performed to the date of change may be relevant to the changed engagement; however, the work required to be performed and the report to be issued would be those appropriate to the revised engagement. In order to avoid confusing the reader, the report on the other service would not include reference to the following:

- a. The original audit engagement
- b. Any procedures that may have been performed in the original audit engagement, except when the audit engagement is changed to an engagement to undertake agreed-upon procedures and, thus, reference to the procedures performed is a normal part of the report

Additional Considerations in Engagement Acceptance

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: par. .18)

.A40 GAAS require that the auditor not represent compliance with GAAS unless the auditor has complied with all of the AU-C sections relevant to the audit.¹³ If the auditor is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report, section 800 requires that the auditor's report refer to GAAS only if the auditor's report includes the minimum reporting elements.¹⁴ In accordance with section 800, if the specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report is not acceptable or would cause an auditor to make a statement that the auditor has no basis to make, the auditor is required to reword the prescribed form of report or attach an appropriately worded separate report.¹⁵ When the auditor concludes that rewording the prescribed form to be in accordance with the requirements of GAAS or attaching a separate report would not be permitted, the auditor may consider including a statement in the auditor's report that the audit is not conducted in accordance with GAAS. The auditor is, however, encouraged to apply GAAS, including the AU-C sections that address the auditor's report, to the extent practicable, notwithstanding that the auditor is not permitted to refer to the audit being conducted in accordance with GAAS.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A41 For governmental entities, specific legal or regulatory requirements may exist; for example, the auditor may be required to report directly to the legislature or the public if management attempts to limit the scope of the audit.

¹³ Paragraph .20 of section 200.

¹⁴ Paragraph .22 of section 800.

¹⁵ Paragraph .23 of section 800.

.A42**Exhibit A—Example of an Audit Engagement Letter (Ref: par. .A25)**

The following is an example of an audit engagement letter for an audit of general purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, as promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. This letter is not authoritative but is intended only to be a guide that may be used in conjunction with the considerations outlined in this Statement on Auditing Standards. The letter will vary according to individual requirements and circumstances and is drafted to refer to the audit of financial statements for a single reporting period. The auditor may seek legal advice about whether a proposed letter is suitable.

To the appropriate representative of those charged with governance of ABC Company:¹

[The objective and scope of the audit]

You² have requested that we audit the financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20XX, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements. We are pleased to confirm our acceptance and our understanding of this audit engagement by means of this letter. Our audit will be conducted with the objective of our expressing an opinion on the financial statements.

[The responsibilities of the auditor]

We will conduct our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (GAAS). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement. An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, together with the inherent limitations of internal control, an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements may not be detected exists, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with GAAS.

In making our risk assessments, we consider internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. However, we will communicate to you in writing concerning any significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control relevant to the audit of the financial statements that we have identified during the audit.

¹ The addressees and references in the letter would be those that are appropriate in the circumstances of the engagement, including the relevant jurisdiction. It is important to refer to the appropriate persons. See paragraph .A20.

² Throughout this letter, references to *you, we, us, management, those charged with governance*, and *auditor* would be used or amended as appropriate in the circumstances.

68 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

[The responsibilities of management and identification of the applicable financial reporting framework]

Our audit will be conducted on the basis that *[management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance]*³ acknowledge and understand that they have responsibility

- a. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America;
- b. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- c. to provide us with
 - i. access to all information of which *[management]* is aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - ii. additional information that we may request from *[management]* for the purpose of the audit; and
 - iii. unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom we determine it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

As part of our audit process, we will request from *[management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance]*, written confirmation concerning representations made to us in connection with the audit.

[Other relevant information]

[Insert other information, such as fee arrangements, billings, and other specific terms, as appropriate.]

[Reporting]

[Insert appropriate reference to the expected form and content of the auditor's report. Example follows:]

We will issue a written report upon completion of our audit of ABC Company's financial statements. Our report will be addressed to the board of directors of ABC Company. We cannot provide assurance that an unmodified opinion will be expressed. Circumstances may arise in which it is necessary for us to modify our opinion, add an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph(s), or withdraw from the engagement.

We also will issue a written report on *[Insert appropriate reference to other auditor's reports expected to be issued.]* upon completion of our audit.

Please sign and return the attached copy of this letter to indicate your acknowledgment of, and agreement with, the arrangements for our audit of the financial statements including our respective responsibilities.

XYZ & Co.

Acknowledged and agreed on behalf of ABC Company by

[Signed]

[Name and Title]

[Date]

³ Use terminology as appropriate in the circumstances.

.A43

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, and International Standard on Auditing 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraphs 11–12 of ISA 210 contain requirements relating to situations when law or regulation prescribes management's responsibilities. Paragraph 18 of ISA 210 contains requirements relating to situations when law or regulation supplements financial reporting standards established by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization. The ASB believes that these situations are not applicable to nonissuers in the United States and, accordingly, such requirements are not included in GAAS.

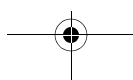
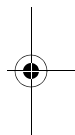
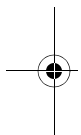
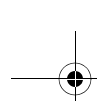
Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraphs .11–.12 of section 210 address the auditor's communications with predecessor auditors in initial audit or reaudit engagements. ISA 210 does not contain these requirements. The ASB believes these requirements and related application material are appropriate for inclusion in GAAS.

Paragraph 13 of ISA 210 requires that for recurring audits, the auditor should assess whether there is a need to remind the entity of the existing terms of the engagement. Paragraph .13 of section 210 requires the auditor to remind the entity of the existing terms of the engagement and to document the reminder. The ASB believes that it is important to review the terms of the engagement with the entity each year.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraphs 19–20 of ISA 210 contain requirements relating to situations when the financial reporting framework is prescribed by law or regulation. These requirements are addressed in section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*. The different placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.



AU-C Section 220*

Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the specific responsibilities of the auditor regarding quality control procedures for an audit of financial statements. It also addresses, when applicable, the responsibilities of the engagement quality control reviewer. This section also applies, adapted as necessary, to other engagements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) (for example, a review of interim financial information conducted in accordance with section 930, *Interim Financial Information*). This section is to be read in conjunction with the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct and other relevant ethical requirements.

.02 Although Statements on Quality Control Standards (SQCSS) are not applicable to auditors in government audit organizations, this section is applicable to auditors in government audit organizations who perform financial audits in accordance with GAAS.¹

System of Quality Control and the Role of the Engagement Teams

.03 Quality control systems, policies, and procedures are the responsibility of the audit firm. Under SQCS No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10), the firm has an obligation to establish and maintain a system of quality control to provide it with reasonable assurance that²

- a. the firm and its personnel comply with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements and
- b. reports issued by the firm are appropriate in the circumstances. (Ref: par. .A1)

.04 Within the context of the firm's system of quality control, engagement teams have a responsibility to implement quality control procedures that are applicable to the audit engagement and provide the firm with relevant information to enable the functioning of that part of the firm's system of quality control relating to independence.

.05 Engagement teams are entitled to rely on the firm's system of quality control, unless the engagement partner determines that it is inappropriate to do so based on information provided by the firm or other parties. (Ref: par. .A2)

.06 The engagement partner may use the assistance of other members of the engagement team or other personnel within the firm in meeting the requirements of this section. The requirements imposed by this section on engagement partners do not relieve other members of the engagement team of any of their professional responsibilities.

Effective Date

.07 This section is effective for engagements conducted in accordance with GAAS for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph 2 of Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQC) No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).

² Paragraph 12 of SQCS No. 8.

72 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Objective**

.08 The objective of the auditor³ is to implement quality control procedures at the engagement level that provide the auditor with reasonable assurance that

- a. the audit complies with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements and
- b. the auditor's report issued is appropriate in the circumstances.

Definitions

.09 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Engagement partner.⁴ The partner or other person in the firm who is responsible for the audit engagement and its performance and for the auditor's report that is issued on behalf of the firm and who, when required, has the appropriate authority from a professional, legal, or regulatory body.

Engagement quality control review. A process designed to provide an objective evaluation, before the report is released, of the significant judgments the engagement team made and the conclusions it reached in formulating the auditor's report. The engagement quality control review process is only for those audit engagements, if any, for which the firm has determined that an engagement quality control review is required, in accordance with its policies and procedures.

Engagement quality control reviewer. A partner, other person in the firm, suitably qualified external person, or team made up of such individuals, none of whom is part of the engagement team, with sufficient and appropriate experience and authority to objectively evaluate the significant judgments that the engagement team made and the conclusions it reached in formulating the auditor's report.

Engagement team. All partners and staff performing the engagement and any individuals engaged by the firm or a network firm who perform audit procedures on the engagement. This excludes an auditor's external specialist engaged by the firm or a network firm.⁵

Firm. A form of organization permitted by law or regulation whose characteristics conform to resolutions of the Council of the AICPA and that is engaged in the practice of public accounting.

Monitoring. A process comprising an ongoing consideration and evaluation of the firm's system of quality control, including inspection or a periodic review of engagement documentation, reports, and clients' financial statements for a selection of completed engagements, designed to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its system of quality control is designed appropriately and operating effectively.

Network. An association of entities, as defined in ET section 92, *Definitions* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

Network firm. A firm or other entity that belongs to a network, as defined in ET section 92.

Partner. Any individual with authority to bind the firm with respect to the performance of a professional services engagement. For purposes of this definition, *partner* may include an employee with this authority who has not assumed the risks and benefits of ownership. Firms may use different titles to refer to individuals with this authority.

Personnel. Partners and staff.

³ See paragraph .13 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, for the definition of *auditor*.

⁴ *Engagement partner*, *partner*, and *firm* refer to their governmental equivalents, when relevant.

⁵ Paragraph .06 of section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, defines the term *auditor's specialist*.

Professional standards. Standards promulgated by the AICPA Auditing Standards Board or the AICPA Accounting and Review Services Committee under Rule 201, *General Standards*, or Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 201 par. .01 and 202 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, or other standards-setting bodies that set auditing and attest standards applicable to the engagement being performed and relevant ethical requirements.

Relevant ethical requirements. Ethical requirements to which the engagement team and engagement quality control reviewer are subject, which consist of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct together with rules of applicable state boards of accountancy and applicable regulatory agencies that are more restrictive.

Staff. Professionals, other than partners, including any specialists that the firm employs.

Suitably qualified external person. An individual outside the firm with the competence and capabilities to act as an engagement partner (for example, a partner of another firm).

Requirements

Leadership Responsibilities for Quality on Audits

.10 The engagement partner should take responsibility for the overall quality on each audit engagement to which that partner is assigned. In fulfilling this responsibility, the engagement partner may delegate the performance of certain procedures to, and use the work of, other members of the engagement team and may rely upon the firm's system of quality control. (Ref: par. .A3)

Relevant Ethical Requirements

.11 Throughout the audit engagement, the engagement partner and other members of the engagement team should remain alert for evidence of noncompliance with relevant ethical requirements by members of the engagement team. (Ref: par. .A4)

.12 If matters come to the engagement partner's attention, through the firm's system of quality control or otherwise, that indicate that members of the engagement team have not complied with relevant ethical requirements, the engagement partner, in consultation with others in the firm as appropriate, should determine that appropriate action has been taken.

Independence

.13 The engagement partner should form a conclusion on compliance with independence requirements that apply to the audit engagement. In doing so, the engagement partner should

- a. obtain relevant information from the firm and, when applicable, network firms to identify and evaluate circumstances and relationships that create threats to independence;
- b. evaluate information on identified breaches, if any, of the firm's independence policies and procedures to determine whether they create a threat to independence for the audit engagement; and
- c. take appropriate action to eliminate such threats or reduce them to an acceptable level by applying safeguards or, if considered appropriate, to withdraw from the audit engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. The engagement partner should promptly report to the firm any inability to resolve the matter so that the firm may take appropriate action. (Ref: par. .A5–.A6)

Acceptance and Continuance of Client Relationships and Audit Engagements

.14 The engagement partner should be satisfied that appropriate procedures regarding the acceptance and continuance of client relationships and audit engagements have been followed and should determine that conclusions reached in this regard are appropriate. (Ref: par. .A7–.A8)

.15 If the engagement partner obtains information that would have caused the firm to decline the audit engagement had that information been available earlier, the engagement partner should communicate that information promptly to the firm so that the firm and the engagement partner can take the necessary action. (Ref: par. .A8)

74 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Assignment of Engagement Teams**

- .16** The engagement partner should be satisfied that the engagement team and any auditor's external specialists, collectively, have the appropriate competence and capabilities to
- perform the audit engagement in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements and
 - enable an auditor's report that is appropriate in the circumstances to be issued. (Ref: par. .A9–.A11)

Engagement Performance***Direction, Supervision, and Performance***

- .17** The engagement partner should take responsibility for the following:
- The direction, supervision, and performance of the audit engagement in compliance with professional standards, applicable legal and regulatory requirements, and the firm's policies and procedures (Ref: par. .A12–.A14 and .A19)
 - The auditor's report being appropriate in the circumstances

Review

- .18** The engagement partner should take responsibility for reviews being performed in accordance with the firm's review policies and procedures. (Ref: par. .A15–.A16 and .A19)
- .19** On or before the date of the auditor's report, the engagement partner should, through a review of the audit documentation and discussion with the engagement team, be satisfied that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to support the conclusions reached and for the auditor's report to be issued. (Ref: par. .A17–.A19)

Consultation

- .20** The engagement partner should
- take responsibility for the engagement team undertaking appropriate consultation on difficult or contentious matters;
 - be satisfied that members of the engagement team have undertaken appropriate consultation during the course of the engagement, both within the engagement team and between the engagement team and others at the appropriate level within or outside the firm;
 - be satisfied that the nature and scope of such consultations are agreed with, and conclusions resulting from such consultations are understood by, the party consulted; and
 - determine that conclusions resulting from such consultations have been implemented. (Ref: par. .A20–.A22)

Engagement Quality Control Review

- .21** For those audit engagements, if any, for which the firm has determined that an engagement quality control review is required, the engagement partner should
- determine that an engagement quality control reviewer has been appointed;
 - discuss significant findings or issues arising during the audit engagement, including those identified during the engagement quality control review, with the engagement quality control reviewer; and
 - not release the auditor's report until the completion of the engagement quality control review. (Ref: par. .A23–.A25)
- .22** The engagement quality control reviewer should perform an objective evaluation of the significant judgments made by the engagement team and the conclusions reached in formulating the auditor's report. This evaluation should involve
- discussion of significant findings or issues with the engagement partner;
 - reading the financial statements and the proposed auditor's report;

- c. review of selected audit documentation relating to the significant judgments the engagement team made and the related conclusions it reached; and
- d. evaluation of the conclusions reached in formulating the auditor's report and consideration of whether the proposed auditor's report is appropriate. (Ref: par. .A26–.A31)

Differences of Opinion

.23 If differences of opinion arise within the engagement team; with those consulted; or, when applicable, between the engagement partner and the engagement quality control reviewer, the engagement team should follow the firm's policies and procedures for resolving differences of opinion.

Monitoring

.24 An effective system of quality control includes a monitoring process designed to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its policies and procedures relating to the system of quality control are relevant, adequate, and operating effectively. The engagement partner should consider

- a. the results of the firm's monitoring process as evidenced in the latest information circulated to the engagement partner by the firm and, if applicable, other network firms and
- b. whether deficiencies noted in that information may affect the audit engagement. (Ref: par. .A32–.A34)

Documentation

.25 The auditor should include in the audit documentation the following⁶ (Ref: par. .A35)

- a. Issues identified with respect to compliance with relevant ethical requirements and how they were resolved
- b. Conclusions on compliance with independence requirements that apply to the audit engagement and any relevant discussions with the firm that support these conclusions
- c. Conclusions reached regarding the acceptance and continuance of client relationships and audit engagements
- d. The nature and scope of, and conclusions resulting from, consultations undertaken during the course of the audit engagement (Ref: par. .A36)

.26 The engagement quality control reviewer should document, for the audit engagement reviewed

- a. that the procedures required by the firm's policies on engagement quality control review have been performed;
- b. the date that the engagement quality control review was completed; and
- c. that the reviewer is not aware of any unresolved matters that would cause the reviewer to believe that the significant judgments that the engagement team made and the conclusions it reached were not appropriate.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

System of Quality Control and the Role of the Engagement Teams (Ref: par. .02)

.A1 SQCS No. 8 addresses the firm's responsibilities to establish and maintain its system of quality control for audit engagements. The system of quality control includes policies and procedures that address each of the following elements:

- Leadership responsibilities for quality within the firm
- Relevant ethical requirements
- Acceptance and continuance of client relationships and specific engagements
- Human resources
- Engagement performance
- Monitoring

⁶ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

76 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Reliance on the Firm's System of Quality Control (Ref: par. .05)***

.A2 Unless information provided by the firm or other parties suggests otherwise, the engagement team may rely on the firm's system of quality control regarding, for example

- competence of personnel through their recruitment and formal training.
- independence through the accumulation and communication of relevant independence information.
- maintenance of client relationships through acceptance and continuance systems.
- adherence to applicable legal and regulatory requirements through the monitoring process.

Leadership Responsibilities for Quality on Audits (Ref: par. .10)

.A3 The engagement partner's actions and communications with the other members of the engagement team demonstrate responsibility for the overall quality on each audit engagement when they emphasize

- a. the importance to audit quality of
 - i. performing work that complies with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
 - ii. complying with the firm's applicable quality control policies and procedures;
 - iii. issuing auditor's reports that are appropriate in the circumstances; and
 - iv. the engagement team's ability to raise concerns without fear of reprisals and
- b. the fact that quality is essential in performing audit engagements.

Relevant Ethical Requirements***Compliance With Relevant Ethical Requirements (Ref: par. .11)***

.A4 The AICPA Code of Professional Conduct establishes the fundamental principles of professional ethics, which include the following:

- Responsibilities
- The public interest
- Integrity
- Objectivity and independence
- Due care

Threats to Independence (Ref: par. .13)

.A5 The engagement team may identify a threat to independence regarding the audit engagement that safeguards may not be able to eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level. In that case, as required by paragraph .13c, the engagement partner reports to the relevant person(s) within the firm to determine appropriate action, which may include eliminating the activity or interest that creates the threat or withdrawing from the audit engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A6 Law or regulation may provide safeguards for the independence of governmental audit organizations and the auditors employed by them. However, in the absence of law or regulation, governmental audit organizations may establish supplemental safeguards to assist the auditor or audit organization in maintaining independence. Additionally, when law or regulation does not permit withdrawal from the engagement, the auditor may disclose in the auditor's report the circumstances affecting the auditor's independence.

Acceptance and Continuance of Client Relationships and Audit Engagements (Ref: par. .14)

.A7 SQCS No. 8 requires the firm to obtain information considered necessary in the circumstances before accepting an engagement with a new client, when deciding whether to continue an existing engagement, and when considering acceptance of a new engagement with an existing

client.⁷ Information such as the following assists the engagement partner in determining whether the conclusions reached regarding the acceptance and continuance of client relationships and audit engagements are appropriate:

- The integrity of the principal owners, key management, and those charged with governance of the entity
- Whether the engagement team is competent to perform the audit engagement and has the necessary capabilities, including time and resources
- Whether the firm and the engagement team can comply with relevant ethical requirements
- Significant findings or issues that have arisen during the current or previous audit engagement and their implications for continuing the relationship

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .14–.15)

.A8 For some governmental entities, auditors may be appointed in accordance with law or regulation, and the auditor may not be permitted to decline or withdraw from the engagement. Accordingly, certain of the requirements and considerations regarding the acceptance and continuance of client relationships and audit engagements as set out in paragraphs .14–.15 and .A7 may not be relevant. Nonetheless, information gathered as a result of the process described may be valuable in planning the audit, performing risk assessments, and carrying out reporting responsibilities.

Assignment of Engagement Teams (Ref: par. .16)

.A9 A person with expertise in a specialized area of accounting or auditing is a member of the engagement team if that person performs audit procedures on the engagement. This applies whether that person is an employee of the firm or a nonemployee engaged by the firm. However, a person with such expertise is not a member of the engagement team if that person's involvement with the engagement is only consultation. Consultations are addressed in paragraphs .20 and .A20–.A22.

.A10 When considering the appropriate competence and capabilities expected of the engagement team as a whole, the engagement partner may take into consideration such matters as the team's

- understanding of, and practical experience with, audit engagements of a similar nature and complexity through appropriate training and participation.
- understanding of professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.
- technical expertise, including expertise with relevant IT and specialized areas of accounting or auditing.
- knowledge of relevant industries in which the entity operates.
- ability to apply professional judgment.
- understanding of the firm's quality control policies and procedures.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .16)

.A11 For audits of governmental entities, competence may include skills that are necessary to comply with applicable law or regulation. Such competence may include knowledge of *Government Auditing Standards* and an understanding of the applicable reporting requirements, including reporting to the legislature or other governing body or in the public interest. The scope of a governmental audit may include, for example, additional requirements with respect to detecting misstatements that result from violations of provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts or the need to examine and report on internal control over financial reporting or compliance.

⁷ Paragraph 27 of SQCS No. 8.

78 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Engagement Performance*****Direction, Supervision, and Performance (Ref: par. .17a)***

.A12 Direction of the engagement team involves informing the members of the engagement team of matters such as the following:

- Their responsibilities, including the need to comply with relevant ethical requirements and to plan and perform an audit with professional skepticism as required by section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*⁸
- Responsibilities of respective partners when more than one partner is involved in the conduct of an audit engagement
- The objectives of the work to be performed
- The nature of the entity's business
- Risk-related issues
- Problems that may arise
- The detailed approach to the performance of the engagement

Discussion among members of the engagement team allows team members to raise questions so that appropriate communication can occur within the engagement team.

.A13 Appropriate teamwork and training assist members of the engagement team to clearly understand the objectives of the assigned work.

.A14 Supervision includes matters such as the following:

- Tracking the progress of the audit engagement
- Considering the competence and capabilities of individual members of the engagement team, including whether they have sufficient time to carry out their work, they understand their instructions, and the work is being carried out in accordance with the planned approach to the audit engagement
- Addressing significant findings or issues arising during the audit engagement, considering their significance, and modifying the planned approach appropriately
- Identifying matters for consultation or consideration by qualified engagement team members during the audit engagement

Review***Review Responsibilities (Ref: par. .18)***

.A15 Under SQCS No. 8, the firm's review responsibility policies and procedures are determined on the basis that suitably experienced team members review the work of other team members.⁹ The engagement partner may delegate part of the review responsibility to other members of the engagement team, in accordance with the firm's system of quality control.

.A16 A review consists of consideration of whether, for example

- the work has been performed in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
- significant findings or issues have been raised for further consideration;
- appropriate consultations have taken place and the resulting conclusions have been documented and implemented;
- the nature, timing, and extent of the work performed is appropriate and without need for revision;
- the work performed supports the conclusions reached and is appropriately documented;
- the evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate to support the auditor's report; and
- the objectives of the engagement procedures have been achieved.

⁸ Paragraphs .14–.15 of section 200.

⁹ Paragraph 36 of SQCS No. 8.

The Engagement Partner's Review of the Work Performed (Ref: par. .19)

.A17 Timely reviews of the following by the engagement partner at appropriate stages during the engagement allow significant findings or issues to be resolved on a timely basis to the engagement partner's satisfaction on or before the date of the auditor's report:

- Critical areas of judgment, especially those relating to difficult or contentious matters identified during the course of the engagement
- Significant risks
- Other areas that the engagement partner considers important

The engagement partner need not review all audit documentation but may do so. However, as required by section 230, *Audit Documentation*, the partner documents the extent and timing of the reviews.¹⁰

.A18 An engagement partner taking over an audit during the engagement may apply the review procedures as described in paragraph .A17 to review the work performed to the date of the change in order to assume the responsibilities of an engagement partner.

Considerations Relevant When a Member of the Engagement Team With Expertise in a Specialized Area of Accounting or Auditing Is Used (Ref: par. .17–.19)

.A19 When the engagement team includes a member with expertise in a specialized area of accounting or auditing, direction, supervision, and review of that engagement team member's work is the same as for any other engagement team member and may include matters such as the following:

- Agreeing with that member upon the nature, scope, and objectives of that member's work and the respective roles of, and the nature, timing, and extent of communication between, that member and other members of the engagement team
- Evaluating the adequacy of that member's work, including the relevance and reasonableness of that member's findings or conclusions and the consistency of those findings or conclusions with other audit evidence

Consultation (Ref: par. .20)

.A20 Members of the engagement team have a professional responsibility to bring to the attention of appropriate personnel matters that, in their professional judgment, are difficult or contentious and may require consultation.

.A21 Effective consultation on significant technical, ethical, and other matters within the firm or, when applicable, outside the firm can be achieved when those consulted

- are given all the relevant facts that will enable them to provide informed advice and
- have appropriate knowledge, authority, and experience.

.A22 The engagement team may consult outside the firm (for example, when the firm lacks appropriate internal resources). The engagement team may take advantage of advisory services provided by other firms, professional and regulatory bodies, or commercial organizations that provide relevant quality control services.

Engagement Quality Control Review***Completion of the Engagement Quality Control Review Before Releasing the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .21c)***

.A23 Conducting the engagement quality control review in a timely manner at appropriate stages during the engagement allows significant findings or issues to be promptly resolved to the engagement quality control reviewer's satisfaction.

¹⁰ Paragraph .09c of section 230.

80 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A24 *Completion of the engagement quality control review* means the completion by the engagement quality control reviewer of the requirements in paragraph .22 and, when applicable, compliance with paragraph .23. Documentation of the engagement quality control review may be completed after the report release date as part of the assembly of the final audit file. Section 230 establishes requirements and provides guidance in this regard.¹¹

.A25 When the engagement quality control review is completed after the auditor's report is dated and identifies instances where additional procedures or additional evidence is necessary, the date of the report is changed to the date when the additional procedures have been satisfactorily completed or the additional evidence has been obtained, in accordance with section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

Nature, Timing, and Extent of Engagement Quality Control Review (Ref: par. .22)

.A26 By remaining alert for changes in circumstances, the engagement partner is able to identify situations in which an engagement quality control review is necessary, even though at the start of the engagement such a review was not required.

.A27 The extent of the engagement quality control review may depend, among other things, on the complexity of the audit engagement and the risk that the auditor's report might not be appropriate in the circumstances. The performance of an engagement quality control review does not reduce the responsibilities of the engagement partner for the audit engagement and its performance.

.A28 Matters relevant to evaluating the significant judgments made by the engagement team that may be considered in an engagement quality control review include the following:

- Significant risks identified during the engagement in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and the responses to those risks in accordance with section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, including the engagement team's assessment of, and response to, the risk of fraud in accordance with section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*
- Judgments made, particularly with respect to materiality and significant risks
- The significance and disposition of corrected and uncorrected misstatements identified during the audit
- The matters to be communicated to management and those charged with governance and, when applicable, other parties, such as regulatory bodies

.A29 The engagement quality control reviewer may also consider the following:

- The evaluation of the firm's independence with regard to the audit engagement
- Whether appropriate consultation has taken place on matters involving differences of opinion or other difficult or contentious matters and the related conclusions arising from those consultations
- Whether audit documentation selected for review reflects the work performed regarding the significant judgments and supports the conclusions reached

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities (Ref: par. .21–.22)

.A30 An engagement quality control review is required for audit engagements that meet the criteria established by the firm that subjects engagements to an engagement quality control review. In some cases, none of the firm's audit engagements may meet the criteria that would subject them to such a review.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .22)

.A31 A statutorily appointed auditor (for example, an auditor general or other suitably qualified person within the audit organization acting on behalf of the auditor general) may act in a role

¹¹ Paragraphs .15–.18 and .A24–.A29 of section 230.

equivalent to that of engagement partner with overall responsibility for the governmental audit. In such circumstances, when applicable, the selection of the engagement quality control reviewer includes consideration of the need for independence from the audited entity and the ability of the engagement quality control reviewer to provide an objective evaluation.

Monitoring (Ref: par. .24)

.A32 SQCS No. 8 requires the firm to establish a monitoring process designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that the policies and procedures relating to the system of quality control are relevant, adequate, and operating effectively.¹²

.A33 In considering deficiencies that may affect the audit engagement, the engagement partner may consider measures the firm took to rectify the situation that the engagement partner considers sufficient in the context of that audit.

.A34 A deficiency in the firm's system of quality control does not necessarily indicate that a particular audit engagement was not performed in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements or that the auditor's report was not appropriate.

Documentation (Ref: par. .25)

.A35 Section 230 addresses the auditor's responsibility to prepare audit documentation for an audit of financial statements. Section 230 also states that it is neither necessary nor practicable for the auditor to document every matter considered, or professional judgment made, in an audit.¹³

.A36 Documentation of consultations with other professionals involving difficult or contentious matters that is sufficiently complete and detailed contributes to an understanding of

- the issue on which consultation was sought and
- the results of the consultation, including any decisions made, the basis for those decisions, and how they were implemented.

¹² Paragraph 52 of SQCS No. 8.

¹³ Paragraph .A9 of section 230.

.A37**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and International Standard on Auditing 220, *Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 220, *Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraph 21 of ISA 220 contains requirements relating to audits of listed entities. Such requirements are not applicable to audits of nonissuers in the United States and, accordingly, such requirements are not included in GAAS.

Differences Between Requirements

Paragraph .21 of section 220 requires that when an engagement quality control review is performed, the engagement quality control review be completed before the engagement partner releases the auditor's report. Paragraph 19 of ISA 220 requires that the quality control review be completed before the engagement partner dates the auditor's report. The ASB believes that an engagement quality control review is an independent review of the engagement team's significant judgments, including the date selected by the engagement team to date the report. As noted in the application material to section 220, when the engagement quality control review results in additional procedures being performed, the date of the report would be changed.

AU-C Section 230*

Audit Documentation

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to prepare audit documentation for an audit of financial statements. Exhibit A, "Audit Documentation Requirements in Other AU-C Sections," lists other AU-C sections that contain specific documentation requirements and guidance. The specific documentation requirements of other AU-C sections do not limit the application of this section. Law, regulation, or other standards may establish additional documentation requirements.

Nature and Purposes of Audit Documentation

.02 Audit documentation that meets the requirements of this section and the specific documentation requirements of other relevant AU-C sections provides

- a. evidence of the auditor's basis for a conclusion about the achievement of the overall objectives of the auditor;¹ and
- b. evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

.03 Audit documentation serves a number of additional purposes, including the following:

- Assisting the engagement team to plan and perform the audit
- Assisting members of the engagement team responsible for supervision to direct and supervise the audit work and to discharge their review responsibilities in accordance with section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*²
- Enabling the engagement team to demonstrate that it is accountable for its work by documenting the procedures performed, the audit evidence examined, and the conclusions reached
- Retaining a record of matters of continuing significance to future audits of the same entity
- Enabling the conduct of quality control reviews and inspections in accordance with Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10)
- Enabling the conduct of external inspections or peer reviews in accordance with applicable legal, regulatory, or other requirements
- Assisting an auditor who reviews a predecessor auditor's audit documentation
- Assisting auditors to understand the work performed in the prior year as an aid in planning and performing the current engagement

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .11 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

² Paragraphs .17–.19 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

84 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Effective Date**

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.05 The objective of the auditor is to prepare documentation that provides

- a.* a sufficient and appropriate record of the basis for the auditor's report; and
- b.* evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with GAAS and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Audit documentation. The record of audit procedures performed, relevant audit evidence obtained, and conclusions the auditor reached (terms such as *working papers* or *workpapers* are also sometimes used).

Audit file. One or more folders or other storage media, in physical or electronic form, containing the records that constitute the audit documentation for a specific engagement.

Documentation completion date. The date, no later than 60 days following the report release date, on which the auditor has assembled for retention a complete and final set of documentation in an audit file.

Experienced auditor. An individual (whether internal or external to the firm) who has practical audit experience, and a reasonable understanding of (Ref: par. .A1)

- (1) audit processes;
- (2) GAAS and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
- (3) the business environment in which the entity operates; and
- (4) auditing and financial reporting issues relevant to the entity's industry.

Report release date. The date the auditor grants the entity permission to use the auditor's report in connection with the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A2)

Requirements**Timely Preparation of Audit Documentation**

.07 The auditor should prepare audit documentation on a timely basis. (Ref: par. .A3)

Documentation of the Audit Procedures Performed and Audit Evidence Obtained**Form, Content, and Extent of Audit Documentation**

.08 The auditor should prepare audit documentation that is sufficient to enable an experienced auditor, having no previous connection with the audit, to understand (Ref: par. .A4–.A7 and .A19–.A20)

- a.* the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures performed to comply with GAAS and applicable legal and regulatory requirements; (Ref: par. .A8–.A9)
- b.* the results of the audit procedures performed, and the audit evidence obtained; and
- c.* significant findings or issues arising during the audit, the conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgments made in reaching those conclusions. (Ref: par. .A10–.A13)

.09 In documenting the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures performed, the auditor should record

- a.* the identifying characteristics of the specific items or matters tested; (Ref: par. .A14)
- b.* who performed the audit work and the date such work was completed; and

- c. who reviewed the audit work performed and the date and extent of such review. (Ref: par. .A15)

.10 For audit procedures related to the inspection of significant contracts or agreements, the auditor should include abstracts or copies of those contracts or agreements in the audit documentation.

.11 The auditor should document discussions of significant findings or issues with management, those charged with governance, and others, including the nature of the significant findings or issues discussed, and when and with whom the discussions took place. (Ref: par. .A16)

.12 If the auditor identified information that is inconsistent with the auditor's final conclusion regarding a significant finding or issue, the auditor should document how the auditor addressed the inconsistency. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

Departure From a Relevant Requirement

.13 If, in rare circumstances, the auditor judges it necessary to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement,³ the auditor must document the justification for the departure and how the alternative audit procedures performed in the circumstances were sufficient to achieve the intent of that requirement. (Ref: par. .A21–.A22)

Matters Arising After the Date of the Auditor's Report

.14 If, in rare circumstances, the auditor performs new or additional audit procedures or draws new conclusions after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor should document (Ref: par. .A23)

- a. the circumstances encountered;
- b. the new or additional audit procedures performed, audit evidence obtained, and conclusions reached, and their effect on the auditor's report; and
- c. when and by whom the resulting changes to audit documentation were made and reviewed.

Assembly and Retention of the Final Audit File

.15 The auditor should document the report release date in the audit documentation.

.16 The auditor should assemble the audit documentation in an audit file and complete the administrative process of assembling the final audit file on a timely basis, no later than 60 days following the report release date. (Ref: par. .A24–.A26)

.17 After the documentation completion date, the auditor should not delete or discard audit documentation of any nature before the end of the specified retention period. Such retention period, however, should not be shorter than five years from the report release date. (Ref: par. .A27–.A29)

.18 In circumstances other than those addressed in paragraph .14 in which the auditor finds it necessary to modify existing audit documentation or add new audit documentation after the documentation completion date, the auditor should, regardless of the nature of the modifications or additions, document (Ref: par. .A28)

- a. the specific reasons for making the changes; and
- b. when and by whom they were made and reviewed.

³ Paragraph .24 of section 200.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions (Ref: par. .06)

Experienced Auditor

.A1 Having practical audit experience means possessing the competencies and skills that would have enabled the auditor to perform the audit but does not mean that the auditor is required to have performed comparable audits.

Report Release Date

.A2 In many cases, the report release date will be the date the auditor delivers the audit report to the entity. When there are delays in releasing the report, a fact may become known to the auditor that, had it been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report. Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities in such circumstances, and paragraph .14 addresses the documentation requirements in the rare circumstances in which the auditor performs new or additional audit procedures or draws new conclusions after the date of the auditor's report.

Timely Preparation of Audit Documentation (Ref: par. .07)

.A3 Preparing sufficient and appropriate audit documentation on a timely basis throughout the audit helps to enhance the quality of the audit and facilitates the effective review and evaluation of the audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached before the auditor's report is finalized. Documentation prepared at the time such work is performed or shortly thereafter is likely to be more accurate than documentation prepared at a much later time.

Documentation of the Audit Procedures Performed and Audit Evidence Obtained

Form, Content, and Extent of Audit Documentation (Ref: par. .08)

.A4 The form, content, and extent of audit documentation depend on factors such as

- the size and complexity of the entity.
- the nature of the audit procedures to be performed.
- the identified risks of material misstatement.
- the significance of the audit evidence obtained.
- the nature and extent of exceptions identified.
- the need to document a conclusion or the basis for a conclusion not readily determinable from the documentation of the work performed or audit evidence obtained.
- the audit methodology and tools used.
- the extent of judgment involved in performing the work and evaluating the results.

.A5 Audit documentation may be recorded on paper or on electronic or other media. SQCS No. 8 addresses a firm's responsibility to establish procedures designed to maintain the integrity, accessibility, and retrievability of documentation; for example, when original paper documentation is electronically scanned or otherwise copied to another media for inclusion in the audit file.⁴ Examples of audit documentation include the following:

- Audit plans⁵
- Analyses
- Issues memorandums
- Summaries of significant findings or issues
- Letters of confirmation and representation
- Checklists
- Correspondence (including e-mail) concerning significant findings or issues

⁴ Paragraph A58 of Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).

⁵ Paragraphs .07–.11 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*.

.A6 The auditor need not include in audit documentation superseded drafts of working papers and financial statements, notes that reflect incomplete or preliminary thinking, previous copies of documents corrected for typographical or other errors, and duplicates of documents.

.A7 On their own, oral explanations by the auditor do not represent adequate support for the work the auditor performed or conclusions the auditor reached, but may be used to explain or clarify information contained in the audit documentation.

Documentation of Compliance With GAAS (Ref: par. .08a)

.A8 In principle, compliance with the requirements of this section will result in the audit documentation being sufficient and appropriate in the circumstances. Other AU-C sections contain specific documentation requirements that are intended to clarify the application of this section in the particular circumstances of those other AU-C sections. The specific documentation requirements of other AU-C sections do not limit the application of this section. Furthermore, the absence of a documentation requirement in any particular AU-C section is not intended to suggest that there is no documentation that will be prepared as a result of complying with that AU-C section.

.A9 Audit documentation provides evidence that the audit complies with GAAS. However, it is neither necessary nor practicable for the auditor to document every matter considered, or professional judgment made, in an audit. Further, it is unnecessary for the auditor to document separately (as in a checklist, for example) compliance with matters for which compliance is demonstrated by documents included within the audit file. For example:

- The existence of an adequately documented audit plan demonstrates that the auditor has planned the audit.
- The existence of a signed engagement letter in the audit file demonstrates that the auditor has agreed to the terms of the audit engagement with management or, when appropriate, those charged with governance.
- An auditor's report containing an appropriately qualified opinion on the financial statements demonstrates that the auditor has complied with the requirement to express a qualified opinion under the circumstances in accordance with GAAS.
- Regarding requirements that apply generally throughout the audit, there may be a number of ways in which compliance with them may be demonstrated within the audit file:
 - For example, there may be no single way in which the auditor's professional skepticism is documented. But the audit documentation may nevertheless provide evidence of the auditor's exercise of professional skepticism in accordance with GAAS. Such evidence may include specific procedures performed to corroborate management's responses to the auditor's inquiries.
 - Similarly, that the engagement partner has taken responsibility for the direction, supervision, and performance of the audit in compliance with GAAS may be evidenced in a number of ways within the audit documentation. This may include documentation of the engagement partner's timely involvement in aspects of the audit, such as participation in the team discussions required by section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.⁶

Documentation of Significant Findings or Issues and Related Significant Professional Judgments (Ref: par. .08c)

.A10 Judging the significance of a finding or issue requires an objective analysis of the facts and circumstances. Examples of significant findings or issues include

- matters involving the selection, application, and consistency of significant accounting practices, including related disclosures. Such matters include, but are not limited to (a)

⁶ Paragraph .33 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

88 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

accounting for complex or unusual transactions or (b) accounting estimates and uncertainties and, if applicable, the related management assumptions.

- matters that give rise to significant risks (as defined in section 315).⁷
- results of audit procedures (including identification of corrected and uncorrected misstatements)⁸ indicating (a) that the financial statements could be materially misstated or (b) a need to revise the auditor's previous assessment of the risks of material misstatement and the auditor's responses to those risks.
- circumstances that cause the auditor significant difficulty in applying necessary audit procedures.
- findings that could result in a modification to the audit opinion or the inclusion of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report.

.A11 An important factor in determining the form, content, and extent of audit documentation of significant findings or issues is the extent of professional judgment exercised in performing the work and evaluating the results. Documentation of the professional judgments made, when significant, serves to explain the auditor's conclusions and to reinforce the quality of the judgment. Such findings or issues are of particular interest to those responsible for reviewing audit documentation, including those carrying out subsequent audits when reviewing items of continuing significance (for example, when performing a retrospective review of accounting estimates).

.A12 Some examples of circumstances in which, in accordance with paragraph .08, it is appropriate to prepare audit documentation relating to the exercise of professional judgment include, when the findings, issues, and judgments are significant,

- the rationale for the auditor's conclusion when a requirement provides that the auditor *should consider* certain information or factors, and that consideration is significant in the context of the particular engagement.
- the basis for the auditor's conclusion on the reasonableness of areas of subjective judgments (for example, the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates).
- the basis for the auditor's conclusions about the authenticity of a document when further investigation (such as making appropriate use of a specialist or of confirmation procedures) is undertaken in response to conditions identified during the audit that caused the auditor to believe that the document may not be authentic.

.A13 The auditor may consider it helpful to prepare and retain as part of the audit documentation a summary (sometimes known as a completion memorandum) that describes the significant findings or issues identified during the audit and how they were addressed, or that includes cross-references to other relevant supporting audit documentation that provides such information. Such a summary may facilitate effective and efficient reviews and inspections of the audit documentation, particularly for large and complex audits. Further, the preparation of such a summary may assist the auditor's consideration of the significant findings or issues. It may also help the auditor to consider whether, in light of the audit procedures performed and conclusions reached, there is any individual relevant AU-C section objective that the auditor cannot achieve that would prevent the auditor from achieving the overall objectives of the auditor.

Identification of Specific Items or Matters Tested and of the Preparer and the Reviewer (Ref: par. .09)

.A14 Recording the identifying characteristics serves a number of purposes. For example, it improves the ability of the auditor to supervise and review the work performed and thus demonstrates the accountability of the engagement team for its work and facilitates the investigation of exceptions or inconsistencies. Identifying characteristics will vary with the nature of the audit procedure and the item or matter tested. For example:

⁷ Paragraphs .28–.30 of section 315.

⁸ See section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

- For a detailed test of entity-generated purchase orders, the auditor may identify the documents selected for testing by their dates and unique purchase order numbers.
- For a procedure requiring selection or review of all items over a specific amount from a given population, the auditor may record the scope of the procedure and identify the population (for example, all journal entries over a specified amount from the journal register for the period being audited).
- For a procedure requiring systematic sampling from a population of documents, the auditor may identify the documents selected by recording their source, the starting point, and the sampling interval (for example, a systematic sample of shipping reports selected from the shipping log for the period from April 1 to September 30, starting with report number 12345 and selecting every 125th report).
- For a procedure requiring inquiries of specific entity personnel, the auditor may record the inquiries made, the dates of the inquiries, and the names and job designations of the entity personnel.
- For an observation procedure, the auditor may record the process or matter being observed, the relevant individuals, their respective responsibilities, and where and when the observation was carried out.

.A15 Section 220 requires the auditor to review the audit work performed through review of the audit documentation.⁹ The requirement to document who reviewed the audit work performed and the extent of the review, in accordance with the firm's policies and procedures addressing review responsibilities, does not imply a need for each specific working paper to include evidence of review. The requirement, however, means documenting what audit work was reviewed, who reviewed such work, and when it was reviewed.

Documentation of Discussions of Significant Findings or Issues With Management, Those Charged With Governance, and Others (Ref: par. .11)

.A16 The audit documentation is not limited to documents prepared by the auditor but may include other appropriate documents such as minutes of meetings prepared by the entity's personnel and recognized by the auditor as an appropriate summary of the meeting. Others with whom the auditor may discuss significant findings or issues may include other personnel within the entity, and external parties, such as persons providing professional advice to the entity.

Documentation of How Inconsistencies Have Been Addressed (Ref: par. .12)

.A17 The requirement to document how the auditor addressed inconsistencies in information does not imply that the auditor needs to retain documentation that is incorrect or superseded.

.A18 The documentation of the inconsistency may include, but is not limited to, procedures performed in response to the information, and documentation of consultations on, or resolutions of, differences in professional judgment among members of the engagement team or between the engagement team and others consulted.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities (Ref: par. .08)

.A19 The audit documentation for the audit of a smaller, less complex entity is generally less extensive than that for the audit of a larger, more complex entity. Further, in the case of an audit in which the engagement partner performs all the audit work, the documentation will not include matters that might have to be documented solely to inform or instruct members of an engagement team, or to provide evidence of review by other members of the team (for example, there will be no matters to document relating to team discussions or supervision). Nevertheless, the engagement partner complies with the overriding requirement in paragraph .08 to prepare audit documentation that can be understood by an experienced auditor, as the audit documentation may be subject to review by external parties for regulatory or other purposes.

⁹ Paragraph .19 of section 220.

90 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A20 When preparing audit documentation, the auditor of a smaller, less complex entity may also find it helpful and efficient to record various aspects of the audit together in a single document, with cross-references to supporting working papers as appropriate. Examples of matters that may be documented together in the audit of a smaller, less complex entity include the understanding of the entity and its internal control; the overall audit strategy and audit plan; materiality; assessed risks, significant findings or issues noted during the audit; and conclusions reached.

Departure From a Relevant Requirement (Ref: par. .13)

.A21 The requirements of GAAS are designed to enable the auditor to achieve the objectives specified in GAAS, and thereby the overall objectives of the auditor. Accordingly, other than in rare circumstances, GAAS call for compliance with each requirement that is relevant in the circumstances of the audit.

.A22 The documentation requirement applies only to requirements that are relevant in the circumstances. A requirement is not relevant¹⁰ only in the cases in which

- a. the AU-C section is not relevant (for example, if an entity does not have an internal audit function, nothing in section 610, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] is relevant); or
- b. the requirement is conditional and the condition does not exist (for example, the requirement to modify the auditor's opinion when there is an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, and there is no such inability).

Matters Arising After the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .14)

.A23 Examples of rare circumstances in which the auditor performs new or additional audit procedures or draws new conclusions after the date of the auditor's report include

- when, after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor becomes aware of facts that existed at that date and which, if known at that date, might have caused the financial statements to be revised or the auditor to modify the opinion in the auditor's report.¹¹
- when the auditor concludes that procedures necessary at the time of the audit, in the circumstances then existing, were omitted from the audit of the financial information.¹²

The resulting changes to the audit documentation are reviewed in accordance with the firm's quality control procedures as required by SQCS No. 8.

Assembly and Retention of the Final Audit File (Ref: par. .16–.18)

.A24 Statutes, regulations, or the audit firm's quality control policies may specify a period of time shorter than 60 days following the report release date in which this assembly process is to be completed.

.A25 Certain matters, such as auditor independence and staff training, which are not engagement specific, may be documented either centrally within a firm or in the audit documentation for an audit engagement.

¹⁰ Paragraph .22 of section 200.

[†] SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 65 has been included in section 610 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹¹ Paragraphs .12 and .15 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

¹² Paragraph .07 of section 585, *Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date*.

.A26 The completion of the assembly of the final audit file after the date of the auditor's report is an administrative process that does not involve the performance of new audit procedures or the drawing of new conclusions. Changes may, however, be made to the audit documentation during the final assembly process if they are administrative in nature. Examples of such changes include

- deleting or discarding superseded documentation.
- sorting, collating, and cross-referencing working papers.
- signing off on completion checklists relating to the file assembly process.
- documenting audit evidence that the auditor has obtained, discussed, and agreed with the relevant members of the engagement team before the date of the auditor's report.
- adding information received after the date of the auditor's report; for example, an original confirmation that was previously faxed.

.A27 Firms are required to establish policies and procedures for the retention of engagement documentation.¹³ Statutes, regulations, or the audit firm's quality control policies may specify a retention period longer than five years.

.A28 An example of a circumstance in which the auditor may find it necessary to modify existing audit documentation or add new audit documentation after the documentation completion date is the need to clarify existing audit documentation arising from comments received during monitoring inspections performed by internal or external parties.

.A29 Audit documentation is the property of the auditor, and some states recognize this right of ownership in their statutes. The auditor may make available to the entity at the auditor's discretion copies of the audit documentation, provided such disclosure does not undermine the effectiveness and integrity of the audit process.

¹³ Paragraph 50 of SQCS No. 8.

92 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**.A30****Exhibit A—Audit Documentation Requirements in Other AU-C Sections**

The following lists the main paragraphs in other AU-C sections that contain specific documentation requirements. This list is not a substitute for knowledge of the AU-C sections:

- a. Paragraphs .10, .13, and .16 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*
- b. Paragraphs .25–.26 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*
- c. Paragraphs .43–.46 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*
- d. Paragraph .28 of section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*
- e. Paragraph .20 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*
- f. Paragraph .12 of section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*
- g. Paragraph .14 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*
- h. Paragraph .33 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*
- i. Paragraph .14 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*
- j. Paragraphs .30–.33 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*
- k. Paragraph .12 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*
- l. Paragraph .20 of section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*
- m. Paragraph .08 of section 520, *Analytical Procedures*
- n. Paragraph .22 of section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*
- o. Paragraph .28 of section 550, *Related Parties*
- p. Paragraph .18 of section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (AICPA, Professional Standards)**
- q. Paragraphs .49 and .64 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*
- r. Paragraph .13 of section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*
- s. Paragraphs .42–.43 of section 930, *Interim Financial Information*
- t. Paragraphs .39–.42 of section 935, *Compliance Audits (AICPA, Professional Standards)*

* SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

.A31

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 230, *Audit Documentation*, and International Standard on Auditing 230, *Audit Documentation*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 230, *Audit Documentation*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 230, *Audit Documentation*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph .10 of section 230 requires the auditor to include abstracts or copies of significant contracts or agreements in documentation of auditing procedures related to inspection of those significant contracts or agreements. ISA 230 does not require the auditor to include abstracts or copies of the entity's records. Paragraph A3 of ISA 230 (which is application material relating to the requirement in paragraph 8 of ISA 230, which corresponds to paragraph .08 of section 230) states, "the auditor may include abstracts or copies of the entity's records (for example, significant and specific contracts and agreements) as part of audit documentation."

When performing auditing procedures related to inspection of significant contracts or agreements, the ASB believes that, in the context of the preparation of audit documentation that is sufficient to enable an experienced auditor to understand the audit evidence obtained, it is important to include abstracts or copies of such contracts or agreements. Further, the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) include a requirement that documentation of auditing procedures related to the inspection of significant contracts or agreements should include abstracts or copies of the documents.¹ The ASB does not want to create a difference with PCAOB standards in this regard.

Differences Between Requirements

Paragraph 14 of ISA 230 requires the auditor to assemble the audit documentation in an audit file and complete the administrative process of assembling the final audit file on a timely basis after the date of the auditor's report, and the related application and other explanatory material indicates that an appropriate time limit within which to complete the assembly of the final audit file is ordinarily not more than 60 days after the date of the auditor's report. Paragraph .16 of section 230 requires the auditor to assemble the audit documentation in an audit file and complete the administrative process of assembling the final audit file on a timely basis, no later than 60 days following the report release date. The auditor is required by paragraph .15 of section 230 to document the report release date in the audit documentation.

Paragraph 15 of ISA 230 requires that after the assembly of the final audit file has been completed, the auditor not delete or discard audit documentation of any nature before the end of its retention period. Paragraph A23 of ISA 230 states, "the retention period for audit engagements is ordinarily no shorter than five years from the date of the auditor's report, or, if later, the date of the group auditor's report." Paragraph .17 of section 230 requires that after the documentation

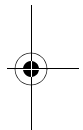
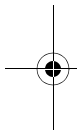
¹ Paragraph 10 of PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 3, *Audit Documentation* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules*, Auditing Standards).



94 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

completion date, the auditor not delete or discard audit documentation before the end of the specified retention period, and goes on to state that “such retention period, however, should not be shorter than five years from the report release date.”

The ASB believes that it is appropriate to be consistent with the standards of the PCAOB in relation to the date from which the documentation completion and retention periods are measured.² Notwithstanding that the documentation completion period is measured from the same date in GAAS and in the PCAOB standard, the ASB continues to believe that a 60-day period is appropriate for GAAS as opposed to the 45-day period in the PCAOB standard.



² Paragraphs 14–15 of PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 3.



AU-C Section 240*

Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to fraud in an audit of financial statements. Specifically, it expands on how section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, are to be applied regarding risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

Characteristics of Fraud

.02 Misstatements in the financial statements can arise from either fraud or error. The distinguishing factor between fraud and error is whether the underlying action that results in the misstatement of the financial statements is intentional or unintentional.

.03 Although fraud is a broad legal concept, for the purposes of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the auditor is primarily concerned with fraud that causes a material misstatement in the financial statements. Two types of intentional misstatements are relevant to the auditor—misstatements resulting from fraudulent financial reporting and misstatements resulting from misappropriation of assets. Although the auditor may suspect or, in rare cases, identify the occurrence of fraud, the auditor does not make legal determinations of whether fraud has actually occurred. (Ref: par. .A1–.A8)

Responsibility for the Prevention and Detection of Fraud

.04 The primary responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud rests with both those charged with governance of the entity and management. It is important that management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, places a strong emphasis on fraud prevention, which may reduce opportunities for fraud to take place, and fraud deterrence, which could persuade individuals not to commit fraud because of the likelihood of detection and punishment. This involves a commitment to creating a culture of honesty and ethical behavior, which can be reinforced by active oversight by those charged with governance. Oversight by those charged with governance includes considering the potential for override of controls or other inappropriate influence over the financial reporting process, such as efforts by management to manage earnings in order to influence the perceptions of financial statement users regarding the entity's performance and profitability.

Responsibilities of the Auditor

.05 An auditor conducting an audit in accordance with GAAS is responsible for obtaining reasonable assurance that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error. Due to the inherent limitations of an audit, an unavoidable risk exists that some material misstatements of the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with GAAS.¹

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraphs .A54–.A55 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

96 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.06 As described in section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, the potential effects of inherent limitations are particularly significant in the case of misstatement resulting from fraud.² The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than the risk of not detecting one resulting from error. This is because fraud may involve sophisticated and carefully organized schemes designed to conceal it, such as forgery, deliberate failure to record transactions, or intentional misrepresentations being made to the auditor. Such attempts at concealment may be even more difficult to detect when accompanied by collusion. Collusion may cause the auditor to believe that audit evidence is persuasive when it is, in fact, false. The auditor's ability to detect a fraud depends on factors such as the skillfulness of the perpetrator, the frequency and extent of manipulation, the degree of collusion involved, the relative size of individual amounts manipulated, and the seniority of those individuals involved. Although the auditor may be able to identify potential opportunities for fraud to be perpetrated, it is difficult for the auditor to determine whether misstatements in judgment areas, such as accounting estimates, are caused by fraud or error.

.07 Furthermore, the risk of the auditor not detecting a material misstatement resulting from management fraud is greater than for employee fraud because management is frequently in a position to directly or indirectly manipulate accounting records, present fraudulent financial information, or override control procedures designed to prevent similar frauds by other employees.

.08 When obtaining reasonable assurance, the auditor is responsible for maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit, considering the potential for management override of controls, and recognizing the fact that audit procedures that are effective for detecting error may not be effective in detecting fraud. The requirements in this section are designed to assist the auditor in identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and in designing procedures to detect such misstatement.

Effective Date

.09 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

- .10** The objectives of the auditor are to
- identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud;
 - obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud, through designing and implementing appropriate responses; and
 - respond appropriately to fraud or suspected fraud identified during the audit.

Definitions

- .11** For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Fraud. An intentional act by one or more individuals among management, those charged with governance, employees, or third parties, involving the use of deception that results in a misstatement in financial statements that are the subject of an audit.

Fraud risk factors. Events or conditions that indicate an incentive or pressure to perpetrate fraud, provide an opportunity to commit fraud, or indicate attitudes or rationalizations to justify a fraudulent action. (Ref: par. .A11, .A30, and .A56)

² Paragraph .A54 of section 200.

Requirements

Professional Skepticism

.12 In accordance with section 200, the auditor should maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit, recognizing the possibility that a material misstatement due to fraud could exist, notwithstanding the auditor's past experience of the honesty and integrity of the entity's management and those charged with governance.³ (Ref: par. .A9–.A10)

.13 Unless the auditor has reason to believe the contrary, the auditor may accept records and documents as genuine. If conditions identified during the audit cause the auditor to believe that a document may not be authentic or that terms in a document have been modified but not disclosed to the auditor, the auditor should investigate further. (Ref: par. .A11)

.14 When responses to inquiries of management, those charged with governance, or others are inconsistent or otherwise unsatisfactory (for example, vague or implausible), the auditor should further investigate the inconsistencies or unsatisfactory responses.

Discussion Among the Engagement Team

.15 Section 315 requires a discussion among the key engagement team members, including the engagement partner, and a determination by the engagement partner of which matters are to be communicated to those team members not involved in the discussion.⁴ This discussion should include an exchange of ideas or brainstorming among the engagement team members about how and where the entity's financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud, how management could perpetrate and conceal fraudulent financial reporting, and how assets of the entity could be misappropriated. The discussion should occur setting aside beliefs that the engagement team members may have that management and those charged with governance are honest and have integrity, and should, in particular, also address (Ref: par. .A12–.A13)

- a. known external and internal factors affecting the entity that may create an incentive or pressure for management or others to commit fraud, provide the opportunity for fraud to be perpetrated, and indicate a culture or environment that enables management or others to rationalize committing fraud;
- b. the risk of management override of controls;
- c. consideration of circumstances that might be indicative of earnings management or manipulation of other financial measures and the practices that might be followed by management to manage earnings or other financial measures that could lead to fraudulent financial reporting;
- d. the importance of maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit regarding the potential for material misstatement due to fraud; and
- e. how the auditor might respond to the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud.

Communication among the engagement team members about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud should continue throughout the audit, particularly upon discovery of new facts during the audit.

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities

.16 When performing risk assessment procedures and related activities to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, required by section 315, the auditor should perform the procedures in paragraphs .17–.24 to obtain information for use in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.⁵

³ Paragraph .15 of section 200.

⁴ Paragraph .11 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

⁵ Paragraphs .05–.25 of section 315.

Discussions With Management and Others Within the Entity

.17 The auditor should make inquiries of management regarding

- a. management's assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated due to fraud, including the nature, extent, and frequency of such assessments; (Ref: par. .A14–.A15)
- b. management's process for identifying, responding to, and monitoring the risks of fraud in the entity, including any specific risks of fraud that management has identified or that have been brought to its attention, or classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures for which a risk of fraud is likely to exist; (Ref: par. .A16)
- c. management's communication, if any, to those charged with governance regarding its processes for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the entity; and
- d. management's communication, if any, to employees regarding its views on business practices and ethical behavior.

.18 The auditor should make inquiries of management, and others within the entity as appropriate, to determine whether they have knowledge of any actual, suspected, or alleged fraud affecting the entity. (Ref: par. .A17–.A20)

.19 For those entities that have an internal audit function,⁶ the auditor should make inquiries of internal audit to obtain its views about the risks of fraud; determine whether it has knowledge of any actual, suspected, or alleged fraud affecting the entity; whether it has performed any procedures to identify or detect fraud during the year; and whether management has satisfactorily responded to any findings resulting from these procedures.

Those Charged With Governance

.20 Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity,⁷ the auditor should obtain an understanding of how those charged with governance exercise oversight of management's processes for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the entity and the internal control that management has established to mitigate these risks. (Ref: par. .A21–.A23)

.21 Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor should make inquiries of those charged with governance (or the audit committee or, at least, its chair) to determine their views about the risks of fraud and whether they have knowledge of any actual, suspected, or alleged fraud affecting the entity. These inquiries are made, in part, to corroborate the responses received from the inquiries of management.

Unusual or Unexpected Relationships Identified

.22 Based on analytical procedures performed as part of risk assessment procedures,⁸ the auditor should evaluate whether unusual or unexpected relationships that have been identified indicate risks of material misstatement due to fraud. To the extent not already included, the analytical procedures, and evaluation thereof, should include procedures relating to revenue accounts. (Ref: par. .A24–.A26 and .A46)

⁶ Section 610, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance in audits of those entities that have an internal audit function. SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 65 has been included in section 610 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁷ Paragraph .09 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

⁸ Paragraphs .06b and .A7–.A10 of section 315.

Other Information

.23 The auditor should consider whether other information obtained by the auditor indicates risks of material misstatement due to fraud. (Ref: par. .A27)

Evaluation of Fraud Risk Factors

.24 The auditor should evaluate whether the information obtained from the risk assessment procedures and related activities performed indicates that one or more fraud risk factors are present. Although fraud risk factors may not necessarily indicate the existence of fraud, they have often been present in circumstances in which frauds have occurred and, therefore, may indicate risks of material misstatement due to fraud. (Ref: par. .A28–.A32)

Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

.25 In accordance with section 315, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level, and at the assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures.⁹ The auditor's risk assessment should be ongoing throughout the audit, following the initial assessment.

.26 When identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor should, based on a presumption that risks of fraud exist in revenue recognition, evaluate which types of revenue, revenue transactions, or assertions give rise to such risks. Paragraph .46 specifies the documentation required when the auditor concludes that the presumption is not applicable in the circumstances of the engagement and, accordingly, has not identified revenue recognition as a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. (Ref: par. .A33–.A35)

.27 The auditor should treat those assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud as significant risks and, accordingly, to the extent not already done so, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the entity's related controls, including control activities, relevant to such risks, including the evaluation of whether such controls have been suitably designed and implemented to mitigate such fraud risks. (Ref: par. .A36–.A37)

Responses to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud**Overall Responses**

.28 In accordance with section 330, the auditor should determine overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level.¹⁰ (Ref: par. .A38)

.29 In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level, the auditor should

- a. assign and supervise personnel, taking into account the knowledge, skill, and ability of the individuals to be given significant engagement responsibilities and the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement; (Ref: par. .A39–.A40)
- b. evaluate whether the selection and application of accounting policies by the entity, particularly those related to subjective measurements and complex transactions, may be indicative of fraudulent financial reporting resulting from management's effort to manage earnings, or a bias that may create a material misstatement; and (Ref: par. .A41)
- c. incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures. (Ref: par. .A42)

⁹ Paragraph .26 of section 315.

¹⁰ Paragraph .05 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

Audit Procedures Responsive to Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud at the Assertion Level

.30 In accordance with section 330, the auditor should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level.¹¹ (Ref: par. .A43–.A46)

Audit Procedures Responsive to Risks Related to Management Override of Controls

.31 Management is in a unique position to perpetrate fraud because of management's ability to manipulate accounting records and prepare fraudulent financial statements by overriding controls that otherwise appear to be operating effectively. Although the level of risk of management override of controls will vary from entity to entity, the risk is, nevertheless, present in all entities. Due to the unpredictable way in which such override could occur, it is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud and, thus, a significant risk.

.32 Even if specific risks of material misstatement due to fraud are not identified by the auditor, a possibility exists that management override of controls could occur. Accordingly, the auditor should address the risk of management override of controls apart from any conclusions regarding the existence of more specifically identifiable risks by designing and performing audit procedures to

- a. test the appropriateness of journal entries recorded in the general ledger and other adjustments made in the preparation of the financial statements, including entries posted directly to financial statement drafts. In designing and performing audit procedures for such tests, the auditor should (Ref: par. .A47–.A50 and .A55)
 - i. obtain an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process and controls over journal entries and other adjustments,¹² and the suitability of design and implementation of such controls;
 - ii. make inquiries of individuals involved in the financial reporting process about inappropriate or unusual activity relating to the processing of journal entries and other adjustments;
 - iii. consider fraud risk indicators, the nature and complexity of accounts, and entries processed outside the normal course of business;
 - iv. select journal entries and other adjustments made at the end of a reporting period; and
 - v. consider the need to test journal entries and other adjustments throughout the period.
- b. review accounting estimates for biases and evaluate whether the circumstances producing the bias, if any, represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In performing this review, the auditor should
 - i. evaluate whether the judgments and decisions made by management in making the accounting estimates included in the financial statements, even if they are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management that may represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. If so, the auditor should reevaluate the accounting estimates taken as a whole, and
 - ii. perform a retrospective review of management judgments and assumptions related to significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior year. Estimates selected for review should include those that are based on highly sensitive assumptions or are otherwise significantly affected by judgments made by management. (Ref: par. .A51–.A53)
- c. evaluate, for significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual given the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and other information obtained during the audit, whether the business rationale (or the lack thereof) of the transactions suggests that they may have

¹¹ Paragraph .06 of section 330.

¹² Paragraph .19 of section 315.

been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets. (Ref: par. .A54)

Other Audit Procedures

.33 The auditor should determine whether, in order to respond to the identified risks of management override of controls, the auditor needs to perform other audit procedures in addition to those specifically referred to previously (that is, when specific additional risks of management override exist that are not covered as part of the procedures performed to address the requirements in paragraph .32). (Ref: par. .A55)

Evaluation of Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .A56)

.34 The auditor should evaluate, at or near the end of the audit, whether the accumulated results of auditing procedures (including analytical procedures that were performed as substantive tests or when forming an overall conclusion) affect the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud made earlier in the audit or indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement due to fraud. If not already performed when forming an overall conclusion, the analytical procedures relating to revenue, required by paragraph .22, should be performed through the end of the reporting period. (Ref: par. .A57–.A58)

.35 If the auditor identifies a misstatement, the auditor should evaluate whether such a misstatement is indicative of fraud. If such an indication exists, the auditor should evaluate the implications of the misstatement with regard to other aspects of the audit, particularly the auditor's evaluation of materiality, management and employee integrity, and the reliability of management representations, recognizing that an instance of fraud is unlikely to be an isolated occurrence. (Ref: par. .A59–.A62)

.36 If the auditor identifies a misstatement, whether material or not, and the auditor has reason to believe that it is, or may be, the result of fraud and that management (in particular, senior management) is involved, the auditor should reevaluate the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and its resulting effect on the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks. The auditor should also consider whether circumstances or conditions indicate possible collusion involving employees, management, or third parties when reconsidering the reliability of evidence previously obtained. (Ref: par. .A60)

.37 If the auditor concludes that, or is unable to conclude whether, the financial statements are materially misstated as a result of fraud, the auditor should evaluate the implications for the audit. (Ref: par. .A61)

Auditor Unable to Continue the Engagement

.38 If, as a result of identified fraud or suspected fraud, the auditor encounters circumstances that bring into question the auditor's ability to continue performing the audit, the auditor should

- a. determine the professional and legal responsibilities applicable in the circumstances, including whether a requirement exists for the auditor to report to the person or persons who engaged the auditor or, in some cases, to regulatory authorities;
- b. consider whether it is appropriate to withdraw from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation; and
- c. if the auditor withdraws
 - i. discuss with the appropriate level of management and those charged with governance the auditor's withdrawal from the engagement and the reasons for the withdrawal, and
 - ii. determine whether a professional or legal requirement exists to report to the person or persons who engaged the auditor or, in some cases, to regulatory authorities, the auditor's withdrawal from the engagement and the reasons for the withdrawal. (Ref: par. .A63–.A66)

102 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Communications to Management and With Those Charged With Governance**

.39 If the auditor has identified a fraud or has obtained information that indicates that a fraud may exist, the auditor should communicate these matters on a timely basis to the appropriate level of management in order to inform those with primary responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud of matters relevant to their responsibilities. (Ref: par. .A67)

.40 Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, if the auditor has identified or suspects fraud involving

- a. management,
- b. employees who have significant roles in internal control, or
- c. others, when the fraud results in a material misstatement in the financial statements,

the auditor should communicate these matters to those charged with governance on a timely basis. If the auditor suspects fraud involving management, the auditor should communicate these suspicions to those charged with governance and discuss with them the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures necessary to complete the audit. (Ref: par. .A68–.A70)

.41 The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance any other matters related to fraud that are, in the auditor's professional judgment, relevant to their responsibilities. (Ref: par. .A71)

Communications to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities

.42 If the auditor has identified or suspects a fraud, the auditor should determine whether the auditor has a responsibility to report the occurrence or suspicion to a party outside the entity. Although the auditor's professional duty to maintain the confidentiality of client information may preclude such reporting, the auditor's legal responsibilities may override the duty of confidentiality in some circumstances. (Ref: par. .A72–.A74)

Documentation

.43 The auditor should include in the audit documentation¹³ of the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and the assessment of the risks of material misstatement required by section 315 the following:¹⁴

- a. The significant decisions reached during the discussion among the engagement team regarding the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud, and how and when the discussion occurred and the audit team members who participated
- b. The identified and assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level and at the assertion level (See paragraphs .16–.27.)

.44 The auditor should include in the audit documentation of the auditor's responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement required by section 330 the following:¹⁵

- a. The overall responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level and the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures, and the linkage of those procedures with the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level
- b. The results of the audit procedures, including those designed to address the risk of management override of controls

.45 The auditor should include in the audit documentation communications about fraud made to management, those charged with governance, regulators, and others.

¹³ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

¹⁴ Paragraph .33 of section 315.

¹⁵ Paragraph .30 of section 330.

.46 If the auditor has concluded that the presumption that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud related to revenue recognition is overcome in the circumstances of the engagement, the auditor should include in the audit documentation the reasons for that conclusion.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Characteristics of Fraud (Ref: par. .03)

.A1 Fraud, whether fraudulent financial reporting or misappropriation of assets, involves incentive or pressure to commit fraud, a perceived opportunity to do so, and some rationalization of the act, as follows:

- Incentive or pressure to commit fraudulent financial reporting may exist when management is under pressure, from sources outside or inside the entity, to achieve an expected (and perhaps, unrealistic) earnings target or financial outcome—particularly because the consequences to management for failing to meet financial goals can be significant. Similarly, individuals may have an incentive to misappropriate assets (for example, because the individuals are living beyond their means).
- A perceived opportunity to commit fraud may exist when an individual believes internal control can be overridden (for example, because the individual is in a position of trust or has knowledge of specific deficiencies in internal control).
- Individuals may be able to rationalize committing a fraudulent act. Some individuals possess an attitude, character, or set of ethical values that allow them knowingly and intentionally to commit a dishonest act. However, even otherwise honest individuals can commit fraud in an environment that imposes sufficient pressure on them.

.A2 Fraudulent financial reporting involves intentional misstatements, including omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements to deceive financial statement users. It can be caused by the efforts of management to manage earnings in order to deceive financial statement users by influencing their perceptions about the entity's performance and profitability. Such earnings management may start out with small actions or inappropriate adjustment of assumptions and changes in judgments by management. Pressures and incentives may lead these actions to increase to the extent that they result in fraudulent financial reporting. Such a situation could occur when, due to pressures to meet expectations or a desire to maximize compensation based on performance, management intentionally takes positions that lead to fraudulent financial reporting by materially misstating the financial statements. In some entities, management may be motivated to reduce earnings by a material amount to minimize tax or to inflate earnings to secure bank financing.

.A3 An auditor conducting an audit in accordance with GAAS is responsible for obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error. Accordingly, the auditor is primarily concerned with fraud that causes a material misstatement of the financial statements. However, in conducting the audit, the auditor may identify misstatements arising from fraud that are not material to the financial statements. Paragraphs .35–.36 and .39–.42 address the auditor's responsibilities in such circumstances in evaluating audit evidence and in communicating audit findings, respectively.

.A4 Intent is often difficult to determine, particularly in matters involving accounting estimates and the application of accounting principles. For example, unreasonable accounting estimates may be unintentional or may be the result of an intentional attempt to misstate the financial statements. Although an audit is not designed to determine intent, the auditor's objective is to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.¹⁶

.A5 Fraudulent financial reporting may be accomplished by the following:

- Manipulation, falsification (including forgery), or alteration of accounting records or supporting documentation from which the financial statements are prepared

¹⁶ Paragraph .11 of section 200.

104 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Misrepresentation in, or intentional omission from, the financial statements of events, transactions, or other significant information
- Intentional misapplication of accounting principles relating to amounts, classification, manner of presentation, or disclosure

.A6 Fraudulent financial reporting often involves management override of controls that otherwise may appear to be operating effectively. Fraud can be committed by management overriding controls using such techniques as the following:

- Recording fictitious journal entries, particularly close to the end of an accounting period, to manipulate operating results or achieve other objectives
- Inappropriately adjusting assumptions and changing judgments used to estimate account balances
- Omitting, advancing, or delaying recognition in the financial statements of events and transactions that have occurred during the reporting period
- Concealing, or not disclosing, facts that could affect the amounts recorded in the financial statements
- Engaging in complex transactions that are structured to misrepresent the financial position or financial performance of the entity
- Altering records and terms related to significant and unusual transactions

.A7 Misappropriation of assets involves the theft of an entity's assets and is often perpetrated by employees in relatively small and immaterial amounts. However, it can also involve management, who is usually better able to disguise or conceal misappropriations in ways that are difficult to detect. Misappropriation of assets can be accomplished in a variety of ways including the following:

- Embezzling receipts (for example, misappropriating collections on accounts receivable or diverting receipts from written-off accounts to personal bank accounts)
- Stealing physical assets or intellectual property (for example, stealing inventory for personal use or for sale, stealing scrap for resale, or colluding with a competitor by disclosing technological data in return for payment)
- Causing an entity to pay for goods and services not received (for example, payments to fictitious vendors, kickbacks paid by vendors to the entity's purchasing agents in return for approving payment at inflated prices, or payments to fictitious employees)
- Using an entity's assets for personal use (for example, using the entity's assets as collateral for a personal loan or a loan to a related party)

Misappropriation of assets is often accompanied by false or misleading records or documents in order to conceal the fact that the assets are missing or have been pledged without proper authorization.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities and Not-for-Profit Organizations

.A8 The auditor of governmental entities and not-for-profit organizations may have additional responsibilities relating to fraud

- as a result of being engaged to conduct an audit in accordance with law or regulation applicable to governmental entities and not-for-profit organizations,
- because of a governmental audit organization's mandate, or
- because of the need to comply with *Government Auditing Standards*.

Consequently, the responsibilities of the auditor of governmental entities and not-for-profit organizations may not be limited to consideration of risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, but may also include a broader responsibility to consider risks of fraud.

Professional Skepticism (Ref: par. .12-.14)

.A9 Maintaining professional skepticism requires an ongoing questioning of whether the information and audit evidence obtained suggests that a material misstatement due to fraud may exist. It includes considering the reliability of the information to be used as audit evidence and the controls over its preparation and maintenance when relevant. Due to the characteristics of fraud, the

auditor's professional skepticism is particularly important when considering the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A10 Although the auditor cannot be expected to disregard past experience of the honesty and integrity of the entity's management and those charged with governance, the auditor's professional skepticism is particularly important in considering the risks of material misstatement due to fraud because there may have been changes in circumstances.

.A11 An audit performed in accordance with GAAS rarely involves the authentication of documents, nor is the auditor trained as, or expected to be, an expert in such authentication.¹⁷ However, when the auditor identifies conditions that cause the auditor to believe that a document may not be authentic, that terms in a document have been modified but not disclosed to the auditor, or that undisclosed side agreements may exist, possible procedures to investigate further may include

- confirming directly with the third party.
- using the work of a specialist to assess the document's authenticity.

Appendix C, "Examples of Circumstances That Indicate the Possibility of Fraud," contains examples of circumstances that may indicate the possibility of fraud.

Discussion Among the Engagement Team (Ref: par. .15)

.A12 Discussing the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud with the engagement team

- provides an opportunity for more experienced engagement team members to share their insights about how and where the financial statements may be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud.
- enables the auditor to consider an appropriate response to such susceptibility and to determine which members of the engagement team will conduct certain audit procedures.
- permits the auditor to determine how the results of audit procedures will be shared among the engagement team and how to deal with any allegations of fraud that may come to the auditor's attention during the audit.

.A13 The discussion may lead to a thorough probing of the issues, acquiring of additional evidence as necessary, and consulting with other team members and, if appropriate, specialists in or outside the firm. The discussion may include the following matters:

- A consideration of management's involvement in overseeing employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to misappropriation
- A consideration of any unusual or unexplained changes in behavior or lifestyle of management or employees that have come to the attention of the engagement team
- A consideration of the types of circumstances that, if encountered, might indicate the possibility of fraud
- A consideration of how an element of unpredictability will be incorporated into the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures to be performed
- A consideration of the audit procedures that might be selected to respond to the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud and whether certain types of audit procedures are more effective than others
- A consideration of any allegations of fraud that have come to the auditor's attention

A number of factors may influence the extent of the discussion and how it may occur. For example, if the audit involves more than one location, there could be multiple discussions with team members in differing locations. Another factor in planning the discussions is whether to include specialists assigned to the audit team.

¹⁷ Paragraph .A50 of section 200.

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities***Inquiries of Management******Management's Assessment of the Risk of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud (Ref: par. .17a)***

.A14 Management accepts responsibility for the entity's internal control and for the preparation and fair presentation of the entity's financial statements. Accordingly, it is appropriate for the auditor to make inquiries of management regarding management's own assessment of the risk of fraud and the controls in place to prevent and detect it. The nature, extent, and frequency of management's assessment of such risk and controls may vary from entity to entity. In some entities, management may make detailed assessments on an annual basis or as part of continuous monitoring. In other entities, management's assessment may be less structured and less frequent. The nature, extent, and frequency of management's assessment are relevant to the auditor's understanding of the entity's control environment. For example, the fact that management has not made an assessment of the risk of fraud may, in some circumstances, be indicative of the lack of importance that management places on internal control.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A15 In some entities, particularly smaller entities, the focus of management's assessment may be on the risks of employee fraud or misappropriation of assets.

Management's Process for Identifying and Responding to the Risks of Fraud (Ref: par. .17b)

.A16 In the case of entities with multiple locations, management's processes may include different levels of monitoring of operating locations or business segments. Management may also have identified particular operating locations or business segments for which a risk of fraud may be more likely to exist.

Discussions With Management and Others Within the Entity (Ref: par. .17-.19)

.A17 Inquiries of management and others within the entity are generally most effective when they involve an in-person discussion. The auditor may also determine it useful to provide the interviewee with specific questions and obtain written responses in advance of the discussion.

.A18 The auditor's inquiries of management may provide useful information concerning the risks of material misstatements in the financial statements resulting from employee fraud. However, such inquiries are unlikely to provide useful information regarding the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements resulting from management fraud. Making inquiries of others within the entity, in addition to management, may provide individuals with an opportunity to convey information to the auditor that may not otherwise be communicated. It may be useful in providing the auditor with a perspective that is different from that of individuals in the financial reporting process. The responses to these other inquiries might serve to corroborate responses received from management or, alternatively, might provide information regarding the possibility of management override of controls. The auditor may also obtain information about how effectively management has communicated standards of ethical behavior throughout the organization.

.A19 Examples of others within the entity to whom the auditor may direct inquiries about the existence or suspicion of fraud include the following:

- Operating personnel not directly involved in the financial reporting process
- Employees with different levels of authority
- Employees involved in initiating, processing, or recording complex or unusual transactions and those who supervise or monitor such employees
- In-house legal counsel
- Chief ethics officer or equivalent person
- The person or persons charged with dealing with allegations of fraud

.A20 Management is often in the best position to perpetrate fraud. Accordingly, when evaluating management's responses to inquiries with professional skepticism, the auditor may judge it necessary to corroborate responses to inquiries with other information.

Obtaining an Understanding of Oversight Exercised by Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .20)

.A21 Those charged with governance of an entity oversee the entity's systems for monitoring risk, financial control, and compliance with the law. In some circumstances, governance practices are well developed, and those charged with governance play an active role in oversight of the entity's assessment of the risks of fraud and of the relevant internal control. Because the responsibilities of those charged with governance and management may vary by entity, it is important that the auditor understands the respective responsibilities of those charged with governance and management to enable the auditor to obtain an understanding of the oversight exercised by the appropriate individuals.¹⁸

.A22 An understanding of the oversight exercised by those charged with governance may provide insights regarding the susceptibility of the entity to management fraud, the adequacy of internal control over risks of fraud, and the competency and integrity of management. The auditor may obtain this understanding in a number of ways, such as by attending meetings during which such discussions take place, reading the minutes from such meetings, or making inquiries of those charged with governance.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A23 In some cases, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity. This may be the case in a small entity in which a single owner manages the entity, and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, ordinarily, no action exists on the part of the auditor because no oversight exists separate from management.

Unusual or Unexpected Relationships Identified (Ref: par. .22)

.A24 Analytical procedures may include data analysis techniques ranging from a high-level review of data patterns, relationships, and trends to highly sophisticated, computer-assisted investigation of detailed transactions using electronic tools, such as data mining, business intelligence, and file query tools. The degree of reliance that can be placed on such techniques is a function primarily of the source (for example, financial, nonfinancial), completeness and reliability of the data, the level of disaggregation, and the nature of the analysis.

.A25 Analytical procedures relating to revenue that are performed with the objective of identifying unusual or unexpected relationships that may indicate a material misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting may include

- a. a comparison of sales volume, as determined from recorded revenue amounts, with production capacity. An excess of sales volume over production capacity may be indicative of recording fictitious sales.
- b. a trend analysis of revenues by month and sales returns by month, during and shortly after the reporting period. This may indicate the existence of undisclosed side agreements with customers involving the return of goods, which, if known, would preclude revenue recognition.
- c. a trend analysis of sales by month compared with units shipped. This may identify a material misstatement of recorded revenues.

.A26 Analytical procedures performed during planning may be helpful in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. However, if such analytical procedures use data aggregated at a high level, generally the results of those analytical procedures provide only a broad initial indication about whether a material misstatement of the financial statements may exist. Accordingly, the results of analytical procedures performed during planning may be considered along with other information gathered by the auditor in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

¹⁸ Paragraphs .A6–.A12 of section 260 discuss with whom the auditor communicates when the entity's governance structure is not well defined.

108 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Other Information (Ref: par. .23)***

.A27 In addition to information obtained from applying analytical procedures, other information obtained about the entity and its environment may be helpful in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. The discussion among team members may provide information that is helpful in identifying such risks. In addition, information obtained from the auditor's client acceptance and retention processes, and experience gained on other engagements performed for the entity, for example, engagements to review interim financial information, may be relevant in the identification of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

Evaluation of Fraud Risk Factors (Ref: par. .24)

.A28 The fact that fraud is usually concealed can make it very difficult to detect. Nevertheless, the auditor may identify events or conditions that indicate an incentive or pressure to commit fraud or provide an opportunity to commit fraud (fraud risk factors), such as the following:

- The need to meet expectations of third parties to obtain additional equity financing may create pressure to commit fraud.
- The granting of significant bonuses if unrealistic profit targets are met may create an incentive to commit fraud.
- A control environment that is not effective may create an opportunity to commit fraud.

.A29 Fraud risk factors cannot easily be ranked in order of importance. The significance of fraud risk factors varies widely. Some of these factors will be present in entities in which the specific conditions do not present risks of material misstatement. Accordingly, the determination of whether a fraud risk factor is present and whether it is to be considered in assessing the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud requires the exercise of professional judgment.

.A30 Examples of fraud risk factors related to fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets are presented in appendix A, "Examples of Fraud Risk Factors." These illustrative risk factors are classified based on the three conditions that are generally present when fraud exists:

- An incentive or pressure to commit fraud
- A perceived opportunity to commit fraud
- An ability to rationalize the fraudulent action

The inability to observe one or more of these conditions does not necessarily mean that no risk of material misstatement due to fraud exists.

Risk factors reflective of an attitude that permits rationalization of the fraudulent action may not be susceptible to observation by the auditor. Nevertheless, the auditor may become aware of the existence of such information. Although the fraud risk factors described in appendix A cover a broad range of situations that may be faced by auditors, they are only examples and other risk factors may exist.

.A31 The size, complexity, and ownership characteristics of the entity have a significant influence on the consideration of relevant fraud risk factors. For example, in the case of a large entity, there may be factors that generally constrain improper conduct by management, such as

- effective oversight by those charged with governance.
- an effective internal audit function.
- the existence and enforcement of a written code of conduct.

Furthermore, fraud risk factors considered at a business segment operating level may provide different insights when compared with those obtained when considered at an entity-wide level.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A32 In the case of a small entity, some or all of these considerations may be inapplicable or less relevant. For example, a smaller entity may not have a written code of conduct but, instead, may have developed a culture that emphasizes the importance of integrity and ethical behavior

through oral communication and by management example. Domination of management by a single individual in a small entity does not generally, in and of itself, indicate a failure by management to display and communicate an appropriate attitude regarding internal control and the financial reporting process. In some entities, the need for management authorization can compensate for otherwise deficient controls and reduce the risk of employee fraud. However, domination of management by a single individual can be a potential deficiency in internal control because an opportunity exists for management override of controls.

Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

Risks of Fraud in Revenue Recognition (Ref: par. .26)

.A33 Material misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting relating to revenue recognition often results from an overstatement of revenues through, for example, premature revenue recognition or recording fictitious revenues. It may result also from an understatement of revenues through, for example, improperly shifting revenues to a later period.

.A34 The risks of fraud in revenue recognition may be greater in some entities than others. For example, there may be pressures or incentives on management to commit fraudulent financial reporting through inappropriate revenue recognition when, for example, performance is measured in terms of year over year revenue growth or profit. Similarly, for example, there may be greater risks of fraud in revenue recognition in the case of entities that generate a substantial portion of revenues through cash sales.

.A35 The presumption that risks of fraud exist in revenue recognition may be rebutted. For example, the auditor may conclude that no risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition exists in the case in which a single type of simple revenue transaction exists, for example, leasehold revenue from a single unit rental property.

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud and Understanding the Entity's Related Controls (Ref: par. .27)

.A36 Management may make judgments on the nature and extent of the controls it chooses to implement, and the nature and extent of the risks it chooses to assume.¹⁹ In determining which controls to implement to prevent and detect fraud, management considers the risks that the financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud. As part of this consideration, management may conclude that it is not cost effective to implement and maintain a particular control in relation to the reduction in the risks of material misstatement due to fraud to be achieved.

.A37 It is, therefore, important for the auditor to obtain an understanding of the controls that management has designed, implemented, and maintained to prevent and detect fraud. In doing so, the auditor may learn, for example, that management has consciously chosen to accept the risks associated with a lack of segregation of duties. Information from obtaining this understanding may also be useful in identifying fraud risks factors that may affect the auditor's assessment of the risks that the financial statements may contain material misstatement due to fraud.

Responses to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

Overall Responses (Ref: par. .28)

.A38 Determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud generally includes the consideration of how the overall conduct of the audit can reflect increased professional skepticism through, for example, increased

- sensitivity in the selection of the nature and extent of documentation to be examined in support of material transactions.
- recognition of the need to corroborate management explanations or representations concerning material matters.

¹⁹ Paragraph .A48 of section 315.

110 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud also involves more general considerations apart from the specific procedures otherwise planned; these considerations include the matters listed in paragraph .29, which are discussed in the following sections.

Assignment and Supervision of Personnel (Ref: par. .29a)

.A39 The auditor may respond to identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud by, for example, assigning additional individuals with specialized skill and knowledge, such as forensic and IT specialists, or by assigning more experienced individuals to the engagement.

.A40 The extent of supervision reflects the auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement due to fraud and the competencies of the engagement team members performing the work.

Accounting Principles (Ref: par. .29b)

.A41 Management bias in the selection and application of accounting principles may individually or collectively involve matters such as contingencies, fair value measurements, revenue recognition, accounting estimates, related party transactions, or other transactions without a clear business purpose.

Unpredictability in the Selection of Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .29c)

.A42 Incorporating an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to be performed is important because individuals within the entity who are familiar with the audit procedures normally performed on engagements may be better able to conceal fraudulent financial reporting. This can be achieved by, for example,

- performing substantive procedures on selected account balances and assertions not otherwise tested due to their materiality or risk.
- adjusting the timing of audit procedures from that otherwise expected.
- using different sampling methods.
- performing audit procedures at different locations or at locations on an unannounced basis.

Audit Procedures Responsive to Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud at the Assertion Level (Ref: par. .30)

.A43 The auditor's responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level may include changing the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures in the following ways:

- The nature of audit procedures to be performed may need to be changed to obtain audit evidence that is more reliable and relevant or to obtain additional corroborative information. This may affect both the type of audit procedures to be performed and their combination. For example:
 - Physical observation or inspection of certain assets may become more important, or the auditor may choose to use computer-assisted audit techniques to gather more evidence about data contained in significant accounts or electronic transaction files.
 - The auditor may design procedures to obtain additional corroborative information. For example, if the auditor identifies that management is under pressure to meet earnings expectations, there may be a related risk that management is inflating sales by entering into sales agreements that include terms that preclude revenue recognition or by invoicing sales before delivery. In these circumstances, the auditor may, for example, design external confirmations not only to confirm outstanding amounts, but also to confirm the details of the sales agreements, including date, any rights of return, and delivery terms. In addition, the auditor might find it effective to supplement such external confirmations with inquiries of nonfinancial personnel in the entity regarding any changes in sales agreements and delivery terms.

- The timing of substantive procedures may need to be modified. The auditor may conclude that performing substantive testing at or near the period end better addresses an assessed risk of material misstatement due to fraud. The auditor may conclude that, given the assessed risks of intentional misstatement or manipulation, audit procedures to extend audit conclusions from an interim date to the period end would not be effective. In contrast, because an intentional misstatement—for example, a misstatement involving improper revenue recognition—may have been initiated in an interim period, the auditor may elect to apply substantive procedures to transactions occurring earlier in or throughout the reporting period.
- The extent of the procedures applied reflects the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. For example, increasing sample sizes or performing analytical procedures at a more detailed level may be appropriate. Also, computer-assisted audit techniques may enable more extensive testing of electronic transactions and account files. Such techniques can be used to select sample transactions from key electronic files, to sort transactions with specific characteristics, or to test an entire population instead of a sample.

.A44 If the auditor identifies a risk of material misstatement due to fraud that affects inventory quantities, examining the entity's inventory records may help to identify locations or items that require specific attention during or after the physical inventory count. Such a review may lead to a decision to observe inventory counts at certain locations on an unannounced basis or to conduct inventory counts at all locations on the same date.

.A45 The auditor may identify a risk of material misstatement due to fraud affecting a number of accounts and assertions. These may include asset valuation, estimates relating to specific transactions (such as acquisitions, restructurings, or disposals of segments of the business), and other significant accrued liabilities (such as pension and other postemployment benefit obligations, or environmental remediation liabilities). The risk may also relate to significant changes in assumptions relating to recurring estimates. Information gathered through obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment may assist the auditor in evaluating the reasonableness of such management estimates and underlying judgments and assumptions. A retrospective review of similar management judgments and assumptions applied in prior periods may also provide insight about the reasonableness of judgments and assumptions supporting management estimates.

.A46 Examples of possible audit procedures to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud, including those that illustrate the incorporation of an element of unpredictability, are presented in appendix B, "Examples of Possible Audit Procedures to Address the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud." The appendix includes examples of responses to the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement resulting from both fraudulent financial reporting, including fraudulent financial reporting resulting from revenue recognition, and misappropriation of assets.

Audit Procedures Responsive to Risks Related to Management Override of Controls

Journal Entries and Other Adjustments (Ref: par. .32a)

.A47 Material misstatements of financial statements due to fraud often involve the manipulation of the financial reporting process by (i) recording inappropriate or unauthorized journal entries throughout the year or at period end, or (ii) making adjustments to amounts reported in the financial statements that are not reflected in formal journal entries, such as through consolidating adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications.

.A48 The auditor's consideration of the risks of material misstatement associated with inappropriate override of controls over journal entries is important because automated processes and controls may reduce the risk of inadvertent error but do not overcome the risk that individuals may inappropriately override such automated processes, for example, by changing the amounts being automatically passed to the general ledger or to the financial reporting system. Furthermore, when IT is used to transfer information automatically, there may be little or no visible evidence of such intervention in the information systems.

112 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A49 When identifying and selecting journal entries and other adjustments for testing and determining the appropriate method of examining the underlying support for the items selected, the following matters may be relevant:

- *The assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.* The presence of fraud risk factors and other information obtained during the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud may assist the auditor to identify specific classes of journal entries and other adjustments for testing.
- *Controls that have been implemented over journal entries and other adjustments.* Effective controls over the preparation and posting of journal entries and other adjustments may reduce the extent of substantive testing necessary, provided that the auditor has tested the operating effectiveness of the controls.
- *The entity's financial reporting process and the nature of evidence that can be obtained.* For many entities, routine processing of transactions involves a combination of manual and automated steps and procedures. Similarly, the processing of journal entries and other adjustments may involve both manual and automated procedures and controls. When IT is used in the financial reporting process, journal entries and other adjustments may exist only in electronic form.
- *The characteristics of fraudulent journal entries or other adjustments.* Inappropriate journal entries or other adjustments often have unique identifying characteristics. Such characteristics may include entries (a) made to unrelated, unusual, or seldom-used accounts; (b) made by individuals who typically do not make journal entries; (c) recorded at the end of the period or as postclosing entries that have little or no explanation or description; (d) made either before or during the preparation of the financial statements that do not have account numbers; or (e) containing round numbers or consistent ending numbers.
- *The nature and complexity of the accounts.* Inappropriate journal entries or adjustments may be applied to accounts that (a) contain transactions that are complex or unusual in nature, (b) contain significant estimates and period-end adjustments, (c) have been prone to misstatements in the past, (d) have not been reconciled on a timely basis or contain unreconciled differences, (e) contain intercompany transactions, or (f) are otherwise associated with an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In audits of entities that have several locations or components, consideration is given to the need to select journal entries from multiple locations.
- *Journal entries or other adjustments processed outside the normal course of business.* Nonstandard journal entries, and other entries such as consolidating adjustments, may not be subject to the same level of internal control as those journal entries used on a recurring basis to record transactions such as monthly sales, purchases, and cash disbursements.

.A50 The auditor exercises professional judgment in determining the nature, timing, and extent of testing of journal entries and other adjustments. However, because fraudulent journal entries and other adjustments are often made at the end of a reporting period, paragraph .32a(iv) requires the auditor to select the journal entries and other adjustments made at that time. Further, because material misstatements in financial statements due to fraud can occur throughout the period and may involve extensive efforts to conceal how the fraud is accomplished, paragraph .32a(v) requires the auditor to consider whether a need also exists to test journal entries and other adjustments throughout the period.

Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .32b)

.A51 The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements requires management to make a number of judgments or assumptions that affect significant accounting estimates and monitor the reasonableness of such estimates on an ongoing basis. Fraudulent financial reporting is often accomplished through intentional misstatement of accounting estimates. This may be achieved by, for example, understating or overstating all provisions or reserves in the same fashion so as to be designed either to smooth earnings over two or more accounting periods, or to achieve a designated earnings level in order to deceive financial statement users by influencing their perceptions about the entity's performance and profitability.

.A52 The purpose of performing a retrospective review of management judgments and assumptions related to significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior year is to determine whether an indication exists of a possible bias on the part of management. This review is not intended to call into question the auditor's professional judgments made in the prior year that were based on information available at the time.

.A53 A retrospective review is also required by section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*.²⁰ That review is conducted as a risk assessment procedure to obtain information regarding the effectiveness of management's prior period estimation process, audit evidence about the outcome, or when applicable, the subsequent reestimation of prior period accounting estimates that is pertinent to making current period accounting estimates, and audit evidence of matters, such as estimation uncertainty, that may be required to be disclosed in the financial statements. As a practical matter, the auditor's review of management judgments and assumptions for biases that could represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud in accordance with this section may be carried out in conjunction with the review required by section 540.

Business Rationale for Significant Transactions (Ref: par. .32c)

.A54 Indicators that may suggest that significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity, or that otherwise appear to be unusual, may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets include the following:

- The form of such transactions appears overly complex (for example, the transaction involves multiple entities within a consolidated group or multiple unrelated third parties).
- Management has not discussed the nature of and accounting for such transactions with those charged with governance of the entity, and inadequate documentation exists.
- Management is placing more emphasis on the need for a particular accounting treatment than on the underlying economics of the transaction.
- Transactions that involve nonconsolidated related parties, including special purpose entities, have not been properly reviewed or approved by those charged with governance of the entity.
- Transactions that involve previously unidentified related parties or parties that do not have the substance or the financial strength to support the transaction without assistance from the entity under audit.

Other Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .32a and .33)

.A55 Risks of material misstatement, including misstatements due to fraud, cannot be reduced to an appropriately low level by performing only tests of controls.²¹

Evaluation of Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .34–.37)

.A56 Section 330 requires the auditor, based on the audit procedures performed and the audit evidence obtained, to evaluate whether the assessments of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level remain appropriate.²² This evaluation is primarily a qualitative matter based on the auditor's professional judgment. Such an evaluation may provide further insight into the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and whether a need exists to perform additional or different audit procedures. Appendix C contains examples of circumstances that may indicate the possibility of fraud.

²⁰ Paragraph .09 of section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*.

²¹ Paragraph .A9 of section 330.

²² Paragraph .27 of section 330.

114 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Analytical Procedures Performed Near the End of the Audit in Forming an Overall Conclusion (Ref: par. .34)***

.A57 Determining which particular trends and relationships may indicate a risk of material misstatement due to fraud requires professional judgment. Unusual relationships involving year-end revenue and income are particularly relevant. These might include, for example, uncharacteristically large amounts of income being reported in the last few weeks of the reporting period or unusual transactions or income that is inconsistent with trends in cash flow from operations.

.A58 Some unusual or unexpected analytical relationships may have been identified and may indicate a risk of material misstatement due to fraud because management or employees generally are unable to manipulate certain information to create seemingly normal or expected relationships. Some examples are as follows:

- The relationship of net income to cash flows from operations may appear unusual because management recorded fictitious revenues and receivables but was unable to manipulate cash.
- Changes in inventory, accounts payable, sales, or cost of sales from the prior period to the current period may be inconsistent, indicating a possible employee theft of inventory, because the employee was unable to manipulate all of the related accounts.
- A comparison of the entity's profitability to industry trends, which management cannot manipulate, may indicate trends or differences for further consideration when identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud.
- A comparison of bad debt write-offs to comparable industry data, which employees cannot manipulate, may provide unexplained relationships that could indicate a possible theft of cash receipts.
- An unexpected or unexplained relationship between sales volume, as determined from the accounting records and production statistics maintained by operations personnel, which may be more difficult for management to manipulate, may indicate a possible misstatement of sales.

Consideration of Identified Misstatements (Ref: par. .35–.37)

.A59 Because fraud involves incentive or pressure to commit fraud, a perceived opportunity to do so, or some rationalization of the act, an instance of fraud is unlikely to be an isolated occurrence. Accordingly, misstatements, such as numerous misstatements at a specific location even though the cumulative effect is not material, may be indicative of a risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A60 The implications of identified fraud depend on the circumstances. For example, an otherwise insignificant fraud may be significant if it involves senior management. In such circumstances, the reliability of evidence previously obtained may be called into question because there may be doubts about the completeness and truthfulness of representations made and the genuineness of accounting records and documentation. There may also be a possibility of collusion involving employees, management, or third parties.

.A61 Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, and section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, address the evaluation and disposition of misstatements and the effect on the auditor's opinion in the auditor's report.

.A62 Section 580, *Written Representations*, addresses obtaining appropriate representations from management in the audit. In addition to acknowledging its responsibility for the financial statements, it is important that, irrespective of the size of the entity, management acknowledges its responsibility for internal control designed, implemented, and maintained to prevent and detect fraud.

Auditor Unable to Continue the Engagement (Ref: par. .38)

.A63 Examples of circumstances that may arise and bring into question the auditor's ability to continue performing the audit include the following:

- a. The entity does not take the appropriate action regarding fraud that the auditor considers necessary in the circumstances, even when the fraud is not material to the financial statements.

- b. The auditor's consideration of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and the results of audit tests indicate a significant risk of material and pervasive fraud.
- c. The auditor has significant concern about the competence or integrity of management or those charged with governance.

.A64 Because of the variety of circumstances that may arise, it is not possible to describe definitively when withdrawal from an engagement is appropriate. Factors that affect the auditor's conclusion include the implications of the involvement of a member of management or of those charged with governance (which may affect the reliability of management representations) and the effects on the auditor of a continuing association with the entity.

.A65 The auditor has professional and legal responsibilities in such circumstances, and these responsibilities may vary by engagement. In some circumstances, for example, the auditor may be entitled to, or required to, make a statement or report to the person or persons who engaged the auditor or, in some cases, to regulatory authorities. Given the nature of the circumstances and the need to consider the legal requirements, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice when deciding whether to withdraw from an engagement and in determining an appropriate course of action, including the possibility of reporting to regulators or others.²³

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities and Not-for-Profit Organizations

.A66 For governmental entities and not-for-profit organizations, the option of withdrawing from the engagement may not be available to the auditor due to the nature of the mandate, public interest considerations, contractual requirements, or law or regulation.

Communications to Management and With Those Charged With Governance

Communication to Management (Ref: par. .39)

.A67 When the auditor has obtained evidence that fraud exists or may exist, it is important that the matter be brought to the attention of the appropriate level of management as soon as practicable. This is true even if the matter might be considered inconsequential (for example, a minor defalcation by an employee at a low level in the entity's organization). The determination of which level of management is the appropriate one is a matter of professional judgment and is affected by such factors as the likelihood of collusion and the nature and magnitude of the suspected fraud. Ordinarily, the appropriate level of management is at least one level above the persons who appear to be involved with the suspected fraud.

Communication With Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .40)

.A68 The auditor's communication with those charged with governance may be made orally or in writing. Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, identifies factors the auditor considers in determining whether to communicate orally or in writing.²⁴ Due to the nature and sensitivity of fraud involving senior management, or fraud that results in a material misstatement in the financial statements, the auditor communicates such matters on a timely basis and may consider it necessary to also communicate such matters in writing.

.A69 In some cases, the auditor may consider it appropriate to communicate with those charged with governance when the auditor becomes aware of fraud involving employees other than management that does not result in a material misstatement. Similarly, those charged with governance may wish to be informed of such circumstances. The communication process is assisted if the auditor and those charged with governance agree at an early stage in the audit about the nature and extent of the auditor's communications in this regard.

.A70 When the auditor has doubts about the integrity or honesty of management or those charged with governance, the auditor may consider it appropriate to obtain legal advice to assist in determining the appropriate course of action.

²³ Section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, provides guidance on communications with an auditor replacing the existing auditor.

²⁴ Paragraph.A39 of section 260.

116 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Other Matters Related to Fraud (Ref: par. .41)***

.A71 Other matters related to fraud to be discussed with those charged with governance of the entity may include, for example

- concerns about the nature, extent, and frequency of management's assessments of the controls in place to prevent and detect fraud and of the risk that the financial statements may be misstated.
- a failure by management to appropriately address identified significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control, or to appropriately respond to an identified fraud.
- the auditor's evaluation of the entity's control environment, including questions regarding the competence and integrity of management.
- actions by management that may be indicative of fraudulent financial reporting, such as management's selection and application of accounting policies that may be indicative of management's effort to manage earnings in order to deceive financial statement users by influencing their perceptions concerning the entity's performance and profitability.
- concerns about the adequacy and completeness of the authorization of transactions that appear to be outside the normal course of business.
- the absence of programs or controls to address risks of material misstatement due to fraud that are significant deficiencies or material weaknesses.²⁵

Communications to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities (Ref: par. .42)

.A72 The auditor's professional duty to maintain the confidentiality of client information may preclude reporting fraud to a party outside the client entity. However, in certain circumstances, the duty of confidentiality may be overridden by statute, regulation, courts of law, specific requirements of audits of entities that receive government financial assistance, or waived by agreement. In some circumstances, the auditor has a statutory duty to report the occurrence of fraud to supervisory authorities. Also, in some circumstances, the auditor has a duty to report misstatements to authorities in those cases when management and those charged with governance fail to take corrective action.

.A73 The auditor may consider it appropriate to obtain legal advice to determine the appropriate course of action in the circumstances, the purpose of which is to ascertain the steps necessary in considering the public interest aspects of identified fraud.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities and Not-for-Profit Organizations

.A74 For governmental entities and not-for-profit organizations, requirements for reporting fraud, whether or not discovered through the audit process, may be subject to specific provisions of the audit mandate or related law or regulation.

²⁵ See section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*.

.A75

Appendix A—Examples of Fraud Risk Factors (Ref: par. .11, .24, and .A30)

The fraud risk factors identified in this appendix are examples of such factors that may be faced by auditors in a broad range of situations. Separately presented are examples relating to the two types of fraud relevant to the auditor's consideration—that is, fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets. For each of these types of fraud, the risk factors are further classified based on the three conditions generally present when material misstatements due to fraud occur: (a) incentives and pressures, (b) opportunities, and (c) attitudes and rationalizations. Although the risk factors cover a broad range of situations, they are only examples and, accordingly, the auditor may identify additional or different risk factors. Not all of these examples are relevant in all circumstances, and some may be of greater or lesser significance in entities of different size or with different ownership characteristics or circumstances. Also, the order of the examples of risk factors provided is not intended to reflect their relative importance or frequency of occurrence.

Risk Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting

The following are examples of risk factors relating to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting.

Incentives and Pressures

Financial stability or profitability is threatened by economic, industry, or entity operating conditions, such as (or as indicated by) the following:

- High degree of competition or market saturation, accompanied by declining margins
- High vulnerability to rapid changes, such as changes in technology, product obsolescence, or interest rates
- Significant declines in customer demand and increasing business failures in either the industry or overall economy
- Operating losses making the threat of bankruptcy, foreclosure, or hostile takeover imminent
- Recurring negative cash flows from operations or an inability to generate cash flows from operations while reporting earnings and earnings growth
- Rapid growth or unusual profitability especially compared to that of other companies in the same industry
- New accounting, statutory, or regulatory requirements

Excessive pressure exists for management to meet the requirements or expectations of third parties due to the following:

- Profitability or trend level expectations of investment analysts, institutional investors, significant creditors, or other external parties (particularly expectations that are unduly aggressive or unrealistic), including expectations created by management in, for example, overly optimistic press releases or annual report messages
- Need to obtain additional debt or equity financing to stay competitive—including financing of major research and development or capital expenditures
- Marginal ability to meet exchange listing requirements or debt repayment or other debt covenant requirements
- Perceived or real adverse effects of reporting poor financial results on significant pending transactions, such as business combinations or contract awards
- A need to achieve financial targets required in bond covenants
- Pressure for management to meet the expectations of legislative or oversight bodies or to achieve political outcomes, or both

Information available indicates that the personal financial situation of management or those charged with governance is threatened by the entity's financial performance arising from the following:

118 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Significant financial interests in the entity
- Significant portions of their compensation (for example, bonuses, stock options, and earn-out arrangements) being contingent upon achieving aggressive targets for stock price, operating results, financial position, or cash flow¹
- Personal guarantees of debts of the entity

Management or operating personnel are under excessive pressure to meet financial targets established by those charged with governance, including sales or profitability incentive goals.

Opportunities

The nature of the industry or the entity's operations provides opportunities to engage in fraudulent financial reporting that can arise from the following:

- Significant related party transactions not in the ordinary course of business or with related entities not audited or audited by another firm
- A strong financial presence or ability to dominate a certain industry sector that allows the entity to dictate terms or conditions to suppliers or customers that may result in inappropriate or non-arm's-length transactions
- Assets, liabilities, revenues, or expenses based on significant estimates that involve subjective judgments or uncertainties that are difficult to corroborate
- Significant, unusual, or highly complex transactions, especially those close to period end that pose difficult "substance over form" questions
- Significant operations located or conducted across jurisdictional borders where differing business environments and regulations exist
- Use of business intermediaries for which there appears to be no clear business justification
- Significant bank accounts or subsidiary or branch operations in tax-haven jurisdictions for which there appears to be no clear business justification

The monitoring of management is not effective as a result of the following:

- Domination of management by a single person or small group (in a nonowner-managed business) without compensating controls.
- Oversight by those charged with governance over the financial reporting process and internal control is not effective.

The organizational structure is complex or unstable, as evidenced by the following:

- Difficulty in determining the organization or individuals that have controlling interest in the entity
- Overly complex organizational structure involving unusual legal entities or managerial lines of authority
- High turnover of senior management, legal counsel, or those charged with governance

Internal control components are deficient as a result of the following:

- Inadequate monitoring of controls, including automated controls and controls over interim financial reporting (when external reporting is required)
- High turnover rates or employment of accounting, internal audit, or IT staff who are not effective
- Accounting and information systems that are not effective, including situations involving significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control
- Weak controls over budget preparation and development and compliance with law or regulation.

¹ Management incentive plans may be contingent upon achieving targets relating only to certain accounts or selected activities of the entity, even though the related accounts or activities may not be material to the entity as a whole.

Attitudes and Rationalizations

- Communication, implementation, support, or enforcement of the entity's values or ethical standards by management, or the communication of inappropriate values or ethical standards that are not effective.
- Nonfinancial management's excessive participation in or preoccupation with the selection of accounting policies or the determination of significant estimates.
- Known history of violations of securities law or other law or regulation, or claims against the entity, its senior management, or those charged with governance alleging fraud or violations of law or regulation.
- Excessive interest by management in maintaining or increasing the entity's stock price or earnings trend.
- The practice by management of committing to analysts, creditors, and other third parties to achieve aggressive or unrealistic forecasts.
- Management failing to remedy known significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control on a timely basis.
- An interest by management in employing inappropriate means to minimize reported earnings for tax-motivated reasons.
- Low morale among senior management.
- The owner-manager makes no distinction between personal and business transactions.
- Dispute between shareholders in a closely held entity.
- Recurring attempts by management to justify marginal or inappropriate accounting on the basis of materiality.
- A strained relationship between management and the current or predecessor auditor, as exhibited by the following:
 - Frequent disputes with the current or predecessor auditor on accounting, auditing, or reporting matters
 - Unreasonable demands on the auditor, such as unrealistic time constraints regarding the completion of the audit or the issuance of the auditor's report
 - Restrictions on the auditor that inappropriately limit access to people or information or the ability to communicate effectively with those charged with governance
 - Domineering management behavior in dealing with the auditor, especially involving attempts to influence the scope of the auditor's work or the selection or continuance of personnel assigned to or consulted on the audit engagement

Risk Factors Arising From Misstatements Arising From Misappropriation of Assets

Risk factors that relate to misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets are also classified according to the three conditions generally present when fraud exists: incentives and pressures, opportunities, and attitudes and rationalization. Some of the risk factors related to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting also may be present when misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets occur. For example, ineffective monitoring of management and other deficiencies in internal control that are not effective may be present when misstatements due to either fraudulent financial reporting or misappropriation of assets exist. The following are examples of risk factors related to misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets.

Incentives and Pressures

Personal financial obligations may create pressure on management or employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft to misappropriate those assets.

Adverse relationships between the entity and employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft may motivate those employees to misappropriate those assets. For example, adverse relationships may be created by the following:

- Known or anticipated future employee layoffs
- Recent or anticipated changes to employee compensation or benefit plans
- Promotions, compensation, or other rewards inconsistent with expectations

120 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Opportunities***

Certain characteristics or circumstances may increase the susceptibility of assets to misappropriation. For example, opportunities to misappropriate assets increase when the following exist:

- Large amounts of cash on hand or processed
- Inventory items that are small in size, of high value, or in high demand
- Easily convertible assets, such as bearer bonds, diamonds, or computer chips
- Fixed assets that are small in size, marketable, or lack observable identification of ownership

Inadequate internal control over assets may increase the susceptibility of misappropriation of those assets. For example, misappropriation of assets may occur because the following exist:

- Inadequate segregation of duties or independent checks
- Inadequate oversight of senior management expenditures, such as travel and other reimbursements
- Inadequate management oversight of employees responsible for assets (for example, inadequate supervision or monitoring of remote locations)
- Inadequate job applicant screening of employees with access to assets
- Inadequate record keeping with respect to assets
- Inadequate system of authorization and approval of transactions (for example, in purchasing)
- Inadequate physical safeguards over cash, investments, inventory, or fixed assets
- Lack of complete and timely reconciliations of assets
- Lack of timely and appropriate documentation of transactions (for example, credits for merchandise returns)
- Lack of mandatory vacations for employees performing key control functions
- Inadequate management understanding of IT, which enables IT employees to perpetrate a misappropriation
- Inadequate access controls over automated records, including controls over and review of computer systems event logs

Attitudes and Rationalizations

- Disregard for the need for monitoring or reducing risks related to misappropriations of assets
- Disregard for internal control over misappropriation of assets by overriding existing controls or by failing to take appropriate remedial action on known deficiencies in internal control
- Behavior indicating displeasure or dissatisfaction with the entity or its treatment of the employee
- Changes in behavior or lifestyle that may indicate assets have been misappropriated
- The belief by some government or other officials that their level of authority justifies a certain level of compensation and personal privileges
- Tolerance of petty theft

.A76**Appendix B—Examples of Possible Audit Procedures to Address the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud (Ref: par. .22 and .A46)**

The following are examples of possible audit procedures to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud resulting from both fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets. Although these procedures cover a broad range of situations, they are only examples and, accordingly, they may not be the most appropriate nor necessary in each circumstance. Also the order of the procedures provided is not intended to reflect their relative importance.

Consideration at the Assertion Level

Specific responses to the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud will vary depending upon the types or combinations of fraud risk factors or conditions identified, and the classes of transactions, account balances, disclosures, and assertions they may affect.

The following are specific examples of responses:

- Visiting locations or performing certain tests on a surprise or unannounced basis (for example, observing inventory at locations where auditor attendance has not been previously announced or counting cash at a particular date on a surprise basis)
- Requesting that inventories be counted at the end of the reporting period or on a date closer to period end to minimize the risk of manipulation of balances in the period between the date of completion of the count and the end of the reporting period
- Altering the audit approach in the current year (for example, contacting major customers and suppliers orally in addition to sending written confirmation, sending confirmation requests to a specific party within an organization, or seeking more or different information)
- Performing a detailed review of the entity's quarter-end or year-end adjusting entries and investigating any that appear to have an unusual nature or amount
- For significant and unusual transactions, particularly those occurring at or near year end, investigating the possibility of related parties and the sources of financial resources supporting the transactions
- Performing substantive analytical procedures using disaggregated data (for example, comparing sales and cost of sales by location, line of business, or month to expectations developed by the auditor)
- Conducting interviews of personnel involved in areas in which a risk of material misstatement due to fraud has been identified, to obtain their insights about the risk, and whether, or how, controls address the risk
- When other independent auditors are auditing the financial statements of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, or branches, discussing with them the extent of work necessary to be performed to address the assessed risk of material misstatement due to fraud resulting from transactions and activities among these components
- If the work of an expert becomes particularly significant with respect to a financial statement item for which the assessed risk of misstatement due to fraud is high, performing additional procedures relating to some or all of the expert's assumptions, methods, or findings to determine that the findings are not unreasonable, or engaging another expert for that purpose
- Performing audit procedures to analyze selected opening balance sheet accounts of previously audited financial statements to assess how certain issues involving accounting estimates and judgments, for example, an allowance for sales returns, were resolved with the benefit of hindsight
- Performing procedures on account or other reconciliations prepared by the entity, including considering reconciliations performed at interim periods
- Performing computer-assisted techniques, such as data mining to test for anomalies in a population

122 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Testing the integrity of computer-produced records and transactions
- Seeking additional audit evidence from sources outside of the entity being audited

Specific Responses—Misstatement Resulting From Fraudulent Financial Reporting

Examples of responses to the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting are as follows:

Revenue Recognition

- Performing substantive analytical procedures relating to revenue using disaggregated data; for example, comparing revenue reported by month and by product line or business segment during the current reporting period with comparable prior periods or with revenue related to cash collections (computer-assisted audit techniques may be useful in identifying unusual or unexpected revenue relationships or transactions)
- Confirming with customers certain relevant contract terms and the absence of side agreements because the appropriate accounting often is influenced by such terms or agreements and basis for rebates or the period to which they relate are often poorly documented (for example, acceptance criteria, delivery and payment terms, the absence of future or continuing vendor obligations, the right to return the product, guaranteed resale amounts, and cancellation or refund provisions often are relevant in such circumstances)
- Inquiring of the entity's sales and marketing personnel or in-house legal counsel regarding sales or shipments near the end of the period and their knowledge of any unusual terms or conditions associated with these transactions
- Being physically present at one or more locations at period end to observe goods being shipped or being readied for shipment (or returns awaiting processing) and performing other appropriate sales and inventory cutoff procedures
- For those situations for which revenue transactions are electronically initiated, processed, and recorded, testing controls to determine whether they provide assurance that recorded revenue transactions occurred and are properly recorded

Inventory Quantities

- Examining the entity's inventory records to identify locations or items that require specific attention during or after the physical inventory count
- Observing inventory counts at certain locations on an unannounced basis or conducting inventory counts at all locations on the same date
- Conducting inventory counts at or near the end of the reporting period to minimize the risk of inappropriate manipulation during the period between the count and the end of the reporting period
- Performing additional procedures during the observation of the count; for example, more rigorously examining the contents of boxed items, the manner in which the goods are stacked (for example, hollow squares) or labeled, and the quality (that is, purity, grade, or concentration) of liquid substances such as perfumes or specialty chemicals (using the work of an expert may be helpful in this regard)
- Comparing the quantities for the current period with prior periods by class or category of inventory, location or other criteria, or comparison of quantities counted with perpetual records
- Using computer-assisted audit techniques to further test the compilation of the physical inventory counts (for example, sorting by tag number to test tag controls or by item serial number to test the possibility of item omission or duplication)

Management Estimates

- Using an expert to develop an independent estimate for comparison to management's estimate

- Extending inquiries to individuals outside of management and the accounting department to corroborate management's ability and intent to carry out plans that are relevant to developing the estimate

Specific Responses—Misstatements Due to Misappropriation of Assets

Differing circumstances would necessarily dictate different responses. Ordinarily, the audit response to an assessed risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to misappropriation of assets will be directed toward certain account balances and classes of transactions. Although some of the audit responses noted in the preceding two categories may apply in such circumstances, the scope of the work is to be linked to the specific information about the misappropriation risk that has been identified.

Examples of responses to the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatements due to misappropriation of assets are as follows:

- Counting cash or securities at or near year end
- Confirming directly with customers the account activity (including credit memo and sales return activity as well as dates payments were made) for the period under audit
- Analyzing recoveries of written-off accounts
- Analyzing inventory shortages by location or product type
- Comparing key inventory ratios to industry norm
- Reviewing supporting documentation for reductions to the perpetual inventory records
- Performing a computerized match of the vendor list with a list of employees to identify matches of addresses or phone numbers
- Performing a computerized search of payroll records to identify duplicate addresses, employee identification or taxing authority numbers, or bank accounts
- Reviewing personnel files for those that contain little or no evidence of activity; for example, lack of performance evaluations
- Analyzing sales discounts and returns for unusual patterns or trends
- Confirming specific terms of contracts with third parties
- Obtaining evidence that contracts are being carried out in accordance with their terms
- Reviewing the propriety of large and unusual expenses
- Reviewing the authorization and carrying value of senior management and related party loans
- Reviewing the level and propriety of expense reports submitted by senior management

124 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**.A77****Appendix C—Examples of Circumstances That Indicate the Possibility of Fraud (Ref: par. .11, .A11, and .A56)**

The following are examples of circumstances that may indicate the possibility that the financial statements may contain a material misstatement resulting from fraud.

Discrepancies in the accounting records, including the following:

- Transactions that are not recorded in a complete or timely manner or are improperly recorded by amount, accounting period, classification, or entity policy
- Unsupported or unauthorized balances or transactions
- Last minute adjustments that significantly affect financial results
- Evidence of employees' access to systems and records inconsistent with that necessary to perform their authorized duties
- Tips or complaints to the auditor about alleged fraud

Conflicting or missing evidence, including the following:

- Missing documents
- Documents that appear to have been altered
- Unavailability of other than photocopied or electronically transmitted documents when documents in original form are expected to exist
- Significant unexplained items on reconciliations
- Unusual balance sheet changes, or changes in trends or important financial statement ratios or relationships; for example, receivables growing faster than revenues
- Inconsistent, vague, or implausible responses from management or employees arising from inquiries or analytical procedures
- Unusual discrepancies between the entity's records and confirmation replies
- Large numbers of credit entries and other adjustments made to accounts receivable records
- Unexplained or inadequately explained differences between the accounts receivable sub-ledger and the control account, or between the customer statements and the accounts receivable subledger
- Missing or nonexistent cancelled checks in circumstances in which cancelled checks are ordinarily returned to the entity with the bank statement
- Missing inventory or physical assets of significant magnitude
- Unavailable or missing electronic evidence, inconsistent with the entity's record retention practices or policies
- Fewer responses to confirmations than anticipated or a greater number of responses than anticipated
- Inability to produce evidence of key systems development and program change testing and implementation activities for current-year system changes and deployments

Conditions relating to governmental entities or not-for-profit organizations:

- Significant transfers or transactions between funds or programs, or both, lacking supporting documents
- Abnormal budget conditions, such as
 - significant budget adjustments
 - requests for additional funding
 - budget adjustments made without approval
 - large amounts of over-or-under spending
 - programs with an emphasis on spending money quickly
- Procurement conditions, such as
 - lack of procurement legislation
 - recent changes to procurement legislation

- complex or unclear legislation
- involvement of significant monetary amounts (such as in the defense area)
- investigation by regulatory authorities
- complaints received from potential suppliers about questionable practices related to awarding of contracts
- former governmental officials functioning as executives of companies to which contracts have been awarded
- Program conditions, such as
 - newly implemented programs without existing management and accountability structures
 - programs established for political purposes
 - programs established to deal with an immediate emergency or crisis
 - programs experiencing unusual growth due to conditions beyond the control of management
- Grant and donor funding conditions, such as
 - noncompliance with grant requirements
 - unclear grant requirements
 - grants not reaching the intended recipient
 - complaints from intended recipients or interest groups, and lack of monitoring of grantee compliance with applicable law or regulation

Problematic or unusual relationships between the auditor and management, including the following:

- Denial of access to records, facilities, certain employees, customers, vendors, or others from whom audit evidence might be sought
- Undue time pressures imposed by management to resolve complex or contentious issues
- Complaints by management about the conduct of the audit or management intimidation of engagement team members, particularly in connection with the auditor's critical assessment of audit evidence or in the resolution of potential disagreements with management
- Unusual delays by the entity in providing requested information
- Unwillingness to facilitate auditor access to key electronic files for testing through the use of computer-assisted audit techniques
- Denial of access to key IT operations staff and facilities, including security, operations, and systems development personnel
- An unwillingness to add or revise disclosures in the financial statements to make them more complete and understandable
- An unwillingness to address identified deficiencies in internal control on a timely basis

Other circumstances, including the following:

- Unwillingness by management to permit the auditor to meet privately with those charged with governance
- Accounting policies that appear to be at variance with industry norms
- Frequent changes in accounting estimates that do not appear to result from changed circumstances
- Tolerance of violations of the entity's code of conduct

.A78

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing 240, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 240, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

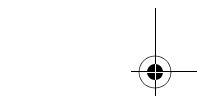
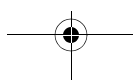
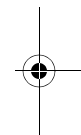
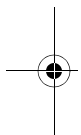
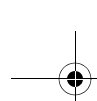
Paragraph 11 of ISA 240 and paragraph .11 of section 240 define *fraud*. However, the definition of fraud in paragraph .11 of section 240 was revised by changing the words “to obtain illegal or unjust advantage” to “results in a misstatement in financial statements that are the subject of an audit.” The ASB believes that (a) the definition in ISA 240 is too broad and could inappropriately expose auditors to additional liability in the United States, and (b) the meaning of *unjust* could be interpreted very broadly and subjectively in its application and could imply a scope well beyond the intent of the standard. The ASB believes that the change in the definition does not create significant differences between the application of ISA 240 and the application of section 240.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Section 240 contains requirements, consistent with requirements of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, as amended, that have been expanded from the requirements of ISA 240, or elevated from application material in ISA 240, as follows:

- The requirement in paragraph 14 of ISA 240 for the auditor to investigate inconsistent responses to auditor inquiries of management or those charged with governance has been expanded in paragraph .14 of section 240 to also include responses that are otherwise unsatisfactory (for example, vague or implausible responses).
- The requirement in paragraph 15 of ISA 240 that requires members of the engagement team to discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatements has been expanded in paragraph .15 of section 240 to include additional discussion items from application and other explanatory material in ISA 240 to requirements in section 240. These include a required brainstorming session focused very specifically on, among other things, internal and external fraud factors and the possibility of management override of controls. In addition, section 240 further clarifies the requirement for participation of key engagement team members and the engagement partner in the discussion and brainstorming sessions. Lastly, section 240 requires appropriate communication throughout the audit among the engagement team members. Several of these discussion items have been elevated from paragraphs A10–A11 of ISA 240.
- The requirement in paragraph 44 of ISA 240 to document the significant decisions reached during the discussion among the engagement team regarding fraud-related mat-

- ters has been expanded in paragraph .43 of section 240 to also require documenting how and when the discussion occurred and the audit team members who participated.
- Procedures elevated from paragraph A18 of ISA 240 to requirements in paragraph .19 of section 240, related to making inquiries of internal audit as part of performing risk assessment procedures, include determining (a) whether internal audit has performed any procedures to identify or detect fraud during the year, and (b) whether management has satisfactorily responded to any findings resulting from these inquiries.
 - The requirement in paragraph 34 of ISA 240 to evaluate whether the results of analytical procedures at or near the end of the reporting period indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement due to fraud has been expanded in paragraph .34 of section 240 to include the accumulated results of auditing procedures, including analytical procedures performed as substantive tests or when forming an overall conclusion. Section 240 also specifically requires performance of analytical procedures relating to revenue accounts through the end of the reporting period, in light of the generally higher risk of financial statement fraud involving revenue.
 - The requirements in paragraph 32(a) of ISA 240 address designing and performing auditing procedures to test the appropriateness of journal entries. In addition to essential guidance about addressing the risk of possible management override of controls, included in paragraph .32a of section 240 are requirements to
 - obtain an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process and controls over journal entries and other adjustments, and determine whether such controls are suitably designed and have been implemented.
 - consider fraud risk factors, the nature and complexity of accounts, and entries processed outside the normal course of business, elevated from the application and other explanatory material contained in paragraph A43 of ISA 240 in order to emphasize the importance of these considerations.
 - include identification and testing of specific journal entries regardless of controls.
 - The requirement for the auditor to design and perform auditing procedures to review accounting estimates for biases and evaluate whether the circumstances producing the bias, if any, represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, in paragraph 32(b) of ISA 240, has been expanded in paragraph .32b of section 240 to include those estimates that are based on highly sensitive assumptions.



AU-C Section 250*

Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to consider laws and regulations in an audit of financial statements. This section does not apply to other assurance engagements in which the auditor is specifically engaged to test and report separately on compliance with specific laws or regulations.¹

Effect of Laws and Regulations

.02 The effect on financial statements of laws and regulations varies considerably. Those laws and regulations to which an entity is subject constitute the legal and regulatory framework. The provisions of some laws or regulations have a direct effect on the financial statements in that they determine the reported amounts and disclosures in an entity's financial statements. Other laws or regulations are to be complied with by management, or set the provisions under which the entity is allowed to conduct its business, but do not have a direct effect on an entity's financial statements. Some entities operate in heavily regulated industries (such as banks and chemical companies). Others are subject only to the many laws and regulations that relate generally to the operating aspects of the business (such as those related to occupational safety and health and equal employment opportunity). Noncompliance with laws and regulations may result in fines, litigation, or other consequences for the entity that may have a material effect on the financial statements.

Responsibility for Compliance With Laws and Regulations (Ref: par. .A1–.A7)

Responsibility of Management

.03 It is the responsibility of management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the entity's operations are conducted in accordance with the provisions of laws and regulations, including compliance with the provisions of laws and regulations that determine the reported amounts and disclosures in an entity's financial statements.

Responsibility of the Auditor

.04 The requirements in this section are designed to assist the auditor in identifying material misstatement of the financial statements due to noncompliance with laws and regulations. However, the auditor is not responsible for preventing noncompliance and cannot be expected to detect noncompliance with all laws and regulations.

.05 The auditor is responsible for obtaining reasonable assurance that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error.² In conducting an audit of financial statements, the auditor takes into account the applicable legal and regulatory framework. Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, an unavoidable risk exists that some

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses compliance audits performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the standards for financial audits under *Government Auditing Standards*, and government audit requirements.

² Paragraph .11 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

130 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

material misstatements in the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).³ In the context of laws and regulations, the potential effects of inherent limitations on the auditor's ability to detect material misstatements are greater for the following reasons:

- Many laws and regulations relating principally to the operating aspects of an entity typically do not affect the financial statements and are not captured by the entity's information systems relevant to financial reporting.
- Noncompliance may involve conduct designed to conceal it, such as collusion, forgery, deliberate failure to record transactions, management override of controls, or intentional misrepresentations made to the auditor.
- Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter for legal determination, such as by a court of law.

Ordinarily, the further removed noncompliance is from the events and transactions reflected in the financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of, or recognize, the noncompliance.

.06 This section distinguishes the auditor's responsibilities regarding compliance with the following two categories of laws and regulations:

- a. The provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, such as tax and pension laws and regulations (see paragraph .13)
- b. The provisions of other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements but compliance with which may be
 - i. fundamental to the operating aspects of the business,
 - ii. fundamental to an entity's ability to continue its business, or
 - iii. necessary for the entity to avoid material penalties
(for example, compliance with the terms of an operating license, regulatory solvency requirements, or environmental regulations); therefore, noncompliance with such laws and regulations may have a material effect on the financial statements (see paragraph .14)

.07 In this section, differing requirements are specified for each of the previously mentioned categories of laws and regulations. For the category referred to in paragraph .06a, the auditor's responsibility is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements that are determined by the provisions of those laws and regulations. For the category referred to in paragraph .06b, the auditor's responsibility is limited to performing specified audit procedures that may identify noncompliance with those laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements.

.08 The auditor is required by this section to remain alert to the possibility that other audit procedures applied for the purpose of forming an opinion on financial statements may bring instances of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations to the auditor's attention. Maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit, as required by section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, is important in this context, given the extent of laws and regulations that affect the entity.⁴

Effective Date

.09 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

³ Paragraph .A48 of section 200.

⁴ Paragraph .15 of section 200.

Objectives

- .10** The objectives of the auditor are to
- obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements that are determined by the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on their determination (see paragraph .06a),
 - perform specified audit procedures that may identify instances of noncompliance with other laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements (see paragraph .06b), and
 - respond appropriately to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations identified during the audit.

Definition

- .11** For the purposes of this section, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Noncompliance. Acts of omission or commission by the entity, either intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations. Such acts include transactions entered into by, or in the name of, the entity or on its behalf by those charged with governance, management, or employees. Noncompliance does not include personal misconduct (unrelated to the business activities of the entity) by those charged with governance, management, or employees of the entity.

Requirements

The Auditor's Consideration of Compliance With Laws and Regulations

- .12** As part of obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, the auditor should obtain a general understanding of the following:⁵ (Ref: par. .A8)

- The legal and regulatory framework applicable to the entity and the industry or sector in which the entity operates
- How the entity is complying with that framework

- .13** The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements that are determined by the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on their determination (see paragraph .06a). (Ref: par. .A9–.A11)

- .14** The auditor should perform the following audit procedures that may identify instances of noncompliance with other laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements (see paragraph .06b): (Ref: par. .A12–.A15)

- Inquiring of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether the entity is in compliance with such laws and regulations
- Inspecting correspondence, if any, with the relevant licensing or regulatory authorities (Ref: par. .A16)

- .15** During the audit, the auditor should remain alert to the possibility that other audit procedures applied may bring instances of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations to the auditor's attention. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

- .16** In the absence of identified or suspected noncompliance, the auditor is not required to perform audit procedures regarding the entity's compliance with laws and regulations, other than

⁵ Paragraph .12 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

132 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

those set out in paragraphs .12–.15 of this section and the requirement in section 580, *Written Representations*, related to requesting written representations from management regarding the entity's compliance with laws and regulations.⁶

Audit Procedures When Noncompliance Is Identified or Suspected

.17 If the auditor becomes aware of information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations, the auditor should obtain (Ref: par. .A19–.A20)

- a. an understanding of the nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred and
- b. further information to evaluate the possible effect on the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A21)

.18 If the auditor suspects noncompliance may exist, the auditor should discuss the matter with management (at a level above those involved with the suspected noncompliance, if possible) and, when appropriate, those charged with governance. If management or, as appropriate, those charged with governance do not provide sufficient information that supports that the entity is in compliance with laws and regulations and, in the auditor's professional judgment, the effect of the suspected noncompliance may be material to the financial statements, the auditor should consider the need to obtain legal advice. (Ref: par. .A22–.A23)

.19 If sufficient information about suspected noncompliance cannot be obtained, the auditor should evaluate the effect of the lack of sufficient appropriate audit evidence on the auditor's opinion.

.20 The auditor should evaluate the implications of noncompliance in relation to other aspects of the audit, including the auditor's risk assessment and the reliability of written representations,⁷ and take appropriate action. (Ref: par. .A24–.A25)

Reporting of Identified or Suspected Noncompliance**Reporting Noncompliance to Those Charged With Governance**

.21 Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in management of the entity and aware of matters involving identified or suspected noncompliance already communicated by the auditor,⁸ the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance matters involving noncompliance with laws and regulations that come to the auditor's attention during the course of the audit, other than when the matters are clearly inconsequential. (Ref: par. .A26)

.22 If, in the auditor's professional judgment, the noncompliance referred to in paragraph .21 is believed to be intentional and material, the auditor should communicate the matter to those charged with governance as soon as practicable.

.23 If the auditor suspects that management or those charged with governance are involved in noncompliance, the auditor should communicate the matter to the next higher level of authority at the entity, if it exists. When no higher authority exists, or if the auditor believes that the communication may not be acted upon or is unsure about the person to whom to report, the auditor should consider the need to obtain legal advice.

Reporting Noncompliance in the Auditor's Report on the Financial Statements

.24 If the auditor concludes that the noncompliance has a material effect on the financial statements, and it has not been adequately reflected in the financial statements, the auditor should, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, express a qualified or adverse opinion on the financial statements.⁹ (Ref: par. .A27)

⁶ Paragraph .13 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

⁷ Paragraphs .22–.26 of section 580.

⁸ Paragraph .09 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

⁹ Paragraphs .08–.09 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.25 If the auditor is precluded by management or those charged with governance from obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence to evaluate whether noncompliance that may be material to the financial statements has, or is likely to have, occurred, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements on the basis of a limitation on the scope of the audit, in accordance with section 705.¹⁰ (Ref: par. .A27)

.26 If the auditor is unable to determine whether noncompliance has occurred because of limitations imposed by the circumstances rather than by management or those charged with governance, the auditor should evaluate the effect on the auditor's opinion, in accordance with section 705.¹¹

Reporting Noncompliance to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities

.27 If the auditor has identified or suspects noncompliance with laws and regulations, the auditor should determine whether the auditor has a responsibility to report the identified or suspected noncompliance to parties outside the entity. (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)

Documentation

.28 The auditor should include in the audit documentation a description of the identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations and the results of discussion with management and, when applicable, those charged with governance and other parties inside or outside the entity.¹² (Ref: par. .A30)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Responsibility for Compliance With Laws and Regulations (Ref: par. .03–.08)

Responsibility of Management

.A1 It is the responsibility of management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the entity's operations are conducted in accordance with laws and regulations. Laws and regulations may affect an entity's financial statements in different ways (for example, most directly, they may affect specific disclosures required of the entity in the financial statements, or they may prescribe the applicable financial reporting framework). They also may establish certain legal rights and obligations of the entity, some of which will be recognized in the entity's financial statements. In addition, laws and regulations may provide for the imposition of penalties in cases of noncompliance.

.A2 The following are examples of the types of policies and procedures an entity may implement to assist in the prevention and detection of noncompliance with laws and regulations:

- Monitoring legal requirements and ensuring that operating procedures are designed to meet these requirements
- Instituting and operating appropriate systems of internal control
- Developing, publicizing, and following a code of ethics or code of conduct
- Ensuring employees are properly trained and understand the code of ethics or code of conduct
- Monitoring compliance with the code of ethics or code of conduct and acting appropriately to discipline employees who fail to comply with it
- Engaging legal advisors to assist in monitoring legal requirements
- Maintaining a register of significant laws and regulations with which the entity has to comply within its particular industry and a record of complaints

¹⁰ Paragraphs .08 and .10 of section 705.

¹¹ Paragraphs .11–.14 of section 705.

¹² Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

134 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

In larger entities, these policies and procedures may be supplemented by assigning appropriate responsibilities to the following:

- An internal audit function
- An audit committee
- A legal function
- A compliance function

Responsibility of the Auditor

.A3 Because of the inherent limitations described in paragraph .05, an audit performed in accordance with GAAS provides no assurance that all noncompliance with laws and regulations will be detected or that any contingent liabilities that result will be disclosed.

.A4 Noncompliance by the entity with laws and regulations may result in a material misstatement of the financial statements. Detection of noncompliance, regardless of materiality, may affect other aspects of the audit, including, for example, the auditor's consideration of the integrity of management or employees. Noncompliance can result from fraudulent activity. Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, addresses the auditor's responsibility if fraud or suspected fraud is detected.

.A5 Whether an act constitutes noncompliance with laws and regulations is a matter for legal determination, which ordinarily is beyond the auditor's professional competence to determine. Nevertheless, the auditor's training, experience, and understanding of the entity and its industry or sector may provide a basis to recognize that some acts coming to the auditor's attention may constitute noncompliance with laws and regulations.

.A6 In accordance with specific statutory requirements, the auditor may be specifically required to report, as part of the audit of the financial statements, on whether the entity complies with certain provisions of laws or regulations. In these circumstances, section 806, *Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements*, and section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), set forth how these audit responsibilities are addressed in the auditor's report. Furthermore, when specific statutory reporting requirements exist, it may be necessary for the audit plan to include appropriate tests for compliance with these provisions of the laws and regulations.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A7 Auditors of governmental entities may have additional responsibilities with respect to the consideration of laws and regulations, which relate to the audit of financial statements or may extend to other aspects of the entity's operations.¹³

The Auditor's Consideration of Compliance With Laws and Regulations**Obtaining an Understanding of the Legal and Regulatory Framework (Ref: par. .12)**

.A8 To obtain a general understanding of the legal and regulatory framework and how the entity complies with that framework, the auditor may, for example

- use the auditor's existing understanding of the entity's industry and regulatory and other external factors;
- update the understanding of those laws and regulations that directly determine the reported amounts and disclosures in the financial statements;
- inquire of management about other laws or regulations that may be expected to have a fundamental effect on the operations of the entity;
- inquire of management concerning the entity's policies and procedures regarding compliance with laws and regulations (including the prevention of noncompliance), if appropriate;

¹³ See section 935 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), *Government Auditing Standards*, and OMB Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations*.

- inquire of management regarding the policies or procedures adopted for identifying, evaluating, and accounting for litigation claims;
- inquire of management regarding the use of directives issued by the entity and periodic representations obtained by the entity from management at appropriate levels of authority concerning compliance with laws and regulations; and
- consider the auditor's knowledge of the entity's history of noncompliance with laws and regulations.

Laws and Regulations Generally Recognized to Have a Direct Effect on the Determination of Material Amounts and Disclosures in the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .13)

.A9 Certain laws and regulations are well established, known to the entity and within the entity's industry or sector, and relevant to the entity's financial statements (as described in paragraph .06a). These laws and regulations generally are directly relevant to the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements and readily evident to the auditor. They could include those that relate to, for example

- the form and content of financial statements (for example, statutorily-mandated requirements);
- industry-specific financial reporting issues;
- accounting for transactions under government contracts (for example, laws and regulations that may affect the amount of revenue to be accrued); or
- the accrual or recognition of expenses for income tax or pension costs.

.A10 Some provisions in those laws and regulations may be directly relevant to specific assertions in the financial statements (for example, the completeness of income tax provisions), whereas others may be directly relevant to the financial statements as a whole. The auditor's responsibility regarding misstatements resulting from noncompliance with laws and regulations having a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements is the same as that for misstatements caused by fraud or error, as described in section 200.

.A11 Noncompliance with other provisions of such laws and regulations, and the laws and regulations described in paragraph .06b, may result in fines, litigation, or other consequences for the entity, the costs of which may need to be provided for or disclosed in the financial statements but are not considered to have a direct effect on the financial statements, as described in paragraph .06a.

Procedures to Identify Instances of Noncompliance—Other Laws and Regulations (Ref: par. .14)

.A12 Certain other laws and regulations may need particular attention by the auditor because they have a fundamental effect on the operations of the entity (as described in paragraph .06b). Noncompliance with laws and regulations that have a fundamental effect on the operations of the entity may cause the entity to cease operations or call into question the entity's continuance as a going concern. For example, noncompliance with the requirements of the entity's license or other entitlement to perform its operations could have such an impact (for example, for a bank, noncompliance with capital or investment requirements).

.A13 Many laws and regulations relating principally to the operating aspects of the entity do not directly affect the financial statements (their financial statement effect is indirect) and are not captured by the entity's information systems relevant to financial reporting. Their indirect effect may result from the need to disclose a contingent liability because of the allegation or determination of identified or suspected noncompliance. Those other laws or regulations may include those related to securities trading, occupational safety and health, food and drug administration, environmental protection, equal employment, and price-fixing or other antitrust violations. An auditor may not have a sufficient basis for recognizing possible noncompliance with such laws and regulations.

.A14 For the category referred to in paragraph .06b, the auditor's responsibility is limited to performing specified audit procedures (see paragraph .14) that may identify noncompliance with those laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements. Even when

136 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

those procedures are performed, the auditor may not become aware of the existence of noncompliance unless there is evidence of noncompliance in the records, documents, or other information normally inspected in an audit of financial statements.

.A15 Because the financial reporting consequences of other laws and regulations can vary depending on the entity's operations, the audit procedures required by paragraph .14 are intended to bring to the auditor's attention instances of noncompliance with laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements.

.A16 In some cases, the amount of an entity's correspondence with licensing or regulatory authorities is voluminous. In exercising professional judgment in such circumstances, the auditor may consider the following in determining the extent of inspection that may identify instances of noncompliance:

- The nature of the entity
- The nature and type of correspondence

Noncompliance Brought to the Auditor's Attention by Other Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .15)

.A17 Audit procedures applied to form an opinion on the financial statements may bring instances of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations to the auditor's attention. For example, such audit procedures may include the following:

- Reading minutes
- Inquiring of the entity's management and in-house or external legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments
- Performing substantive tests of details of classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures

.A18 Because the effect of laws and regulations on financial statements can vary considerably, written representations, as required by section 580, provide necessary audit evidence about management's knowledge of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations, the effects of which may have a material effect on the financial statements. However, written representations do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on their own and, accordingly, do not affect the nature and extent of other audit evidence that is to be obtained by the auditor.¹⁴

Audit Procedures When Noncompliance Is Identified or Suspected

Indications of Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations (Ref: par. .17)

.A19 If the auditor becomes aware of the existence of, or information about, the following matters, it may be an indication of noncompliance with laws and regulations:

- Investigations by regulatory organizations and government departments or payment of fines or penalties
- Payments for unspecified services or loans to consultants, related parties, employees, or government officials or government employees
- Sales commissions or agent's fees that appear excessive in relation to those ordinarily paid by the entity or in its industry or to the services actually received
- Purchases made at prices significantly above or below market price
- Unusual payments in cash, purchases in the form of cashiers' checks payable to bearer, or transfers to numbered bank accounts
- Unusual transactions with companies registered in tax havens
- Payments for goods or services made other than to the country from which the goods or services originated
- Existence of an information system that fails, whether by design or accident, to provide an adequate audit trail or sufficient evidence
- Unauthorized transactions or improperly recorded transactions
- Adverse media comment

¹⁴ Paragraph .04 of section 580.

- Noncompliance with laws or regulations cited in reports of examinations by regulatory agencies that have been made available to the auditor
- Failure to file tax returns or pay government duties or similar fees that are common to the entity's industry or the nature of its business

Obtaining an Understanding of an Act of Identified or Suspected Noncompliance (Ref: par. .17)

.A20 Procedures an auditor may perform to address the requirements of paragraph .17 include the following:

- Examining supporting documents, such as invoices, cancelled checks, and agreements, and comparing with accounting records
- Confirming significant information concerning the matter with the other party to the transaction or intermediaries, such as banks or lawyers
- Determining whether the transaction has been properly authorized
- Considering whether other similar transactions or events may have occurred and applying procedures to identify them

Matters Relevant to the Auditor's Evaluation (Ref: par. .17b)

.A21 Matters relevant to the auditor's evaluation of the possible effect on the financial statements include the following:

- The quantitative effect of noncompliance. The potential financial consequences of noncompliance with laws and regulations on the financial statements may include the imposition of fines, penalties, or damages; the threat of expropriation of assets; enforced discontinuation of operations; and litigation.
- The qualitative materiality of the effect of noncompliance. For example, an illegal payment of an otherwise immaterial amount could be material if a reasonable possibility exists that it could lead to a material contingent liability or a material loss of revenue.
- Whether the potential financial consequences require accrual or disclosure under the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, if material revenue or earnings are derived from transactions involving noncompliance, or if noncompliance creates significant risks associated with material revenue or earnings, such as loss of a significant business relationship, that information may require disclosure. Loss contingencies resulting from noncompliance that may require disclosure may be evaluated in the same manner as other loss contingencies under the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Whether the potential financial consequences are so serious as to call into question the fair presentation of the financial statements or otherwise make the financial statements misleading.

Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .18)

.A22 The auditor may discuss the findings with those charged with governance, in which case they may be able to provide additional audit evidence. For example, the auditor may confirm that those charged with governance have the same understanding of the facts and circumstances relevant to transactions or events that have led to the possibility of noncompliance with laws and regulations.

.A23 If management or, as appropriate, those charged with governance do not provide sufficient information to the auditor that the entity is in fact in compliance with laws and regulations, the auditor may consider it appropriate to consult with the entity's in-house legal counsel or external legal counsel about the application of the laws and regulations to the circumstances, including the possibility of fraud, and the possible effects on the financial statements. The auditor may request management to arrange for such consultation with the entity's legal counsel. If it is not considered appropriate to consult with the entity's legal counsel or if the auditor is not satisfied with the legal counsel's opinion, the auditor may consider it appropriate to consult the auditor's own legal counsel about whether a violation of a law or regulation is involved; the possible legal consequences, including the possibility of fraud; and what further action, if any, the auditor may take.

138 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Evaluating the Implications of Noncompliance (Ref: par. .20)***

.A24 As required by paragraph .20, the auditor evaluates the implications of noncompliance with regard to other aspects of the audit, including the auditor's risk assessment and the reliability of written representations. The implications of particular instances of noncompliance identified by the auditor will depend on the relationship of the perpetration and concealment, if any, of the act to specific control activities and the level of management or employees involved, especially implications arising from the involvement of the highest authority within the entity.

.A25 The auditor may consider whether withdrawal from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, is necessary when management or those charged with governance do not take the remedial action that the auditor considers appropriate in the circumstances, even when the noncompliance is not material to the financial statements. Factors that may affect the auditor's decision may include the implications of the failure to take remedial action, which may affect the auditor's ability to rely on management representations, and the effects of continuing association with the entity. When deciding whether withdrawal from the engagement is necessary, the auditor may consider seeking legal advice. If withdrawal from the engagement is not possible under applicable law or regulation, the auditor may consider alternative actions, including describing the noncompliance in an other-matter(s) paragraph in the auditor's report.¹⁵

Reporting of Identified or Suspected Noncompliance***Reporting Noncompliance to Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .21)***

.A26 The communication of matters involving identified or suspected noncompliance may describe the act of identified or suspected noncompliance, the circumstances of its occurrence, and the effect on the financial statements. The auditor may reach agreement in advance with those charged with governance on the nature of matters that would be considered clearly inconsequential and, thus, need not be communicated.

Issuance of a Modified Opinion on the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .24–.25)

.A27 If management or those charged with governance refuse to accept a modified opinion on the financial statements for the circumstances described in paragraphs .24–.25, the auditor may withdraw from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, and indicate the reasons for withdrawal in writing to those charged with governance.

Reporting Noncompliance to Regulatory and Enforcement Authorities (Ref: par. .27)

.A28 The auditor's professional duty to maintain the confidentiality of client information may preclude reporting identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations to a party outside the entity. However, the auditor's legal responsibilities vary by jurisdiction, and in certain circumstances, the duty of confidentiality may be overridden by statute, the law, or courts of law. In the following circumstances, a duty to notify parties outside the entity may exist:

- In response to inquiries from an auditor to a predecessor auditor, in accordance with the requirements of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*¹⁶
- In response to a court order
- In compliance with requirements for the audits of entities that receive financial assistance from a government agency

Because potential conflicts with the auditor's ethical and legal obligations for confidentiality may be complex, the auditor may consult with legal counsel before discussing noncompliance with parties outside the entity.

¹⁵ Paragraph .08 of section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

¹⁶ Paragraphs .11–.12 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A29 The auditor of a governmental entity may be required to report on compliance with laws, regulations, and provisions of contracts or grant agreements as part of the audit of the governmental entity's financial statements (for example, in an audit conducted in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*). The auditor also may be required to communicate instances of noncompliance to appropriate oversight bodies and funding agencies.

Documentation (Ref: par. .28)

.A30 The auditor's documentation of findings regarding identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations may include, for example

- copies of records or documents.
- minutes of discussions held with management, those charged with governance, or other parties inside or outside the entity.

.A31

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Changes to the language of section 250 include:

- In paragraphs .10a and .13, changing the phrase “compliance with the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct and material effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements” to the phrase “material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements that are determined by the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on their determination.” This change was made to address the ASB’s concerns that the language in ISA 250 expanded the auditor’s responsibility to encompass all aspects of those laws and regulations described in paragraph .06a of section 250, as opposed to focusing on the amounts and disclosures included in the financial statements. The ASB has discussed this issue with the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), and the wording in section 250 reflects the intent of ISA 250. The IAASB made subsequent changes to the application material in ISA 250 to make this clear.
- In paragraphs .10b and .14, changing “to help identify” to “that may identify.” The ASB believes that the wording of section 250 better conveys the intent of ISA 250.
- In paragraph .18, adding the phrase “(at a level above those involved with the suspected noncompliance, if possible).”

Such changes have been made to make section 250 easier to read and apply. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 250 and the application of section 250.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 16 of ISA 250 requires the auditor to request management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance to provide written representations regarding identified or suspected instances of noncompliance with relevant laws and regulations. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 580, *Written Representations*. The placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 260*

The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to communicate with those charged with governance in an audit of financial statements. Although this section applies regardless of an entity's governance structure or size, particular considerations apply when all of those charged with governance are involved in managing an entity. This section does not establish requirements regarding the auditor's communication with an entity's management or owners unless they are also charged with a governance role.

.02 This section is written in the context of an audit of financial statements but may also be applied, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, to audits of other historical financial information when those charged with governance have a responsibility to oversee the preparation and fair presentation of the other historical financial information.

.03 Recognizing the importance of effective two-way communication in an audit of financial statements, this section provides an overarching framework for the auditor's communication with those charged with governance and identifies some specific matters to be communicated. Additional matters to be communicated are identified in other AU-C sections (see exhibit A, "Requirements to Communicate With Those Charged With Governance in Other AU-C Sections"). In addition, section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, establishes specific requirements regarding the communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control the auditor has identified during the audit to those charged with governance. Further matters not required by generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) may be required to be communicated by agreement with those charged with governance or management or in accordance with external requirements. Nothing in this section precludes the auditor from communicating any other matters to those charged with governance.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.05 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. communicate clearly with those charged with governance the responsibilities of the auditor regarding the financial statement audit and an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit.
- b. obtain from those charged with governance information relevant to the audit.
- c. provide those charged with governance with timely observations arising from the audit that are significant and relevant to their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process.
- d. promote effective two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance. (Ref: par. .A1–.A5)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

142 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Definitions**

.06 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Management. The person(s) with executive responsibility for the conduct of the entity's operations. For some entities, management includes some or all of those charged with governance; for example, executive members of a governance board or an owner-manager.

Those charged with governance. The person(s) or organization(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and the obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. Those charged with governance may include management personnel; for example, executive members of a governance board or an owner-manager.

Requirements**Those Charged With Governance**

.07 The auditor should determine the appropriate person(s) within the entity's governance structure with whom to communicate. (Ref: par. .A6–.A9)

Communication With the Audit Committee or Other Subgroup of Those Charged With Governance

.08 If the auditor communicates with a subgroup of those charged with governance, such as the audit committee or an individual, the auditor should determine whether the auditor also needs to communicate with the governing body. (Ref: par. .A10–.A12)

When All of Those Charged With Governance Are Involved in Managing the Entity

.09 In some cases, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity; for example, a small business in which a single owner manages the entity and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, if matters required by this section are communicated with a person(s) with management responsibilities and that person(s) also has governance responsibilities, the matters need not be communicated again with the same person(s) in that person's governance role. These matters are noted in paragraph .14. The auditor should, nonetheless, be satisfied that communication with person(s) with management responsibilities adequately informs all of those with whom the auditor would otherwise communicate in their governance capacity.

Matters to Be Communicated***The Auditor's Responsibilities With Regard to the Financial Statement Audit***

.10 The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance the auditor's responsibilities with regard to the financial statement audit, including that (Ref: par. .A13–.A17)

- a. the auditor is responsible for forming and expressing an opinion about whether the financial statements that have been prepared by management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, are prepared, in all material respects, in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- b. the audit of the financial statements does not relieve management or those charged with governance of their responsibilities.

Planned Scope and Timing of the Audit

.11 The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit. (Ref: par. .A18–.A22)

Significant Findings or Issues From the Audit

- .12** The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance (Ref: par. .A23)
- a. the auditor's views about qualitative aspects of the entity's significant accounting practices, including accounting policies, accounting estimates, and financial statement disclosures. When applicable, the auditor should (Ref: par. .A24–.A25)
 - i. explain to those charged with governance why the auditor considers a significant accounting practice that is acceptable under the applicable financial reporting framework not to be most appropriate to the particular circumstances of the entity and
 - ii. determine that those charged with governance are informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates, including fair value estimates, and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.
 - b. significant difficulties, if any, encountered during the audit. (Ref: par. .A26)
 - c. disagreements with management, if any. (Ref: par. .A27)
 - d. other findings or issues, if any, arising from the audit that are, in the auditor's professional judgment, significant and relevant to those charged with governance regarding their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process.

Uncorrected Misstatements

- .13** The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)
- a. uncorrected misstatements accumulated by the auditor and the effect that they, individually or in the aggregate, may have on the opinion in the auditor's report. The auditor's communication should identify material uncorrected misstatements individually. The auditor should request that uncorrected misstatements be corrected.
 - b. the effect of uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures, and the financial statements as a whole.

When Not All of Those Charged With Governance Are Involved in Management

- .14** Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor also should communicate
- a. material, corrected misstatements that were brought to the attention of management as a result of audit procedures. (Ref: par. .A30)
 - b. significant findings or issues, if any, arising from the audit that were discussed, or the subject of correspondence, with management. (Ref: par. .A31)
 - c. the auditor's views about significant matters that were the subject of management's consultations with other accountants on accounting or auditing matters when the auditor is aware that such consultation has occurred.
 - d. written representations the auditor is requesting. (Ref: par. .A32)

The Communication Process***Establishing the Communication Process***

- .15** The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance the form, timing, and expected general content of communications. (Ref: par. .A33–.A37)

Forms of Communication

- .16** The auditor should communicate in writing with those charged with governance significant findings or issues from the audit (see paragraphs .12–.14) if, in the auditor's professional judgment, oral communication would not be adequate. This communication need not include matters that arose during the course of the audit that were communicated with those charged with governance and satisfactorily resolved. (Ref: par. .A38–.A40)

144 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Restricted Use***

.17 When the auditor communicates matters in accordance with this section in writing, the communication is considered a by-product report.¹ Accordingly, the auditor should indicate in the communication that it is intended solely for the information and use of those charged with governance and, if appropriate, management, and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Timing of Communications

.18 The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance on a timely basis. (Ref: par. .A41–.A42)

Adequacy of the Communication Process

.19 The auditor should evaluate whether the two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance has been adequate for the purpose of the audit. If it has not, the auditor should evaluate the effect, if any, on the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement and ability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence and should take appropriate action. (Ref: par. .A43–.A45)

Documentation

.20 When matters required to be communicated by this section have been communicated orally, the auditor should include them in the audit documentation, including when and to whom they were communicated.² When matters have been communicated in writing, the auditor should retain a copy of the communication as part of the audit documentation. (Ref: par. .A46)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Objectives*****The Role of Communication (Ref: par. .05)***

.A1 This section focuses primarily on communications from the auditor to those charged with governance. Nevertheless, effective two-way communication is important in assisting

- the auditor and those charged with governance in understanding matters related to the audit in context and in developing a constructive working relationship. This relationship is developed while maintaining the auditor's independence and objectivity.
- the auditor in obtaining from those charged with governance information relevant to the audit. For example, those charged with governance may assist the auditor in understanding the entity and its environment, in identifying appropriate sources of audit evidence, and in providing information about specific transactions or events.
- those charged with governance in fulfilling their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process, thereby reducing the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements.

.A2 Although the auditor is responsible for communicating specific matters in accordance with this section, management also has a responsibility to communicate matters of governance interest to those charged with governance. Communication by the auditor does not relieve management

¹ Paragraph .07 of section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

² Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

of this responsibility. Similarly, management's communication of these matters to those charged with governance does not relieve the auditor of the responsibility to also communicate them. However, communication of these matters by management may affect the form or timing of the auditor's communication.

.A3 Clear communication of specific matters required to be communicated by GAAS is an integral part of every audit. However, GAAS do not require the auditor to perform procedures specifically to identify other significant matters to communicate with those charged with governance.

Legal or Regulatory Restrictions on Communicating With Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .05)

.A4 Law or regulation may restrict the auditor's communication of certain matters with those charged with governance. For example, law or regulation may specifically prohibit a communication or other action that might prejudice an investigation by an appropriate authority into an actual, or suspected, illegal act. In some circumstances, potential conflicts between the auditor's obligations of confidentiality and obligations to communicate may be complex. In such cases, the auditor may consider obtaining legal advice.

.A5 In certain circumstances, the auditor may be required to report to a regulatory or enforcement body certain matters that have been communicated with those charged with governance. For example, *Government Auditing Standards* requires auditors to report fraud, illegal acts, violations of provisions of contracts or grant agreements, and abuse directly to such parties in certain circumstances.

Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .07)

.A6 Governance structures vary by entity, reflecting influences such as size and ownership characteristics. For example:

- In some entities, those charged with governance hold positions (for example, company directors) that are integral parts of the entity's legal structure. For other entities, a body that is not part of the entity is charged with governance, as with some government agencies.
- In some cases, some or all of those charged with governance also have management responsibilities. In others, those charged with governance and management are different people.
- Parties charged with governance of governmental entities may include members or staff of a legislative oversight committee, oversight bodies, or other parties contracting for the audit.

.A7 In most entities, governance is the collective responsibility of a governing body, such as a board of directors; a supervisory board; partners; proprietors; a committee of management; trustees; or equivalent persons. In some smaller entities, however, one person may be charged with governance, such as the owner-manager, when there are no other owners, or a sole trustee. When governance is a collective responsibility, a subgroup, such as an audit committee or even an individual, may be charged with specific tasks to assist the governing body in meeting its responsibilities.

.A8 Such diversity means that it is not possible for this section to specify for all audits the person(s) with whom the auditor is to communicate particular matters. Also, in some cases, the appropriate person(s) with whom to communicate may not be clearly identifiable from the engagement circumstances. An example of this is entities in which the governance structures are not formally defined, such as some family-owned entities, some not-for-profit organizations, and some government entities. When the appropriate person(s) with whom to communicate is not clearly identifiable, the auditor and the engaging party may need to discuss and agree on the relevant person(s) within the entity's governance structure with whom the auditor will communicate. In deciding with whom to communicate, the auditor's understanding of an entity's governance structure and processes obtained in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, is relevant. The appropriate person(s) with whom to communicate may vary depending on the matter to be communicated.

.A9 Section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, includes specific matters to be communicated by group auditors

146 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

with those charged with governance.³ When the entity being audited is a component of a group, the appropriate person(s) with whom to communicate is dependent on the nature of the matter to be communicated and the terms of the engagement.

Communication With the Audit Committee or Other Subgroup of Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .08)

.A10 When considering communicating with a subgroup of those charged with governance, the auditor may take into account matters such as

- the respective responsibilities of the subgroup and the governing body.
- the nature of the matter to be communicated.
- relevant legal or regulatory requirements.
- whether the subgroup (a) has the authority to take action regarding the information communicated and (b) can provide further information and explanations the auditor may need.
- whether the auditor is aware of potential conflicts of interest between the subgroup and other members of the governing body.

.A11 When deciding whether there is also a need to communicate information, in full or in summary form, with the governing body, the auditor may be influenced by the auditor's assessment of how effectively and appropriately the subgroup communicates relevant information with the governing body. The auditor may make explicit in the terms of the engagement that the auditor retains the right to communicate directly with the governing body.

.A12 Audit committees (or similar subgroups with different names) exist in many entities. Although the specific authority and functions of audit committees may differ, communication with the audit committee, when one exists, is a key element in the auditor's communication with those charged with governance. Good governance principles suggest that

- the auditor has access to the audit committee as necessary.
- the chair of the audit committee and, when relevant, the other members of the audit committee meet with the auditor periodically.
- the audit committee meets with the auditor without management present at least annually, unless prohibited by law or regulation.

Matters to Be Communicated

The Auditor's Responsibilities With Regard to the Financial Statement Audit (Ref: par. .10)

.A13 The auditor's responsibilities with regard to the financial statement audit are often included in the engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement that documents the terms of the engagement. Providing those charged with governance with a copy of that engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement may be an appropriate way to communicate with them that

- the auditor is responsible for performing the audit in accordance with GAAS and that the audit is designed to obtain reasonable, rather than absolute, assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.
- an audit of financial statements includes consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting.
- the auditor is responsible for communicating significant matters related to the financial statement audit that are, in the auditor's professional judgment, relevant to the responsibilities of those charged with governance in overseeing the financial reporting process. GAAS do not require the auditor to design procedures for the purpose of identifying other matters to communicate with those charged with governance.

³ Paragraphs .45–.48 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

- when applicable, the auditor is also responsible for communicating particular matters required by law or regulation, by agreement with the entity, or by additional requirements applicable to the engagement.

Independence (Ref: par. .10)

.A14 GAAS require independence for all audits. Relevant matters to consider in reaching a conclusion about independence include circumstances or relationships that create threats to auditor independence and the related safeguards that have been applied to eliminate those threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Comprehensive material on threats to independence and safeguards, including application to specific situations, is set forth in the AICPA's *Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 100-1).

.A15 Although the auditor's report affirms the auditor's independence, in certain situations, the auditor may determine that it is appropriate to communicate with those charged with governance circumstances or relationships (for example, financial interests, business or family relationships, or nonaudit services provided or expected to be provided) that, in the auditor's professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on independence, and to which the auditor gave significant consideration, in reaching the conclusion that independence has not been impaired.

.A16 It may be particularly appropriate to communicate with those charged with governance those circumstances or relationships discussed in paragraph .A15 in audits of public interest entities. In addition to entities subject to Securities and Exchange Commission reporting requirements, the AICPA's *Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards* considers the following entities to be *public interest entities*: (1) employee benefit and health and welfare plans subject to Employee Retirement Income Security Act audit requirements; (2) governmental retirement plans; (3) entities or programs (including for-profit entities) subject to Single Audit Act OMB Circular A-133 audit requirements and entities or programs subject to similar program oversight; and (4) financial institutions, credit unions, and insurance companies. These entities are public interest entities because their audited financial statements are (1) directly relied upon by significant numbers of stakeholders to make investment, credit, or similar decisions or (2) indirectly relied upon through regulatory oversight (for example, in the case of pension plans, banks, and insurance companies) and, therefore, the potential extent of harm to the public from an audit failure involving one of these entities would generally be significant.

.A17 The form and timing of communications regarding independence may be affected by the entity's governance structure and whether a formal subgroup, such as an audit committee, exists. In situations in which all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor may determine that those charged with governance have been informed of relevant facts regarding the auditor's independence through their management activities or through other means, such as the engagement letter. This is particularly likely when the entity is owner-managed and the auditor's firm has little involvement with the entity beyond a financial statement audit.

Planned Scope and Timing of the Audit (Ref: par. .11)

.A18 Care is required when communicating with those charged with governance about the planned scope and timing of the audit so as not to compromise the effectiveness of the audit, particularly when some or all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity. For example, communicating the nature and timing of detailed audit procedures may reduce the effectiveness of those procedures by making them too predictable. Certain factors described in paragraph .A38 may be relevant in determining the nature and extent of this communication.

.A19 Communication regarding the planned scope and timing of the audit may assist

- those charged with governance to discuss issues of risk and materiality with the auditor;
- those charged with governance to understand better the consequences of the auditor's work and to identify any areas in which they may request the auditor to undertake additional procedures; and
- the auditor to understand better the entity and its environment.

148 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A20 Matters communicated may include the following:

- How the auditor proposes to address the significant risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error
- The auditor's approach to internal control relevant to the audit including, when applicable, whether the auditor will express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting
- The application of materiality in the context of an audit, as discussed in section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*
- If the entity has an internal audit function, the extent to which the auditor will use the work of internal audit and how the external and internal auditors can best work together

.A21 Other planning matters that may be appropriate to discuss with those charged with governance include

- the views of those charged with governance about the following matters:
 - The appropriate person(s) in the entity's governance structure with whom to communicate
 - The allocation of responsibilities between those charged with governance and management
 - The entity's objectives and strategies and the related business risks that may result in material misstatements
 - Matters those charged with governance consider as warranting particular attention during the audit and any areas for which they request additional procedures to be undertaken
 - Significant communications with regulators
 - Other matters those charged with governance believe are relevant to the audit of the financial statements
- the attitudes, awareness, and actions of those charged with governance concerning (a) the entity's internal control and its importance in the entity, including how those charged with governance oversee the effectiveness of internal control, and (b) the detection or the possibility of fraud.
- the actions of those charged with governance in response to developments in law, accounting standards, corporate governance practices, and other related matters.
- the actions of those charged with governance in response to previous communications with the auditor.

.A22 Although communication with those charged with governance may assist the auditor to plan the scope and timing of the audit, it does not change the auditor's sole responsibility to establish the overall audit strategy and the audit plan, including the nature, timing, and extent of procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Significant Findings From the Audit (Ref: par. .12)

.A23 The communication of significant findings from the audit may include requesting further information from those charged with governance in order to complete the audit evidence obtained. For example, the auditor may confirm that those charged with governance have the same understanding of the facts and circumstances relevant to specific transactions or events.

Qualitative Aspects of the Entity's Significant Accounting Practices (Ref: par. .12a)

.A24 Financial reporting frameworks ordinarily allow for the entity to make accounting estimates and judgments about accounting policies and financial statement disclosures. Open and constructive communication about qualitative aspects of the entity's significant accounting practices may include comment on the acceptability of significant accounting practices. The appendix, "Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices," identifies matters that may be included in this communication.

.A25 Certain accounting estimates are particularly sensitive because of their significance to the financial statements and because of the possibility that future events affecting them may differ markedly from management's current judgments. In communicating with those charged with governance about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates, including fair value estimates, and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates, the auditor may consider communicating

- the nature of significant assumptions,
- the degree of subjectivity involved in the development of the assumptions, and
- the relative materiality of the items being measured to the financial statements as a whole.

Significant Difficulties Encountered During the Audit (Ref: par. .12b)

.A26 Significant difficulties encountered during the audit may include matters such as

- significant delays in management providing required information.
- an unnecessarily brief time within which to complete the audit.
- extensive unexpected effort required to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.
- the unavailability of expected information.
- restrictions imposed on the auditor by management.
- management's unwillingness to provide information about management's plans for dealing with the adverse effects of the conditions or events that lead the auditor to believe there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

In some circumstances, such difficulties may constitute a scope limitation that leads to a modification of the auditor's opinion.

Disagreements With Management (Ref: par. .12c)

.A27 Discussions with those charged with governance include any disagreements with management that arose during the audit, regardless of whether they were satisfactorily resolved, about matters that, individually or in the aggregate, could be significant to the entity's financial statements or the auditor's report. Disagreements with management may occasionally arise over, among other things, the application of accounting principles to the entity's specific transactions and events and the basis for management's judgments about accounting estimates. Disagreements may also arise regarding the scope of the audit, disclosures to be included in the entity's financial statements, and the wording of the auditor's report. For purposes of this section, disagreements do not include differences of opinion based on incomplete facts or preliminary information that are later resolved.

Uncorrected Misstatements (Ref: par. .13)

.A28 The auditor is not required to accumulate misstatements that the auditor believes are trivial.⁴ When there are a large number of individually immaterial uncorrected misstatements, the auditor may communicate the number and overall monetary effect of the uncorrected misstatements, rather than the details of each individual uncorrected misstatement.

.A29 The auditor may discuss with those charged with governance the reasons for, and the implications of, a failure to correct misstatements, taking into account the size and nature of the misstatement judged in the surrounding circumstances, and possible implications with regard to future financial statements.

Corrected Misstatements (Ref: par. .14a)

.A30 The auditor also may communicate corrected immaterial misstatements, such as frequently recurring immaterial misstatements that may indicate a particular bias in the preparation of the financial statements.

⁴ Paragraph .05 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

150 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Significant Findings or Issues Discussed or Subject to Correspondence With Management (Ref: par. .14b)***

.A31 Significant findings or issues discussed, or the subject of correspondence, with management may include matters such as

- business conditions affecting the entity and business plans and strategies that may affect the risks of material misstatement.
- discussions or correspondence in connection with the initial or recurring engagement of the auditor including, among other matters, any discussions or correspondence regarding accounting practices or the application of auditing standards.

Written Representations (Ref: par. .14d)

.A32 The auditor may provide those charged with governance with a copy of management's written representations.

The Communication Process***Establishing the Communication Process (Ref: par. .15)***

.A33 Clear communication of the following helps establish the basis for effective two-way communication:

- The auditor's responsibilities (paragraphs .10 and .A12–.A15)
- An overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit (paragraphs .11 and .A16–.A20)
- The expected general content of communications

.A34 Matters that may also contribute to effective two-way communication include discussion of

- the purpose of communications. When the purpose is clear, the auditor and those charged with governance are in a better position to have a mutual understanding of relevant issues and the expected actions arising from the communication process.
- the form in which communications will be made.
- the person(s) on the audit team and among those charged with governance who will communicate regarding particular matters.
- the auditor's expectation that communication will be two-way and that those charged with governance will communicate with the auditor matters they consider relevant to the audit. Such matters might include (a) strategic decisions that may significantly affect the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures; (b) the suspicion or the detection of fraud; or (c) concerns with the integrity or competence of senior management.
- the process for taking action and reporting back on matters communicated by the auditor.
- the process for taking action and reporting back on matters communicated by those charged with governance.

.A35 The communication process will vary with the circumstances, including the size and governance structure of the entity, how those charged with governance operate, and the auditor's view of the significance of matters to be communicated. Difficulty in establishing effective two-way communication may indicate that the communication between the auditor and those charged with governance is not adequate for the purpose of the audit (see paragraph .A43).

Communication With Management

.A36 Many matters may be discussed with management in the ordinary course of an audit, including matters to be communicated with those charged with governance in accordance with this section. Such discussions recognize management's executive responsibility for the conduct of the entity's operations and, in particular, management's responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements.

.A37 Before communicating matters with those charged with governance, the auditor may discuss them with management unless that is inappropriate. For example, it may not be appropriate to discuss with management questions of management's competence or integrity. In addition to recognizing management's responsibility, these initial discussions may clarify facts and issues and

give management an opportunity to provide further information and explanations. Similarly, when the entity has an internal audit function, the auditor may discuss matters with the internal auditor before communicating with those charged with governance.

Forms of Communication (Ref: par. .16)

.A38 Effective communication may involve formal presentations and written reports as well as less formal communications, including discussions. The auditor may communicate matters other than those identified in paragraph .16 either orally or in writing. Written communications may include an engagement letter that is provided to those charged with governance.

.A39 In addition to the significance of a particular matter, the form of communication (for example, whether to communicate orally or in writing, the extent of detail or summarization in the communication, and whether to communicate in a formal or informal manner) may be affected by factors such as

- whether the matter has been satisfactorily resolved.
- whether management has previously communicated the matter.
- the size, operating structure, control environment, and legal structure of the entity being audited.
- legal or regulatory requirements that may require a written communication with those charged with governance.
- the expectations of those charged with governance, including arrangements made for periodic meetings or communications with the auditor.
- the amount of ongoing contact and dialogue the auditor has with those charged with governance.
- whether there have been significant changes in the membership of a governing body.
- in the case of an audit of special purpose financial statements, whether the auditor also audits the entity's general purpose financial statements.

.A40 When a significant matter is discussed with an individual member of those charged with governance, such as the chair of an audit committee, it may be appropriate for the auditor to summarize the matter in later communications so that all of those charged with governance have full and balanced information.

Timing of Communications (Ref: par. .18)

.A41 The appropriate timing for communications will vary with the circumstances of the engagement. Considerations include the significance and nature of the matter and the action expected to be taken by those charged with governance. The auditor may consider communicating

- planning matters early in the audit engagement and, for an initial engagement, as part of the terms of the engagement.
- significant difficulties encountered during the audit as soon as practicable if those charged with governance are able to assist the auditor in overcoming the difficulties or if the difficulties are likely to lead to a modified opinion.

.A42 Other factors that may be relevant to the timing of communications include

- the size, operating structure, control environment, and legal structure of the entity being audited.
- any legal obligation to communicate certain matters within a specified timeframe.
- the expectations of those charged with governance, including arrangements made for periodic meetings or communications with the auditor.
- the time at which the auditor identifies certain matters (for example, timely communication of a material weakness to enable appropriate remedial action to be taken).
- whether the auditor is auditing both general purpose and special purpose financial statements.

152 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Adequacy of the Communication Process (Ref: par. .19)***

.A43 The auditor need not design specific procedures to support the evaluation of the two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance. Rather, that evaluation may be based on observations resulting from audit procedures performed for other purposes. Such observations may include

- the appropriateness and timeliness of actions taken by those charged with governance in response to matters communicated by the auditor. When significant findings or issues raised in previous communications have not been dealt with effectively, it may be appropriate for the auditor to inquire about why appropriate action has not been taken and to consider raising the point again. This avoids the risk of giving an impression that the auditor is satisfied that the matter has been adequately addressed or is no longer significant.
- the apparent openness of those charged with governance in their communications with the auditor.
- the willingness and capacity of those charged with governance to meet with the auditor without management present.
- the apparent ability of those charged with governance to fully comprehend matters raised by the auditor, such as the extent to which those charged with governance probe issues and question recommendations made to them.
- difficulty in establishing with those charged with governance a mutual understanding of the form, timing, and expected general content of communications.
- when all or some of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, their apparent awareness of how matters discussed with the auditor affect their broader governance responsibilities as well as their management responsibilities.

.A44 As discussed in paragraph .A1, effective two-way communication assists both the auditor and those charged with governance. Further, section 315 identifies participation by those charged with governance, including their interaction with internal auditors (if any) and external auditors, as an element of the entity's control environment. Inadequate two-way communication may indicate an unsatisfactory control environment, which will influence the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatements. There is also a risk that the auditor may not have obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to form an opinion on the financial statements.

.A45 If the two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance is not adequate and the situation cannot be resolved, the auditor may take actions such as the following:

- Modifying the auditor's opinion on the basis of a scope limitation
- Obtaining legal advice about the consequences of different courses of action
- Communicating with third parties (for example, a regulator) or a higher authority in the governance structure that is outside the entity, such as the owners of a business (for example, shareholders in a general meeting), or the responsible government agency for certain governmental entities
- Withdrawing from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation

Documentation (Ref: par. .20)

.A46 Documentation of oral communication may include a copy of minutes prepared by the entity as part of the audit documentation if those minutes are an appropriate record of the communication.

.A47**Appendix—Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices**

The communication required by paragraph .12a and discussed in paragraphs .A24–.A25 may include such matters as the following:

Accounting Policies

- The appropriateness of the accounting policies to the particular circumstances of the entity, considering the need to balance the cost of providing information with the likely benefit to users of the entity's financial statements (when acceptable alternative accounting policies exist, the communication may include identification of the financial statement items that are affected by the choice of significant policies as well as information on accounting policies used by similar entities)
- The initial selection of, and changes in, significant accounting policies, including the application of new accounting pronouncements (the communication may include the effect of the timing and method of adoption of a change in accounting policy on the current and future earnings of the entity, and the timing of a change in accounting policies with regard to expected new accounting pronouncements)
- The effect of significant accounting policies in controversial or emerging areas (or those unique to an industry, particularly when there is a lack of authoritative material or consensus)
- The effect of the timing of transactions in relation to the period in which they are recorded

Accounting Estimates

- For items for which estimates are significant, issues discussed in section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, including the following examples:
 - Management's identification of accounting estimates
 - Management's process for making accounting estimates
 - Risks of material misstatement
 - Indicators of possible management bias
 - Disclosure of estimation uncertainty in the financial statements

Financial Statement Disclosures

- The issues involved, and related judgments made, in formulating particularly sensitive financial statement disclosures (for example, disclosures related to revenue recognition, going concern, subsequent events, and contingency issues)
- The overall neutrality, consistency, and clarity of the disclosures in the financial statements

Related Matters

- The potential effect on the financial statements of significant risks and exposures and uncertainties, such as pending litigation, that are disclosed in the financial statements
- The extent to which the financial statements are affected by unusual transactions, including nonrecurring amounts recognized during the period, and the extent to which such transactions are separately disclosed in the financial statements
- The factors affecting asset and liability carrying values, including the entity's bases for determining useful lives assigned to tangible and intangible assets (the communication may explain how factors affecting carrying values were selected and how alternative selections would have affected the financial statements)
- The selective correction of misstatements (for example, correcting misstatements with the effect of increasing reported earnings, but not those that have the effect of decreasing reported earnings)

154 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**.A48****Exhibit A—Requirements to Communicate With Those Charged With Governance in Other AU-C Sections**

Requirements for the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance are included in other AU-C sections. This section does not change the requirements in

- a. paragraph .17 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*
- b. paragraphs .21, .38c(i), and .39–.41 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*
- c. paragraphs .14, .18, and .21–.23 of section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*
- d. paragraph .11 of section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*
- e. paragraph .27 of section 550, *Related Parties*
- f. paragraphs .10b–c, .12a, .15a, .17a, and .18 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*
- g. paragraphs .45–.48 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*
- h. paragraphs .12, .14, .19, and .28 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*
- i. paragraph .09 of section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*
- j. paragraphs .08, .11, .14, and .17 of section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, Professional Standards)
- k. paragraph .06 of section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, Professional Standards)
- l. paragraphs .23–.28 of section 930, *Interim Financial Information*
- m. paragraphs .36–.37 of section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, Professional Standards)

.A49**Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, and International Standard on Auditing 260, *Communication with Those Charged with Governance***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 260, *Communication with Those Charged with Governance*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Changes to the language of section 260 from ISA 260 include

- in paragraph .12, requiring that the auditor communicate with those charged with governance “the auditor’s views about qualitative aspects of the entity’s significant accounting practices” compared with the requirement in paragraph 16 of ISA 260 that the auditor communicate with those charged with governance “the auditor’s views about significant qualitative aspects of the entity’s accounting practices.” The ASB believes that the wording of section 260 better conveys the intent of ISA 260.
- in paragraph .16, changing the language in ISA 260 from “Written communications need not include all matters that arose during the course of the audit” to “This communication need not include matters that arose during the course of the audit that were communicated with those charged with governance and satisfactorily resolved.”

Such changes have been made to make section 260 easier to read and apply. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 260 and the application of section 260.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraphs 13 and 16 of ISA 260 require the auditor to communicate certain matters regarding independence in the case of listed entities. These requirements are not applicable to the audits of nonissuers in the United States and, therefore, are not included in section 260.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph .12a of section 260 requires the auditor, when applicable, to determine that those charged with governance are informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates and about the basis for the auditor’s conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.

Paragraph .14a and c of section 260 require, when not all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor to communicate (a) material, corrected misstatements that were brought to the attention of management as a result of audit procedures, and (b) the auditor’s views about significant matters that were the subject of management’s consultations with other accountants on accounting or auditing matters when the auditor is aware that such consultation has occurred. Paragraph .12c of section 260 requires the auditor to communicate

156 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

disagreements with management, if any. ISA 260 does not require communication of these matters. The ASB believes that it is important for these matters to be communicated to those charged with governance of nonissuers in the United States.

Paragraph .17 of section 260 requires the auditor, when communicating matters in accordance with section 260 in writing, to indicate in the communication that it is intended solely for the information and use of those charged with governance and, if appropriate, management and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone other than these specified parties. ISA 260 does not require this indication, nor does it prohibit it. The ASB believes that this communication meets the criteria for a by-product report under Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*.*

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Consistent with requirements in paragraphs 12–13 of ISA 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*, paragraph .13 of section 260 contains a requirement for the auditor to communicate certain matters regarding uncorrected misstatements. The ASB believes that this communication with those charged with governance is more appropriately placed in section 260. Paragraph 12(c)(i) of ISA 260 requires the auditor to communicate material weaknesses in internal control identified during an audit to those charged with governance. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*. The placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

* SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

AU-C Section 265*

Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to appropriately communicate to those charged with governance and management deficiencies in internal control that the auditor has identified in an audit of financial statements. This section does not impose additional responsibilities on the auditor regarding obtaining an understanding of internal control or designing and performing tests of controls over and above the requirements of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*. Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, establishes further requirements and provides guidance regarding the auditor's responsibility to communicate with those charged with governance regarding the audit.

.02 The auditor is required to obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement.¹ In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control. The auditor may identify deficiencies in internal control not only during this risk assessment process but also at any other stage of the audit. This section specifies which identified deficiencies the auditor is required to communicate to those charged with governance and management.

.03 Nothing in this section precludes the auditor from communicating to those charged with governance or management other internal control matters that the auditor has identified during the audit.

.04 This section is not applicable if the auditor is engaged to report on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting under AT section 501, *An Examination of an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With an Audit of Its Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

Effective Date

.05 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.06 The objective of the auditor is to appropriately communicate to those charged with governance and management deficiencies in internal control that the auditor has identified during the audit and that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are of sufficient importance to merit their respective attentions.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .13 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*. Paragraphs .A61–.A67 provide guidance on obtaining an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit.

158 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Definitions**

.07 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Deficiency in internal control. A deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A deficiency in *design* exists when (a) a control necessary to meet the control objective is missing, or (b) an existing control is not properly designed so that, even if the control operates as designed, the control objective would not be met. A deficiency in *operation* exists when a properly designed control does not operate as designed or when the person performing the control does not possess the necessary authority or competence to perform the control effectively.

Material weakness. A deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis.

Significant deficiency. A deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Requirements**Determination of Whether Deficiencies in Internal Control Have Been Identified**

.08 The auditor should determine whether, on the basis of the audit work performed, the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control. (Ref: par. .A1–.A4)

Evaluating Identified Deficiencies in Internal Control (Ref: par. .A5–.A14)

.09 If the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control, the auditor should evaluate each deficiency to determine, on the basis of the audit work performed, whether, individually or in combination, they constitute significant deficiencies or material weaknesses.

.10 If the auditor determines that a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control is not a material weakness, the auditor should consider whether prudent officials, having knowledge of the same facts and circumstances, would likely reach the same conclusion.

Communication of Deficiencies in Internal Control

.11 The auditor should communicate in writing to those charged with governance on a timely basis significant deficiencies and material weaknesses identified during the audit, including those that were remediated during the audit. (Ref: par. .A15–.A20 and .A28)

.12 The auditor also should communicate to management at an appropriate level of responsibility, on a timely basis (Ref: par. .A21 and .A28)

- a. in writing, significant deficiencies and material weaknesses that the auditor has communicated or intends to communicate to those charged with governance, unless it would be inappropriate to communicate directly to management in the circumstances. (Ref: par. .A16 and .A22–.A23)
- b. in writing or orally, other deficiencies in internal control identified during the audit that have not been communicated to management by other parties and that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are of sufficient importance to merit management's attention. If other deficiencies in internal control are communicated orally, the auditor should document the communication. (Ref: par. .A24–.A27)

.13 The communications referred to in paragraphs .11–.12 should be made no later than 60 days following the report release date. (Ref: par. .A16–.A17)

.14 The auditor should include in the written communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses (Ref: par. .A29–.A33)

- a. the definition of the term *material weakness* and, when relevant, the definition of the term *significant deficiency*.
- b. a description of the significant deficiencies and material weaknesses and an explanation of their potential effects. (Ref: par. .A29)
- c. sufficient information to enable those charged with governance and management to understand the context of the communication. In particular, the auditor should include in the communication the following elements that explain that (Ref: par. .A30–.A31)
 - i. the purpose of the audit was for the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements.
 - ii. the audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control.
 - iii. the auditor is not expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control.
 - iv. the auditor's consideration of internal control was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies, and therefore, material weaknesses or significant deficiencies may exist that were not identified.
- d. in accordance with section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] a restriction regarding the use of the communication to management, those charged with governance, others within the organization, and any governmental authority to which the auditor is required to report. (Ref: par. .A32)

.15 When the auditor issues a written communication stating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit, the communication should include the matters in paragraph .14a and c–d. (Ref: par. .A34–.A36)

.16 The auditor should not issue a written communication stating that no significant deficiencies were identified during the audit. (Ref: par. .A34)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Determination of Whether Deficiencies in Internal Control Have Been Identified (Ref: par. .08)

.A1 In determining whether the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control, the auditor may discuss the relevant facts and circumstances of the auditor's findings with the appropriate level of management. This discussion provides an opportunity for the auditor to alert management on a timely basis to the existence of deficiencies of which management may not have been previously aware. The level of management with whom it is appropriate to discuss the findings is one that is familiar with the internal control area concerned and that has the authority to take remedial action on any identified deficiencies in internal control. In some circumstances, it may not be appropriate for the auditor to discuss the auditor's findings directly with management (for example, if the findings appear to call management's integrity or competence into question [see paragraph .A22]).

[†] SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

160 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A2 In discussing the facts and circumstances of the auditor's findings with management, the auditor may obtain other relevant information for further consideration, such as

- management's understanding of the actual or suspected causes of the deficiencies.
- exceptions arising from the deficiencies that management may have noted (for example, misstatements that were not prevented by the relevant IT controls).
- a preliminary indication from management of its response to the findings.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A3 Although the concepts underlying control activities in smaller entities are likely to be similar to those in larger entities, the formality with which controls operate will vary. Further, smaller entities may find that certain types of control activities are not necessary because of controls applied by management. For example, management's sole authority for granting credit to customers and approving significant purchases can provide effective control over important account balances and transactions, lessening or removing the need for more detailed control activities.

.A4 Also, smaller entities often have fewer employees, which may limit the extent to which segregation of duties is practicable. However, in a small owner-managed entity, the owner-manager may be able to exercise more effective oversight than in a larger entity. On the other hand, such increased management oversight also may increase the risk of management override of controls.

Evaluating Identified Deficiencies in Internal Control (Ref: par. .09–.10)

.A5 The severity of a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control depends not only on whether a misstatement has actually occurred but also on

- the magnitude of the potential misstatement resulting from the deficiency or deficiencies and
- whether there is a reasonable possibility that the entity's controls will fail to prevent, or detect and correct, a misstatement of an account balance or disclosure. A reasonable possibility exists when the chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote.

Significant deficiencies and material weaknesses may exist even though the auditor has not identified misstatements during the audit.

.A6 Factors that affect the magnitude of a misstatement that might result from a deficiency, or deficiencies, in internal control include, but are not limited to, the following:

- The financial statement amounts or total of transactions exposed to the deficiency
- The volume of activity (in the current period or expected in future periods) in the account or class of transactions exposed to the deficiency

.A7 In evaluating the magnitude of the potential misstatement, the maximum amount by which an account balance or total of transactions can be overstated generally is the recorded amount, whereas understatements could be larger.

.A8 Risk factors affect whether there is a reasonable possibility that a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control will result in a misstatement of an account balance or disclosure. The factors include, but are not limited to, the following:

- The nature of the financial statement accounts, classes of transactions, disclosures, and assertions involved
- The cause and frequency of the exceptions detected as a result of the deficiency, or deficiencies, in internal control
- The susceptibility of the related asset or liability to loss or fraud
- The subjectivity, complexity, or extent of judgment required to determine the amount involved
- The interaction or relationship of the control(s) with other controls
- The interaction with other deficiencies in internal control
- The possible future consequences of the deficiency, or deficiencies, in internal control

- The importance of the controls to the financial reporting process—for example
 - general monitoring controls (such as oversight of management)
 - controls over the prevention and detection of fraud
 - controls over the selection and application of significant accounting policies
 - controls over significant transactions with related parties
 - controls over significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business
 - controls over the period-end financial reporting process (such as controls over nonrecurring journal entries)

.A9 The evaluation of whether a deficiency in internal control presents a reasonable possibility of misstatement may be made without quantifying the probability of occurrence as a specific percentage or range. Also, in many cases, the probability of a small misstatement will be greater than the probability of a large misstatement.

.A10 Controls may be designed to operate individually, or in combination, to effectively prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements.² For example, controls over accounts receivable may consist of both automated and manual controls designed to operate together to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements in the account balance. A deficiency in internal control on its own may not be sufficiently important to constitute a significant deficiency or a material weakness. However, a combination of deficiencies affecting the same significant account or disclosure, relevant assertion, or component of internal control may increase the risks of misstatement to such an extent to give rise to a significant deficiency or material weakness.

.A11 Indicators of material weaknesses in internal control include

- identification of fraud, whether or not material, on the part of senior management;
- restatement of previously issued financial statements to reflect the correction of a material misstatement due to fraud or error;
- identification by the auditor of a material misstatement of the financial statements under audit in circumstances that indicate that the misstatement would not have been detected by the entity's internal control; and
- ineffective oversight of the entity's financial reporting and internal control by those charged with governance.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A12 Law or regulation may require the auditor to communicate to those charged with governance or other relevant parties (such as regulators) deficiencies in internal control that the auditor has identified during the audit using specific terms and definitions that differ from those in this section. In such circumstances, the auditor uses such terms and definitions when communicating deficiencies in internal control in accordance with the requirements of the law or regulation and in accordance with this section.

.A13 When law or regulation requires the auditor to communicate deficiencies in internal control that the auditor has identified during the audit using specific terms, but such terms have not been defined, the auditor may use the definitions, requirements, and guidance in this section to comply with the law or regulation.

.A14 The requirements of this section remain applicable, notwithstanding that law or regulation may require the auditor to use specific terms or definitions.

Communication of Deficiencies in Internal Control (Ref: par. .11–.16)

Communication of Significant Deficiencies and Material Weaknesses to Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .11)

.A15 Communicating significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in writing to those charged with governance reflects the importance of these matters and assists those charged with

² Paragraph .A68 of section 315.

162 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

governance in fulfilling their oversight responsibilities. Section 260 establishes relevant considerations regarding communication with those charged with governance when all of them are involved in managing the entity.³

.A16 Although the auditor is required by paragraph .13 to make the communications referred to in paragraphs .11–.12 no later than 60 days following the report release date, the communication is best made by the report release date because receipt of such communication may be an important factor in enabling those charged with governance to discharge their oversight responsibilities. Nevertheless, because the auditor's written communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses forms part of the final audit file, the written communication is subject to the overriding requirement for the auditor to complete the assembly of the final audit file on a timely basis, no later than 60 days following the report release date.⁴

.A17 Early communication to those charged with governance or management may be important for some matters because of their relative significance and the urgency for corrective follow-up action. Regardless of the timing of the written communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses, the auditor may communicate these orally in the first instance to management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance to assist them in taking timely remedial action to minimize the risks of material misstatement. However, oral communication does not relieve the auditor of the responsibility to communicate the significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in writing, as this section requires.

.A18 The level of detail at which to communicate significant deficiencies and material weaknesses is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment in the circumstances. Factors that the auditor may consider in determining an appropriate level of detail for the communication include, for example, the following:

- The nature of the entity. For example, the communication required for a governmental entity may be different from that for a nongovernmental entity.
- The size and complexity of the entity. For example, the communication required for a complex entity may be different from that for an entity operating a simple business.
- The nature of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses that the auditor has identified.
- The entity's governance composition. For example, more detail may be needed if those charged with governance include members who do not have significant experience in the entity's industry or in the affected areas.
- Legal or regulatory requirements regarding the communication of specific types of deficiencies in internal control.

.A19 Management and those charged with governance may already be aware of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses that the auditor has identified during the audit and may have chosen not to remedy them because of cost or other considerations. The responsibility for evaluating the costs and benefits of implementing remedial action rests with management and those charged with governance. Accordingly, the requirements to communicate significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in paragraphs .11–.12 apply, regardless of cost or other considerations that management and those charged with governance may consider relevant in determining whether to remedy such deficiencies.

.A20 The fact that the auditor communicated a significant deficiency or material weakness to those charged with governance and management in a previous audit does not eliminate the need for the auditor to repeat the communication if remedial action has not yet been taken. If a previously communicated significant deficiency or material weakness remains, the current year's communication may repeat the description from the previous communication or simply reference the previous communication and the date of that communication. The auditor may ask management or, when appropriate, those charged with governance why the significant deficiency or material

³ Paragraph .09 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

⁴ Paragraph .16 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

weakness has not yet been remedied. A failure to act, in the absence of a rational explanation, may in itself represent a significant deficiency or material weakness.

Communication of Deficiencies in Internal Control to Management (Ref: par. .12)

.A21 Ordinarily, the appropriate level of management is the one that has responsibility and authority to evaluate the deficiencies in internal control and to take the necessary remedial action. For significant deficiencies and material weaknesses, the appropriate level is likely to be the CEO or CFO (or equivalent) because these matters also are required to be communicated to those charged with governance. For other deficiencies in internal control, the appropriate level may be operational management with more direct involvement in the control areas affected and with the authority to take appropriate remedial action.

Communication of Significant Deficiencies and Material Weaknesses in Internal Control to Management (Ref: par. .12a)

.A22 Certain identified significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control may call into question the integrity or competence of management. For example, there may be evidence of fraud or intentional noncompliance with laws and regulations by management or management may exhibit an inability to oversee the preparation of adequate financial statements, which may raise doubt about management's competence. Accordingly, it may not be appropriate to communicate such deficiencies directly to management.

.A23 Section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, establishes requirements and provides guidance on the reporting of identified or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations, including when those charged with governance are themselves involved in such noncompliance.⁵ Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, establishes requirements and provides guidance regarding communication to those charged with governance when the auditor has identified fraud or suspected fraud involving management.⁶

Communication of Other Deficiencies in Internal Control to Management (Ref: par. .12b)

.A24 During the audit, the auditor may identify other deficiencies in internal control that are not significant deficiencies or material weaknesses but that may be of sufficient importance to merit management's attention. The determination regarding which other deficiencies in internal control merit management's attention is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment in the circumstances, taking into account the likelihood and potential magnitude of misstatements that may arise in the financial statements as a result of those deficiencies.

.A25 The communication of other deficiencies in internal control that merit management's attention need not be in writing. When the auditor has discussed the facts and circumstances of the auditor's findings with management, the auditor may consider an oral communication of the other deficiencies to have been made to management at the time of these discussions. Accordingly, a formal communication need not be made subsequently.

.A26 If the auditor has communicated deficiencies in internal control, other than significant deficiencies or material weaknesses, to management in a prior period and management has chosen not to remedy them for cost or other reasons, the auditor need not repeat the communication in the current period. The auditor also is not required to repeat information about such deficiencies if the information has been previously communicated to management by other parties, such as internal auditors or regulators. However, the auditor may consider it appropriate to recommunicate these other deficiencies if there has been a change of management or if new information has come to the auditor's attention that alters the prior understanding of the auditor and management regarding the deficiencies. Nevertheless, the failure

⁵ Paragraphs .21–.27 of section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

⁶ Paragraph .40 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

164 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

of management to remedy other deficiencies in internal control that were previously communicated may become a significant deficiency requiring communication with those charged with governance. Whether this is the case depends on the auditor's professional judgment in the circumstances.

.A27 In some circumstances, those charged with governance may wish to be made aware of the details of other deficiencies in internal control that the auditor has communicated to management or be briefly informed of the nature of the other deficiencies. Alternatively, the auditor may inform those charged with governance when a communication of other deficiencies has been made to management. In either case, the auditor may communicate orally or in writing to those charged with governance, as appropriate.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .11–.12)

.A28 Auditors performing audits of governmental entities may have additional responsibilities to communicate deficiencies in internal control that the auditor identified during the audit, in a different format, at a level of detail or to parties not envisioned in this section. For example, significant deficiencies and material weaknesses may have to be communicated to a governmental authority, and such communications may be required to be made publicly available. Law or regulation also may require auditors to report deficiencies in internal control, irrespective of their severity. Further, law or regulation may require auditors to report on broader internal control-related matters (for example, controls related to compliance with law, regulation, or provisions of contracts or grant agreements).⁷

Content of Written Communication of Significant Deficiencies and Material Weaknesses in Internal Control (Ref: par. .14–.16)

.A29 In explaining the potential effects of the significant deficiencies and material weaknesses, the auditor need not quantify those effects. The potential effects may be described in terms of the control objectives and types of errors the control was designed to prevent, or detect and correct, or in terms of the risk(s) of misstatement that the control was designed to address. The potential effects may be evident from the description of the significant deficiencies or material weaknesses.

.A30 The significant deficiencies or material weaknesses may be grouped together for reporting purposes when it is appropriate to do so. The auditor also may include in the written communication suggestions for remedial action on the deficiencies, management's actual or proposed responses, and a statement about whether the auditor has undertaken any steps to verify whether management's responses have been implemented (see paragraph .A33).

.A31 The auditor may consider it appropriate to include the following information as additional context for the communication:

- The general inherent limitations of internal control, including the possibility of management override of controls
- The specific nature and extent of the auditor's consideration of internal control during the audit

Restriction on Use (Ref: par. .14d)

.A32 Law or regulation may require the auditor or management to furnish a copy of the auditor's written communication on significant deficiencies and material weaknesses to governmental authorities. When this is the case, the auditor's written communication may identify such governmental authorities in the restricted use paragraph. Because the written communication is a by-

⁷ See section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

product of the audit, section 905 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)[†] does not permit the auditor to add parties, other than those identified in paragraph .14d, as specified parties. In some instances, the restricted-use communication may be included in a document that also contains a general-use report. The restricted-use communication remains restricted as to use, and the general-use report continues to be for general use.

Management's Written Response

.A33 Management may wish to or may be required by a regulator to prepare a written response to the auditor's communication regarding significant deficiencies or material weaknesses identified during the audit. Such management communications may include a description of corrective actions taken by the entity, the entity's plans to implement new controls, or a statement indicating that management believes the cost of correcting a significant deficiency or material weakness would exceed the benefits to be derived from doing so. If such a written response is included in a document containing the auditor's written communication to management and those charged with governance concerning identified significant deficiencies or material weaknesses, the auditor may add a paragraph to the written communication disclaiming an opinion on such information. The following is an example of such a paragraph:

ABC Company's written response to the significant deficiencies [*and material weaknesses*] identified in our audit was not subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

No Material Weakness Communications (Ref: par. .15-.16)

.A34 Management or those charged with governance may request a written communication indicating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit. A written communication indicating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit does not provide any assurance about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting. However, an auditor is not precluded from issuing such a communication, provided that the communication includes the matters required by paragraph .15. However, a written communication indicating that no significant deficiencies were identified during the audit is precluded by paragraph .16 because such a communication has the potential to be misunderstood or misused.

.A35 Exhibit B, "Illustrative No Material Weakness Communication," includes an illustrative communication indicating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A36 A written communication indicating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit may be required to be furnished to governmental authorities. As described in paragraph .A32, the auditor's written communication may identify the governmental authority as a specified party in the restricted use paragraph. The auditor is not permitted to add other parties as specified parties.

[†] SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

.A37

Appendix—Examples of Circumstances That May Be Deficiencies, Significant Deficiencies, or Material Weaknesses

Paragraph .A11 identifies indicators of material weaknesses in internal control. The following are examples of circumstances that may be deficiencies, significant deficiencies, or material weaknesses.

Deficiencies in the Design of Controls

The following are examples of circumstances that may be deficiencies, significant deficiencies, or material weaknesses related to the design of controls:

- Inadequate design of controls over the preparation of the financial statements being audited.
- Inadequate design of controls over a significant account or process.
- Inadequate documentation of the components of internal control.
- Insufficient control consciousness within the organization (for example, the tone at the top and the control environment).
- Evidence of ineffective aspects of the control environment, such as indications that significant transactions in which management is financially interested are not being appropriately scrutinized by those charged with governance.
- Evidence of an ineffective entity risk assessment process, such as management's failure to identify a risk of material misstatement that the auditor would expect the entity's risk assessment process to have identified.
- Evidence of an ineffective response to identified significant risks (for example, absence of controls over such a risk).
- Absent or inadequate segregation of duties within a significant account or process.
- Absent or inadequate controls over the safeguarding of assets (this applies to controls that the auditor determines would be necessary for effective internal control over financial reporting).
- Inadequate design of IT general and application controls that prevents the information system from providing complete and accurate information consistent with financial reporting objectives and current needs.
- Employees or management who lack the qualifications and training to fulfill their assigned functions. For example, in an entity that prepares financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), the person responsible for the accounting and reporting function lacks the skills and knowledge to apply GAAP in recording the entity's financial transactions or preparing its financial statements.
- Inadequate design of monitoring controls used to assess the design and operating effectiveness of the entity's internal control over time.
- Absence of an internal process to report deficiencies in internal control to management on a timely basis.
- Absence of a risk assessment process within the entity when such a process would ordinarily be expected to have been established.

Failures in the Operation of Controls

The following are examples of circumstances that may be deficiencies, significant deficiencies, or material weaknesses related to the operation of controls:

- Failure in the operation of effectively designed controls over a significant account or process (for example, the failure of a control such as dual authorization for significant disbursements within the purchasing process).
- Failure of the information and communication component of internal control to provide complete and accurate output because of deficiencies in timeliness, completeness, or accuracy (for example, the failure to obtain timely and accurate consolidating information from remote locations that is needed to prepare the financial statements).

- Failure of controls designed to safeguard assets from loss, damage, or misappropriation. This circumstance may need careful consideration before it is evaluated as a significant deficiency or material weakness. For example, assume that a company uses security devices to safeguard its inventory (preventive controls) and also performs timely periodic physical inventory counts (detective control) with regard to its financial reporting. Although the physical inventory count does not safeguard the inventory from theft or loss, it prevents a material misstatement of the financial statements if performed effectively and timely. Therefore, given that the definitions of *material weakness* and *significant deficiency* relate to the likelihood of misstatement of the financial statements, the failure of a preventive control, such as inventory tags, will not result in a significant deficiency or material weakness if the detective control (physical inventory counts) prevents a misstatement of the financial statements. Material weaknesses relating to controls over the safeguarding of assets would only exist if the company does not have effective controls (considering both safeguarding and other controls) to prevent, or detect and correct, a material misstatement of the financial statements.
- Failure to perform reconciliations of significant accounts. For example, accounts receivable subsidiary ledgers are not reconciled to the general ledger account in a timely or accurate manner.
- Undue bias or lack of objectivity by those responsible for accounting decisions (for example, consistent understatement of expenses or overstatement of allowances at the direction of management).
- Misrepresentation by entity personnel to the auditor (an indicator of fraud).
- Management override of controls.
- Failure of an application control caused by a deficiency in the design or operation of an IT general control.
- An observed deviation rate that exceeds the number of deviations expected by the auditor in a test of the operating effectiveness of a control. For example, if the auditor designs a test in which he or she selects a sample and expects no deviations, the finding of one deviation is a nonnegligible deviation rate because based on the results of the auditor's test of the sample, the desired level of confidence was not obtained.

.A38

Exhibit A—Illustrative Written Communication

The following is an illustrative written communication encompassing the requirements in paragraph .14.

To Management and *[identify the body or individuals charged with governance, such as the entity's Board of Directors]* of ABC Company

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements of ABC Company (the "Company") as of and for the year ended December 31, 20XX, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, we considered the Company's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the preceding paragraph and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be *[material weaknesses or material weaknesses or significant deficiencies]* and therefore, *[material weaknesses or material weaknesses or significant deficiencies]* may exist that were not identified. However, as discussed below, we identified certain deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be *[material weaknesses or significant deficiencies or material weaknesses and significant deficiencies]*.

A deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. *[We consider the following deficiencies in the Company's internal control to be material weaknesses:]*

[Describe the material weaknesses that were identified and an explanation of their potential effects.]

[A significant deficiency is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance. We consider the following deficiencies in the Company's internal control to be significant deficiencies:]

[Describe the significant deficiencies that were identified and an explanation of their potential effects.]

[If the auditor is communicating significant deficiencies and did not identify any material weaknesses, the auditor may state that none of the identified significant deficiencies are considered to be material weaknesses.]

This communication is intended solely for the information and use of management, *[identify the body or individuals charged with governance]*, others within the organization, and *[identify any governmental authorities to which the auditor is required to report]* and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's Signature]

[Date]

.A39

Exhibit B—Illustrative No Material Weakness Communication

The following is an illustrative written communication indicating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit.

To Management and *[identify the body or individuals charged with governance, such as the entity's Board of Directors]* of ABC Company

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements of ABC Company (the "Company") as of and for the year ended December 31, 20XX, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, we considered the Company's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.

A deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

[If one or more significant deficiencies have been identified, the auditor may add the following: Our audit was also not designed to identify deficiencies in internal control that might be significant deficiencies. A significant deficiency is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance. We communicated the significant deficiencies identified during our audit in a separate communication dated [date].]

This communication is intended solely for the information and use of management, *[identify the body or individuals charged with governance]*, others within the organization, and *[identify any governmental authorities to which the auditor is required to report]* and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's Signature]

[Date]

.A40

Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing 265, *Communicating Deficiencies in Internal Control to Those Charged with Governance and Management*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 265, *Communicating Deficiencies in Internal Control to Those Charged with Governance and Management*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Section 265 includes and defines the term *material weakness*, whereas ISA 265 does not.

The definition of *material weakness*, along with the definitions of *deficiency in internal control* and *significant deficiency in internal control* have been modified to align with the definitions of these terms in Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 15, *An Examination of an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With an Audit of Its Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AT sec. 501). These terms and definitions are consistent with those used in the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB). The ASB believes that consistency between its standards and those of the PCAOB in the use and definition of these terms is essential in the United States due to legal and regulatory requirements, including those pertaining to the evaluation of the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting.

The ASB believes that the definitions are consistent with the intent of ISA 265 and that the modifications do not create differences between the application of ISA 265 and the application of section 265.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Section 265 requires the auditor to evaluate each deficiency to determine, on the basis of the audit work performed, whether, individually or in combination, the deficiencies constitute significant deficiencies or material weaknesses. ISA 265 does not explicitly refer to the auditor's evaluation of each deficiency in making this determination. The ASB believes that the requirement in section 265 is consistent with the intent of ISA 265.

Section 265 requires the auditor to communicate significant deficiencies and material weaknesses to management and those charged with governance. Because ISA 265 does not include or define the term *material weakness*, ISA 265 does not contain a requirement to separately identify or communicate material weaknesses.

Section 265 includes an additional requirement for the auditor to consider, if the auditor determines that a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control is not a material weakness, whether prudent officials, having knowledge of the same facts and circumstances, would likely reach the same conclusion (paragraph .10).

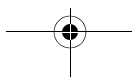
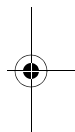
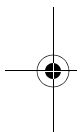
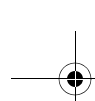
Section 265 explicitly requires the auditor to document the communication of other deficiencies in internal control that are communicated orally to management (paragraph .12*b*).

Paragraphs 9–10 of ISA 265 require the auditor to communicate to those charged with governance and management on a timely basis. Paragraph .13 of section 265 requires the communication to be made no later than 60 days following the report release date. ISA 265 recognizes in paragraph A13 that the written communication of significant deficiencies forms part of the final audit file and is subject to the overriding requirement for the auditor to complete the assembly of the final audit file on a timely basis. ISA 230, *Audit Documentation*, states that an appropriate time limit within which to complete the assembly of the final audit file is ordinarily not more than 60 days after the date of the auditor's report.

In addition to the required elements of the written communication identified in paragraph 11 of ISA 265, paragraph .14 of section 265 requires that the following additional items/elements be included in the written communication:

- The definition of *material weakness* and, when relevant, the definition of *significant deficiency*
- An explanation that the auditor is not expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control
- An explanation that the auditor's consideration of internal control was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies
- A statement restricting the use of the communication to management, those charged with governance, others within the organization, and any governmental authority to which the auditor is required to report

Paragraph .15 of section 265 includes reporting requirements when the auditor issues a written communication stating that no material weaknesses were identified during the audit of the financial statements. Paragraph .16 of section 265 prohibits the issuance of a written communication stating that no significant deficiencies were identified during the audit. ISA 265 does not address the issuance of communications indicating no material weaknesses or no significant deficiencies.



AU-C Section 300-499* **RISK ASSESSMENT AND RESPONSE TO ASSESSED RISKS**

AU-C Section 300*

Planning an Audit

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to plan an audit of financial statements. This section is written in the context of recurring audits. Additional considerations in an initial audit engagement are separately identified in this section. Matters related to planning audits of group financial statements are addressed in section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*. (Ref: par. .A1–.A3)

The Role and Timing of Planning

.02 Planning an audit involves establishing the overall audit strategy for the engagement and developing an audit plan. Adequate planning benefits the audit of financial statements in several ways, including the following:

- Helping the auditor identify and devote appropriate attention to important areas of the audit
- Helping the auditor identify and resolve potential problems on a timely basis
- Helping the auditor properly organize and manage the audit engagement so that it is performed in an effective and efficient manner
- Assisting in the selection of engagement team members with appropriate levels of capabilities and competence to respond to anticipated risks and allocating team member responsibilities
- Facilitating the direction and supervision of engagement team members and the review of their work
- Assisting, when applicable, in coordination of work done by auditors of components and specialists

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.04 The objective of the auditor is to plan the audit so that it will be performed in an effective manner.

Requirements

Involvement of Key Engagement Team Members

.05 The engagement partner and other key members of the engagement team should be involved in planning the audit, including planning and participating in the discussion among engagement team members. (Ref: par. .A4–.A5)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

174 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Preliminary Engagement Activities**

.06 The auditor should undertake the following activities at the beginning of the current audit engagement:

- a. Performing procedures required by section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, regarding the continuance of the client relationship and the specific audit engagement
- b. Evaluating compliance with relevant ethical requirements in accordance with section 220
- c. Establishing an understanding of the terms of the engagement as required by section 210, *Terms of Engagement* (Ref: par. .A6–.A8)

Planning Activities

.07 The auditor should establish an overall audit strategy that sets the scope, timing, and direction of the audit and that guides the development of the audit plan.

.08 In establishing the overall audit strategy, the auditor should

- a. identify the characteristics of the engagement that define its scope;
- b. ascertain the reporting objectives of the engagement in order to plan the timing of the audit and the nature of the communications required;
- c. consider the factors that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are significant in directing the engagement team's efforts;
- d. consider the results of preliminary engagement activities and, when applicable, whether knowledge gained on other engagements performed by the engagement partner for the entity is relevant; and
- e. ascertain the nature, timing, and extent of resources necessary to perform the engagement. (Ref: par. .A9–.A13)

.09 The auditor should develop an audit plan that includes a description of the following:

- a. The nature and extent of planned risk assessment procedures, as determined under section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*
- b. The nature, timing, and extent of planned further audit procedures at the relevant assertion level, as determined under section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*
- c. Other planned audit procedures that are required to be carried out so that the engagement complies with generally accepted auditing standards (Ref: par. .A14)

.10 The auditor should update and change the overall audit strategy and audit plan, as necessary, during the course of the audit. (Ref: par. .A15)

.11 The auditor should plan the nature, timing, and extent of direction and supervision of engagement team members and the review of their work. (Ref: par. .A16–.A17)

Determining the Extent of Involvement of Professionals Possessing Specialized Skills

.12 The auditor should consider whether specialized skills are needed in performing the audit. If specialized skills are needed, the auditor should seek the assistance of a professional possessing such skills, who either may be on the auditor's staff or an outside professional.¹ In such circumstances, the auditor should have sufficient knowledge to communicate the objectives of the other professional's work; evaluate whether the specified audit procedures will meet the auditor's objectives; and evaluate the results of the audit procedures applied as they relate to the nature, timing, and extent of further planned audit procedures. Section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, addresses the auditor's use of the work of specialists in an audit. (Ref: par. .A18–.A19)

¹ Paragraph .16 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

Additional Considerations in Initial Audit Engagements

.13 The auditor should undertake the following activities prior to starting an initial audit:

- a. Performing procedures required by section 220
- b. Communicating with the predecessor auditor when there has been a change of auditors, in accordance with section 210² (Ref: par. .A20)

Documentation

.14 The auditor should include in the audit documentation the following:³

- a. The overall audit strategy
- b. The audit plan
- c. Any significant changes made during the audit engagement to the overall audit strategy or the audit plan and the reasons for such changes (Ref: par. .A21–.A24)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**The Role and Timing of Planning (Ref: par. .01)**

.A1 The nature and extent of planning activities will vary according to the size and complexity of the entity, the key engagement team members' previous experience with the entity, and changes in circumstances that occur during the audit engagement.

.A2 Planning is not a discrete phase of an audit but rather a continual and iterative process that often begins shortly after (or in connection with) the completion of the previous audit and continues until the completion of the current audit engagement. Planning, however, includes consideration of the timing of certain activities and audit procedures that need to be completed prior to the performance of further audit procedures. For example, planning includes the need to consider, prior to the auditor's identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement, such matters as the following:

- The analytical procedures to be applied as risk assessment procedures
- A general understanding of the legal and regulatory framework applicable to the entity and how the entity is complying with that framework
- The determination of materiality
- The involvement of specialists
- The performance of other risk assessment procedures

.A3 The auditor may decide to discuss elements of planning with the entity's management to facilitate the conduct and management of the audit engagement (for example, to coordinate some of the planned audit procedures with the work of the entity's personnel). Although these discussions often occur, the overall audit strategy and the audit plan remain the auditor's responsibility. When discussing matters included in the overall audit strategy or audit plan, care is required in order not to compromise the effectiveness of the audit. For example, discussing the nature and timing of detailed audit procedures with management may compromise the effectiveness of the audit by making the audit procedures too predictable.

Involvement of Key Engagement Team Members (Ref: par. .05)

.A4 The involvement of the engagement partner and other key members of the engagement team in planning the audit draws on their experience and insight, thereby enhancing the effectiveness and efficiency of the planning process. The engagement partner may delegate portions of the planning and supervision of the audit to other firm personnel.

² Paragraph .11 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

³ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

176 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A5 Section 315 requires a discussion among the audit team about the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement.⁴ This discussion also may include the discussion regarding the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, as required by section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.⁵ The objective of this discussion is for members of the audit team to gain a better understanding of the potential for material misstatements of the financial statements resulting from fraud or error in the specific areas assigned to them and to understand how the results of the audit procedures that they perform may affect other aspects of the audit, including the decisions about the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

Preliminary Engagement Activities (Ref: par. .06)

.A6 Performing the preliminary engagement activities, which are specified in paragraph .06, at the beginning of the current audit engagement assists the auditor in identifying and evaluating events or circumstances that may adversely affect the auditor's ability to plan and perform the audit engagement.

.A7 Performing these preliminary engagement activities enables the auditor to plan an audit engagement for which, for example

- the auditor maintains the necessary independence and ability to perform the engagement.
- the auditor has no issues with management integrity that may affect the auditor's willingness to continue the engagement.
- the auditor has no misunderstanding with the entity about the terms of the engagement.

.A8 The auditor's consideration of client continuance and relevant ethical requirements, including independence, occurs throughout the audit engagement as conditions and changes in circumstances occur. Performing initial procedures on both client continuance and evaluation of relevant ethical requirements (including independence) at the beginning of the current audit engagement means that they are completed prior to the performance of other significant activities for the current audit engagement. For continuing audit engagements, such initial procedures often begin shortly after (or in connection with) the completion of the previous audit.

Planning Activities**The Overall Audit Strategy (Ref: par. .07–.08)**

.A9 The process of establishing the overall audit strategy assists the auditor to determine, subject to the completion of the auditor's risk assessment procedures, such matters as the following:

- The resources to deploy for specific audit areas, such as the use of appropriately experienced team members for high risk areas or the involvement of specialists on complex matters
- The amount of resources to allocate to specific audit areas, such as the number of team members assigned to observe the inventory count at material locations, the extent of review of component auditors' work in the case of group audits, or the audit budget (in hours) to allocate to high risk areas
- When these resources are to be deployed, such as whether at an interim audit stage or at key cut-off dates
- How such resources are managed, directed, and supervised, such as when team briefing and debriefing meetings are expected to be held, how the engagement partner and manager reviews are expected to take place (for example, on site or off site), and whether to complete engagement quality control reviews

.A10 The appendix, "Considerations in Establishing the Overall Audit Strategy," lists examples of considerations in establishing the overall audit strategy.

⁴ Paragraph .11 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

⁵ Paragraph .15 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

.A11 Once the overall audit strategy has been established, an audit plan can be developed to address the various matters identified in the overall audit strategy, taking into account the need to achieve the audit objectives through the efficient use of the auditor's resources. The establishment of the overall audit strategy and the detailed audit plan are not necessarily discrete or sequential processes but are closely interrelated because changes in one may result in consequential changes to the other.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A12 In audits of smaller entities, the entire audit may be conducted by a very small audit team. Many audits of smaller entities involve the engagement partner (who may be a sole practitioner) working with one engagement team member (or without any engagement team members). With a smaller team, coordination of, and communication between, team members is easier. Establishing the overall audit strategy for the audit of a smaller entity need not be a complex or time consuming exercise; it varies according to the size and complexity of the entity, the complexity of the audit, and the size of the engagement team. For example, a brief memorandum prepared at the completion of the previous audit, based on a review of the working papers and highlighting issues identified in the audit just completed, updated in the current period, based on discussions with the owner-manager, can serve as the documented audit strategy for the current audit engagement if it covers the matters noted in paragraph .07.

Communications With Those Charged With Governance

.A13 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit.⁶

The Audit Plan (Ref: par. .09)

.A14 The audit plan is more detailed than the overall audit strategy in that it includes the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to be performed by engagement team members. Planning for these audit procedures takes place over the course of the audit as the audit plan for the engagement develops. For example, planning of the auditor's risk assessment procedures occurs early in the audit process. However, planning the nature, timing, and extent of specific further audit procedures depends on the outcome of those risk assessment procedures. In addition, the auditor may begin the execution of further audit procedures for some classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures before planning all remaining further audit procedures.

Changes to Planning Decisions During the Course of the Audit (Ref: par. .10)

.A15 As a result of unexpected events, changes in conditions, or the audit evidence obtained from the results of audit procedures, the auditor may need to modify the overall audit strategy and audit plan and, thereby, the resulting planned nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures, based on the revised consideration of assessed risks. This may be the case when information comes to the auditor's attention that differs significantly from the information available when the auditor planned the audit procedures. For example, audit evidence obtained through the performance of substantive procedures may contradict the audit evidence obtained through tests of controls.

Direction, Supervision, and Review (Ref: par. .11)

.A16 The nature, timing, and extent of the direction and supervision of engagement team members and review of their work vary, depending on many factors, including the following:

- The size and complexity of the entity
- The area of the audit
- The assessed risks of material misstatement (for example, an increase in the assessed risk of material misstatement for a given area of the audit ordinarily requires a corresponding

⁶ Paragraph .11 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

178 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- increase in the extent and timeliness of direction and supervision of engagement team members and a more detailed review of their work)
- The capabilities and competence of the individual team members performing the audit work

Section 220 contains further guidance on the direction, supervision, and review of audit work.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A17 If an audit is carried out entirely by the engagement partner, questions of direction and supervision of engagement team members and review of their work do not arise. In such cases, the engagement partner, having personally conducted all aspects of the work, will be aware of all material issues. Forming an objective view on the appropriateness of the judgments made in the course of the audit can present practical problems when the same individual also performs the entire audit. If particularly complex or unusual issues are involved and the audit is performed by a sole practitioner, it may be desirable to consult with other suitably experienced auditors or the auditor's professional body.

Determining the Extent of Involvement of Professionals Possessing Specialized Skills (Ref: par. .12)

.A18 An auditor may decide to seek the assistance of a professional with specialized skills necessary to complete various aspects of the engagement. These professionals may include valuation experts, appraisers, actuaries, tax specialists, and IT professionals. For example, the use of professionals possessing IT skills to determine the effect of IT on the audit, understand the IT controls, or design and perform tests of IT controls or substantive procedures is a significant aspect of many audit engagements. In determining whether such a professional is needed on the audit team, the auditor may consider such factors as the following:

- The complexity of the entity's systems and IT controls and the manner in which they are used in conducting the entity's business
- The significance of changes made to existing systems or the implementation of new systems
- The extent to which data is shared among systems
- The extent of the entity's participation in electronic commerce
- The entity's use of emerging technologies
- The significance of audit evidence that is available only in electronic form

.A19 Audit procedures that the auditor may assign to a professional possessing IT skills include inquiring of an entity's IT personnel how data and transactions are initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, and reported and how IT controls are designed; inspecting systems documentation; observing the operation of IT controls; and planning and performing tests of IT controls.

Additional Considerations in Initial Audit Engagements (Ref: par. .13)

.A20 The purpose and objective of planning the audit are the same whether the audit is an initial or recurring engagement. However, for an initial audit, the auditor may need to expand the planning activities because the auditor does not ordinarily have the previous experience with the entity that is considered when planning recurring engagements. For an initial audit engagement, additional matters the auditor may consider in establishing the overall audit strategy and audit plan include the following:

- Arrangements to be made with the predecessor auditor (for example, to review the predecessor auditor's working papers [see section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*])⁷
- Any major issues (including the application of accounting principles or auditing and reporting standards) discussed with management in connection with the initial selection as auditor, the communication of these matters to those charged with governance, and how these matters affect the overall audit strategy and audit plan

⁷ Paragraphs .07 and .A2–.A11 of section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*.

- The audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances (see section 510)⁸
- Other procedures required by the firm's system of quality control for initial audit engagements (for example, the firm's system of quality control may require the involvement of another partner or senior individual to review the overall audit strategy prior to commencing significant audit procedures or to review reports prior to their issuance)

Documentation (Ref: par. .14)

.A21 The documentation of the overall audit strategy is a record of the key decisions considered necessary to properly plan the audit and communicate significant issues to the engagement team. For example, the auditor may summarize the overall audit strategy in the form of a memorandum that contains key decisions regarding the overall scope, timing, and conduct of the audit.

.A22 The documentation of the audit plan is a record of the planned nature, timing, and extent of risk assessment procedures and further audit procedures at the relevant assertion level in response to the assessed risks. It also serves as a record of the proper planning of the audit procedures that can be reviewed and approved prior to their performance. The auditor may use standard audit programs or audit completion checklists, tailored as needed to reflect the particular engagement circumstances.

.A23 A record of the significant changes to the overall audit strategy and the audit plan and resulting changes to the planned nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures explain why the significant changes were made and why the overall strategy and audit plan were finally adopted for the audit. It also reflects the appropriate response to the significant changes occurring during the audit.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A24 As discussed in paragraph .A12, a suitable, brief memorandum may serve as the documented strategy for the audit of a smaller entity. For the audit plan, standard audit programs or checklists (see paragraph .A22) drawn up on the assumption of few relevant control activities, which is likely to be the case in a smaller entity, may be used, provided that they are tailored to the circumstances of the engagement, including the auditor's risk assessments.

⁸ Paragraph .08 of section 510.

.A25

**Appendix—Considerations in Establishing the Overall Audit Strategy
(Ref: par. .07–.08 and .A9–.A12)**

This appendix provides examples of matters the auditor may consider in establishing the overall audit strategy. Many of these matters also will influence the auditor's detailed audit plan. The examples provided cover a broad range of matters applicable to many engagements. Although some of the following matters may be required by other AU-C sections, not all matters are relevant to every audit engagement, and the list is not necessarily complete.

Characteristics of the Engagement

The following are some examples of characteristics of the engagement:

- The financial reporting framework on which the financial information to be audited has been prepared, including any need for reconciliations to another financial reporting framework
- Industry specific reporting requirements, such as reports mandated by industry regulators
- The expected audit coverage, including the number and locations of components to be included
- The nature of the control relationships between a parent and its components that determine how the group is to be consolidated
- The extent to which components are audited by other auditors
- The nature of the business divisions to be audited, including the need for specialized knowledge
- The reporting currency to be used, including any need for currency translation for the audited financial information
- The need for statutory or regulatory audit requirements (for example, the Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations*)
- The availability of the work of internal auditors and the extent of the auditor's potential use of such work
- The entity's use of service organizations and how the auditor may obtain evidence concerning the design or operation of controls performed by them
- The expected use of audit evidence obtained in previous audits (for example, audit evidence related to risk assessment procedures and tests of controls)
- The effect of IT on the audit procedures, including the availability of data and the expected use of computer assisted audit techniques
- The coordination of the expected coverage and timing of the audit work with any reviews of interim financial information and the effect on the audit of the information obtained during such reviews
- The availability of client personnel and data

Reporting Objectives, Timing of the Audit, and Nature of Communications

The following examples illustrate reporting objectives, timing of the audit, and nature of communications:

- The entity's timetable for reporting, including interim periods
- The organization of meetings with management and those charged with governance to discuss the nature, timing, and extent of the audit work
- The discussion with management and those charged with governance regarding the expected type and timing of reports to be issued and other communications, both written and oral, including the auditor's report, management letters, and communications to those charged with governance
- The discussion with management regarding the expected communications on the status of audit work throughout the engagement
- Communication with auditors of components regarding the expected types and timing of reports to be issued and other communications in connection with the audit of components

- The expected nature and timing of communications among engagement team members, including the nature and timing of team meetings and timing of the review of work performed
- Whether there are any other expected communications with third parties, including any statutory or contractual reporting responsibilities arising from the audit

Significant Factors, Preliminary Engagement Activities, and Knowledge Gained on Other Engagements

The following examples illustrate significant factors, preliminary engagement activities, and knowledge gained on other engagements:

- The determination of materiality, in accordance with section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and, when applicable, the following:
 - The determination of materiality for components and communication thereof to component auditors in accordance with section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*
 - The preliminary identification of significant components and material classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures
- Preliminary identification of areas in which there may be a higher risk of material misstatement
- The effect of the assessed risk of material misstatement at the overall financial statement level on direction, supervision, and review
- The manner in which the auditor emphasizes to engagement team members the need to maintain a questioning mind and exercise professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating audit evidence
- Results of previous audits that involved evaluating the operating effectiveness of internal control, including the nature of identified deficiencies and action taken to address them
- The discussion of matters that may affect the audit with firm personnel responsible for performing other services to the entity
- Evidence of management's commitment to the design, implementation, and maintenance of sound internal control, including evidence of appropriate documentation of such internal control
- Volume of transactions, which may determine whether it is more efficient for the auditor to rely on internal control
- Importance attached to internal control throughout the entity to the successful operation of the business
- Significant business developments affecting the entity, including changes in IT and business processes; changes in key management; and acquisitions, mergers, and divestments
- Significant industry developments, such as changes in industry regulations and new reporting requirements
- Significant changes in the financial reporting framework, such as changes in accounting standards
- Other significant relevant developments, such as changes in the legal environment affecting the entity

Nature, Timing, and Extent of Resources

The following examples illustrate the nature, timing, and extent of resources:

- The selection of the engagement team (including, when necessary, the engagement quality control reviewer [see section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*]) and the assignment of audit work to the team members, including the assignment of appropriately experienced team members to areas in which there may be higher risks of material misstatement
- Engagement budgeting, including considering the appropriate amount of time to set aside for areas in which there may be higher risks of material misstatement

182 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**.A26****Exhibit—Comparison of Section 300, *Planning an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing 300, *Planning an Audit of Financial Statements***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 300, *Planning an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 300, *Planning an Audit of Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph .12 of section 300 contains requirements regarding the auditor's obligations for determining the extent of involvement of professionals possessing specialized skills. ISA 300 does not contain these requirements. The ASB believes these requirements, and the related application material, are necessary for the auditor's consideration of the need for specialized skills and knowledge in the audit.

AU-C Section 315*

Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements through understanding the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.03 The objective of the auditor is to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels through understanding the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, thereby providing a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement.

Definitions

.04 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Assertions. Representations by management, explicit or otherwise, that are embodied in the financial statements as used by the auditor to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur.

Business risk. A risk resulting from significant conditions, events, circumstances, actions, or inactions that could adversely affect an entity's ability to achieve its objectives and execute its strategies or from the setting of inappropriate objectives and strategies.

Internal control. A process effected by those charged with governance, management, and other personnel that is designed to provide reasonable assurance about the achievement of the entity's objectives with regard to the reliability of financial reporting, effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Internal control over safeguarding of assets against unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition may include controls relating to financial reporting and operations objectives.¹

Relevant assertion. A financial statement assertion that has a reasonable possibility of containing a misstatement or misstatements that would cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. The determination of whether an assertion is a relevant assertion is made without regard to the effect of internal controls. (Ref: par. .A117)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ This section recognizes the definition and description of internal control contained in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, published by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission.

184 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Risk assessment procedures. The audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels.

Significant risk. An identified and assessed risk of material misstatement that, in the auditor's professional judgment, requires special audit consideration.

Requirements

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities

.05 The auditor should perform risk assessment procedures to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels. Risk assessment procedures by themselves, however, do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion. (Ref: par. .A1–.A5)

.06 The risk assessment procedures should include the following:

- a. Inquiries of management and others within the entity who, in the auditor's professional judgment, may have information that is likely to assist in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud or error (Ref: par. .A6)
- b. Analytical procedures (Ref: par. .A7–.A10)
- c. Observation and inspection (Ref: par. .A11)

.07 The auditor should consider whether information obtained from the auditor's client acceptance or continuance process is relevant to identifying risks of material misstatement.

.08 If the engagement partner has performed other engagements for the entity, the engagement partner should consider whether information obtained is relevant to identifying risks of material misstatement.

.09 During planning, the auditor should consider the results of the assessment of the risk of material misstatement due to fraud² along with other information gathered in the process of identifying the risks of material misstatements.

.10 When the auditor intends to use information obtained from the auditor's previous experience with the entity and from audit procedures performed in previous audits, the auditor should determine whether changes have occurred since the previous audit that may affect its relevance to the current audit. (Ref: par. .A12–.A13)

.11 The engagement partner and other key engagement team members should discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement and the application of the applicable financial reporting framework to the entity's facts and circumstances. The engagement partner should determine which matters are to be communicated to engagement team members not involved in the discussion. (Ref: par. .A14–.A16)

Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including the Entity's Internal Control

The Entity and Its Environment (Ref: par. .A17)

.12 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the following:

- a. Relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors, including the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A18–.A22)
- b. The nature of the entity, including
 - i. its operations;
 - ii. its ownership and governance structures;
 - iii. the types of investments that the entity is making and plans to make, including investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives; and

² See section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

- iv. the way that the entity is structured and how it is financed, to enable the auditor to understand the classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures to be expected in the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A23–.A27)
- c. The entity's selection and application of accounting policies, including the reasons for changes thereto. The auditor should evaluate whether the entity's accounting policies are appropriate for its business and consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and accounting policies used in the relevant industry. (Ref: par. .A28)
- d. The entity's objectives and strategies and those related business risks that may result in risks of material misstatement. (Ref: par. .A29–.A35)
- e. The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance. (Ref: par. .A36–.A41)

The Entity's Internal Control

.13 The auditor should obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit. Although most controls relevant to the audit are likely to relate to financial reporting, not all controls that relate to financial reporting are relevant to the audit. It is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment whether a control, individually or in combination with others, is relevant to the audit. (Ref: par. .A42–.A67)

Nature and Extent of the Understanding of Relevant Controls

.14 When obtaining an understanding of controls that are relevant to the audit, the auditor should evaluate the design of those controls and determine whether they have been implemented by performing procedures in addition to inquiry of the entity's personnel. (Ref: par. .A68–.A70)

Components of Internal Control

Control Environment

.15 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the control environment. As part of obtaining this understanding, the auditor should evaluate whether

- a. management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, has created and maintained a culture of honesty and ethical behavior and
- b. the strengths in the control environment elements collectively provide an appropriate foundation for the other components of internal control and whether those other components are not undermined by deficiencies in the control environment. (Ref: par. .A71–.A80)

The Entity's Risk Assessment Process

.16 The auditor should obtain an understanding of whether the entity has a process for

- a. identifying business risks relevant to financial reporting objectives,
- b. estimating the significance of the risks,
- c. assessing the likelihood of their occurrence, and
- d. deciding about actions to address those risks. (Ref: par. .A81–.A82)

.17 If the entity has established a risk assessment process (referred to hereafter as the *entity's risk assessment process*), the auditor should obtain an understanding of it and the results thereof. If the auditor identifies risks of material misstatement that management failed to identify, the auditor should evaluate whether an underlying risk existed that the auditor expects would have been identified by the entity's risk assessment process. If such a risk exists, the auditor should obtain an understanding of why that process failed to identify it and evaluate whether the process is appropriate to its circumstances or determine if a significant deficiency or material weakness exists in internal control regarding the entity's risk assessment process.

.18 If the entity has not established such a process or has an ad hoc process, the auditor should discuss with management whether business risks relevant to financial reporting objectives have been identified and how they have been addressed. The auditor should evaluate whether the absence of a documented risk assessment process is appropriate in the circumstances or determine whether it represents a significant deficiency or material weakness in the entity's internal control. (Ref: par. .A83)

186 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**The Information System, Including the Related Business Processes Relevant to Financial Reporting and Communication**

.19 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the information system, including the related business processes relevant to financial reporting, including the following areas:

- a.* The classes of transactions in the entity's operations that are significant to the financial statements.
- b.* The procedures within both IT and manual systems by which those transactions are initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, corrected as necessary, transferred to the general ledger, and reported in the financial statements.
- c.* The related accounting records supporting information and specific accounts in the financial statements that are used to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report transactions. This includes the correction of incorrect information and how information is transferred to the general ledger. The records may be in either manual or electronic form.
- d.* How the information system captures events and conditions, other than transactions, that are significant to the financial statements.
- e.* The financial reporting process used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures.
- f.* Controls surrounding journal entries, including nonstandard journal entries used to record nonrecurring, unusual transactions, or adjustments. (Ref: par. .A84–.A88)

.20 The auditor should obtain an understanding of how the entity communicates financial reporting roles and responsibilities and significant matters relating to financial reporting, including

- a.* communications between management and those charged with governance and
- b.* external communications, such as those with regulatory authorities. (Ref: par. .A89–.A90)

Control Activities Relevant to the Audit

.21 The auditor should obtain an understanding of control activities relevant to the audit, which are those control activities the auditor judges it necessary to understand in order to assess the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level and design further audit procedures responsive to assessed risks. An audit does not require an understanding of all the control activities related to each significant class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure in the financial statements or to every assertion relevant to them. However, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the process of reconciling detailed records to the general ledger for material account balances. (Ref: par. .A91–.A97)

.22 In understanding the entity's control activities, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how the entity has responded to risks arising from IT. (Ref: par. .A98–.A101)

Monitoring of Controls

.23 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the major activities that the entity uses to monitor internal control over financial reporting, including those related to those control activities relevant to the audit, and how the entity initiates remedial actions to deficiencies in its controls. (Ref: par. .A102–.A103)

.24 If the entity has an internal audit function, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the following in order to determine whether the internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit:

- a.* The nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities and how the internal audit function fits in the entity's organizational structure
- b.* The activities performed or to be performed by the internal audit function (Ref: par. .A104–.A106)

.25 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the sources of the information used in the entity's monitoring activities and the basis upon which management considers the information to be sufficiently reliable for the purpose. (Ref: par. .A107)

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

.26 To provide a basis for designing and performing further audit procedures, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at

- a. the financial statement level and (Ref: par. .A108–.A111)
- b. the relevant assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. (Ref: par. .A112–.A119)

.27 For this purpose, the auditor should

- a. identify risks throughout the process of obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including relevant controls that relate to the risks, by considering the classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures in the financial statements; (Ref: par. .A120–.A121)
- b. assess the identified risks and evaluate whether they relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many assertions;
- c. relate the identified risks to what can go wrong at the relevant assertion level, taking account of relevant controls that the auditor intends to test; and (Ref: par. .A122–.A124)
- d. consider the likelihood of misstatement, including the possibility of multiple misstatements, and whether the potential misstatement is of a magnitude that could result in a material misstatement.

Risks That Require Special Audit Consideration

.28 As part of the risk assessment described in paragraph .26, the auditor should determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor's professional judgment, a significant risk. In exercising this judgment, the auditor should exclude the effects of identified controls related to the risk.

.29 In exercising professional judgment about which risks are significant risks, the auditor should consider at least

- a. whether the risk is a risk of fraud;
- b. whether the risk is related to recent significant economic, accounting, or other developments and, therefore, requires specific attention;
- c. the complexity of transactions;
- d. whether the risk involves significant transactions with related parties;
- e. the degree of subjectivity in the measurement of financial information related to the risk, especially those measurements involving a wide range of measurement uncertainty; and
- f. whether the risk involves significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual. (Ref: par. .A125–.A129)

.30 If the auditor has determined that a significant risk exists, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the entity's controls, including control activities, relevant to that risk and, based on that understanding, evaluate whether such controls have been suitably designed and implemented to mitigate such risks. (Ref: par. .A130–.A132)

Risks for Which Substantive Procedures Alone Do Not Provide Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence

.31 In respect of some risks, the auditor may judge that it is not possible or practicable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence only from substantive procedures. Such risks may relate to the inaccurate or incomplete recording of routine and significant classes of transactions or account balances, the characteristics of which often permit highly automated processing with little or no manual intervention. In such cases, the entity's controls over such risks are relevant to the audit, and the auditor should obtain an understanding of them. (Ref: par. .A133–.A136)

Revision of Risk Assessment

.32 The auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level may change during the course of the audit as additional audit evidence is obtained. In circumstances in

188 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

which the auditor obtains audit evidence from performing further audit procedures or if new information is obtained, either of which is inconsistent with the audit evidence on which the auditor originally based the assessment, the auditor should revise the assessment and modify the further planned audit procedures accordingly. (Ref: par. .A137)

Documentation

.33 The auditor should include in the audit documentation³ the

- a. discussion among the engagement team required by paragraph .11, the significant decisions reached, how and when the discussion occurred, and the audit team members who participated;
- b. key elements of the understanding obtained regarding each of the aspects of the entity and its environment specified in paragraph .12 and each of the internal control components specified in paragraphs .15–.25, the sources of information from which the understanding was obtained, and the risk assessment procedures performed;
- c. identified and assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and at the relevant assertion level, as required by paragraph .26; and
- d. risks identified and related controls about which the auditor has obtained an understanding as a result of the requirements in paragraphs .28–.31. (Ref: par. .A138–.A141)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities (Ref: par. .05)**

.A1 Obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control (referred to hereafter as an *understanding of the entity*), is a continuous, dynamic process of gathering, updating, and analyzing information throughout the audit. The understanding of the entity establishes a frame of reference within which the auditor plans the audit and exercises professional judgment throughout the audit when, for example

- assessing risks of material misstatement of the financial statements;
- determining materiality in accordance with section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*;
- considering the appropriateness of the selection and application of accounting policies and the adequacy of financial statement disclosures;
- identifying areas for which special audit consideration may be necessary (for example, related party transactions, the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern assumption, considering the business purpose of transactions, or the existence of complex and unusual transactions);
- developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures;
- responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement, including designing and performing further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence; and
- evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained, such as the appropriateness of assumptions and management's oral and written representations.

.A2 Information obtained by performing risk assessment procedures and related activities may be used by the auditor as audit evidence to support assessments of the risks of material misstatement. In addition, the auditor may obtain audit evidence about classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and relevant assertions and about the operating effectiveness of controls, even though such procedures were not specifically planned as substantive procedures or tests of controls. The auditor also may choose to perform substantive procedures or tests of controls concurrently with risk assessment procedures because it is efficient to do so.

³ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

.A3 The auditor is required to exercise professional judgment⁴ to determine the extent of the required understanding of the entity. The auditor's primary consideration is whether the understanding of the entity that has been obtained is sufficient to meet the objective stated in this section. The depth of the overall understanding that is required by the auditor is less than that possessed by management in managing the entity.

.A4 The risks to be assessed include both those due to fraud and those due to error, and both are covered by this section. However, the significance of fraud is such that further requirements and guidance are included in section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, regarding risk assessment procedures and related activities to obtain information that is used to identify the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A5 Although the auditor is required to perform all the risk assessment procedures described in paragraph .06 in the course of obtaining the required understanding of the entity (see paragraphs .12–.25), the auditor is not required to perform all of them for each aspect of that understanding. Other procedures may be performed when the information to be obtained therefrom may be helpful in identifying risks of material misstatement. Examples of such procedures include the following:

- Reviewing information obtained from external sources, such as trade and economic journals; reports by analysts, banks, or rating agencies; or regulatory or financial publications
- Making inquiries of the entity's external legal counsel or valuation specialists whom the entity has used

Inquiries of Management and Others Within the Entity (Ref: par. .06a)

.A6 Much of the information obtained by the auditor's inquiries is obtained from management and those responsible for financial reporting. However, the auditor also may obtain information or a different perspective in identifying risks of material misstatement through inquiries of others within the entity and other employees with different levels of authority. For example

- inquiries directed toward those charged with governance may help the auditor understand the environment in which the financial statements are prepared.
- inquiries directed toward internal audit personnel may provide information about internal audit procedures performed during the year relating to the design and effectiveness of the entity's internal control and whether management has satisfactorily responded to findings from those procedures.
- inquiries of employees involved in initiating, authorizing, processing, or recording complex or unusual transactions may help the auditor to evaluate the appropriateness of the selection and application of certain accounting policies.
- inquiries directed toward in-house legal counsel may provide information about such matters as litigation, compliance with laws and regulations, knowledge of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity, warranties, postsales obligations, arrangements (such as joint ventures) with business partners, and the meaning of contract terms.
- inquiries directed toward marketing or sales personnel may provide information about changes in the entity's marketing strategies, sales trends, or contractual arrangements with its customers.

Analytical Procedures (Ref: par. .06b)

.A7 Analytical procedures performed as risk assessment procedures may identify aspects of the entity of which the auditor was unaware and may assist in assessing the risks of material misstatement in order to provide a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks. Analytical procedures performed as risk assessment procedures may include both financial and

⁴ Paragraph .16 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, requires the auditor to exercise professional judgment in planning and performing an audit.

190 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

nonfinancial information (for example, the relationship between sales and square footage of selling space or volume of goods sold).

.A8 Analytical procedures may enhance the auditor's understanding of the client's business and the significant transactions and events that have occurred since the prior audit and also may help to identify the existence of unusual transactions or events and amounts, ratios, and trends that might indicate matters that have audit implications. Unusual or unexpected relationships that are identified may assist the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement, especially risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A9 However, when such analytical procedures use data aggregated at a high level (which may be the situation with analytical procedures performed as risk assessment procedures), the results of those analytical procedures provide only a broad initial indication about whether a material misstatement may exist. Accordingly, in such cases, consideration of other information that has been gathered when identifying the risks of material misstatement together with the results of such analytical procedures may assist the auditor in understanding and evaluating the results of the analytical procedures.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A10 Some smaller entities may not have interim or monthly financial information that can be used for purposes of analytical procedures. In these circumstances, although the auditor may be able to perform limited analytical procedures for purposes of planning the audit or obtain some information through inquiry, the auditor may need to plan to perform analytical procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement when an early draft of the entity's financial statements is available.

Observation and Inspection (Ref: par. .06c)

.A11 Observation and inspection may support inquiries of management and others and also may provide information about the entity and its environment. Examples of such audit procedures include observation or inspection of the following:

- The entity's operations
- Documents (such as business plans and strategies), records, and internal control manuals
- Reports prepared by management (such as quarterly management reports and interim financial statements), those charged with governance (such as minutes of board of directors' meetings), and internal audit
- The entity's premises and plant facilities

Information Obtained in Prior Periods (Ref: par. .10)

.A12 The auditor's previous experience with the entity and audit procedures performed in previous audits may provide the auditor with information about such matters as

- past misstatements and whether they were corrected on a timely basis.
- the nature of the entity and its environment and the entity's internal control (including deficiencies in internal control).
- significant changes that the entity or its operations may have undergone since the prior financial period, which may assist the auditor in gaining a sufficient understanding of the entity to identify and assess risks of material misstatement.

.A13 Paragraph .10 requires the auditor to determine whether information obtained in prior periods remains relevant if the auditor intends to use that information for the purposes of the current audit. For example, changes in the control environment may affect the relevance of information obtained in the prior year. To determine whether changes have occurred that may affect the relevance of such information, the auditor may make inquiries and perform other appropriate audit procedures, such as walk-throughs of relevant systems.

Discussion Among the Engagement Team (Ref: par. .11)

.A14 The discussion among the engagement team about the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement

- provides an opportunity for more experienced engagement team members, including the engagement partner, to share their insights based on their knowledge of the entity.
- allows the engagement team members to exchange information about the business risks to which the entity is subject and about how and where the financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud or error.
- assists the engagement team members to gain a better understanding of the potential for material misstatement of the financial statements in the specific areas assigned to them and to understand how the results of the audit procedures that they perform may affect other aspects of the audit, including the decisions about the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.
- provides a basis upon which engagement team members communicate and share new information obtained throughout the audit that may affect the assessment of risks of material misstatement or the audit procedures performed to address these risks.

This discussion may be held concurrently with the discussion among the engagement team that is required by section 240 to discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to fraud.⁵ Section 240 further addresses the discussion among the engagement team about the risks of fraud.

.A15 It is not always necessary or practical for the discussion to include all members in a single discussion (as in group audits), nor is it necessary for all the members of the engagement team to be informed of all the decisions reached in the discussion. The engagement partner may discuss matters with key members of the engagement team, including, if considered appropriate, those with specific skills or knowledge, and those responsible for the audits of components, while delegating discussion with others, taking account of the extent of communication considered necessary throughout the engagement team. A communications plan, agreed by the engagement partner, may be useful.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A16 Many small audits are carried out entirely by the engagement partner (who may be a sole practitioner). In such situations, it is the engagement partner who, having personally conducted the planning of the audit, would be responsible for considering the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud or error.

Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including the Entity's Internal Control

.A17 Appendix A, "Understanding the Entity and Its Environment," contains examples of matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment. Appendix B, "Internal Control Components," contains a detailed explanation of the internal control components.

The Entity and Its Environment***Industry, Regulatory, and Other External Factors (Ref: par. .12a)******Industry Factors***

.A18 Relevant industry factors include industry conditions such as the competitive environment, supplier and customer relationships, and technological developments. Examples of matters the auditor may consider include

- the market and competition, including demand, capacity, and price competition.
- cyclical or seasonal activity.
- product technology relating to the entity's products.
- energy supply and cost.

⁵ Paragraph .15 of section 240.

192 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A19 The industry in which the entity operates may give rise to specific risks of material misstatement arising from the nature of the business or the degree of regulation. For example, long term contracts may involve significant estimates of revenues and expenses that give rise to risks of material misstatement. In such cases, it is important that the engagement team includes members with sufficient, relevant knowledge and experience, as required by section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

Regulatory Factors

.A20 Relevant regulatory factors include the regulatory environment. The regulatory environment encompasses, among other matters, the applicable financial reporting framework and the legal and political environment. Examples of matters the auditor may consider include the following:

- Accounting principles and industry-specific practices
- Regulatory framework for a regulated industry
- Laws and regulations that significantly affect the entity's operations, including direct supervisory activities
- Taxation (corporate and other)
- Government policies currently affecting the conduct of the entity's business, such as monetary (including foreign exchange controls), fiscal, financial incentives (for example, government aid programs), and tariffs or trade restrictions policies
- Environmental requirements affecting the industry and the entity's business

.A21 Section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*, includes some specific requirements related to the legal and regulatory framework applicable to the entity and the industry or sector in which the entity operates.

Other External Factors

.A22 Examples of other external factors affecting the entity that the auditor may consider include the general economic conditions, interest rates and availability of financing, and inflation or currency revaluation.

Nature of the Entity (Ref: par. . 12b)

.A23 An understanding of the nature of an entity enables the auditor to understand such matters as

- whether the entity has a complex structure (for example, with subsidiaries or other components in multiple locations). Complex structures often introduce issues that may give rise to risks of material misstatement. Such issues may include whether goodwill, joint ventures, investments, or investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives are accounted for appropriately.
- the ownership and relations between owners and other people or entities. This understanding assists in determining whether related party transactions and balances have been identified and accounted for appropriately. Section 550, *Related Parties*, addresses the auditor's considerations relevant to related parties.

.A24 Examples of matters that the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the nature of the entity include

- business operations such as
 - the nature of revenue sources, products or services, and markets, including involvement in electronic commerce, such as Internet sales and marketing activities.
 - the conduct of operations (for example, stages and methods of production or activities exposed to environmental risks).
 - alliances, joint ventures, and outsourcing activities.
 - geographic dispersion and industry segmentation.
 - the location of production facilities, warehouses, and offices and the location and quantities of inventories.
 - key customers and important suppliers of goods and services.

- employment arrangements (including the existence of union contracts, pension and other postemployment benefits, stock option or incentive bonus arrangements, and government regulation related to employment matters).
- research and development activities and expenditures.
- transactions with related parties.
- investments and investment activities such as
 - planned or recently executed acquisitions or divestitures.
 - investments and dispositions of securities and loans.
 - capital investment activities.
 - investments in nonconsolidated entities, including partnerships, joint ventures, and investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives.
- financing and financing activities such as
 - major subsidiaries and associated entities, including consolidated and nonconsolidated structures.
 - debt structure and related terms, including off balance sheet financing arrangements and leasing arrangements.
 - beneficial owners (local and foreign and their business reputation and experience) and related parties.
 - the use of derivative financial instruments.
- financial reporting such as
 - accounting principles and industry-specific practices, including industry-specific significant categories (for example, loans and investments for banks or research and development for pharmaceuticals).
 - revenue recognition practices.
 - accounting for fair values.
 - foreign currency assets, liabilities, and transactions.
 - accounting for unusual or complex transactions, including those in controversial or emerging areas (for example, accounting for stock-based compensation).

.A25 Significant changes in the entity from prior periods may give rise to, or change risks of, material misstatement.

Entities Formed to Accomplish Specific Purposes

.A26 An entity may form an entity that is intended to accomplish a narrow and well-defined purpose (for example, a variable interest entity), such as to effect a lease or a securitization of financial assets or to carry out research and development activities. It may take the form of a corporation, trust, partnership, or unincorporated entity. The entity on behalf of which an entity has been created may often transfer assets to the latter (for example, as part of a derecognition transaction involving financial assets), obtain the right to use the latter's assets, or perform services for the latter, and other parties may provide the funding to the latter.

.A27 Financial reporting frameworks often specify detailed conditions that are deemed to amount to control or circumstances under which an entity should be considered for consolidation. The financial reporting frameworks also may specify different bases for recognition of income related to transactions with these entities. The interpretation of the requirements of such frameworks often involves a detailed knowledge of the relevant agreements involving an entity formed for a specific purpose.

The Entity's Selection and Application of Accounting Policies (Ref. par. .12c)

.A28 An understanding of the entity's selection and application of accounting policies may encompass such matters as

- the methods the entity uses to account for significant and unusual transactions.
- the effect of significant accounting policies in controversial or emerging areas for which a lack of authoritative guidance or consensus exists.

194 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- significant changes in the entity's accounting policies and disclosures and the reasons for such changes.
- financial reporting standards, and laws and regulations that are new to the entity and when and how the entity will adopt such requirements.
- the financial reporting competencies of personnel involved in selecting and applying significant new or complex accounting standards.

Objectives and Strategies and Related Business Risks (Ref: par. .12d)

.A29 The entity conducts its business in the context of industry, regulatory, and other internal and external factors. To respond to these factors, the entity's management or those charged with governance define objectives, which are the overall plans for the entity. Strategies are the approaches by which management intends to achieve its objectives. The entity's objectives and strategies may change over time.

.A30 Business risk is broader than the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, though it includes the latter. Business risk may arise from change or complexity. A failure to recognize the need for change also may give rise to business risk. Business risk may arise, for example, from

- the development of new products or services that may fail;
- a market that, even if successfully developed, is inadequate to support a product or service; or
- flaws in a product or service that may result in liabilities and reputational risk.

.A31 An understanding of the business risks facing the entity increases the likelihood of identifying risks of material misstatement. This is because most business risks will eventually have financial consequences and, therefore, an effect on the financial statements. However, the auditor does not have a responsibility to identify or assess all business risks because not all business risks give rise to risks of material misstatement.

.A32 Examples of matters that the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the entity's objectives, strategies, and related business risks that may result in a risk of material misstatement of the financial statements include

- industry developments (a potential related business risk might be, for example, that the entity does not have the personnel or expertise to deal with the changes in the industry).
- new products and services (a potential related business risk might be, for example, product liability is increased).
- expansion of the business (a potential related business risk might be, for example, that the demand has not been accurately estimated).
- new accounting requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, incomplete or improper implementation or a cost increase).
- regulatory requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, that legal exposure is increased).
- current and prospective financing requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, financing is lost due to the entity's inability to meet requirements).
- use of IT (a potential related business risk might be, for example, systems and processes are incompatible).
- the effects of implementing a strategy, particularly any effects that will lead to new accounting requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, incomplete or improper implementation).

.A33 A business risk may have an immediate consequence for the risk of material misstatement for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures at the assertion level or the financial statement level. For example, the business risk arising from a contracting customer base may increase the risk of material misstatement associated with the valuation of receivables. However, the same risk, particularly in combination with a contracting economy, also may have a longer term consequence, which may lead the auditor to consider whether those conditions, in the aggregate, indicate that substantial doubt could exist about the entity's ability to continue as a

going concern.⁶ Whether a business risk may result in a risk of material misstatement is, therefore, considered in light of the entity's circumstances. Examples of conditions and events that may indicate risks of material misstatement are provided in appendix C, "Conditions and Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement."

.A34 Usually, management identifies business risks and develops approaches to address them. Such a risk assessment process is part of internal control and is discussed in paragraphs .16 and .A81–.A83.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A35 For the audits of governmental entities, management objectives may be influenced by concerns regarding public accountability and may include objectives that have their source in law or regulation.

Measurement and Review of the Entity's Financial Performance (Ref: par. .12e)

.A36 Management and others will measure and review those things they regard as important. Performance measures, whether external or internal, create pressures on the entity. These pressures, in turn, may motivate management or others to take action to improve the business performance or to misstate the financial statements. Accordingly, an understanding of the entity's performance measures assists the auditor in considering whether pressures to achieve performance targets may result in management actions that increase the risks of material misstatement, including those due to fraud. Section 240 addresses the risks of fraud.

.A37 The measurement and review of financial performance are not the same as the monitoring of controls (discussed as a component of internal control in paragraphs .23–.25 and .A102–.A107), though their purposes may overlap as follows:

- a. The measurement and review of performance is directed at whether business performance is meeting the objectives set by management (or third parties).
- b. Monitoring of controls is specifically concerned with the effective operation of internal control.

In some cases, however, performance indicators also provide information that enables management to identify deficiencies in internal control.

.A38 Examples of internally generated information used by management for measuring and reviewing financial performance, and which the auditor may consider, include

- key performance indicators (financial and nonfinancial) and key ratios, trends, and operating statistics.
- period-on-period financial performance analyses.
- budgets; forecasts; variance analyses; segment information; and divisional, departmental, or other-level performance reports.
- employee performance measures and incentive compensation policies.
- comparisons of an entity's performance with that of competitors.

.A39 External parties also may measure and review the entity's financial performance. For example, external information, such as analysts' reports and credit rating agency reports, may represent useful information for the auditor. Such reports often can be obtained from the entity being audited.

⁶ See section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

196 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A40 Internal measures may highlight unexpected results or trends requiring management to determine their cause and take corrective action (including, in some cases, the detection and correction of misstatements on a timely basis). Performance measures also may indicate to the auditor that risks of misstatement of related financial statement information do exist. For example, performance measures may indicate that the entity has unusually rapid growth or profitability when compared with that of other entities in the same industry. Such information, particularly if combined with other factors, such as performance-based bonus or incentive remuneration, may indicate the potential risk of management bias in the preparation of the financial statements.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A41 Smaller entities often do not have processes to measure and review financial performance. Inquiry of management may reveal that management relies on certain key indicators for evaluating financial performance and taking appropriate action. If such inquiry indicates an absence of performance measurement or review, an increased risk of misstatements not being detected and corrected may exist.

The Entity's Internal Control

.A42 An understanding of internal control assists the auditor in identifying types of potential misstatements and factors that affect the risks of material misstatement and in designing the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

.A43 The following application material on internal control is presented in four sections:

- "General Nature and Characteristics of Internal Control"
- "Controls Relevant to the Audit"
- "Nature and Extent of the Understanding of Relevant Controls"
- "Components of Internal Control"

General Nature and Characteristics of Internal Control (Ref: par. .13)**Purpose of Internal Control**

.A44 Internal control is designed, implemented, and maintained to address identified business risks that threaten the achievement of any of the entity's objectives that concern

- the reliability of the entity's financial reporting,
- the effectiveness and efficiency of its operations, and
- its compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

The way in which internal control is designed, implemented, and maintained varies with an entity's size and complexity.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A45 Smaller entities may use less structured means and simpler processes and procedures to achieve their objectives. For example, smaller entities with active management involvement in the financial reporting process may not have extensive descriptions of accounting procedures or detailed written policies. For some entities, in particular very small entities, the owner-manager (the proprietor of an entity who is involved in running the entity on a day-to-day basis) may perform functions that in a larger entity would be regarded as belonging to several of the components of internal control. Therefore, the components of internal control may not be clearly distinguished within smaller entities, but their underlying purposes are equally valid.

Limitations of Internal Control

.A46 Internal control, no matter how effective, can provide an entity with only reasonable assurance about achieving the entity's financial reporting objectives. The likelihood of their achievement is affected by the inherent limitations of internal control. These include the realities that human judgment in decision making can be faulty and that breakdowns in internal control can occur because of human error. For example, an error in the design of, or in the change to, a con-

trol may exist. Equally, the operation of a control may not be effective, such as when information produced for the purposes of internal control (for example, an exception report) is not effectively used because the individual responsible for reviewing the information does not understand its purpose or fails to take appropriate action.

.A47 Additionally, controls can be circumvented by the collusion of two or more people or inappropriate management override of internal control. For example, management may enter into undisclosed agreements with customers that alter the terms and conditions of the entity's standard sales contracts, which may result in improper revenue recognition. Also, edit checks in a software program that are designed to identify and report transactions that exceed specified credit limits may be overridden or disabled.

.A48 Further, in designing and implementing controls, management may make judgments on the nature and extent of the controls it chooses to implement and the nature and extent of the risks it chooses to assume.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A49 Smaller entities often have fewer employees, which may limit the extent to which segregation of duties is practicable. However, in a small owner-managed entity, the owner-manager may be able to exercise more effective oversight than in a larger entity. This oversight may compensate for the generally more limited opportunities for segregation of duties.

Division of Internal Control Into Components

.A50 The division of internal control into the following five components, for purposes of GAAS, provides a useful framework for auditors when considering how different aspects of an entity's internal control may affect the audit:

- a. The control environment
- b. The entity's risk assessment process
- c. The information system, including the related business processes relevant to financial reporting and communication
- d. Control activities
- e. Monitoring of controls

.A51 The division does not necessarily reflect how an entity designs, implements, and maintains internal control or how it may classify any particular component. Auditors may use different terminology or frameworks to describe the various aspects of internal control and their effect on the audit other than those used in this section, provided that all the components described in this section are addressed.

.A52 Application material relating to the five components of internal control as they relate to a financial statement audit is set out in paragraphs .A71–.A107.

Characteristics of Manual and Automated Elements of Internal Control Relevant to the Auditor's Risk Assessment

.A53 An entity's system of internal control contains manual elements and often contains automated elements. The characteristics of manual or automated elements are relevant to the auditor's risk assessment and further audit procedures based thereon.

.A54 An entity's use of IT may affect any of the five components of internal control relevant to the achievement of the entity's financial reporting, operations, or compliance objectives and its operating units or business functions. For example, an entity may use IT as part of discrete systems that support only particular business units, functions, or activities, such as a unique accounts receivable system for a particular business unit or a system that controls the operation of factory equipment. Alternatively, an entity may have complex, highly integrated systems that share data and that are used to support all aspects of the entity's financial reporting, operations, and compliance objectives.

198 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A55 The following use of manual or automated elements in internal control also affects the manner in which transactions are initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, and reported:

- Controls in a manual system may include such procedures as approvals and reviews of transactions and reconciliations and follow-up of reconciling items. Alternatively, an entity may use automated procedures to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report transactions, in which case records in electronic format replace paper documents.
- Controls in IT systems consist of a combination of automated controls (for example, controls embedded in computer programs) and manual controls. Further, manual controls may be independent of IT or may use information produced by IT. They also may be limited to monitoring the effective functioning of IT and automated controls and to handling exceptions. When IT is used to initiate, authorize, record, process, or report transactions or other financial data for inclusion in financial statements, the systems and programs may include controls related to the corresponding assertions for material accounts or may be critical to the effective functioning of manual controls that depend on IT.

An entity's mix of manual and automated elements in internal control varies with the nature and complexity of the entity's use of IT.

.A56 Generally, IT benefits an entity's internal control by enabling an entity to

- consistently apply predefined business rules and perform complex calculations in processing large volumes of transactions or data;
- enhance the timeliness, availability, and accuracy of information;
- facilitate the additional analysis of information;
- enhance the ability to monitor the performance of the entity's activities and its policies and procedures;
- reduce the risk that controls will be circumvented; and
- enhance the ability to achieve effective segregation of duties by implementing security controls in applications, databases, and operating systems.

.A57 IT also poses specific risks to an entity's internal control, including, for example

- reliance on systems or programs that are inaccurately processing data, processing inaccurate data, or both.
- unauthorized access to data that may result in destruction of data or improper changes to data, including the recording of unauthorized or nonexistent transactions or inaccurate recording of transactions. Particular risks may arise when multiple users access a common database.
- the possibility of IT personnel gaining access privileges beyond those necessary to perform their assigned duties, thereby breaking down segregation of duties.
- unauthorized changes to data in master files.
- unauthorized changes to systems or programs.
- failure to make necessary changes to systems or programs.
- inappropriate manual intervention.
- potential loss of data or inability to access data as required.

.A58 Manual elements in internal control may be more suitable when judgment and discretion are required, such as for the following circumstances:

- Large, unusual, or nonrecurring transactions
- Circumstances in which errors are difficult to define, anticipate, or predict
- Changing circumstances that require a control response outside the scope of an existing automated control
- Monitoring of the effectiveness of automated controls

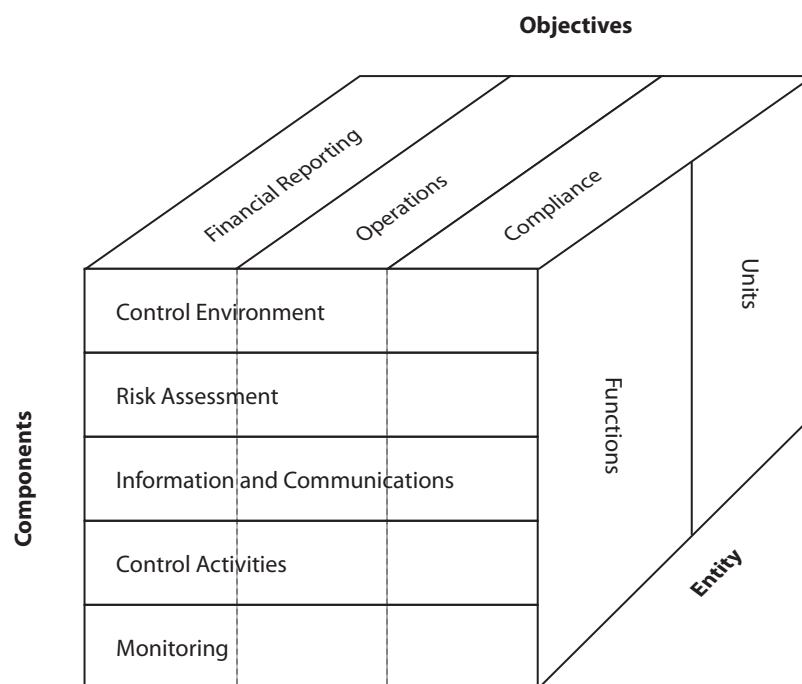
.A59 Manual elements in internal control may be less reliable than automated elements because they can be more easily bypassed, ignored, or overridden, and they also are more prone to simple errors and mistakes. Consistency of application of a manual control element cannot, therefore, be assumed. Manual control elements may be less suitable for the following circumstances:

- High volume or recurring transactions or in situations in which errors that can be anticipated or predicted can be prevented, or detected and corrected, by control parameters that are automated
- Control activities in which the specific ways to perform the control can be adequately designed and automated

.A60 The extent and nature of the risks to internal control vary depending on the nature and characteristics of the entity's information system. For example, multiple users, either external or internal, may access a common database of information that affects financial reporting. In such circumstances, a lack of control at a single user entry point might compromise the security of the entire database, potentially resulting in improper changes to, or destruction of, data. When IT personnel or users are given, or can gain, access privileges beyond those necessary to perform their assigned duties, a breakdown in segregation of duties can occur. This could result in unauthorized transactions or changes to programs or data that affect the financial statements. The entity responds to the risks arising from the use of IT or the use of manual elements in internal control by establishing effective controls in light of the characteristics of the entity's information system.

Controls Relevant to the Audit

.A61 A direct relationship exists between an entity's objectives and the controls it implements to provide reasonable assurance about their achievement. The entity's objectives and, therefore, controls relate to financial reporting, operations, and compliance; however, not all of these objectives and controls are relevant to the auditor's risk assessment. This relationship is depicted as follows:



Although internal control applies to the entire entity or any of its operating units or business functions, an understanding of internal control relating to each of the entity's operating units and business functions may not be necessary to the performance of the audit.

200 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A62 Factors relevant to the auditor's professional judgment about whether a control, individually or in combination with others, is relevant to the audit may include such matters as the following:

- Materiality
- The significance of the related risk
- The size of the entity
- The nature of the entity's business, including its organization and ownership characteristics
- The diversity and complexity of the entity's operations
- Applicable legal and regulatory requirements
- The circumstances and the applicable component of internal control
- The nature and complexity of the systems that are part of the entity's internal control, including the use of service organizations
- Whether and how a specific control, individually or in combination with other controls, prevents, or detects and corrects, material misstatements

.A63 Controls over the completeness and accuracy of information produced by the entity may be relevant to the audit if the auditor intends to make use of the information in designing and performing further audit procedures.

.A64 Controls relating to operations and compliance objectives also may be relevant to an audit if they relate to data the auditor evaluates or uses in applying audit procedures. For example, controls pertaining to nonfinancial data that the auditor may use in analytical procedures, such as production statistics, or controls pertaining to detecting noncompliance with laws and regulations that may have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements,⁷ such as controls over compliance with income tax laws and regulations used to determine the income tax provision, may be relevant to an audit.

.A65 Internal control over safeguarding of assets against unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition may include controls relating to both financial reporting and operations objectives. The auditor's consideration of such controls is generally limited to those relevant to the reliability of financial reporting. For example, use of access controls, such as passwords, that limit access to the data and programs that process cash disbursements may be relevant to a financial statement audit. Conversely, safeguarding controls relating to operations objectives, such as controls to prevent the excessive use of materials in production, generally are not relevant to a financial statement audit.

.A66 An entity generally has controls relating to objectives that are not relevant to an audit and, therefore, need not be considered. For example, an entity may rely on a sophisticated system of automated controls to provide efficient and effective operations (such as an airline's system of automated controls to maintain flight schedules), but these controls ordinarily would not be relevant to the audit.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A67 Governmental entity auditors often have additional responsibilities with respect to internal control (for example, to report on internal control over financial reporting and on internal control over compliance with law, regulation, and provisions of contracts or grant agreements, violations of which could have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements). Governmental entity auditors also may have responsibilities to report on the compliance with law or regulation. As a result, their review of internal control may be broader and more detailed.

Nature and Extent of the Understanding of Relevant Controls (Ref: par. .14)

.A68 Evaluating the design of a control involves considering whether the control, individually or in combination with other controls, is capable of effectively preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements. Implementation of a control means that the control exists and that

⁷ See section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

the entity is using it. Assessing the implementation of a control that is not effectively designed is of little use, and so the design of a control is considered first. An improperly designed control may represent a significant deficiency or material weakness in the entity's internal control.

.A69 Risk assessment procedures to obtain audit evidence about the design and implementation of relevant controls may include

- inquiring of entity personnel.
- observing the application of specific controls.
- inspecting documents and reports.
- tracing transactions through the information system relevant to financial reporting.

Inquiry alone, however, is not sufficient for such purposes.

.A70 Obtaining an understanding of an entity's controls is not sufficient to test their operating effectiveness, unless some automation provides for the consistent operation of the controls. For example, obtaining audit evidence about the implementation of a manual control at a point in time does not provide audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of the control at other times during the period under audit. However, because of the inherent consistency of IT processing (see paragraph .A56), performing audit procedures to determine whether an automated control has been implemented may serve as a test of that control's operating effectiveness, depending on the auditor's assessment and testing of controls, such as those over program changes. Tests of the operating effectiveness of controls are further described in section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.⁸

Components of Internal Control—Control Environment (Ref: par. .15)

.A71 The control environment includes the governance and management functions and the attitudes, awareness, and actions of those charged with governance and management concerning the entity's internal control and its importance in the entity. The control environment sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people. It is the foundation for all other components of internal control, providing discipline and structure.

.A72 Elements of the control environment that may be relevant when obtaining an understanding of the control environment include the following:

- a. *Communication and enforcement of integrity and ethical values.* Essential elements that influence the effectiveness of the design, administration, and monitoring of controls.
- b. *Commitment to competence.* Matters such as management's consideration of the competence levels for particular jobs and how those levels translate into requisite skills and knowledge.
- c. *Participation by those charged with governance.* Attributes of those charged with governance, such as
 - i. their independence from management.
 - ii. their experience and stature.
 - iii. the extent of their involvement and the information they receive and the scrutiny of activities.
 - iv. the appropriateness of their actions, including the degree to which difficult questions are raised and pursued with management.
 - v. their interaction with internal and external auditors.
- d. *Management's philosophy and operating style.* Characteristics such as management's
 - i. approach to taking and managing business risks.
 - ii. attitudes and actions toward financial reporting.
 - iii. attitudes toward information processing and accounting functions and personnel.

⁸ Paragraphs .08–.17 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

202 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- e. *Organizational structure.* The framework within which an entity's activities for achieving its objectives are planned, executed, controlled, and reviewed.
- f. *Assignment of authority and responsibility.* Matters such as how authority and responsibility for operating activities are assigned and how reporting relationships and authorization hierarchies are established.
- g. *Human resource policies and practices.* Policies and practices that relate to, for example, recruitment, orientation, training, evaluation, counseling, promotion, compensation, and remedial actions.

Audit Evidence for Elements of the Control Environment

.A73 Relevant audit evidence may be obtained through a combination of inquiries and other risk assessment procedures, such as corroborating inquiries through observation or inspection of documents. For example, through inquiries of management and employees, the auditor may obtain an understanding of how management communicates to employees management's views on business practices and ethical behavior. The auditor may then determine whether relevant controls have been implemented by considering, for example, whether management has a written code of conduct and whether it acts in a manner that supports the code.

Effect of the Control Environment on the Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement

.A74 Some elements of an entity's control environment have a pervasive effect on assessing the risks of material misstatement. For example, an entity's control consciousness is influenced significantly by those charged with governance because one of their roles is to counterbalance pressures on management regarding financial reporting that may arise from market demands or remuneration schemes. The effectiveness of the design of the control environment with regard to participation by those charged with governance is therefore influenced by such matters as

- their independence from management and their ability to evaluate the actions of management.
- whether they understand the entity's business transactions.
- the extent to which they evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A75 An active and independent board of directors may influence the philosophy and operating style of senior management. However, other elements may be more limited in their effect. For example, although human resource policies and practices directed toward hiring competent financial, accounting, and IT personnel may reduce the risk of errors in processing financial information, they may not mitigate a strong bias by top management to overstate earnings.

.A76 The existence of a satisfactory control environment can be a positive factor when the auditor assesses the risks of material misstatement. However, although it may help reduce the risk of fraud, a satisfactory control environment is not an absolute deterrent to fraud. Conversely, deficiencies in the control environment may undermine the effectiveness of controls, particularly with regard to fraud. For example, management's failure to commit sufficient resources to address IT security risks may adversely affect internal control by allowing improper changes to be made to computer programs or data or unauthorized transactions to be processed. As explained in section 330, the control environment also influences the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's further procedures.⁹

.A77 The control environment in itself does not prevent, or detect and correct, a material misstatement. It may, however, influence the auditor's evaluation of the effectiveness of other controls (for example, the monitoring of controls and the operation of specific control activities) and, thereby, the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement.

⁹ Paragraph .A2 of section 330.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A78 The control environment within smaller entities is likely to differ from larger entities. For example, those charged with governance in smaller entities may not include an independent or outside member, and the role of governance may be undertaken directly by the owner-manager when no other owners exist. The nature of the control environment also may influence the significance of other controls or their absence. For example, the active involvement of an owner-manager may mitigate certain risks arising from a lack of segregation of duties in a small entity; however, it may increase other risks (for example, the risk of override of controls).

.A79 In addition, audit evidence for elements of the control environment in smaller entities may not be available in documentary form, in particular when communication between management and other personnel may be informal, yet effective. For example, smaller entities might not have a written code of conduct but, instead, develop a culture that emphasizes the importance of integrity and ethical behavior through oral communication and by management example.

.A80 Consequently, the attitudes, awareness, and actions of management or the owner-manager are of particular importance to the auditor's understanding of a smaller entity's control environment.

Components of Internal Control—The Entity's Risk Assessment Process (Ref: par. .16)

.A81 An entity's risk assessment process for financial reporting purposes is its identification, analysis, and management of risks relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements. If that process is appropriate to the circumstances, including the nature, size, and complexity of the entity, it assists the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement. For example, risk assessment may address how the entity considers the possibility of unrecorded transactions or identifies and analyzes significant estimates recorded in the financial statements. Risks relevant to reliable financial reporting also relate to specific events or transactions. Whether the entity's risk assessment process is appropriate to the circumstances is a matter of professional judgment.

.A82 Risks relevant to financial reporting include external and internal events and circumstances that may occur and adversely affect an entity's ability to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements. Risks can arise or change due to circumstances such as the following:

- Changes in operating environment
- New personnel
- New or revamped information systems
- Rapid growth
- New technology
- New business models, products, or activities
- Corporate restructurings
- Expanded foreign operations
- New accounting pronouncements
- Changes in economic conditions

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities (Ref: par. .18)

.A83 A smaller entity is unlikely to have an established risk assessment process in place. In such cases, it is likely that management will identify risks through direct personal involvement in the business. Irrespective of the circumstances, however, inquiry about identified risks and how they are addressed by management is still necessary.

204 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Components of Internal Control—The Information System, Including the Related Business Processes Relevant to Financial Reporting and Communication***The Information System, Including Related Business Processes Relevant to Financial Reporting**
(Ref: par. .19)

.A84 The information system relevant to financial reporting objectives, which includes the accounting system, consists of the procedures and records designed and established to

- initiate, authorize, record, process, and report entity transactions (as well as events and conditions) and maintain accountability for the related assets, liabilities, and equity;
- resolve incorrect processing of transactions (for example, automated suspense files and procedures followed to clear suspense items out on a timely basis);
- process and account for system overrides or bypasses to controls;
- transfer information from transaction processing systems to the general ledger;
- capture information relevant to financial reporting for events and conditions other than transactions, such as the depreciation and amortization of assets and changes in the recoverability of accounts receivables; and
- ensure information required to be disclosed by the applicable financial reporting framework is accumulated, recorded, processed, summarized, and appropriately reported in the financial statements.

Journal Entries

.A85 An entity's information system typically includes the use of standard journal entries that are required on a recurring basis to record transactions. Examples might be journal entries to record sales, purchases, and cash disbursements in the general ledger or to record accounting estimates that are periodically made by management, such as changes in the estimate of uncollectible accounts receivable.

.A86 An entity's financial reporting process also includes the use of nonstandard journal entries to record nonrecurring, unusual transactions or adjustments. Examples of such entries include consolidating adjustments and entries for a business combination or disposal or nonrecurring estimates, such as the impairment of an asset. In manual general ledger systems, nonstandard journal entries may be identified through inspection of ledgers, journals, and supporting documentation. When automated procedures are used to maintain the general ledger and prepare financial statements, such entries may exist only in electronic form and may, therefore, be more easily identified through the use of computer assisted audit techniques.

Related Business Processes

.A87 An entity's business processes are the activities designed to

- develop, purchase, produce, sell, and distribute an entity's products and services;
- ensure compliance with laws and regulations; and
- record information, including accounting and financial reporting information.

Business processes result in the transactions that are recorded, processed, and reported by the information system. Obtaining an understanding of the entity's business processes, which includes how transactions are originated, assists the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity's information system relevant to financial reporting in a manner that is appropriate to the entity's circumstances.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A88 Information systems and related business processes relevant to financial reporting in smaller entities are likely to be less sophisticated than in larger entities, but their role is just as significant. Smaller entities with active management involvement may not need extensive descriptions of accounting procedures, sophisticated accounting records, or written policies. Understanding the entity's systems and processes may, therefore, be easier in an audit of smaller entities, and it may be more dependent on inquiry than on review of documentation. The need to obtain an understanding, however, remains important.

Communication (Ref: par. .20)

.A89 Communication by the entity of the financial reporting roles and responsibilities and significant matters relating to financial reporting involves providing an understanding of individual roles and responsibilities pertaining to internal control over financial reporting. It includes such matters as the extent to which personnel understand how their activities in the financial reporting information system relate to the work of others and the means of reporting exceptions to an appropriate higher level within the entity. Communication may take such forms as policy manuals and financial reporting manuals. Open communication channels help ensure that exceptions are reported and acted on.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A90 Communication may be less structured and easier to achieve in a smaller entity than in a larger entity due to fewer levels of responsibility and management's greater visibility and availability.

Components of Internal Control—Control Activities (Ref: par. .21)

.A91 Control activities are the policies and procedures that help ensure that management directives are carried out. Control activities, whether within IT or manual systems, have various objectives and are applied at various organizational and functional levels. Examples of specific control activities include those relating to the following:

- Authorization
- Performance reviews
- Information processing
- Physical controls
- Segregation of duties

.A92 Control activities that are relevant to the audit are those that are

- required to be treated as such, being control activities that relate to significant risks and those that relate to risks for which substantive procedures alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence, as required by paragraphs .30–.31, respectively, or
- considered to be relevant in the professional judgment of the auditor.

.A93 The auditor's professional judgment about whether a control activity is relevant to the audit is influenced by the risk that the auditor has identified that may give rise to a material misstatement and whether the auditor thinks it is likely to be appropriate to test the operating effectiveness of the control in determining the extent of substantive testing.

.A94 The auditor's emphasis may be on identifying and obtaining an understanding of control activities that address the areas in which the auditor considers that risks of material misstatement are likely to be higher. When multiple control activities each achieve the same objective, it is unnecessary to obtain an understanding of each of the control activities related to such objective.

.A95 The auditor's knowledge about the presence or absence of control activities obtained from the understanding of the other components of internal control assists the auditor in determining whether it is necessary to devote additional attention to obtaining an understanding of control activities.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A96 The concepts underlying control activities in smaller entities are likely to be similar to those in larger entities, but the formality with which they operate may vary. Further, smaller entities may find that certain types of control activities are not relevant because of controls applied by management. For example, management's sole authority for granting credit to customers and approving significant purchases can provide strong control over important account balances and transactions, lessening or removing the need for more detailed control activities.

.A97 Control activities relevant to the audit of a smaller entity are likely to relate to the main transaction cycles, such as revenues, purchases, and employment expenses.

Risks Arising From IT (Ref: par. .22)

.A98 The use of IT affects the way that control activities are implemented. From the auditor's perspective, controls over IT systems are effective when they maintain the integrity of information and the security of the data such systems process and when they include effective general IT controls and application controls.

.A99 *General IT controls* are policies and procedures that relate to many applications and support the effective functioning of application controls. They apply to mainframe, miniframe, and end-user environments. General IT controls that maintain the integrity of information and security of data commonly include controls over the following:

- Data center and network operations
- System software acquisition, change, and maintenance
- Program change
- Access security
- Application system acquisition, development, and maintenance

They are generally implemented to deal with the risks referred to in paragraph .A57.

.A100 Although ineffective general IT controls do not by themselves cause misstatements, they may permit application controls to operate improperly and allow misstatements to occur and not be detected. For example, if deficiencies in the general IT controls over access security exist and applications are relying on these general controls to prevent unauthorized transactions from being processed, such general IT control deficiencies may have a more severe effect on the effective design and operation of the application control. General IT controls are assessed with regard to their effect on applications and data that become part of the financial statements. For example, if no new systems are implemented during the period of the financial statements, deficiencies in the general IT controls over application system acquisition and development may not be relevant to the financial statements being audited.

.A101 *Application controls* are manual or automated procedures that typically operate at a business process level and apply to the processing of transactions by individual applications. Application controls can be preventive or detective and are designed to ensure the integrity of the accounting records. Accordingly, application controls relate to procedures used to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report transactions or other financial data. These controls help ensure that transactions occurred, are authorized, and are completely and accurately recorded and processed. Examples include edit checks of input data and numerical sequence checks with manual follow-up of exception reports or correction at the point of data entry.

Components of Internal Control—Monitoring of Controls (Ref: par. .23)

.A102 Monitoring of controls is a process to assess the effectiveness of internal control performance over time. It involves assessing the effectiveness of controls on a timely basis and taking necessary remedial actions. Management accomplishes monitoring of controls through ongoing activities, separate evaluations, or a combination of the two. Ongoing monitoring activities often are built into the normal recurring activities of an entity and include regular management and supervisory activities.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A103 Management's monitoring of controls often is accomplished by management's or the owner-manager's close involvement in operations. This involvement often will identify significant variances from expectations and inaccuracies in financial data leading to remedial action to the control.

Internal Audit Function (Ref: par. .24)

.A104 The entity's internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit if the nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities and activities are related to the entity's financial reporting, and the auditor expects to use the work of the internal auditors to modify the nature or timing or reduce the extent of audit procedures to be performed. If the auditor determines that the internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit, section 610, *The Auditor's Consider-*

ation of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards),[†] applies.

.A105 The objectives of an internal audit function and, therefore, the nature of its responsibilities and its status within the organization, vary widely and depend on the size and structure of the entity and the requirements of management and, when applicable, those charged with governance. The responsibilities of an internal audit function may include, for example, monitoring of internal control, risk management, and review of compliance with laws and regulations. On the other hand, the responsibilities of the internal audit function may be limited to the review of the economy, efficiency, and effectiveness of operations, for example, and, accordingly, may not relate to the entity's financial reporting.

.A106 If the nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities is related to the entity's financial reporting, the external auditor's consideration of the activities performed or to be performed by the internal audit function may include review of the internal audit function's audit plan for the period, if any, and discussion of that plan with the internal auditors.

Sources of Information (Ref: par. .25)

.A107 Much of the information used in monitoring may be produced by the entity's information system. If management assumes that data used for monitoring are accurate without having a basis for that assumption, errors that may exist in the information could potentially lead management to incorrect conclusions from its monitoring activities. Accordingly, an understanding of the following is required as part of the auditor's understanding of the entity's monitoring activities component of internal control:

- The sources of the information related to the entity's monitoring activities
- The basis upon which management considers the information to be sufficiently reliable for the purpose

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement at the Financial Statement Level (Ref: par. .26a)

.A108 Risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level refer to risks that relate pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many assertions. Risks of this nature are not necessarily risks identifiable with specific assertions at the class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure level. Rather, they represent circumstances that may increase the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level (for example, through management override of internal control). Financial statement level risks may be especially relevant to the auditor's consideration of the risks of material misstatement arising from fraud.

.A109 Risks at the financial statement level may derive, in particular, from a deficient control environment (although these risks also may relate to factors such as declining economic conditions). For example, deficiencies such as management's lack of competence may have a more pervasive effect on the financial statements and may require an overall response by the auditor.

.A110 The auditor's understanding of internal control may raise doubts about the auditability of an entity's financial statements. For example

- concerns about the integrity of the entity's management may be so serious to cause the auditor to conclude that the risk of management misrepresentation in the financial statements is such that an audit cannot be conducted.

[†] SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 65 has been included in section 610 in AICPA Professional Standards, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

208 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- concerns about the condition and reliability of an entity's records may cause the auditor to conclude that it is unlikely that sufficient appropriate audit evidence will be available to support an unmodified opinion on the financial statements.

.A111 Section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, addresses the determination of whether a need exists for the auditor to express a qualified or adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion or, as may be required in some cases, to withdraw from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement at the Relevant Assertion Level (Ref: par. .26b)

.A112 Risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures need to be considered because such consideration directly assists in determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures at the assertion level necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. In identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level, the auditor may conclude that the identified risks relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many relevant assertions.

The Use of Assertions

.A113 In representing that the financial statements are in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, management implicitly or explicitly makes assertions regarding the recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of the various elements of financial statements and related disclosures.

.A114 Assertions used by the auditor to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur fall into the following three categories and may take the following forms:

- a. Assertions about classes of transactions and events for the period under audit, such as the following:
 - i. *Occurrence*. Transactions and events that have been recorded have occurred and pertain to the entity.
 - ii. *Completeness*. All transactions and events that should have been recorded have been recorded.
 - iii. *Accuracy*. Amounts and other data relating to recorded transactions and events have been recorded appropriately.
 - iv. *Cutoff*. Transactions and events have been recorded in the correct accounting period.
 - v. *Classification*. Transactions and events have been recorded in the proper accounts.
- b. Assertions about account balances at the period-end, such as the following:
 - i. *Existence*. Assets, liabilities, and equity interests exist.
 - ii. *Rights and obligations*. The entity holds or controls the rights to assets, and liabilities are the obligations of the entity.
 - iii. *Completeness*. All assets, liabilities, and equity interests that should have been recorded have been recorded.
 - iv. *Valuation and allocation*. Assets, liabilities, and equity interests are included in the financial statements at appropriate amounts, and any resulting valuation or allocation adjustments are appropriately recorded.
- c. Assertions about presentation and disclosure, such as the following:
 - i. *Occurrence and rights and obligations*. Disclosed events, transactions, and other matters have occurred and pertain to the entity.
 - ii. *Completeness*. All disclosures that should have been included in the financial statements have been included.
 - iii. *Classification and understandability*. Financial information is appropriately presented and described, and disclosures are clearly expressed.
 - iv. *Accuracy and valuation*. Financial and other information is disclosed fairly and in appropriate amounts.

.A115 The auditor may use the assertions as described previously or may express them differently, provided that all aspects described previously have been covered. For example, the auditor may choose to combine the assertions about transactions and events with the assertions about account balances. As another example, there may not be a separate assertion related to cutoff of transactions and events when the occurrence and completeness assertions include appropriate consideration of recording transactions in the correct accounting period.

Relevant Assertions

.A116 The auditor is required by paragraph .26*b* to use relevant assertions for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures in sufficient detail to form a basis for the assessment of risks of material misstatement and the design and performance of further audit procedures. The auditor also is required to use relevant assertions in assessing risks by relating the identified risks to what can go wrong at the relevant assertion, taking account of relevant controls that the auditor intends to test, and designing further audit procedures that are responsive to the assessed risks.

.A117 *Relevant assertions* are assertions that have a reasonable possibility of containing a misstatement or misstatements that would cause the financial statements to be materially misstated and, as such, are assertions that have a meaningful bearing on whether the account is fairly stated. Not all assertions pertaining to a particular account balance will always be relevant. For example, valuation may not be relevant to the cash account unless currency translation is involved; however, existence and completeness are always relevant. Similarly, valuation may not be relevant to the gross amount of the accounts receivable balance but is relevant to the related allowance accounts. Additionally, the auditor might, in some circumstances, focus on the presentation and disclosure assertions separately in connection with the period-end financial reporting process.

.A118 For each significant class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure, the auditor is required to determine the relevance of each of the financial statement assertions. Identifying relevant assertions includes determining the source of likely potential misstatements in each significant class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. Attributes indicating the potential relevance of an assertion include the

- a.* nature of the assertion;
- b.* volume of transactions or data related to the assertion; and
- c.* nature and complexity of the systems, including the use of IT, by which the entity processes and controls information supporting the assertion.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A119 When making assertions about the financial statements of governmental entities, in addition to those assertions set out in paragraph .A114, management asserts that transactions and events have been carried out in accordance with law or regulation. Such assertions may fall within the scope of the financial statement audit.

Process of Identifying Risks of Material Misstatement (Ref: par. .27a)

.A120 Information gathered by performing risk assessment procedures, including the audit evidence obtained in evaluating the design of controls and determining whether they have been implemented, is used as audit evidence to support the risk assessment. The risk assessment determines the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures to be performed.

.A121 Appendix C provides examples of conditions and events that may indicate the existence of risks of material misstatement.

Relating Controls to Assertions (Ref: par. .27c)

.A122 In making risk assessments, the auditor may identify the controls that are likely to prevent, or detect and correct, material misstatement in specific assertions. Generally, it is useful to obtain an understanding of controls and relate them to assertions in the context of processes and systems in which they exist because individual control activities often do not in themselves

210 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

address a risk. Often, only multiple control activities, together with other components of internal control, will be sufficient to address a risk.

.A123 Conversely, some control activities may have a specific effect on an individual assertion embodied in a particular class of transactions or account balance. For example, the control activities that an entity established to ensure that its personnel are properly counting and recording the annual physical inventory relate directly to the existence and completeness assertions for the inventory account balance.

.A124 Controls can be either directly or indirectly related to an assertion. The more indirect the relationship, the less effective that control may be in preventing, or detecting and correcting, misstatements in that assertion. For example, a sales manager's review of a summary of sales activity for specific stores by region ordinarily is only indirectly related to the completeness assertion for sales revenue. Accordingly, it may be less effective in reducing risk for that assertion than controls more directly related to that assertion, such as matching shipping documents with billing documents.

Significant Risks

Identifying Significant Risks (Ref: par. .28–.29)

.A125 Significant risks often relate to significant nonroutine transactions and matters that require significant judgment. *Nonroutine transactions* are transactions that are unusual, either due to size or nature, and that, therefore, occur infrequently. Matters that require significant judgment may include the development of accounting estimates for which a significant measurement uncertainty exists. Routine, noncomplex transactions that are subject to systematic processing are less likely to give rise to significant risks.

.A126 Risks of material misstatement may be greater for significant nonroutine transactions arising from matters such as the following:

- Greater management intervention to specify the accounting treatment
- Greater manual intervention for data collection and processing
- Complex calculations or accounting principles
- The nature of nonroutine transactions, which may make it difficult for the entity to implement effective controls over the risks
- Related party transactions

.A127 Risks of material misstatement may be greater for matters that require significant judgment, such as the development of accounting estimates, arising from matters such as the following:

- Accounting principles for accounting estimates or revenue recognition may be subject to differing interpretation.
- Required judgment may be subjective or complex or it may require assumptions about the effects of future events (for example, judgment about fair value).

.A128 Section 330 describes the consequences for further audit procedures of identifying a risk as significant.¹⁰

Significant Risks Relating to the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

.A129 Section 240 further addresses the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

Understanding Controls Related to Significant Risks (Ref: par. .30)

.A130 Although risks relating to significant nonroutine transactions or matters that require significant judgment are often less likely to be subject to routine controls, management may have other responses intended to deal with such risks. Accordingly, the auditor's understanding of whether the entity has designed and implemented controls for significant risks arising from non-

¹⁰ Paragraphs .15 and .22 of section 330.

routine transactions or matters that require significant judgment includes whether and how management responds to the risks. Such responses might include

- control activities, such as a review of assumptions by senior management or specialists.
- documented processes for estimations.
- approval by those charged with governance.

.A131 For example, when nonrecurring events occur, such as the receipt of notice of a significant lawsuit, consideration of the entity's response may include such matters as whether it has been referred to appropriate specialists (for example, internal or external legal counsel), whether an assessment has been made of the potential effect, and how it is proposed that the circumstances are to be disclosed in the financial statements.

.A132 In some cases, management may not have appropriately responded to significant risks of material misstatement by implementing controls over these significant risks. Failure by management to implement such controls may be a significant deficiency or a material weakness. In these circumstances, the auditor also may consider the implications for the auditor's risk assessment.

Risks for Which Substantive Procedures Alone Do Not Provide Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .31)

.A133 Risks of material misstatement may relate directly to the recording of routine classes of transactions or account balances and the preparation of reliable financial statements. Such risks may include risks of inaccurate or incomplete processing for routine and significant classes of transactions, such as an entity's revenue; purchases; and cash receipts or cash payments.

.A134 When such routine business transactions are subject to highly automated processing with little or no manual intervention, it may not be possible to perform only substantive procedures regarding the risk. For example, the auditor may consider this to be the case when a significant amount of an entity's information is initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, or reported only in electronic form, such as in an integrated system. In such cases

- audit evidence may be available only in electronic form, and its sufficiency and appropriateness usually depend on the effectiveness of controls over its accuracy and completeness.
- the potential for improper initiation or alteration of information to occur and not be detected may be greater if appropriate controls are not operating effectively.

.A135 Examples of situations in which the auditor may find it impossible to design effective substantive procedures that, by themselves, provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence that certain relevant assertions are not materially misstated include the following:

- An entity that conducts its business using IT to initiate orders for the purchase and delivery of goods based on predetermined rules of what to order and in what quantities and to pay the related accounts payable based on system-generated decisions initiated upon the confirmed receipt of goods and terms of payment. No other documentation of orders placed or goods received is produced or maintained, other than through the IT system.
- An entity that provides services to customers via electronic media (for example, an Internet service provider or a telecommunications company) and uses IT to create a log of the services provided to its customers, initiate and process its billings for the services, and automatically record such amounts in electronic accounting records that are part of the system used to produce the entity's financial statements.

.A136 The consequences for further audit procedures of identifying such risks are described in section 330.¹¹

¹¹ Paragraph .08 of section 330.

212 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Revision of Risk Assessment (Ref: par. .32)**

.A137 During the audit, information may come to the auditor's attention that differs significantly from the information on which the risk assessment was based. For example, the risk assessment may be based on an expectation that controls are operating effectively. In performing tests of controls, the auditor may obtain audit evidence that they were not operating effectively at relevant times during the audit. Similarly, in performing substantive procedures, the auditor may detect misstatements in amounts or frequency greater than is consistent with the auditor's risk assessment. In such circumstances, the risk assessment may not appropriately reflect the true circumstances of the entity, and the further planned audit procedures may not be effective in detecting material misstatements. See section 330 for further guidance.

Documentation (Ref: par. .33)

.A138 The manner in which the requirements of paragraph .33 are documented is for the auditor to determine exercising professional judgment. For example, in audits of smaller entities, the documentation may be incorporated in the auditor's documentation of the overall strategy and audit plan.¹² Similarly, the results of the risk assessment may be documented separately, or they may be documented as part of the auditor's documentation of further audit procedures.¹³ The form and extent of the documentation is influenced by the nature, size, and complexity of the entity and its internal control; availability of information from the entity; and the audit methodology and technology used in the course of the audit.

.A139 For entities that have uncomplicated businesses and processes relevant to financial reporting, the documentation may be simple and relatively brief. It is not necessary to document the entirety of the auditor's understanding of the entity and matters related to it. Key elements of the understanding documented by the auditor include those on which the auditor based the assessment of the risks of material misstatement.

.A140 The extent of documentation also may reflect the experience and capabilities of the members of the audit engagement team. Provided that the requirements of section 230, *Audit Documentation*, are met, an audit undertaken by an engagement team comprising less experienced individuals may contain more detailed documentation to assist them to obtain an appropriate understanding of the entity than one that includes experienced individuals.

.A141 For recurring audits, certain documentation may be carried forward and updated as necessary to reflect changes in the entity's business or processes.

¹² Paragraphs .07–.09 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*.

¹³ Paragraph .30 of section 330.

.A142**Appendix A—Understanding the Entity and Its Environment (Ref: par. .A17)**

This appendix provides additional guidance on matters the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the industry and regulatory and other external factors that affect the entity, the nature of the entity, objectives and strategies and related business risks, and the measurement and review of the entity's financial performance. The examples provided cover a broad range of matters applicable to many engagements; however, not all matters are relevant to every engagement, and the list of examples is not necessarily complete. Additional guidance on internal control is contained in appendix B, "Internal Control Components."

Industry, Regulatory, and Other External Factors

Examples of matters an auditor may consider include the following:

- Industry conditions, such as the following:
 - The market and competition, including demand, capacity, and price competition
 - Cyclical or seasonal activity
 - Product technology relating to the entity's products
 - Supply availability and cost
- Regulatory environment, such as the following:
 - Accounting principles and industry-specific practices
 - Regulatory framework for a regulated industry
 - Legislation and regulation that significantly affect the entity's operations, such as the following:
 - Regulatory requirements
 - Direct supervisory activities
 - Taxation (corporate and other)
 - Government policies currently affecting the conduct of the entity's business, such as the following:
 - Monetary, including foreign exchange controls
 - Fiscal
 - Financial incentives (for example, government aid programs)
 - Tariffs and trade restrictions
 - Environmental requirements affecting the industry and the entity's business
- Other external factors currently affecting the entity's business, such as the following:
 - General level of economic activity (for example, recession, growth, and so on)
 - Interest rates and availability of financing
 - Inflation and currency revaluation

Nature of the Entity

Examples of matters an auditor may consider include the following:

- Business operations, such as the following:
 - Nature of revenue sources (for example, manufacturer; wholesaler; banking, insurance, or other financial services; import-export trading; utility; transportation; and technology products and services)
 - Products or services and markets (for example, major customers and contracts, terms of payment, profit margins, market share, competitors, exports, pricing policies, reputation of products, warranties, backlog, trends, marketing strategy and objectives, and manufacturing processes)

214 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Conduct of operations (for example, stages and methods of production, subsidiaries or divisions, delivery of products and services, and details of declining or expanding operations)
- Alliances, joint ventures, and outsourcing activities
- Involvement in e-commerce, including Internet sales and marketing activities
- Geographic dispersion and industry segmentation
- Location of production facilities, warehouses, and offices
- Key customers
- Important suppliers of goods and services (for example, long term contracts, stability of supply, terms of payment, imports, and methods of delivery, such as “just-in-time”)
- Employment (for example, by location, supply, wage levels, union contracts, pension and other postemployment benefits, stock option or incentive bonus arrangements, and government regulation related to employment matters)
- Research and development activities and expenditures
- Transactions with related parties
- Investments, such as the following:
 - Acquisitions, mergers, or disposals of business activities (planned or recently executed)
 - Investments and dispositions of securities and loans
 - Capital investment activities, including investments in plant and equipment and technology and any recent or planned changes
 - Investments in nonconsolidated entities, including partnerships, joint ventures, and investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives
 - Life cycle stage of enterprise (start-up, growing, mature, declining)
- Financing, such as the following:
 - Group structure of major subsidiaries and associated entities, including consolidated and nonconsolidated structures
 - Debt structure, including covenants, restrictions, guarantees, and off balance sheet financing arrangements
 - Leasing of property, plant, or equipment for use in the business
 - Beneficial owners (local and foreign business reputation and experience)
 - Related parties
 - Use of derivative financial instruments
- Financial reporting, such as the following:
 - Accounting principles and industry-specific practices
 - Revenue recognition practices
 - Accounting for fair values
 - Inventories (for example, locations and quantities)
 - Foreign currency assets, liabilities, and transactions
 - Industry-specific significant categories (for example, loans and investments for banks, accounts receivable and inventory for manufacturers, research and development for pharmaceuticals)
 - Accounting for unusual or complex transactions, including those in controversial or emerging areas (for example, accounting for stock-based compensation)
 - Financial statement presentation and disclosure

Objectives and Strategies and Related Business Risks

Examples of matters an auditor may consider include the following:

- Existence of objectives (that is, how the entity addresses industry, regulatory, and other external factors) relating to, for example, the following matters:
 - Industry developments (a potential related business risk might be, for example, the entity does not have the personnel or expertise to deal with the changes in the industry)

- New products and services (a potential related business risk might be, for example, product liability has increased)
- Expansion of the business (a potential related business risk might be, for example, the demand has not been accurately estimated)
- New accounting requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, incomplete or improper implementation or increased costs)
- Regulatory requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, legal exposure has increased)
- Current and prospective financing requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, the entity's inability to meet requirements results in the loss of financing)
- IT (a potential related business risk might be, for example, systems and processes are not compatible)
- Risk appetite of managers and stakeholders
- Effects of implementing a strategy, particularly any effects that will lead to new accounting requirements (a potential related business risk might be, for example, implementation is incomplete or improper)

Measurement and Review of the Entity's Financial Performance

Examples of matters an auditor may consider include the following:

- Key ratios and operating statistics
- Key performance indicators
- Employee performance measures and incentive compensation policies
- Trends
- Use of forecasts, budgets, and variance analysis
- Analyst reports and credit rating reports
- Competitor analysis
- Period-on-period financial performance (revenue growth, profitability, and leverage)

.A143

Appendix B—Internal Control Components (Ref: par. .04, .15–.25, and .A71–.A107)

This appendix further explains the components of internal control, as set out in paragraphs .04, .15–.25, and .A71–.A107, as they relate to a financial statement audit.

Control Environment

The control environment encompasses the following elements:

- a. *Communication and enforcement of integrity and ethical values.* The effectiveness of controls cannot rise above the integrity and ethical values of the people who create, administer, and monitor them. Integrity and ethical behavior are the products of the entity's ethical and behavioral standards, how they are communicated, and how they are reinforced in practice. The enforcement of integrity and ethical values includes, for example, management actions to eliminate or mitigate incentives or temptations that might prompt personnel to engage in dishonest, illegal, or unethical acts. The communication of entity policies on integrity and ethical values may include the communication of behavioral standards to personnel through policy statements and codes of conduct and by example.
- b. *Commitment to competence.* *Competence* is the knowledge and skills necessary to accomplish tasks that define the individual's job.
- c. *Participation by those charged with governance.* An entity's control consciousness is influenced significantly by those charged with governance. The importance of the responsibilities of those charged with governance is recognized in codes of practice and other laws and regulations or guidance produced for the benefit of those charged with governance. Other responsibilities of those charged with governance include oversight of the design and effective operation of whistle-blower procedures and the process for reviewing the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.
- d. *Management's philosophy and operating style.* Management's philosophy and operating style encompass a broad range of characteristics. For example, management's attitudes and actions toward financial reporting may manifest themselves through conservative or aggressive selection from available alternative accounting principles or conscientiousness and conservatism with which accounting estimates are developed.
- e. *Organizational structure.* Establishing a relevant organizational structure includes considering key areas of authority and responsibility and appropriate lines of reporting. The appropriateness of an entity's organizational structure depends, in part, on its size and the nature of its activities.
- f. *Assignment of authority and responsibility.* The assignment of authority and responsibility may include policies relating to appropriate business practices, knowledge and experience of key personnel, and resources provided for carrying out duties. In addition, it may include policies and communications directed at ensuring that all personnel understand the entity's objectives, know how their individual actions interrelate and contribute to those objectives, and recognize how and for what they will be held accountable.
- g. *Human resource policies and practices.* Human resource policies and practices often demonstrate important matters regarding the control consciousness of an entity. For example, standards for recruiting the most qualified individuals, with an emphasis on educational background, prior work experience, past accomplishments, and evidence of integrity and ethical behavior, demonstrate an entity's commitment to competent and trustworthy people. Training policies that communicate prospective roles and responsibilities and include practices such as training schools and seminars illustrate expected levels of performance and behavior. Promotions driven by periodic performance appraisals demonstrate the entity's commitment to the advancement of qualified personnel to higher levels of responsibility.

The Entity's Risk Assessment Process

For financial reporting purposes, the entity's risk assessment process includes how management identifies business risks relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements in accordance with the entity's applicable financial reporting framework, estimates their significance, assesses the likelihood of their occurrence, and decides upon actions to respond to and manage them and the results thereof. For example, the entity's risk assessment process may address how the entity considers the possibility of unrecorded transactions or identifies and analyzes significant estimates recorded in the financial statements.

Risks relevant to reliable financial reporting include external and internal events, as well as transactions or circumstances that may occur and adversely affect an entity's ability to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements. Management may initiate plans, programs, or actions to address specific risks or it may decide to accept a risk because of cost or other considerations. Risks can arise or change due to circumstances such as the following:

- *Changes in operating environment.* Changes in the regulatory or operating environment can result in changes in competitive pressures and significantly different risks.
- *New personnel.* New personnel may have a different focus on, or understanding of, internal control.
- *New or revamped information systems.* Significant and rapid changes in information systems can change the risk relating to internal control.
- *Rapid growth.* Significant and rapid expansion of operations can strain controls and increase the risk of a breakdown in controls.
- *New technology.* Incorporating new technologies into production processes or information systems may change the risk associated with internal control.
- *New business models, products, or activities.* Entering into business areas or transactions with which an entity has little experience may introduce new risks associated with internal control.
- *Corporate restructurings.* Restructurings may be accompanied by staff reductions and changes in supervision and segregation of duties that may change the risk associated with internal control.
- *Expanded foreign operations.* The expansion or acquisition of foreign operations carries new and often unique risks that may affect internal control (for example, additional or changed risks from foreign currency transactions).
- *New accounting pronouncements.* Adoption of new accounting principles or changing accounting principles may affect risks in preparing financial statements.

The Information System, Including the Related Business Processes Relevant to Financial Reporting and Communication

An information system consists of infrastructure (physical and hardware components), software, people, procedures, and data. Many information systems make extensive use of IT.

The information system relevant to financial reporting objectives, which includes the financial reporting system, encompasses methods and records that

- identify and record all valid transactions.
- describe on a timely basis the transactions in sufficient detail to permit proper classification of transactions for financial reporting.
- measure the value of transactions in a manner that permits recording their proper monetary value in the financial statements.
- determine the time period in which transactions occurred to permit recording of transactions in the proper accounting period.
- present properly the transactions and related disclosures in the financial statements.

The quality of system-generated information affects management's ability to make appropriate decisions in managing and controlling the entity's activities and to prepare reliable financial reports.

218 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Communication, which involves providing an understanding of individual roles and responsibilities pertaining to internal control over financial reporting, may take such forms as policy manuals, accounting and financial reporting manuals, and memoranda. Communication also can be made electronically, orally, and through the actions of management.

Control Activities

Generally, control activities that may be relevant to an audit may be categorized as policies and procedures that pertain to the following:

- *Performance reviews.* These control activities include reviews and analyses of actual performance versus budgets, forecasts, and prior-period performance; relating different sets of data (operating or financial) to one another, together with analyses of the relationships and investigative and corrective actions; comparing internal data with external sources of information; and review of functional or activity performance.
- *Information processing.* The two broad groupings of information systems control activities are application controls, which apply to the processing of individual applications, and general IT controls, which are policies and procedures that relate to many applications and support the effective functioning of application controls by helping to ensure the continued proper operation of information systems. Examples of application controls include checking the arithmetical accuracy of records; maintaining and reviewing accounts and trial balances; automated controls, such as edit checks of input data and numerical sequence checks; and manual follow-up of exception reports. Examples of general IT controls are program change controls; controls that restrict access to programs or data; controls over the implementation of new releases of packaged software applications; and controls over system software that restrict access to, or monitor the use of, system utilities that could change financial data or records without leaving an audit trail.
- *Physical controls.* This includes controls that encompass the
 - physical security of assets, including adequate safeguards, such as secured facilities over access to assets and records.
 - authorization for access to computer programs and data files.
 - periodic counting and comparison with amounts shown on control records (for example comparing the results of cash, security, and inventory counts with accounting records).

The extent to which physical controls intended to prevent theft of assets are relevant to the reliability of financial statement preparation and, therefore, the audit, depends on circumstances such as when assets are highly susceptible to misappropriation.

- *Segregation of duties.* Assigning different people the responsibilities of authorizing transactions, recording transactions, and maintaining custody of assets. Segregation of duties is intended to reduce the opportunities to allow any person to be in a position to both perpetrate and conceal errors or fraud in the normal course of the person's duties.

Certain control activities may depend on the existence of appropriate higher level policies established by management or those charged with governance. For example, authorization controls may be delegated under established guidelines, such as investment criteria set by those charged with governance; alternatively, nonroutine transactions, such as major acquisitions or divestments, may require specific high level approval, including, in some cases, that of shareholders.

Monitoring of Controls

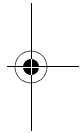
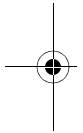
An important management responsibility is to establish and maintain internal control on an ongoing basis. Management's monitoring of controls includes considering whether they are operating as intended and that they are modified as appropriate for changes in conditions. Monitoring of controls may include activities such as management's review of whether bank reconciliations are being prepared on a timely basis, internal auditors' evaluation of sales personnel's compliance with the entity's policies on terms of sales contracts, and a legal department's oversight of compliance with the entity's ethical or business practice policies. Monitoring also is done to ensure that



controls continue to operate effectively over time. For example, if the timeliness and accuracy of bank reconciliations are not monitored, personnel are likely to stop preparing them.

Internal auditors or personnel performing similar functions may contribute to the monitoring of an entity's controls through separate evaluations. Ordinarily, they regularly provide information about the functioning of internal control, focusing considerable attention on evaluating the effectiveness of internal control; communicate information about strengths and deficiencies in internal control; and provide recommendations for improving internal control.

Monitoring activities may include using information from communications from external parties that may indicate problems or highlight areas in need of improvement. Customers implicitly corroborate billing data by paying their invoices or complaining about their charges. In addition, regulators may communicate with the entity concerning matters that affect the functioning of internal control (for example, communications concerning examinations by bank regulatory agencies). Also, management may consider communications relating to internal control from external auditors in performing monitoring activities.



.A144**Appendix C—Conditions and Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement (Ref: par. .A33 and .A121)**

The following are examples of conditions and events that may indicate the existence of risks of material misstatement. The examples provided cover a broad range of conditions and events; however, not all conditions and events are relevant to every audit engagement, and the list of examples is not necessarily complete.

- Operations in regions that are economically unstable (for example, countries with significant currency devaluation or highly inflationary economies)
- Operations exposed to volatile markets (for example, futures trading)
- Operations that are subject to a high degree of complex regulation
- Going concern and liquidity issues, including loss of significant customers
- Constraints on the availability of capital and credit
- Changes in the industry in which the entity operates
- Changes in the supply chain
- Developing or offering new products or services or moving into new lines of business
- Expanding into new locations
- Changes in the entity, such as large acquisitions or reorganizations or other unusual events
- Entities or business segments likely to be sold
- The existence of complex alliances and joint ventures
- Use of off balance sheet finance, investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives, and other complex financing arrangements
- Significant transactions with related parties
- Lack of personnel with appropriate accounting and financial reporting skills
- Changes in key personnel, including departure of key executives
- Deficiencies in internal control, especially those not addressed by management
- Inconsistencies between the entity's IT strategy and its business strategies
- Changes in the IT environment
- Installation of significant new IT systems related to financial reporting
- Inquiries into the entity's operations or financial results by regulatory or government bodies
- Past misstatements, history of errors, or a significant amount of adjustments at period-end
- Significant amount of nonroutine or nonsystematic transactions, including intercompany transactions and large revenue transactions at period-end
- Transactions that are recorded based on management's intent (for example, debt refinancing, assets to be sold, and classification of marketable securities)
- Application of new accounting pronouncements
- Accounting measurements that involve complex processes
- Events or transactions that involve significant measurement uncertainty, including accounting estimates
- Pending litigation and contingent liabilities (for example, sales warranties, financial guarantees, and environmental remediation)

.A145**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and International Standard on Auditing 315, *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 315, *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

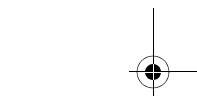
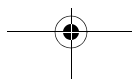
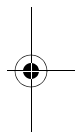
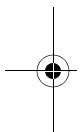
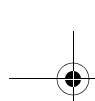
In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards.

Differences in Language

Paragraph .10 of section 315 uses different wording than paragraph 9 of ISA 315 to describe the auditor's requirement regarding the relevance of information obtained. Paragraphs .19 and .25 of section 315 include additional modifiers to conform to the comparable auditing standard issued by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board.

Both ISA 240, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements*, and section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, contain requirements for the auditor to consider the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. Paragraph .09 of section 315 contains a specific requirement for the auditor to consider the results of the assessment of the risk of material misstatement due to fraud during planning, whereas ISA 315 does not. In addition, certain requirements in paragraphs .21 and .33 of section 315 contain more specificity than do the equivalent requirements in ISA 315.

These differences do not create differences between the application of ISA 315 and the application of section 315.



AU-C Section 320*

Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to apply the concept of materiality in planning and performing an audit of financial statements. Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, explains how materiality is applied in evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements.

Materiality in the Context of an Audit

.02 Financial reporting frameworks often discuss the concept of materiality in the context of the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements. Although financial reporting frameworks may discuss materiality in different terms, they generally explain that

- misstatements, including omissions, are considered to be material if they, individually or in the aggregate, could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users made on the basis of the financial statements.
- judgments about materiality are made in light of surrounding circumstances and are affected by the size or nature of a misstatement, or a combination of both.
- judgments about matters that are material to users of the financial statements are based on a consideration of the common financial information needs of users as a group. The possible effect of misstatements on specific individual users, whose needs may vary widely, is not considered.

.03 Such a discussion about materiality provides a frame of reference to the auditor in determining materiality for the audit. If the applicable financial reporting framework does not include a discussion of the concept of materiality, the characteristics referred to in paragraph .02 provide the auditor with such a frame of reference.

.04 The auditor's determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is affected by the auditor's perception of the financial information needs of users of the financial statements. In this context, it is reasonable for the auditor to assume that users

- a. have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information in the financial statements with reasonable diligence;
- b. understand that financial statements are prepared, presented, and audited to levels of materiality;
- c. recognize the uncertainties inherent in the measurement of amounts based on the use of estimates, judgment, and the consideration of future events; and
- d. make reasonable economic decisions on the basis of the information in the financial statements.

.05 The concept of materiality is applied by the auditor both in planning and performing the audit; evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements; and in forming the opinion in the auditor's report. (Ref. par. .A1)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

224 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.06 In planning the audit, the auditor makes judgments about the size of misstatements that will be considered material. These judgments provide a basis for

- a. determining the nature and extent of risk assessment procedures;
- b. identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement; and
- c. determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

The materiality determined when planning the audit does not necessarily establish an amount below which uncorrected misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, will always be evaluated as immaterial. The circumstances related to some misstatements may cause the auditor to evaluate them as material even if they are below materiality. Although it is not practicable to design audit procedures to detect misstatements that could be material solely because of their nature (that is, qualitative considerations), the auditor considers not only the size but also the nature of uncorrected misstatements, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence, when evaluating their effect on the financial statements.¹

Effective Date

.07 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.08 The objective of the auditor is to apply the concept of materiality appropriately in planning and performing the audit.

Definition

.09 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Performance materiality. The amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than materiality for the financial statements as a whole to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If applicable, *performance materiality* also refers to the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures. Performance materiality is to be distinguished from tolerable misstatement. (Ref: par. .A2)

Requirements**Determining Materiality and Performance Materiality When Planning the Audit**

.10 When establishing the overall audit strategy, the auditor should determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If, in the specific circumstances of the entity, one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures exist for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users, then, taken on the basis of the financial statements, the auditor also should determine the materiality level or levels to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures. (Ref: par. .A3–.A13)

.11 The auditor should determine performance materiality for purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement and determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. (Ref: par. .A14)

¹ Paragraph .A23 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

Revision as the Audit Progresses

.12 The auditor should revise materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) in the event of becoming aware of information during the audit that would have caused the auditor to have determined a different amount (or amounts) initially. (Ref: par. .A15–.A16)

.13 If the auditor concludes that a lower materiality than that initially determined for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) is appropriate, the auditor should determine whether it is necessary to revise performance materiality and whether the nature, timing, and extent of the further audit procedures remain appropriate.

Documentation

.14 The auditor should include in the audit documentation the following amounts and the factors considered in their determination:²

- a. Materiality for the financial statements as a whole (see paragraph .10)
- b. If applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures (see paragraph .10)
- c. Performance materiality (see paragraph .11)
- d. Any revision of a–c as the audit progressed (see paragraphs .12–.13)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Materiality in the Context of an Audit****Materiality and Audit Risk (Ref: par. .05)**

.A1 In conducting an audit of financial statements, the overall objectives of the auditor are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework and to report on the financial statements and communicate, as required by GAAS, in accordance with the auditor's findings.³ The auditor obtains reasonable assurance by obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level.⁴ *Audit risk* is the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate audit opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated. Audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk.⁵ Materiality and audit risk are considered throughout the audit, in particular, when

- a. determining the nature and extent of risk assessment procedures to be performed;
- b. identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement;⁶
- c. determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures;⁷ and
- d. evaluating the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements⁸ and in forming the opinion in the auditor's report.

² Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

³ Paragraph .11 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

⁴ Paragraph .17 of section 200.

⁵ Paragraph .13 of section 200.

⁶ See section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

⁷ See section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

⁸ Paragraph .11 of section 450.

226 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Definition (Ref: par. .09)**

.A2 *Tolerable misstatement* is the application of performance materiality to a particular sampling procedure. Section 530, *Audit Sampling*, defines *tolerable misstatement* and provides further application guidance about the concept.⁹

Determining Materiality and Performance Materiality When Planning the Audit**Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .10)**

.A3 In the case of a governmental entity, legislators and regulators are often the primary users of its financial statements. Furthermore, the financial statements may be used to make decisions other than economic decisions. The determination of materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) in an audit of the financial statements of a governmental entity, therefore, may be influenced by law or regulation.

.A4 For most state or local governments, a governmental entity's applicable financial reporting framework is based on multiple reporting units, and generally, the auditor expresses or disclaims an opinion on a government's financial statements as a whole by providing opinions or disclaimers of opinion on each opinion unit. That is, a state or local governmental entity's applicable financial reporting framework requires the presentation of financial statements for its varied activities in various reporting units. Consequently, a reporting unit, or aggregation of reporting units, of the governmental entity represents an opinion unit to the auditor. Accordingly, in these cases, materiality is established for each opinion unit.

Use of Benchmarks in Determining Materiality for the Financial Statements as a Whole (Ref: par. .10)

.A5 Determining materiality involves the exercise of professional judgment. A percentage is often applied to a chosen benchmark as a starting point in determining materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Factors that may affect the identification of an appropriate benchmark include the following:

- The elements of the financial statements (for example, assets, liabilities, equity, revenue, or expenses)
- Whether items exist on which the attention of the users of the particular entity's financial statements tends to be focused (for example, for the purpose of evaluating financial performance, users may tend to focus on profit, revenue, or net assets)
- The nature of the entity, where the entity is in its life cycle, and the industry and economic environment in which the entity operates
- The entity's ownership structure and the way it is financed (for example, if an entity is financed solely by debt rather than equity, users may put more emphasis on assets, and claims on them, than on the entity's earnings)
- The relative volatility of the benchmark

.A6 Examples of benchmarks that may be appropriate, depending on the circumstances of the entity, include categories of reported income, such as profit before tax, total revenue, gross profit, and total expenses; total equity; or net asset value. Profit before tax from continuing operations is often used for profit-oriented entities. When profit before tax from continuing operations is volatile, other benchmarks may be more appropriate, such as gross profit or total revenues.

.A7 With regard to the chosen benchmark, relevant financial data ordinarily includes prior periods' financial results and financial positions; the period-to-date financial results and financial position, budgets, or forecasts for the current period, adjusted for significant changes in the circumstances of the entity (for example, a significant business acquisition); and relevant changes of conditions in the industry or economic environment in which the entity operates. For example, when, as a starting point, materiality for the financial statements as a whole is determined for a

⁹ Paragraph .A6 of section 530, *Audit Sampling*.

particular entity based on a percentage of profit before tax from continuing operations, circumstances that give rise to an exceptional decrease or increase in such profit may lead the auditor to conclude that materiality for the financial statements as a whole is more appropriately determined using a normalized profit before tax from continuing operations figure based on past results.

.A8 Materiality relates to the financial statements that are being audited. When the financial statements are prepared for a financial reporting period of more or less than 12 months, such as may be the case for a new entity or a change in the financial reporting period, materiality relates to the financial statements prepared for that financial reporting period.

.A9 Determining a percentage to be applied to a chosen benchmark involves the exercise of professional judgment. A relationship exists between the percentage and the chosen benchmark, such that a percentage applied to profit before tax from continuing operations will normally be higher than a percentage applied to total revenue. For example, the auditor may consider a percentage of profit before tax from continuing operations to be appropriate for a profit-oriented entity in a manufacturing industry. Chapter 3 of the AICPA Audit Guide *Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk in a Financial Statement Audit* provides further guidance about the use of benchmarks in determining materiality.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A10 When an entity's profit before tax from continuing operations is consistently nominal, which might be the case for an owner-managed business in which the owner takes much of the profit before tax in the form of remuneration, a benchmark such as profit before remuneration and tax may be more relevant.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A11 In an audit of a governmental entity, total cost or net cost (expenses less revenues or expenditures less receipts) may be appropriate benchmarks for program activities. When a governmental entity has custody of public assets, assets may be an appropriate benchmark.

Materiality Level or Levels for Particular Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, or Disclosures (Ref: par. .10)

.A12 Factors that may indicate the existence of one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the financial statements include the following:

- Whether law, regulation, or the applicable financial reporting framework affect users' expectations regarding the measurement or disclosure of certain items (for example, related party transactions and the remuneration of management and those charged with governance)
- The key disclosures with regard to the industry in which the entity operates (for example, research and development costs for a pharmaceutical company)
- Whether attention is focused on a particular aspect of the entity's business that is separately disclosed in the financial statements (for example, a newly acquired business)

.A13 In considering whether, in the specific circumstances of the entity, such classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures exist, the auditor may find it useful to obtain an understanding of the views and expectations of those charged with governance and management.

Performance Materiality (Ref: par. .11)

.A14 Planning the audit solely to detect individual material misstatements overlooks the fact that the aggregate of individually immaterial misstatements may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated and leaves no margin for possible undetected misstatements. Performance materiality (which, as defined, is one or more amounts) is set to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements in the financial statements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Similarly, performance materiality relating to a materiality level determined for a particular class of transactions,

228 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

account balance, or disclosure is set to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements in that particular class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure exceeds the materiality level for that particular class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure. The determination of performance materiality is not a simple mechanical calculation and involves the exercise of professional judgment. It is affected by the auditor's understanding of the entity, updated during the performance of the risk assessment procedures, and the nature and extent of misstatements identified in previous audits and, thereby, the auditor's expectations regarding misstatements in the current period.

Revision as the Audit Progresses (Ref: par. .12)

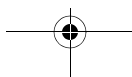
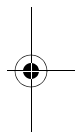
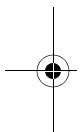
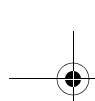
.A15 In some situations, the auditor may determine materiality for planning purposes before the financial statements to be audited are prepared. In those situations, the auditor's professional judgment about materiality might be based on the entity's annualized interim financial statements or financial statements of one or more prior annual periods. If it appears as though the actual financial results are likely to be substantially different from the anticipated results, such as when there are major changes in the entity's circumstances (for example, a significant merger) or relevant changes in the economy as a whole or the industry in which the entity operates, the auditor may be required, in accordance with paragraph .12, to revise materiality.

.A16 Materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) may need to be revised as a result of a change in circumstances that occurred during the audit (for example, a decision to dispose of a major part of the entity's business), new information, or a change in the auditor's understanding of the entity and its operations as a result of performing further audit procedures. For example, if, during the audit, it appears as though actual financial results are likely to be substantially different from the anticipated period-end financial results that were used initially to determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole, the auditor may be required, in accordance with paragraph .12, to revise materiality.

.A17**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

In converging with ISA 320, the ASB has made various changes to the language of ISA 320 throughout section 320. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make section 320 easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 320 and the application of section 320.



AU-C Section 330*

Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to design and implement responses to the risks of material misstatement identified and assessed by the auditor in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and to evaluate the audit evidence obtained in an audit of financial statements. Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's responsibility to form an opinion on the financial statements based on the evaluation of the audit evidence obtained.

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.03 The objective of the auditor is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the assessed risks of material misstatement through designing and implementing appropriate responses to those risks.

Definitions

.04 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Substantive procedure. An audit procedure designed to detect material misstatements at the assertion level. Substantive procedures comprise

- a. tests of details (classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures) and
- b. substantive analytical procedures.

Test of controls. An audit procedure designed to evaluate the operating effectiveness of controls in preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements at the assertion level.

Requirements

Overall Responses

.05 The auditor should design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level. (Ref: par. .A1–.A3)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

232 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Relevant Assertion Level**

.06 The auditor should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level. (Ref: par. .A4–.A9)

.07 In designing the further audit procedures to be performed, the auditor should

- a. consider the reasons for the assessed risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level for each class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure, including
 - i. the likelihood of material misstatement due to the particular characteristics of the relevant class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure (the inherent risk) and
 - ii. whether the risk assessment takes account of relevant controls (the control risk), thereby requiring the auditor to obtain audit evidence to determine whether the controls are operating effectively (that is, the auditor intends to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures), and (Ref: par. .A10–.A19)
- b. obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk. (Ref: par. .A20)

Tests of Controls

.08 The auditor should design and perform tests of controls to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of relevant controls if

- a. the auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level includes an expectation that the controls are operating effectively (that is, the auditor intends to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures) or
- b. substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level. (Ref: par. .A21–.A26)

.09 In designing and performing tests of controls, the auditor should obtain more persuasive audit evidence the greater the reliance the auditor places on the effectiveness of a control. (Ref: par. .A27)

Nature and Extent of Tests of Controls

.10 In designing and performing tests of controls, the auditor should

- a. perform other audit procedures in combination with inquiry to obtain audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of the controls, including
 - i. how the controls were applied at relevant times during the period under audit;
 - ii. the consistency with which they were applied; and
 - iii. by whom or by what means they were applied, including, when applicable, whether the person performing the control possesses the necessary authority and competence to perform the control effectively, and (Ref: par. .A28–.A32)
- b. determine whether the controls to be tested depend upon other controls (indirect controls) and, if so, whether it is necessary to obtain audit evidence supporting the operating effectiveness of those indirect controls. (Ref: par. .A33–.A34)

Timing of Tests of Controls

.11 The auditor should test controls for the particular time or throughout the period for which the auditor intends to rely on those controls, subject to paragraphs .12 and .15 that follow, in order to provide an appropriate basis for the auditor's intended reliance. (Ref: par. .A35)

Using Audit Evidence Obtained During an Interim Period

.12 If the auditor obtains audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls during an interim period, the auditor should

- a. obtain audit evidence about significant changes to those controls subsequent to the interim period and
- b. determine the additional audit evidence to be obtained for the remaining period. (Ref: par. .A36–.A37)

Using Audit Evidence Obtained in Previous Audits

.13 In determining whether it is appropriate to use audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls obtained in previous audits and, if so, the length of the time period that may elapse before retesting a control, the auditor should consider

- a. the effectiveness of other elements of internal control, including the control environment, the entity's monitoring of controls, and the entity's risk assessment process;
- b. the risks arising from the characteristics of the control, including whether the control is manual or automated;
- c. the effectiveness of general IT controls;
- d. the effectiveness of the control and its application by the entity, including the nature and extent of deviations in the application of the control noted in previous audits and whether there have been personnel changes that significantly affect the application of the control;
- e. whether the lack of a change in a particular control poses a risk due to changing circumstances; and
- f. the risks of material misstatement and the extent of reliance on the control. (Ref: par. .A38)

.14 If the auditor plans to use audit evidence from a previous audit about the operating effectiveness of specific controls, the auditor should perform audit procedures to establish the continuing relevance of that information to the current audit. The auditor should obtain this evidence by performing inquiry, combined with observation or inspection, to confirm the understanding of those specific controls, and

- a. if there have been changes that affect the continuing relevance of the audit evidence from the previous audit, the auditor should test the controls in the current audit. (Ref: par. .A39)
- b. if there have not been such changes, the auditor should test the controls at least once in every third audit and should test some controls during each audit to avoid the possibility of testing all the controls on which the auditor intends to rely in a single audit period with no testing of controls in the subsequent two audit periods. (Ref: par. .A40–.A42)

Controls Over Significant Risks

.15 If the auditor plans to rely on controls over a risk the auditor has determined to be a significant risk,¹ the auditor should test the operating effectiveness of those controls in the current period.

Evaluating the Operating Effectiveness of Controls

.16 When evaluating the operating effectiveness of relevant controls, the auditor should evaluate whether misstatements that have been detected by substantive procedures indicate that controls are not operating effectively. The absence of misstatements detected by substantive procedures, however, does not provide audit evidence that controls related to the relevant assertion being tested are effective. (Ref: par. .A43)

.17 If deviations from controls upon which the auditor intends to rely are detected, the auditor should make specific inquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences and should determine whether

- a. the tests of controls that have been performed provide an appropriate basis for reliance on the controls,
- b. additional tests of controls are necessary, or
- c. the potential risks of misstatement need to be addressed using substantive procedures. (Ref: par. .A44)

¹ Paragraphs .28–.30 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

234 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Substantive Procedures***

.18 Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. (Ref: par. .A45–.A50)

.19 The auditor should consider whether external confirmation procedures are to be performed as substantive audit procedures. (Ref: par. .A51–.A56)

.20 The auditor should use external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable, except when one or more of the following is applicable: (Ref: par. .A55)

- a. The overall account balance is immaterial.
- b. External confirmation procedures for accounts receivable would be ineffective. (Ref: par. .A54 and .A56)
- c. The auditor's assessed level of risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level is low, and the other planned substantive procedures address the assessed risk. In many situations, the use of external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable and the performance of other substantive procedures are necessary to reduce the assessed risk of material misstatement to an acceptably low level.

Substantive Procedures Related to the Financial Statement Closing Process

.21 The auditor's substantive procedures should include audit procedures related to the financial statement closing process, such as

- a. agreeing or reconciling the financial statements with the underlying accounting records and
- b. examining material journal entries and other adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A57)

Substantive Procedures Responsive to Significant Risks

.22 If the auditor has determined that an assessed risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level is a significant risk, the auditor should perform substantive procedures that are specifically responsive to that risk. When the approach to a significant risk consists only of substantive procedures, those procedures should include tests of details. (Ref: par. .A58)

Timing of Substantive Procedures

.23 If substantive procedures are performed at an interim date, the auditor should cover the remaining period by performing

- a. substantive procedures, combined with tests of controls for the intervening period, or
- b. if the auditor determines that it is sufficient, further substantive procedures only,

that provide a reasonable basis for extending the audit conclusions from the interim date to the period-end. (Ref: par. .A59–.A63)

.24 If misstatements that the auditor did not expect when assessing the risks of material misstatement are detected at an interim date, the auditor should evaluate whether the related assessment of risk and the planned nature, timing, or extent of substantive procedures covering the remaining period need to be modified. See section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.² (Ref: par. .A64)

Selecting Items for Testing to Obtain Audit Evidence

.25 When designing tests of controls and tests of details, the auditor should determine the means of selecting items for testing that are effective in meeting the purpose of the audit procedure. (Ref: par. .A65–.A71)

² Paragraphs .35–.36 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

Adequacy of Presentation and Disclosure

.26 The auditor should perform audit procedures to evaluate whether the overall presentation of the financial statements, including the related disclosures, is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A72)

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence³

.27 Based on the audit procedures performed and the audit evidence obtained, the auditor should evaluate, before the conclusion of the audit, whether the assessments of the risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level remain appropriate. (Ref: par. .A73–.A74)

.28 The auditor should conclude whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained. In forming a conclusion, the auditor should consider all relevant audit evidence, regardless of whether it appears to corroborate or contradict the assertions in the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A75)

.29 If the auditor has not obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a relevant assertion, the auditor should attempt to obtain further audit evidence. If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements.⁴

Documentation

.30 The auditor should include in the audit documentation⁵

- a. the overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and the nature, timing, and extent of the further audit procedures performed;
- b. the linkage of those procedures with the assessed risks at the relevant assertion level; and
- c. the results of the audit procedures, including the conclusions when such conclusions are not otherwise clear. (Ref: par. .A76)

.31 If the auditor plans to use audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls obtained in previous audits, the auditor should include in the audit documentation the conclusions reached about relying on such controls that were tested in a previous audit.

.32 The auditor should include in the audit documentation the basis for any determination not to use external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable when the account balance is material.

.33 The auditor's documentation should demonstrate that the financial statements agree or reconcile with the underlying accounting records.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Overall Responses (Ref: par. .05)

.A1 Overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level may include⁶

- emphasizing to the audit team the need to maintain professional skepticism.
- assigning more experienced staff or those with specialized skills or using specialists.
- providing more supervision.
- incorporating additional elements of unpredictability in the selection of further audit procedures to be performed.

³ See section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

⁴ Paragraphs .08–.10 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, address qualified, adverse, and disclaimer of opinions.

⁵ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

⁶ Paragraphs .07–.08 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*, address the auditor's overall audit strategy.

236 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- making general changes to the nature, timing, or extent of audit procedures (for example, performing substantive procedures at period-end instead of at an interim date or modifying the nature of audit procedures to obtain more persuasive audit evidence).

.A2 The assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and, thereby, the auditor's overall responses are affected by the auditor's understanding of the control environment. An effective control environment may allow the auditor to have more confidence in internal control and the reliability of audit evidence generated internally within the entity and, thus, for example, allow the auditor to conduct some audit procedures at an interim date rather than at the period-end. Deficiencies in the control environment, however, have the opposite effect (for example, the auditor may respond to an ineffective control environment by

- conducting more audit procedures as of the period-end rather than at an interim date,
- obtaining more extensive audit evidence from substantive procedures, and
- increasing the number of locations to be included in the audit scope).

.A3 Such considerations, therefore, have a significant bearing on the auditor's general approach (for example, an emphasis on substantive procedures [substantive approach] or an approach that uses tests of controls as well as substantive procedures [combined approach]).

Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Relevant Assertion Level

The Nature, Timing, and Extent of Further Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .06)

.A4 The auditor's assessment of the identified risks at the relevant assertion level provides a basis for considering the appropriate audit approach for designing and performing further audit procedures. For example, the auditor may determine that

- in addition to the substantive procedures that are required for all relevant assertions, in accordance with paragraph .18, an effective response to the assessed risk of material misstatement for a particular assertion can be achieved only by also performing tests of controls.
- performing only substantive procedures is appropriate for particular assertions, and therefore, the auditor excludes the effect of controls from the relevant risk assessment. This may be because the auditor's risk assessment procedures have not identified any effective controls relevant to the assertion or because testing controls would be inefficient, and therefore, the auditor does not intend to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures.
- a combined approach using both tests of controls and substantive procedures is an effective approach.

.A5 The nature of an audit procedure refers to its purpose (test of controls or substantive procedure) and its type (inspection, observation, inquiry, confirmation, recalculation, reperformance, or analytical procedure). See section 500, *Audit Evidence*, which provides further application guidance about audit procedures.⁷ The nature of the audit procedures is most important in responding to the assessed risks.

.A6 Timing of an audit procedure refers to when it is performed or the period or date to which the audit evidence applies.

.A7 Extent of an audit procedure refers to the quantity to be performed (for example, a sample size or the number of observations of a control activity).

.A8 Designing and performing further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level provides a clear linkage between the auditor's further audit procedures and the risk assessment.

⁷ Paragraphs .A10–.A26 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

.A9 Because effective internal controls generally reduce but do not eliminate the risk of material misstatement, tests of controls reduce but do not eliminate the need for substantive procedures. In addition, analytical procedures alone may not be sufficient in some cases. For example, when auditing certain estimation processes, such as the allowance for doubtful accounts, the auditor may perform substantive procedures beyond analytical procedures (for example, examining cash collections subsequent to the period-end) due to the risk of management override of controls⁸ or the subjectivity of the account balance.

Responding to the Assessed Risks at the Assertion Level (Ref: par. .07a)

Nature

.A10 The auditor's assessed risks may affect both the types of audit procedures to be performed and their combination. For example, when an assessed risk is high, the auditor may confirm the completeness of the terms of a contract with the counterparty, in addition to inspecting the document. Further, certain audit procedures may be more appropriate for some assertions than others. For example, regarding revenue, tests of controls may be most responsive to the assessed risk of misstatement of the completeness assertion, whereas substantive procedures may be most responsive to the assessed risk of misstatement of the occurrence assertion.

.A11 The reasons for the assessment given to a risk are relevant in determining the nature of audit procedures. For example, if an assessed risk is lower because of the particular characteristics of a class of transactions without consideration of the related controls, then the auditor may determine that substantive analytical procedures alone provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence. On the other hand, if the assessed risk is lower because of internal controls and the auditor intends to base the substantive procedures on that low assessment, then the auditor performs tests of those controls, as required by paragraph .08a. This may be the case, for example, for a class of transactions of reasonably uniform, noncomplex characteristics that are routinely processed and controlled by the entity's information system.

Timing

.A12 The auditor may perform tests of controls or substantive procedures at an interim date or at the period-end. The higher the risk of material misstatement, the more likely it is that the auditor may decide it is more effective to perform substantive procedures nearer to or at the period-end rather than at an earlier date or to perform audit procedures unannounced or at unpredictable times (for example, performing audit procedures at selected locations on an unannounced basis). This is particularly relevant when considering the response to the risks of fraud. For example, the auditor may conclude that, when the risks of intentional misstatement or manipulation have been identified, audit procedures to extend audit conclusions from the interim date to the period-end would not be effective.

.A13 On the other hand, performing audit procedures before the period-end may assist the auditor in identifying significant issues at an early stage of the audit and consequently resolving them with the assistance of management or developing an effective audit approach to address such issues.

.A14 In addition, certain audit procedures can be performed only at or after the period-end. For example

- agreeing the financial statements to the accounting records,
- examining adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements, and
- procedures to respond to a risk that at the period-end the entity may have entered into improper sales contracts or transactions may not have been finalized.

⁸ The auditor is required by paragraphs .31–.33 of section 240 to perform audit procedures responsive to risks related to management override of controls.

238 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A15 Further relevant factors that influence the auditor's consideration of when to perform audit procedures include

- the effectiveness of the control environment.
- when relevant information is available (for example, electronic files may subsequently be overwritten, or procedures to be observed may occur only at certain times).
- the nature of the risk (for example, if there is a risk of inflated revenues to meet earnings expectations by subsequent creation of false sales agreements, the auditor may examine contracts available on the date of the period-end).
- the period or date to which the audit evidence relates.

Extent

.A16 The extent of an audit procedure judged necessary is determined after considering the materiality, assessed risk, and degree of assurance the auditor plans to obtain. When a single purpose is met by a combination of procedures, the extent of each procedure may be considered separately. In general, the extent of audit procedures increases as the risks of material misstatement increase. For example, in response to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud, increasing sample sizes or performing substantive analytical procedures at a more detailed level may be appropriate. However, increasing the extent of an audit procedure is effective only if the audit procedure itself is relevant to the specific risk.

.A17 The use of computer assisted audit techniques (CAATs) may enable more extensive testing of electronic transactions and account files, which may be useful when the auditor decides to modify the extent of testing (for example, in responding to the risks of material misstatement due to fraud). Such techniques can be used to select sample transactions from key electronic files, sort transactions with specific characteristics, or test an entire population instead of a sample.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A18 For the audits of governmental entities, the audit mandate and any other special auditing requirements may affect the auditor's consideration of the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. For example, under some governmental audit requirements, the auditor is required to perform tests of controls, even if reliance is not planned.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A19 In the case of smaller entities, the auditor may not identify control activities, or the extent to which their existence or operation have been documented by the entity may be limited. In such cases, it may be more efficient for the auditor to perform further audit procedures that are primarily substantive procedures. In some rare cases, however, the absence of control activities or other components of control may make it impossible to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Higher Assessments of Risk (Ref: par. .07b)

.A20 When obtaining more persuasive audit evidence because of a higher assessment of risk, the auditor may increase the quantity of the evidence or obtain evidence that is more relevant or reliable (for example by placing more emphasis on obtaining third party evidence or by obtaining corroborating evidence from a number of independent sources).

Tests of Controls***Designing and Performing Tests of Controls (Ref: par. .08)***

.A21 Tests of controls are performed only on those controls that the auditor has determined are suitably designed to prevent, or detect and correct, a material misstatement in a relevant assertion. If substantially different controls were used at different times during the period under audit, each is considered separately.

.A22 Testing the operating effectiveness of controls is different from obtaining an understanding of and evaluating the design and implementation of controls. However, the same types of audit procedures are used. The auditor may, therefore, decide it is efficient to test the operating

effectiveness of controls at the same time the auditor is evaluating their design and determining that they have been implemented.

.A23 Further, although some risk assessment procedures may not have been specifically designed as tests of controls, they may nevertheless provide audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of the controls and, consequently, serve as tests of controls. For example, the auditor's risk assessment procedures may have included the following:

- Inquiring about management's use of budgets
- Observing management's comparison of monthly budgeted and actual expenses
- Inspecting reports pertaining to the investigation of variances between budgeted and actual amounts

These audit procedures provide knowledge about the design of the entity's budgeting policies and whether they have been implemented but also may provide audit evidence about the effectiveness of the operation of budgeting policies in preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements in the classification of expenses.

.A24 In addition, the auditor may design a test of controls to be performed concurrently with a test of details on the same transaction. Although the purpose of a test of controls is different from the purpose of a test of details, both may be accomplished concurrently by performing a test of controls and a test of details on the same transaction, which also is known as a *dual purpose test*. For example, the auditor may design and evaluate the results of a test to examine an invoice to determine whether it has been approved and to provide substantive audit evidence of a transaction. A dual purpose test is designed and evaluated by considering each purpose of the test separately.

.A25 In some cases, the auditor may find it impossible to design effective substantive procedures that, by themselves, provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level.⁹ This may occur when an entity conducts its business using IT and no documentation of transactions is produced or maintained, other than through the IT system. In such cases, paragraph .08b requires the auditor to perform tests of relevant controls.

.A26 The auditor may consider testing the operating effectiveness of controls, if any, over the entity's preparation of information used by the auditor in performing substantive analytical procedures in response to assessed risks. See section 520, *Analytical Procedures*, for further guidance.¹⁰

Audit Evidence and Intended Reliance (Ref: par. .09)

.A27 A higher level of assurance may be sought about the operating effectiveness of controls when the approach adopted consists primarily of tests of controls, in particular when it is not possible or practicable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence only from substantive procedures.

Nature and Extent of Tests of Controls

Other Audit Procedures in Combination With Inquiry (Ref: par. .10a)

.A28 Inquiry alone is not sufficient to test the operating effectiveness of controls. Accordingly, other audit procedures are performed in combination with inquiry. In this regard, inquiry combined with inspection, recalculation, or reperformance may provide more assurance than inquiry and observation because an observation is pertinent only at the point in time at which it is made.

.A29 The nature of the particular control influences the type of audit procedure necessary to obtain audit evidence about whether the control was operating effectively. For example, if operating effectiveness is evidenced by documentation, the auditor may decide to inspect such documentation to obtain audit evidence about operating effectiveness. For other controls, however, documentation may not be available or relevant. For example, documentation of operation may not exist for some factors in the control environment, such as assignment of authority and responsibility,

⁹ Paragraph .31 of section 315.

¹⁰ Paragraph .A19 of section 520, *Analytical Procedures*.

240 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

or for some types of control activities, such as control activities performed by a computer. In such circumstances, audit evidence about operating effectiveness may be obtained through inquiry in combination with other audit procedures, such as observation or the use of CAATs.

.A30 In some situations, particularly in smaller, less complex entities, an entity might use a third party to provide assistance with certain financial reporting functions. When assessing the competence of personnel responsible for an entity's financial reporting and associated controls, the auditor may take into account the combined competence of entity personnel and other parties that assist with functions related to financial reporting.

Extent of Tests of Controls

.A31 When more persuasive audit evidence is needed regarding the effectiveness of a control, it may be appropriate to increase the extent of testing of the control. In addition to the degree of reliance on controls, matters the auditor may consider in determining the extent of tests of controls include the following:

- The frequency of the performance of the control by the entity during the period
- The length of time during the audit period that the auditor is relying on the operating effectiveness of the control
- The expected rate of deviation from a control
- The relevance and reliability of the audit evidence to be obtained regarding the operating effectiveness of the control at the relevant assertion level
- The extent to which audit evidence is obtained from tests of other controls related to the relevant assertion

However, the rate of expected deviation may indicate that obtaining audit evidence from the performance of tests of controls will not be sufficient to reduce the control risk at the relevant assertion level. If the rate of expected deviation is expected to be high, tests of controls for a particular assertion may not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Section 530, *Audit Sampling*, contains further guidance on the extent of testing.

.A32 Because of the inherent consistency of IT processing, it may not be necessary to increase the extent of testing of an automated control. An automated control can be expected to function consistently unless the program (including the tables, files, or other permanent data used by the program) is changed. Once the auditor determines that an automated control is functioning as intended (which could be done at the time the control is initially implemented or at some other date), the auditor may consider performing tests to determine that the control continues to function effectively. Such tests might include determining that

- changes to the program are not made without being subject to the appropriate program change controls,
- the authorized version of the program is used for processing transactions, and
- other relevant general controls are effective.

Such tests also might include determining that changes to the programs have not been made, which may be the case when the entity uses packaged software applications without modifying or maintaining them. For example, the auditor may inspect the record of the administration of IT security to obtain audit evidence that unauthorized access has not occurred during the period.

Testing of Indirect Controls (Ref: par. .10b)

.A33 In some circumstances, it may be necessary to obtain audit evidence supporting the effective operation of indirect controls. For example, when the auditor decides to test the effectiveness of a user review of exception reports detailing sales in excess of authorized credit limits, the user review and related follow up is the control that is of direct relevance to the auditor. Controls over the accuracy of the information in the reports (for example, the general IT controls) are described as indirect controls.

.A34 Because of the inherent consistency of IT processing, audit evidence about the implementation of an automated application control, when considered in combination with audit evidence

about the operating effectiveness of the entity's general IT controls (in particular, change controls), also may provide substantial audit evidence about its operating effectiveness.

Timing of Tests of Controls

Intended Period of Reliance (Ref: par. .11)

.A35 Audit evidence pertaining only to a point in time may be sufficient for the auditor's purpose (for example, when testing controls over the entity's physical inventory counting at the period-end). If, on the other hand, the auditor intends to rely on a control over a period, tests that are capable of providing audit evidence that the control operated effectively at relevant times during that period are appropriate. Such tests may include tests of the entity's monitoring of controls.

Using Audit Evidence Obtained During an Interim Period (Ref: par. .12)

.A36 Relevant factors in determining what additional audit evidence to obtain about controls that were operating during the period remaining after an interim period, include the following:

- The significance of the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level
- The specific controls that were tested during the interim period and the results of those tests
- Significant changes to the controls since they were tested, including changes in the information system, processes, and personnel
- The degree to which audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of those controls was obtained
- The length of the remaining period
- The extent to which the auditor intends to reduce further substantive procedures based on the reliance of controls
- The effectiveness of the control environment

.A37 Additional audit evidence may be obtained, for example, by extending the testing of the operating effectiveness of controls over the remaining period or testing the entity's monitoring of controls.

Using Audit Evidence Obtained in Previous Audits (Ref: par. .13)

.A38 In certain circumstances, audit evidence obtained from previous audits may provide audit evidence, provided that the auditor has determined whether changes have occurred since the previous audit that may affect its relevance to the current audit. For example, in performing a previous audit, the auditor may have determined that an automated control was functioning as intended. The auditor may obtain audit evidence to determine whether changes to the automated control have been made that affect its continued effective functioning through, for example, inquiries of management and the inspection of logs to indicate what controls have been changed. Consideration of audit evidence about these changes may support either increasing or decreasing the expected audit evidence to be obtained in the current period about the operating effectiveness of the controls.

Controls That Have Changed From Previous Audits (Ref: par. .14a)

.A39 Changes may affect the relevance of the audit evidence obtained in previous audits such that there may no longer be a basis for continued reliance. For example, changes in a system that enable an entity to receive a new report from the system probably do not affect the relevance of audit evidence from a previous audit; however, a change that causes data to be accumulated or calculated differently does affect it.

Controls That Have Not Changed From Previous Audits (Ref: par. .14b)

.A40 The auditor's decision on whether to rely on audit evidence obtained in previous audits for controls that

- have not changed since they were last tested and
- are not controls that mitigate a significant risk

242 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

is a matter of professional judgment. In addition, the length of time between retesting such controls is also a matter of professional judgment but is required by paragraph .14b to be at least once in every third audit. (This guidance may not be appropriate for audits not performed at least on an annual basis.)

.A41 In general, the higher the risk of material misstatement or the greater the reliance on controls, the shorter the time period elapsed, if any, is likely to be. Factors that may decrease the period for retesting a control or result in not relying on audit evidence obtained in previous audits at all include the following:

- A deficient control environment
- Deficient monitoring of controls
- A significant manual element to the relevant controls
- Personnel changes that significantly affect the application of the control
- Changing circumstances that indicate the need for changes in the control
- Deficient general IT controls

.A42 When there are a number of controls for which the auditor intends to rely on audit evidence obtained in previous audits, testing some of those controls in each audit provides corroborating information about the continuing effectiveness of the control environment. This contributes to the auditor's decision about whether it is appropriate to rely on audit evidence obtained in previous audits.

Evaluating the Operating Effectiveness of Controls (Ref: par. .16–.17)

.A43 In accordance with section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, the identification by the auditor of a material misstatement of the financial statements under audit in circumstances that indicate that the misstatement would not have been detected by the entity's internal control is an indicator of a material weakness.¹¹

.A44 The concept of effectiveness of the operation of controls recognizes that some deviations in the way controls are applied by the entity may occur. Deviations from prescribed controls may be caused by such factors as changes in key personnel, significant seasonal fluctuations in volume of transactions, and human error. The detected rate of deviation, in particular, in comparison with the expected rate, may indicate that the control cannot be relied on to reduce risk at the relevant assertion level to that assessed by the auditor.

Substantive Procedures (Ref: par. .18)

.A45 Paragraph .18 requires the auditor to design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure, irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement. This requirement reflects the facts that (i) the auditor's assessment of risk is judgmental and may not identify all risks of material misstatement and (ii) inherent limitations to internal control exist, including management override.

Nature and Extent of Substantive Procedures

.A46 Depending on the circumstances, the auditor may determine the following:

- Performing only substantive analytical procedures will be sufficient to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level, such as, for example, when the auditor's assessment of risk is supported by audit evidence from tests of controls.
- Only tests of details are appropriate.
- A combination of substantive analytical procedures and tests of details are most responsive to the assessed risks.

.A47 Substantive analytical procedures are generally more applicable to large volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time. Section 520 addresses the application of analytical procedures during an audit.

¹¹ Paragraph .A11 of section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*.

.A48 The nature of the risk and assertion is relevant to the design of tests of details. For example, tests of details related to the existence or occurrence assertion may involve selecting from items contained in a financial statement amount and obtaining the relevant audit evidence. On the other hand, tests of details related to the completeness assertion may involve selecting from items that are expected to be included in the relevant financial statement amount and investigating whether they are included. For example, the auditor might inspect subsequent cash disbursements and compare them with the recorded accounts payable to determine whether any purchases had been omitted from accounts payable.

.A49 Because the assessment of the risks of material misstatement takes account of internal control, the extent of substantive procedures may need to be increased when the results from tests of controls are unsatisfactory. However, increasing the extent of an audit procedure is appropriate only if the audit procedure itself is relevant to the specific risk.

.A50 In designing tests of details, the extent of testing is ordinarily thought of in terms of the sample size. However, other matters also are relevant, including whether it is more effective to use other selective means of testing. See paragraphs .A65–.A71.

Considering Whether External Confirmation Procedures Are to Be Performed (Ref: par. .19–.20)

.A51 External confirmation procedures frequently may be relevant when addressing assertions associated with account balances and their elements but need not be restricted to these items. For example, the auditor may request external confirmation of the terms of agreements, contracts, or transactions between an entity and other parties. External confirmation procedures also may be performed to obtain audit evidence about the absence of certain conditions. For example, a request may specifically seek confirmation that no “side agreement” exists that may be relevant to an entity’s revenue cut-off assertion. Other situations in which external confirmation procedures may provide relevant audit evidence in responding to assessed risks of material misstatement include the following:

- Bank balances and other information relevant to banking relationships
- Inventories held by third parties at bonded warehouses for processing or on consignment
- Property title deeds held by lawyers or financiers for safe custody or as security
- Investments held for safekeeping by third parties or purchased from stockbrokers but not delivered at the balance sheet date
- Amounts due to lenders, including relevant terms of repayment and restrictive covenants
- Accounts payable balances and terms

.A52 Although external confirmations may provide relevant audit evidence relating to certain assertions, some assertions exist for which external confirmations provide less relevant audit evidence. For example, external confirmations provide less relevant audit evidence relating to the recoverability of accounts receivable balances than they do of their existence.

.A53 The auditor may determine that external confirmation procedures performed for one purpose provide an opportunity to obtain audit evidence about other matters. For example, confirmation requests for bank balances often include requests for information relevant to other financial statement assertions. Such considerations may influence the auditor’s decision about whether to perform external confirmation procedures.

.A54 Factors that may assist the auditor in determining whether external confirmation procedures are to be performed as substantive audit procedures include the following:

- The confirming party’s knowledge of the subject matter. Responses may be more reliable if provided by a person at the confirming party who has the requisite knowledge about the information being confirmed.
- The ability or willingness of the intended confirming party to respond. For example, the confirming party
 - may not accept responsibility for responding to a confirmation request,
 - may consider responding too costly or time consuming,

244 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- may have concerns about the potential legal liability resulting from responding,
- may account for transactions in different currencies, or
- may operate in an environment in which responding to confirmation requests is not a significant aspect of day-to-day operations.

In such situations, confirming parties may not respond, may respond in a casual manner, or may attempt to restrict the reliance placed on the response.

- The objectivity of the intended confirming party. If the confirming party is a related party of the entity, responses to confirmation requests may be less reliable.

.A55 For purposes of this section, *accounts receivable* means

- a. the entity's claims against customers that have arisen from the sale of goods or services in the normal course of business; and
- b. a financial institution's loans.

.A56 External confirmation procedures may be ineffective when, based on prior years' audit experience or experience with similar entities

- response rates to properly designed confirmation requests will be inadequate; or
- responses are known or expected to be unreliable.

If the auditor has experienced poor response rates to properly designed confirmation requests in prior audits, the auditor may instead consider changing the manner in which the confirmation process is performed, with the objective of increasing the response rates, or may consider obtaining audit evidence from other sources.

Substantive Procedures Related to the Financial Statement Closing Process (Ref: par. .21b)

.A57 The nature and also the extent of the auditor's examination of journal entries and other adjustments depends on the nature and complexity of the entity's financial reporting process and the related risks of material misstatement.

Substantive Procedures Responsive to Significant Risks (Ref: par. .22)

.A58 Paragraph .22 requires the auditor to perform substantive procedures that are specifically responsive to risks the auditor has determined to be significant risks. Audit evidence in the form of external confirmations received directly by the auditor from appropriate confirming parties may assist the auditor in obtaining audit evidence with the high level of reliability that the auditor requires to respond to significant risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. For example, if the auditor identifies that management is under pressure to meet earnings expectations, a risk may exist that management is inflating sales by improperly recognizing revenue related to sales agreements with terms that preclude revenue recognition or by invoicing sales before shipment. In these circumstances, the auditor may, for example, design external confirmation procedures not only to confirm outstanding amounts but also to confirm the details of the sales agreements, including date, any rights of return, and delivery terms. In addition, the auditor may find it effective to supplement such external confirmation procedures with inquiries of nonfinancial personnel in the entity regarding any changes in sales agreements and delivery terms.

Timing of Substantive Procedures (Ref: par. .23–.24)

.A59 In most cases, audit evidence from a previous audit's substantive procedures provides little or no audit evidence for the current period. However, exceptions exist (for example, a legal opinion obtained in a previous audit related to the structure of a securitization to which no changes have occurred may be relevant in the current period). In such cases, it may be appropriate to use audit evidence from a previous audit's substantive procedures if that evidence and the related subject matter have not fundamentally changed and audit procedures have been performed during the current period to establish its continuing relevance.

Using Audit Evidence Obtained During an Interim Period (Ref: par. .23)

.A60 In some circumstances, the auditor may determine that it is effective to perform substantive procedures at an interim date and compare and reconcile information concerning the balance at the period-end with the comparable information at the interim date to

- a. identify amounts that appear unusual,
- b. investigate any such amounts, and
- c. perform substantive analytical procedures or tests of details to test the intervening period.

.A61 Performing substantive procedures at an interim date without undertaking additional procedures at a later date increases the risk that the auditor will not detect misstatements that may exist at the period-end. This risk increases as the remaining period is lengthened. Factors such as the following may influence whether to perform substantive procedures at an interim date:

- The effectiveness of the control environment and other relevant controls
- The availability at a later date of information necessary for the auditor's procedures
- The purpose of the substantive procedure
- The assessed risk of material misstatement
- The nature of the class of transactions or account balance and relevant assertions
- The ability of the auditor to perform appropriate substantive procedures or substantive procedures combined with tests of controls to cover the remaining period in order to reduce the risk that misstatements that may exist at the period-end will not be detected

.A62 In circumstances in which the auditor has identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor's responses to address those risks may include changing the timing of audit procedures. For example, the auditor might conclude that, given the risks of intentional misstatement or manipulation, audit procedures to extend audit conclusions from an interim date to the period-end reporting date would not be effective. In such circumstances, the auditor might conclude that substantive procedures performed at or near the end of the reporting period best address an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A63 Factors such as the following may influence whether to perform substantive analytical procedures with respect to the period between the interim date and the period-end:

- Whether the period-end balances of the particular classes of transactions or account balances are reasonably predictable with respect to amount, relative significance, and composition
- Whether the entity's procedures for analyzing and adjusting such classes of transactions or account balances at interim dates and establishing proper accounting cutoffs are appropriate
- Whether the information system relevant to financial reporting will provide information concerning the balances at the period-end and the transactions in the remaining period that is sufficient to permit investigation of the following:
 - Significant unusual transactions or entries (including those at or near the period-end)
 - Other causes of significant fluctuations or expected fluctuations that did not occur
 - Changes in the composition of the classes of transactions or account balances

Misstatements Detected at an Interim Date (Ref: par. .24)

.A64 When the auditor concludes that the planned nature, timing, or extent of substantive procedures covering the remaining period need to be modified as a result of unexpected misstatements detected at an interim date, such modification may include extending or repeating, at the period-end, the procedures performed at the interim date.

Selecting Items for Testing to Obtain Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .25)

.A65 An effective test provides appropriate audit evidence to the extent that it will be sufficient for the auditor's purpose when taken with other audit evidence obtained or to be obtained. In selecting items for testing, the auditor is required by section 500 to determine the relevance and

246 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

reliability of information to be used as audit evidence;¹² the other aspect of effectiveness (sufficiency) is an important consideration in selecting items to test. The means available to the auditor for selecting items for testing are

- a. selecting all items (100 percent examination),
- b. selecting specific items, and
- c. audit sampling.

.A66 The application of any one or combination of these means may be appropriate depending on the particular circumstances (for example, the risks of material misstatement related to the assertion being tested and the practicality and efficiency of the different means).

Selecting All Items

.A67 The auditor may decide that it will be most appropriate to examine the entire population of items that make up a class of transactions or account balance (or a stratum within that population). A 100 percent examination is unlikely in the case of tests of controls; however, it may be more common for tests of details. A 100 percent examination may be appropriate when, for example

- the population constitutes a small number of large value items,
- a significant risk exists and other means do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence, or
- the repetitive nature of a calculation or other process performed automatically by an information system makes a 100 percent examination cost effective.

Selecting Specific Items

.A68 The auditor may decide to select specific items from a population. In making this decision, factors that may be relevant include the auditor's understanding of the entity, the assessed risks of material misstatement, and the characteristics of the population being tested. The judgmental selection of specific items is subject to nonsampling risk. Specific items selected may include

- high value or key items. The auditor may decide to select specific items within a population because they are of high value or exhibit some other characteristic (for example, items that are suspicious, unusual, particularly risk prone, or have a history of error).
- all items over a certain amount. The auditor may decide to examine items whose recorded values exceed a certain amount in order to verify a large proportion of the total amount of a class of transactions or account balance.
- items to obtain information. The auditor may examine items to obtain information about matters such as the nature of the entity or the nature of transactions.

.A69 Although selective examination of specific items from a class of transactions or account balance often will be an efficient means of obtaining audit evidence, it does not constitute audit sampling. Consequently, the results of audit procedures applied to items selected in this way cannot be projected to the entire population; furthermore, selective examination of specific items does not, by itself, provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the remainder of the population.

Audit Sampling

.A70 Audit sampling is designed to enable conclusions to be drawn about an entire population on the basis of testing a sample drawn from the population. Audit sampling is discussed in section 530.

.A71 Valid conclusions ordinarily may be drawn using sampling approaches. However, if the sample size is too small, the sampling approach or the method of selection is not appropriate to achieve the specific audit objective or exceptions are not appropriately followed up, an unacceptable risk will exist that the auditor's conclusion based on a sample may be different from the conclusion reached if the entire population was subjected to the same audit procedure. Section 530 addresses planning, performing, and evaluating audit samples.

¹² Paragraph .07 of section 500.

Adequacy of Presentation and Disclosure (Ref: par. .26)

.A72 Evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements, including the related disclosures, relates to whether the individual financial statements are presented in a manner that reflects the appropriate classification and description of financial information and the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements, including the related notes. This includes, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given, the classification of items in the financial statements, and the basis of amounts set forth.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .27–.29)

.A73 An audit of financial statements is a cumulative and iterative process. As the auditor performs planned audit procedures, the audit evidence obtained may cause the auditor to modify the nature, timing, or extent of other planned audit procedures. Information may come to the auditor's attention that differs significantly from the information on which the risk assessments were based. For example

- the extent of misstatements that the auditor detects by performing substantive procedures may alter the auditor's professional judgment about the risk assessments and indicate a significant deficiency or material weakness in internal control.
- the auditor may become aware of discrepancies in accounting records or conflicting or missing evidence.
- analytical procedures performed at the overall review stage of the audit may indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement.

In such circumstances, the auditor may need to reevaluate the planned audit procedures, based on the revised consideration of assessed risks for all or some of the classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and related assertions. Section 315 contains further guidance on revising the auditor's risk assessment.¹³

.A74 The auditor cannot assume that an instance of fraud or error is an isolated occurrence. Therefore, the consideration of how the detection of a misstatement affects the assessed risks of material misstatement is important in determining whether the assessment remains appropriate.

.A75 The auditor's professional judgment about what constitutes sufficient appropriate audit evidence is influenced by such factors as the

- significance of the potential misstatement in the relevant assertion and the likelihood of its having a material effect, individually or aggregated with other potential misstatements, on the financial statements (see section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*).
- effectiveness of management's responses and controls to address the risks.
- experience gained during previous audits with respect to similar potential misstatements.
- results of audit procedures performed, including whether such audit procedures identified specific instances of fraud or error.
- source and reliability of the available information.
- persuasiveness of the audit evidence.
- understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control.

Documentation (Ref: par. .30)

.A76 The form and extent of audit documentation is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by the nature, size, and complexity of the entity; internal control of the entity; availability of information from the entity; and the audit methodology and technology used in the audit.

¹³ Paragraph .32 of section 315.

.A77**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, and International Standard on Auditing 330, *The Auditor's Responses to Assessed Risks***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 330, *The Auditor's Responses to Assessed Risks*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph .20 of section 330 includes a requirement to confirm accounts receivable unless certain conditions exist. This requirement is not in the ISAs. The ASB believes it is appropriate to retain the requirement in paragraph 34 of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67, *The Confirmation Process*.

Differences Between Requirements

To be consistent with the wording of the comparable requirements in the comparable auditing standard issued by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, the requirement in paragraph .07 of section 330 has been modified with the words “relevant” and “material,” and the requirement in paragraph .10 of section 330 has been expanded to specifically include addressing, when applicable, whether the person performing the control possesses the necessary authority and competence to perform the control effectively. The ASB believes these differences do not create differences between the application of ISA 330 and the application of section 330.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph .25 of section 330 includes a requirement for the auditor addressing the means of selecting items for testing. This requirement is in the ISAs in ISA 500, *Audit Evidence*. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 330. The placement of this requirement does not create a difference between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 402*

Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the user auditor's responsibility for obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence in an audit of the financial statements of a user entity that uses one or more service organizations. Specifically, it expands on how the user auditor applies section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, and section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, in obtaining an understanding of the user entity, including internal control relevant to the audit, sufficient to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement and in designing and performing further audit procedures responsive to those risks.

.02 Many entities outsource aspects of their business activities to organizations that provide services ranging from performing a specific task under the direction of the entity to replacing entire business units or functions of the entity. Many of the services provided by such organizations are integral to the entity's business operations; however, not all of those services are relevant to the audit.

.03 Services provided by a service organization are relevant to the audit of a user entity's financial statements when those services and the controls over them affect the user entity's information system, including related business processes, relevant to financial reporting. Although most controls at the service organization are likely to relate to financial reporting, other controls also may be relevant to the audit, such as controls over the safeguarding of assets. A service organization's services are part of a user entity's information system, including related business processes, relevant to financial reporting if these services affect any of the following:

- a. The classes of transactions in the user entity's operations that are significant to the user entity's financial statements;
- b. The procedures within both IT and manual systems by which the user entity's transactions are initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, corrected as necessary, transferred to the general ledger, and reported in the financial statements;
- c. The related accounting records, supporting information, and specific accounts in the user entity's financial statements that are used to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report the user entity's transactions. This includes the correction of incorrect information and how information is transferred to the general ledger; the records may be in either manual or electronic form;
- d. How the user entity's information system captures events and conditions, other than transactions, that are significant to the financial statements;
- e. The financial reporting process used to prepare the user entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures; and
- f. Controls surrounding journal entries, including nonstandard journal entries used to record nonrecurring, unusual transactions, or adjustments.

.04 The nature and extent of work to be performed by the user auditor regarding the services provided by a service organization depend on the nature and significance of those services to the user entity and the relevance of those services to the audit.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

250 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.05 This section does not apply to services that are limited to processing an entity's transactions that are specifically authorized by the entity, such as the processing of checking account transactions by a bank or the processing of securities transactions by a broker (that is, when the user entity retains responsibility for authorizing the transactions and maintaining the related accountability). In addition, this section does not apply to the audit of transactions arising from an entity that holds a proprietary financial interest in another entity, such as a partnership, corporation, or joint venture, when the partnership, corporation, or joint venture performs no processing on behalf of the entity.

Effective Date

.06 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.07 The objectives of the user auditor, when the user entity uses the services of a service organization, are to

- a. obtain an understanding of the nature and significance of the services provided by the service organization and their effect on the user entity's internal control relevant to the audit, sufficient to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement.
- b. design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks.

Definitions

.08 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Complementary user entity controls. Controls that management of the service organization assumes, in the design of its service, will be implemented by user entities, and which, if necessary to achieve the control objectives stated in management's description of the service organization's system, are identified as such in that description.

Report on management's description of a service organization's system and the suitability of the design of controls (referred to in this section as a *type 1 report*). A report that comprises the following:

- a. Management's description of the service organization's system
- b. written assertion by management of the service organization about whether, in all material respects, and based on suitable criteria
 - i. management's description of the service organization's system fairly presents the service organization's system that was designed and implemented as of a specified date
 - ii. the controls related to the control objectives stated in management's description of the service organization's system were suitably designed to achieve those control objectives as of the specified date
- c. A service auditor's report that expresses an opinion on the matters in b(i–ii)

Report on management's description of a service organization's system and the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of controls (referred to in this section as a *type 2 report*). A report that comprises the following:

- a. Management's description of the service organization's system
- b. A written assertion by management of the service organization about whether in all material respects and, based on suitable criteria
 - i. management's description of the service organization's system fairly presents the service organization's system that was designed and implemented throughout the specified period

- ii. the controls related to the control objectives stated in management's description of the service organization's system were suitably designed throughout the specified period to achieve those control objectives
- iii. the controls related to the control objectives stated in management's description of the service organization's system operated effectively throughout the specified period to achieve those control objectives
- c. A service auditor's report that
 - i. expresses an opinion on the matters in *b(i–iii)*
 - ii. includes a description of the service auditor's tests of controls and the results thereof

Service auditor. A practitioner who reports on controls at a service organization.

Service organization. An organization or segment of an organization that provides services to user entities that are relevant to those user entities' internal control over financial reporting.

Service organization's system. The policies and procedures designed, implemented, and documented by management of the service organization to provide user entities with the services covered by the service auditor's report. Management's description of the service organization's system identifies the services covered, the period to which the description relates (or in the case of a type 1 report, the date to which the description relates), the control objectives specified by management or an outside party, the party specifying the control objectives (if not specified by management), and the related controls.

Subservice organization. A service organization used by another service organization to perform some of the services provided to user entities that are relevant to those user entities' internal control over financial reporting. (Ref: par. .A20)

User auditor. An auditor who audits and reports on the financial statements of a user entity.

User entity. An entity that uses a service organization and whose financial statements are being audited.

Requirements

Obtaining an Understanding of the Services Provided by a Service Organization, Including Internal Control

.09 When obtaining an understanding of the user entity in accordance with section 315, the user auditor should obtain an understanding of how the user entity uses the services of a service organization in the user entity's operations, including the following.¹ (Ref: par. .A1–.A2)

- a. The nature of the services provided by the service organization and the significance of those services to the user entity, including their effect on the user entity's internal control (Ref: par. .A3–.A5)
- b. The nature and materiality of the transactions processed or accounts or financial reporting processes affected by the service organization (Ref: par. .A6)
- c. The degree of interaction between the activities of the service organization and those of the user entity (Ref: par. .A7)
- d. The nature of the relationship between the user entity and the service organization, including the relevant contractual terms for the activities undertaken by the service organization (Ref: par. .A8–.A11)

.10 When obtaining an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in accordance with section 315, the user auditor should evaluate the design and implementation of relevant controls at the user entity that relate to the services provided by the service organization, including those that are applied to the transactions processed by the service organization.² (Ref: par. .A12–.A14)

¹ Paragraph .12 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

² Paragraph .13 of section 315.

252 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.11 The user auditor should determine whether a sufficient understanding of the nature and significance of the services provided by the service organization and their effect on the user entity's internal control relevant to the audit has been obtained to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement.

.12 If the user auditor is unable to obtain a sufficient understanding from the user entity, the user auditor should obtain that understanding from one or more of the following procedures:

- a. Obtaining and reading a type 1 or type 2 report, if available
- b. Contacting the service organization, through the user entity, to obtain specific information
- c. Visiting the service organization and performing procedures that will provide the necessary information about the relevant controls at the service organization
- d. Using another auditor to perform procedures that will provide the necessary information about the relevant controls at the service organization (Ref: par. .A15–.A20)

Using a Type 1 or Type 2 Report to Support the User Auditor's Understanding of the Service Organization

.13 In determining the sufficiency and appropriateness of the audit evidence provided by a type 1 or type 2 report, the user auditor should be satisfied regarding the following:

- a. The service auditor's professional competence and independence from the service organization
- b. The adequacy of the standards under which the type 1 or type 2 report was issued (Ref: par. .A21–.A22)

.14 If the user auditor plans to use a type 1 or type 2 report as audit evidence to support the user auditor's understanding about the design and implementation of controls at the service organization, the user auditor should

- a. evaluate whether the type 1 report is as of a date, or in the case of a type 2 report, is for a period that is appropriate for the user auditor's purposes;
- b. evaluate the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence provided by the report for the understanding of the user entity's internal control relevant to the audit; and
- c. determine whether complementary user entity controls identified by the service organization are relevant in addressing the risks of material misstatement relating to the relevant assertions in the user entity's financial statements and, if so, obtain an understanding of whether the user entity has designed and implemented such controls. (Ref: par. .A23–.A24)

Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement

.15 In responding to assessed risks in accordance with section 330, the user auditor should

- a. determine whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the relevant financial statement assertions is available from records held at the user entity and, if not,
- b. perform further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence or use another auditor to perform those procedures at the service organization on the user auditor's behalf. (Ref: par. .A25–.A29)

Tests of Controls

.16 When the user auditor's risk assessment includes an expectation that controls at the service organization are operating effectively, the user auditor should obtain audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of those controls from one or more of the following procedures:

- a. Obtaining and reading a type 2 report, if available
- b. Performing appropriate tests of controls at the service organization
- c. Using another auditor to perform tests of controls at the service organization on behalf of the user auditor (Ref: par. .A30–.A31)

Using a Type 2 Report as Audit Evidence That Controls at the Service Organization Are Operating Effectively

.17 If, in accordance with paragraph .16a, the user auditor plans to use a type 2 report as audit evidence that controls at the service organization are operating effectively, the user auditor should determine whether the service auditor's report provides sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the effectiveness of the controls to support the user auditor's risk assessment by

- a. evaluating whether the type 2 report is for a period that is appropriate for the user auditor's purposes;
- b. determining whether complementary user entity controls identified by the service organization are relevant in addressing the risks of material misstatement relating to the relevant assertions in the user entity's financial statements and, if so, obtaining an understanding of whether the user entity has designed and implemented such controls and, if so, testing their operating effectiveness;
- c. evaluating the adequacy of the time period covered by the tests of controls and the time elapsed since the performance of the tests of controls; and
- d. evaluating whether the tests of controls performed by the service auditor and the results thereof, as described in the service auditor's report, are relevant to the assertions in the user entity's financial statements and provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the user auditor's risk assessment. (Ref: par. .A32–.A40)

Type 1 and Type 2 Reports That Exclude the Services of a Subservice Organization

.18 If the user auditor plans to use a type 1 or a type 2 report that excludes the services provided by a subservice organization and those services are relevant to the audit of the user entity's financial statements, the user auditor should apply the requirements of this section with respect to the services provided by the subservice organization. (Ref: par. .A41)

Fraud, Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations, and Uncorrected Misstatements Related to Activities at the Service Organization

.19 The user auditor should inquire of management of the user entity about whether the service organization has reported to the user entity, or whether the user entity is otherwise aware of, any fraud, noncompliance with laws and regulations, or uncorrected misstatements affecting the financial statements of the user entity. The user auditor should evaluate how such matters, if any, affect the nature, timing, and extent of the user auditor's further audit procedures, including the effect on the user auditor's conclusions and user auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A42)

Reporting by the User Auditor

.20 The user auditor should modify the opinion in the user auditor's report in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, if the user auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the services provided by the service organization relevant to the audit of the user entity's financial statements. (Ref: par. .A43)

.21 The user auditor should not refer to the work of a service auditor in the user auditor's report containing an unmodified opinion. (Ref: par. .A44)

.22 If reference to the work of a service auditor is relevant to an understanding of a modification of the user auditor's opinion, the user auditor's report should indicate that such reference does not diminish the user auditor's responsibility for that opinion. (Ref: par. .A44)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Obtaining an Understanding of the Services Provided by a Service Organization, Including Internal Control****Sources of Information (Ref. par. .09)**

.A1 Information about the nature of the services provided by a service organization may be available from a wide variety of sources, such as the following:

254 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- User manuals
- System overviews
- Technical manuals
- The contract or service level agreement between the user entity and the service organization
- Reports by service organizations, internal auditors, or regulatory authorities on controls at the service organization
- Reports by the service auditor, if available

.A2 Knowledge obtained through the user auditor's experience with the service organization—for example, through experience with other audit engagements—may also be helpful in obtaining an understanding of the nature of the services provided by the service organization. This may be particularly helpful if the services and controls at the service organization over those services are highly standardized.

Nature of the Services Provided by the Service Organization (Ref: par. .09a)

.A3 A user entity may use a service organization, such as one that processes transactions and maintains the related accountability for the user entity or records transactions and processes related data. Service organizations that provide such services include, for example, bank trust departments that invest and service assets for employee benefit plans or for others, mortgage servicers that service mortgages for others, and application service providers that provide packaged software applications and a technology environment that enables customers to process financial and operational transactions.

.A4 Examples of services provided by service organizations that may be relevant to the audit include the following:

- Maintenance of the user entity's accounting records
- Management of the user entity's assets
- Initiating, authorizing, recording, or processing transactions as an agent of the user entity

Considerations Specific to Smaller Entities

.A5 Smaller entities may use external bookkeeping services ranging from the processing of certain transactions (for example, payment of payroll taxes) and maintenance of their accounting records to the preparation of their financial statements. The use of such a service organization for the preparation of its financial statements does not relieve management of the smaller entity and, when appropriate, those charged with governance of their responsibilities for the financial statements.³

Nature and Materiality of Transactions Processed by the Service Organization (Ref: par. .09b)

.A6 A service organization may establish policies and procedures (controls) that affect the user entity's internal control. These controls are at least in part physically and operationally separate from the user entity. The significance of the controls at the service organization to the user entity's internal control depends on the nature of the services provided by the service organization, including the nature and materiality of the transactions it processes for the user entity. In certain situations, the transactions processed and the accounts affected by the service organization may not appear to be material to the user entity's financial statements, but the nature of the transactions processed may be significant and the user auditor may determine that an understanding of controls over the processing of those transactions is necessary in the circumstances.

The Degree of Interaction Between the Activities of the Service Organization and the User Entity (Ref: par. .09c)

.A7 The significance of the controls at the service organization to the user entity's internal control also depends on the degree of interaction between the service organization's activities and

³ Paragraph .04 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

those of the user entity. The degree of interaction refers to the extent to which a user entity is able to and elects to implement effective controls over the processing performed by the service organization. For example, a high degree of interaction exists between the activities of the user entity and those at the service organization when the user entity authorizes transactions and the service organization processes and accounts for those transactions. In these circumstances, it may be practicable for the user entity to implement effective controls over those transactions. On the other hand, when the service organization initiates or initially records, processes, and accounts for the user entity's transactions, a lower degree of interaction exists between the two organizations. In these circumstances, the user entity may be unable to, or may elect not to, implement effective controls over these transactions at the user entity and may rely on controls at the service organization.

Nature of the Relationship Between the User Entity and the Service Organization (Ref: par. .09d)

.A8 The contract or service level agreement between the user entity and the service organization may provide for matters such as the following:

- The information to be provided to the user entity and the responsibilities for initiating transactions relating to the activities undertaken by the service organization
- Complying with the requirements of regulatory bodies concerning the form of records to be maintained or access to them
- The indemnification, if any, to be provided to the user entity in the event of a performance failure
- Whether the service organization will provide a report on its controls and, if so, whether such a report will be a type 1 or type 2 report
- Whether the user auditor has rights of access to the accounting records of the user entity maintained by the service organization and other information necessary for the conduct of the audit
- Whether the agreement allows for direct communication between the user auditor and the service auditor

.A9 A direct relationship exists between the service organization and the user entity when the user entity enters into an agreement with the service organization, and between the service organization and the service auditor when the service organization engages the service auditor. These relationships do not create a direct relationship between the user auditor and the service auditor.

.A10 Communications between the user auditor and the service auditor usually are conducted through the user entity and the service organization. A user auditor may request through the user entity that a service auditor perform procedures for the benefit of the user auditor. For example, a service auditor may be engaged by the service organization to perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to testing controls at a service organization or performing procedures related to a user entity's transactions or balances maintained by the service organization. AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), establishes standards and provides guidance for agreed-upon procedures engagements.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A11 For governmental entities, the auditor may be required to perform audit procedures with respect to the entity's compliance with laws and regulations. Such required procedures may include obtaining an understanding of internal control over compliance, performing tests of controls over compliance, and performing tests of compliance. Consequently, auditors of governmental entities that use a service organization may determine that it is appropriate to request, through the governmental entity, that the service auditor perform specified compliance-related audit procedures with respect to services provided by the service organization.⁴

⁴ Section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses audits of an entity's compliance.

256 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Understanding the Controls Relating to Services Provided by the Service Organization (Ref: par. .10)***

.A12 The user entity may establish controls over the service organization's services that may be tested by the user auditor and that may enable the user auditor to conclude that the user entity's controls are operating effectively for some or all of the related assertions, regardless of the controls in place at the service organization. If a user entity, for example, uses a service organization to process its payroll transactions, the user entity may establish controls over the submission and receipt of payroll information that could prevent, or detect and correct, material misstatements. These controls may include the following:

- Comparing the data submitted to the service organization with reports of information received from the service organization after the data has been processed
- Recomputing a sample of the payroll amounts for clerical accuracy and reviewing the total amount of the payroll for reasonableness

.A13 In this situation, the user auditor may perform tests of the user entity's controls over payroll processing that would provide a basis for the user auditor to conclude that the user entity's controls are operating effectively for the assertions related to payroll transactions.

.A14 As noted in section 315, for some risks the auditor may judge that it is not possible or practicable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence only from substantive procedures.⁵ Such risks may relate to the inaccurate or incomplete recording of routine and significant classes of transactions and account balances that may involve highly automated processing with little or no manual intervention. Risks related to such automated processing may be particularly present when the user entity uses a service organization. In such cases, the user entity's controls over such risks are relevant to the audit and the user auditor is required to obtain an understanding of and to evaluate such controls in accordance with paragraphs .09–.10 of this section.

Further Procedures When a Sufficient Understanding Cannot Be Obtained From the User Entity (Ref: par. .12)

.A15 The user auditor's decision regarding which procedure, individually or in combination, in paragraph .12 to undertake in order to obtain the information necessary to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement regarding the user entity's use of the service organization, may be influenced by such matters as the following:

- The size of both the user entity and the service organization
- The complexity of the transactions at the user entity and the complexity of the services provided by the service organization
- The location of the service organization (for example, the user auditor may decide to use another auditor to perform procedures at the service organization on the user auditor's behalf if the service organization is in a remote location)
- Whether the procedure(s) is expected to effectively provide the user auditor with sufficient appropriate audit evidence
- The nature of the relationship between the user entity and the service organization

.A16 A service organization may engage a service auditor to report on the description and design of its controls (type 1 report) or on the description and design of its controls and their operating effectiveness (type 2 report). Type 1 or type 2 reports may be issued under Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 16, *Reporting on Controls at a Service Organization* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AT sec. 801), or under standards promulgated by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization (for example, the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board).

.A17 The availability of a type 1 or type 2 report generally will depend on whether the contract between the service organization and the user entity includes the provision of such a report by the

⁵ Paragraph .31 of section 315.

service organization. A service organization may also elect, for practical reasons, to make a type 1 or type 2 report available to the user entities. However, in some cases, a type 1 or type 2 report may not be available to user entities.

.A18 In some circumstances, a user entity may outsource one or more significant business units or functions, such as its entire tax planning and compliance functions, finance and accounting functions, or the controllership function to one or more service organizations. As a report on controls at the service organization may not be available in these circumstances, visiting the service organization may be the most effective procedure for the user auditor to gain an understanding of controls at the service organization because there is likely to be direct interaction of management of the user entity with management of the service organization.

.A19 Another auditor may be used to perform procedures that will provide the necessary information about the relevant controls at the service organization. If a type 1 or type 2 report has been issued, the user auditor may use the service auditor to perform these procedures as the service auditor has an existing relationship with the service organization. The user auditor using the work of another auditor may find the guidance in section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, useful as it relates to understanding another auditor (including that auditor's independence and professional competence); involvement in the work of another auditor in planning the nature, extent, and timing of such work; and in evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of the audit evidence obtained.⁶

.A20 A user entity may use a service organization that in turn uses a subservice organization to provide some of the services provided to a user entity that are relevant to those user entities' internal control over financial reporting. The subservice organization may be a separate entity from the service organization or may be related to the service organization. A user auditor may need to consider controls at the subservice organization. In situations in which one or more subservice organizations are used, the interaction between the activities of the user entity and those of the service organization is expanded to include the interaction between the user entity, the service organization, and the subservice organizations. The degree of this interaction as well as the nature and materiality of the transactions processed by the service organization and the subservice organizations are the most important factors for the user auditor to consider in determining the significance of the service organization's and subservice organization's controls to the user entity's controls. (Ref: par. .08)

Using a Type 1 or Type 2 Report to Support the User Auditor's Understanding of the Service Organization (Ref: par. .13–.14)

.A21 The user auditor may make inquiries about the service auditor to the service auditor's professional organization or other practitioners and inquire whether the service auditor is subject to regulatory oversight. The service auditor may be practicing in a jurisdiction in which different standards are followed with respect to reports on controls at a service organization. In such a situation, the user auditor may obtain information about the standards used by the service auditor from the standards-setting organization in that jurisdiction.

.A22 Unless evidence to the contrary comes to the user auditor's attention, a service auditor's report implies that the service auditor is independent of the service organization. However, a service auditor need not be independent of the user entities.

.A23 A type 1 or type 2 report, along with information about the user entity, may assist the user auditor in obtaining an understanding of the following:

- a. The controls at the service organization that may affect the processing of the user entity's transactions, including the use of subservice organizations
- b. The flow of significant transactions through the service organization's system to determine the points in the transaction flow where material misstatements in the user entity's financial statements could occur

⁶ Paragraphs .02 and .22 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

258 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- c. The control objectives stated in the description of the service organization's system that are relevant to the user entity's financial statement assertions
- d. Whether controls at the service organization are suitably designed and implemented to prevent, or detect and correct, processing errors that could result in material misstatements in the user entity's financial statements

A type 1 or type 2 report may assist the user auditor in obtaining a sufficient understanding to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the user entity's financial statements. A type 1 report, however, does not provide any evidence of the operating effectiveness of the relevant controls.

.A24 A type 1 report that is as of a date, or a type 2 report that is for a period outside of the reporting period of a user entity, may assist the user auditor in obtaining a preliminary understanding of the controls implemented at the service organization if the report is supplemented by additional current information from other sources. If the description of the service organization's system is as of a date or for a period that precedes the beginning of the period under audit, the user auditor may perform procedures to update the information in a type 1 or type 2 report, such as the following:

- Discussing changes at the service organization with user entity personnel who would be in a position to know of such changes
- Reviewing current documentation and correspondence issued by the service organization
- Discussing the changes with service organization personnel

Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement (Ref: par. .15)

.A25 Whether the use of a service organization increases a user entity's risk of material misstatement depends on the nature of the services provided and the controls over these services; in some cases, the use of a service organization may decrease a user entity's risk of material misstatement, particularly if the user entity itself does not possess the expertise necessary to undertake particular activities, such as initiating, processing, and recording transactions, or does not have adequate resources (for example, an IT system).

.A26 When the service organization maintains material elements of the accounting records of the user entity, direct access to those records may be necessary for the user auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence relating to the operations of controls over those records, to substantiate transactions and balances recorded in them, or both. Such access may involve physical inspection of records at the service organization's premises or electronic interrogation of records, or both. When direct access is achieved electronically, the user auditor may also obtain evidence concerning the adequacy of the service organization's controls over the completeness and integrity of the user entity's data for which the service organization is responsible.

.A27 In determining the nature and extent of audit evidence to be obtained for financial statement balances representing assets held or transactions processed by a service organization for a user entity, the following procedures may be considered by the user auditor:

- a. *Inspecting records and documents held by the user entity.* The reliability of this source of evidence is determined by the nature and extent of the accounting records and supporting documentation retained by the user entity. In some cases, the user entity may not maintain independent detailed records or documentation of specific transactions undertaken on its behalf.
- b. *Inspecting records and documents held by the service organization.* The user auditor's access to the records of the service organization may be established as part of the contractual arrangements between the user entity and the service organization. The user auditor may also use another auditor, on its behalf, to gain access to the user entity's records maintained by the service organization, or ask the service organization through the user entity for access to the user entity's records maintained by the service organization.
- c. *Obtaining confirmations of balances and transactions from the service organization.* When the user entity maintains independent records of balances and transactions, confirmation from the service organization corroborating those records usually constitutes reli-

able audit evidence concerning the existence of the transactions and assets concerned. For example, when multiple service organizations are used, such as an investment manager and a custodian, and these service organizations maintain independent records, the user auditor may confirm balances with these organizations in order to compare this information with the independent records of the user entity. If the user entity does not maintain independent records, information obtained in confirmations from the service organization is merely a statement of what is reflected in the records maintained by the service organization. Therefore, such confirmations do not, taken alone, constitute reliable audit evidence. In these circumstances, the user auditor may consider whether an alternative source of independent evidence can be identified.

- d. *Performing analytical procedures on the records maintained by the user entity or on the reports received from the service organization.* The effectiveness of analytical procedures is likely to vary by assertion and will be affected by the extent and detail of information available.

.A28 As noted in paragraph .A10, a service auditor may perform procedures under AT section 201 that are substantive in nature for the benefit of user auditors. Such an engagement may involve the performance by the service auditor of procedures agreed upon by the user entity and its user auditor and by the service organization and its service auditor. The findings resulting from the procedures performed by the service auditor are reviewed by the user auditor to determine whether they constitute sufficient appropriate audit evidence. In addition, requirements may be imposed by governmental authorities or through contractual arrangements whereby a service auditor performs designated procedures that are substantive in nature. The results of the application of the required procedures to balances and transactions processed by the service organization may be used by the user auditor as part of the evidence necessary to support the user auditor's audit opinion. In these circumstances, it may be useful for the user auditor and the service auditor to establish an understanding prior to the performance of the procedures concerning the audit documentation or means of accessing the audit documentation that will be provided to the user auditor.

.A29 In certain circumstances, in particular when a user entity outsources some or all of its finance function to a service organization, the user auditor may face a situation in which a significant portion of the audit evidence resides at the service organization. Substantive procedures may need to be performed at the service organization by the user auditor or the service auditor on behalf of the user auditor. A service auditor may provide a type 2 report and, in addition, may perform substantive procedures on behalf of the user auditor. As noted in paragraph .A44, the involvement of a service auditor does not alter the user auditor's responsibility to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to afford a reasonable basis to support the user auditor's opinion. Accordingly, relevant information for the user auditor to consider when determining whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained and whether the user auditor needs to perform further substantive procedures includes the user auditor's involvement with, or evidence of, the direction, supervision, and performance of the substantive procedures performed by the service auditor.

Tests of Controls (Ref: par. .16)

.A30 The user auditor is required by section 330 to design and perform tests of controls to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the operating effectiveness of relevant controls in certain circumstances.⁷ In the context of a service organization, this requirement applies when

- a. the user auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement includes an expectation that the controls at the service organization are operating effectively (that is, the user auditor intends to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls at the service organization in determining the nature, timing and extent of substantive procedures); or

⁷ Paragraph .08 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

260 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- b. substantive procedures alone, or in combination with tests of the operating effectiveness of controls at the user entity, cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the assertion level.

.A31 If a type 2 report is not available, a user auditor may contact the service organization through the user entity to request that a service auditor be engaged to perform a type 2 engagement that includes tests of the operating effectiveness of the relevant controls or the user auditor may use another auditor to perform agreed-upon procedures at the service organization that test the operating effectiveness of those controls. A user auditor may also visit the service organization and perform tests of relevant controls if the service organization agrees to it. The user auditor's risk assessments are based on the combined evidence provided by the service auditor's report and the user auditor's own procedures.

Using a Type 2 Report as Audit Evidence That Controls at the Service Organization Are Operating Effectively (Ref: par. .17)

.A32 A type 2 report may be intended to satisfy the needs of several different user auditors; therefore, specific tests of controls and results described in a type 2 report may not be relevant to assertions that are significant in the user entity's financial statements. The relevant tests of controls and results of the tests are evaluated to determine whether the type 2 report provides sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the effectiveness of the controls to support the user auditor's risk assessment. In doing so, the user auditor may consider the following factors:

- a. The time period covered by the tests of controls and the time elapsed since the performance of the tests of controls
- b. The scope of the service auditor's work and the services and processes covered, the controls tested and the tests that were performed, and the way in which tested controls relate to the user entity's controls
- c. The results of those tests of controls and the service auditor's opinion on the operating effectiveness of the controls

.A33 For certain assertions, the shorter the period covered by a specific test and the longer the time elapsed since the performance of the test, the less audit evidence the test may provide. In comparing the period covered by the type 2 report to the user entity's financial reporting period, the user auditor may conclude that the type 2 report offers less audit evidence if little overlap exists between the period covered by the type 2 report and the period for which the user auditor intends to rely on the report. When this is the case, an additional type 2 report covering a preceding or subsequent period may provide additional audit evidence. In other cases, the user auditor may determine it is necessary to perform, or use another auditor to perform, tests of controls at the service organization in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of those controls.

.A34 It may also be necessary for the user auditor to obtain additional evidence about significant changes in the relevant controls at the service organization during a period outside the period covered by the type 2 report, or to determine what additional audit procedures need to be performed (for example, when little or no overlap exists between the period covered by the type 2 report and the period covered by the user entity's financial statements). Relevant factors in determining what additional audit evidence to obtain about controls at the service organization that were operating outside the period covered by the service auditor's report may include the following:

- The significance of the assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level
- The specific controls that were tested during the interim period and significant changes to them since they were tested including changes in the information systems, processes, and personnel
- The degree to which audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of those controls was obtained
- The length of the remaining period
- The extent to which the user auditor intends to reduce further substantive procedures based on the reliance on controls
- The effectiveness of the control environment and monitoring controls at the user entity

.A35 Additional audit evidence may be obtained, for example, by performing tests of controls that operated during the remaining period or testing the user entity's monitoring controls.

.A36 If the service auditor's testing period is completely outside the user entity's financial reporting period, the user auditor will be unable to rely on such tests to conclude that the user entity's controls are operating effectively because the tests do not provide current audit period evidence of the effectiveness of the controls, unless other procedures are performed.

.A37 In certain circumstances, a service provided by the service organization may be designed with the assumption that certain controls will be implemented by the user entity. For example, the service may be designed with the assumption that the user entity will have controls in place for authorizing transactions before they are sent to the service organization for processing. In such a situation, the description of the service organization's system may include a description of those complementary user entity controls. The user auditor considers whether those complementary user entity controls are relevant to the service provided to the user entity.

.A38 If the user auditor believes that the service auditor's report may not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence (for example, if a service auditor's report does not contain a description of the service auditor's tests of controls and results thereof), the user auditor may supplement his or her understanding of the service auditor's procedures and conclusions by contacting the service organization through the user entity to request a discussion with the service auditor about the scope and results of the service auditor's work. Also, if the user auditor believes it is necessary, the user auditor may contact the service organization through the user entity to request that the service auditor perform procedures at the service organization, or the user auditor may perform such procedures.

.A39 The service auditor's type 2 report identifies results of tests, including deviations, and other information that could affect the user auditor's conclusions. Deviations noted by the service auditor or a modified opinion in the service auditor's report do not automatically mean that the service auditor's report will not be useful for the audit of the user entity's financial statements in assessing the risks of material misstatement. Rather, the deviations and the matter giving rise to a modified opinion in the service auditor's type 2 report are considered in the user auditor's assessment of the tests of controls performed by the service auditor. In considering the deviations and matters giving rise to a modified opinion, the user auditor may discuss such matters with the service auditor. Such communication is dependent upon the user entity contacting the service organization, and obtaining the service organization's approval for the communication to take place.

Communication of Significant Deficiencies and Material Weaknesses in Internal Control Identified During the Audit

.A40 The user auditor is required by section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, to communicate in writing to management and those charged with governance significant deficiencies and material weaknesses identified during the audit.⁸ Matters related to the use of a service organization that the user auditor may identify during the audit and may communicate to management and those charged with governance of the user entity include the following:

- Any needed monitoring controls that could be implemented by the user entity, including those identified as a result of obtaining a type 1 or type 2 report
- Instances when complementary user entity controls identified in the type 1 or type 2 report are not implemented at the user entity
- Controls that may be needed at the service organization that do not appear to have been implemented or that were implemented, but are not operating effectively

The auditor also may communicate other control related matters, including deficiencies that are not significant deficiencies or material weaknesses.

⁸ Paragraphs .11–.12 of section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*.

262 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Type 1 and Type 2 Reports That Exclude the Services of a Subservice Organization (Ref: par. .18)**

.A41 If a service organization uses a subservice organization, the service auditor's report may either include or exclude the subservice organization's relevant control objectives and related controls in the service organization's description of its system and in the scope of the service auditor's engagement. These two methods of reporting are known as the *inclusive method* and the *carve-out method*, respectively. If the type 1 or type 2 report excludes the controls at a subservice organization and the services provided by the subservice organization are relevant to the audit of the user entity's financial statements, the user auditor is required to apply the requirements of this section with respect to the subservice organization. The nature and extent of work to be performed by the user auditor regarding the services provided by a subservice organization depend on the nature and significance of those services to the user entity and the relevance of those services to the audit. The application of the requirement in paragraph .09 assists the user auditor in determining the effect of the subservice organization and the nature and extent of work to be performed.

Fraud, Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations, and Uncorrected Misstatements Related to Activities at the Service Organization (Ref: par. .19)

.A42 A service organization may be required under the terms of the contract with user entities to disclose to affected user entities any fraud, noncompliance with laws and regulations, or uncorrected misstatements attributable to the service organization's management or employees. As required by paragraph .19, the user auditor makes inquiries of the user entity management regarding whether the service organization has reported any such matters and evaluates whether any matters reported by the service organization affect the nature, timing, and extent of the user auditor's further audit procedures. In certain circumstances, the user auditor may require additional information to perform this evaluation and may request that the user entity contact the service organization to obtain the necessary information.

Reporting by the User Auditor (Ref: par. .20)

.A43 When a user auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the services provided by the service organization relevant to the audit of the user entity's financial statements, a limitation on the scope of the audit exists. This may be the case when

- the user auditor is unable to obtain a sufficient understanding of the services provided by the service organization and does not have a basis for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement;
- a user auditor's risk assessment includes an expectation that controls at the service organization are operating effectively and the user auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of these controls; or
- sufficient appropriate audit evidence is only available from records held at the service organization, and the user auditor is unable to obtain direct access to these records.

Whether the user auditor expresses a qualified opinion or disclaims an opinion depends on the user auditor's conclusion regarding whether the possible effects on the financial statements are material, pervasive, or both.⁹

Reference to the Work of the Service Auditor (Ref: par. .21–.22)

.A44 The fact that a user entity uses a service organization does not alter the user auditor's responsibility to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to afford a reasonable basis to support the user auditor's opinion. Therefore, the user auditor does not make reference to the service auditor's report as a basis, in part, for the user auditor's opinion on the user entity's financial statements. However, when the user auditor expresses a modified opinion because of a modified opinion in a service auditor's report, the user auditor is not precluded from referring to the service auditor's report if such reference assists in explaining the reason for the user auditor's modified opinion. In such circumstances, the user auditor need not identify the service auditor by name and may need the consent of the service auditor before making such a reference.

⁹ Paragraphs .07–.10 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.A45**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 402, *Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization*, and International Standard on Auditing 402, *Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization***

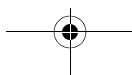
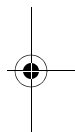
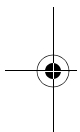
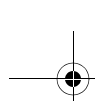
This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 402, *Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 402, *Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards.

Differences in Language

The definitions of *report on a description of a service organization's system and the suitability of the design of controls (type 1 report)* and *report on a description of a service organization's system and the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of controls (type 2 report)*, in paragraph .08 of section 402, indicate that management's written assertion is an element of these reports. This is consistent with the definitions of these terms in International Standard on Assurance Engagements 3402, *Assurance Reports on Controls at a Service Organization*. The definitions of these terms in paragraph 8 of ISA 402 do not include management's written assertion as an element of the reports. The ASB believes that the definitions are consistent with the intent of ISA 402 and that the modifications do not create differences between the application of ISA 402 and the application of section 402.



AU-C Section 450*

Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to evaluate the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements. Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's responsibility in forming an opinion on the financial statements based on the evaluation of the audit evidence obtained. The auditor's conclusion, required by section 700, takes into account the auditor's evaluation of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements, in accordance with this section. Section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, addresses the auditor's responsibility to appropriately apply the concept of materiality in planning and performing an audit of financial statements.

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

- .03 The objective of the auditor is to evaluate the effect of
- identified misstatements on the audit and
 - uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements.

Definitions

.04 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Misstatement. A difference between the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure of a reported financial statement item and the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure that is required for the item to be presented fairly in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error. (Ref: par. .A1)

Misstatements also include those adjustments of amounts, classifications, presentations, or disclosures that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are necessary for the financial statements to be presented fairly, in all material respects.

Uncorrected misstatements. Misstatements that the auditor has accumulated during the audit and that have not been corrected.

Requirements

Accumulation of Identified Misstatements

.05 The auditor should accumulate misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are clearly trivial. (Ref: par. .A2–.A3)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

266 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Consideration of Identified Misstatements as the Audit Progresses**

.06 The auditor should determine whether the overall audit strategy and audit plan need to be revised if

- a. the nature of identified misstatements and the circumstances of their occurrence indicate that other misstatements may exist that, when aggregated with misstatements accumulated during the audit, could be material or (Ref: par. .A4)
- b. the aggregate of misstatements accumulated during the audit approaches materiality determined in accordance with section 320.¹ (Ref: par. .A5)

Communication and Correction of Misstatements

.07 The auditor should communicate on a timely basis with the appropriate level of management all misstatements accumulated during the audit. The auditor should request management to correct those misstatements. (Ref: par. .A6–.A8)

.08 If, at the auditor's request, management has examined a class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure and corrected misstatements that were detected, the auditor should perform additional audit procedures to determine whether misstatements remain. (Ref: par. .A9–.A11)

.09 If management refuses to correct some or all of the misstatements communicated by the auditor, the auditor should obtain an understanding of management's reasons for not making the corrections and should take that understanding into account when evaluating whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.² (Ref: par. .A12–.A15)

Evaluating the Effect of Uncorrected Misstatements

.10 Prior to evaluating the effect of uncorrected misstatements, the auditor should reassess materiality³ to confirm whether it remains appropriate in the context of the entity's actual financial results. (Ref: par. .A16–.A18)

.11 The auditor should determine whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in the aggregate. In making this determination, the auditor should consider

- a. the size and nature of the misstatements, both in relation to particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and the financial statements as a whole, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence and (Ref: par. .A19–.A24 and .A26–.A27)
- b. the effect of uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and the financial statements as a whole. (Ref: par. .A25)

Documentation

.12 The auditor should include in the audit documentation⁴ (Ref: par. .A28)

- a. the amount below which misstatements would be regarded as clearly trivial; (See paragraph .05)
- b. all misstatements accumulated during the audit and whether they have been corrected; and (See paragraphs .05–.07)
- c. the auditor's conclusion about whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in the aggregate, and the basis for that conclusion. (See paragraph .11)

¹ Paragraph .10 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

² Paragraph .14 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

³ Paragraph .12 of section 320.

⁴ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Misstatement (Ref: par. .04)

.A1 Misstatements may result from fraud or error, such as

- a. an inaccuracy in gathering or processing data from which the financial statements are prepared,
- b. an omission of an amount or disclosure,
- c. a financial statement disclosure that is not presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework,
- d. an incorrect accounting estimate arising from overlooking or clear misinterpretation of facts, and
- e. judgments of management concerning accounting estimates that the auditor considers unreasonable or the selection or application of accounting policies that the auditor considers inappropriate.

Other examples of misstatements arising from fraud are provided in section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.⁵

Accumulation of Identified Misstatements (Ref: par. .05)

.A2 The auditor may designate an amount below which misstatements would be clearly trivial and would not need to be accumulated because the auditor expects that the accumulation of such amounts clearly would not have a material effect on the financial statements. “Clearly trivial” is not another expression for “not material.” Matters that are clearly trivial will be of a wholly different (smaller) order of magnitude than materiality determined in accordance with section 320 and will be matters that are clearly inconsequential, whether taken individually or in the aggregate and whether judged by any criteria of size, nature, or circumstances. When there is any uncertainty about whether one or more items are clearly trivial, the matter is considered not to be clearly trivial.

.A3 To assist the auditor in evaluating the effect of misstatements accumulated during the audit and in communicating misstatements to management and those charged with governance, the auditor may find it useful to distinguish between factual misstatements, judgmental misstatements, and projected misstatements, described as follows:

- *Factual misstatements* are misstatements about which there is no doubt.
- *Judgmental misstatements* are differences arising from the judgments of management concerning accounting estimates that the auditor considers unreasonable or the selection or application of accounting policies that the auditor considers inappropriate.
- *Projected misstatements* are the auditor’s best estimate of misstatements in populations, involving the projection of misstatements identified in audit samples to the entire population from which the samples were drawn. Guidance on the determination of projected misstatements and evaluation of the results is set out in section 530, *Audit Sampling*.⁶

Consideration of Identified Misstatements as the Audit Progresses (Ref: par. .06)

.A4 A misstatement may not be an isolated occurrence. Evidence that other misstatements may exist include, for example, when the auditor identifies that a misstatement arose from a breakdown in internal control or from inappropriate assumptions or valuation methods that have been widely applied by the entity.

.A5 If the aggregate of misstatements accumulated during the audit approaches materiality,⁷ a greater than acceptably low level of risk may exist that possible undetected misstatements, when taken with the aggregate of uncorrected misstatements accumulated during the audit, could

⁵ Paragraphs .A1–.A8 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

⁶ Paragraphs .13–.14 of section 530, *Audit Sampling*.

⁷ Paragraph .12 of section 320.

268 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

exceed materiality. Undetected misstatements could exist because of the presence of sampling risk and nonsampling risk.⁸

Communication and Correction of Misstatements (Ref: par. .07–.09)

.A6 Timely communication of misstatements to the appropriate level of management is important because it enables management to evaluate whether the items are misstatements, inform the auditor if it disagrees, and take action as necessary. Ordinarily, the appropriate level of management is the one that has responsibility and authority to evaluate the misstatements and take the necessary action.

.A7 Law or regulation may restrict the auditor's communication of certain misstatements to management or others within the entity. For example, laws or regulations may specifically prohibit a communication or other action that might prejudice an investigation by an appropriate authority into an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws or regulations. In some circumstances, potential conflicts between the auditor's obligations of confidentiality and obligations to communicate may be complex. In such cases, the auditor may consider seeking legal advice.

.A8 The correction by management of all misstatements, including those communicated by the auditor, enables management to maintain accurate accounting books and records and reduces the risks of material misstatement of future financial statements because of the cumulative effect of immaterial uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods.

.A9 The auditor may request management to examine a class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure in order for management to understand the cause of a misstatement identified by the auditor; perform procedures to determine the amount of the actual misstatement in the class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure; and make appropriate adjustments to the financial statements. Such a request may be made, for example, based on the auditor's projection of misstatements identified in an audit sample to the entire population from which it was drawn.

.A10 The auditor may request management to record an adjustment needed to correct all factual misstatements, including the effect of prior period misstatements (see paragraph .08), other than those that the auditor believes are clearly trivial.

.A11 When the auditor has identified a judgmental misstatement involving differences in estimates, such as a difference in a fair value estimate, the auditor may request management to review the assumptions and methods used in developing management's estimate.

.A12 Section 700 requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.⁹ This evaluation includes consideration of the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including indicators of possible bias in management's judgments, which may be affected by the auditor's understanding of management's reasons for not making the corrections (see section 700).¹⁰

.A13 Section 580, *Written Representations*, addresses management representations, including representations with respect to uncorrected misstatements.¹¹

.A14 In accordance with section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, identification by the auditor of a material misstatement of the financial statements under audit in circumstances that indicate that the misstatement would not have been detected by the entity's internal control is an indicator of a material weakness.¹²

⁸ Paragraph .05 of section 530.

⁹ Paragraph .13 of section 700.

¹⁰ Paragraph .15 of section 700.

¹¹ Paragraph .14 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

¹² Paragraph .A11 of section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*.

.A15 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, addresses matters to be communicated by the auditor to those charged with governance, including uncorrected misstatements.

Evaluating the Effect of Uncorrected Misstatements (Ref: par. .10–.11)

.A16 The auditor's determination of materiality in accordance with section 320 often is based on estimates of the entity's financial results because the actual financial results may not yet be known.¹³ Therefore, prior to the auditor's evaluation of the effect of uncorrected misstatements, it may be necessary to revise materiality determined in accordance with section 320 based on the actual financial results.

.A17 Section 320 explains that, as the audit progresses, materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) is revised in the event of the auditor becoming aware of information during the audit that would have caused the auditor to have determined a different amount (or amounts) initially.¹⁴ Thus, any significant revision is likely to have been made before the auditor evaluates the effect of uncorrected misstatements. However, if the auditor's reassessment of materiality determined in accordance with section 320 (see paragraph .10 of this section) gives rise to a lower amount (or amounts), then performance materiality and the appropriateness of the nature, timing, and extent of the further audit procedures are reconsidered in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion.

.A18 Materiality is determined based on the auditor's understanding of the user needs and expectations (see section 320).¹⁵ Although user expectations may differ based on inherent uncertainty associated with the measurement of particular items in the financial statements, these expectations have already been considered in the auditor's determination of materiality. For example, the fact that the financial statements include very large provisions with a high degree of estimation uncertainty (for example, provisions for insurance claims in the case of an insurance company; oil rig decommissioning costs in the case of an oil company; or, more generally, legal claims against an entity) may influence the auditor's assessment of what users might consider material. However, after materiality is reassessed, this section requires the auditor to evaluate any misstatements in accordance with that level of materiality, regardless of the degree of inherent uncertainty associated with the measurement of particular items in the financial statements.

.A19 Each individual misstatement is considered to evaluate its effect on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures, including whether the materiality level for that particular class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure, if any, has been exceeded.

.A20 The auditor is required by section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, to evaluate the effect on the group audit opinion of any uncorrected misstatement identified by the group engagement team or communicated by the component auditors.¹⁶

.A21 If an individual misstatement is judged to be material, it is unlikely that it can be offset by other misstatements. For example, if revenue has been materially overstated, the financial statements as a whole will be materially misstated, even if the effect of the misstatement on earnings is completely offset by an equivalent overstatement of expenses. It may be appropriate to offset misstatements within the same account balance or class of transactions; however, the risk that further undetected misstatements may exist is considered before concluding that offsetting even immaterial misstatements is appropriate. The auditor may need to reassess the risks of material

¹³ Paragraph .10 of section 320.

¹⁴ Paragraph .12 of section 320.

¹⁵ Paragraph .10 of section 320.

¹⁶ Paragraph .44 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

270 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

misstatement for a specific account balance or class of transactions upon identification of a number of immaterial misstatements within that account balance or class of transactions.

.A22 Determining whether a classification misstatement is material involves the evaluation of qualitative considerations, such as the effect of the classification misstatement on debt or other contractual covenants, the effect on individual line items or subtotals, or the effect on key ratios. Circumstances may exist in which the auditor concludes that a classification misstatement is not material in the context of the financial statements as a whole, even though it may exceed the materiality level or levels applied in evaluating other misstatements. For example, a misclassification between balance sheet line items may not be considered material in the context of the financial statements as a whole when the amount of the misclassification is small in relation to the size of the related balance sheet line items and the misclassification does not affect the income statement or any key ratios.

.A23 The circumstances related to some misstatements may cause the auditor to evaluate them as material, individually or when considered together with other misstatements accumulated during the audit, even if they are lower than materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Circumstances that may affect the evaluation include the extent to which the misstatement

- affects compliance with regulatory requirements.
- affects compliance with debt covenants or other contractual requirements.
- relates to the incorrect selection or application of an accounting policy that has an immaterial effect on the current period's financial statements but is likely to have a material effect on future periods' financial statements.
- masks a change in earnings or other trends, especially in the context of general economic and industry conditions.
- affects ratios used to evaluate the entity's financial position, results of operations, or cash flows.
- affects segment information presented in the financial statements (for example, the significance of the matter to a segment or other portion of the entity's business that has been identified as playing a significant role in the entity's operations or profitability).
- has the effect of increasing management compensation (for example, by ensuring that the requirements for the award of bonuses or other incentives are satisfied).
- is significant with regard to the auditor's understanding of known previous communications to users (for example, regarding forecast earnings).
- relates to items involving particular parties (for example, whether external parties to the transaction are related to members of the entity's management).
- is an omission of information not specifically required by the applicable financial reporting framework but that, in the professional judgment of the auditor, is important to the users' understanding of the financial position, financial performance, or cash flows of the entity.
- affects other information that will be communicated in documents containing the audited financial statements (for example, information to be included in a "Management Discussion and Analysis" or an "Operating and Financial Review") that may reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of the users of the financial statements. Section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the auditor's consideration of other information, on which the auditor has no obligation to report, in documents containing audited financial statements.
- is a misclassification between certain account balances affecting items disclosed separately in the financial statements (for example, misclassification between operating and nonoperating income or recurring and nonrecurring income items or a misclassification between restricted and unrestricted resources in a not-for-profit entity).
- offsets effects of individually significant but different misstatements.
- is currently immaterial and likely to have a material effect in future periods because of a cumulative effect, for example, that builds over several periods.
- is too costly to correct. It may not be cost beneficial for the client to develop a system to calculate a basis to record the effect of an immaterial misstatement. On the other hand, if

management appears to have developed a system to calculate an amount that represents an immaterial misstatement, it may reflect a motivation of management.

- represents a risk that possible additional undetected misstatements would affect the auditor's evaluation.
- changes a loss into income or vice versa.
- heightens the sensitivity of the circumstances surrounding the misstatement (for example, the implications of misstatements involving fraud and possible instances of noncompliance with laws or regulations, violations of contractual provisions, and conflicts of interest).
 - has a significant effect relative to reasonable user needs (for example, earnings to investors and the equity amounts to creditors,
 - the magnifying effects of a misstatement on the calculation of purchase price in a transfer of interests [buy-sell agreement], and
 - the effect of misstatements of earnings when contrasted with expectations).
- relates to the definitive character of the misstatement (for example, the precision of an error that is objectively determinable as contrasted with a misstatement that unavoidably involves a degree of subjectivity through estimation, allocation, or uncertainty).
- indicates the motivation of management (for example, [i] an indication of a possible pattern of bias by management when developing and accumulating accounting estimates, [ii] a misstatement precipitated by management's continued unwillingness to correct weaknesses in the financial reporting process, or [iii] an intentional decision not to follow the applicable financial reporting framework).

These circumstances are only examples—not all are likely to be present in all audits nor is the list necessarily complete. The existence of any circumstances such as these does not necessarily lead to a conclusion that the misstatement is material.

.A24 Section 240 explains how the implications of a misstatement that is, or may be, the result of fraud are required to be considered with regard to other aspects of the audit, even if the size of the misstatement is not material in relation to the financial statements.¹⁷

.A25 The cumulative effect of immaterial uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods may have a material effect on the current period's financial statements. Different acceptable approaches to the auditor's evaluation of such uncorrected misstatements on the current period's financial statements are available. Using the same evaluation approach provides consistency from period to period.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A26 In the case of an audit of a governmental entity, the evaluation of whether a misstatement is material also may be affected by the auditor's responsibilities established by law or regulation to report specific matters, including, for example, fraud.

.A27 Furthermore, issues such as public interest, accountability, integrity, and ensuring effective legislative oversight, in particular, may affect the assessment of whether an item is material by virtue of its nature. This is particularly so for items that relate to compliance with law or regulation.

Documentation (Ref: par. .12)

.A28 The auditor's documentation of uncorrected misstatements may take into account the following:

- a. The consideration of the aggregate effect of uncorrected misstatements
- b. The evaluation of whether the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures, if any, have been exceeded
- c. The evaluation of the effect of uncorrected misstatements on key ratios or trends and compliance with legal, regulatory, and contractual requirements (for example, debt covenants).

¹⁷ Paragraph .35 of section 240.

.A29**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraphs 12–13 of ISA 450 require the auditor to communicate certain matters regarding uncorrected misstatements to those charged with governance. The ASB believes that the requirements for this communication are more appropriately placed in section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

Paragraph 14 of ISA 450 requires the auditor to request written representations from management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance regarding uncorrected misstatements. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 580, *Written Representations*.

The placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 500*

AUDIT EVIDENCE

AU-C Section 500*

Audit Evidence

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section explains what constitutes audit evidence in an audit of financial statements and addresses the auditor's responsibility to design and perform audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be able to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.

.02 This section is applicable to all the audit evidence obtained during the course of the audit. Other AU-C sections address

- specific aspects of the audit (for example, section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*);
- the audit evidence to be obtained regarding a particular topic (for example, section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*]);[†]
- specific procedures to obtain audit evidence (for example, section 520, *Analytical Procedures*); and
- the evaluation of whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained (for example, section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*).

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.04 The objective of the auditor is to design and perform audit procedures that enable the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be able to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

[†] SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

274 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Definitions**

.05 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Accounting records. The records of initial accounting entries and supporting records, such as checks and records of electronic fund transfers; invoices; contracts; the general and subsidiary ledgers; journal entries and other adjustments to the financial statements that are not reflected in journal entries; and records, such as work sheets and spreadsheets, supporting cost allocations, computations, reconciliations, and disclosures.

Appropriateness (of audit evidence). The measure of the quality of audit evidence (that is, its relevance and reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based).

Audit evidence. Information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and other information.

Management's specialist. An individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements.

Sufficiency (of audit evidence). The measure of the quantity of audit evidence. The quantity of the audit evidence needed is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement and also by the quality of such audit evidence.

Requirements**Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence**

.06 The auditor should design and perform audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A1–.A26)

Information to Be Used as Audit Evidence

.07 When designing and performing audit procedures, the auditor should consider the relevance and reliability of the information to be used as audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A27–.A34)

.08 If information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of a management's specialist, the auditor should, to the extent necessary, taking into account the significance of that specialist's work for the auditor's purposes, (Ref: par. .A35–.A37)

- a. evaluate the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of that specialist; (Ref: par. .A38–.A44)
- b. obtain an understanding of the work of that specialist; and (Ref: par. .A45–.A48)
- c. evaluate the appropriateness of that specialist's work as audit evidence for the relevant assertion. (Ref: par. .A49)

.09 When using information produced by the entity, the auditor should evaluate whether the information is sufficiently reliable for the auditor's purposes, including, as necessary, in the following circumstances:

- a. Obtaining audit evidence about the accuracy and completeness of the information (Ref: par. .A50–.A51)
- b. Evaluating whether the information is sufficiently precise and detailed for the auditor's purposes (Ref: par. .A52)

Inconsistency in, or Doubts Over Reliability of, Audit Evidence

.10 If

- a. audit evidence obtained from one source is inconsistent with that obtained from another or
- b. the auditor has doubts about the reliability of information to be used as audit evidence,

the auditor should determine what modifications or additions to audit procedures are necessary to resolve the matter and should consider the effect of the matter, if any, on other aspects of the audit. (Ref: par. .A53)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .06)

.A1 Audit evidence is necessary to support the auditor's opinion and report. It is cumulative in nature and is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the course of the audit. It may, however, also include information obtained from other sources, such as previous audits (provided that the auditor has determined whether changes have occurred since the previous audits that may affect its relevance to the current audit),¹ or a firm's quality control procedures for client acceptance and continuance. In addition to other sources inside and outside the entity, the entity's accounting records are an important source of audit evidence. Also, information that may be used as audit evidence may have been prepared using the work of management's specialist. Audit evidence comprises both information that supports and corroborates management's assertions and any information that contradicts such assertions. In addition, in some cases, the absence of information (for example, management's refusal to provide a requested representation) is used by the auditor and, therefore, also constitutes audit evidence.²

.A2 Most of the auditor's work in forming the auditor's opinion consists of obtaining and evaluating audit evidence. Audit procedures to obtain audit evidence can include inspection, observation, confirmation, recalculation, reperformance, and analytical procedures, often in some combination, in addition to inquiry. Although inquiry may provide important audit evidence and may even produce evidence of a misstatement, inquiry alone ordinarily does not provide sufficient audit evidence of the absence of a material misstatement at the assertion level, nor is inquiry alone sufficient to test the operating effectiveness of controls.

.A3 As explained in section 200, reasonable assurance is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level.³

.A4 The sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence are interrelated. *Sufficiency* is the measure of the quantity of audit evidence. The quantity of audit evidence needed is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of misstatement (the higher the assessed risks, the more audit evidence is likely to be required) and also by the quality of such audit evidence (the higher the quality, the less may be required). However, obtaining more audit evidence may not compensate for its poor quality.

.A5 *Appropriateness* is the measure of the quality of audit evidence (that is, its relevance and reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based). The reliability of evidence is influenced by its source and nature and is dependent on the individual circumstances under which it is obtained.

.A6 Section 330 requires the auditor to conclude whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained.⁴ Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level and, thereby, enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion, is a matter of professional judgment. Section 200

¹ Paragraph .10 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

² Paragraph .A31 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

³ Paragraph .05 of section 200.

⁴ Paragraph .28 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

276 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

contains discussion of relevant factors when the auditor exercises professional judgment regarding whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained.⁵

Sources of Audit Evidence

.A7 Some audit evidence is obtained by performing audit procedures to test the accounting records (for example, through analysis and review, by reperforming procedures followed in the financial reporting process, and by reconciling related types and applications of the same information). Through the performance of such audit procedures, the auditor may determine that the accounting records are internally consistent and agree to the financial statements. However, accounting records alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base an audit opinion on the financial statements.

.A8 More assurance is ordinarily obtained from consistent audit evidence obtained from different sources or of a different nature than from items of audit evidence considered individually. For example, corroborating information obtained from a source independent of the entity may increase the assurance that the auditor obtains from audit evidence that is generated internally, such as evidence existing within the accounting records, minutes of meetings, or a management representation.

.A9 Information from sources independent of the entity that the auditor may use as audit evidence include confirmations from third parties, analysts' reports, and comparable data about competitors (benchmarking data).

Audit Procedures for Obtaining Audit Evidence

.A10 As required by and explained further in section 315 and section 330, audit evidence to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion is obtained by performing the following:^{6, 7}

- a. Risk assessment procedures
- b. Further audit procedures, which comprise
 - i. tests of controls, when required by the AU-C sections or when the auditor has chosen to do so, and
 - ii. substantive procedures, which include tests of details and substantive analytical procedures

.A11 The audit procedures described in paragraphs .A14–.A26 that follow may be used as risk assessment procedures, tests of controls, or substantive procedures, depending on the context in which they are applied by the auditor. As explained in section 330, audit evidence obtained from previous audits may, in certain circumstances, provide appropriate audit evidence, provided that the auditor has determined whether changes have occurred since the previous audit that may affect its relevance to the current audit.⁸

.A12 The nature and timing of the audit procedures to be used may be affected by the fact that some of the accounting data and other information may be available only in electronic form or only at certain points or periods in time. For example, source documents, such as purchase orders and invoices, may exist only in electronic form when an entity uses electronic commerce or may be discarded after scanning when an entity uses image processing systems to facilitate storage and reference.

.A13 Certain electronic information may not be retrievable after a specified period of time (for example, if files are changed and if backup files do not exist). Accordingly, the auditor may find it necessary, as a result of an entity's data retention policies, to request retention of some information

⁵ Paragraphs .A48–.A53 of section 200.

⁶ Paragraphs .05–.06 of section 315.

⁷ Paragraphs .06–.07 of section 330.

⁸ Paragraph .A38 of section 330.

for the performance of audit procedures at a later point in time or to perform audit procedures at a time when the information is available.

Inspection

.A14 Inspection involves examining records or documents, whether internal or external, in paper form, electronic form, or other media or a physical examination of an asset. Inspection of records and documents provides audit evidence of varying degrees of reliability, depending on their nature and source and, in the case of internal records and documents, the effectiveness of the controls over their production. An example of inspection used as a test of controls is inspection of records for evidence of authorization.

.A15 Some documents represent direct audit evidence of the existence of an asset (for example, a document constituting a financial instrument such as a stock or bond). Inspection of such documents may not necessarily provide audit evidence about ownership or value. In addition, inspecting an executed contract may provide audit evidence relevant to the entity's application of accounting policies, such as revenue recognition.

.A16 Inspection of tangible assets may provide reliable audit evidence with respect to their existence but not necessarily about the entity's rights and obligations or the valuation of the assets. Inspection of individual inventory items may accompany the observation of inventory counting. For example, when observing an inventory count, the auditor may inspect individual inventory items (such as opening containers included in the inventory count to determine whether they are full or empty) to verify their existence.

Observation

.A17 Observation consists of looking at a process or procedure being performed by others (for example, the auditor's observation of inventory counting by the entity's personnel or the performance of control activities). Observation provides audit evidence about the performance of a process or procedure but is limited to the point in time at which the observation takes place and by the fact that the act of being observed may affect how the process or procedure is performed. Section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, addresses the observation of the counting of inventory.⁹

External Confirmation

.A18 An external confirmation represents audit evidence obtained by the auditor as a direct written response to the auditor from a third party (the confirming party) in paper form or by electronic or other medium. External confirmation procedures frequently are relevant when addressing assertions associated with certain account balances and their elements. However, external confirmations need not be restricted to account balances only. For example, the auditor may request confirmation of the terms of agreements or transactions an entity has with third parties; the confirmation request may be designed to ask if any modifications have been made to the agreement and, if so, their relevant details. External confirmation procedures also are used to obtain audit evidence about the absence of certain conditions (for example, the absence of a side agreement that may influence revenue recognition). See section 505, *External Confirmations*, for further guidance.

Recalculation

.A19 Recalculation consists of checking the mathematical accuracy of documents or records. Recalculation may be performed manually or electronically.

Reperformance

.A20 Repformance involves the independent execution of procedures or controls that were originally performed as part of the entity's internal control.

⁹ Paragraphs .11–.15 of section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*.

278 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Analytical Procedures**

.A21 Analytical procedures consist of evaluations of financial information through analysis of plausible relationships among both financial and nonfinancial data. Analytical procedures also encompass such investigation as is necessary of identified fluctuations and relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount. See section 520 for further guidance.

.A22 *Scanning* is a type of analytical procedure involving the auditor's exercise of professional judgment to review accounting data to identify significant or unusual items to test. This may include the identification of unusual individual items within account balances or other data through the reading or analysis of, for example, entries in transaction listings, subsidiary ledgers, general ledger control accounts, adjusting entries, suspense accounts, reconciliations, and other detailed reports. Scanning may include searching for large or unusual items in the accounting records (for example, nonstandard journal entries), as well as in transaction data (for example, suspense accounts and adjusting journal entries) for indications of misstatements that have occurred. Electronic audit procedures may assist the auditor in identifying unusual items. When the auditor selects items for testing by scanning and those items are tested, the auditor obtains audit evidence about those items. The auditor's scanning also may provide some audit evidence about the items not selected for testing because the auditor has exercised professional judgment to determine that the items not selected are less likely to be misstated.

Inquiry

.A23 Inquiry consists of seeking information of knowledgeable persons, both financial and non-financial, within the entity or outside the entity. Inquiry is used extensively throughout the audit, in addition to other audit procedures. Inquiries may range from formal written inquiries to informal oral inquiries. Evaluating responses to inquiries is an integral part of the inquiry process.

.A24 Responses to inquiries may provide the auditor with information not previously possessed or with corroborative audit evidence. Alternatively, responses might provide information that differs significantly from other information that the auditor has obtained (for example, information regarding the possibility of management override of controls). In some cases, responses to inquiries provide a basis for the auditor to modify or perform additional audit procedures.

.A25 Although corroboration of evidence obtained through inquiry is often of particular importance, in the case of inquiries about management intent, the information available to support management's intent may be limited. In these cases, understanding management's past history of carrying out its stated intentions, management's stated reasons for choosing a particular course of action, and management's ability to pursue a specific course of action may provide relevant information to corroborate the evidence obtained through inquiry.

.A26 Regarding some matters, the auditor may consider it necessary to obtain written representations from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance to confirm responses to oral inquiries. See section 580, *Written Representations*, for further guidance.

Information to Be Used as Audit Evidence**Relevance and Reliability (Ref: par. .07)**

.A27 As noted in paragraph .A1, although audit evidence is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the course of the audit, it also may include information obtained from other sources (for example, previous audits, in certain circumstances, and a firm's quality control procedures for client acceptance and continuance). The quality of all audit evidence is affected by the relevance and reliability of the information upon which it is based.

Relevance

.A28 Relevance relates to the logical connection with, or bearing upon, the purpose of the audit procedure and, when appropriate, the assertion under consideration. The relevance of information to be used as audit evidence may be affected by the direction of testing. For example, if the purpose of an audit procedure is to test for overstatement in the existence or valuation of accounts

payable, testing the recorded accounts payable may be a relevant audit procedure. On the other hand, when testing for understatement in the existence or valuation of accounts payable, testing the recorded accounts payable would not be relevant, but testing such information as subsequent disbursements, unpaid invoices, suppliers' statements, and unmatched receiving reports may be relevant.

.A29 A given set of audit procedures may provide audit evidence that is relevant to certain assertions but not others. For example, inspection of documents related to the collection of receivables after the period-end may provide audit evidence regarding existence and valuation but not necessarily cutoff. Similarly, obtaining audit evidence regarding a particular assertion (for example, the existence of inventory) is not a substitute for obtaining audit evidence regarding another assertion (for example, the valuation of that inventory). On the other hand, audit evidence from different sources or of a different nature may often be relevant to the same assertion.

.A30 Tests of controls are designed to evaluate the operating effectiveness of controls in preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements at the assertion level. Designing tests of controls to obtain relevant audit evidence includes identifying conditions (characteristics or attributes) that indicate performance of a control and identifying deviation conditions that indicate departures from adequate performance. The presence or absence of those conditions can then be tested by the auditor.

.A31 Substantive procedures are designed to detect material misstatements at the assertion level. They comprise tests of details and substantive analytical procedures. Designing substantive procedures includes identifying conditions relevant to the purpose of the test that constitute a misstatement in the relevant assertion.

Reliability

.A32 The reliability of information to be used as audit evidence and, therefore, of the audit evidence itself is influenced by its source and nature and the circumstances under which it is obtained, including the controls over its preparation and maintenance, when relevant. Therefore, generalizations about the reliability of various kinds of audit evidence are subject to important exceptions. Even when information to be used as audit evidence is obtained from sources external to the entity, circumstances may exist that could affect its reliability. Information obtained from an independent external source may not be reliable, for example, if the source is not knowledgeable or a management specialist lacks objectivity. While recognizing that exceptions may exist, the following generalizations about the reliability of audit evidence may be useful:

- The reliability of audit evidence is increased when it is obtained from independent sources outside the entity.
- The reliability of audit evidence that is generated internally is increased when the related controls, including those over its preparation and maintenance, imposed by the entity are effective.
- Audit evidence obtained directly by the auditor (for example, observation of the application of a control) is more reliable than audit evidence obtained indirectly or by inference (for example, inquiry about the application of a control).
- Audit evidence in documentary form, whether paper, electronic, or other medium, is more reliable than evidence obtained orally (for example, a contemporaneously written record of a meeting is more reliable than a subsequent oral representation of the matters discussed).
- Audit evidence provided by original documents is more reliable than audit evidence provided by photocopies, facsimiles, or documents that have been filmed, digitized, or otherwise transformed into electronic form, the reliability of which may depend on the controls over their preparation and maintenance.

.A33 Section 520 provides further guidance regarding the reliability of data used for purposes of designing analytical procedures as substantive procedures.¹⁰

¹⁰ Paragraph .05 of section 520, *Analytical Procedures*.

280 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A34 Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, addresses circumstances in which the auditor has reason to believe that a document may not be authentic or may have been modified without that modification having been disclosed to the auditor.¹¹

Reliability of Information Produced by a Management's Specialist (Ref: par. .08)

.A35 The preparation of an entity's financial statements may require expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, such as actuarial calculations, valuations, or engineering data. The entity uses a management's specialist in these fields to obtain the needed expertise to prepare the financial statements. Failure to do so when such expertise is necessary increases the risks of material misstatement and may be a significant deficiency or material weakness.¹²

.A36 When information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of a management's specialist, the requirement in paragraph .08 applies. For example, an individual or organization may possess expertise in the application of models to estimate the fair value of securities for which no observable market exists. If the individual or organization applies that expertise in making an estimate which the entity uses in preparing its financial statements, the individual or organization is a management's specialist and paragraph .08 applies. If, on the other hand, that individual or organization merely provides price data regarding private transactions not otherwise available to the entity which the entity uses in its own estimation methods, such information, if used as audit evidence, is subject to paragraph .07, but it is not the use of a management's specialist by the entity.

.A37 The nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures with regard to the requirement in paragraph .08 may be affected by such matters as the following:

- The nature and complexity of the matter to which the management's specialist relates
- The risks of material misstatement of the matter
- The availability of alternative sources of audit evidence
- The nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the management's specialist
- Whether the management's specialist is employed by the entity or is a party engaged by it to provide relevant services
- The extent to which management can exercise control or influence over the work of the management's specialist
- Whether the management's specialist is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements
- The nature and extent of any controls within the entity over the work of the management's specialist
- The auditor's knowledge and experience of the field of expertise management's specialist
- The auditor's previous experience of the work of that specialist

The Competence, Capabilities, and Objectivity of a Management's Specialist (Ref: par. .08a)

.A38 Competence relates to the nature and level of expertise of the management's specialist. Capability relates to the ability of the management's specialist to exercise that competence in the circumstances. Factors that influence capability may include, for example, geographic location and the availability of time and resources. Objectivity relates to the possible effects that bias, conflict of interest, or the influence of others may have on the professional or business judgment of the management's specialist. The competence, capabilities, and objectivity of a management's specialist, and any controls within the entity over that specialist's work, are important factors with regard to the reliability of any information produced by a management's specialist.

.A39 Information regarding the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of a management's specialist may come from a variety of sources, such as the following:

- Personal experience with previous work of that specialist
- Discussions with that specialist

¹¹ Paragraph .A11 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

¹² See section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, for further guidance.

- Discussions with others who are familiar with that specialist's work
- Knowledge of that specialist's qualifications, membership in a professional body or industry association, license to practice, or other forms of external recognition
- Published papers or books written by that specialist
- An auditor's specialist, if any, that assists the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to information produced by the management's specialist

.A40 Matters relevant to evaluating the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of a management's specialist include whether that specialist's work is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements, for example, ethical standards and other membership requirements of a professional body or industry association, accreditation standards of a licensing body, or requirements imposed by law or regulation.

.A41 Other matters that may be relevant include:

- The relevance of the capabilities and competence of the management's specialist to the matter for which that specialist's work will be used, including any areas of specialty within that specialist's field. For example, a particular actuary may specialize in property and casualty insurance but have limited expertise regarding pension calculations.
- The competence of the management's specialist with respect to relevant accounting requirements, for example, knowledge of assumptions and methods, including models, when applicable, that are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Whether unexpected events, changes in conditions, or the audit evidence obtained from the results of audit procedures indicate that it may be necessary to reconsider the initial evaluation of the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of the management's specialist as the audit progresses.

.A42 A broad range of circumstances may threaten objectivity, for example, self-interest threats, advocacy threats, familiarity threats, self-review threats, and intimidation threats. Safeguards may reduce such threats and may be created either by external structures (for example, the profession, legislation, or regulation of the management's specialist) or by the work of the management's specialist environment (for example, quality control policies and procedures).

.A43 Although safeguards cannot eliminate all threats to the objectivity of a management's specialist, threats such as intimidation threats may be of less significance to a specialist engaged by the entity than to a specialist employed by the entity, and the effectiveness of safeguards such as quality control policies and procedures may be greater. Because the threat to objectivity created by being an employee of the entity will always be present, a specialist employed by the entity cannot ordinarily be regarded as being more likely to be objective than other employees of the entity.

.A44 When evaluating the objectivity of a specialist engaged by the entity, it may be relevant to discuss with management and that specialist any interests and relationships that may create threats to the specialist's objectivity and any applicable safeguards, including any professional requirements that apply to the specialist, and to evaluate whether the safeguards are adequate. Interests and relationships creating threats may include the following:

- Financial interests
- Business and personal relationships
- Provision of other services

Obtaining an Understanding of the Work of the Management's Specialist (Ref: par. .08b)

.A45 An understanding of the work of the management's specialist includes an understanding of the relevant field of expertise. An understanding of the relevant field of expertise may be obtained in conjunction with the auditor's determination of whether the auditor has the expertise to evaluate the work of the management's specialist, or whether the auditor needs an auditor's specialist for this purpose.¹³

¹³ Paragraph .07 of section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*.

282 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A46 Aspects of the field of the management's specialist relevant to the auditor's understanding may include:

- Whether that specialist's field has areas of specialty within it that are relevant to the audit
- Whether any professional or other standards and regulatory or legal requirements apply
- What assumptions and methods are used by the management's specialist and whether they are generally accepted within that specialist's field and appropriate for financial reporting purposes
- The nature of internal and external data or information the management's specialist uses

.A47 In the case of a management's specialist engaged by the entity, there will ordinarily be an engagement letter or other written form of agreement between the entity and that specialist. Evaluating that agreement when obtaining an understanding of the work of the management's specialist may assist the auditor in determining for the auditor's purposes the appropriateness of

- the nature, scope, and objectives of that specialist's work;
- the respective roles and responsibilities of management and that specialist; and
- the nature, timing, and extent of communication between management and that specialist, including the form of any report to be provided by that specialist.

.A48 In the case of a management's specialist employed by the entity, it is less likely that there will be a written agreement of this kind. Inquiry of the specialist and other members of management may be the most appropriate way for the auditor to obtain the necessary understanding.

Evaluating the Appropriateness of the Work of the Management's Specialist (Ref: par. .08c)

.A49 Considerations when evaluating the appropriateness of the work of the management's specialist as audit evidence for the relevant assertion may include

- the relevance and reasonableness of that specialist's findings or conclusions, their consistency with other audit evidence, and whether they have been appropriately reflected in the financial statements;
- if that specialist's work involves use of significant assumptions and methods, the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods; and
- if that specialist's work involves significant use of source data, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data.

Information Produced by the Entity and Used for the Auditor's Purposes (Ref: par. .09a–b)

.A50 In order for the auditor to obtain reliable audit evidence, information produced by the entity, including any management's specialist, that is used for performing audit procedures needs to be sufficiently complete and accurate. For example, the effectiveness of an audit procedure, such as applying standard prices to records of sales volume to develop an expectation of sales revenue, is affected by the accuracy of the price information and the completeness and accuracy of the sales volume data. Similarly, if the auditor intends to test a population (for example, payments) for a certain characteristic (for example, authorization), the results of the test will be less reliable if the population from which items are selected for testing is not complete.

.A51 Obtaining audit evidence about the accuracy and completeness of such information may be accomplished concurrently with the actual audit procedure applied to the information when obtaining such audit evidence is an integral part of the audit procedure itself. In other situations, the auditor may have obtained audit evidence of the accuracy and completeness of such information by testing controls over the preparation and maintenance of the information. In some situations, however, the auditor may determine that additional audit procedures are needed.

.A52 In some cases, the auditor may intend to use information produced by the entity for other audit purposes. For example, the auditor may intend to use the entity's performance measures for the purpose of analytical procedures or use the entity's information produced for monitoring activities such as internal auditor's reports. In such cases, the appropriateness of the audit evidence obtained is affected by whether the information is sufficiently precise or detailed for the

auditor's purposes. For example, performance measures used by management may not be precise enough to detect material misstatements.

Inconsistency in, or Doubts Over Reliability of, Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .10)

.A53 Obtaining audit evidence from different sources or of a different nature may indicate that an individual item of audit evidence is not reliable, such as when audit evidence obtained from one source is inconsistent with that obtained from another. This may be the case when, for example, responses to inquiries of management, internal audit, and others are inconsistent or when responses to inquiries of those charged with governance made to corroborate the responses to inquiries of management are inconsistent with the response by management. Section 230, *Audit Documentation*, includes a specific documentation requirement if the auditor identified information that is inconsistent with the auditor's final conclusion regarding a significant finding or issue.¹⁴

¹⁴ Paragraph .12 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

.A54**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 500, *Audit Evidence*, and International Standard on Auditing 500, *Audit Evidence***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 500, *Audit Evidence*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 500, *Audit Evidence*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 10 of ISA 500 includes a requirement for the auditor addressing the means of selecting items for testing. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*. The placement of this requirement does not create a difference between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 501*

Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses specific considerations by the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence, in accordance with section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, section 500, *Audit Evidence*, and other relevant AU-C sections, regarding certain aspects of (a) investments in securities and derivative instruments; (b) inventory; (c) litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity; and (d) segment information in an audit of financial statements.

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.03 The objective of the auditor is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the

- a. valuation of investments in securities and derivative instruments;
- b. existence and condition of inventory;
- c. completeness of litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity; and
- d. presentation and disclosure of segment information, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Requirements

Investments in Securities and Derivative Instruments (Ref: par. .A1–.A3)

Investments in Securities When Valuations Are Based on the Investee’s Financial Results (Excluding Investments Accounted for Using the Equity Method of Accounting)

.04 When investments in securities are valued based on an investee’s financial results, excluding investments accounted for using the equity method of accounting, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence in support of the investee’s financial results, as follows: (Ref: par. .A4–.A8)

- a. Obtain and read available financial statements of the investee and the accompanying audit report, if any, including determining whether the report of the other auditor is satisfactory for this purpose.
- b. If the investee’s financial statements are not audited, or if the audit report on such financial statements is not satisfactory to the auditor, apply, or request that the investor entity arrange with the investee to have another auditor apply, appropriate auditing procedures to such financial statements, considering the materiality of the investment in relation to the financial statements of the investor entity.
- c. If the carrying amount of the investment reflects factors that are not recognized in the investee’s financial statements or fair values of assets that are materially different from the

* This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

286 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

investee's carrying amounts, obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence in support of such amounts.

- d. If the difference between the financial statement period of the entity and the investee has or could have a material effect on the entity's financial statements, determine whether the entity's management has properly considered the lack of comparability and determine the effect, if any, on the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A9)

If the auditor is not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence because of an inability to perform one or more of these procedures, the auditor should determine the effect on the auditor's opinion, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.05 With respect to subsequent events and transactions of the investee occurring after the date of the investee's financial statements but before the date of the auditor's report, the auditor should obtain and read available interim financial statements of the investee and make appropriate inquiries of management of the investor to identify such events and transactions that may be material to the investor's financial statements and that may need to be recognized or disclosed in the investor's financial statements. (Ref: par. .A10)

Investments in Derivative Instruments and Securities Measured or Disclosed at Fair Value

.06 With respect to investments in derivative instruments and securities measured or disclosed at fair value, the auditor should

- a. determine whether the applicable financial reporting framework specifies the method to be used to determine the fair value of the entity's derivative instruments and investments in securities and
- b. evaluate whether the determination of fair value is consistent with the specified valuation method. (Ref: par. .A11–.A13)

.07 If estimates of fair value of derivative instruments or securities are obtained from broker-dealers or other third-party sources based on valuation models, the auditor should understand the method used by the broker-dealer or other third-party source in developing the estimate and consider the applicability of section 500.¹ (Ref: par. .A14–.A15)

.08 If derivative instruments or securities are valued by the entity using a valuation model, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence supporting management's assertions about fair value determined using the model. (Ref: par. .A16)

Impairment Losses

.09 The auditor should

- a. evaluate management's conclusion (including the relevance of the information considered) about the need to recognize an impairment loss for a decline in a security's fair value below its cost or carrying amount and
- b. obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence supporting the amount of any impairment adjustment recorded, including evaluating whether the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework have been complied with. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

Unrealized Appreciation or Depreciation

.10 The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the amount of unrealized appreciation or depreciation in the fair value of a derivative that is recognized or that is disclosed because of the ineffectiveness of a hedge, including evaluating whether the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework have been complied with. (Ref: par. .A19)

¹ Paragraph .08 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*, addresses management's specialists.

Inventory

.11 If inventory is material to the financial statements, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory² by

- a. attending physical inventory counting, unless impracticable, to (Ref: par. .A20–.A22)
 - i. evaluate management’s instructions and procedures for recording and controlling the results of the entity’s physical inventory counting, (Ref: par. .A23)
 - ii. observe the performance of management’s count procedures, (Ref: par. .A24)
 - iii. inspect the inventory, and (Ref: par. .A25)
 - iv. perform test counts and (Ref: par. .A26)
- b. performing audit procedures over the entity’s final inventory records to determine whether they accurately reflect actual inventory count results. (Ref: par. .A27–.A30)

.12 If physical inventory counting is conducted at a date other than the date of the financial statements, the auditor should, in addition to the procedures required by paragraph .11, perform audit procedures to obtain audit evidence about whether changes in inventory between the count date and the date of the financial statements are recorded properly. (Ref: par. .A31–.A33)

.13 If the auditor is unable to attend physical inventory counting due to unforeseen circumstances, the auditor should make or observe some physical counts on an alternative date and perform audit procedures on intervening transactions.

.14 If attendance at physical inventory counting is impracticable, the auditor should perform alternative audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory. If it is not possible to do so, the auditor should modify the opinion in the auditor’s report, in accordance with section 705. (Ref: par. .A34–.A36)

.15 If inventory under the custody and control of a third party is material to the financial statements, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of that inventory by performing one or both of the following:

- a. Request confirmation from the third party regarding the quantities and condition of inventory held on behalf of the entity (Ref: par. .A37)
- b. Perform inspection or other audit procedures appropriate in the circumstances (Ref: par. .A38)

Litigation, Claims, and Assessments

.16 The auditor should design and perform audit procedures to identify litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement, including (Ref: par. .A39–.A45)

- a. inquiring of management and, when applicable, others within the entity, including in-house legal counsel;
- b. obtaining from management a description and evaluation of litigation, claims, and assessments that existed at the date of the financial statements being reported on and during the period from the date of the financial statements to the date the information is furnished, including an identification of those matters referred to legal counsel;³
- c. reviewing minutes of meetings of those charged with governance; documents obtained from management concerning litigation, claims, and assessments; and correspondence between the entity and its external legal counsel; and
- d. reviewing legal expense accounts and invoices from external legal counsel.

² Section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, addresses the auditor’s procedures to respond to the assessed risks of material misstatements at the relevant assertion level.

³ For purposes of this section, the term *legal counsel* refers to the entity’s in-house legal counsel and external legal counsel.

288 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.17 For actual or potential litigation, claims, and assessments identified based on the audit procedures required in paragraph .16, the auditor should obtain audit evidence relevant to the following factors:

- a. The period in which the underlying cause for legal action occurred
- b. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome
- c. The amount or range of potential loss

Communication With the Entity's Legal Counsel

.18 Unless the audit procedures required by paragraph .16 indicate that no actual or potential litigation, claims, or assessments that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement exist, the auditor should, in addition to the procedures required by other AU-C sections, seek direct communication with the entity's external legal counsel. The auditor should do so through a letter of inquiry prepared by management and sent by the auditor requesting the entity's external legal counsel to communicate directly with the auditor. (Ref: par. .A40 and .A46–.A63)

.19 In addition to the direct communications with the entity's external legal counsel referred to in paragraph .18, the auditor should, in cases when the entity's in-house legal counsel has the responsibility for the entity's litigation, claims, and assessments, seek direct communication with the entity's in-house legal counsel through a letter of inquiry similar to the letter referred to in paragraph .18. Audit evidence obtained from in-house legal counsel in this manner is not, however, a substitute for the auditor seeking direct communication with the entity's external legal counsel, as described in paragraph .18. (Ref: par. .A64)

.20 The auditor should document the basis for any determination not to seek direct communication with the entity's legal counsel, as required by paragraphs .18–.19.

.21 The auditor should request management to authorize the entity's legal counsel to discuss applicable matters with the auditor.

.22 As described in paragraphs .18–.19, the auditor should request, through letter(s) of inquiry, the entity's legal counsel to inform the auditor of any litigation, claims, assessments, and unasserted claims that the counsel is aware of, together with an assessment of the outcome of the litigation, claims, and assessments, and an estimate of the financial implications, including costs involved. Each letter of inquiry should include, but not be limited to, the following matters: (Ref: par. .A69)

- a. Identification of the entity, including subsidiaries, and the date of the audit
- b. A list prepared by management (or a request by management that the legal counsel prepare a list) that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments with respect to which the legal counsel has been engaged and to which the legal counsel has devoted substantive attention on behalf of the company in the form of legal consultation or representation
- c. A list prepared by management that describes and evaluates unasserted claims and assessments that management considers to be probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have at least a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome with respect to which the legal counsel has been engaged and to which the legal counsel has devoted substantive attention on behalf of the entity in the form of legal consultation or representation
- d. Regarding each matter listed in item b, a request that the legal counsel either provide the following information or comment on those matters on which the legal counsel's views may differ from those stated by management, as appropriate:
 - i. A description of the nature of the matter, the progress of the case to date, and the action that the entity intends to take (for example, to contest the matter vigorously or to seek an out-of-court settlement)
 - ii. An evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss (Ref: par. .A65)
 - iii. With respect to a list prepared by management (or by the legal counsel at management's request), an identification of the omission of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments or a statement that the list of such matters is complete

- e. Regarding each matter listed in item c, a request that the legal counsel comment on those matters on which the legal counsel's views concerning the description or evaluation of the matter may differ from those stated by management
- f. A statement that management understands that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the entity with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, the legal counsel has formed a professional conclusion that the entity should disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, the legal counsel, as a matter of professional responsibility to the entity, will so advise the entity and will consult with the entity concerning the question of such disclosure and the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework (for example, the requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies*)
- g. A request that the legal counsel confirm whether the understanding described in item f is correct
- h. A request that the legal counsel specifically identify the nature of, and reasons for, any limitation on the response
- i. A request that the legal counsel specify the effective date of the response

.23 When the auditor is aware that an entity has changed legal counsel or that the legal counsel previously engaged by the entity has resigned, the auditor should consider making inquiries of management or others about the reasons such legal counsel is no longer associated with the entity. (Ref: par. .A55)

.24 The auditor should modify the opinion in the auditor's report, in accordance with section 705, if (Ref: par. .A56–.A65)

- a. the entity's legal counsel refuses to respond appropriately to the letter of inquiry and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative audit procedures or
- b. management refuses to give the auditor permission to communicate or meet with the entity's external legal counsel.

Segment Information

.25 The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the presentation and disclosure of segment information, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, by (Ref: par. .A66–.A67)

- a. obtaining an understanding of the methods used by management in determining segment information and (Ref: par. .A68)
 - i. evaluating whether such methods are likely to result in disclosure in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and
 - ii. when appropriate, testing the application of such methods and
- b. performing analytical procedures or other audit procedures appropriate in the circumstances.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Investments in Securities and Derivative Instruments (Ref: par. .04–.10)

.A1 Evaluating audit evidence for assertions about investments in securities and derivative instruments may involve professional judgment because the assertions, especially those about valuation, are based on highly subjective assumptions or are particularly sensitive to changes in the underlying circumstances. Valuation assertions may be based on assumptions about the occurrence of future events for which expectations are difficult to develop or on assumptions about conditions expected to exist over a long period (for example, default rates or prepayment rates). Accordingly, competent persons could reach different conclusions about estimates of fair values or estimates of ranges of fair values. Professional judgment also may be necessary when evaluating audit evidence for assertions based on features of the security or derivative and the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, including underlying criteria for hedge accounting.

290 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

which are extremely complex. For example, determining the fair value of a structured note may require consideration of a variety of features of the note that react differently to changes in economic conditions. In addition, one or more other derivatives may be designated to hedge changes in cash flows under the note. Evaluating audit evidence about the fair value of the note, the determination of whether the hedge is highly effective, and the allocation of changes in fair value to earnings and other comprehensive income requires professional judgment.

.A2 This section addresses only certain specific aspects relating to auditing valuation of investments in securities and derivative instruments. Section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to accounting estimates, including fair value accounting estimates and related disclosures in an audit of financial statements. The Audit Guide *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* provides additional and more detailed guidance to auditors related to planning and performing auditing procedures for assertions about derivative instruments, hedging activities, and investments in securities.

Investments in Securities When Valuations Are Based on Cost

.A3 Procedures to obtain evidence about the valuation of securities that are recorded at cost may include inspection of documentation of the purchase price, confirmation with the issuer or holder, and testing discount or premium amortization either by recomputation or through the use of analytical procedures.

Investments in Securities When Valuations Are Based on the Investee's Financial Results (Excluding Investments Accounted for Using the Equity Method of Accounting) (Ref: par. .04-.05)

.A4 Section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, addresses auditing investments accounted for using the equity method of accounting.

.A5 For valuations based on an investee's financial results (excluding investments accounted for using the equity method of accounting), obtaining and reading the financial statements of the investee that have been audited by an auditor whose report is satisfactory may be sufficient for the purpose of obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. In determining whether the report of another auditor is satisfactory, the auditor may perform procedures such as making inquiries regarding the professional reputation and standing of the other auditor, visiting the other auditor, discussing the audit procedures followed and the results thereof, and reviewing the audit plan and audit documentation of the other auditor.

.A6 After obtaining and reading the audited financial statements of an investee, the auditor may conclude that additional audit procedures are necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. For example, the auditor may conclude that additional audit evidence is needed because of significant differences in fiscal year-ends, significant differences in accounting principles, changes in ownership, or the significance of the investment to the investor's financial position or results of operations. Examples of procedures that the auditor may perform are reviewing information in the investor's files that relates to the investee, such as investee minutes and budgets, and investee cash flow information and making inquiries of investor management about the investee's financial results.

.A7 The auditor may need to obtain evidence relating to transactions between the entity and investee to evaluate

- a. the propriety of the elimination of unrealized profits and losses on transactions between the entity and investee, if applicable, and
- b. the adequacy of disclosures about material related party transactions or relationships.

.A8 Section 540 and paragraphs .06-.08 of this section address auditing fair value accounting estimates. The Audit Guide *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* also provides guidance on audit evidence that may be relevant to the fair value of derivative instruments and securities and on procedures that may be performed by the auditor to evaluate management's consideration of the need to recognize impairment losses.

.A9 The date of the investor's financial statements and those of the investee may be different. If the difference between the date of the entity's financial statements and those of the investee has or could have a material effect on the entity's financial statements, the auditor is required, in accordance with paragraph .04d, to determine whether the entity's management has properly considered the lack of comparability. The effect may be material, for example, because the difference between the financial statement period ends of the entity and investee is not consistent with the prior period in comparative statements or because a significant transaction occurred during the time period between the financial statement period end of the entity and investee. If a change in the difference between the financial statement period end of the entity and investee has a material effect on the investor's financial statements, the auditor may be required, in accordance with section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, to add an emphasis-of-matter paragraph to the auditor's report because the comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by a change in reporting period.

.A10 Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events and subsequently discovered facts in an audit of financial statements.

Investments in Derivative Instruments and Securities Measured or Disclosed at Fair Value (Ref: par. .06-.08)

.A11 The method for determining fair value may be specified by the applicable financial reporting framework and may vary depending on the industry in which the entity operates or the nature of the entity. Such differences may relate to the consideration of price quotations from inactive markets and significant liquidity discounts, control premiums, and commissions and other costs that would be incurred to dispose of the derivative instrument or security.

.A12 If the determination of fair value requires the use of accounting estimates, see section 540, which addresses auditing fair value accounting estimates, including requirements and guidance relating to the auditor's understanding of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to accounting estimates and the method used in making the estimate⁴ and the auditor's determination of whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to the accounting estimate.⁵ The Audit Guide *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* also provides guidance on audit evidence that may be relevant to the fair value of derivative instruments and investments in securities.

.A13 Quoted market prices for derivative instruments and securities listed on national exchanges or over-the-counter markets are available from sources such as financial publications, the exchanges, NASDAQ, or pricing services based on sources such as those. Quoted market prices obtained from those sources generally provide sufficient evidence of the fair value of the derivative instruments and securities.

.A14 For certain other derivative instruments and securities, quoted market prices may be obtained from broker-dealers who are market makers in them or through the National Quotation Bureau. However, using such a price quote to test valuation assertions may require special knowledge to understand the circumstances in which the quote was developed. For example, quotations published by the National Quotation Bureau may not be based on recent trades and may be only an indication of interest and not an actual price for which a counterparty will purchase or sell the underlying derivative instrument or security.

.A15 If quoted market prices are not available for the derivative instrument or security, estimates of fair value frequently may be obtained from broker-dealers or other third-party sources, based on proprietary valuation models, or from the entity, based on internally or externally

⁴ Paragraphs .08a, .08c, .A12-.A14, and .A23-.A25 of section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*.

⁵ Paragraphs .12a and .A53-.A57 of section 540.

292 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

developed valuation models (for example, the Black-Scholes option pricing model). Understanding the method used by the broker-dealer or other third-party source in developing the estimate may include, for example, understanding whether a pricing model or cash flow projection was used. The auditor also may determine that it is necessary to obtain estimates from more than one pricing source. For example, this may be appropriate if either of the following occurs:

- The pricing source has a relationship with an entity that might impair its objectivity, such as an affiliate or a counterparty involved in selling or structuring the product.
- The valuation is based on assumptions that are highly subjective or particularly sensitive to changes in the underlying circumstances.

See also section 540.⁶

.A16 Examples of valuation models include the present value of expected future cash flows, option-pricing models, matrix pricing, option-adjusted spread models, and fundamental analysis. Refer to section 540 for the auditor's procedures to obtain evidence supporting management's assertions about fair value that are determined using a valuation model.

Impairment Losses (Ref: par. .09)

.A17 Regardless of the valuation method used, the applicable financial reporting framework might require recognizing, in earnings or other comprehensive income, an impairment loss for a decline in fair value that is other than temporary. Determinations of whether losses are other than temporary may involve estimating the outcome of future events and making judgments in determining whether factors exist that indicate that an impairment loss has been incurred at the end of the reporting period. These judgments are based on subjective as well as objective factors, including knowledge and experience about past and current events and assumptions about future events. The following are examples of such factors:

- Fair value is significantly below cost or carrying value and
 - the decline is attributable to adverse conditions specifically related to the security or specific conditions in an industry or a geographic area.
 - the decline has existed for an extended period of time.
 - for an equity security, management has the intent to sell the security or it is more likely than not that it will be required to sell the security before recovery.
 - for a debt security, management has the intent to sell the security or it is more likely than not it will be required to sell the security before the security's anticipated recovery of its amortized cost basis (for example, if the entity's cash or working capital requirements or contractual or regulatory obligations indicate that the debt security will be required to be sold before the forecasted recovery occurs).
- The security has been downgraded by a rating agency.
- The financial condition of the issuer has deteriorated.
- Dividends have been reduced or eliminated or scheduled interest payments have not been made.
- The entity recorded losses from the security subsequent to the end of the reporting period.

.A18 Evaluating the relevance of the information considered may include obtaining evidence about factors such as those referred to in paragraph .A17 that tend to corroborate or conflict with management's conclusions.

Unrealized Appreciation or Depreciation (Ref: par. .10)

.A19 Obtaining audit evidence about the amount of unrealized appreciation or depreciation in the fair value of a derivative that is recognized or that is disclosed because of the ineffectiveness of a hedge may include understanding the methods used to determine whether the hedge is highly effective and to determine the ineffective portion of the hedge.

⁶ Paragraphs .A68–.A89 of section 540.

Inventory***Attendance at Physical Inventory Counting (Ref: par. .11a)***

.A20 Management ordinarily establishes procedures under which inventory is physically counted at least once per year to serve as a basis for the preparation of the financial statements and, if applicable, to ascertain the reliability of the entity's perpetual inventory system.

.A21 Attendance at physical inventory counting involves

- inspecting the inventory to ascertain its existence and evaluate its condition and performing test counts,
- observing compliance with management's instructions and the performance of procedures for recording and controlling the results of the physical inventory count, and
- obtaining audit evidence about the reliability of management's count procedures.

These procedures may serve as tests of controls or substantive procedures, or both, depending on the auditor's risk assessment, planned approach, and the specific procedures carried out.

.A22 Matters relevant in planning attendance at physical inventory counting (or in designing and performing audit procedures pursuant to paragraphs .11–.15) include, for example, the following:

- The risks of material misstatement related to inventory.
- The control risk related to inventory.
- Whether adequate procedures are expected to be established and proper instructions issued for physical inventory counting.
- The timing of physical inventory counting.
- Whether the entity maintains a perpetual inventory system.
- The locations at which inventory is held, including the materiality of the inventory and the risks of material misstatement at different locations, in deciding at which locations attendance is appropriate. Section 600 addresses the involvement of component auditors and, accordingly, may be relevant if such involvement is with regard to attendance of physical inventory counting at a remote location.
- Whether the assistance of an auditor's specialist is needed. Section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, addresses the use of an auditor's specialist to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Evaluate Management's Instructions and Procedures (Ref: par. .11a(i))

.A23 Matters relevant in evaluating management's instructions and procedures for recording and controlling the physical inventory counting include whether they address, for example, the following:

- The application of appropriate control activities (for example, the collection of used physical inventory count records, accounting for unused physical inventory count records, and count and recount procedures)
- The accurate identification of the stage of completion of work in progress; slow moving, obsolete, or damaged items; and inventory owned by a third party (for example, on consignment)
- The procedures used to estimate physical quantities, when applicable, such as may be needed in estimating the physical quantity of a coal pile
- Control over the movement of inventory between areas and the shipping and receipt of inventory before and after the cutoff date

Observe the Performance of Management's Count Procedures (Ref: par. .11a(ii))

.A24 Observing the performance of management's count procedures (for example, those relating to control over the movement of inventory before, during, and after the count) assists the auditor in obtaining audit evidence that management's instructions and count procedures are designed and implemented adequately. In addition, the auditor may obtain copies of cutoff information, such as details of the movement of inventory, to assist the auditor in performing audit procedures over the accounting for such movements at a later date.

294 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Inspect the Inventory (Ref: par. .11a(iii))*

.A25 Inspecting inventory when attending physical inventory counting assists the auditor in ascertaining the existence of the inventory (though not necessarily its ownership) and in identifying obsolete, damaged, or aging inventory.

Perform Test Counts (Ref: par. .11a(iv))

.A26 Performing test counts (for example, by tracing items selected from management's count records to the physical inventory and tracing items selected from the physical inventory to management's count records) provides audit evidence about the completeness and accuracy of those records.

.A27 In addition to recording the auditor's test counts, obtaining copies of management's completed physical inventory count records assists the auditor in performing subsequent audit procedures to determine whether the entity's final inventory records accurately reflect actual inventory count results.

Use of Management's Specialists

.A28 Management may engage specialists who have expertise in the taking of physical inventories to count, list, price, and subsequently compute the total dollar amount of inventory on hand at the date of the physical count. For example, entities such as retail stores, hospitals, and automobile dealers may use specialists in this manner.

.A29 An inventory count performed by an external inventory firm engaged as a management specialist does not, by itself, provide the auditor with sufficient appropriate audit evidence. The auditor is required by section 500 to perform certain procedures if information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of a management's specialist.⁷ The auditor may, for example, examine the specialist's program, observe its procedures and controls, make or observe some physical counts of the inventory, recompute calculations of the submitted inventory on a test basis, and apply appropriate tests to the intervening transactions.

.A30 Although the auditor may adjust the extent of the work on the physical count of inventory because of the work of management's specialist, any restriction imposed on the auditor such that the auditor is unable to perform the procedures that the auditor considers necessary is a scope limitation. In such cases, section 705 requires the auditor to modify the opinion in the auditor's report as a result of the scope limitation.

Physical Inventory Counting Conducted Other Than at the Date of the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .12)

.A31 For practical reasons, the physical inventory counting may be conducted at a date, or dates, other than the date of the financial statements. This may be done irrespective of whether management determines inventory quantities by an annual physical inventory counting or maintains a perpetual inventory system. In either case, the effectiveness of the design, implementation, and maintenance of controls over changes in inventory determines whether the conduct of physical inventory counting at a date (or dates) other than the date of the financial statements is appropriate for audit purposes. Section 330 addresses substantive procedures performed at an interim date.⁸

.A32 When a perpetual inventory system is maintained, management may perform physical counts or other tests to ascertain the reliability of inventory quantity information included in the entity's perpetual inventory records. In some cases, management or the auditor may identify differences between the perpetual inventory records and actual physical inventory quantities on hand; this may indicate that the controls over changes in inventory are not operating effectively.

⁷ Paragraph .08 of section 500 addresses management's specialists.

⁸ Paragraphs .23–.24 of section 330.

.A33 Relevant matters for consideration when designing audit procedures to obtain audit evidence about whether changes in inventory amounts between the count date, or dates, and the final inventory records are recorded properly include the following:

- Whether the perpetual inventory records are properly adjusted
- Reliability of the entity's perpetual inventory records
- Reasons for significant differences between the information obtained during the physical count and the perpetual inventory records

Attendance at Physical Inventory Counting Is Impracticable (Ref: par. .14)

.A34 In some cases, attendance at physical inventory counting may be impracticable. This may be due to factors such as the nature and location of the inventory (for example, when inventory is held in a location that may pose threats to the safety of the auditor). The matter of general inconvenience to the auditor, however, is not sufficient to support a decision by the auditor that attendance is impracticable. Further, as explained in section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, the matter of difficulty, time, or cost involved is not, in itself, a valid basis for the auditor to omit an audit procedure for which no alternative exists or to be satisfied with audit evidence that is less than persuasive.

.A35 In some cases, when attendance is impracticable, alternative audit procedures (for example, observing a current physical inventory count and reconciling it to the opening inventory quantities or inspection of documentation of the subsequent sale of specific inventory items acquired or purchased prior to the physical inventory counting) may provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the existence and condition of inventory. If the audit covers the current period and one or more periods for which the auditor had not observed or made some physical counts of prior inventories, alternative audit procedures, such as tests of prior transactions or reviews of the records of prior counts, may provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the prior inventories. The effectiveness of the alternative procedures that an auditor may perform is affected by the length of the period that the alternative procedures cover.

.A36 In other cases, however, it may not be possible to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory by performing alternative audit procedures. In such cases, section 705 requires the auditor to modify the opinion in the auditor's report as a result of the scope limitation. In addition, section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, addresses the auditor's procedures regarding inventory opening balances in initial audit engagements.⁹

Inventory Under the Custody and Control of a Third Party

Confirmation (Ref: par. .15a)

.A37 Section 505, *External Confirmations*, addresses external confirmation procedures.

Other Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .15b)

.A38 Depending on the circumstances (for example, when information is obtained that raises doubt about the integrity and objectivity of the third party), the auditor may consider it appropriate to perform other audit procedures instead of, or in addition to, confirmation with the third party. Examples of other audit procedures include the following:

- Attending, or arranging for another auditor to attend, the third party's physical counting of inventory, if practicable
- Obtaining another auditor's report on the adequacy of the third party's internal control for ensuring that inventory is properly counted and adequately safeguarded
- Inspecting documentation regarding inventory held by third parties (for example, warehouse receipts)
- Requesting confirmation from other parties when inventory has been pledged as collateral

⁹ Paragraph .A13 of section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*.

Litigation, Claims, and Assessments***Completeness of Litigation, Claims, and Assessments (Ref: par. .16)***

.A39 Litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity may have a material effect on the financial statements and, thus, may be required to be recognized, measured, or disclosed in the financial statements.

.A40 Other legal matters involving the entity may not have a material effect on the entity's financial statements and, accordingly, would not give rise to risks of material misstatement. Examples of such other legal matters may be

- matters unrelated to actual or potential litigation, claims, or assessments, such as consulting services related to real estate or potential merger and acquisition transactions;
- matters in which the entity records indicate that management or the legal counsel has not devoted substantive attention to the matter;
- matters in which the entity's insurance coverage exceeds the amount of the actual or potential litigation, claim, or assessment sought against the entity; or
- matters that are clearly trivial to the financial statements.

.A41 Management is responsible for adopting policies and procedures to identify, evaluate, and account for litigation, claims, and assessments as a basis for the preparation of financial statements, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A42 Management is the primary source of information about events or conditions considered in the financial accounting for, and reporting of, litigation, claims, and assessments because these matters are within the direct knowledge and, often, control of management. Accordingly, the auditor's procedures with respect to litigation, claims, and assessments include the following:

- Making inquiries of management as required by paragraph .16a, which may include a discussion about the policies and procedures adopted for identifying, evaluating, and accounting for litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement
- Obtaining written representations from management, in accordance with section 580, *Written Representations*, that all known actual or possible litigation, claims, and assessments whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor and accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework¹⁰

.A43 In addition to the procedures identified in paragraph .16, other relevant procedures include, for example, using information obtained through risk assessment procedures carried out as part of obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment to assist the auditor to become aware of litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity. Examples of such procedures are as follows:

- Reading minutes of meetings of stockholders; directors; governing bodies of governmental entities; and appropriate committees held during, and subsequent to, the period being audited
- Reading contracts, loan agreements, leases, correspondence from taxing or other governmental agencies, and similar documents
- Obtaining information concerning guarantees from bank confirmation forms
- Inspecting other documents for possible guarantees by the entity

Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment.¹¹ In addition, section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*,

¹⁰ Paragraph .15 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

¹¹ Paragraph .12 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity's legal and regulatory framework applicable to the entity and industry or sector in which the entity operates and how the entity is complying with that framework.

.A44 Audit evidence obtained for purposes of identifying litigation, claims, and assessments that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement also may provide audit evidence regarding other relevant considerations, such as valuation or measurement, regarding litigation, claims, and assessments. Section 540 establishes requirements and provides guidance relevant to the auditor's consideration of litigation, claims, and assessments requiring accounting estimates or related disclosures in the financial statements.

.A45 This section addresses inquiries of the entity's legal counsel with whom management has consulted. If management has not consulted legal counsel, the auditor would rely on the procedures required by paragraph .16 to identify litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity, which may give rise to a risk of material misstatement, and the written representation of management regarding litigation, claims, and assessments, as required by section 580.

Communication With the Entity's Legal Counsel (Ref: par. .18–.24)

.A46 An auditor ordinarily does not possess legal skills and, therefore, cannot make legal judgments concerning information coming to the auditor's attention.

.A47 Direct communication with the entity's legal counsel assists the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether potentially material litigation, claims, and assessments are known and management's estimates of the financial implications, including costs, are reasonable.

.A48 The American Bar Association (ABA) has approved *Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information* (the ABA statement), which explains the concerns of the legal counsel and the nature of the limitations that an auditor is likely to encounter in connection with seeking direct communication with the entity's legal counsel about litigation, claims, assessments, and unasserted claims.¹²

.A49 A letter of inquiry to the entity's legal counsel is the auditor's primary means of obtaining corroboration of the information provided by management concerning material litigation, claims, and assessments. Audit evidence obtained from the entity's in-house general counsel or legal department may provide the auditor with the necessary corroboration.

.A50 In certain circumstances, the auditor also may judge it necessary to meet with the entity's legal counsel to discuss the likely outcome of the litigation or claims. This may be the case, for example, when

- the auditor determines that the matter is a significant risk.
- the matter is complex.
- a disagreement exists between management and the entity's external legal counsel.

Ordinarily, such meetings require management's permission and are held with a representative of management in attendance.

.A51 An external legal counsel's response to a letter of inquiry and the procedures set forth in paragraphs .16–.17 provide the auditor with sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the accounting for, and reporting of, pending and threatened litigation, claims, and assessments.

.A52 Audit evidence about the status of litigation, claims, and assessments up to the date of the auditor's report may be obtained by inquiry of management, including in-house legal counsel responsible for dealing with the relevant matters. The auditor may need to obtain updated information from the entity's legal counsel.

¹² *The Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information* is reprinted as exhibit A, "American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information," for the convenience of readers but is not an integral part of this section.

298 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A53 In accordance with section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, the auditor is required to date the auditor's report no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements.¹³ Accordingly, it is preferable that the entity's legal counsel's response be as close to the date of the auditor's report as is practicable in the circumstances. Specifying the effective date of the entity's legal counsel's response to reasonably approximate the expected date of the auditor's report may obviate the need to obtain updated information from the entity's legal counsel.

.A54 Clearly specifying the earliest acceptable effective date of the response and the latest date by which it is to be sent to the auditor and informing the entity's legal counsel of these dates timely facilitates the entity's legal counsel's ability to respond timely and adequately. A two-week period between the specified effective date of the entity's legal counsel's response and the latest date by which the response is to be sent to the auditor is generally sufficient.

.A55 In some circumstances, the legal counsel may be required by relevant ethical requirements to resign the engagement if the legal counsel's advice concerning financial accounting and reporting for litigation, claims, and assessments is disregarded by the entity.

.A56 The legal counsel appropriately may limit the response to matters to which the legal counsel has given substantive attention in the form of legal consultation or representation. Also, the legal counsel's response may be limited to matters that are considered individually or collectively material to the financial statements, such as when the entity and auditor have reached an understanding on the limits of materiality for this purpose and management has communicated such understanding to the legal counsel. Such limitations are not limitations on the scope of the audit.

.A57 The legal counsel may be unable to respond concerning the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome of litigation, claims, and assessments or the amount or range of potential loss because of inherent uncertainties. Factors influencing the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome sometimes may not be within the legal counsel's competence to judge; historical experience of the entity in similar litigation or the experience of other entities may not be relevant or available, and the amount of the possible loss frequently may vary widely at different stages of litigation. Consequently, the legal counsel may not be able to form a conclusion with respect to such matters. In such circumstances, the auditor may conclude that the financial statements are affected by an uncertainty concerning the outcome of a future event that cannot be reasonably estimated. If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, section 705 requires the auditor to modify the opinion in addressing the effect, if any, of the legal counsel's response on the auditor's report as a result of the scope limitation.¹⁴

.A58 An external legal counsel's refusal to furnish the information requested in an inquiry letter either in writing or orally may cause a scope limitation of the audit sufficient to preclude an unmodified opinion.

.A59 Although the auditor would consider the inability to review information that could have a significant bearing on the audit as a scope limitation, in recognition of the public interest in protecting the confidentiality of lawyer-client communications, such inability is not intended to require an auditor to examine documents that the client identifies as subject to the lawyer-client privilege. In the event of questions concerning the applicability of this privilege, the auditor may request confirmation from the entity's legal counsel that the information is subject to that privilege and that the information was considered by the legal counsel in responding to the letter of inquiry or, if the matters are being handled by another legal counsel, an identification of such legal counsel for the purpose of sending a letter of inquiry.

¹³ Paragraph .41 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

¹⁴ Paragraph .07 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.A60 If management imposes a limitation on the scope of the audit and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative audit procedures, the auditor is required by section 705 to either disclaim an opinion on the financial statements or, when practicable, withdraw from the audit.¹⁵

.A61 In some cases, in order to emphasize the preservation of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege, some entities may include the following or substantially similar language in the audit inquiry letter to legal counsel:

We do not intend that either our request to you to provide information to our auditor or your response to our auditor should be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege.

For the same reason, some legal counsel may include the following or substantially similar language in their response letters to auditors:

The Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has advised us that, by making the request set forth in its letter to us, the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] does not intend to waive the attorney-client privilege with respect to any information which the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has furnished to us. Moreover, please be advised that our response to you should not be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the protection of the attorney work-product privilege with respect to any of our files involving the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM].

Explanatory language similar to the foregoing in the letters of the entity or legal counsel is not a limitation on the scope of the legal counsel's response. See Exhibit B, "Report of the Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses."

.A62 In order to emphasize the preservation of the attorney-client privilege with respect to unasserted possible claims or assessments, some legal counsel may include the following or substantially similar language in their responses to audit inquiry letters:

Please be advised that pursuant to clauses (b) and (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy [*American Bar Association's Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information*] and related Commentary referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, it would be inappropriate for this firm to respond to a general inquiry relating to the existence of unasserted possible claims or assessments involving the Company. We can only furnish information concerning those unasserted possible claims or assessments upon which the Company has specifically requested in writing that we comment. We also cannot comment upon the adequacy of the Company's listing, if any, of unasserted possible claims or assessments or its assertions concerning the advice, if any, about the need to disclose same.

Additional language similar to the foregoing in a letter from legal counsel is not a limitation on the scope of the audit. However, the ABA statement and the understanding between the legal and accounting professions assumes that the legal counsel, under certain circumstances, will advise and consult with the entity concerning the entity's obligation to make financial statement disclosure with respect to unasserted possible claims or assessments. Confirmation of this understanding is included in the legal counsel's response.

.A63 If the auditor believes that there may be actual or potential material litigation, claims, or assessments and the entity has not engaged external legal counsel relating to such matters, the auditor may discuss with the client the possible need to consult legal counsel to assist the client in determining the appropriate measurement, recognition, or disclosure of related liabilities or loss contingencies in the financial statements, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Depending on the significance of the matter(s), refusal by management to consult

¹⁵ Paragraph .13 of section 705.

300 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

legal counsel in these circumstances may result in a scope limitation of the audit sufficient to preclude an unmodified opinion.

Direct Communication With the Entity's In-House Legal Counsel

.A64 In-house legal counsel can range from one lawyer to a large staff, with responsibilities ranging from specific internal matters to a comprehensive coverage of all of the entity's legal needs, including litigation with outside parties. Because both in-house and external legal counsel are bound by an applicable code of ethics, there should be no significant difference in their professional obligations and responsibilities. In some circumstances, external legal counsel, if used at all, may be used only for limited purposes, such as data accumulation or account collection activity. In such circumstances, in-house legal counsel may have the primary responsibility for corporate legal matters and may be in the best position to know and precisely describe the status of all litigation, claims, and assessments or to corroborate information provided by management.

Evaluation of the Outcome of Litigation, Claims, or Assessment (Ref: par. .22d(ii))

.A65 Although paragraph 5 of the ABA statement states that the legal counsel "may in appropriate circumstances communicate to the auditor his view that an unfavorable outcome is 'probable' or 'remote,'" the legal counsel is not required to use those terms in communicating the evaluation to the auditor. The auditor may find other wording sufficiently clear, as long as the terms can be used to classify the outcome of the uncertainty under one of the three probability classifications established in FASB ASC 450. Some examples of evaluations concerning litigation that may be considered to provide sufficient clarity that the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome is remote, even though they do not use that term, are the following:

- "We are of the opinion that this action will not result in any liability to the company."
- "It is our opinion that the possible liability to the company in this proceeding is nominal in amount."
- "We believe the company will be able to defend this action successfully."
- "We believe that the plaintiff's case against the company is without merit."
- "Based on the facts known to us, after a full investigation, it is our opinion that no liability will be established against the company in these suits."

Absent any contradictory information obtained by the auditor either in other parts of the legal counsel's letter or otherwise, the auditor need not obtain further clarification of evaluations such as the foregoing. Because of inherent uncertainties described in paragraph .A57 and the ABA statement, an evaluation furnished by the legal counsel may indicate significant uncertainties or stipulations about whether the client will prevail. The following are examples of the legal counsel's evaluations that are unclear about the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome:

- "This action involves unique characteristics wherein authoritative legal precedents do not seem to exist. We believe that the plaintiff will have serious problems establishing the company's liability under the act; nevertheless, if the plaintiff is successful, the award may be substantial."
- "It is our opinion that the company will be able to assert meritorious defenses to this action." (The term *meritorious defenses* indicates that the entity's defenses will not be summarily dismissed by the court; it does not necessarily indicate the legal counsel's opinion that the entity will prevail.)
- "We believe the action can be settled for less than the damages claimed."
- "We are unable to express an opinion as to the merits of the litigation at this time. The company believes there is absolutely no merit to the litigation." (If the entity's legal counsel, with the benefit of all relevant information, is unable to conclude that the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome is remote, it is unlikely that management would be able to form a judgment to that effect.)
- "In our opinion, the company has a substantial chance of prevailing in this action." (A *substantial chance*, a *reasonable opportunity*, and similar terms indicate more uncertainty than an opinion that the company will prevail.)

If the auditor is uncertain about the meaning of the legal counsel's evaluation, clarification either in a follow-up letter or conference with the legal counsel and entity, appropriately documented, may be appropriate. If the legal counsel is still unable to give an unequivocal evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome in writing or orally, the auditor is required by section 700 to determine the effect, if any, of the legal counsel's response on the auditor's report.

Segment Information (Ref: par. .25)

.A66 Depending on the applicable financial reporting framework, the entity may be required or permitted to disclose segment information in the financial statements. The auditor's responsibility regarding the presentation and disclosure of segment information is in relation to the financial statements as a whole. Accordingly, the auditor is not required to perform audit procedures that would be necessary to express an opinion on the segment information presented on a stand-alone basis.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A67 For governmental entities required by the applicable financial reporting framework to disclose segment information, the auditor's responsibility regarding the presentation and disclosure of segment information is in relation to the financial statements of the opinion unit(s) on which the segment information is based.¹⁶

Understanding of the Methods Used by Management (Ref: par. .25a)

.A68 Depending on the circumstances, examples of matters that may be relevant when obtaining an understanding of the methods used by management in determining segment information and evaluating whether such methods are likely to result in disclosure in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework include the following:

- Sales, transfers, and charges between segments and elimination of intersegment amounts
- Comparisons with budgets and other expected results (for example, operating profits as a percentage of sales)
- The allocation of assets and costs among segments
- Consistency with prior periods and the adequacy of the disclosures with respect to inconsistencies
- Management's process for identifying those segments that require disclosure in accordance with the entity's financial reporting framework

¹⁶ Paragraph .A14 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

.A69**Appendix—Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to Legal Counsel (Ref: par. .22)**

In connection with an audit of our financial statements at (balance sheet date) and for the (period) then ended, management of the Company has prepared, and furnished to our auditors (name and address of auditors), a description and evaluation of certain contingencies, including those set forth below involving matters with respect to which you have been engaged and to which you have devoted substantive attention on behalf of the Company in the form of legal consultation or representation. These contingencies are regarded by management of the Company as material for this purpose (management may indicate a materiality limit if an understanding has been reached with the auditor). Your response should include matters that existed at (balance sheet date) and during the period from that date to the date of your response.

[Alternative wording when management requests the lawyer to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments is as follows:]

In connection with an audit of our financial statements as of (balance-sheet date) and for the (period) then ended, please furnish our auditors, (name and address of auditors), with the information requested below concerning certain contingencies involving matters with respect to which you have devoted substantive attention on behalf of the Company in the form of legal consultation or representation. *[When a materiality limit has been established based on an understanding between management and the auditor, the following sentence should be added: This request is limited to contingencies amounting to (amount) individually or items involving lesser amounts that exceed (amount) in the aggregate.]*

Pending or Threatened Litigation (Excluding Unasserted Claims)

[Ordinarily the information would include the following: (1) the nature of the litigation, (2) the progress of the case to date, (3) how management is responding or intends to respond to the litigation (for example, to contest the case vigorously or to seek an out-of-court settlement), and (4) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.] This letter will serve as our consent for you to furnish to our auditor all the information requested herein. Accordingly, please furnish to our auditors such explanation, if any, that you consider necessary to supplement the foregoing information, including an explanation of those matters for which your views may differ from those stated and an identification of the omission of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments or a statement that the list of such matters is complete.

[Alternative wording when management requests the lawyer to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments is as follows:]

Regarding pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments, please include in your response: (1) the nature of each matter, (2) the progress of each matter to date, (3) how the Company is responding or intends to respond (for example, to contest the case vigorously or seek an out-of-court settlement), and (4) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.

Unasserted Claims and Assessments (Considered by Management to be Probable of Assertion and That, if Asserted, Would Have at Least a Reasonable Possibility of an Unfavorable Outcome)

[Ordinarily management's information would include the following: (1) the nature of the matter, (2) how management intends to respond if the claim is asserted, and (3) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.] Please furnish to our auditors such explanation, if any, that you consider necessary

to supplement the foregoing information, including an explanation of those matters for which your views may differ from those stated.

We understand that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for us with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, if you have formed a professional conclusion that we should disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, as a matter of professional responsibility to us, you will so advise us and will consult with us concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies*. Please specifically confirm to our auditors that our understanding is correct.

[Alternative wording when management requests the lawyer to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments is as follows:]

We have represented to our auditors that there are no unasserted possible claims or assessments that you have advised us are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with FASB ASC 450. We understand that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for us with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, you have formed a professional conclusion that we should disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, as a matter of professional responsibility to us, you will so advise us and will consult with us concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of FASB ASC 450. Please specifically confirm to our auditors that our understanding is correct.

Please specifically identify the nature of and reasons for any limitation on your response.

[The auditor may request the client to inquire about additional matters, for example, unpaid or unbilled charges or specified information on certain contractually assumed obligations of the Company, such as guarantees of indebtedness of others.]

[Alternative wording when management requests the lawyer to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments is as follows:]

Your response should include matters that existed as of (balance-sheet date) and during the period from that date to the effective date of your response. Please specifically identify the nature of and reasons for any limitations on your response. Our auditors expect to have the audit completed about (expected completion date). They would appreciate receiving your reply by that date with a specified effective date no earlier than (ordinarily two weeks before expected completion date).

[Wording that could be used in an audit inquiry letter, instead of the heading and first paragraph, when the client believes that there are no unasserted claims or assessments (to be specified to the lawyer for comment) that are probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome as specified by Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, Contingencies, is as follows:]

Unasserted claims and assessments—We have represented to our auditors that there are no unasserted possible claims that you have advised us are probable of assertion and must be disclosed, in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 450, *Contingencies*. (The second paragraph in the section relating to unasserted claims and assessments would not be altered.)

.A70**Exhibit A—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (Ref: par. .A48)**

Note: This document, in the form herein set forth, was approved by the Board of Governors of the American Bar Association (ABA) in December 1975, which official action permitted its release to lawyers and accountants as the standard recommended by the ABA for the lawyer's response to letters of audit inquiry.

Source: *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 12 section 337C, Exhibit II—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information**

Preamble

The public interest in protecting the confidentiality of lawyer-client communications is fundamental. The American legal, political and economic systems depend heavily upon voluntary compliance with the law and upon ready access to a respected body of professionals able to interpret and advise on the law. The expanding complexity of our laws and governmental regulations increases the need for prompt, specific and unhampered lawyer-client communication. The benefits of such communication and early consultation underlie the strict statutory and ethical obligations of the lawyer to preserve the confidences and secrets of the client, as well as the long-recognized testimonial privilege for lawyer-client communication.

Both the Code of Professional Responsibility and the cases applying the evidentiary privilege recognize that the privilege against disclosure can be knowingly and voluntarily waived by the client. It is equally clear that disclosure to a third party may result in loss of the "confidentiality" essential to maintain the privilege. Disclosure to a third party of the lawyer-client communication on a particular subject may also destroy the privilege as to other communications on that subject. Thus, the mere disclosure by the lawyer to the outside auditor, with due client consent, of the substance of communications between the lawyer and client may significantly impair the client's ability in other contexts to maintain the confidentiality of such communications.

Under the circumstances a policy of audit procedure which requires clients to give consent and authorize lawyers to respond to general inquiries and disclose information to auditors concerning matters which have been communicated in confidence is essentially destructive of free and open communication and early consultation between lawyer and client. The institution of such a policy would inevitably discourage management from discussing potential legal problems with counsel for fear that such discussion might become public and precipitate a loss to or possible liability of the business enterprise and its stockholders that might otherwise never materialize.

It is also recognized that our legal, political and economic systems depend to an important extent on public confidence in published financial statements. To meet this need the accounting profession must adopt and adhere to standards and procedures that will command confidence in the auditing process. It is not, however, believed necessary, or sound public policy, to intrude upon the confidentiality of the lawyer-client relationship in order to command such confidence. On the contrary, the objective of fair disclosure in financial statements is more likely to be better served by maintaining the integrity of the confidential relationship between lawyer and client, thereby strengthening corporate management's confidence in counsel and encouraging its readiness to seek advice of counsel and to act in accordance with counsel's advice.

* Statement on Auditing Standards No. 12 section 337C, *Exhibit II—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information*, has been superseded by this section.

Consistent with the foregoing public policy considerations, it is believed appropriate to distinguish between, on the one hand, litigation which is pending or which a third party has manifested to the client a present intention to commence and, on the other hand, other contingencies of a legal nature or having legal aspects. As regards the former category, unquestionably the lawyer representing the client in a litigation matter may be the best source for a description of the claim or claims asserted, the client's position (e.g., denial, contest, etc.), and the client's possible exposure in the litigation (to the extent the lawyer is in a position to do so). As to the latter category, it is submitted that, for the reasons set forth above, it is not in the public interest for the lawyer to be required to respond to general inquiries from auditors concerning possible claims.

It is recognized that the disclosure requirements for enterprises subject to the reporting requirements of the Federal securities laws are a major concern of managements and counsel, as well as auditors. It is submitted that compliance therewith is best assured when clients are afforded maximum encouragement, by protecting lawyer-client confidentiality, freely to consult counsel. Likewise, lawyers must be keenly conscious of the importance of their clients being competently advised in these matters.

Statement of Policy

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED that it is desirable and in the public interest that this Association adopt the following Statement of Policy regarding the appropriate scope of the lawyer's response to the auditor's request, made by the client at the request of the auditor, for information concerning matters referred to the lawyer during the course of his representation of the client:

1. *Client Consent to Response.* The lawyer may properly respond to the auditor's requests for information concerning loss contingencies (the term and concept established by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5,[†] promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March 1975 and discussed in Paragraph 5.1 of the accompanying Commentary), to the extent hereinafter set forth, subject to the following:
 - a. Assuming that the client's initial letter requesting the lawyer to provide information to the auditor is signed by an agent of the client having apparent authority to make such a request, the lawyer may provide to the auditor information requested, without further consent, unless such information discloses a confidence or a secret or requires an evaluation of a claim.
 - b. In the normal case, the initial request letter does not provide the necessary consent to the disclosure of a confidence or secret or to the evaluation of a claim since that consent may only be given after full disclosure to the client of the legal consequences of such action.
 - c. Lawyers should bear in mind, in evaluating claims, that an adverse party may assert that any evaluation of potential liability is an admission.
 - d. In securing the client's consent to the disclosure of confidences or secrets, or the evaluation of claims, the lawyer may wish to have a draft of his letter reviewed and approved by the client before releasing it to the auditor; in such cases, additional explanation would in all probability be necessary so that the legal consequences of the consent are fully disclosed to the client.
2. *Limitation on Scope of Response.* It is appropriate for the lawyer to set forth in his response, by way of limitation, the scope of his engagement by the client. It is also appropriate for the lawyer to indicate the date as of which information is furnished and to

[†] In July 2009, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*[™] (ASC) as authoritative. FASB ASC is now the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). As of July 1, 2009, all other nongrandfathered, non-SEC accounting literature not included in FASB ASC became nonauthoritative. FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, has been codified as FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*.

306 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

disclaim any undertaking to advise the auditor of changes which may thereafter be brought to the lawyer's attention. *Unless the lawyer's response indicates otherwise, (a) it is properly limited to matters which have been given substantive attention by the lawyer in the form of legal consultation and, where appropriate, legal representation since the beginning of the period or periods being reported upon, and (b) if a law firm or a law department, the auditor may assume that the firm or department has endeavored, to the extent believed necessary by the firm or department, to determine from lawyers currently in the firm or department who have performed services for the client since the beginning of the fiscal period under audit whether such services involved substantive attention in the form of legal consultation concerning those loss contingencies referred to in Paragraph 5(a) below but, beyond that, no review has been made of any of the client's transactions or other matters for the purpose of identifying loss contingencies to be described in the response.*[†]

3. *Response may be Limited to Material Items.* In response to an auditor's request for disclosure of loss contingencies of a client, it is appropriate for the lawyer's response to indicate that the response is limited to items which are considered individually or collectively material to the presentation of the client's financial statements.
4. *Limited Responses.* Where the lawyer is limiting his response in accordance with the Statement of Policy, his response should so indicate (see Paragraph 8). If in any other respect the lawyer is not undertaking to respond to or comment on particular aspects of the inquiry when responding to the auditor, he should consider advising the auditor that his response is limited, in order to avoid any inference that the lawyer has responded to all aspects; otherwise, he may be assuming a responsibility which he does not intend.
5. *Loss Contingencies.* When properly requested by the client, it is appropriate for the lawyer to furnish to the auditor information concerning the following matters if the lawyer has been engaged by the client to represent or advise the client professionally with respect thereto and he has devoted substantive attention to them in the form of legal representation or consultation:
 - a. *overtly threatened or pending litigation*, whether or not specified by the client;
 - b. *a contractually assumed obligation* which the client has specifically identified and upon which the client has specifically requested, in the inquiry letter or a supplement thereto, comment to the auditor;
 - c. *an unasserted possible claim or assessment* which the client has specifically identified and upon which the client has specifically requested, in the inquiry letter or a supplement thereto, comment to the auditor.

With respect to clause (a), overtly threatened litigation means that a potential claimant has manifested to the client an awareness of and present intention to assert a possible claim or assessment unless the likelihood of litigation (or of settlement when litigation would normally be avoided) is considered remote. With respect to clause (c), where there has been no manifestation by a potential claimant of an awareness of and present intention to assert a possible claim or assessment, consistent with the considerations and concerns outlined in the Preamble and Paragraph 1 hereof, the client should request the lawyer to furnish information to the auditor only if the client has determined that it is probable that a possible claim will be asserted, that there is a reasonable possibility that the outcome (assuming such assertion) will be unfavorable, and that the resulting liability would be material to the financial condition of the client. Examples of such situations might (depending in each case upon the particular circumstances) include the following: (i) a catastrophe, accident or other similar physical occurrence in which the client's involvement is open and notorious, or (ii) an investigation by a government agency where enforcement proceedings have been instituted or where the likelihood that they will not be instituted is remote, under circumstances where assertion of one or more private claims for redress would normally be expected, or

[†] As contemplated by Paragraph 8 of this Statement of Policy, this sentence is intended to be the subject of incorporation by reference as therein provided.

(iii) a public disclosure by the client acknowledging (and thus focusing attention upon) the existence of one or more probable claims arising out of an event or circumstance. In assessing whether or not the assertion of a possible claim is probable, it is expected that the client would normally employ, by reason of the inherent uncertainties involved and insufficiency of available data, concepts parallel to those used by the lawyer (discussed below) in assessing whether or not an unfavorable outcome is probable; thus, assertion of a possible claim would be considered probable only when the prospects of its being asserted seem reasonably certain (i.e., supported by extrinsic evidence strong enough to establish a presumption that it will happen) and the prospects of nonassertion seem slight.

It would not be appropriate, however, for the lawyer to be requested to furnish information in response to an inquiry letter or supplement thereto if it appears that (a) the client has been required to specify unasserted possible claims without regard to the standard suggested in the preceding paragraph, or (b) the client has been required to specify all or substantially all unasserted possible claims as to which legal advice may have been obtained, since, in either case, such a request would be in substance a general inquiry and would be inconsistent with the intent of this Statement of Policy.

The information that lawyers may properly give to the auditor concerning the foregoing matters would include (to the extent appropriate) an identification of the proceedings or matter, the stage of proceedings, the claim(s) asserted, and the position taken by the client.

In view of the inherent uncertainties, the lawyer should normally refrain from expressing judgments as to outcome except in those relatively few clear cases where it appears to the lawyer that an unfavorable outcome is either “probable” or “remote”; for purposes of any such judgment it is appropriate to use the following meanings:

- i. *probable*—an unfavorable outcome for the client is probable if the prospects of the claimant not succeeding are judged to be extremely doubtful and the prospects for success by the client in its defense are judged to be slight.
- ii. *remote*—an unfavorable outcome is remote if the prospects for the client not succeeding in its defense are judged to be extremely doubtful and the prospects of success by the claimant are judged to be slight.

If, in the opinion of the lawyer, considerations within the province of his professional judgment bear on a particular loss contingency to the degree necessary to make an informed judgment, he may in appropriate circumstances communicate to the auditor his view that an unfavorable outcome is “probable” or “remote,” applying the above meanings. No inference should be drawn, from the absence of such a judgment, that the client will not prevail.

The lawyer also may be asked to estimate, in dollar terms, the potential amount of loss or range of loss in the event that an unfavorable outcome is not viewed to be “remote.” In such a case, the amount or range of potential loss will normally be as inherently impossible to ascertain, with any degree of certainty, as the outcome of the litigation. Therefore, it is appropriate for the lawyer to provide an estimate of the amount or range of potential loss (if the outcome should be unfavorable) only if he believes that the probability of inaccuracy of the estimate of the amount or range of potential loss is slight.

The considerations bearing upon the difficulty in estimating loss (or range of loss) where pending litigation is concerned are obviously even more compelling in the case of unasserted possible claims. In most cases, the lawyer will not be able to provide any such estimate to the auditor.

As indicated in Paragraph 4 hereof, the auditor may assume that all loss contingencies specified by the client in the manner specified in clauses (b) and (c) above have received comment in the response, unless otherwise therein indicated. The lawyer

308 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

should not be asked, nor need the lawyer undertake, to furnish information to the auditor concerning loss contingencies except as contemplated by this Paragraph 5.

6. *Lawyer's Professional Responsibility.* Independent of the scope of his response to the auditor's request for information, the lawyer, depending upon the nature of the matters as to which he is engaged, may have as part of his professional responsibility to his client an obligation to advise the client concerning the need for or advisability of public disclosure of a wide range of events and circumstances. The lawyer has an obligation not knowingly to participate in any violation by the client of the disclosure requirements of the securities laws. In appropriate circumstances, the lawyer also may be required under the Code of Professional Responsibility to resign his engagement if his advice concerning disclosures is disregarded by the client. The auditor may properly assume that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the client with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment which may call for financial statement disclosure, the lawyer has formed a professional conclusion that the client must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, the lawyer, as a matter of professional responsibility to the client, will so advise the client and will consult with the client concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements^{||} of FAS 5.
7. *Limitation on Use of Response.* *Unless otherwise stated in the lawyer's response, it shall be solely for the auditor's information in connection with his audit of the financial condition of the client and is not to be quoted in whole or in part or otherwise referred to in any financial statements of the client or related documents, nor is it to be filed with any governmental agency or other person, without the lawyer's prior written consent.† Notwithstanding such limitation, the response can properly be furnished to others in compliance with court process or when necessary in order to defend the auditor against a challenge of the audit by the client or a regulatory agency, provided that the lawyer is given written notice of the circumstances at least twenty days before the response is so to be furnished to others, or as long in advance as possible if the situation does not permit such period of notice.*[‡]
8. *General.* This Statement of Policy, together with the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part hereof), has been developed for the general guidance of the legal profession. In a particular case, the lawyer may elect to supplement or modify the approach hereby set forth. If desired, this Statement of Policy may be incorporated by reference in the lawyer's response by the following statement: "This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any 'loss contingencies' is qualified in its entirety by Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement)."

The accompanying Commentary is an integral part of this Statement of Policy.

^{||} Under FAS 5, when there has been no manifestation by a potential claimant of an awareness of a possible claim or assessment, disclosure of an unasserted possible claim is required only if the enterprise concludes that (i) it is probable that a claim will be asserted, (ii) there is a reasonable possibility, if the claim is in fact asserted, that the outcome will be unfavorable, and (iii) the liability resulting from such unfavorable outcome would be material to its financial condition.

[‡] As contemplated by Paragraph 8 of this Statement of Policy, this sentence is intended to be the subject of incorporation by reference as therein provided.

Commentary

Paragraph 1 (Client Consent to Response)

In responding to any aspect of an auditor's inquiry letter, the lawyer must be guided by his ethical obligations as set forth in the Code of Professional Responsibility. Under Canon 4 of the Code of Professional Responsibility a lawyer is enjoined to preserve the client's confidences (defined as information protected by the attorney-client privilege under applicable law) and the client's secrets (defined as other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client). The observance of this ethical obligation, in the context of public policy, "... not only facilitates the full development of facts essential to proper representation of the client but also encourages laymen to seek early legal assistance." (Ethical Consideration 4-1).

The lawyer's ethical obligation therefore includes a much broader range of information than that protected by the attorney-client privilege. As stated in Ethical Consideration 4-4: "The attorney-client privilege is more limited than the ethical obligation of a lawyer to guard the confidences and secrets of his client. This ethical precept, unlike the evidentiary privilege, exists without regard to the nature or source of information or the fact that others share the knowledge."

In recognition of this ethical obligation, the lawyer should be careful to disclose fully to his client any confidence, secret or evaluation that is to be revealed to another, including the client's auditor, and to satisfy himself that the officer or agent of a corporate client consenting to the disclosure understands the legal consequences thereof and has authority to provide the required consent.

The law in the area of attorney-client privilege and the impact of statements made in letters to auditors upon that privilege has not yet been developed. Based upon cases treating the attorney-client privilege in other contexts, however, certain generalizations can be made with respect to the possible impact of statements in letters to auditors.

It is now generally accepted that a corporation may claim the attorney-client privilege. Whether the privilege extends beyond the control group of the corporation (a concept found in the existing decisional authority), and if so, how far, is yet unresolved.

If a client discloses to a third party a part of any privileged communication he has made to his attorney, there may have been a waiver as to the whole communication; further, it has been suggested that giving accountants access to privileged statements made to attorneys may waive any privilege as to those statements. Any disclosure of privileged communications relating to a particular subject matter may have the effect of waiving the privilege on other communications with respect to the same subject matter.

To the extent that the lawyer's knowledge of unasserted possible claims is obtained by means of confidential communications from the client, any disclosure thereof might constitute a waiver as fully as if the communication related to pending claims.

A further difficulty arises with respect to requests for evaluation of either pending or unasserted possible claims. It might be argued that any evaluation of a claim, to the extent based upon a confidential communication with the client, waives any privilege with respect to that claim.

Another danger inherent in a lawyer's placing a value on a claim, or estimating the likely result, is that such a statement might be treated as an admission or might be otherwise prejudicial to the client.

The Statement of Policy has been prepared in the expectation that judicial development of the law in the foregoing areas will be such that useful communication between lawyers and auditors in the manner envisaged in the Statement will not prove prejudicial to clients engaged in or threatened with adversary proceedings. If developments occur contrary to this expectation, appropriate review and revision of the Statement of Policy may be necessary.

310 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Paragraph 2 (Limitation on Scope of Response)***

In furnishing information to an auditor, the lawyer can properly limit himself to loss contingencies which he is handling on a substantive basis for the client in the form of legal consultation (advice and other attention to matters not in litigation by the lawyer in his professional capacity) or legal representation (counsel of record or other direct professional responsibility for a matter in litigation). Some auditors' inquiries go further and ask for information on matters of which the lawyer "has knowledge." Lawyers are concerned that such a broad request may be deemed to include information coming from a variety of sources including social contact and third party contacts as well as professional engagement and that the lawyer might be criticized or subjected to liability if some of this information is forgotten at the time of the auditor's request.

It is also believed appropriate to recognize that the lawyer will not necessarily have been authorized to investigate, or have investigated, all legal problems of the client, even when on notice of some facts which might conceivably constitute a legal problem upon exploration and development. Thus, consideration in the form of preliminary or passing advice, or regarding an incomplete or hypothetical state of facts, or where the lawyer has not been requested to give studied attention to the matter in question, would not come within the concept of "substantive attention" and would therefore be excluded. Similarly excluded are matters which may have been mentioned by the client but which are not actually being handled by the lawyer. Paragraph 2 undertakes to deal with these concerns.

Paragraph 2 is also intended to recognize the principle that the appropriate lawyer to respond as to a particular loss contingency is the lawyer having charge of the matter for the client (e.g., the lawyer representing the client in a litigation matter and/or the lawyer having overall charge and supervision of the matter), and that the lawyer not having that kind of role with respect to the matter should not be expected to respond merely because of having become aware of its existence in a general or incidental way.

The internal procedures to be followed by a law firm or law department may vary based on factors such as the scope of the lawyer's engagement and the complexity and magnitude of the client's affairs. Such procedures could, but need not, include use of a docket system to record litigation, consultation with lawyers in the firm or department having principal responsibility for the client's affairs or other procedures which, in light of the cost to the client, are not disproportionate to the anticipated benefit to be derived. Although these procedures may not necessarily identify all matters relevant to the response, the evolution and application of the lawyer's customary procedures should constitute a reasonable basis for the lawyer's response.

As the lawyer's response is limited to matters involving his professional engagement as counsel, such response should not include information concerning the client which the lawyer receives in another role. In particular, a lawyer who is also a director or officer of the client would not include information which he received as a director or officer unless the information was also received (or, absent the dual role, would in the normal course be received) in his capacity as legal counsel in the context of his professional engagement. Where the auditor's request for information is addressed to a law firm as a firm, the law firm may properly assume that its response is not expected to include any information which may have been communicated to the particular individual by reason of his serving in the capacity of director or officer of the client. The question of the individual's duty, in his role as a director or officer, is not here addressed.

Paragraph 3 (Response May Cover only Material Items in Certain Cases)

Paragraph 3 makes it clear that the lawyer may optionally limit his responses to those items which are individually or collectively material to the auditor's inquiry. If the lawyer takes responsibility for making a determination that a matter is not material for the purposes of his response to the audit inquiry, he should make it clear that his response is so limited. The auditor, in such circumstance, should properly be entitled to rely upon the lawyer's response as providing him with the necessary corroboration. It should be emphasized that the employment of inside general counsel by the client should not detract from the acceptability of his response since inside general counsel is as fully bound by the professional obligations and responsibilities contained in the Code of Pro-

fessional Responsibility as outside counsel. If the audit inquiry sets forth a definition of materiality but the lawyer utilizes a different test of materiality, he should specifically so state. The lawyer may wish to reach an understanding with the auditor concerning the test of materiality to be used in his response, but he need not do so if he assumes responsibility for the criteria used in making materiality determinations. Any such understanding with the auditor should be referred to or set forth in the lawyer's response. In this connection, it is assumed that the test of materiality so agreed upon would not be so low in amount as to result in a disservice to the client and an unreasonable burden on counsel.

Paragraph 4 (Limited Responses)

The Statement of Policy is designed to recognize the obligation of the auditor to complete the procedures considered necessary to satisfy himself as to the fair presentation of the company's financial condition and results, in order to render a report which includes an opinion not qualified because of a limitation on the scope of the audit. In this connection, reference is made to SEC Accounting Series Release No. 90 [*Financial Reporting Release No. 1, section 607.01(b)*], in which it is stated:

"A 'subject to' or 'except for' opinion paragraph in which these phrases refer to the scope of the audit, indicating that the accountant has not been able to satisfy himself on some significant element in the financial statements, is not acceptable in certificates filed with the Commission in connection with the public offering of securities. The 'subject to' qualification is appropriate when the reference is to a middle paragraph or to footnotes explaining the status of matters which cannot be resolved at statement date."

Paragraph 5 (Loss Contingencies)

Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy summarizes the categories of "loss contingencies" about which the lawyer may furnish information to the auditor. The term loss contingencies and the categories relate to concepts of accounting accrual and disclosure specified for the accounting profession in Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5[†] ("FAS 5") issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March, 1975.

5.1 Accounting Requirements

To understand the significance of the auditor's inquiry and the implications of any response the lawyer may give, the lawyer should be aware of the following accounting concepts and requirements set out in FAS 5:[#]

- a. A "loss contingency" is an existing condition, situation or set of circumstances involving uncertainty as to possible loss to an enterprise that will ultimately be resolved when one or more events occur or fail to occur. Resolutions of the uncertainty may confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability. (Para. 1)
- b. When a "loss contingency" exists, the likelihood that a future event or events will confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability can range from probable to remote. There are three areas within that range, defined as follows:
 - i. *Probable*—"The future event or events are likely to occur."
 - ii. *Reasonably possible*—"The chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely."
 - iii. *Remote*—"The chance of the future event or events occurring is slight." (Para. 3)
- c. *Accrual* in a client's financial statements by a charge to income of the period will be required if both the following conditions are met:

[†] In July 2009, FASB issued FASB ASC as authoritative. FASB ASC is now the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance promulgated by the SEC. As of July 1, 2009, all other nongrandfathered, non-SEC accounting literature not included in FASB ASC became nonauthoritative. FASB Statement No. 5 has been codified as FASB ASC 450.

[#] Citations are to paragraph numbers of FAS 5.

312 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- i. "Information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is *probable* that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements. It is implicit in this condition that it must be *probable* that one or more future events will occur confirming the fact of the loss." (emphasis added; footnote omitted)
- ii. "The amount of loss can be reasonably estimated." (Para. 8)
- d. If there is no *accrual* of the loss contingency in the client's financial statements because one of the two conditions outlined in (c) above are not met, disclosure may be required as provided in the following:

"If no accrual is made for a loss contingency because one or both of the conditions in paragraph 8 are not met, or if an exposure to loss exists in excess of the amount accrued pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 8, *disclosure* of the contingency *shall be made when there is at least a reasonable possibility* that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred. *The disclosure shall indicate the nature of the contingency and shall give an estimate of the possible loss or range of loss or state that such an estimate cannot be made. Disclosure is not required of a loss contingency involving an unasserted claim or assessment when there has been no manifestation by potential claimant of an awareness of a possible claim or assessment unless it is considered probable that a claim will be asserted and there is a reasonable possibility that the outcome will be unfavorable.*" (emphasis added; footnote omitted) (Para. 10)

- e. The accounting requirements recognize or specify that (i) the opinions or views of counsel are not the sole source of audit evidence in making determinations about the accounting recognition or treatment to be given to litigation, and (ii) the fact that the lawyer is notable to express an opinion that the outcome will be favorable does not necessarily require an accrual of a loss. Paragraphs 36 and 37 of FAS 5 state as follows:

"If the underlying cause of the litigation, claim, or assessment is an event occurring before the date of an enterprise's financial statements, the probability of an outcome unfavorable to the enterprise must be assessed to determine whether the condition in paragraph 8(a) is met. Among the factors that should be considered are the nature of the litigation, claim, or assessment, the progress of the case (including progress after the date of the financial statements but before those statements are issued), the opinions or views of legal counsel and other advisers, the experience of the enterprise in similar cases, the experience of other enterprises, and any decision of the enterprise's management as to how the enterprise intends to respond to the lawsuit, claim, or assessment (for example, a decision to contest the case vigorously or a decision to seek an out-of-court settlement). The fact that legal counsel is unable to express an opinion that the outcome will be favorable to the enterprise should not necessarily be interpreted to mean that the condition for accrual of a loss in paragraph 8(a) is met.

"The filing of a suit or formal assertion of a claim or assessment does not automatically indicate that accrual of a loss may be appropriate. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome must be assessed. The condition for accrual in paragraph 8(a) would be met if an unfavorable outcome is determined to be probable. If an unfavorable outcome is determined to be reasonably possible but not probable, or if the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would be inappropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10 of this Statement."

- f. Paragraph 38 of FAS 5 focuses on certain examples concerning the determination by the enterprise whether an assertion of an *unasserted possible claim* may be considered probable:

“With respect to unasserted claims and assessments, an enterprise must determine the degree of probability that a suit may be filed or a claim or assessment may be asserted and the possibility of an unfavorable outcome. For example, a catastrophe, accident, or other similar physical occurrence predictably engenders claims for redress, and in such circumstances their assertion may be probable; similarly, an investigation of an enterprise by a governmental agency, if enforcement proceedings have been or are likely to be instituted, is often followed by private claims for redress, and the probability of their assertion and the possibility of loss should be considered in each case. By way of further example, an enterprise may believe there is a possibility that it has infringed on another enterprise’s patent rights, but the enterprise owning the patent rights has not indicated an intention to take any action and has not even indicated an awareness of the possible infringement. In that case, a judgment must first be made as to whether the assertion of a claim is probable. If the judgment is that assertion is not probable, no accrual or disclosure would be required. On the other hand, if the judgment is that assertion is probable, then a second judgment must be made as to the degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome. If an unfavorable outcome is probable and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated, accrual of a loss is required by paragraph 8. If an unfavorable outcome is probable but the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would not be appropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10. If an unfavorable outcome is reasonably possible but not probable, disclosure would be required by paragraph 10.”

For a more complete presentation of FAS 5, reference is made to AU section 337B, *Exhibit I—Excerpts From Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, Contingencies*,** in which are set forth excerpts selected by the AICPA as relevant to a Statement on Auditing Standards, issued by its Auditing Standards Executive Committee, captioned “Inquiry of a Client’s Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments.”

5.2 Lawyer’s Response

Concepts of probability inherent in the usage of terms like “probable” or “reasonably possible” or “remote” mean different things in different contexts. Generally, the outcome of, or the loss which may result from, litigation cannot be assessed in any way that is comparable to a statistically or empirically determined concept of “probability” that may be applicable when determining such matters as reserves for warranty obligations or accounts receivable or loan losses when there is a large number of transactions and a substantial body of known historical experience for the enterprise or comparable enterprises. While lawyers are accustomed to counseling clients during the progress of litigation as to the possible amount required for settlement purposes, the estimated risks of the proceedings at particular times and the possible application or establishment of points of law that may be relevant, such advice to the client is not possible at many stages of the litigation and may change dramatically depending upon the development of the proceedings. Lawyers do not generally quantify for clients the “odds” in numerical terms; if they do, the quantification is generally only undertaken in an effort to make meaningful, for limited purposes, a whole host of judgmental factors applicable at a particular time, without any intention to depict “probability” in any statistical, scientific or empirically-grounded sense. Thus, for example, statements that litigation is being defended vigorously and that the client has meritorious defenses do not, and do not purport to, make a statement about the probability of outcome in any measurable sense.

** Statement on Auditing Standards No. 12 section 337B, *Exhibit I—Excerpts From Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, Contingencies*, has been withdrawn by this section.

314 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Likewise, the “amount” of loss—that is, the total of costs and damages that ultimately might be assessed against a client—will, in most litigation, be a subject of wide possible variance at most stages; it is the rare case where the amount is precise and where the question is whether the client against which claim is made is liable either for all of it or none of it.

In light of the foregoing considerations, it must be concluded that, as a general rule, it should not be anticipated that meaningful quantifications of “probability” of outcome or amount of damages can be given by lawyers in assessing litigation. To provide content to the definitions set forth in Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy, this Commentary amplifies the meanings of the terms under discussion, as follows:

“probable”—An unfavorable outcome is normally “probable” if, but only if, investigation, preparation (including development of the factual data and legal research) and progress of the matter have reached a stage where a judgment can be made, taking all relevant factors into account which may affect the outcome, that it is extremely doubtful that the client will prevail.

“remote”—The prospect for an unfavorable outcome appears, at the time, to be slight; i.e., it is extremely doubtful that the client will not prevail. Normally, this would entail the ability to make an unqualified judgment, taking into account all relevant factors which may affect the outcome, that the client may confidently expect to prevail on a motion for summary judgment on all issues due to the clarity of the facts and the law.

In other words, for purposes of the lawyer’s response to the request to advise auditors about litigation, an unfavorable outcome will be “probable” only if the chances of the client prevailing appear slight and of the claimant losing appear extremely doubtful; it will be “remote” when the client’s chances of losing appear slight and of not winning appear extremely doubtful. It is, therefore, to be anticipated that, in most situations, an unfavorable outcome will be neither “probable” nor “remote” as defined in the Statement of Policy.

The discussion above about the very limited basis for furnishing judgments about the outcome of litigation applies with even more force to a judgment concerning whether or not the assertion of a claim not yet asserted is “probable.” That judgment will infrequently be one within the professional competence of lawyers and therefore the lawyer should not undertake such assessment except where such judgment may become meaningful because of the presence of special circumstances, such as catastrophes, investigations and previous public disclosure as cited in Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy, or similar extrinsic evidence relevant to such assessment. Moreover, it is unlikely, absent relevant extrinsic evidence, that the client or anyone else will be in a position to make an informed judgment that assertion of a possible claim is “probable” as opposed to “reasonably possible” (in which event disclosure is not required). In light of the legitimate concern that the public interest would not be well served by resolving uncertainties in a way that invites the assertion of claims or otherwise causes unnecessary harm to the client and its stockholders, a decision to treat an unasserted claim as “probable” of assertion should be based only upon compelling judgment.

Consistent with these limitations believed appropriate for the lawyer, he should not represent to the auditor, nor should any inference from his response be drawn, that the unasserted possible claims identified by the client (as contemplated by Paragraph 5(c) of the Statement of Policy) represent all such claims of which the lawyer may be aware or that he necessarily concurs in his client’s determination of which unasserted possible claims warrant specification by the client; within proper limits, this determination is one which the client is entitled to make—and should make—and it would be inconsistent with his professional obligations for the lawyer to volunteer information arising from his confidential relationship with his client.

As indicated in Paragraph 5, the lawyer also may be asked to estimate the potential loss (or range) in the event that an unfavorable outcome is not viewed to be “remote.” In such a case, the lawyer would provide an estimate only if he believes that the probability of inaccuracy of the estimate of the range or amount is slight. What is meant here is that the estimate of amount of loss presents the same difficulty as assessment of outcome and that the same formulation of “probability”

should be used with respect to the determination of estimated loss amounts as should be used with respect to estimating the outcome of the matter.

In special circumstances, with the proper consent of the client, the lawyer may be better able to provide the auditor with information concerning loss contingencies through conferences where there is opportunity for more detailed discussion and interchange. However, the principles set forth in the Statement of Policy and this Commentary are fully applicable to such conferences.

Subsumed throughout this discussion is the ongoing responsibility of the lawyer to assist his client, at the client's request, in complying with the requirements of FAS 5 to the extent such assistance falls within his professional competence. This will continue to involve, to the extent appropriate, privileged discussions with the client to provide a better basis on which the client can make accrual and disclosure determinations in respect of its financial statements.

In addition to the considerations discussed above with respect to the making of any judgment or estimate by the lawyer in his response to the auditor, including with respect to a matter specifically identified by the client, the lawyer should also bear in mind the risk that the furnishing of such a judgment or estimate to any one other than the client might constitute an admission or be otherwise prejudicial to the client's position in its defense against such litigation or claim (see Paragraph 1 of the Statement of Policy and of this Commentary).

Paragraph 6 (Lawyer's Professional Responsibility)

The client must satisfy whatever duties it has relative to timely disclosure, including appropriate disclosure concerning material loss contingencies, and, to the extent such matters are given substantive attention in the form of legal consultation, the lawyer, when his engagement is to advise his client concerning a disclosure obligation, has a responsibility to advise his client concerning its obligations in this regard. Although lawyers who normally confine themselves to a legal specialty such as tax, antitrust, patent or admiralty law, unlike lawyers consulted about SEC or general corporate matters, would not be expected to advise generally concerning the client's disclosure obligations in respect of a matter on which the lawyer is working, the legal specialist should counsel his client with respect to the client's obligations under FAS 5 to the extent contemplated herein. Without regard to legal specialty, the lawyer should be mindful of his professional responsibility to the client described in Paragraph 6 of the Statement of Policy concerning disclosure.

The lawyer's responsibilities with respect to his client's disclosure obligations have been a subject of considerable discussion and there may be, in due course, clarification and further guidance in this regard. In any event, where in the lawyer's view it is clear that (i) the matter is of material importance and seriousness, and (ii) there can be no reasonable doubt that its non-disclosure in the client's financial statements would be a violation of law giving rise to material claims, rejection by the client of his advice to call the matter to the attention of the auditor would almost certainly require the lawyer's withdrawal from employment in accordance with the Code of Professional Responsibility. (See, e.g., Disciplinary Rule 7-102 (A)(3) and (7), and Disciplinary Rule 2-110 (B)(2).) Withdrawal under such circumstances is obviously undesirable and might present serious problems for the client. Accordingly, in the context of financial accounting and reporting for loss contingencies arising from unasserted claims, the standards for which are contained in FAS 5, clients should be urged to disclose to the auditor information concerning an unasserted possible claim or assessment (not otherwise specifically identified by the client) where in the course of the services performed for the client it has become clear to the lawyer that (i) the client has no reasonable basis to conclude that assertion of the claim is not probable (employing the concepts hereby enunciated) and (ii) given the probability of assertion, disclosure of the loss contingency in the client's financial statements is beyond reasonable dispute required.

Paragraph 7 (Limitation on Use of Response)

Some inquiry letters make specific reference to, and one might infer from others, an intention to quote verbatim or include the substance of the lawyer's reply in footnotes to the client's financial statements. Because the client's prospects in pending litigation may shift as a result of interim developments, and because the lawyer should have an opportunity, if quotation is to be made, to

316 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

review the footnote in full, it would seem prudent to limit the use of the lawyer's reply letter. Paragraph 7 sets out such a limitation.

Paragraph 7 also recognizes that it may be in the client's interest to protect information contained in the lawyer's response to the auditor, if and to the extent possible, against unnecessary further disclosure or use beyond its intended purpose of informing the auditor. For example, the response may contain information which could prejudice efforts to negotiate a favorable settlement of a pending litigation described in the response. The requirement of consent to further disclosure, or of reasonable advance notice where disclosure may be required by court process or necessary in defense of the audit, is designed to give the lawyer an opportunity to consult with the client as to whether consent should be refused or limited or, in the case of legal process or the auditor's defense of the audit, as to whether steps can and should be taken to challenge the necessity of further disclosure or to seek protective measures in connection therewith. It is believed that the suggested standard of twenty days advance notice would normally be a minimum reasonable time for this purpose.

Paragraph 8 (General)

It is reasonable to assume that the Statement of Policy will receive wide distribution and will be readily available to the accounting profession. Specifically, the Statement of Policy has been reprinted as Exhibit II to the Statement on Auditing Standards, "Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments," issued by the Auditing Standards Executive Committee of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Accordingly, the mechanic for its incorporation by reference will facilitate lawyer-auditor communication. The incorporation is intended to include not only limitations, such as those provided by Paragraphs 2 and 7 of the Statement of Policy, but also the explanatory material set forth in this Commentary.

Annex A

[Illustrative forms of letters for full response by outside practitioner or law firm and inside general counsel to the auditor's inquiry letter. These illustrative forms, which are not part of the Statement of Policy, have been prepared by the Committee on Audit Inquiry Responses solely in order to assist those who may wish to have, for reference purposes, a form of response which incorporates the principles of the Statement of Policy and accompanying Commentary. Other forms of response letters will be appropriate depending on the circumstances.]

Illustrative Form of Letter for Use by Outside Practitioner or Law Firm:

[Name and Address of Accounting Firm]

Re: *[Name of Client]* *[and Subsidiaries]*

Dear Sirs:

By letter date *[insert date of request]* Mr. *[insert name and title of officer signing request]* of *[insert name of client]* *[(the "Company") or (together with its subsidiaries, the "Company")]* has requested us to furnish you with certain information in connection with your examination of the accounts of the Company as at *[insert fiscal year-end]*.

[Insert description of the scope of the lawyer's engagement; the following are sample descriptions:]

While this firm represents the Company on a regular basis, our engagement has been limited to specific matters as to which we were consulted by the Company.

[or]

We call your attention to the fact that this firm has during the past year represented the Company only in connection with certain *[Federal income tax matters]* *[litigation]* *[real estate transactions]* *[describe other specific matters, as appropriate]* and has not been engaged for any other purpose.

Subject to the foregoing and to the last paragraph of this letter, we advise you that since *[insert date of beginning of fiscal period under audit]* we have not been engaged to give substantive

attention to, or represent the Company in connection with, [material]^{††} loss contingencies coming within the scope of clause (a) of Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, except as follows:

[Describe litigation and claims which fit the foregoing criteria.]

[If the inquiry letter requests information concerning specified unasserted possible claims or assessments and/or contractually assumed obligations:]

With respect to the matters specifically identified in the Company's letter and upon which comment has been specifically requested, as contemplated by clauses (b) or (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy, we advise you, subject to the last paragraph of this letter, as follows:

[Insert information as appropriate]

The information set forth herein is [as of the date of this letter] [as of (insert date), the date on which we commenced our internal review procedures for purposes of preparing this response], except as otherwise noted, and we disclaim any undertaking to advise you of changes which thereafter may be brought to our attention.

[Insert information with respect to outstanding bills for services and disbursements.]

This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any "loss contingencies" is qualified in its entirety by Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement). Consistent with the last sentence of Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy and pursuant to the Company's request, this will confirm as correct the Company's understanding as set forth in its audit inquiry letter to us that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the Company with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, we have formed a professional conclusion that the Company must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, we, as a matter of professional responsibility to the Company, will so advise the Company and will consult with the Company concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5.[†] [Describe any other or additional limitation as indicated by Paragraph 4 of the Statement]

Very truly yours,

Illustrative Form of Letter for Use by Inside General Counsel:

[Name and Address of Accounting Firm]

Re: [Name of Company] [and Subsidiaries]

Dear Sirs:

As General Counsel^{††} of [insert name of client] [(the "Company")] [(together with its subsidiaries, the "Company")], I advise you as follows in connection with your examination of the accounts of the Company as at [insert fiscal year-end].

^{††} **Note:** See Paragraph 3 of the Statement of Policy and the accompanying Commentary for guidance where the response is limited to material items.

[†] In July 2009, FASB issued FASB ASC as authoritative. FASB ASC is now the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance promulgated by the SEC. As of July 1, 2009, all other nongrandfathered, non-SEC accounting literature not included in FASB ASC became nonauthoritative. FASB Statement No. 5 has been codified as FASB ASC 450.

^{††} It may be appropriate in some cases for the response to be given by inside counsel other than inside general counsel, in which event this letter should be appropriately modified.

318 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

I call your attention to the fact that as General Counsel^{††} for the Company I have general supervision of the Company's legal affairs. *[If the general legal supervisory responsibilities of the person signing the letter are limited, set forth here a clear description of those legal matters over which such person exercises general supervision, indicating exceptions to such supervision and situations where primary reliance should be placed on other sources.]* In such capacity, I have reviewed litigation and claims threatened or asserted involving the Company and have consulted with outside legal counsel with respect thereto where I have deemed appropriate.

Subject to the foregoing and to the last paragraph of this letter, I advise you that since *[insert date of beginning of fiscal period under audit]* neither I, nor any of the lawyers over whom I exercise general legal supervision, have given substantive attention to, or represented the Company in connection with, *[material]*^{††} loss contingencies coming within the scope of clause (a) of Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, except as follows:

[Describe litigation and claims which fit the foregoing criteria.]

[If information concerning specified unasserted possible claims or assessments and/or contractually assumed obligations is to be supplied:]

With respect to matters which have been specifically identified as contemplated by clauses (b) or (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy, I advise you, subject to the last paragraph of this letter, as follows:

[Insert information as appropriate]

The information set forth herein is *[as of the date of this letter]* as of *[insert date]*, the date on which we commenced our internal review procedures for purposes of preparing this response, except as otherwise noted, and I disclaim any undertaking to advise you of changes which thereafter may be brought to my attention or to the attention of the lawyers over whom I exercise general legal supervision.

This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any "loss contingencies" is qualified in its entirety by

Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement). Consistent with the last sentence of Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy, this will confirm as correct the Company's understanding that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the Company with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, I have formed a professional conclusion that the Company must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, I, as a matter of professional responsibility to the Company, will so advise the Company and will consult with the Company concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5.[†] *[Describe any other or additional limitation as indicated by Paragraph 4 of the Statement.]*

Very truly yours,

^{††} **Note:** See Paragraph 3 of the Statement of Policy and the accompanying Commentary for guidance where the response is limited to material items.

[†] In July 2009, FASB issued FASB ASC as authoritative. FASB ASC is now the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance promulgated by the SEC. As of July 1, 2009, all other nongrandfathered, non-SEC accounting literature not included in FASB ASC became nonauthoritative. FASB Statement No. 5 has been codified as FASB ASC 450.

.A71

Exhibit B—Report of the Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses

Because of a recent court case and other judicial decisions involving lawyers' responses to auditors' requests for information, an area of uncertainty or concern has been brought to the Subcommittee's attention and is the subject of the following comment:¹

This Committee's report does not modify the ABA Statement of Policy, nor does it constitute an interpretation thereof. The Preamble to the ABA Statement of Policy states as follows:

Both the Code of Professional Responsibility and the cases applying the evidentiary privilege recognize that the privilege against disclosure can be knowingly and voluntarily waived by the client. It is equally clear that disclosure to a third party may result in loss of the "confidentiality" essential to maintain the privilege. Disclosure to a third party of the lawyer-client communication on a particular subject may also destroy the privilege as to other communications on that subject. Thus, the mere disclosure by the lawyer to the outside auditor, with due client consent, of the substance of communications between the lawyer and client may significantly impair the client's ability in other contexts to maintain the confidentiality of such communications.

Under the circumstances a policy of audit procedure which requires clients to give consent and authorize lawyers to respond to general inquiries and disclose information to auditors concerning matters which have been communicated in confidence is essentially destructive of free and open communication and early consultation between lawyer and client. The institution of such a policy would inevitably discourage management from discussing potential legal problems with counsel for fear that such discussion might become public and precipitate a loss to or possible liability of the business enterprise and its stockholders that might otherwise never materialize.

It is also recognized that our legal, political, and economic systems depend to an important extent on public confidence in published financial statements. To meet this need the accounting profession must adopt and adhere to standards and procedures that will command confidence in the auditing process. It is not, however, believed necessary, or sound public policy, to intrude upon the confidentiality of the lawyer-client relationship in order to command such confidence. On the contrary, the objective of fair disclosure in financial statements is more likely to be better served by maintaining the integrity of the confidential relationship between lawyer and client, thereby strengthening corporate management's confidence in counsel and to act in accordance with counsel's advice.

Paragraph 1 of the ABA Statement of Policy provides as follows:

1. *Client Consent to Response.* The lawyer may properly respond to the auditor's requests for information concerning loss contingencies (the term and concept established by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March 1975 and discussed in Paragraph 5.1 of the accompanying commentary), to the extent hereinafter set forth, subject to the following:
 - a. Assuming that the client's initial letter requesting the lawyer to provide information to the auditor is signed by an agent of the client having apparent authority to make such a request, the lawyer may provide to the auditor information requested, without further consent, unless such information discloses a confidence or a secret or requires an evaluation of a claim.
 - b. In the normal case, the initial request letter does not provide the necessary consent to the disclosure of a confidence or secret or to the evaluation of a claim since that consent may only be given after full disclosure to the client of the legal consequences of such action.
 - c. Lawyers should bear in mind, in evaluating claims, that an adverse party may assert that any evaluation of potential liability is an admission.

¹ Excerpted from "Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information," *The Business Lawyer* 31, no. 3 (1976). Reprinted by permission of the American Bar Association.

320 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- d. In securing the client's consent to the disclosure of confidences or secrets, or the evaluation of claims, the lawyer may wish to have a draft of his letter reviewed and approved by the client before releasing it to the auditor; in such cases, additional explanation would in all probability be necessary so that the legal consequences of the consent are fully disclosed to the client.

In order to preserve explicitly the evidentiary privileges, some lawyers have suggested that clients include language in the following or substantially similar form:

We do not intend that either our request to you to provide information to our auditor or your response to our auditor should be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege.

If client's request letter does not contain language similar to that in the preceding paragraph, the lawyer's statement that the client has so advised him or her may be based upon the fact that the client has in fact so advised the lawyer, in writing or orally, in other communications or in discussions.

For the same reason, the response letter from some lawyers also includes language in the following or substantially similar form:

The Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has advised us that, by making the request set forth in its letter to us, the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] does not intend to waive the attorney-client privilege with respect to any information which the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has furnished to us. Moreover, please be advised that our response to you should not be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the protection of the attorney work-product privilege with respect to any of our files involving the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM].

We believe that language similar to the foregoing in letters of the client or the lawyer simply makes explicit what has always been implicit, namely, it expressly states clearly that neither the client nor the lawyer intended a waiver. It follows that non-inclusion of either or both of the foregoing statements by the client or the lawyer in their respective letters at any time in the past or the future would not constitute an expression of intent to waive the privileges.

On the other hand, the inclusion of such language does not necessarily assure the client that, depending on the facts and circumstances, a waiver may not be found by a court of law to have occurred.

We do not believe that the foregoing types of inclusions cause a negative impact upon the public policy considerations described in the Preamble to the ABA Statement of Policy nor do they intrude upon the arrangements between the legal profession and the accounting profession contemplated by the ABA Statement of Policy. Moreover, we do not believe that such language interferes in any way with the standards and procedures of the accounting profession in the auditing process nor should it be construed as a limitation upon the lawyer's reply to the auditors. We have been informed that the Auditing Standards Board of the AICPA has adopted an interpretation of SAS 12 recognizing the propriety of these statements.

Lawyers, in any case, should be encouraged to have their draft letters to auditors reviewed and approved by the client before releasing them to the auditors and may wish to explain to the client the legal consequences of the client's consent to lawyer's response as contemplated by subparagraph 1(d) of the Statement of Policy.

.A72

Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, and International Standard on Auditing 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

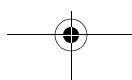
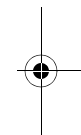
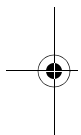
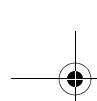
Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Section 501 contains specific requirements relating to auditing investments in securities and derivative instruments that are not in ISA 501. The ASB concluded that it was appropriate to retain these specific requirements of Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 92, *Auditing Derivatives Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*.

SAS No. 12, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, is based on the premise that the applicable financial reporting framework complies with Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 450, *Contingencies*. In addition, the audit inquiry letters required under SAS No. 12 have been subjected to the provisions of the 1975 agreement between the AICPA and the American Bar Association (ABA treaty). Consequently, section 501 contains specific requirements relating to litigation, claims and assessments consistent with the requirements of SAS No. 12 that are not contained in ISA 501. The ASB decided to retain such content in section 501 because it is particular to the U.S. environment and continues to be relevant in practice.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 12 of ISA 501 requires the auditor to request written representations from management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance regarding litigation and claims. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 580, *Written Representations*. The placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.



AU-C Section 505*

External Confirmations

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's use of external confirmation procedures to obtain audit evidence, in accordance with the requirements of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, and section 500, *Audit Evidence*. It does not address inquiries regarding litigation, claims, and assessments, which are addressed in section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*.

External Confirmation Procedures to Obtain Audit Evidence

.02 Section 500 indicates that the reliability of audit evidence is influenced by its source and nature and is dependent on the individual circumstances under which it is obtained.¹ Section 500 also includes the following generalizations applicable to audit evidence:²

- Audit evidence is more reliable when it is obtained from independent sources outside the entity.
- Audit evidence obtained directly by the auditor is more reliable than audit evidence obtained indirectly or by inference.
- Audit evidence is more reliable when it exists in documentary form, whether paper, electronic, or other medium.

Accordingly, depending on the circumstances of the audit, audit evidence in the form of external confirmations received directly by the auditor from confirming parties may be more reliable than evidence generated internally by the entity. This section is intended to assist the auditor in designing and performing external confirmation procedures to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence.

.03 Other AU-C sections recognize the importance of external confirmations as audit evidence; for example

- section 330 discusses the auditor's responsibility (a) to design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and (b) to design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level.³ In addition, section 330 requires that, irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure.⁴ The auditor is required to consider whether external confirmation procedures are to be performed as substantive audit procedures and is required to use external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable unless

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .A5 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

² Paragraph .A32 of section 500.

³ Paragraphs .05–.06 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

⁴ Paragraph .18 of section 330.

324 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- the overall account balance is immaterial,
- external confirmation procedures would be ineffective, or
- the auditor's assessed level of risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level is low, and the other planned substantive procedures address the assessed risk.⁵
- section 330 requires that the auditor obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk.⁶ To do this, the auditor may increase the quantity of the evidence or obtain evidence that is more relevant or reliable, or both. For example, the auditor may place more emphasis on obtaining evidence directly from third parties or obtaining corroborating evidence from a number of independent sources. Section 330 also indicates that external confirmation procedures may assist the auditor in obtaining audit evidence with the high level of reliability that the auditor requires to respond to significant risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.⁷
- section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, indicates that the auditor may design confirmation requests to obtain additional corroborative information as a response to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level.⁸
- section 500 indicates that corroborating information obtained from a source independent of the entity (such as external confirmations) may increase the assurance the auditor obtains from evidence existing within the accounting records or representations made by management.⁹

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.05 The objective of the auditor, when using external confirmation procedures, is to design and perform such procedures to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Exception. A response that indicates a difference between information requested to be confirmed, or contained in the entity's records, and information provided by the confirming party.

External confirmation. Audit evidence obtained as a direct written response to the auditor from a third party (the confirming party), either in paper form or by electronic or other medium (for example, through the auditor's direct access to information held by a third party). (Ref: par. .A1)

Negative confirmation request. A request that the confirming party respond directly to the auditor only if the confirming party disagrees with the information provided in the request.

Nonresponse. A failure of the confirming party to respond, or fully respond, to a positive confirmation request or a confirmation request returned undelivered.

⁵ Paragraphs .19–.20 of section 330.

⁶ Paragraph .07b of section 330.

⁷ Paragraph .A58 of section 330.

⁸ Paragraph .A43 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

⁹ Paragraph .A8 of section 500.

Positive confirmation request. A request that the confirming party respond directly to the auditor by providing the requested information or indicating whether the confirming party agrees or disagrees with the information in the request.

Requirements

External Confirmation Procedures

.07 When using external confirmation procedures, the auditor should maintain control over external confirmation requests, including

- a. determining the information to be confirmed or requested; (Ref: par. .A2)
- b. selecting the appropriate confirming party; (Ref: par. .A3)
- c. designing the confirmation requests, including determining that requests are properly directed to the appropriate confirming party and provide for being responded to directly to the auditor; and (Ref: par. .A4–.A7)
- d. sending the requests, including follow-up requests, when applicable, to the confirming party. (Ref: par. .A8)

Management's Refusal to Allow the Auditor to Perform External Confirmation Procedures

.08 If management refuses to allow the auditor to perform external confirmation procedures, the auditor should

- a. inquire about management's reasons for the refusal and seek audit evidence about their validity and reasonableness; (Ref: par. .A9)
- b. evaluate the implications of management's refusal on the auditor's assessment of the relevant risks of material misstatement, including the risk of fraud, and on the nature, timing, and extent of other audit procedures; and (Ref: par. .A10)
- c. perform alternative audit procedures designed to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A11)

.09 If the auditor concludes that management's refusal to allow the auditor to perform external confirmation procedures is unreasonable or the auditor is unable to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence from alternative audit procedures, the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance, in accordance with section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.¹⁰ The auditor also should determine the implications for the audit and the auditor's opinion, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

Results of the External Confirmation Procedures

Reliability of Responses to Confirmation Requests

.10 If the auditor identifies factors that give rise to doubts about the reliability of the response to a confirmation request, the auditor should obtain further audit evidence to resolve those doubts. (Ref: par. .A12–.A22)

.11 If the auditor determines that a response to a confirmation request is not reliable, the auditor should evaluate the implications on the assessment of the relevant risks of material misstatement, including the risk of fraud, and on the related nature, timing, and extent of other audit procedures. (Ref: par. .A23)

Nonresponses and Oral Responses

.12 In the case of each nonresponse, the auditor should perform alternative audit procedures to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A24–.A27)

¹⁰ Paragraph .12 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

326 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***When a Written Response to a Positive Confirmation Request Is Necessary to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence***

.13 If the auditor has determined that a written response to a positive confirmation request is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, alternative audit procedures will not provide the audit evidence the auditor requires. If the auditor does not obtain such confirmation, the auditor should determine the implications for the audit and the auditor's opinion, in accordance with section 705. (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)

Exceptions

.14 The auditor should investigate exceptions to determine whether they are indicative of misstatements. (Ref: par. .A30–.A31)

Negative Confirmations

.15 Negative confirmations provide less persuasive audit evidence than positive confirmations. Accordingly, the auditor should not use negative confirmation requests as the sole substantive audit procedure to address an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, unless all of the following are present:

- a. The auditor has assessed the risk of material misstatement as low and has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the operating effectiveness of controls relevant to the assertion.
- b. The population of items subject to negative confirmation procedures comprises a large number of small, homogeneous account balances, transactions, or conditions.
- c. A very low exception rate is expected.
- d. The auditor is not aware of circumstances or conditions that would cause recipients of negative confirmation requests to disregard such requests. (Ref: par. .A32)

Evaluating the Evidence Obtained

.16 The auditor should evaluate whether the results of the external confirmation procedures provide relevant and reliable audit evidence or whether further audit evidence is necessary. (Ref: par. .A33–.A34)

Application and Other Explanatory Material***Definitions******External Confirmation (Ref: par. .06)***

.A1 The auditor's direct access to information held by a third party (the confirming party) may meet the definition of an *external confirmation* when, for example, the auditor is provided by the confirming party with the electronic access codes or information necessary to access a secure website where data that addresses the subject matter of the confirmation is held. The auditor's access to information held by the confirming party may also be facilitated by a third-party service provider. When access codes or information necessary to access the confirming party's data is provided to the auditor by management, evidence obtained by the auditor from access to such information does not meet the definition of an *external confirmation*.

External Confirmation Procedures***Determining the Information to Be Confirmed or Requested (Ref: par. .07a)***

.A2 External confirmation procedures frequently are performed to confirm or request information regarding account balances, elements thereof, and disclosures. They also may be used to confirm the terms of agreements, contracts, or transactions between an entity and other parties or to confirm the absence of certain conditions, such as a "side agreement."

Selecting the Appropriate Confirming Party (Ref: par. .07b)

.A3 Responses to confirmation requests provide more relevant and reliable audit evidence when confirmation requests are sent to a confirming party who the auditor believes is knowledge-

able about the information to be confirmed. For example, a financial institution official who is knowledgeable about the transactions or arrangements for which confirmation is requested may be the most appropriate person at the financial institution from whom to request confirmation.

Designing Confirmation Requests (Ref: par. .07c)

.A4 The design of a confirmation request may directly affect the confirmation response rate and the reliability and nature of the audit evidence obtained from responses.

.A5 Factors to consider when designing confirmation requests include the following:

- The assertions being addressed.
- Specific identified risks of material misstatement, including fraud risks.
- The layout and presentation of the confirmation request.
- Prior experience on the audit or similar engagements.
- The method of communication (for example, in paper form or by electronic or other medium).
- Management's authorization or encouragement to the confirming parties to respond to the auditor. Confirming parties may only be willing to respond to a confirmation request containing management's authorization.
- The ability of the intended confirming party to confirm or provide the requested information (for example, individual invoice amount versus total balance).

.A6 A positive external confirmation request asks the confirming party to reply to the auditor in all cases, either by indicating the confirming party's agreement with the given information or asking the confirming party to provide information. A response to a properly designed positive confirmation request ordinarily is expected to provide reliable audit evidence. A risk exists, however, that a confirming party may reply to the confirmation request without verifying that the information is correct. The auditor may reduce this risk by using positive confirmation requests that do not state the amount (or other information) on the confirmation request and that ask the confirming party to fill in the amount or furnish other information. On the other hand, use of this type of "blank" confirmation request may result in lower response rates because additional effort is required from the confirming parties to provide the requested information.

.A7 Determining that requests are properly addressed includes verifying the accuracy of the addresses, including testing the validity of some or all of the addresses on the confirmation requests before they are sent out, regardless of the confirmation method used. When a confirmation request is sent by e-mail, the auditor's determination that the request is being properly directed to the appropriate confirming party may include performing procedures to test the validity of some or all of the e-mail addresses supplied by management. The nature and extent of the necessary procedures is dependent on the risks associated with the particular type of confirmation or address. For example, a confirmation addressing a higher risk assertion or a confirmation address that appears to be potentially less reliable (for example, an electronic confirmation addressed in a manner that appears easier to falsify) may necessitate different or more extensive procedures to determine that the request is directed to the intended recipient. See further guidance in paragraphs .A14–.A15.

Follow-Up on Confirmation Requests (Ref: par. .07d)

.A8 The auditor may send an additional confirmation request when a reply to a previous request has not been received within a reasonable time. For example, the auditor may, having reverified the accuracy of the original address, send an additional or follow-up request.

Management's Refusal to Allow the Auditor to Perform External Confirmation Procedures

Reasonableness of Management's Refusal (Ref: par. .08a)

.A9 A refusal by management to allow the auditor to perform external confirmation procedures is a limitation on the audit evidence the auditor seeks to obtain; therefore, the auditor is required to inquire about the reasons for the limitation. A common reason offered by management is the existence of a legal dispute or ongoing negotiation with the intended confirming party, the resolution of

328 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

which may be affected by an untimely confirmation request. The auditor is required to seek audit evidence about the validity and reasonableness of the reasons for management's refusal because of the risk that management may be attempting to deny the auditor access to audit evidence that may reveal fraud or error.

Implications for the Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement (Ref: par. .08b)

.A10 The auditor may conclude from the evaluation in paragraph .08b that it would be appropriate to revise the assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level and modify planned audit procedures, in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.¹¹ For example, if management's request to not confirm is unreasonable, this may indicate a fraud risk factor that requires evaluation, in accordance with section 240.¹²

Alternative Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .08c)

.A11 The alternative audit procedures performed may be similar to those appropriate for a non-response, as set out in paragraphs .A24–.A27. Such procedures also would take into account the results of the auditor's evaluation in paragraph .08b.

Results of the External Confirmation Procedures**Reliability of Responses to Confirmation Requests (Ref: par. .10)**

.A12 Section 500 indicates that even when audit evidence is obtained from sources external to the entity, circumstances may exist that affect its reliability.¹³ All responses carry some risk of interception, alteration, or fraud. Such risk exists regardless of whether a response is obtained in paper form or by electronic or other medium. Factors that may indicate doubts about the reliability of a response include whether it

- was received by the auditor indirectly or
- appeared not to come from the originally intended confirming party.

.A13 The auditor's consideration of the reliability of the information obtained through the confirmation process to be used as audit evidence includes consideration of the risks that

- a. the information obtained may not be from an authentic source,
- b. a respondent may not be knowledgeable about the information to be confirmed, and
- c. the integrity of the information may have been compromised.

When an electronic confirmation process or system is used, the auditor's consideration of the risks described in a–c includes the consideration of risks that the electronic confirmation process is not secure or is improperly controlled.

.A14 Responses received electronically (for example, by fax or e-mail) involve risks relating to reliability because proof of origin or identity of the confirming party may be difficult to establish, and alterations may be difficult to detect. The auditor may determine that it is appropriate to address such risks by utilizing a system or process that validates the respondent or by directly contacting the purported sender (for example, by telephone) to validate the identity of the sender of the response and to validate that the information received by the auditor corresponds to what was transmitted by the sender.

.A15 An electronic confirmation system or process that creates a secure confirmation environment may mitigate the risks of interception or alteration. Creating a secure confirmation environment depends on the process or mechanism used by the auditor and the respondent to minimize the possibility that the results will be compromised because of interception or alteration of the

¹¹ Paragraph .32 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

¹² Paragraph .24 of section 240.

¹³ Paragraph .A32 of section 500.

confirmation. If the auditor is satisfied that such a system or process is secure and properly controlled, evidence provided by responses received using the system or process may be considered reliable. Various means might be used to validate the source of the electronic information. For example, the use of encryption, electronic digital signatures, and procedures to verify website authenticity may improve the security of the electronic confirmation system or process. If a system or process that facilitates electronic confirmation between the auditor and the respondent is in place and the auditor plans to rely on the controls over such a system or process, an assurance trust services report (for example, Systrust) or another assurance report on that system or process may assist the auditor in assessing the design and operating effectiveness of the electronic and manual controls with respect to that system or process. Such an assurance report may address the risks described in paragraph .A13. If these risks are not adequately addressed in such a report, the auditor may perform additional procedures to address those risks.

.A16 The auditor is required by section 500 to determine whether to modify or add procedures to resolve doubts over the reliability of information to be used as audit evidence.¹⁴ The auditor may choose to verify the source and contents of a response to a confirmation request by contacting the confirming party (for example, as described in paragraph .A14). When a response has been returned to the auditor indirectly (for example, because the confirming party incorrectly addressed it to the entity rather than the auditor), the auditor may request the confirming party to respond in writing directly to the auditor.

Disclaimers and Other Restrictions in Confirmation Responses

.A17 A response to a confirmation request may contain restrictive language regarding its use. Such restrictions do not necessarily invalidate the reliability of the response as audit evidence. Whether the auditor may rely on the information confirmed and the degree of such reliance will depend on the nature and substance of the restrictive language.

.A18 Restrictions that appear to be boilerplate disclaimers of liability may not affect the reliability of the information being confirmed. Examples of such disclaimers may include the following:

- Information is furnished as a matter of courtesy without a duty to do so and without responsibility, liability, or warranty, express or implied.
- The reply is given solely for the purpose of the audit without any responsibility on the part of the respondent, its employees, or its agents, and it does not relieve the auditor from any other inquiry or the performance of any other duty.

.A19 Other restrictive language also may not affect the reliability of a response if it does not relate to the assertion being tested. For example, in a confirmation of investments, a disclaimer regarding the valuation of the investments may not affect the reliability of the response if the auditor's objective in using the confirmation request is to obtain audit evidence regarding whether the investments exist.

.A20 Certain restrictive language may, however, cast doubt about the completeness or accuracy of the information contained in the response or on the auditor's ability to rely on such information. Examples of such restrictions may include the following:

- Information is obtained from electronic data sources, which may not contain all information in the respondent's possession.
- Information is not guaranteed to be accurate nor current and may be a matter of opinion.
- The recipient may not rely upon the information in the confirmation.

.A21 When the auditor has doubts about the reliability of the response as a result of restrictive language, then, in accordance with paragraph .10, the auditor is required to obtain further audit evidence to resolve those doubts. When the practical effect of the restrictive language is difficult to ascertain in the particular circumstances, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek clarification from the respondent or seek legal advice.

¹⁴ Paragraph .10 of section 500.

330 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A22 If the auditor is unable to resolve the doubts about the reliability of a response as a result of restrictive language, then, in accordance with paragraph .11, the auditor is required to evaluate the implications on the assessment of the relevant risks of misstatement, including the risk of fraud, and on the related nature, timing, and extent of other audit procedures. The nature, timing, and extent of such procedures will depend on factors such as the nature of the financial statement item, the assertion being tested, the nature and substance of the restrictive language, and relevant information obtained through other audit procedures.

Unreliable Responses (Ref: par. .11)

.A23 When the auditor concludes that a response is unreliable, the auditor may need to revise the assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level and modify planned audit procedures accordingly, in accordance with section 315.¹⁵ For example, an unreliable response may indicate a fraud risk factor that requires evaluation, in accordance with section 240.¹⁶

Nonresponses and Oral Responses (Ref: par. .12)

.A24 The nature and extent of alternative procedures are affected by the account and assertion in question. Examples of alternative audit procedures the auditor may perform include the following:

- For accounts receivable balances, examining specific subsequent cash receipts (including matching such receipts with the actual items being paid), shipping documentation, or other client documentation providing evidence for the existence assertion
- For accounts payable balances, examining subsequent cash disbursements or correspondence from third parties and other records, such as receiving reports and statements that the client receives from vendors providing evidence for the completeness assertion

.A25 A nonresponse to a confirmation request may indicate a previously unidentified risk of material misstatement. In such situations, the auditor may need to revise the assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level and modify planned audit procedures, in accordance with section 315.¹⁷ For example, a fewer or greater number of responses to confirmation requests than anticipated may indicate a previously unidentified fraud risk factor that requires evaluation, in accordance with section 240.¹⁸

.A26 The auditor may determine that it is not necessary to perform additional alternative audit procedures beyond the evaluation of the confirmation results if such evaluation indicates that relevant and reliable audit evidence has already been obtained. This may be the case when testing for overstatement of amounts and (a) the nonresponses in the aggregate, projected as 100 percent misstatements to the population and added to the sum of all other unadjusted differences, would not affect the auditor's decision about whether the financial statements are materially misstated and (b) the auditor has not identified unusual qualitative factors or systematic characteristics related to the nonresponses, such as that all nonresponses pertain to year-end transactions.

.A27 An oral response to a confirmation request does not meet the definition of an *external confirmation* because it is not a direct written response to the auditor. Provided that the auditor has not concluded that a direct written response to a positive confirmation is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor may take the receipt of an oral response to a confirmation request into consideration when determining the nature and extent of alternative audit procedures required to be performed for nonresponses, in accordance with paragraph .12. The auditor may perform additional procedures to address the reliability of the evidence provided by the oral response, such as initiating a call to the respondent using a telephone number that the auditor has independently verified as being associated with the entity. For example, the auditor might call the main telephone number obtained from a reliable source and ask to be directed to

¹⁵ Paragraph .32 of section 315.

¹⁶ Paragraph .24 of section 240.

¹⁷ Paragraph .32 of section 315.

¹⁸ Paragraph .24 of section 240.

the named respondent instead of calling a direct extension provided by the client or included in the statement or other correspondence received by the entity. The auditor may determine that the additional evidence provided by contacting the respondent directly, together with the evidence upon which the original confirmation request is based (for example, a statement or other correspondence received by the entity), is sufficient appropriate audit evidence. In appropriately documenting the oral response, the auditor may include specific details, such as the identity of the person from whom the response was received, his or her position, and the date and time of the conversation.

When a Written Response to a Positive Confirmation Request Is Necessary to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref. par. .13)

.A28 In certain circumstances, the auditor may identify an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level for which a response to a positive confirmation request is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Such circumstances may include the following:

- The information available to corroborate management's assertion(s) is only available outside the entity.
- Specific fraud risk factors, such as the risk of management override of controls or the risk of collusion, which can involve employee(s) or management, or both, prevent the auditor from relying on evidence from the entity.

.A29 When the auditor has determined that a written response is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence and the auditor has obtained only an oral response to a confirmation request, the auditor may request the confirming party to respond in writing directly to the auditor. If no such response is received, in accordance with paragraph .13, alternative audit procedures will not provide the audit evidence the auditor requires, and the auditor is required to determine the implications for the audit and the auditor's opinion, in accordance with section 705.

Exceptions (Ref. par. .14)

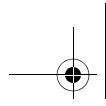
.A30 Exceptions noted in responses to confirmation requests may indicate misstatements or potential misstatements in the financial statements. When a misstatement is identified, the auditor is required by section 240 to evaluate whether such misstatement is indicative of fraud.¹⁹ Exceptions may provide a guide to the quality of responses from similar confirming parties or for similar accounts. Exceptions also may indicate a deficiency, or deficiencies, in the entity's internal control over financial reporting.

.A31 Some exceptions do not represent misstatements. For example, the auditor may conclude that differences in responses to confirmation requests are due to timing, measurement, or clerical errors in the external confirmation procedures.

Negative Confirmations (Ref. par. .15)

.A32 The failure to receive a response to a negative confirmation request does not indicate receipt by the intended confirming party of the confirmation request or verification of the accuracy of the information contained in the request. Accordingly, a failure of a confirming party to respond to a negative confirmation request provides significantly less persuasive audit evidence than does a response to a positive confirmation request. Confirming parties also may be more likely to respond indicating their disagreement with a confirmation request when the information in the request is not in their favor but less likely to respond otherwise. For example, holders of bank deposit accounts may be more likely to respond if they believe that the balance in their account is understated in the confirmation request but less likely to respond when they believe the balance is overstated. Therefore, sending negative confirmation requests to holders of bank deposit accounts may be a useful procedure in considering whether such balances may be understated but is unlikely to be effective if the auditor is seeking evidence regarding overstatement.

¹⁹ Paragraph .35 of section 240.



332 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

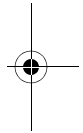
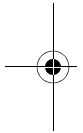


Evaluating the Evidence Obtained (Ref: par. .16)

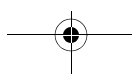
.A33 When evaluating the results of individual external confirmation requests, the auditor may categorize such results as follows:

- a.* A response by the appropriate confirming party indicating agreement with the information provided in the confirmation request or providing requested information without exception
- b.* A response deemed unreliable
- c.* A nonresponse
- d.* A response indicating an exception

.A34 The auditor's evaluation, when taken into account with other audit procedures the auditor may have performed, may assist the auditor in concluding whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained or whether further audit evidence is necessary, as required by section 330.²⁰



²⁰ Paragraphs .28–.29 of section 330.



.A35**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 505, *External Confirmations*, and International Standard on Auditing 505, *External Confirmations***

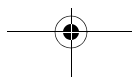
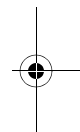
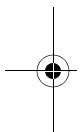
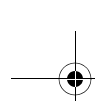
This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards.

Differences in Language

The definition of *external confirmation* has been expanded to include an example of a medium through which a response may be obtained. The example—direct access by the auditor to information held by a third party—addresses a situation that is increasingly common. The ASB believes that the inclusion of this concept clarifies the definition and is consistent with the intent of the definition in ISA 505.



AU-C Section 510*

Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to opening balances in an initial audit engagement, including a reaudit engagement. In addition to financial statement amounts, opening balances include matters requiring disclosure that existed at the beginning of the period, such as contingencies and commitments. When comparative financial statements are presented, the relevant requirements and guidance for comparative financial statements in section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, also apply. Section 300, *Planning an Audit*, includes additional requirements and guidance regarding activities prior to starting an initial audit. Section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, also applies with respect to the auditor's evaluation of the consistency of accounting principles between the periods presented and covered by the auditor's opinion. Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, includes requirements and guidance with respect to communications with a predecessor auditor before accepting an initial audit engagement, including a reaudit engagement.

.02 This section, with respect to predecessor auditors, does not apply if the most recent audited financial statements are more than one year prior to the beginning of the earliest period to be audited.

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.04 The objective of the auditor, in conducting an initial audit engagement, including a reaudit engagement, is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances about whether (Ref: par. .A1)

- a. opening balances contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements and
- b. appropriate accounting policies reflected in the opening balances have been consistently applied in the current period's financial statements or changes thereto are appropriately accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Definitions

.05 For the purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Initial audit engagement. An engagement in which either (a) the financial statements for the prior period were not audited, or (b) the financial statements for the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

336 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Opening balances. Those account balances that exist at the beginning of the period.

Opening balances are based upon the closing balances of the prior period and reflect the effects of transactions and events of prior periods and accounting policies applied in the prior period. Opening balances also include matters requiring disclosure that existed at the beginning of the period, such as contingencies and commitments.

Predecessor auditor. The auditor from a different audit firm who has reported on the most recent audited financial statements or was engaged to perform but did not complete an audit of the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A2)

Reaudit. An initial audit engagement to audit financial statements that have been previously audited by a predecessor auditor.

Requirements

Audit Procedures

.06 The auditor should read the most recent financial statements, if any, and the predecessor auditor's report thereon, if any, for information relevant to opening balances, including disclosures, and consistency in the application of accounting policies.

.07 In instances in which the prior period financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor, the auditor should request management to authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and for the predecessor auditor to respond fully to inquiries by the auditor, thereby providing the auditor with information to assist in planning and performing the engagement. (Ref: par. .A3–.A11)

Opening Balances

.08 The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the opening balances contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements by

- a. determining whether the prior period's closing balances have been correctly brought forward to the current period or, when appropriate, have been restated;
- b. determining whether the opening balances reflect the application of appropriate accounting policies; and
- c. evaluating whether audit procedures performed in the current period provide evidence relevant to the opening balances and performing one or both of the following: (Ref: par. .A7–.A9 and .A12–.A14)
 - i. When the prior year financial statements were audited, reviewing the predecessor auditor's audit documentation to obtain evidence regarding the opening balances
 - ii. Performing specific audit procedures to obtain evidence regarding the opening balances

.09 If the auditor obtains audit evidence that the opening balances contain misstatements that could materially affect the current period's financial statements, the auditor should perform such additional audit procedures as are appropriate in the circumstances to determine the effect on the current period's financial statements. If the auditor concludes that such misstatements exist in the current period's financial statements, the auditor should communicate the misstatements to the appropriate level of management and those charged with governance, in accordance with section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*. If the prior period financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor, the auditor should also refer to paragraphs .12–.13.

Consistency of Accounting Policies

.10 The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the accounting policies reflected in the opening balances have been consistently applied in the current period's financial statements and whether changes in the accounting policies have been appropriately accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Relevant Information in the Predecessor Auditor's Report

.11 If the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor, and a modification was made to the opinion, the auditor should evaluate the effect of the matter giving rise to the modification in assessing the risks of material misstatement in the current period's financial statements, in accordance with section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

Discovery of Possible Material Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor

.12 If the auditor becomes aware of information during the audit that leads the auditor to believe that financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor may require revision, the auditor should request management to inform the predecessor auditor of the situation and arrange for the three parties to discuss this information and attempt to resolve the matter. The auditor should communicate to the predecessor auditor information that the auditor believes the predecessor auditor may need to consider, in accordance with section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, which addresses the auditor's responsibilities when facts become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report that, had they been known to the auditor at that date, may have caused the auditor to amend the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A15)

.13 If management refuses to inform the predecessor auditor that the prior period financial statements may need revision or if the auditor is not satisfied with the resolution of the matter, the auditor should evaluate (a) the implications on the current engagement and (b) whether to withdraw from the engagement or, when withdrawal is not possible under applicable law or regulation, disclaim an opinion on the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A16)

Audit Conclusions and Reporting

.14 The auditor should not make reference to the report or work of the predecessor auditor as the basis, in part, for the auditor's own opinion.

Opening Balances

.15 If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements, as appropriate, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*. (Ref: par. .A17)

.16 If the auditor concludes that the opening balances contain a misstatement that materially affects the current period's financial statements, and the effect of the misstatement is not appropriately accounted for or adequately presented or disclosed, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, as appropriate, in accordance with section 705.

Consistency of Accounting Policies

.17 If the auditor concludes that

- a. the current period's accounting policies are not consistently applied regarding opening balances, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, or
- b. a change in accounting policies is not appropriately accounted for or adequately presented or disclosed, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework,

the auditor should express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, as appropriate, in accordance with section 705.

Modification to the Opinion in the Predecessor Auditor's Report

.18 If the predecessor auditor's opinion regarding the prior period's financial statements included a modification to the auditor's opinion that remains relevant and material to the current period's financial statements, the auditor should modify the auditor's opinion on the current period's financial statements, in accordance with section 705. (Ref: par. .A18)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Objective (Ref: par. .04)

.A1 Audit evidence regarding opening balances and the consistency of accounting principles may include the most recent audited financial statements, the predecessor auditor's report thereon, the results of inquiry of the predecessor auditor, the results of the auditor's review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation relating to the most recently completed audit, and audit procedures performed on the current period's transactions that may provide evidence about the opening balances or consistency.

Definitions

Predecessor Auditor (Ref: par. .05)

.A2 Two predecessor auditors may exist: the auditor who reported on the most recent audited financial statements and the auditor who was engaged to perform, but did not complete, an audit of any subsequent financial statements.

Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .07)

.A3 The auditor may initiate communications with management to authorize review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and for the predecessor auditor to respond fully to inquiries by the auditor, either before or after accepting the engagement. Relevant ethical and professional requirements guide the auditor's communications with the predecessor auditor.

.A4 The predecessor auditor may request a consent and acknowledgment letter from the entity to document this authorization in an effort to reduce misunderstandings about the scope of the communications being authorized. Exhibit B, "Illustrative Entity Consent and Acknowledgment Letter," contains an illustrative entity consent and acknowledgment letter.

.A5 It is customary for the predecessor auditor to make himself or herself available to the auditor and to make available for review certain audit documentation. The predecessor auditor determines which audit documentation is to be made available for review and which may be copied. The predecessor auditor ordinarily permits the auditor to review audit documentation, including documentation of planning; risk assessment procedures; further audit procedures; audit results; and other matters of continuing accounting and auditing significance, such as the schedule of uncorrected misstatements, working paper analysis of balance sheet accounts, and those relating to contingencies.

.A6 Before permitting access to the audit documentation, the predecessor auditor may request written confirmation of the auditor's agreement regarding the use of the audit documentation. Exhibit C, "Illustrative Successor Auditor Acknowledgment Letter," contains an illustrative successor auditor acknowledgment letter.

.A7 The extent, if any, to which a predecessor auditor permits access to the audit documentation or responds to inquiries from the auditor is a matter of the predecessor auditor's professional judgment. The predecessor auditor's denial or limitation of access may affect the auditor's assessment of risk regarding the opening balances or the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures with respect to the opening balances and consistency of accounting principles. (Ref: par. .07 and .08c)

.A8 If the predecessor auditor permits access to the audit documentation, the auditor may review the predecessor auditor's audit documentation for information relevant to planning and performing the audit. The auditor's determination whether to use information resulting from such review as part of the auditor's risk assessment procedures or as evidence regarding the opening balances is influenced by the auditor's assessment of the professional competence and independence of the predecessor auditor. Although the predecessor auditor is not a component auditor, as defined in section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, the auditor may make inquiries similar to those listed in

section 600 concerning the professional competence and independence of the predecessor auditor.¹ (Ref: par. .07 and .08c)

.A9 The auditor's review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation may provide audit evidence about the opening balances and consistency of accounting principles. However, the nature, timing, and extent of audit work performed and the conclusions reached are solely the responsibility of the auditor, as required by section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. (Ref: par. .07 and .08c)

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .07)

.A10 In audits of governmental entities, law or regulation may limit the information that the auditor can obtain from a predecessor auditor. Certain information may be identified as classified or otherwise prohibited from disclosure by federal, state, or local laws or public safety or security concerns. For example, if a governmental entity that has previously been audited by a government audit organization (for example, the U.S. Government Accountability Office, a federal inspector general, an elected or statutorily appointed state auditor general, or other suitably qualified audit organization) engages a public accounting firm, the amount of access to audit documentation or other information that the government audit organization can provide an incoming auditor may be constrained by privacy or confidentiality laws or regulations. In situations when communications with a predecessor auditor are restricted, audit evidence may need to be obtained through other means and, if sufficient appropriate audit evidence cannot be obtained, consideration given to the effect on the auditor's opinion, in accordance with the requirement in paragraph .15.

.A11 If a government audit organization engages a public accounting firm in an agency capacity to perform an audit of a governmental entity and such firm did not audit the financial statements of the governmental entity in the prior period, this is usually regarded as a change in auditors; therefore, this section applies.

Opening Balances (Ref: par. .08c)

.A12 The nature and extent of audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances depend on such matters as the following:

- The accounting policies followed by the entity
- The nature of the account balances, classes of transactions and disclosures, and the risks of material misstatement in the current period's financial statements
- The significance of the opening balances relative to the current period's financial statements
- Whether the prior period's financial statements were audited and, if so, whether the predecessor auditor's opinion was modified

.A13 For current assets and liabilities, some audit evidence about opening balances may be obtained as part of the current period's audit procedures. For example, the collection (payment) of opening accounts receivable (accounts payable) during the current period will provide some audit evidence of their existence, rights and obligations, completeness, and valuation at the beginning of the period. In the case of inventories, however, the current period's audit procedures on the closing inventory balance provide little audit evidence regarding inventory on hand at the beginning of the period. Therefore, additional audit procedures, such as one or more of the following, may be necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence:

- Observing a current physical inventory count and reconciling it to the opening inventory quantities
- Performing audit procedures on the valuation of the opening inventory items
- Performing audit procedures on gross profit and cutoff

¹ Paragraph .22 of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

340 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A14 For noncurrent assets and liabilities, such as property, plant, and equipment; investments; and long-term debt, some audit evidence may be obtained by examining the accounting records and other information underlying the opening balances. In certain cases, the auditor may be able to obtain some audit evidence regarding opening balances through confirmation with third parties (for example, for long-term debt and investments). In other cases, the auditor may need to carry out additional audit procedures.

Discovery of Possible Material Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor

.A15 Section 560 provides reporting guidance to the predecessor auditor who is requested to reissue a previously issued report on financial statements of a prior period when those financial statements are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period.² Section 700 provides reporting guidance to the auditor reporting on comparative financial statements when the predecessor auditor is unable or unwilling to reissue the auditor's report on prior period financial statements that have been restated.³ (Ref: par. .12)

.A16 If management refuses to inform the predecessor auditor that the prior period financial statements may need revision, or if the auditor is not satisfied with the resolution of the matter, the auditor may seek legal advice in determining an appropriate course of action, including evaluating whether to withdraw from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. (Ref: par. .13)

Audit Conclusions and Reporting***Opening Balances (Ref: par. .15)***

.A17 Section 705 addresses circumstances that may result in a modification to the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, the type of opinion appropriate in the circumstances, and the content of the auditor's report when the auditor's opinion is modified. The inability of the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances may result in one of the following modifications to the opinion in the auditor's report:

- a. A qualified opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, as is appropriate in the circumstances.
- b. An opinion that is qualified or disclaimed, as appropriate, regarding the results of operations and cash flows, when relevant, and unmodified regarding financial position. Exhibit A, "Illustration of Report With Disclaimer of Opinion on Results of Operations and Cash Flows and Unmodified Opinion on Financial Position," includes such an illustrative report.

Modification to the Opinion in the Predecessor Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .18)

.A18 In some situations, a modification to the predecessor auditor's opinion may not be relevant and material to the opinion on the current period's financial statements. This may be the case when, for example, there was a scope limitation in the prior period but the matter giving rise to the scope limitation has been resolved in the current period.

² Paragraphs .19–.20 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

³ Paragraph .A52 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

.A19**Exhibit A—Illustration of Report With Disclaimer of Opinion on Results of Operations and Cash Flows and Unmodified Opinion on Financial Position**

Circumstances include the following:

- The auditor did not observe the counting of the physical inventory at the beginning of the current period and was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances of inventory.
- The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances of inventory are deemed to be material and pervasive to the entity's results of operations and cash flows.¹
- The financial position at year-end is fairly presented.
- A disclaimer of opinion regarding the results of operations and cash flows and an unmodified opinion regarding financial position is considered appropriate in the circumstances.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and were engaged to audit the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on conducting the audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Because of the matters described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, however, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the income statement and the cash flow statement.

We conducted our audit of the balance sheet in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the balance sheet is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in

¹ If the possible effects, in the auditor's professional judgment, are considered to be material but not pervasive to the entity's results of operations and cash flows, the auditor would express a qualified opinion on the results of operations and cash flows.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

342 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.³ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our unmodified opinion on the financial position.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion on the Results of Operations and Cash Flows

We were not engaged as auditors of the Company until after December 31, 20X0, and, therefore, did not observe the counting of physical inventories at the beginning of the year. We were unable to satisfy ourselves by performing other auditing procedures concerning the inventory held at December 31, 20X0. Since opening inventories enter into the determination of net income and cash flows, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments might have been necessary in respect of the profit for the year reported in the income statement and the net cash flows from operating activities reported in the cash flow statement.

Disclaimer of Opinion on the Results of Operations and Cash Flows

Because of the significance of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the income statement and the cash flow statement. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the results of operations and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1.

Opinion on the Financial Position

In our opinion, the balance sheet presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.

.A20**Exhibit B—Illustrative Entity Consent and Acknowledgment Letter (Ref: par. .07 and .A4)**

Paragraph .07 requires that the auditor request management to authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and for the predecessor auditor to respond fully to inquiries by the auditor, thereby providing the auditor with information to assist in planning and performing the engagement. Paragraph .A4 states that the predecessor auditor may request a consent and acknowledgment letter from the entity to document this authorization in an effort to reduce misunderstandings about the scope of the communications being authorized. The following letter is presented for illustrative purposes only and is not required by professional standards.

[Date]

ABC Enterprises

[Address]

You have given your consent to allow [name of successor CPA firm], as independent auditors for ABC Enterprises (ABC), access to our audit documentation for our audit of the December 31, 20X1, financial statements of ABC. You also have given your consent to us to respond fully to [name of successor CPA firm] inquiries. You understand and agree that the review of our audit documentation is undertaken solely for the purpose of obtaining an understanding about ABC and certain information about our audit to assist [name of successor CPA firm] in planning and performing the audit of the December 31, 20X2, financial statements of ABC.

Please confirm your agreement with the foregoing by signing and dating a copy of this letter and returning it to us.

Attached is the form of the letter we will furnish [name of successor CPA firm] regarding the use of the audit documentation.

Very truly yours,

[Predecessor Auditor]

By: _____

Accepted:

ABC Enterprises

By: _____

Date: _____

344 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**.A21****Exhibit C—Illustrative Successor Auditor Acknowledgment Letter (Ref: par. .A6)**

Paragraph .A6 states that the predecessor auditor may request that the auditor confirm in writing his or her agreement regarding the use of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation before permitting access to it. The following letter is presented for illustrative purposes only and is not required by professional standards.

[Date]

[Successor Auditor]

[Address]

We have previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the December 31, 20X1, financial statements of ABC Enterprises (ABC). We rendered a report on those financial statements and have not performed any audit procedures subsequent to the audit report date. In connection with your audit of ABC's 20X2 financial statements, you have requested access to our audit documentation prepared in connection with that audit. ABC has authorized our firm to allow you to review that audit documentation.

Our audit, and the audit documentation prepared in connection therewith, of ABC's financial statements were not planned or conducted in contemplation of your review. Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Our use of professional judgment and the assessment of audit risk and materiality for the purpose of our audit mean that matters may have existed that would have been assessed differently by you. We make no representation about the sufficiency or appropriateness of the information in our audit documentation for your purposes.

We understand that the purpose of your review is to obtain information about ABC and our 20X1 audit results to assist you in planning and performing your 20X2 audit of ABC. For that purpose only, we will provide you access to our audit documentation that relates to that objective.

Upon request, we will provide copies of audit documentation that provides factual information about ABC. You agree to subject any such copies or information otherwise derived from our audit documentation to your normal policy for retention of audit documentation and protection of confidential entity information. Furthermore, in the event of a third-party request for access to your audit documentation prepared in connection with your audits of ABC, you agree to obtain our permission before voluntarily allowing any such access to our audit documentation or information otherwise derived from our audit documentation, and to obtain on our behalf any releases that you obtain from such third party. You agree to advise us promptly and provide us a copy of any subpoena, summons, or other court order for access to your audit documentation that include copies of our audit documentation or information otherwise derived therefrom.

Please confirm your agreement with the foregoing by signing and dating a copy of this letter and returning it to us.

Very truly yours,

[Predecessor Auditor]

By: _____

Accepted:

[Successor Auditor]

By: _____

Date: _____

Even with management's consent, access to the predecessor auditor's audit documentation may still be limited. Experience has shown that the predecessor auditor may be willing to grant broader access if given additional assurance concerning the use of the audit documentation. Accordingly, the auditor might consider agreeing to the following additional limitations on the review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation in order to obtain broader access:

- The auditor will not comment, orally or in writing, to anyone as a result of the review about whether the predecessor auditor's engagement was performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.
- The auditor will not provide expert testimony or litigation support services or otherwise accept an engagement to comment on issues relating to the quality of the predecessor auditor's audit.
- The auditor accepts sole responsibility for the nature, timing, and extent of audit work performed and the conclusions reached in expressing an opinion on the 20X2 financial statements of ABC.

The following paragraph illustrates the previous text:

Because your review of our audit documentation is undertaken solely for the purpose described previously and may not entail a review of all our audit documentation, you agree that (1) the information obtained from the review will not be used by you for any other purpose, (2) you will not comment, orally or in writing, to anyone as a result of that review about whether our audit was performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, (3) you will not provide expert testimony or litigation support services or otherwise accept an engagement to comment on issues relating to the quality of our audit, and (4) you accept sole responsibility for the nature, timing and extent of audit work performed and the conclusions reached in expressing your opinion on the 20X2 financial statements of ABC.

.A22

Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements, and International Standard on Auditing 510, Initial Audit Engagements—Opening Balances*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 510, *Initial Audit Engagements—Opening Balances*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph .07 of section 510 carries forward a requirement from paragraph 11 of Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, as amended, which states that the auditor, when the prior period financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor, should request management to authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and to respond fully to inquiries by the auditor. Other requirements related to reviewing the predecessor auditor's audit documentation do not differ between ISA 510 and section 510.

Paragraph .13 of section 510 incorporates requirements from paragraph 22 of SAS No. 84, as amended, concerning the auditor's response when management refuses to inform the predecessor auditor that the prior period financial statements may need revision or if the auditor is not satisfied with the resolution of the matter. The ASB believes it is important to address this situation.

Paragraph .14 of section 510 incorporates a requirement from paragraph 13 of SAS No. 84, as amended, that states that the auditor should not make reference to the report or work of the predecessor auditor as the basis, in part, for the successor auditor's own opinion. The ASB believes this requirement is necessary in the United States to clearly distinguish this situation from the circumstances in section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, in which the auditor determines to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements.

Differences Between Requirements

Paragraph 6(c) of ISA 510 requires the auditor to perform one or more of three identified procedures, in addition to the procedures required in paragraph 6(a–b) of ISA 510, to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the opening balances contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements. Two of the three procedures are (a) reviewing the predecessor auditor's audit documentation to obtain evidence regarding opening balances, and (b) evaluating whether audit procedures performed in the current audit provide evidence relevant to the opening balances. The ASB does not believe that either of these procedures, on its own, provides sufficient evidence regarding opening balances, and accordingly, the ASB has redrafted paragraph .08c of section 510 to require the auditor to evaluate whether audit procedures performed in the current period provide evidence relevant to the opening balances and also to perform one or both of the other procedures identified in paragraph .08c(i–ii) of section 510.

AU-C Section 520*

Analytical Procedures

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's use of analytical procedures as substantive procedures (substantive analytical procedures). It also addresses the auditor's responsibility to perform analytical procedures near the end of the audit that assist the auditor when forming an overall conclusion on the financial statements. Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, addresses the use of analytical procedures as risk assessment procedures (which may be referred to as analytical procedures used to plan the audit).¹ Section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, addresses the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures in response to assessed risks; these audit procedures may include substantive analytical procedures.²

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.03 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence when using substantive analytical procedures and
- b. design and perform analytical procedures near the end of the audit that assist the auditor when forming an overall conclusion about whether the financial statements are consistent with the auditor's understanding of the entity. (Ref: par. .A1)

Definition

.04 For the purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Analytical procedures. Evaluations of financial information through analysis of plausible relationships among both financial and nonfinancial data. Analytical procedures also encompass such investigation, as is necessary, of identified fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount. (Ref: par. .A2–.A6)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .06b of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

² Paragraphs .06 and .18 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

348 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Requirements****Substantive Analytical Procedures**

.05 When designing and performing analytical procedures, either alone or in combination with tests of details, as substantive procedures in accordance with section 330, the auditor should³ (Ref: par. .A7–.A9)

- a.* determine the suitability of particular substantive analytical procedures for given assertions, taking into account the assessed risks of material misstatement and tests of details, if any, for these assertions; (Ref: par. .A10–.A16)
- b.* evaluate the reliability of data from which the auditor's expectation of recorded amounts or ratios is developed, taking into account the source, comparability, and nature and relevance of information available and controls over preparation; (Ref: par. .A17–.A20)
- c.* develop an expectation of recorded amounts or ratios and evaluate whether the expectation is sufficiently precise (taking into account whether substantive analytical procedures are to be performed alone or in combination with tests of details) to identify a misstatement that, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated; and (Ref: par. .A21–.A23)
- d.* determine the amount of any difference of recorded amounts from expected values that is acceptable without further investigation as required by paragraph 7 and compare the recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, with the expectations. (Ref: par. .A24)

Analytical Procedures That Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion

.06 The auditor should design and perform analytical procedures near the end of the audit that assist the auditor when forming an overall conclusion about whether the financial statements are consistent with the auditor's understanding of the entity. (Ref: par. .A25–.A27)

Investigating Results of Analytical Procedures

.07 If analytical procedures performed in accordance with this section identify fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount, the auditor should investigate such differences by

- a.* inquiring of management and obtaining appropriate audit evidence relevant to management's responses and
- b.* performing other audit procedures as necessary in the circumstances. (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)

Documentation (Ref: par. .A30)

.08 When substantive analytical procedures have been performed, the auditor should include in the audit documentation the following:⁴

- a.* The expectation referred to in paragraph .05*c* and the factors considered in its development when that expectation or those factors are not otherwise readily determinable from the audit documentation
- b.* Results of the comparison referred to in paragraph .05*d* of the recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, with the expectations
- c.* Any additional auditing procedures performed in accordance with paragraph .07 relating to the investigation of fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount and the results of such additional procedures

³ Paragraph .18 of section 330.

⁴ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Objectives (Ref: par. .03b)

.A1 Analytical procedures performed near the end of the audit are intended to corroborate audit evidence obtained during the audit of the financial statements to assist the auditor in drawing reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.

Definition (Ref: par. .04)

.A2 Analytical procedures include the consideration of comparisons of the entity's financial information with, for example

- comparable information for prior periods.
- anticipated results of the entity, such as budgets or forecasts, or expectations of the auditor, such as an estimation of depreciation.
- similar industry information, such as a comparison of the entity's ratio of sales to accounts receivable and gross margin percentages with industry averages or other entities of comparable size in the same industry.

.A3 Analytical procedures also include consideration of relationships, for example

- among elements of financial information, such as gross margin percentages, that would be expected to conform to a predictable pattern based on recent history of the entity and industry.
- between financial information and relevant nonfinancial information, such as payroll costs to number of employees.

.A4 Various methods may be used to perform analytical procedures. These methods range from performing simple comparisons to performing complex analyses using advanced statistical techniques. Analytical procedures may be applied to consolidated financial statements, components, and individual elements of information.

.A5 *Scanning* is a type of analytical procedure involving the auditor's exercise of professional judgment to review accounting data to identify significant or unusual items to test. This type of analytical procedure is described further in section 500, *Audit Evidence*.⁵

.A6 A basic premise underlying the application of analytical procedures is that plausible relationships among data may reasonably be expected to exist and continue in the absence of known conditions to the contrary. The reasons that make relationships plausible are an important consideration because data sometimes appears to be related when it is not, which may lead the auditor to erroneous conclusions. In addition, the presence of an unexpected relationship may provide important evidence when appropriately scrutinized.

Substantive Analytical Procedures (Ref: par. .05)

.A7 The auditor's substantive procedures to address the assessed risk of material misstatement for relevant assertions may be tests of details, substantive analytical procedures, or a combination of both. The decision about which audit procedures to perform, including whether to use substantive analytical procedures, is based on the auditor's professional judgment about the expected effectiveness and efficiency of the available audit procedures to reduce the assessed risk of material misstatement to an acceptably low level.

.A8 The expected effectiveness and efficiency of a substantive analytical procedure in addressing risks of material misstatement depends on, among other things, (a) the nature of the assertion, (b) the plausibility and predictability of the relationship, (c) the availability and reliability of the data used to develop the expectation, and (d) the precision of the expectation.

.A9 The auditor may inquire of management about the availability and reliability of information needed to apply substantive analytical procedures and the results of any such analytical procedures

⁵ Paragraph .A22 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

350 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

performed by the entity. It may be effective to use analytical data prepared by management, provided that the auditor is satisfied that such data is properly prepared.

Suitability of Particular Substantive Analytical Procedures for Given Assertions (Ref: par. .05a)

.A10 When more persuasive audit evidence is desired from substantive analytical procedures, more predictable relationships are necessary to develop the expectation. Relationships in a stable environment are usually more predictable than relationships in a dynamic or unstable environment. Relationships involving income statement accounts tend to be more predictable than relationships involving only balance sheet accounts because income statement accounts represent transactions over a period of time, whereas balance sheet accounts represent amounts as of a point in time. Relationships involving transactions subject to management discretion may be less predictable. For example, management may elect to incur maintenance expense rather than replace plant and equipment, or they may delay advertising expenditures.

.A11 Substantive analytical procedures are generally more effective for large volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time. The application of planned analytical procedures is based on the expectation that relationships among data exist and continue in the absence of known conditions to the contrary. Particular conditions that can cause variations in these relationships include, for example, specific unusual transactions or events, accounting changes, business changes, random fluctuations, or misstatements. The suitability of a particular analytical procedure will depend upon the auditor's assessment of how effective it will be in detecting a misstatement that, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated.

.A12 In some cases, even an unsophisticated predictive model may be effective as an analytical procedure. For example, when an entity has a known number of employees at fixed rates of pay throughout the period, it may be possible for the auditor to use this data to estimate the total payroll costs for the period with a high degree of accuracy, thereby providing audit evidence for a significant item in the financial statements and reducing the need to perform tests of details on the payroll. The use of widely recognized trade ratios (such as profit margins for different types of retail entities) can often be used effectively in substantive analytical procedures to provide evidence to support the reasonableness of recorded amounts.

.A13 Different types of analytical procedures provide different levels of assurance. Analytical procedures involving, for example, the prediction of total rental income on a building divided into apartments, taking the rental rates, the number of apartments, and vacancy rates into consideration, can provide persuasive evidence and may eliminate the need for further verification by means of tests of details, provided that the elements are appropriately verified. In contrast, calculation and comparison of gross margin percentages as a means of confirming a revenue figure may provide less persuasive evidence but may provide useful corroboration if used in combination with other audit procedures.

.A14 The determination of the suitability of particular substantive analytical procedures is influenced by the nature of the assertion and the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement. For example, if controls over payroll processing are deficient, the auditor may need to perform more extensive tests of details for assertions related to compensation.

.A15 Particular substantive analytical procedures may also be considered suitable when tests of details are performed on the same assertion. For example, when obtaining audit evidence regarding the valuation assertion for accounts receivable balances, the auditor may apply analytical procedures to an aging of customers' accounts, in addition to performing tests of details on subsequent cash receipts, to determine the collectability of the receivables.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A16 The relationships between individual financial statement items traditionally considered in the audit of for-profit businesses may not always be relevant in the audit of governmental entities. For example, relationships describing profitability or return on investment may have limited or no applicability. In addition, the nature of balances reported by a governmental entity may result in

different expected relationships than those traditionally assumed for businesses. For example, relationships between revenue, receivables, and inventory may be different when revenue and receivables arise from nonexchange transactions and inventory does not represent products held for sale. Also, governmental entities' budgets are a source of data that may be used as a benchmark for evaluating individual financial statements.

The Reliability of the Data (Ref: par. .05b)

.A17 The reliability of data is influenced by its source and nature and is dependent on the circumstances under which it is obtained. Accordingly, the following are relevant when determining whether data is reliable for purposes of designing substantive analytical procedures:

- a. The source of the information available. For example, information may be more reliable when it is obtained from independent sources outside the entity.⁶
- b. The comparability of the information available. For example, broad industry data may need to be supplemented to be comparable to that of an entity that produces and sells specialized products.
- c. The nature and relevance of the information available. For example, whether budgets have been established as results to be expected rather than as goals to be achieved.
- d. Controls over the preparation of the information that are designed to ensure its completeness, accuracy, and validity. For example, controls over the preparation, review, and maintenance of budgets.

.A18 Data may be readily available to develop expectations for some assertions. For example, the auditor may consider whether financial information, such as budgets or forecasts, and nonfinancial information, such as the number of units produced or sold, is available to design substantive analytical procedures.

.A19 The auditor may consider testing the operating effectiveness of controls, if any, over the entity's preparation of information used by the auditor in performing substantive analytical procedures in response to assessed risks. When such controls are effective, the auditor may have greater confidence in the reliability of the information and, therefore, in the results of analytical procedures. The operating effectiveness of controls over nonfinancial information may often be tested in conjunction with other tests of controls. For example, in establishing controls over the processing of sales invoices, an entity may include controls over the recording of unit sales. In these circumstances, the auditor may test the operating effectiveness of controls over the recording of unit sales in conjunction with tests of the operating effectiveness of controls over the processing of sales invoices. Alternatively, the auditor may consider whether the information was subjected to audit testing. Section 330 addresses determining the audit procedures to be performed on the information to be used for substantive analytical procedures.⁷

.A20 The matters discussed in paragraph .A17a–d are relevant irrespective of whether the auditor performs substantive analytical procedures on the entity's period-end financial statements or at an interim date and plans to perform substantive analytical procedures for the remaining period. Section 330 addresses performing substantive procedures at an interim date.⁸

Evaluation of Whether the Expectation Is Sufficiently Precise (Ref: par. .05c)

.A21 In evaluating whether the expectation is sufficiently precise when performing a substantive analytical procedure, it is appropriate for the auditor to take into account whether substantive analytical procedures are the only substantive procedures planned to address a particular risk of misstatement at the relevant assertion level or whether the risk will be addressed through a combination of substantive analytical procedures and tests of details. A less precise expectation may be appropriate when evidence obtained from performing the substantive analytical procedure will be combined with audit evidence from performing tests of details. A more precise expectation,

⁶ Paragraph .A32 of section 500.

⁷ Paragraph .25 of section 330.

⁸ Paragraphs .23–.24 of section 330.

352 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

however, is necessary when the substantive analytical procedure is the only procedure planned to address a particular risk of misstatement for a relevant assertion.

.A22 As expectations become more precise, the range of expected differences becomes narrower, and accordingly, the likelihood increases that significant differences from the expectations are due to misstatements. Matters relevant to the auditor's evaluation of whether the expectation can be developed with sufficient precision to identify a misstatement that, when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, include the following:

- The accuracy with which the expected results of substantive analytical procedures can be predicted. For example, the auditor may expect greater consistency in comparing gross profit margins from one period to another than in comparing discretionary expenses, such as research or advertising.
- The degree to which information can be disaggregated. For example, substantive analytical procedures may be more effective when applied to financial information on individual sections of an operation or to financial statements of components of a diversified entity than when applied to the financial statements of the entity as a whole.

.A23 When expectations are developed at a more detailed level, it is more likely that the analytical procedure will more effectively address the assessed risk of misstatement to which it is directed. Monthly amounts may be more effective than annual amounts, and comparisons by location or line of business usually are more effective than companywide comparisons. The appropriate level of detail may be influenced by the nature of the entity, its size, and its complexity. The risk that material misstatements may be obscured by offsetting factors increases as an entity's operations become more complex and diversified. Disaggregation of the information helps reduce this risk.

Amount of Acceptable Difference of Recorded Amounts From Expected Values (Ref: par. .05d)

.A24 The auditor's determination of the amount of difference from the expectation that can be accepted without further investigation is influenced by materiality⁹ and the desired level of assurance, while taking into account the possibility that a misstatement, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. Section 330 requires the auditor to obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk.¹⁰ Accordingly, as the assessed risk increases, the amount of difference considered acceptable without further investigation decreases in order to achieve the desired level of persuasive evidence.¹¹

Analytical Procedures That Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion (Ref: par. .06)

.A25 A wide variety of analytical procedures may be used when forming an overall conclusion. These procedures may include reading the financial statements and considering (a) the adequacy of the evidence gathered in response to unusual or unexpected balances identified during the course of the audit and (b) unusual or unexpected balances or relationships that were not previously identified. Results of these analytical procedures may indicate that additional evidence is needed.

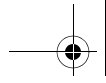
.A26 The results of analytical procedures designed and performed in accordance with paragraph .06 may identify a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement. In such circumstances, section 315 requires the auditor to revise the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement and modify the further planned audit procedures accordingly.¹²

⁹ Paragraph .A16 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

¹⁰ Paragraph .07b of section 330.

¹¹ Paragraph .A20 of section 330.

¹² Paragraph .32 of section 315.



.A27 The analytical procedures performed in accordance with paragraph .06 may be similar to those that would be used as risk assessment procedures.

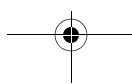
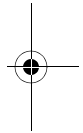
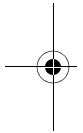
Investigating Results of Analytical Procedures (Ref: par. .07)

.A28 Audit evidence relevant to management's responses may be obtained by evaluating those responses, taking into account the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and other audit evidence obtained during the course of the audit.

.A29 The need to perform other audit procedures may arise when, for example, management is unable to provide an explanation, or the explanation, together with the audit evidence obtained relevant to management's response, is not considered adequate.

Documentation (Ref: par. .08)

.A30 Section 230, *Audit Documentation*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities for preparing audit documentation and applies to substantive analytical procedures and analytical procedures performed near the end of the audit. Paragraph .08 of this section addresses specific requirements that apply to substantive analytical procedures but is not intended to provide a complete list of items that are required to be documented by section 230.



.A31

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 520, *Analytical Procedures*, and International Standard on Auditing 520, *Analytical Procedures*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 520, *Analytical Procedures*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 520, *Analytical Procedures*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

The ASB has made various changes to the language throughout section 520 in comparison with ISA 520. The changes to section 520 include the following:

- In paragraph .05*c*, adding the parenthetical “(taking into account whether substantive analytical procedures are to be performed alone or in combination with tests of details)” to clarify that the auditor can use as audit evidence a substantive analytical procedure that is less precise than performance materiality when such analytical procedure is combined with other substantive audit procedures.
- In paragraph .05*d*, adding “compare the recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, with the expectations.” The ASB is of the understanding that such procedure is presumed in ISA 520.

Such changes have been made to make section 520 easier to read and apply. The ASB believes that the changes made do not create differences between the application of ISA 520 and the application of section 520.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Section 520 includes specific documentation requirements, in paragraph .08, which ISA 520 does not. Such requirements are contained in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 56, *Analytical Procedures*, as amended, which section 520 supersedes, and the ASB believes that the requirements are appropriate and should be retained.

AU-C Section 530*

Audit Sampling

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section applies when the auditor has decided to use audit sampling in performing audit procedures. It addresses the auditor's use of statistical and nonstatistical sampling when designing and selecting the audit sample, performing tests of controls and tests of details, and evaluating the results from the sample. (Ref: par. .A1–.A2)

.02 This section complements section 500, *Audit Evidence*, which addresses the auditor's responsibility to design and perform audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be able to draw reasonable conclusions as a basis for forming the auditor's opinion. Section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, provides guidance on the means available to the auditor for selecting items for testing, one of which is audit sampling.¹

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.04 The objective of the auditor, when using audit sampling, is to provide a reasonable basis for the auditor to draw conclusions about the population from which the sample is selected.

Definitions

.05 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Audit sampling (sampling). The selection and evaluation of less than 100 percent of the population of audit relevance such that the auditor expects the items selected (the sample) to be representative of the population and, thus, likely to provide a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population. In this context, representative means that evaluation of the sample will result in conclusions that, subject to the limitations of sampling risk, are similar to those that would be drawn if the same procedures were applied to the entire population. (Ref: par. .A3)

Nonsampling risk. The risk that the auditor reaches an erroneous conclusion for any reason not related to sampling risk. (Ref: par. .A4)

Population. The entire set of data from which a sample is selected and about which the auditor wishes to draw conclusions.

Sampling risk. The risk that the auditor's conclusion based on a sample may be different from the conclusion if the entire population were subjected to the same audit procedure. Sampling risk can lead to two types of erroneous conclusions:

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraphs .A65–.A71 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

356 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- a.* In the case of a test of controls, that controls are more effective than they actually are, or in the case of a test of details, that a material misstatement does not exist when, in fact, it does. The auditor is primarily concerned with this type of erroneous conclusion because it affects audit effectiveness and is more likely to lead to an inappropriate audit opinion.
- b.* In the case of a test of controls, that controls are less effective than they actually are, or in the case of a test of details, that a material misstatement exists when, in fact, it does not. This type of erroneous conclusion affects audit efficiency because it would usually lead to additional work to establish that initial conclusions were incorrect.

Sampling unit. The individual items constituting a population. (Ref: par. .A5)

Statistical sampling. An approach to sampling that has the following characteristics:

- a.* Random selection of the sample items (Ref: par. .A16)
- b.* The use of an appropriate statistical technique to evaluate sample results, including measurement of sampling risk

A sampling approach that does not have characteristics *a* and *b* is considered nonstatistical sampling.

Stratification. The process of dividing a population into subpopulations, each of which is a group of sampling units that have similar characteristics.

Tolerable misstatement. A monetary amount set by the auditor in respect of which the auditor seeks to obtain an appropriate level of assurance that the monetary amount set by the auditor is not exceeded by the actual misstatement in the population. (Ref: par. .A6)

Tolerable rate of deviation. A rate of deviation set by the auditor in respect of which the auditor seeks to obtain an appropriate level of assurance that the rate of deviation set by the auditor is not exceeded by the actual rate of deviation in the population.

Requirements

Sample Design, Size, and Selection of Items for Testing

.06 When designing an audit sample, the auditor should consider the purpose of the audit procedure and the characteristics of the population from which the sample will be drawn. (Ref: par. .A7–.A11)

.07 The auditor should determine a sample size sufficient to reduce sampling risk to an acceptably low level. (Ref: par. .A12–.A14)

.08 The auditor should select items for the sample in such a way that the auditor can reasonably expect the sample to be representative of the relevant population and likely to provide the auditor with a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population. (Ref: par. .A15–.A17)

Performing Audit Procedures

.09 The auditor should perform audit procedures, appropriate to the purpose, on each item selected.

.10 If the audit procedure is not applicable to the selected item, the auditor should perform the procedure on a replacement item. (Ref: par. .A18)

.11 If the auditor is unable to apply the designed audit procedures, or suitable alternative procedures, to a selected item, the auditor should treat that item as a deviation from the prescribed control (in the case of tests of controls) or a misstatement (in the case of tests of details). (Ref: par. .A19–.A20)

Nature and Cause of Deviations and Misstatements

.12 The auditor should investigate the nature and cause of any deviations or misstatements identified and evaluate their possible effect on the purpose of the audit procedure and on other areas of the audit. (Ref: par. .A21–.A23)

Projecting the Results of Audit Sampling

.13 The auditor should project the results of audit sampling to the population. (Ref: par. .A24–.A25)

Evaluating the Results of Audit Sampling

.14 The auditor should evaluate

- a. the results of the sample, including sampling risk, and (Ref: par. .A26–.A27)
- b. whether the use of audit sampling has provided a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population that has been tested. (Ref: par. .A28)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)**

.A1 The AICPA Audit Guide *Audit Sampling* provides interpretative guidance to apply the concepts in this section, including its definitions.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A2 Chapter 11 of the AICPA Audit Guide *Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits* provides interpretative guidance in designing an audit approach that includes audit sampling to achieve audit objectives related to both compliance and internal control over compliance in a Circular A-133 compliance audit or program-specific audit performed in accordance with Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations*.

Definitions**Audit Sampling (Ref: par. .05)**

.A3 There may be audit procedures that are not considered audit sampling but that involve examination of fewer than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions. For example, an auditor may examine only a few transactions from an account balance or class of transactions to (a) gain an understanding of the nature of an entity's operations or (b) clarify the auditor's understanding of the entity's internal control. In such cases, the guidance in this section is not applicable.

Nonsampling Risk (Ref: par. .05)

.A4 Examples of nonsampling risk include the use of inappropriate audit procedures or misinterpretation of audit evidence and failure to recognize a misstatement or deviation. Nonsampling risk may be reduced to an acceptable level through such factors as adequate planning (see section 300, *Planning an Audit*) and proper conduct of a firm's audit practice (see section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*).

Sampling Unit (Ref: par. .05)

.A5 The sampling units might be physical items (for example, checks listed on deposit slips, credit entries on bank statements, sales invoices, or accounts receivable) or monetary units.

Tolerable Misstatement (Ref: par. .05)

.A6 The auditor is required by section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, to determine performance materiality.² Performance materiality is determined to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements in the financial statements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. *Tolerable misstatement* is the application of performance materiality to a particular sampling procedure. Tolerable misstatement may be the same amount or an amount smaller than performance materiality (for example, when the population from which the sample is selected is smaller than the account balance).

² Paragraph .11 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

Sample Design, Size, and Selection of Items for Testing**Sample Design (Ref: par. .06)**

.A7 Audit sampling enables the auditor to obtain and evaluate audit evidence about some characteristic of the items selected in order to form or assist in forming a conclusion concerning the population from which the sample is drawn. Audit sampling can be applied using either statistical or nonstatistical sampling approaches.

.A8 When designing an audit sample, the auditor's consideration includes the specific purpose to be achieved and the combination of audit procedures that is likely to achieve that purpose. Consideration of the nature of the audit evidence sought and possible deviation or misstatement conditions or other characteristics relating to that audit evidence will assist the auditor in defining what constitutes a deviation or misstatement and what population to use for sampling. In fulfilling the requirement in section 500 when performing audit sampling, the auditor is required to perform audit procedures to obtain evidence that the population from which the audit sample is drawn is complete.³

.A9 The auditor's consideration of the purpose of the audit procedure, as required by paragraph .06, includes a clear understanding of what constitutes a deviation or misstatement so that all, and only, those conditions that are relevant to the assertions are included in the evaluation of deviations or projection of misstatements. For example, in a test of details relating to the existence of accounts receivable, such as confirmation, payments made by the customer before the confirmation date but received shortly after that date by the client are not considered a misstatement. Also, an incorrect posting between customer accounts does not affect the total accounts receivable balance. Therefore, it may not be appropriate to consider this a misstatement in relation to the relevant assertion even though it may have an important effect on other areas of the audit, such as the assessment of the risk of fraud or the adequacy of the allowance for doubtful accounts.

.A10 In considering the test objective and characteristics of a population for tests of controls, the auditor makes an assessment of the expected rate of deviation based on the auditor's understanding of the relevant controls. This assessment is made in order to design an audit sample and determine sample size. For example, if the expected rate of deviation is unacceptably high, the auditor will normally decide not to perform tests of controls. Similarly, for tests of details, the auditor makes an assessment of the expected misstatement in the population. If the expected misstatement is high, 100 percent examination or increasing the sample size may be appropriate when performing tests of details.

.A11 In considering the characteristics of the population from which the sample will be drawn, the auditor may determine that stratification or value-weighted selection is appropriate.

Sample Size (Ref: par. .07)

.A12 The level of sampling risk that the auditor is willing to accept affects the sample size required. The lower the risk the auditor is willing to accept, the greater the sample size necessary.

.A13 The sample size can be determined by the application of a statistically based formula or through the exercise of professional judgment. Various factors typically influence determination of sample size, as follows:

- For tests of controls:
 - The tolerable rate of deviation of the population to be tested
 - The expected rate of deviation of the population to be tested
 - The desired level of assurance (complement of risk of overreliance) that the tolerable rate of deviation is not exceeded by the actual rate of deviation in the population; the auditor may decide the desired level of assurance based on the extent to which the auditor's risk assessment takes into account relevant controls
 - The number of sampling units in the population if the population is very small

³ Paragraph .09 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

- For substantive tests of details:
 - The auditor's desired level of assurance (complement of risk of incorrect acceptance) that tolerable misstatement is not exceeded by actual misstatement in the population; the auditor may decide the desired level of assurance based on the following:
 - The auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement
 - The assurance obtained from other substantive procedures directed at the same assertion
 - Tolerable misstatement
 - Expected misstatement for the population
 - Stratification of the population when performed
 - For some sampling methods, the number of sampling units in each stratum

.A14 The decision whether to use a statistical or nonstatistical sampling approach is a matter for the auditor's professional judgment; however, sample size is not a valid criterion to use in deciding between statistical and nonstatistical approaches. An auditor who applies statistical sampling may use tables or formulas to compute sample size based on the factors in paragraph .A13. An auditor who applies nonstatistical sampling exercises professional judgment to relate the same factors used in statistical sampling in determining the appropriate sample size. Ordinarily, this would result in a sample size comparable with the sample size resulting from an efficient and effectively designed statistical sample, considering the same sampling parameters. This guidance does not suggest that the auditor using nonstatistical sampling also compute a corresponding sample size using an appropriate statistical technique.

Selection of Items for Testing (Ref: par. .08)

.A15 Audit sampling involves selection techniques that are probabilistic in nature. For example, through the assessment of the risk of material misstatement, an auditor might identify areas in which misstatement is relatively likely. The auditor might first separately examine those items deemed to be of relatively high risk and then use audit sampling (which will involve some form of probabilistic selection) to form an estimate of some characteristic of the remaining population.

.A16 Random selection techniques include the following:

- a. Simple random
- b. Systematic random
- c. Probability weighted, including monetary unit

A detailed discussion of selection techniques is included in the AICPA Audit Guide *Audit Sampling*.

.A17 With statistical sampling, sample items are selected using random selection techniques. The principal techniques of selecting a nonstatistical sample are the use of random selection and haphazard selection to select sample items.

Performing Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .10–.11)

.A18 An example of when it is necessary to perform the procedure on a replacement item is when a voided check is selected while testing for evidence of payment authorization. If the auditor is satisfied that the check has been properly voided such that it does not constitute a deviation, an appropriately chosen replacement is examined.

.A19 In some circumstances, the auditor may not be able to apply the planned audit procedures to selected sample items because, for example, the entity might not be able to locate supporting documentation. The auditor's treatment of unexamined items will depend on their effect on the auditor's evaluation of the sample. If the auditor's evaluation of the sample results would not be altered by considering those unexamined items to be misstated, it may not be necessary to examine the items, for example, if the aggregate amount of the unexamined items, if treated as misstatements or deviations, would not cause the auditor's assessment of the amount of the misstatement or deviation in the population to exceed tolerable misstatement or tolerable deviation, respectively. However, when this is not the case, the auditor is required by paragraph .11 to

360 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

perform alternative procedures that provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence to form a conclusion about the sample item and use the results of these procedures in assessing the sample results. If alternative procedures cannot be satisfactorily performed in these cases, the auditor is required to treat the items as misstatements or deviations, as appropriate, in evaluating the results of the sample. Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, also requires the auditor to consider whether the reasons for the auditor's inability to examine the items have implications with regard to assessing risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the assessed level of control risk that the auditor expects to be supported, or the degree of reliance on management representations.

.A20 An example of a suitable alternative procedure for an accounts receivable positive confirmation request for which no reply has been received might be the examination of subsequent cash receipts, together with evidence of their source and the items they are intended to settle.

Nature and Cause of Deviations and Misstatements (Ref: par. .12)

.A21 Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, explains that the auditor may request management to examine a class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure in order for management to understand the cause of a misstatement identified by the auditor; perform procedures to determine the amount of the actual misstatement in the class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure; and make appropriate adjustments to the financial statements.⁴

.A22 In analyzing the deviations and misstatements identified, the auditor may observe that many have a common feature (for example, type of transaction, location, product line, or period of time). In such circumstances, the auditor may decide to identify all items in the population that possess the common feature and extend audit procedures to those items. In addition, such deviations or misstatements may be intentional and may indicate the possibility of fraud.

.A23 In addition to the evaluation of the frequency and amounts of monetary misstatements, section 450 requires the auditor to consider the qualitative aspects of the misstatements.⁵ These include (a) the nature and cause of misstatements, such as whether they are differences in principle or application, are errors, or are caused by fraud or are due to misunderstanding of instructions or carelessness, and (b) the possible relationship of the misstatements to other phases of the audit. The discovery of fraud requires a broader consideration of possible implications than does the discovery of an error.

Projecting the Results of Audit Sampling (Ref: par. .13)

.A24 For tests of details, the auditor is required by paragraph .13 to project misstatements observed in an audit sample to the population in order to obtain a likely misstatement. Due to sampling risk, this projection may not be sufficient to determine an amount to be recorded.

.A25 For tests of controls, the sample deviation rate is also the projected deviation rate for the population as a whole. Section 330 addresses the auditor's response when deviations from controls upon which the auditor intends to rely are detected.⁶

Evaluating the Results of Audit Sampling (Ref: par. .14)

.A26 For tests of controls, an unexpectedly high sample deviation rate may lead to an increase in the assessed risks of material misstatement, unless further audit evidence substantiating the initial assessment is obtained. For tests of details, an unexpectedly high misstatement amount in a sample may cause the auditor to believe that a class of transactions or account balance is materially misstated, in the absence of further audit evidence that no material misstatement exists.

⁴ Paragraph .A9 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

⁵ Paragraph .11 of section 450.

⁶ Paragraph .17 of section 330.

.A27 Considering the results of other audit procedures helps the auditor assess the risk that actual misstatement in the population exceeds tolerable misstatement; such risk may be reduced if additional audit evidence is obtained. In the case of tests of details, the *projected misstatement* is the auditor's best estimate of misstatement in the population. As the projected misstatement approaches or exceeds tolerable misstatement, the more likely that actual misstatement in the population exceeds tolerable misstatement. Also, if the projected misstatement is greater than the auditor's expectations of misstatement used to determine the sample size, the auditor may conclude that there is an unacceptable sampling risk that the actual misstatement in the population exceeds the tolerable misstatement. The AICPA Audit Guide *Audit Sampling* contains further guidance regarding the concept of sampling risk.

.A28 If the auditor concludes that audit sampling has not provided a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population that has been tested, the auditor may

- request management to investigate misstatements that have been identified and the potential for further misstatements and to make any necessary adjustments or
- tailor the nature, timing, and extent of those further audit procedures to best achieve the required assurance. For example, in the case of tests of controls, the auditor might extend the sample size, test an alternative control, or modify related substantive procedures.

Section 450 addresses misstatements identified by the auditor during the audit.

.A29

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 530, *Audit Sampling*, and International Standard on Auditing 530, *Audit Sampling*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 530, *Audit Sampling*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 530, *Audit Sampling*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

The definition of *audit sampling* in paragraph 5 of ISA 530 was revised in section 530 because the ASB believes that the ISA 530 wording defining audit sampling to require the auditor to select items such that “each item has a chance of selection” is too imprecise to be meaningful. The definition was revised to (a) focus on conclusions about the population, and (b) include the fundamental concept of representativeness. Paragraph .08 of section 530, which establishes a requirement with respect to the selection of items in a population, reflects the revised definition of *audit sampling*.

The wording in paragraph .13 of section 530 was broadened from the wording in paragraph 14 of ISA 530 to better encompass the related application material.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

The requirement in paragraph 13 of ISA 530 that addresses the issue of anomalies is not included in section 530. The ASB expressed concerns about terms used in paragraph 13 of ISA 530, such as “in the extremely rare circumstances” and “a high degree of certainty.” These terms are not used in GAAS and the ASB believes these terms would not be consistently interpreted in practice. The ASB also believes that the deletion from section 530 of the option to consider a misstatement an anomaly will enhance audit quality because misstatements identified by the auditor during audit sampling will be treated in the same manner as any other misstatement identified by the auditor and, thus, will prevent the misuse of anomalies.

Paragraph 14 of ISA 530 requires, for tests of details, the projection of misstatements found in a sample to the population. The ASB believes that projection of misstatements is also relevant to tests of controls and tests of compliance, and accordingly, has broadened the requirement in paragraph .14 of section 530 to project the results of audit sampling to also include tests of controls and tests of compliance.

Other

The appendixes of ISA 530 were not included in section 530 because the guidance contained therein is covered by the AICPA Audit Guide *Audit Sampling*.

AU-C Section 540*

Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to accounting estimates, including fair value accounting estimates and related disclosures, in an audit of financial statements. Specifically, it expands on how section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, and other relevant AU-C sections are to be applied with regard to accounting estimates. It also includes requirements and guidance related to misstatements of individual accounting estimates and indicators of possible management bias.

Nature of Accounting Estimates

.02 Some financial statement items cannot be measured precisely but can only be estimated. For purposes of this section, such financial statement items are referred to as *accounting estimates*. The nature and reliability of information available to management to support the making of an accounting estimate varies widely, which thereby affects the degree of estimation uncertainty associated with accounting estimates. The degree of estimation uncertainty affects, in turn, the risks of material misstatement of accounting estimates, including their susceptibility to unintentional or intentional management bias. (Ref: par. .A1–.A10 and .A136)

.03 The measurement objective of accounting estimates can vary, depending on the applicable financial reporting framework and the financial item being reported.¹ The measurement objective for some accounting estimates is to forecast the outcome of one or more transactions, events, or conditions giving rise to the need for the accounting estimate. For other accounting estimates, including many fair value accounting estimates, the measurement objective is different and is expressed in terms of the value of a current transaction or financial statement item based on conditions prevalent at the measurement date, such as estimated market price for a particular type of asset or liability. For example, the applicable financial reporting framework may require fair value measurement based on an assumed hypothetical current transaction between knowledgeable, willing parties (sometimes referred to as *market participants* or equivalent) in an arm's length transaction, rather than the settlement of a transaction at some past or future date.²

.04 A difference between the outcome of an accounting estimate and the amount originally recognized or disclosed in the financial statements does not necessarily represent a misstatement of the financial statements; rather, it could be an outcome of estimation uncertainty (see paragraph .02). This is particularly the case for fair value accounting estimates because any observed outcome may be affected by events or conditions subsequent to the date at which the measurement is estimated for purposes of the financial statements.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .13 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, defines *financial report framework* and the term *fair presentation framework*.

² Different definitions of *fair value* may exist among financial reporting frameworks.

364 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Effective Date**

.05 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.06 The objective of the auditor is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether, in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework

- a. accounting estimates, including fair value accounting estimates, in the financial statements, whether recognized or disclosed, are reasonable and
- b. related disclosures in the financial statements are adequate.

Definitions

.07 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Accounting estimate. An approximation of a monetary amount in the absence of a precise means of measurement. This term is used for an amount measured at fair value when there is estimation uncertainty, as well as for other amounts that require estimation. When this section addresses only accounting estimates involving measurement at fair value, the term *fair value accounting estimates* is used.

Auditor's point estimate or auditor's range. The amount or range of amounts, respectively, derived from audit evidence for use in evaluating the recorded or disclosed amount(s).

Estimation uncertainty. The susceptibility of an accounting estimate and related disclosures to an inherent lack of precision in its measurement.

Management bias. A lack of neutrality by management in the preparation and fair presentation of information.

Management's point estimate. The amount selected by management for recognition or disclosure in the financial statements as an accounting estimate.

Outcome of an accounting estimate. The actual monetary amount that results from the resolution of the underlying transaction(s), event(s), or condition(s) addressed by the accounting estimate.

Requirements**Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities**

.08 When performing risk assessment procedures and related activities to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, as required by section 315, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the following in order to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement for accounting estimates.³ (Ref: par. .A11)

- a. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to accounting estimates, including related disclosures. (Ref: par. .A12–.A14)
- b. How management identifies those transactions, events, and conditions that may give rise to the need for accounting estimates to be recognized or disclosed in the financial statements. In obtaining this understanding, the auditor should make inquiries of management about changes in circumstances that may give rise to new, or the need to revise existing, accounting estimates. (Ref: par. .A15–.A20)

³ Paragraphs .05–.06 and .12–.13 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

- c. How management makes the accounting estimates and the data on which they are based, including (Ref: par. .A21–.A22)
 - i. the method(s), including, when applicable, the model, used in making the accounting estimate; (Ref: par. .A23–.A25)
 - ii. relevant controls; (Ref: par. .A26–.A27)
 - iii. whether management has used a specialist; (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)
 - iv. the assumptions underlying the accounting estimates; (Ref: par. .A30–.A35)
 - v. whether there has been or ought to have been a change from the prior period in the method(s) or assumption(s) for making the accounting estimates and, if so, why; and (Ref: par. .A36)
 - vi. whether and, if so, how management has assessed the effect of estimation uncertainty. (Ref: par. .A37)

.09 The auditor should review the outcome of accounting estimates included in the prior period financial statements or, when applicable, their subsequent reestimation for the purpose of the current period. The nature and extent of the auditor's review takes account of the nature of the accounting estimates and whether the information obtained from the review would be relevant to identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement of accounting estimates made in the current period financial statements. However, the review is not intended to call into question the auditor's professional judgments made in the prior periods that were based on information available at the time. (Ref: par. .A38–.A44)

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

.10 In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement, as required by section 315, the auditor should evaluate the degree of estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate.⁴ (Ref: par. .A45–.A46)

.11 The auditor should determine whether, in the auditor's professional judgment, any of those accounting estimates that have been identified as having high estimation uncertainty give rise to significant risks. (Ref: par. .A47–.A51)

Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement

.12 Based on the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor should determine (Ref: par. .A52)

- a. whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to the accounting estimate and (Ref: par. .A53–.A57)
- b. whether the methods for making the accounting estimates are appropriate and have been applied consistently and whether changes from the prior period, if any, in accounting estimates or the method for making them are appropriate in the circumstances. (Ref: par. .A58–.A59)

.13 In responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement, as required by section 330, the auditor should undertake one or more of the following, taking into account the nature of the accounting estimate.⁵ (Ref: par. .A60–.A62)

- a. Determine whether events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report provide audit evidence regarding the accounting estimate. (Ref: par. .A63–.A67)
- b. Test how management made the accounting estimate and the data on which it is based. In doing so, the auditor should evaluate whether (Ref: par. .A68–.A71)
 - i. the method of measurement used is appropriate in the circumstances, (Ref: par. .A72–.A77)

⁴ Paragraph .26 of section 315.

⁵ Paragraphs .05–.06 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

366 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- ii. the assumptions used by management are reasonable in light of the measurement objectives of the applicable financial reporting framework, and (Ref: par. .A78–.A89)
- iii. the data on which the estimate is based is sufficiently reliable for the auditor's purposes. (Ref: par. .A70)
- c. Test the operating effectiveness of the controls over how management made the accounting estimate, together with appropriate substantive procedures. (Ref: par. .A90–.A92)
- d. Develop a point estimate or range to evaluate management's point estimate. For this purpose (Ref: par. .A93–.A97)
 - i. if the auditor uses assumptions or methods that differ from management's, the auditor should obtain an understanding of management's assumptions or methods sufficient to establish that the auditor's point estimate or range takes into account relevant variables and to evaluate any significant differences from management's point estimate. (Ref: par. .A98)
 - ii. if the auditor concludes that it is appropriate to use a range, the auditor should narrow the range, based on audit evidence available, until all outcomes within the range are considered reasonable. (Ref: par. .A99–.A101)

.14 In determining the matters identified in paragraph .12 or in responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement in accordance with paragraph .13, the auditor should consider whether specialized skills or knowledge with regard to one or more aspects of the accounting estimates is required in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A102–.A107)

Further Substantive Procedures to Respond to Significant Risks (Ref: par. .A108)***Estimation Uncertainty***

.15 For accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, in addition to other substantive procedures performed to meet the requirements of section 330, the auditor should evaluate the following:⁶

- a. How management has considered alternative assumptions or outcomes and why it has rejected them or how management has otherwise addressed estimation uncertainty in making the accounting estimate (Ref: par. .A109–.A112)
- b. Whether the significant assumptions used by management are reasonable (Ref: par. .A113–.A115)
- c. When relevant to the reasonableness of the significant assumptions used by management or the appropriate application of the applicable financial reporting framework, management's intent to carry out specific courses of action and its ability to do so (Ref: par. .A116)

.16 If, in the auditor's professional judgment, management has not addressed adequately the effects of estimation uncertainty on the accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, the auditor should, if considered necessary, develop a range with which to evaluate the reasonableness of the accounting estimate. (Ref: par. .A117–.A118)

Recognition and Measurement Criteria

.17 For accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether

- a. management's decision to recognize or not recognize the accounting estimates in the financial statements and (Ref: par. .A119–.A120)
- b. the selected measurement basis for the accounting estimates (Ref: par. .A121)

are in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

⁶ Paragraph .18 of section 330.

Evaluating the Reasonableness of the Accounting Estimates and Determining Misstatements

.18 The auditor should evaluate, based on the audit evidence, whether the accounting estimates in the financial statements are either reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework or are misstated. (Ref: par. .A122–.A127)

Disclosures Related to Accounting Estimates

.19 The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the disclosures in the financial statements related to accounting estimates are in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A128–.A129)

.20 For accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, the auditor also should evaluate the adequacy of the disclosure of estimation uncertainty in the financial statements in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A108 and .A130–.A132)

Indicators of Possible Management Bias

.21 The auditor should review the judgments and decisions made by management in the making of accounting estimates to identify whether indicators of possible management bias exist. Indicators of possible management bias do not, themselves, constitute misstatements for the purposes of drawing conclusions on the reasonableness of individual accounting estimates. (Ref: par. .A133–.A134)

Documentation

.22 The auditor should include in the audit documentation.⁷

- a. for those accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, the basis for the auditor's conclusions about the reasonableness of accounting estimates and their disclosure and
- b. indicators of possible management bias, if any. (Ref: par. .A135)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Nature of Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .02)**

.A1 Because of the uncertainties inherent in business activities, some financial statement items can only be estimated. Further, the specific characteristics of an asset, a liability, or a component of equity or the basis or method of measurement prescribed by the financial reporting framework may give rise to the need to estimate a financial statement item. Some financial reporting frameworks prescribe specific methods of measurement and the disclosures that are required to be made in the financial statements whereas other financial reporting frameworks are less specific.

.A2 Some accounting estimates involve relatively low estimation uncertainty and may give rise to lower risks of material misstatements. For example

- accounting estimates arising in entities that engage in business activities that are not complex.
- accounting estimates that are frequently made and updated because they relate to routine transactions.
- accounting estimates derived from data that is readily available, such as published interest rate data or exchange-traded prices of securities. Such data may be referred to as *observable* in the context of a fair value accounting estimate.
- fair value accounting estimates in which the method of measurement prescribed by the applicable financial reporting framework is simple and applied easily to the asset or liability requiring measurement at fair value.
- fair value accounting estimates in which the model used to measure the accounting estimate is well-known or generally accepted, provided that the assumptions or inputs to the model are observable.

⁷ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

368 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A3 However, for some accounting estimates, relatively high estimation uncertainty may exist, particularly when they are based on significant assumptions. For example

- a. accounting estimates relating to the outcome of litigation.
- b. fair value accounting estimates for derivative financial instruments not publicly traded.
- c. fair value accounting estimates for which a highly specialized entity-developed model is used or for which there are assumptions or inputs that cannot be observed in the marketplace.

.A4 The degree of estimation uncertainty varies based on the nature of the accounting estimate, the extent to which there is a generally accepted method or model used to make the accounting estimate, and the subjectivity of the assumptions used to make the accounting estimate. In some cases, estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate may be so great that the recognition criteria in the applicable financial reporting framework are not met, and the accounting estimate cannot be made.

.A5 Not all financial statement items requiring measurement at fair value involve estimation uncertainty. For example, this may be the case for some financial statement items when an active and open market exists that provides readily available and reliable information on the prices at which actual exchanges occur, in which case the existence of published price quotations ordinarily is the best audit evidence of fair value. However, estimation uncertainty may exist even when the valuation technique and data are well-defined. For example, valuation of securities quoted on an active and open market at the listed market price may require adjustment if the holding is significant in relation to the market or is subject to restrictions in marketability. In addition, general economic circumstances prevailing at the time (for example, illiquidity in a particular market) may affect estimation uncertainty.

.A6 Additional examples of situations when accounting estimates, other than fair value accounting estimates, may be required include the following:

- Allowance for doubtful accounts
- Inventory obsolescence
- Warranty obligations
- Depreciation method or asset useful life
- Provision against the carrying amount of an investment when uncertainty regarding its recoverability exists
- Outcome of long-term contracts
- Costs arising from litigation settlements and judgments

.A7 Additional examples of situations when fair value accounting estimates may be required include the following:

- Complex financial instruments, which are not traded in an active and open market
- Share-based payments
- Property or equipment held for disposal
- Certain assets or liabilities acquired in a business combination, including goodwill and intangible assets
- Transactions involving the exchange of assets or liabilities between independent parties without monetary consideration (for example, a nonmonetary exchange of plant facilities in different lines of business)

.A8 Estimation involves judgments based on information available when the financial statements are prepared. For many accounting estimates, these include making assumptions about matters that are uncertain at the time of estimation. The auditor is not responsible for predicting future conditions, transactions, or events that, if known at the time of the audit, might have significantly affected management's actions or the assumptions used by management.

Management Bias

.A9 Financial reporting frameworks often call for neutrality (that is, freedom from bias). However, accounting estimates are imprecise and can be influenced by management judgment. Such

judgment may involve unintentional or intentional management bias (for example, as a result of motivation to achieve a desired result). The susceptibility of an accounting estimate to management bias increases with the subjectivity involved in making it. Unintentional management bias and the potential for intentional management bias are inherent in subjective decisions that are often required in making an accounting estimate. For continuing audits, indicators of possible management bias identified during the audit of the preceding periods influence the planning and risk identification and assessment activities of the auditor in the current period.

.A10 Management bias can be difficult to detect at an account level. It may only be identified when considered in the aggregate of groups of accounting estimates or all accounting estimates or when observed over a number of accounting periods. Although some form of management bias is inherent in subjective decisions, in making such judgments, there may be no intention by management to mislead the users of financial statements. However, when intention to mislead exists, management bias is fraudulent in nature.

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities (Ref: par. .08)

.A11 The risk assessment procedures and related activities required by paragraphs .08–.09 assist the auditor in developing an expectation of the nature and type of accounting estimates that an entity may have. The nature and extent of the risk assessment procedures and activities are matters of professional judgment. The auditor's primary consideration is whether the understanding that has been obtained is sufficient to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement related to accounting estimates and to plan the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. When the risk of material misstatement related to an accounting estimate has been significantly reduced by audit evidence relating to events occurring after management has made the estimate (for example, if litigation has been settled, the entity has sold an impaired asset, or receivables have been collected), the nature and extent of the procedures and activities required by paragraphs .08c and .09 may be significantly reduced or may not be necessary at all.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Requirements of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .08a)

.A12 Obtaining an understanding of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework assists the auditor in determining, for example, whether it

- prescribes certain conditions for the recognition,⁸ or methods for the measurement, of accounting estimates.
- specifies certain conditions that permit or require measurement at a fair value.
- specifies required or permitted disclosures.

Obtaining this understanding also provides the auditor with a basis for discussion with management about how management has applied those requirements relevant to the accounting estimate and the auditor's determination of whether they have been appropriately applied.

.A13 Financial reporting frameworks may provide guidance for management on determining point estimates when alternatives exist. For example, some financial reporting frameworks require that the point estimate selected be the alternative that reflects management's judgment of the most likely outcome;⁹ others may require the use of a discounted probability-weighted expected value. In some cases, management may be able to make a point estimate directly. In other cases, management may be able to make a reliable point estimate only after considering alternative assumptions or outcomes from which it is able to determine a point estimate.

.A14 Financial reporting frameworks may require the disclosure of information concerning the significant assumptions to which the accounting estimate is particularly sensitive. Furthermore,

⁸ Most financial reporting frameworks require incorporation in the balance sheet or income statement of items that satisfy their criteria for recognition. Disclosure of accounting policies or adding notes to the financial statements does not rectify a failure to recognize such items, including accounting estimates.

⁹ Different financial reporting frameworks may use different terminology to describe point estimates determined in this way.

370 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

when a high degree of estimation uncertainty exists, some financial reporting frameworks do not permit an accounting estimate to be recognized in the financial statements, but certain disclosures may be required in the notes to the financial statements.

Obtaining an Understanding of How Management Identifies the Need for Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .08b)

.A15 The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements requires management to determine whether a transaction, an event, or a condition gives rise to the need to make an accounting estimate and that all necessary accounting estimates have been recognized, measured, and disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A16 Management's identification of transactions, events, and conditions that give rise to the need for accounting estimates is likely to be based on

- management's knowledge of the entity's business and the industry in which it operates.
- management's knowledge of the implementation of business strategies in the current period.
- when applicable, management's cumulative experience of preparing the entity's financial statements in prior periods.

In such cases, the auditor may obtain an understanding of how management identifies the need for accounting estimates primarily through inquiry of management. In other cases, when management's process is more structured (for example, when management has a formal risk management function), the auditor may perform risk assessment procedures directed at the methods and practices followed by management for periodically reviewing the circumstances that give rise to the accounting estimates and reestimating the accounting estimates as necessary. The completeness of accounting estimates is often an important consideration of the auditor, particularly accounting estimates relating to liabilities.

.A17 The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment obtained during the performance of risk assessment procedures, together with other audit evidence obtained during the course of the audit, assist the auditor in identifying circumstances or changes in circumstances that may give rise to the need for an accounting estimate.

.A18 Inquiries of management about changes in circumstances may include, for example, inquiries about whether

- the entity has engaged in new types of transactions that may give rise to accounting estimates.
- terms of transactions that gave rise to accounting estimates have changed.
- accounting policies relating to accounting estimates have changed as a result of changes to the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework or otherwise.
- regulatory or other changes outside the control of management have occurred that may require management to revise, or make new, accounting estimates.
- new conditions or events have occurred that may give rise to the need for new or revised accounting estimates.

.A19 During the audit, the auditor may identify transactions, events, and conditions that give rise to the need for accounting estimates that management failed to identify. Section 315 addresses circumstances in which the auditor identifies risks of material misstatement that management failed to identify, including determining whether a significant deficiency or material weakness in internal control exists with regard to the entity's risk assessment processes.¹⁰

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A20 Obtaining this understanding for smaller entities is often less complex because their business activities are often limited, and transactions are less complex. Further, often, a single person (for example, the owner-manager) identifies the need to make an accounting estimate, and the auditor may focus inquiries accordingly.

¹⁰ Paragraph .17 of section 315.

Obtaining an Understanding of How Management Makes the Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .08c)

.A21 The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements also requires management to establish financial reporting processes for making accounting estimates, including adequate internal control. Such processes include the following:

- Selecting appropriate accounting policies and prescribing estimation processes, including appropriate estimation or valuation techniques, including, when applicable, the appropriate models
- Developing or identifying relevant data and assumptions that affect accounting estimates
- Periodically reviewing the circumstances that give rise to the accounting estimates and reestimating the accounting estimates as necessary

.A22 Matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of how management makes the accounting estimates include, for example

- the types of accounts or transactions to which the accounting estimates relate (for example, whether the accounting estimates arise from the recording of routine and recurring transactions or whether they arise from nonrecurring or unusual transactions).
- whether and, if so, how management has used recognized measurement techniques for making particular accounting estimates.
- whether the accounting estimates were made based on data available at an interim date and, if so, whether and how management has taken into account the effect of events, transactions, and changes in circumstances occurring between that date and the period end.

Method of Measurement, Including the Use of Models (Ref: par. .08c(i))

.A23 In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may prescribe the method of measurement for an accounting estimate (for example, a particular model that is to be used in measuring a fair value estimate). In many cases, however, the applicable financial reporting framework does not prescribe the method of measurement or may specify alternative methods for measurement.

.A24 When the applicable financial reporting framework does not prescribe a particular method to be used in the circumstances, matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of the method or, when applicable, the model used to make accounting estimates include, for example

- how management considered the nature of the asset or liability being estimated when selecting a particular method.
- whether the entity operates in a particular business, industry, or environment in which methods commonly used to make the particular type of accounting estimate exist.

.A25 There may be greater risks of material misstatement, for example, in cases when management has internally developed a model to be used to make the accounting estimate or is departing from a method commonly used in a particular business, industry, or environment.

Relevant Controls (Ref: par. .08c(ii))

.A26 Matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of relevant controls include, for example, the experience and competence of those who make the accounting estimates and controls related to

- how management determines the completeness, relevance, and accuracy of the data used to develop accounting estimates.
- the review and approval of accounting estimates, including the assumptions or inputs used in their development, by appropriate levels of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.
- the segregation of duties between those committing the entity to the underlying transactions and those responsible for making the accounting estimates, including whether the assignment of responsibilities appropriately takes account of the nature of the entity and

372 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

its products or services (for example, in the case of a large financial institution, relevant segregation of duties may include an independent function responsible for estimation and validation of fair value pricing of the entity's proprietary financial products staffed by individuals whose remuneration is not tied to such products).

- services provided by a service organization, if any, to provide fair value or other accounting estimates measurements or the data that supports the measurement. When an entity uses a service organization, section 402, *Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization*, applies.

.A27 Other controls may be relevant to making the accounting estimates, depending on the circumstances. For example, if the entity uses specific models for making accounting estimates, management may put into place specific policies and procedures around such models. These may include, for example, those established over

- the design and development or selection of a particular model for a particular purpose.
- the use of the model.
- the maintenance and periodic validation of the integrity of the model.
- security, such as controls that prevent changes to the model or data without authorization.

*Management's Use of Specialists*¹¹ (Ref: par. .08c(iii))

.A28 Management may have, or the entity may employ individuals with, the experience and competence necessary to make estimates. In some cases, however, management may need to engage a specialist to make estimates or assist in making them. This need may arise because of, for example

- the specialized nature of the matter requiring estimation (for example, the measurement of mineral or hydrocarbon reserves in extractive industries).
- the technical nature of the models required to meet the relevant requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, as may be the case in certain measurements at fair value.
- the unusual or infrequent nature of the condition, transaction, or event requiring an accounting estimate.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A29 Discussion with the owner-manager early in the audit process about the nature of any accounting estimates, the completeness of the required accounting estimates, and the adequacy of the estimating process may assist the owner-manager in determining the need to use a specialist.

Assumptions (Ref: par. .08c(iv))

.A30 Assumptions may be characterized by predictions of future conditions, transactions, or events used in making an estimate and are integral components of accounting estimates. Matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of the assumptions underlying the accounting estimates include, for example

- the nature of the assumptions, including which of the assumptions are likely to be significant assumptions.
- how management assesses whether the assumptions are relevant and complete (that is, that all relevant variables have been taken into account).
- when applicable, how management determines that the assumptions used are internally consistent.
- whether the assumptions relate to matters within the control of management (for example, assumptions about the maintenance programs that may affect the estimation of an asset's useful life) and how they conform to the entity's business plans and the external environment or to matters that are outside its control (for example, assumptions about

¹¹ See paragraph .08 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*, which addresses management's specialists.

- interest rates, mortality rates, potential judicial or regulatory actions, or the variability and timing of future cash flows).
- the nature and extent of documentation, if any, supporting the assumptions.

Assumptions may be made or identified by a specialist to assist management in making the accounting estimates. Such assumptions, when used by management, become management's assumptions.

.A31 In some cases, assumptions may be referred to as *inputs* (for example, when management uses a model to make an accounting estimate), though the term *inputs* may also be used to refer to the underlying data to which specific assumptions are applied.

.A32 Management may support assumptions with different types of information drawn from internal and external sources, the relevance and reliability of which will vary. In some cases, an assumption may be reliably based on applicable information from either external sources (for example, published interest rate or other statistical data) or internal sources (for example, historical information or previous conditions experienced by the entity). In other cases, an assumption may be more subjective (for example, when the entity has no experience or external sources from which to draw).

.A33 In the case of fair value accounting estimates, assumptions reflect, or are consistent with, what knowledgeable, willing arm's length parties (sometimes referred to as *market participants* or equivalent) would use in determining fair value when exchanging an asset or settling a liability. Specific assumptions also will vary with the characteristics of the asset or liability being valued; the valuation technique used (for example, a market approach or an income approach); and the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A34 With respect to fair value accounting estimates, assumptions or inputs vary in terms of their source and bases, as follows:

- a. Those that reflect what market participants would use in pricing an asset or a liability, developed based on market data obtained from sources independent of the reporting entity (sometimes referred to as *observable inputs* or equivalent)
- b. Those that reflect the entity's own judgments about what assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability, developed based on the best information available in the circumstances (sometimes referred to as *unobservable inputs* or equivalent)

In practice, however, the distinction between *a* and *b* is not always apparent. Further, it may be necessary for management to select from a number of different assumptions used by different market participants.

.A35 The extent of subjectivity, such as whether an assumption or input is observable, influences the degree of estimation uncertainty and, thereby, the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement for a particular accounting estimate.

Changes in Methods or Assumptions for Making Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .08c(v))

.A36 In obtaining an understanding of how management makes the accounting estimates, the auditor is required to obtain an understanding about whether there has been or ought to have been a change from the prior period in the methods or assumptions for making the accounting estimates. A specific estimation method or assumption may need to be changed in response to changes in the environment or circumstances affecting the entity or in the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. If management has changed the method or assumption for making an accounting estimate, it is important that management can demonstrate that the new method or assumption is more appropriate or is responsive to such changes. For example, if management changes the basis of making an accounting estimate from a liquid market approach to an illiquid market approach, the auditor challenges whether management's assumptions about the marketplace are reasonable in light of economic circumstances.

374 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Estimation Uncertainty (Ref: par. .08c(vi))***

.A37 Matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of whether and, if so, how management has assessed the effect of estimation uncertainty include, for example,

- whether and, if so, how management has considered alternative assumptions or outcomes by, for example, performing a sensitivity analysis to determine the effect of changes in the assumptions on an accounting estimate.
- how management determines the accounting estimate when analysis indicates a number of outcome scenarios.
- whether management monitors the outcome of accounting estimates made in the prior period and whether management has appropriately responded to the outcome of that monitoring procedure.

Reviewing Prior Period Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .09)

.A38 The nature and extent of the review of the outcome of accounting estimates included in the prior period financial statements is a matter of professional judgment. In performing the procedures required in paragraph .09, it may not be necessary to review the outcome of every accounting estimate included in the prior period.

.A39 The outcome of an accounting estimate will often differ from the accounting estimate recognized in the prior period financial statements. By performing risk assessment procedures to identify and understand the reasons for such differences, the auditor may obtain

- information regarding the effectiveness of management's prior period estimation process, from which the auditor can judge the likely effectiveness of management's current process;
- audit evidence that is pertinent to the reestimation, in the current period, of prior period accounting estimates; or
- audit evidence of matters that may be required to be disclosed in the financial statements, such as estimation uncertainty.

.A40 The review of prior period accounting estimates may also assist the auditor, in the current period, in identifying circumstances or conditions that increase the susceptibility of accounting estimates to, or indicate the presence of, possible management bias. The auditor's professional skepticism assists in identifying such circumstances or conditions and in determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

.A41 A retrospective review of management judgments and assumptions related to significant accounting estimates is also required by section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.¹² That review is conducted as part of the requirement for the auditor to design and perform procedures to review accounting estimates for biases that could represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, in response to the risks of management override of controls. As a practical matter, the auditor's review of prior period accounting estimates as a risk assessment procedure in accordance with this section may be carried out in conjunction with the review required by section 240.

.A42 The auditor may judge that a more detailed review is required for those accounting estimates that were identified during the prior period audit as having high estimation uncertainty or for those accounting estimates that have changed significantly from the prior period. On the other hand, for example, for accounting estimates that arise from the recording of routine and recurring transactions, the auditor may judge that the application of analytical procedures as risk assessment procedures is sufficient for purposes of the review.

.A43 For fair value accounting estimates and other accounting estimates based on current conditions at the measurement date, more variation may exist between the fair value amount recognized in the prior period financial statements and the outcome (or the amount reestimated for the

¹² Paragraph .32 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

purpose of the current period). This is because the measurement objective for such accounting estimates deals with perceptions about value at a point in time, which may change significantly and rapidly as the environment in which the entity operates changes. Therefore, the auditor may focus the review on obtaining information that would be relevant to identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement. For example, in some cases, obtaining an understanding of changes in market participant assumptions that affected the outcome of a prior period fair value accounting estimate may be unlikely to provide relevant information for audit purposes. If so, then the auditor's consideration of the outcome of prior period fair value accounting estimates may be more appropriately directed toward understanding the effectiveness of management's prior estimation process (that is, management's track record) from which the auditor can judge the likely effectiveness of management's current process.

.A44 A difference between the outcome of an accounting estimate and the amount recognized in the prior period financial statements does not necessarily represent a misstatement of the prior period financial statements. However, it may do so if, for example, the difference arises from information that was available to management when the prior period's financial statements were finalized or that could reasonably be expected to have been obtained and taken into account in the preparation of those financial statements. Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, addresses situations when facts become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report that, had they been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report. The applicable financial reporting framework may contain guidance on distinguishing between changes in accounting estimates that constitute misstatements and changes that do not and the accounting treatment required to be followed.

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

Estimation Uncertainty (Ref: par. .10)

.A45 The degree of estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate may be influenced by factors such as

- the extent to which the accounting estimate depends on judgment.
- the sensitivity of the accounting estimate to changes in assumptions.
- the existence of recognized measurement techniques that may mitigate the estimation uncertainty (though the subjectivity of the assumptions used as inputs may, nevertheless, give rise to estimation uncertainty).
- the length of the forecast period and the relevance of data drawn from past events to forecast future events.
- the availability of reliable data from external sources.
- the extent to which the accounting estimate is based on observable or unobservable inputs.

The degree of estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate may influence the estimate's susceptibility to bias.

.A46 Matters that the auditor considers in assessing the risks of material misstatement may also include the following:

- The actual or expected magnitude of an accounting estimate
- The recorded amount of the accounting estimate (that is, management's point estimate) in relation to the amount expected by the auditor to be recorded
- Whether management has used a specialist in making the accounting estimate
- The outcome of the review of prior period accounting estimates

High Estimation Uncertainty and Significant Risks (Ref: par. .11)

.A47 Examples of accounting estimates that may have high estimation uncertainty include the following:

- Accounting estimates that are highly dependent upon judgment (for example, judgments about the outcome of pending litigation or the amount and timing of future cash flows dependent on uncertain events many years in the future)

376 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Accounting estimates that are not calculated using recognized measurement techniques
- Accounting estimates in which the results of the auditor's review of similar accounting estimates made in the prior period financial statements indicate a substantial difference between the original accounting estimate and the actual outcome
- Fair value accounting estimates for which a highly specialized, entity-developed model is used or for which there are no observable inputs

.A48 A seemingly immaterial accounting estimate may have the potential to result in a material misstatement due to the estimation uncertainty associated with the estimation (that is, the size of the amount recognized or disclosed in the financial statements for an accounting estimate may not be an indicator of its estimation uncertainty).

.A49 In some circumstances, the estimation uncertainty is so high that a reasonable accounting estimate cannot be made. The applicable financial reporting framework may, therefore, preclude recognition of the item in the financial statements or its measurement at fair value. In such cases, the significant risks relate not only to whether an accounting estimate should be recognized or whether it should be measured at fair value but also to the adequacy of the disclosures. With respect to such accounting estimates, the applicable financial reporting framework may require disclosure of the accounting estimates and the high estimation uncertainty associated with them (see paragraphs .A128–.A131).

.A50 If the auditor determines that an accounting estimate gives rise to a significant risk, the auditor is required by section 315 to obtain an understanding of the entity's controls, including control activities.¹³

.A51 In some cases, the estimation uncertainty of an accounting estimate may lead the auditor to consider whether such estimation uncertainty indicates that substantial doubt could exist about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. Section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] addresses such circumstances.

Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement (Ref: par. . 12)

.A52 Section 330 requires the auditor to design and perform audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement related to accounting estimates at both the financial statement and relevant assertion levels.¹⁴ Paragraphs .A53–.A121 focus on specific responses at the relevant assertion level only. Based on the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor is required to exercise professional judgment¹⁵ in determining the nature, timing, and extent of the procedures necessary to conclude whether management appropriately applied the requirements of the financial reporting framework, including that the methods used for making the estimates are appropriate.

Application of the Requirements of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. . 12a)

.A53 Many financial reporting frameworks prescribe certain conditions for the recognition of accounting estimates and specify the methods for making them and required disclosures. Such requirements may be complex and require the application of judgment. Based on the understand-

¹³ Paragraph .30 of section 315.

[†] SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁴ Paragraph .18 of section 330.

¹⁵ Paragraph .16 of section 200.

ing obtained in performing risk assessment procedures, the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework that may be susceptible to misapplication or differing interpretations become the focus of the auditor's attention.

.A54 Determining whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework is based, in part, on the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment. For example, the measurement of the fair value of some items, such as intangible assets acquired in a business combination, may involve special considerations that are affected by the nature of the entity and its operations.

.A55 In some situations, additional audit procedures, such as the inspection by the auditor of the current physical condition of an asset, may be necessary to determine whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A56 Collateral often is assigned for certain types of investments in debt instruments that either are required to be measured at fair value or are evaluated for possible impairment. If the collateral is an important factor in measuring the fair value of the investment or evaluating its carrying amount, it may be necessary for the auditor—in determining whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework—to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence; value; rights; and access to, or transferability of, such collateral (including consideration of whether all appropriate liens have been filed and appropriate disclosures have been made).

.A57 The application of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to consider changes in the environment or circumstances that affect the entity. For example, the introduction of an active market for a particular class of asset or liability may indicate that the use of discounted cash flows to estimate the fair value of such asset or liability is no longer appropriate.

Consistency in Methods and Basis for Changes (Ref: par. .12b)

.A58 The auditor's consideration of a change in an accounting estimate or in the method for making it from the prior period is important because a change that is not based on a change in circumstances or new information is considered arbitrary. Arbitrary changes in an accounting estimate result in inconsistent financial statements over time and may give rise to a financial statement misstatement or be an indicator of possible management bias.

.A59 Management often is able to demonstrate good reason for a change in an accounting estimate or the method for making an accounting estimate from one period to another based on a change in circumstances. What constitutes a good reason and the adequacy of support for management's contention that there has been a change in circumstances that warrants a change in an accounting estimate or the method for making an accounting estimate are matters of judgment.

Responses to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatements (Ref: par. .13)

.A60 The auditor's decision about which response, individually or in combination, in paragraph .13 to undertake to respond to the risks of material misstatement may be influenced by such matters as the following:

- The nature of the accounting estimate, including whether it arises from routine or non-routine transactions
- Whether the procedure(s) is expected to effectively provide the auditor with sufficient appropriate audit evidence
- The assessed risk of material misstatement, including whether the assessed risk is a significant risk

.A61 For example, when evaluating the reasonableness of the allowance for doubtful accounts, an effective procedure for the auditor may be to review subsequent cash collections in combination with other procedures. When the estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate is high (for example, an accounting estimate based on a proprietary model for which

378 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

unobservable inputs exist), it may be that a combination of the responses to assessed risks in paragraph .13 is necessary in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.A62 Additional guidance explaining the circumstances in which each of the responses may be appropriate is provided in paragraphs .A63–.A101.

Events Occurring Up to the Date of the Auditor’s Report (Ref: par. .13a)

.A63 Determining whether events occurring up to the date of the auditor’s report provide audit evidence regarding the accounting estimate may be an appropriate response when such events are expected to

- occur and
- provide audit evidence that confirms or contradicts the accounting estimate.

.A64 Events occurring up to the date of the auditor’s report may sometimes provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence about an accounting estimate. For example, sale of the complete inventory of a superseded product shortly after the period-end may provide audit evidence relating to the estimate of its net realizable value. In such cases, there may be no need to perform additional audit procedures on the accounting estimate, provided that sufficient appropriate evidence about the events is obtained.

.A65 For some accounting estimates, events occurring up to the date of the auditor’s report are unlikely to provide audit evidence regarding the accounting estimate. For example, the conditions or events relating to some accounting estimates develop only over an extended period. Also, because of the measurement objective of fair value accounting estimates, information after the period-end may not reflect the events or conditions existing at the balance sheet date and, therefore, may not be relevant to the measurement of the fair value accounting estimate. Paragraph .13 identifies other responses to the risks of material misstatement that the auditor may undertake.

.A66 In some cases, events that contradict the accounting estimate may indicate that the amount recorded is misstated, that management has ineffective processes for making accounting estimates, or that management bias exists in the making of accounting estimates.

.A67 Even though the auditor may decide not to undertake the approach referred to in paragraph .13a with respect to specific accounting estimates, the auditor is required to comply with section 560. The auditor is required to perform audit procedures designed to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that all subsequent events that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements have been identified.¹⁶ Because the measurement of many accounting estimates, other than fair value accounting estimates, usually depends on the outcome of future conditions, transactions, or events, the auditor’s work under section 560 is particularly relevant.

Testing How Management Made the Accounting Estimate (Ref: par. .13b)

.A68 Testing how management made the accounting estimate and the data on which it is based may be an appropriate response when the accounting estimate is a fair value accounting estimate developed on a model that uses observable and unobservable inputs. It may also be appropriate when, for example

- the accounting estimate is derived from the routine processing of data by the entity’s accounting system.
- the auditor’s review of similar accounting estimates made in the prior period financial statements suggests that management’s current period process is likely to be effective.
- the accounting estimate is based on a large population of items of a similar nature that individually are not significant.

.A69 Testing how management made the accounting estimate and the data on which it is based may involve, for example, the following:

¹⁶ Paragraphs .09 and .11 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

- Testing the extent to which data on which the accounting estimate is based is accurate, complete, and relevant and whether the accounting estimate has been properly determined using such data and management assumptions
- Considering the source, relevance, and reliability of external data or information, including that received from management's specialists,¹⁷ to assist in making an accounting estimate
- Determining how management has taken into account the effect of events, transactions, and changes in circumstances occurring between the date that the estimate or inputs to the estimate were determined and the reporting date, if the estimate was not made as of a date that coincides with the reporting date (for example, a valuation by an independent appraiser may be as of a different date)
- Recalculating the accounting estimate and reviewing, for internal consistency, information used to determine the estimate
- Considering management's review and approval processes

.A70 In accordance with section 500, *Audit Evidence*, the auditor is required to evaluate whether the data on which the estimate is based is sufficiently reliable for the auditor's purposes, including, as necessary.¹⁸

- a. obtaining audit evidence about the accuracy and completeness of the data.
- b. evaluating whether the data is sufficiently precise and detailed for the auditor's purposes.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A71 In smaller entities, the process for making accounting estimates is likely to be less structured than in larger entities. Smaller entities with active management involvement may have limited descriptions of accounting procedures, unsophisticated accounting records, or few written policies. Even if the entity has no formal established process, management may still be able to provide a basis upon which the auditor can test the accounting estimate.

Evaluating the Method of Measurement (Ref: par. .13b(ii))

.A72 When the applicable financial reporting framework does not prescribe the method of measurement, evaluating whether the method used (including any applicable model) is appropriate in the circumstances is a matter of professional judgment.

.A73 For this purpose, matters that the auditor may consider include, for example, whether

- management's rationale for the method selected is reasonable.
- management sufficiently and appropriately has evaluated and applied the criteria, if any, provided in the applicable financial reporting framework to support the selected method.
- the method is appropriate and sufficient data is available in the circumstances, given the nature of the asset or liability being estimated and the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to accounting estimates.
- the method is appropriate with regard to the business, industry, and environment in which the entity operates.

.A74 In some cases, management may have determined that different methods result in a range of significantly different estimates. In such cases, obtaining an understanding of how the entity has investigated the reasons for these differences may assist the auditor in evaluating the appropriateness of the method selected.

Evaluating the Use of Models

.A75 In some cases, particularly when making fair value accounting estimates, management may use a model. Whether the model used is appropriate in the circumstances may depend on a

¹⁷ Paragraph .05 of section 500 defines a *management's specialist* as "[a]n individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements."

¹⁸ Paragraph .09 of section 500.

380 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

number of factors, such as the nature of the entity and its environment, including the industry in which it operates and the specific asset or liability being measured.

.A76 The extent to which the considerations in paragraph .A77 are relevant depends on the circumstances, including whether the model is one that is commercially available for use in a particular sector or industry, or a proprietary model. In some cases, an entity may use a management specialist¹⁹ to develop and test a model.

.A77 Depending on the circumstances, matters that the auditor may also consider in testing the model include, for example, whether

- the model is validated prior to usage, with periodic reviews to ensure it is still suitable for its intended use. The entity's validation process may include evaluation of
 - the model's theoretical soundness and mathematical integrity, including the appropriateness of model parameters.
 - the consistency and completeness of the model's inputs with market practices.
 - the model's output compared with actual transactions.
- appropriate change control policies and procedures exist.
- the model is periodically calibrated and tested for validity, particularly when inputs are subjective.
- adjustments are made to the output of the model, including in the case of fair value accounting estimates whether such adjustments reflect the assumptions that market participants would use in similar circumstances.
- the model is adequately documented, including the model's intended applications and limitations and its key parameters, required inputs, and results of any validation analysis performed.

Assumptions Used by Management (Ref: par. .13b(ii))

.A78 The auditor's evaluation of the assumptions used by management is based only on information available to the auditor at the time of the audit. Audit procedures dealing with management assumptions, including those used as inputs to valuation models, are performed in the context of the audit of the entity's financial statements and not for the purpose of providing an opinion on the assumptions themselves.

.A79 Matters that the auditor may consider in evaluating the reasonableness of the assumptions used by management include, for example

- whether individual assumptions appear reasonable.
- whether the assumptions are interdependent and internally consistent.
- whether the assumptions appear reasonable when considered collectively or in conjunction with other assumptions, either for that accounting estimate or for other accounting estimates.
- in the case of fair value accounting estimates, whether the assumptions appropriately reflect observable market assumptions.

.A80 In evaluating the reasonableness of the assumptions supporting an accounting estimate, the auditor may identify one or more significant assumptions. If so, the existence of one or more significant assumptions may be an indicator that the accounting estimate has high estimation uncertainty and may, therefore, give rise to a significant risk related to recognition, measurement, or disclosure. Additional responses to significant risks are described in paragraphs .A108–.A121.

.A81 The assumptions on which accounting estimates are based may reflect what management expects will be the outcome of specific objectives and strategies. In such cases, the auditor may perform audit procedures to evaluate the reasonableness of such assumptions by considering, for example, whether the assumptions are consistent with

¹⁹ Paragraph .08 of section 500.

- the general economic environment and the entity's economic circumstances.
- the plans of the entity.
- assumptions made in prior periods, if relevant.
- the experience of, or previous conditions experienced by, the entity to the extent this historical information may be considered representative of future conditions or events.
- other assumptions used by management relating to the financial statements.

.A82 The reasonableness of the assumptions used may depend on management's intent and ability to carry out certain courses of action. Management often documents plans and intentions relevant to specific assets or liabilities, and the financial reporting framework may require it to do so. Although the extent of audit evidence to be obtained about management's intent and ability is a matter of professional judgment, the auditor's procedures may include the following:

- Review of management's history of carrying out its stated intentions
- Review of written plans and other documentation, including, when applicable, formally approved budgets, authorizations, or minutes
- Inquiry of management about its reasons for a particular course of action
- Review of events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements and up to the date of the auditor's report
- Evaluation of the entity's ability to carry out a particular course of action given the entity's economic circumstances, including the implications of its existing commitments

Certain financial reporting frameworks, however, may not permit management's intentions or plans to be taken into account when making an accounting estimate. This is often the case for fair value accounting estimates because their measurement objective requires that assumptions reflect those used by market participants.

.A83 Matters that the auditor may consider in evaluating the reasonableness of assumptions used by management underlying fair value accounting estimates, in addition to those discussed previously, when applicable, may include, for example

- when relevant, whether and, if so, how management has incorporated market-specific inputs into the development of assumptions.
- whether the assumptions are consistent with observable market conditions and the characteristics of the asset or liability being measured at fair value.
- whether the sources of market-participant assumptions are relevant and reliable and how management has selected the assumptions to use when a number of different market participant assumptions exist.
- when appropriate, whether and, if so, how management considered assumptions used in, or information about, comparable transactions, assets, or liabilities.

.A84 Further, fair value accounting estimates may comprise observable inputs, as well as unobservable inputs. When fair value accounting estimates are based on unobservable inputs, matters that the auditor may consider include, for example, how management supports

- the identification of the characteristics of market participants relevant to the accounting estimate.
- modifications it has made to its own assumptions to reflect its view of assumptions market participants would use.
- whether it has incorporated appropriate information.
- when applicable, how its assumptions take account of comparable transactions, assets, or liabilities.

If there are unobservable inputs, it is more likely that the auditor's evaluation of the assumptions will need to be combined with other responses to assessed risks in paragraph .13 in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. In such cases, it may be necessary for the auditor to perform other audit procedures (for example, examining documentation supporting the review and approval of the accounting estimate by appropriate levels of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance).

382 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A85 Challenges may exist for management when fair value accounting estimates have unobservable inputs, in particular, as a result of illiquid markets. Management may not have the expertise internally to value illiquid or complex financial instruments, and there may be limited sources of information available to establish their values. It may be necessary for management to make assumptions, including assumptions utilized by management based upon the work of a specialist, to develop fair value measurements for illiquid assets.

.A86 The reliability of audit evidence is influenced by its source and nature. For example, management may use a broker quote to support a fair value measurement; however, when the quote is obtained from the institution that initially sold the instrument, this evidence may be less objective and may need to be supplemented with evidence from one or more other brokers or information from a pricing service. Pricing services and brokers may use methods of valuation that are not known to management or the auditor. In accordance with paragraph .08c(i), the auditor is required to obtain an understanding of how such information was developed. For example, the auditor might inquire whether the value is based on private trades, trades of similar instruments, a cash flow model, or some combination of inputs. Inquiry into the nature of a broker quote is directed at its reliability and consistency with the objective of fair value measurement.

.A87 Changes in market conditions may require changes in valuation techniques. Consistency is generally a desirable quality in financial information but may be inappropriate if circumstances change. Paragraph .A57 gives the example of the introduction of an active market as an illustration of changed circumstances leading to a move from valuation by model to valuation by market price. In a period of market instability, the changes could be in the opposite direction because markets could become inactive. Even when models have been consistently used, a need for management to examine the continuing appropriateness of the assumptions exists. Further, models may have been calibrated in times when reasonable market information was available but may not provide reasonable valuations in times of unanticipated stress. Consequently, the degree of consistency of valuation techniques and the appropriateness of changes in technique or assumptions require the auditor's attention.

.A88 A change in valuation technique does not, however, justify a change in the underlying measurement objective (that is, fair value as defined in the financial reporting framework) to a different standard of value, such as an individual opinion of value. Section 500 addresses what constitutes audit evidence, the quantity and quality of audit evidence to be obtained, and the audit procedures that the auditor uses for obtaining that audit evidence. Unless management is able to support its valuations, it will be difficult for the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. However, as evidence about assumptions and the validity of models is necessarily less reliable than evidence of a market price taken from an active market, it may be necessary to look at more sources of evidence to accumulate sufficient appropriate evidence because the audit evidence needed is affected by the risk of misstatement (the greater the risk, the more audit evidence is likely to be required). For example, an auditor or auditor's specialist may use an independent model to compare its results with those of the model used by management in order to evaluate whether the values determined by management's model are reasonable.

.A89 In addition, the auditor may consider whether external sources provide audit evidence to which the auditor could benchmark an entity's practices. For example, sources that track losses recorded by institutions may provide the auditor with audit evidence about whether the entity's valuations are reasonable if it has invested in similar instruments as those institutions.

Testing the Operating Effectiveness of Controls (Ref: par. .13c)

.A90 Testing the operating effectiveness of the controls over how management made the accounting estimate may be an appropriate response when management's process has been well-designed, implemented, and maintained. For example

- when controls exist for the review and approval of the accounting estimates by appropriate levels of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.
- when the accounting estimate is derived from the routine processing of data by the entity's accounting system.

.A91 Testing the operating effectiveness of the controls is required by section 330 when²⁰

- a. the auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level includes an expectation that controls over the process are operating effectively or
- b. substantive procedures alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A92 Controls over the process to make an accounting estimate may exist in smaller entities, but the formality with which they operate varies. Further, smaller entities may determine that certain types of controls are not necessary because of active management involvement in the financial reporting process. In the case of very small entities, however, there may not be many controls that the auditor can identify. For this reason, the auditor's response to the assessed risks is likely to be substantive in nature, with the auditor performing one or more of the other responses in paragraph .13.

Developing a Point Estimate or Range (Ref: par. .13d)

.A93 Developing a point estimate or range to evaluate management's point estimate may be an appropriate response when, for example

- an accounting estimate is not derived from the routine processing of data by the accounting system.
- the auditor's review of similar accounting estimates made in the prior period financial statements suggests that management's current period process is unlikely to be effective.
- the entity's controls within and over management's processes for determining accounting estimates are not well-designed or properly implemented.
- events or transactions between the period-end and the date of the auditor's report contradict management's point estimate.
- there are alternative sources of relevant data available to the auditor that can be used in developing a point estimate or range.

.A94 Even when the entity's controls are well-designed and properly implemented, developing a point estimate or range may be an effective and efficient response to the assessed risks. In other situations, the auditor may consider this approach as part of determining whether further procedures are necessary and, if so, their nature and extent.

.A95 The approach taken by the auditor in developing either a point estimate or range may vary based on what is considered most effective in the circumstances. For example, the auditor may initially develop a preliminary point estimate and then assess its sensitivity to changes in assumptions to ascertain a range with which to evaluate management's point estimate. Alternatively, the auditor may begin by developing a range for purposes of determining, when possible, a point estimate.

.A96 The ability of the auditor to develop a point estimate, as opposed to a range, depends on several factors, including the model used, the nature and extent of data available, and the estimation uncertainty involved with the accounting estimate. Further, the decision to develop a point estimate or range may be influenced by the applicable financial reporting framework, which may prescribe the point estimate that is to be used after consideration of the alternative outcomes and assumptions or prescribe a specific measurement method (for example, the use of a discounted probability-weighted expected value).

.A97 The auditor may develop a point estimate or range in a number of ways. For example, by

- using a model (for example, one that is commercially available for use in a particular sector or industry or a proprietary or an auditor-developed model).
- further developing management's consideration of alternative assumptions or outcomes (for example, by introducing a different set of assumptions).

²⁰ Paragraph .08 of section 330.

384 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- employing or engaging a person with specialized expertise to develop or execute the model or provide relevant assumptions.
- making reference to other comparable conditions, transactions, or events or, when relevant, markets for comparable assets or liabilities.

Understanding Management's Assumptions or Method (Ref: par. .13d(i))

.A98 When the auditor develops a point estimate or range and uses assumptions or a method different from those used by management, paragraph .13d(i) requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of the assumptions or method used by management in making the accounting estimate. This understanding provides the auditor with information that may be relevant to the auditor's development of an appropriate point estimate or range. Further, it assists the auditor to understand and evaluate any significant differences from management's point estimate. For example, a difference may arise because the auditor used different, but equally valid, assumptions, compared with those used by management. This may reveal that the accounting estimate is highly sensitive to certain assumptions and, therefore, subject to high estimation uncertainty, indicating that the accounting estimate may be a significant risk. Alternatively, a difference may arise as a result of a factual error made by management. Depending on the circumstances, the auditor may find it helpful in drawing conclusions to discuss with management the basis for the assumptions used and their validity and the difference, if any, in the approach taken to making the accounting estimate.

Narrowing a Range (Ref: par. .13d(ii))

.A99 When the auditor concludes that it is appropriate to use a range to evaluate the reasonableness of management's point estimate (the auditor's range), paragraph .13d(ii) requires that range to encompass all reasonable outcomes, rather than all possible outcomes. The range cannot be one that comprises all possible outcomes if it is to be useful because such a range would be too wide to be effective for purposes of the audit. The auditor's range is useful and effective when it is sufficiently narrow to enable the auditor to conclude whether the accounting estimate is materially misstated.

.A100 Ordinarily, a range that has been narrowed to be equal to or less than performance materiality (see section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*) is adequate for the purposes of evaluating the reasonableness of management's point estimate.²¹ However, particularly in certain industries, it may not be possible to narrow the range to below such an amount. This does not necessarily preclude recognition of the accounting estimate. It may indicate, however, that the estimation uncertainty associated with the accounting estimate is such that it gives rise to a significant risk. Additional responses to significant risks are described in paragraphs .A108–.A121.

.A101 Narrowing the range to a position at which all outcomes within the range are considered reasonable may be achieved by

- eliminating from the range those outcomes at the extremities of the range judged by the auditor to be unlikely to occur and
- continuing to narrow the range, based on audit evidence available, until the auditor concludes that all outcomes within the range are considered reasonable. In some rare cases, the auditor may be able to narrow the range until the audit evidence indicates a point estimate.

Considering Whether Specialized Skills or Knowledge Are Required (Ref: par. .14)

.A102 In planning the audit, the auditor is required by section 300, *Planning an Audit*, to ascertain the nature, timing, and extent of resources necessary to perform the audit engagement.²² This may include, as necessary, the involvement of those with specialized skills or knowledge. In addition, section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, requires the engagement partner to be satisfied that the

²¹ Paragraph .11 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

²² Paragraph .08 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*.

engagement team and any auditor's specialists who are not part of the engagement team collectively have the appropriate competence and capabilities to perform the audit engagement.²³ During the course of the audit of accounting estimates, the auditor may identify, in light of the experience of the auditor and the circumstances of the engagement, the need for specialized skills or knowledge to be applied regarding one or more aspects of the accounting estimates.

.A103 Matters that may affect the auditor's consideration of whether specialized skills or knowledge is required include, for example, the following:

- The nature of the underlying asset, liability, or component of equity in a particular business or industry (for example, mineral deposits, agricultural assets, or complex financial instruments)
- A high degree of estimation uncertainty
- Complex calculations or specialized models are involved (for example, when estimating fair values when no observable market exists)
- The complexity of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to accounting estimates, including whether there are areas known to be subject to differing interpretation or practice is inconsistent or developing
- The procedures that the auditor intends to undertake in responding to assessed risks

.A104 For the majority of accounting estimates, even when estimation uncertainty exists, it is unlikely that specialized skills or knowledge will be required. For example, it is unlikely that specialized skills or knowledge would be necessary for an auditor to evaluate an allowance for doubtful accounts.

.A105 However, the auditor may not possess the specialized skills or knowledge required when the matter involved is in a field other than accounting or auditing and may need to obtain it from an auditor's specialist. Section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, addresses determining the need to employ or engage an auditor's specialist and the auditor's responsibilities when using the work of an auditor's specialist.

.A106 Further, in some cases, the auditor may conclude that it is necessary to obtain specialized skills or knowledge related to specific areas of accounting or auditing. Individuals with such skills or knowledge may be employed by the auditor's firm or engaged from an external organization outside of the auditor's firm. When such individuals perform audit procedures on the engagement, they are part of the engagement team, and accordingly, they are subject to the requirements in section 220.

.A107 Depending on the auditor's understanding of, and experience working with, the auditor's specialist or those other individuals with specialized skills or knowledge, the auditor may consider it appropriate to discuss matters such as the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework with the individuals involved to establish that their work is relevant for audit purposes.

Further Substantive Procedures to Respond to Significant Risks (Ref: par. .15–.17 and .20)

.A108 In auditing accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks, the auditor's further substantive procedures are focused on the evaluation of

- a. how management has assessed the effect of estimation uncertainty on the accounting estimate and the effect that such uncertainty may have on the appropriateness of the recognition of the accounting estimate in the financial statements and
- b. the adequacy of related disclosures.

For estimates that give rise to significant risks, the procedures that the auditor is required to perform to address the requirements in paragraphs .12–.13 may be performed in conjunction with the procedures performed to address the requirements in paragraphs .15–.17.

²³ Paragraph .16 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

Estimation Uncertainty***Management's Consideration of Estimation Uncertainty (Ref: par. .15a)***

.A109 Management may evaluate alternative assumptions or outcomes of the accounting estimates through a number of methods, depending on the circumstances. One possible method used by management is to undertake a sensitivity analysis. This might involve determining how the monetary amount of an accounting estimate varies with different assumptions. Even for accounting estimates measured at fair value, there can be variation because different market participants will use different assumptions. A sensitivity analysis could lead to the development of a number of outcome scenarios, sometimes characterized as a range of outcomes by management, such as "pessimistic" and "optimistic" scenarios.

.A110 A sensitivity analysis may demonstrate that an accounting estimate is not sensitive to changes in particular assumptions. Alternatively, it may demonstrate that the accounting estimate is sensitive to one or more assumptions that then become the focus of the auditor's attention.

.A111 This is not intended to suggest that one particular method of addressing estimation uncertainty (such as sensitivity analysis) is more suitable than another or that management's consideration of alternative assumptions or outcomes needs to be conducted through a detailed process supported by extensive documentation. Rather, it is whether management has assessed how estimation uncertainty may affect the accounting estimate that is important, not the specific manner in which it is done. Accordingly, when management has not considered alternative assumptions or outcomes, it may be necessary for the auditor to discuss with management, and request support for how it has addressed, the effects of estimation uncertainty on the accounting estimate.

Considerations Specific to Smaller, Less Complex Entities

.A112 Smaller entities may use simple means to assess the estimation uncertainty. In addition to the auditor's review of available documentation, the auditor may obtain other audit evidence of management consideration of alternative assumptions or outcomes by inquiry of management. In addition, management may not have the expertise to consider alternative outcomes or otherwise address the estimation uncertainty of the accounting estimate. In such cases, the auditor may explain to management the process or the different methods available for doing so and the documentation thereof. This would not, however, change the responsibilities of management for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements.

Significant Assumptions (Ref: par. .15b)

.A113 An assumption used in making an accounting estimate may be deemed to be significant if a reasonable variation in the assumption would materially affect the measurement of the accounting estimate.

.A114 Support for significant assumptions derived from management's knowledge may be obtained from management's continuing processes of strategic analysis and risk management. Even without formal established processes, such as may be the case in smaller entities, the auditor may be able to evaluate the assumptions through inquiries of, and discussions with, management, along with other audit procedures, in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.A115 The auditor's considerations in evaluating assumptions made by management are described in paragraphs .A78–.A89.

Management Intent and Ability (Ref: par. .15c)

.A116 The auditor's considerations regarding assumptions made by management and management's intent and ability are described in paragraphs .A12 and .A82.

Development of a Range (Ref: par. .16)

.A117 In preparing the financial statements, management may be satisfied that it has adequately addressed the effects of estimation uncertainty on the accounting estimates that give rise to significant risks. In some circumstances, however, the auditor may view the efforts of management as inadequate. This may be the case, for example, when, in the auditor's professional judgment

- sufficient appropriate audit evidence could not be obtained through the auditor's evaluation of how management has addressed the effects of estimation uncertainty.
- it is necessary to explore further the degree of estimation uncertainty associated with an accounting estimate (for example, when the auditor is aware of wide variation in outcomes for similar accounting estimates in similar circumstances).
- it is unlikely that other audit evidence can be obtained (for example, through the review of events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report).
- indicators of management bias in the making of accounting estimates may exist.

.A118 The auditor's considerations in determining a range for this purpose are described in paragraphs .A93–.A101.

Recognition and Measurement Criteria

Recognition of the Accounting Estimates in the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .17a)

.A119 When management has recognized an accounting estimate in the financial statements, the focus of the auditor's evaluation is on whether the measurement of the accounting estimate is sufficiently reliable to meet the recognition criteria of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A120 With respect to accounting estimates that have not been recognized, the focus of the auditor's evaluation is on whether the recognition criteria of the applicable financial reporting framework have, in fact, been met. Even when an accounting estimate has not been recognized and the auditor concludes that this treatment is appropriate, there may be a need for disclosure of the circumstances in the notes to the financial statements. The auditor may also determine that there is a need to draw the reader's attention to a significant uncertainty by adding an emphasis-of-matter paragraph to the auditor's report. Section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, addresses the use of such paragraphs.

Measurement Basis for the Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .17b)

.A121 With respect to fair value accounting estimates, some financial reporting frameworks presume that fair value can be measured reliably as a prerequisite to either requiring or permitting fair value measurements and disclosures. In some cases, this presumption may be overcome when, for example, no appropriate method or basis for measurement exists. In such cases, the focus of the auditor's evaluation is on whether management's basis for overcoming the presumption relating to the use of fair value set forth under the applicable financial reporting framework is appropriate.

Evaluating the Reasonableness of the Accounting Estimates and Determining Misstatements (Ref: par. .18)

.A122 Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor may conclude that the evidence points to an accounting estimate that differs from management's point estimate. When the audit evidence supports a point estimate, the difference between the auditor's point estimate and management's point estimate constitutes a misstatement. When the auditor has concluded that using the auditor's range provides sufficient appropriate audit evidence, a management point estimate that lies outside the auditor's range would not be supported by audit evidence. In such cases, the misstatement is no less than the difference between management's point estimate and the nearest point of the auditor's range.

.A123 When management has changed an accounting estimate, or the method in making it, from the prior period based on a subjective assessment that there has been a change in circumstances, the auditor may conclude, based on the audit evidence, that the accounting estimate is misstated as a result of an arbitrary change by management or may regard it as an indicator of possible management bias (see paragraphs .A133–.A134).

.A124 Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, provides guidance on distinguishing misstatements for purposes of the auditor's evaluation of the effect of uncorrected

388 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

misstatements on the financial statements.²⁴ With regard to accounting estimates, a misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error, may arise as a result of

- misstatements about which no doubt exists (factual misstatements).
- differences arising from management's judgments concerning accounting estimates that the auditor considers unreasonable or the selection or application of accounting policies that the auditor considers inappropriate (judgmental misstatements).
- the auditor's best estimate of misstatements in populations involving the projection of misstatements identified in audit samples to the entire population from which the samples were drawn (projected misstatements).

In some cases involving accounting estimates, a misstatement could arise as a result of a combination of these circumstances, making separate identification difficult or impossible.

.A125 Evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures included in the notes to the financial statements, whether required by the applicable financial reporting framework or disclosed voluntarily, involves essentially the same types of considerations applied when auditing an accounting estimate recognized in the financial statements.

Written Representations

.A126 Part of the auditor's audit evidence includes obtaining representations from management about whether management believes significant assumptions used in making accounting estimates are reasonable. See section 580, *Written Representations*.²⁵

Communication With Those Charged With Governance

.A127 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, addresses the auditor's communications of certain matters related to the conduct of an audit to those charged with governance. The auditor is required by section 260 to communicate the auditor's views about the qualitative aspects of the entity's significant accounting practices, including accounting estimates, and, when applicable, is required to determine that those charged with governance are informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.²⁶

Disclosures Related to Accounting Estimates**Disclosures in Accordance With the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .19)**

.A128 The presentation of financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework includes adequate disclosure of material matters. The applicable financial reporting framework may permit or prescribe disclosures related to accounting estimates, and some entities may disclose voluntarily additional information in the notes to the financial statements. These disclosures may include, for example

- the assumptions used.
- the method of estimation used, including any applicable model(s).
- the basis for the selection of the method of estimation.
- the effect of any changes to the method of estimation from the prior period.
- the sources and implications of estimation uncertainty.

Such disclosures are relevant to users in understanding the accounting estimates recognized or disclosed in the financial statements, and sufficient appropriate audit evidence needs to be obtained about whether the disclosures are in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

²⁴ Paragraph .A3 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

²⁵ Paragraph .16 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

²⁶ Paragraph .12 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

.A129 In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may require specific disclosures regarding uncertainties. For example, some financial reporting frameworks prescribe the following:

- The disclosure of key assumptions and other sources of estimation uncertainty that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities. Such requirements may be described using terms such as *key sources of estimation uncertainty* or *critical accounting estimates*.
- The disclosure of the range of possible outcomes and the assumptions used in determining the range.
- The disclosure of information regarding the significance of fair value accounting estimates to the entity's financial position and performance.
- Qualitative disclosures, such as the exposures to risk and how they arise; the entity's objectives, policies, and procedures for managing the risk; and the methods used to measure the risk, and any changes from the previous period of these qualitative concepts.
- Quantitative disclosures, such as the extent to which the entity is exposed to risk, based on information provided internally to the entity's key management personnel, including credit risk, liquidity risk, and market risk.

Disclosures of Estimation Uncertainty for Accounting Estimates That Give Rise to Significant Risks (Ref: par. .20)

.A130 Regarding accounting estimates having significant risk, even when the disclosures are in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, the auditor may conclude that the disclosure of estimation uncertainty is inadequate in light of the circumstances and facts involved. The auditor's evaluation of the adequacy of disclosure of estimation uncertainty increases in importance the greater the range of possible outcomes of the accounting estimate in relation to materiality (see the related discussion in paragraphs .A98–.A101).

.A131 In some cases, the auditor may consider it appropriate to encourage management to describe the circumstances relating to the estimation uncertainty in the notes to the financial statements.

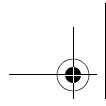
.A132 Section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, addresses the implications for the auditor's opinion when the auditor believes that management's disclosure of estimation uncertainty in the financial statements is inadequate or misleading.

Indicators of Possible Management Bias (Ref: par. .21)

.A133 During the audit, the auditor may become aware of judgments and decisions made by management that give rise to indicators of possible management bias (see paragraph .A9). Such indicators may affect the auditor's conclusion about whether the auditor's risk assessment and related responses remain appropriate, and the auditor may need to consider the implications for the rest of the audit. Further, they may affect the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, as discussed in section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

.A134 Examples of indicators of possible management bias with respect to accounting estimates include the following:

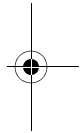
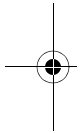
- Changes in an accounting estimate, or the method for making it, when management has made a subjective assessment that there has been a change in circumstances
- The use of an entity's own assumptions for fair value accounting estimates when they are inconsistent with observable market assumptions
- The selection or construction of significant assumptions that yield a point estimate favorable for management objectives
- The selection of a point estimate that may indicate a pattern of optimism or pessimism



390 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Documentation (Ref: par. .22)

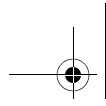
.A135 Documentation of indicators of possible management bias identified during the audit assists the auditor in concluding whether the auditor's risk assessment and related responses remain appropriate and in evaluating whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement. See paragraph .A134 for examples of indicators of possible management bias.



.A136**Exhibit A—Examples of Accounting Estimates (Ref: par. .02)**

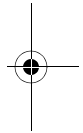
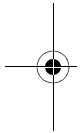
The following are examples of accounting estimates that are included in financial statements. The list is presented for information only. It is not considered to be all-inclusive.

- Receivables
 - Uncollectible receivables
 - Allowance for loan losses
 - Valuation of long-term unconditional promises to give
- Inventories
 - Obsolete inventory
 - Net realizable value of inventories when future selling prices and future costs are involved
 - Losses on purchase commitments
- Financial instruments
 - Valuation of securities
 - Probability of high correlation of a hedge
 - Sales of securities with puts and calls
- Productive facilities, natural resources, and intangibles
 - Useful lives and residual values
 - Depreciation and amortization methods
 - Impairment analysis
 - Recoverability of costs
 - Recoverable reserves
- Accruals
 - Property and casualty insurance company loss reserves
 - Compensation in stock option plans and deferred plans
 - Warranty claims
 - Taxes on real and personal property
 - Renegotiation refunds
 - Actuarial assumptions in benefit costs
- Revenues
 - Airline passenger revenue
 - Subscription income
 - Freight and cargo revenue
 - Dues income
 - Losses on sales contracts
- Contracts
 - Revenue to be earned
 - Costs to be incurred
 - Percent of completion
- Leases
 - Initial direct costs
 - Executory costs
 - Residual values



392 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Litigation
 - Probability of loss
 - Amount of loss
- Rates
 - Annual effective tax rate in interim reporting
 - Imputed interest rates on receivables and payables
 - Gross profit rates under program method of accounting
- Other
 - Losses and net realizable value on disposal of segment or restructuring of a business
 - Fair values in nonmonetary exchanges
 - Interim period costs in interim reporting
 - Current values in personal financial statements



.A137**Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, and International Standard on Auditing 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures***

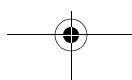
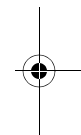
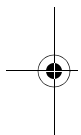
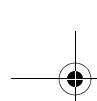
This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 22 of ISA 540 requires the auditor to obtain written representations from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance believe significant assumptions used in making accounting estimates are reasonable. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 580, *Written Representations*. The placement of this requirement does not create a difference between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.



AU-C Section 550*

Related Parties

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to related party relationships and transactions in an audit of financial statements. Specifically, it expands on how section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, and section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, are to be applied regarding risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions.

.02 Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation.¹ Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, requires that, in audits of special purpose financial statements that contain related party transactions, the auditor evaluate whether the financial statements include informative disclosures similar to those required by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).² Section 800 also requires the auditor to evaluate whether additional disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework and related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements or other disclosures may be necessary for the financial statements to achieve fair presentation.³ Thus, this section applies to all audits of financial statements. (Ref: par. .A1–.A3)

Nature of Related Party Relationships and Transactions (Ref: par. .A1–.A6)

.03 Many related party transactions are in the normal course of business. In such circumstances, they may carry no higher risk of material misstatement of the financial statements than similar transactions with unrelated parties. However, the nature of related party relationships and transactions may, in some circumstances, give rise to higher risks of material misstatement of the financial statements than transactions with unrelated parties. For example

- related parties may operate through an extensive and complex range of relationships and structures, with a corresponding increase in the complexity of related party transactions.
- information systems may be ineffective at identifying or summarizing transactions and outstanding balances between an entity and its related parties.
- related party transactions may not be conducted under normal market terms and conditions (for example, some related party transactions may be conducted with no exchange of consideration).
- related party transactions may be motivated solely or in large measure to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or conceal misappropriation of assets.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .17 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

² Paragraph .17 of section 800, *Special Consideration—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*.

³ Paragraph .17 of section 800.

396 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Responsibilities of the Auditor**

.04 Because related parties are not independent of each other, financial reporting frameworks establish specific accounting and disclosure requirements for related party relationships, transactions, and balances to enable users of the financial statements to understand their nature and actual or potential effects on the financial statements. Therefore, the auditor has a responsibility to perform audit procedures to identify, assess, and respond to the risks of material misstatement arising from the entity's failure to appropriately account for or disclose related party relationships, transactions, or balances. (Ref: par. .A3)

.05 In addition, an understanding of the entity's related party relationships and transactions is relevant to the auditor's evaluation of whether one or more fraud risk factors are present, as required by section 240, because fraud may be more easily committed through related parties.⁴

.06 Owing to the inherent limitations of an audit, an unavoidable risk exists that some material misstatements of the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).⁵ In the context of related parties, the potential effects of inherent limitations on the auditor's ability to detect material misstatements are greater because of reasons such as the following:

- Management may be unaware of the existence of all related party relationships and transactions.
- Related party relationships may present a greater opportunity for collusion, concealment, or manipulation by management.

.07 Planning and performing the audit with professional skepticism as required by section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, is, therefore, particularly important in this context, given the potential for undisclosed related party relationships and transactions.⁶ The requirements in this section are designed to assist the auditor in identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions and in designing audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks.

Effective Date

.08 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.09 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. obtain an understanding of related party relationships and transactions sufficient to be able to
 - i. recognize fraud risk factors, if any, arising from related party relationships and transactions that are relevant to the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.
 - ii. conclude, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether the financial statements, insofar as they are affected by those relationships and transactions, achieve fair presentation.
- b. obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately identified, accounted for, and disclosed in the financial statements.

⁴ Paragraph .24 of section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

⁵ Paragraph .A55 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

⁶ Paragraph .15 of section 200.

Definitions

.10 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Arm's length transaction. A transaction conducted on such terms and conditions between a willing buyer and a willing seller who are unrelated and are acting independently of each other and pursuing their own best interests.

Related party. A party defined as a related party in GAAP. (Ref: par. .A1)

.11 Reference to GAAP in GAAS means generally accepted accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by the Council of the AICPA pursuant to Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, and Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01 and 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Requirements

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities

.12 As part of the risk assessment procedures and related activities that section 240 and section 315 require the auditor to perform during the audit, the auditor should perform the audit procedures and related activities set out in paragraphs .13–.18 to obtain information relevant to identifying the risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions.^{7, 8}

Understanding the Entity's Related Party Relationships and Transactions

.13 In connection with the engagement team discussion(s) that section 240 and section 315 require, the auditor should include specific consideration of the susceptibility of the financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud or error that could result from the entity's related party relationships and transactions.^{9, 10} (Ref: par. .A7–.A8)

.14 The auditor should inquire of management regarding the following:

- a. The identity of the entity's related parties, including changes from the prior period (Ref: par. .A9–.A14)
- b. The nature of the relationships between the entity and these related parties
- c. Whether the entity entered into any transactions with these related parties during the period and, if so, the type and purpose of the transactions

.15 The auditor should inquire of management and others within the entity and perform other risk assessment procedures¹¹ considered appropriate to obtain an understanding of the controls, if any, that management has established to (Ref: par. .A15–.A20)

- a. identify, account for, and disclose related party relationships and transactions.
- b. authorize and approve significant transactions and arrangements with related parties. (Ref: par. .A21)
- c. authorize and approve significant transactions and arrangements outside the normal course of business.

Maintaining Alertness for Related Party Information When Reviewing Records or Documents

.16 During the audit, the auditor should remain alert when inspecting records or documents for arrangements or other information that may indicate the existence of related party relationships

⁷ Paragraph .16 of section 240.

⁸ Paragraph .05 of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

⁹ Paragraph .15 of section 240.

¹⁰ Paragraph .11 of section 315.

¹¹ Paragraph .06 of section 315.

398 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor. In particular, the auditor should inspect the following for indications of the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor: (Ref: par. .A22–.A24)

- a. Bank and legal confirmations obtained as part of the auditor's procedures
- b. Minutes of meetings of shareholders and of those charged with governance
- c. Such other records or documents as the auditor considers necessary in the circumstances of the entity

.17 If the auditor identifies significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business when performing the audit procedures required by paragraph .16 or through other audit procedures, the auditor should inquire of management about the following: (Ref: par. .A25–.A26)

- a. The nature of these transactions (Ref: par. .A27)
- b. Whether related parties could be involved (Ref: par. .A28)

Sharing Related Party Information With the Engagement Team

.18 The auditor should share with the other members of the engagement team the identity of the entity's related parties and other relevant information obtained about the related parties. (Ref: par. .A29–.A30)

Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions

.19 In meeting the requirement of section 315 to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions and determine whether any of those risks are significant risks.¹² In making this determination, the auditor should treat identified significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business as giving rise to significant risks.

.20 If the auditor identifies fraud risk factors (including circumstances relating to the existence of a related party with dominant influence) when performing the risk assessment procedures and related activities in connection with related parties, the auditor should consider such information when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, in accordance with section 240.¹³ (Ref: par. .A31–.A33)

Responses to the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions

.21 As part of the requirement in section 330 that the auditor respond to assessed risks, the auditor should design and perform further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the assessed risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions.¹⁴ (Ref: par. .A34–.A37)

Identification of Previously Unidentified or Undisclosed Related Parties or Significant Related Party Transactions

.22 If the auditor identifies arrangements or information that suggests the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, the auditor should determine whether the underlying circumstances confirm the existence of those relationships or transactions.

.23 If the auditor identifies related parties or significant related party transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, the auditor should

¹² Paragraph .26 of section 315.

¹³ Paragraph .24 of section 240.

¹⁴ Paragraphs .05–.06 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

- a. promptly communicate the relevant information to the other members of the engagement team. (Ref: par. .A29 and .A38)
- b. request management to identify all transactions with the newly identified related parties for the auditor's further evaluation.
- c. inquire why the entity's controls over related party relationships and transactions failed to enable the identification or disclosure of the related party relationships or transactions.
- d. perform appropriate substantive audit procedures relating to such newly identified related parties or significant related party transactions. (Ref: par. .A39)
- e. reconsider the risk that other related parties or significant related party transactions may exist that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor and perform additional audit procedures as necessary.
- f. evaluate the implications for the audit if the nondisclosure by management appears intentional (and, therefore, indicative of a risk of material misstatement due to fraud). (Ref: par. .A40)

Identified Significant Related Party Transactions Outside the Entity's Normal Course of Business

.24 For identified significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business, the auditor should

- a. inspect the underlying contracts or agreements, if any, and evaluate whether
 - i. the business rationale (or lack thereof) of the transactions suggests that they may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets.¹⁵ (Ref: par. .A41–.A42)
 - ii. the terms of the transactions are consistent with management's explanations.
 - iii. the transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed.
- b. obtain audit evidence that the transactions have been appropriately authorized and approved. (Ref: par. .A43–.A44)

Assertions That Related Party Transactions Were Conducted on Terms Equivalent to Those Prevailing in an Arm's Length Transaction

.25 If management has made an assertion in the financial statements to the effect that a related party transaction was conducted on terms equivalent to those prevailing in an arm's length transaction, the auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the assertion. (Ref: par. .A45–.A49)

Evaluation of the Accounting for, and Disclosure of, Identified Related Party Relationships and Transactions

.26 In forming an opinion on the financial statements, in accordance with section 700, the auditor should evaluate the following:¹⁶ (Ref: par. .A50)

- a. Whether the identified related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed (Ref: par. .A51)
- b. Whether the effects of the related party relationships and transactions prevent the financial statements from achieving fair presentation (Ref: par. .A3)

Communication With Those Charged With Governance

.27 Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance significant findings and issues arising during the audit in connection with the entity's related parties.¹⁷ (Ref: par. .A52)

¹⁵ Paragraph .32c of section 240.

¹⁶ Paragraphs .13–.18 of section 700.

¹⁷ Paragraph .09 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

400 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Documentation**

.28 The auditor should include in the audit documentation the names of the identified related parties and the nature of the related party relationships.¹⁸

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Nature of Related Party Relationships and Transactions (Ref: par. .02–.04, .10, and .26b)**

.A1 GAAP frameworks include or refer to specific disclosure requirements for related party relationships and transactions. If the applicable financial reporting framework does not have specific disclosure requirements, the auditor, nonetheless, evaluates whether related party information is disclosed in a manner comparable to GAAP in order for the financial statements to achieve fair presentation.¹⁹

.A2 Certain accounting pronouncements prescribe the accounting treatment when related parties are involved; however, established accounting principles ordinarily do not require transactions with related parties to be accounted for on a basis different from that which would be appropriate if the parties were not related. In addition, the substance of a particular transaction may be significantly different from its form. Accordingly, financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP generally recognize the substance of particular transactions rather than merely their legal form.

.A3 Related party relationships and transactions may cause the financial statements to fail to achieve fair presentation if, for example, the economic reality of such relationships and transactions is not appropriately reflected in the financial statements. For instance, fair presentation may not be achieved if the sale of a property by the entity to a controlling shareholder at a price above or below fair market value has been accounted for as a transaction involving a profit or loss for the entity when it may constitute a contribution or return of capital or the payment of a dividend.

.A4 Transactions that because of their nature may be indicative of the existence of related parties include the following:

- a. Borrowing or lending on an interest free basis or at a rate of interest significantly above or below market rates prevailing at the time of the transaction
- b. Selling real estate at a price that differs significantly from its appraised value
- c. Exchanging property for similar property in a nonmonetary transaction
- d. Making loans with no scheduled terms for when or how the funds will be repaid

.A5 Although many related party transactions are in the normal course of business, a possibility exists that transactions with related parties may have been motivated solely or in large measure by conditions similar to the following:

- a. Lack of sufficient working capital or credit to continue the business
- b. An overly optimistic earnings forecast
- c. Dependence on a single or relatively few products, customers, or transactions for the continued success of the venture
- d. A declining industry characterized by a large number of business failures
- e. Excess capacity
- f. Significant litigation, especially litigation between stockholders and management
- g. Significant obsolescence dangers because the company is in a high technology industry

For these reasons, related party transactions may indicate an increased risk of material misstatement of the financial statements.

¹⁸ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

¹⁹ Paragraph .17 of section 800.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A6 For state and local governmental entities, related party relationships and transactions can result from interactions with other governments, not-for-profit entities, for-profit entities, and individuals. The applicable financial reporting framework used by most state and local governmental entities addresses related party relationships and transactions using terms that include *related parties*, *related organizations*, and *component units*, and can result in the inclusion of the related parties' financial statements as a reporting unit, inclusion within a reporting unit, disclosure of the related party transactions, or disclosure about why the related party or its transactions are not included. In all such cases, the objectives described in paragraph .09 are relevant to the auditor.

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities***Understanding the Entity's Related Party Relationships and Transactions******Discussion Among the Engagement Team (Ref: par. .13)***

.A7 Matters that may be addressed in the discussion among the engagement team include the following:

- The nature and extent of the entity's relationships and transactions with related parties (using, for example, the auditor's record of identified related parties updated after each audit)
- An emphasis on the importance of maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit regarding the potential for material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions
- The circumstances or conditions of the entity that may indicate the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not identified or disclosed to the auditor (for example, a complex organizational structure, use of entities formed to accomplish specific purposes,²⁰ or an inadequate information system)
- The records or documents that may indicate the existence of related party relationships or transactions
- The importance that management and those charged with governance attach to the identification of, appropriate accounting for, and disclosure of related party relationships and transactions and the related risk of management override of relevant controls

.A8 In addition, the discussion in the context of fraud may include specific consideration of how related parties may be involved in fraud. For example:

- Entities formed to accomplish specific purposes and that are controlled by management might be used to facilitate earnings management.
- Transactions between the entity and a known business partner of a key member of management could be arranged to facilitate misappropriation of the entity's assets.
- As indicated in paragraph .A2, the form of a related party transaction may mask its substance. For example, equity distributions or capital contributions may be structured as loans.
- Related party transactions may be subject to period-end window dressing. For example, a stockholder may pay a loan shortly before period-end, but the entity loans the same amount to the stockholder shortly after period-end.
- Certain entities, such as governmental entities or entities operating in regulated industries, may circumvent laws or regulations that limit or restrict their ability to engage in transactions with related parties.

The Identity of the Entity's Related Parties (Ref: par. .14a)

.A9 Information regarding the identity of the entity's related parties is likely to be readily available to management if the entity's information systems record, process, and summarize related party relationships and transactions to enable the entity to meet applicable disclosure requirements.

²⁰ Entities formed to accomplish specific purposes are discussed in paragraphs .A26–.A27 of section 315.

402 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Therefore, management may have a comprehensive list of related parties and changes from the prior period. For recurring engagements, making the inquiries specified by paragraph .14 provides a basis for comparing the information supplied by management with the auditor's record of related parties noted in previous audits.

.A10 However, if the entity does not have such information systems in place, management may not be aware of the existence of all related parties. Nevertheless, the requirement to make the inquiries specified by paragraph .14 still applies because management may be aware of parties that meet the related party definition set out in GAAP. In such a case, however, the auditor's inquiries regarding the identity of the entity's related parties are likely to form part of the auditor's risk assessment procedures and related activities performed in accordance with section 315 to obtain information regarding the following:²¹

- The entity's ownership and governance structures
- The types of investments that the entity is making and plans to make
- The way the entity is structured and how it is financed

In the particular case of common control relationships, because management is more likely to be aware of such relationships if they have economic significance to the entity, the auditor's inquiries are likely to be more effective if they are focused on whether parties with which the entity engages in significant transactions or shares resources to a significant degree are related parties.

.A11 In the context of a group audit, section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, requires the group engagement team to provide each component auditor with a list of related parties prepared by group management and any other related parties of which the group engagement team is aware.²² When the entity is a component within a group, this information provides a useful basis for the auditor's inquiries of management regarding the identity of the entity's related parties.

.A12 The auditor also may obtain some information regarding the identity of the entity's related parties through inquiries of management during the engagement acceptance or continuance process.

.A13 Section 580, *Written Representations*, addresses requirements to obtain management representations, including representations that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance have²³

- a. disclosed to the auditor the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships of which they are aware.
- b. appropriately accounted for and disclosed such relationships and transactions.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A14 Because of the variety of the types of relationships and transactions among governmental and other entities, some of which are highly complex, identifying the nature of the related party relationship and its appropriate treatment in the financial statements relies heavily on a governmental entity's application of its financial reporting framework. Further, in some circumstances, the governmental entity may have no legal jurisdiction over the related party even when the application of the financial reporting framework concludes that the related party's financial statements are to be included in the governmental entity's financial statements. In such cases, the auditor's inquiries regarding the identity of the entity's related parties are likely to include the concepts and guidance from the applicable financial reporting framework to assist in making appropriate assessments about the existence and nature of related party relationships.

²¹ Paragraph .12 of section 315.

²² Paragraph .40c of section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

²³ Paragraph .17 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

The Entity's Controls Over Related Party Relationships and Transactions (Ref: par. .15)

.A15 Others within the entity are those considered likely to have knowledge of the entity's related party relationships and transactions and the entity's controls over such relationships and transactions. These may include, to the extent that they do not form part of management, the following:

- Those charged with governance
- Personnel in a position to initiate, authorize, process, or record transactions that are both significant and outside the entity's normal course of business and those who Evisé or monitor such personnel
- Internal auditors
- In-house legal counsel
- The chief ethics officer or equivalent person
- Chief compliance officer

.A16 The audit is conducted on the premise that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged and understand that they have responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.²⁴ Accordingly, the preparation of the financial statements requires management, with oversight from those charged with governance, to design, implement, and maintain adequate controls over related party relationships and transactions so that these are identified and appropriately accounted for and disclosed. In their oversight role, those charged with governance monitor how management is discharging its responsibility for such controls. Those charged with governance may, in their oversight role, obtain information from management to enable them to understand the nature and business rationale of the entity's related party relationships and transactions.

.A17 In meeting the requirement of section 315 to obtain an understanding of internal control, the auditor may consider features or elements relevant to mitigating the risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions, such as the following.²⁵

- Internal ethical codes, appropriately communicated to the entity's personnel and enforced, governing the circumstances in which the entity may enter into specific types of related party transactions
- Policies and procedures for open and timely disclosure of the interests that management and those charged with governance have in related party transactions
- The assignment of responsibilities within the entity for identifying, recording, summarizing, and disclosing related party transactions
- Timely disclosure and discussion between management and those charged with governance of significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business, including whether those charged with governance have appropriately challenged the business rationale of such transactions (for example, by seeking advice from external professional advisors)
- Clear guidelines for the approval of related party transactions involving actual or perceived conflicts of interest, such as approval by a subcommittee of those charged with governance comprising individuals independent of management
- Periodic reviews by internal auditors, when applicable
- Proactive action taken by management to resolve related party disclosure issues, such as by seeking advice from the auditor or external legal counsel
- The existence of whistle-blowing policies and procedures, when applicable

²⁴ Paragraphs .04 and .A2 of section 200.

²⁵ Paragraph .13 of section 315.

404 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A18 Controls over related party relationships and transactions within some entities may be deficient or nonexistent for a number of reasons, such as the following:

- The low importance attached by management to identifying and disclosing related party relationships and transactions
- The lack of appropriate oversight by those charged with governance
- An intentional disregard for such controls because related party disclosures may reveal information that management considers sensitive (for example, the existence of transactions involving family members of management)
- An insufficient understanding by management of the applicable related party disclosure requirements

When such controls are ineffective or nonexistent, the auditor may be unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about related party relationships and transactions. If this were the case, the auditor would, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, consider the implications for the audit, including the opinion in the auditor's report.

.A19 Fraudulent financial reporting often involves management override of controls that otherwise may appear to be operating effectively.²⁶ The risk of management override of controls is higher if management has relationships that involve control or significant influence with parties with which the entity does business because these relationships may present management with greater incentives and opportunities to perpetrate fraud. For example, management's financial interests in certain related parties may provide incentives for management to override controls by (a) directing the entity, against its interests, to conclude transactions for the benefit of these parties, or (b) colluding with such parties or controlling their actions. Examples of possible fraud include the following:

- Creating fictitious terms of transactions with related parties designed to misrepresent the business rationale of these transactions
- Fraudulently organizing the transfer of assets from or to management or others at amounts significantly above or below market value
- Engaging in complex transactions with related parties, such as entities formed to accomplish specific purposes, that are structured to misrepresent the financial position or financial performance of the entity

Considerations Specific to Smaller Entities

.A20 Control activities in smaller entities are likely to be less formal, and smaller entities may have no documented processes for dealing with related party relationships and transactions. An owner-manager may mitigate some of the risks arising from related party transactions or potentially increase those risks through active involvement in all the main aspects of the transactions. For such entities, the auditor may obtain an understanding of the related party relationships and transactions, and any controls that may exist over these, through inquiry of management combined with other procedures, such as observation of management's oversight and review activities and inspection of available relevant documentation.

Authorization and Approval of Significant Transactions and Arrangements (Ref: par. .15b)

.A21 Authorization involves the granting of permission by a party or parties with the appropriate authority (whether management, those charged with governance, or the entity's shareholders) for the entity to enter into specific transactions in accordance with predetermined criteria, whether or not judgmental. Approval involves those parties' acceptance of the transactions the entity has entered into as having satisfied the criteria on which authorization was granted. Examples of controls the entity may have established to authorize and approve significant transactions

²⁶ Paragraph .31 of section 240.

and arrangements with related parties or significant transactions and arrangements outside the normal course of business include the following:

- Monitoring controls to identify such transactions and arrangements for authorization and approval
- Approval of the terms and conditions of the transactions and arrangements by management, those charged with governance, or, when applicable, shareholders

Maintaining Alertness for Related Party Information When Reviewing Records or Documents

Records or Documents That the Auditor May Inspect (Ref: par. .16)

.A22 During the audit, the auditor may inspect records or documents that indicate the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor. Examples of those records or documents include the following:

- Third party confirmations obtained by the auditor (in addition to bank and legal confirmations)
- Entity income tax returns
- Information supplied by the entity to regulatory authorities
- Shareholder registers to identify the entity's principal shareholders
- Statements of conflicts of interest from management and those charged with governance
- Records of the entity's investments and those of its benefit plans
- Contracts and agreements with key management or those charged with governance
- Significant contracts and agreements not in the entity's ordinary course of business
- Specific invoices and correspondence from the entity's professional advisors
- Life insurance policies acquired by the entity
- Significant contracts renegotiated by the entity during the period
- Internal auditors' reports
- Capital financing arrangements with entities other than financial institutions (for example, construction of a governmental entity facility associated with the issuance of debt by a related not-for-profit entity)
- Economic development arrangements for capital additions (for example, a governmental entity's use and eventual ownership of properties and facilities financed and operated by a company or another governmental entity)

.A23 Additionally, the auditor may review the prior years' audit documentation for information about related party relationships and transactions. If applicable, the auditor may inquire of a predecessor auditor about the predecessor's knowledge of existing relationships and the extent of management involvement in material transactions.

Arrangements That May Indicate the Existence of Previously Unidentified or Undisclosed Related Party Relationships or Transactions

.A24 An arrangement involves a formal or informal agreement between the entity and one or more other parties for such purposes as the following:

- The establishment of a business relationship through appropriate vehicles or structures
- The conduct of certain types of transactions under specific terms and conditions
- The provision of designated services or financial support

Examples of arrangements that may indicate the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor include the following:

- Participation in unincorporated partnerships with other parties
- Agreements for the provision of services to certain parties under terms and conditions that are outside the entity's normal course of business
- Guarantees and guarantor relationships

406 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Identification of Significant Transactions Outside the Normal Course of Business (Ref: par. .17)***

.A25 Obtaining further information on significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business enables the auditor to evaluate whether fraud risk factors, if any, are present and to identify the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.A26 Examples of transactions outside the entity's normal course of business may include the following:

- Complex equity transactions, such as corporate restructurings or acquisitions
- Transactions with offshore entities in jurisdictions with less rigorous corporate governance structures, laws, or regulations
- The leasing of premises or the rendering of management services by the entity to another party if no consideration is exchanged
- Sales transactions with unusually large discounts or returns
- Transactions with circular arrangements (for example, sales with a commitment to repurchase)
- Transactions under contracts whose terms are changed before expiration

Understanding the Nature of Significant Transactions Outside the Normal Course of Business (Ref: par. .17a)

.A27 Inquiring into the nature of the significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business involves obtaining an understanding of the business rationale of the transactions and the terms and conditions under which these have been entered into.²⁷

Inquiring Into Whether Related Parties Could Be Involved (Ref: par. .17b)

.A28 A related party could be involved in a significant transaction outside the entity's normal course of business not only by directly influencing the transaction by being a party to the transaction but also by indirectly influencing it through an intermediary. Such influence may indicate the presence of a fraud risk factor.

Sharing Related Party Information With the Engagement Team (Ref: par. .18 and .23a)

.A29 Relevant related party information shared with the engagement team members may include the following:

- The nature of the related party relationships and transactions
- Significant or complex related party relationships or transactions that may require special audit consideration, particularly transactions in which management or those charged with governance are financially involved

The exchange of information is most useful if made at an early stage of the audit.

.A30 Section 600 addresses the communications that apply to group audits, particularly those that involve component auditors.

Identification and Assessment of the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions***Fraud Risk Factors Associated With a Related Party With Dominant Influence (Ref: par. .20)***

.A31 Related parties with the ability to exert control or significant influence may be in a position to exert dominant influence over the entity or its management. Consideration of such behavior is relevant when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, as further explained in paragraphs .A32–.A33.

²⁷ Paragraph .32c of section 240.

.A32 Domination of management by a single person or small group of persons without compensating controls is a fraud risk factor.²⁸ Indicators of dominant influence exerted by a related party include the following:

- The related party has vetoed significant business decisions taken by management or those charged with governance.
- Significant transactions are referred to the related party for final approval.
- Little or no debate occurs among management and those charged with governance regarding business proposals initiated by the related party.
- Transactions involving the related party (or a close family member of the related party) are rarely independently reviewed and approved.

Dominant influence also may exist, in some cases, if the related party has played a leading role in founding the entity and continues to play a leading role in managing the entity.

.A33 In the presence of other risk factors, the existence of a related party with dominant influence may indicate significant risks of material misstatement due to fraud. For example

- an unusually high turnover of senior management or professional advisors may suggest unethical or fraudulent business practices that serve the related party's purposes.
- the use of business intermediaries for significant transactions for which there appears to be no clear business justification may suggest that the related party could have an interest in such transactions through control of such intermediaries for fraudulent purposes.

Evidence of the related party's excessive participation in, or preoccupation with, the selection of accounting policies or the determination of significant estimates may suggest the possibility of fraudulent financial reporting.

Responses to the Risks of Material Misstatement Associated With Related Party Relationships and Transactions (Ref: par. .21)

.A34 The nature, timing, and extent of the further audit procedures that the auditor may select to respond to the assessed risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions depend upon the nature of those risks and the circumstances of the entity.

.A35 Examples of substantive audit procedures that the auditor may perform when the auditor has assessed a significant risk that management has not appropriately accounted for or disclosed specific related party transactions (whether due to fraud or error) include the following:

- Confirming the purposes, specific terms, or amounts of the transactions with the related parties (this audit procedure may be less effective when the auditor judges that the entity is likely to influence the related parties in their responses to the auditor).
- Inspecting evidence in possession of the other party or parties to the transaction.
- Confirming or discussing significant information with intermediaries, such as banks, guarantors, agents, or attorneys, to obtain a better understanding of the transaction.
- Referring to financial publications, trade journals, credit agencies, and other information sources when there is reason to believe that unfamiliar customers, suppliers, or other business enterprises with which material amounts of business have been transacted may lack substance.
- With respect to material uncollected balances, guarantees, and other obligations, obtaining information about the financial capability of the other party or parties to the transaction. Such information may be obtained from audited financial statements, unaudited financial statements, income tax returns, and reports issued by regulatory agencies, taxing authorities, financial publications, or credit agencies.

.A36 If the auditor has assessed a significant risk of material misstatement due to fraud as a result of the presence of a related party with dominant influence, the auditor may, in addition to the general requirements of section 240, perform audit procedures such as the following to obtain an

²⁸ Paragraph .A75 of section 240.

408 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

understanding of the business relationships that such a related party may have established directly or indirectly with the entity and to determine the need for further appropriate substantive audit procedures:

- Inquiries of, and discussion with, management and those charged with governance
- Inquiries of the related party
- Inspection of significant contracts with the related party
- Appropriate background research, such as through the Internet or specific external business information databases
- Review of employee whistle-blowing reports when these are retained

.A37 Depending upon the results of the auditor's risk assessment procedures, the auditor may consider it appropriate to obtain audit evidence without testing the entity's controls over related party relationships and transactions. In some circumstances, however, it may not be possible to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence from substantive audit procedures alone, regarding the risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions. For example, when intragroup transactions between the entity and its components are numerous and a significant amount of information regarding these transactions is initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, or reported electronically in an integrated system, the auditor may determine that it is not possible to design effective substantive audit procedures that by themselves would reduce the risks of material misstatement associated with these transactions to an acceptably low level. In such a case, in meeting the requirement of section 330 to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of relevant controls, the auditor is required to test the entity's controls over the completeness and accuracy of the recording of the related party relationships and transactions.²⁹

Identification of Previously Unidentified or Undisclosed Related Parties or Significant Related Party Transactions

Communicating Newly Identified Related Party Information to the Engagement Team (Ref: par. .23a)

.A38 Promptly communicating any newly identified related parties to the other members of the engagement team assists them in determining whether this information affects the results of, and conclusions drawn from, risk assessment procedures already performed, including whether the risks of material misstatement need to be reassessed.

Substantive Procedures Relating to Newly Identified Related Parties or Significant Related Party Transactions (Ref: par. .23d)

.A39 Examples of substantive audit procedures that the auditor may perform relating to newly identified related parties or significant related party transactions include the following:

- Making inquiries regarding the nature of the entity's relationships with the newly identified related parties, including inquiring of parties outside the entity who are presumed to have significant knowledge of the entity and its business, such as legal counsel, principal agents, major representatives, consultants, guarantors, or other close business partners.
- Conducting an analysis of accounting records for transactions with the newly identified related parties. Such an analysis may be facilitated using computer assisted audit techniques.
- Verifying the terms and conditions of the newly identified related party transactions and evaluating whether the transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed.

Intentional Nondisclosure by Management (Ref: par. .23f)

.A40 The requirements and guidance in section 240 regarding the auditor's responsibilities relating to fraud in an audit of financial statements are relevant when management appears to have intentionally failed to disclose related parties or significant related party transactions to the

²⁹ Paragraph .08b of section 330.

auditor. The auditor also may consider whether it is necessary to reevaluate the reliability of management's responses to the auditor's inquiries and management's representations to the auditor.³⁰

Identified Significant Related Party Transactions Outside the Entity's Normal Course of Business

Evaluating the Business Rationale of Significant Related Party Transactions (Ref: par. .24a(i))

.A41 In evaluating the business rationale of a significant related party transaction outside the entity's normal course of business, the auditor may consider the following:

- Whether the transaction
 - is overly complex (for example, it may involve multiple related parties within a consolidated group)
 - has unusual terms of trade, such as unusual prices, interest rates, guarantees, and repayment terms
 - lacks an apparent logical business reason for its occurrence
 - involves previously unidentified related parties
 - is processed in an unusual manner
- Whether management has discussed the nature of, and accounting for, such a transaction with those charged with governance
- Whether management is placing more emphasis on a particular accounting treatment rather than giving due regard to the underlying economics of the transaction

If management's explanations are materially inconsistent with the terms of the related party transaction, the auditor is required to consider the reliability of management's explanations and representations on other significant matters.³¹

.A42 The auditor also may seek to understand the business rationale of such a transaction from the related party's perspective because this may help the auditor to better understand the economic reality of the transaction and why it was carried out. A business rationale from the related party's perspective that appears inconsistent with the nature of its business may represent a fraud risk factor.

Authorization and Approval of Significant Related Party Transactions (Ref: par. .24b)

.A43 Authorization and approval by management, those charged with governance, or, when applicable, the shareholders of significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business may provide audit evidence that these have been duly considered at the appropriate levels within the entity, and that their terms and conditions have been appropriately reflected in the financial statements. The existence of transactions of this nature that were not subject to such authorization and approval, in the absence of rational explanations based on discussion with management or those charged with governance, may indicate risks of material misstatement due to fraud or error. In these circumstances, the auditor may need to be alert for other transactions of a similar nature. Authorization and approval alone, however, may not be sufficient in concluding whether risks of material misstatement due to fraud are absent because authorization and approval may be ineffective if there has been collusion between the related parties or if the entity is subject to the dominant influence of a related party.

Considerations Specific to Smaller Entities

.A44 A smaller entity may not have the same controls provided by different levels of authority and approval that may exist in a larger entity. Accordingly, when auditing a smaller entity, the auditor may rely to a lesser degree on authorization and approval for audit evidence regarding the validity of significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business. Instead, the auditor may consider performing other audit procedures, such as inspecting relevant

³⁰ Paragraphs .22–.24 and .26 of section 580.

³¹ Paragraph .10 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

410 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

documents, confirming specific aspects of the transactions with relevant parties, or observing the owner-manager's involvement with the transactions. The discussion of management domination in paragraph .A32 and the fraud considerations discussed in paragraph .A8 provide further relevant guidance.

Assertions That Related Party Transactions Were Conducted on Terms Equivalent to Those Prevailing in an Arm's Length Transaction (Ref: par. .25)

.A45 It will generally not be possible to determine whether a particular transaction would have taken place if the parties had not been related or, assuming it would have taken place, what the terms and manner of settlement would have been. Accordingly, it is difficult to substantiate representations that a transaction was consummated on terms equivalent to those that prevail in arm's length transactions.

.A46 Although audit evidence may be readily available regarding how the price of a related party transaction compares to that of a similar arm's length transaction, practical difficulties ordinarily limit the auditor's ability to obtain audit evidence that all other aspects of the transaction are equivalent to those of the arm's length transaction. For example, although the auditor may be able to confirm that a related party transaction has been conducted at a market price, it may be impracticable to confirm whether other terms and conditions of the transaction (such as credit terms, contingencies, and specific charges) are equivalent to those that would ordinarily be agreed between independent parties. Accordingly, there may be a risk that management's assertion that a related party transaction was conducted on terms equivalent to those prevailing in an arm's length transaction may be materially misstated.

.A47 The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements requires management to substantiate an assertion included in financial statements that a related party transaction was conducted on terms equivalent to those prevailing in an arm's length transaction, giving appropriate consideration to the difficulties described in paragraphs .A45–.A46. Management's support for the assertion may include the following:

- Comparing the terms of the related party transaction to those of an identical or similar transaction with one or more unrelated parties
- Engaging an external specialist to determine a market value and confirm market terms and conditions for the transaction
- Comparing the terms of the transaction to known market terms for broadly similar transactions on an open market

.A48 Evaluating management's support for this assertion may involve one or more of the following:

- Considering the appropriateness of management's process for supporting the assertion
- Verifying the source of the internal or external data supporting the assertion and testing the data to determine their accuracy, completeness, and relevance

.A49 If the auditor believes that management's assertion is unsubstantiated or the auditor cannot obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the assertion, the auditor, in accordance with section 705, considers the implications for the audit, including the opinion in the auditor's report.

Evaluation of the Accounting for, and Disclosure of, Identified Related Party Relationships and Transactions

Materiality Considerations in Evaluating Misstatements (Ref: par. .26)

.A50 Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, requires the auditor to consider both the size and nature of a misstatement and the particular circumstances of its occurrence when evaluating whether the misstatement is material.³² The significance of the

³² Paragraph .11a of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

transaction to the financial statement users may not depend solely on the recorded amount of the transaction but also on other specific relevant factors, such as the nature of the related party relationship.

Evaluation of Related Party Disclosures (Ref: par. .26a)

.A51 Evaluating the related party disclosures means considering whether the facts and circumstances of the entity's related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately summarized and presented so that the disclosures are understandable. Disclosures of related party transactions may not be understandable if

- a. the business rationale and the effects of the transactions on the financial statements are unclear or misstated.
- b. key terms, conditions, or other important elements of the transactions necessary for understanding them are not appropriately disclosed.

Communication With Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .27)

.A52 Communicating significant findings and issues arising during the audit in connection with the entity's related parties helps the auditor establish a common understanding with those charged with governance of the nature and resolution of these matters.³³ Examples of significant related party findings and issues include the following:

- Nondisclosure (whether or not intentional) by management to the auditor of related parties or significant related party transactions, which may alert those charged with governance to significant related party relationships and transactions of which they may not have been previously aware
- The identification of significant related party transactions that have not been appropriately authorized and approved, which may give rise to suspected fraud
- Disagreement with management regarding the accounting for, and disclosure of, significant related party transactions
- Noncompliance with applicable laws or regulations prohibiting or restricting specific types of related party transactions
- Difficulties in identifying the party that ultimately controls the entity

³³ Paragraph .A10 of section 230 provides further guidance on the nature of significant findings or issues arising during the audit.

412 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A53

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 550, *Related Parties*, and International Standard on Auditing 550, *Related Parties*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 550, *Related Parties*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 550, *Related Parties*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

ISA 550 distinguishes between fair presentation and compliance frameworks and between financial reporting frameworks that contain related party requirements and financial reporting frameworks that have minimal or no related party requirements. However, the ASB believes that fair presentation frameworks are the only financial reporting framework used in the United States. Further, to achieve fair presentation, disclosures related to related parties, such as those required by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), are necessary and, accordingly, section 550 defines *related party* as “a party as defined in GAAP.” Thus, section 550 does not refer to applicable financial reporting frameworks; the applicability, objectives, and requirements of section 550 are the same regardless of the applicable financial reporting framework.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 26 of ISA 550 requires the auditor to request that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, provide written representations regarding related party transactions. The ASB believes this requirement is more appropriately placed in section 580, *Written Representations*. The placement of this requirement does not create a difference between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 560*

Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events and subsequently discovered facts in an audit of financial statements. It also addresses a predecessor auditor's responsibilities for subsequent events and subsequently discovered facts when reissuing the auditor's report on previously issued financial statements that are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period. (Ref: par. .A1)

Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts

.02 Financial statements may be affected by certain events that occur after the date of the financial statements. Many financial reporting frameworks specifically refer to such events. Such financial reporting frameworks ordinarily identify two types of events:

- a. Those that provide evidence of conditions that existed at the date of the financial statements
- b. Those that provide evidence of conditions that arose after the date of the financial statements

.03 Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, explains that the date of the auditor's report informs the user of the auditor's report that the auditor has considered the effect of events and transactions of which the auditor becomes aware and that occurred up to that date.¹ Accordingly, this section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements. It also addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequently discovered facts that become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.05 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements are appropriately reflected in those financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and
- b. respond appropriately to facts that become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report that, had they been known to the auditor at that date, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .A38 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

414 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.06 The objective of a predecessor auditor who is requested to reissue a previously issued auditor's report on financial statements that are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period is to perform specified procedures to determine whether the previously issued auditor's report is still appropriate before such report is reissued.

Definitions

.07 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Date of the auditor's report. The date that the auditor dates the report on the financial statements, in accordance with section 700.² (Ref: par. .A14)

Date of the financial statements. The date of the end of the latest period covered by the financial statements.

Subsequent events. Events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report.

Subsequently discovered facts. Facts that become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report that, had they been known to the auditor at that date, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report.

.08 Reference to *audited financial statements* in this section means *the financial statements, together with the auditor's report thereon*.

Requirements

Subsequent Events

.09 The auditor should perform audit procedures designed to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that all subsequent events that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements have been identified. The auditor is not, however, expected to perform additional audit procedures on matters to which previously applied audit procedures have provided satisfactory conclusions. (Ref: par. .A2–.A3)

.10 The auditor should perform the procedures required by paragraph .09 so that they cover the period from the date of the financial statements to the date of the auditor's report or as near as practicable thereto. The auditor should take into account the auditor's risk assessment in determining the nature and extent of such audit procedures, which should include the following: (Ref: par. .A4–.A5 and .A8–.A10)

- a. Obtaining an understanding of any procedures that management has established to ensure that subsequent events are identified
- b. Inquiring of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether any subsequent events have occurred that might affect the financial statements (Ref: par. .A6)
- c. Reading minutes, if any, of the meetings of the entity's owners, management, and those charged with governance that have been held after the date of the financial statements and inquiring about matters discussed at any such meetings for which minutes are not yet available (Ref: par. .A4 and .A7)
- d. Reading the entity's latest subsequent interim financial statements, if any

.11 If, as a result of the procedures performed as required by paragraphs .09–.10, the auditor identifies subsequent events that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements, the auditor should determine whether each such event is appropriately reflected in the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

² Paragraph .41 of section 700.

Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor Before the Report Release Date

.12 The auditor is not required to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial statements after the date of the auditor's report. However, if a subsequently discovered fact becomes known to the auditor before the report release date,³ the auditor should

- a. discuss the matter with management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.
- b. determine whether the financial statements need revision and, if so, inquire how management intends to address the matter in the financial statements.

.13 If management revises the financial statements, the auditor should perform the audit procedures necessary in the circumstances on the revision. The auditor also should either (Ref: par. .A11–.A16)

- a. date the auditor's report as of a later date; extend the audit procedures referred to in paragraphs .09–.10 to the new date of the auditor's report on the revised financial statements; and request written representations from management as of the new date of the auditor's report, in accordance with the requirements of section 580, *Written Representations*, or
- b. include an additional date in the auditor's report on the revised financial statements that is limited to the revision (that is, dual-date the auditor's report for that revision), thereby indicating that the auditor's procedures subsequent to the original date of the auditor's report are limited solely to the revision of the financial statements described in the relevant note to the financial statements. In this circumstance, the auditor should request written representations from management as of the additional date in the auditor's report about whether
 - i. any information has come to management's attention that would cause management to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified.
 - ii. any other events have occurred subsequent to the date of the financial statements that would require adjustment to, or disclosure in, those financial statements.

.14 If management does not revise the financial statements in circumstances when the auditor believes they need to be revised, the auditor should modify the opinion (express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion), as required by section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*. (Ref: par. .A17)

Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor After the Report Release Date

.15 If a subsequently discovered fact becomes known to the auditor after the report release date, the auditor should (Ref: par. .A18–.A20)

- a. discuss the matter with management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.
- b. determine whether the financial statements need revision and, if so, inquire how management intends to address the matter in the financial statements.

.16 If management revises the financial statements, the auditor should

- a. apply the requirements of paragraph .13.
- b. if the audited financial statements (before revision) have been made available to third parties, assess whether the steps taken by management are timely and appropriate to ensure that anyone in receipt of those financial statements is informed of the situation, including that the audited financial statements are not to be relied upon. If management does not take the necessary steps, the auditor should apply the requirements of paragraph .18. (Ref: par. .A21–.A22)

³ The term *report release date* is defined in paragraph .06 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

416 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- c. if the auditor's opinion on the revised financial statements differs from the opinion the auditor previously expressed, disclose the following matters in an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph, in accordance with section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*:
 - i. The date of the auditor's previous report
 - ii. The type of opinion previously expressed
 - iii. The substantive reasons for the different opinion
 - iv. That the auditor's opinion on the revised financial statements is different from the auditor's previous opinion

.17 If management does not revise the financial statements in circumstances when the auditor believes they need to be revised, then

- a. if the audited financial statements have not been made available to third parties, the auditor should notify management and those charged with governance—unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity⁴—not to make the audited financial statements available to third parties before the necessary revisions have been made and a new auditor's report on the revised financial statements has been provided. If the audited financial statements are, nevertheless, subsequently made available to third parties without the necessary revisions, the auditor should apply the requirements of paragraph .17b.
- b. if the audited financial statements have been made available to third parties, the auditor should assess whether the steps taken by management are timely and appropriate to ensure that anyone in receipt of the audited financial statements is informed of the situation, including that the audited financial statements are not to be relied upon. If management does not take the necessary steps, the auditor should apply the requirements of paragraph .18. (Ref: par. .A21–.A22)

.18 If management does not take the necessary steps to ensure that anyone in receipt of the audited financial statements is informed of the situation, as provided by paragraphs .16b or .17b, the auditor should notify management and those charged with governance—unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity⁵—that the auditor will seek to prevent future reliance on the auditor's report. If, despite such notification, management or those charged with governance do not take the necessary steps, the auditor should take appropriate action to seek to prevent reliance on the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A23–.A26)

Predecessor Auditor's Reissuance of the Auditor's Report in Comparative Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A27–.A28)

Predecessor Auditor's Report Reissued (Ref: par. .A29–.A30)

.19 Before reissuing a previously issued auditor's report on financial statements that are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period, the predecessor auditor should perform the following procedures to determine whether the previously issued auditor's report is still appropriate:

- a. Read the financial statements of the subsequent period to be presented on a comparative basis
- b. Compare the prior period financial statements that the predecessor auditor reported on with the financial statements of the subsequent period to be presented on a comparative basis
- c. Inquire of, and request written representations from, management of the former client, at or near the date of reissuance, about whether
 - i. any information has come to management's attention that would cause management to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified

⁴ Paragraph .14 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

⁵ Paragraph .14 of section 260.

- ii. any events have occurred subsequent to the date of the latest prior period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor that would require adjustment to, or disclosure in, those financial statements
 - d. Obtain a representation letter from the successor auditor stating whether the successor auditor's audit revealed any matters that, in the successor auditor's opinion, might have a material effect on, or require disclosure in, the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor
- .20** If, in performing the procedures in paragraph .19, a subsequently discovered fact becomes known to the predecessor auditor, then
- a. the predecessor auditor should apply the requirements of paragraph .15.
 - b. if management revises the financial statements and the predecessor auditor plans to issue a new auditor's report on the revised financial statements, the predecessor auditor should apply the requirements of paragraph .16.
 - c. if management revises the financial statements and the predecessor auditor does not plan to issue a new auditor's report on the revised financial statements, or if management does not revise the financial statements in circumstances when the predecessor auditor believes they need to be revised, the predecessor auditor should assess the steps taken by management, as required by paragraph .17b.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)

.A1 When audited financial statements are included in other documents subsequent to their issuance, the auditor may have additional responsibilities to consider, such as legal or regulatory requirements involving private placement offerings, exempt public offerings (including offerings pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission [SEC] Rule 144A), or other offerings of securities to the public in jurisdictions outside the United States. Section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), may be applied, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, to such other documents. Section 925, *Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities in connection with financial statements of a nonissuer included in a registration statement filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

Subsequent Events (Ref: par. .09–.11)

.A2 The period between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report may vary from a relatively short period to one or more months. Some phases of the audit will be performed during this period, whereas other phases will be substantially completed on or before the date of the financial statements. As an audit approaches completion, the auditor is not expected to perform additional audit procedures on matters to which previously applied audit procedures have provided satisfactory conclusions. New information, however, may be inconsistent with the audit evidence obtained, in which case the auditor is required to determine what modifications or additions to audit procedures are necessary to resolve the matter and consider the effect of the matter, if any, on other aspects of the audit.⁶

.A3 Depending on the auditor's risk assessment, the audit procedures required by paragraphs .09–.10 may include procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence involving the review or testing of accounting records or transactions occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report. The audit procedures required by paragraphs .09–.10 are in addition to procedures that the auditor may perform for other purposes that, nevertheless, may provide evidence about subsequent events (for example, to obtain audit evidence for account balances as of the date of the financial statements, such as cut-off procedures or procedures regarding subsequent receipts of accounts receivable).

⁶ Paragraph .10 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

418 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A4 Paragraph .10 stipulates certain audit procedures that the auditor is required to perform pursuant to paragraph .09. However, the subsequent events procedures that the auditor performs may depend on the information that is available and, in particular, the manner in which the accounting records have been maintained and the extent to which information has been prepared since the date of the financial statements. When interim financial statements (whether for internal or external purposes) or minutes of meetings of management or those charged with governance have not been prepared, relevant audit procedures may take the form of inspection of available books and records.

.A5 In addition to the audit procedures required by paragraphs .09–.10, the auditor may consider it necessary and appropriate to read the entity’s latest available budgets, cash flow forecasts, and other related management reports for periods after the date of the financial statements. Paragraphs .A6–.A10 provide guidance on additional matters that the auditor may consider in the course of performing subsequent events procedures.

Inquiry (Ref. par. .10b)

.A6 In inquiring of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether any subsequent events have occurred that might affect the financial statements, the auditor may inquire about the current status of items that were accounted for on the basis of preliminary or inconclusive data and may make specific inquiries about the following matters:

- Whether new commitments, borrowings, or guarantees have been entered into
- Whether sales or acquisitions of assets have occurred or are planned
- Whether there have been increases in capital or issuance of debt instruments, such as the issue of new shares or debentures, or an agreement to merge or liquidate has been made or is planned
- Whether any assets have been appropriated by the government or destroyed (for example, by fire or flood)
- Whether there have been any developments regarding contingencies
- Whether any unusual accounting adjustments have been made or are contemplated
- Whether any events have occurred or are likely to occur that will bring into question the appropriateness of accounting policies used in the financial statements, as would be the case, for example, if such events call into question the validity of the going concern assumption
- Whether any events have occurred that are relevant to the measurement of estimates or provisions made in the financial statements
- Whether any events have occurred that are relevant to the recoverability of assets

Reading Minutes (Ref. par. .10c)***Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities***

.A7 In audits of governmental entities, the auditor may, in performing the requirement in paragraph .10c, read the official records of relevant proceedings of the legislative or governing body, or other relevant regulatory or oversight body, and inquire about matters addressed in proceedings for which official records are not yet available.

Inquiries of Legal Counsel

.A8 Section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, addresses the auditor’s responsibility to seek direct communication with the entity’s legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments through the date of the auditor’s report.

Written Representations

.A9 Section 580 requires the auditor to request that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance provide written representations as of the date of the auditor’s report that all events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements, and for which the applicable financial reporting framework requires adjustment or disclosure, have been adjusted or disclosed.⁷

⁷ Paragraph .18 of section 580, *Written Representations*.

The auditor may consider whether written representations covering particular subsequent events or significant matters disclosed to the auditor in the performance of the audit procedures required by paragraphs .09–.10 may be necessary to support other audit evidence to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.A10 The applicable financial reporting framework may require management to evaluate subsequent events through the date the financial statements are issued or available to be issued and to disclose the date through which subsequent events were evaluated in the financial statements. In most cases, this will result in the date that management discloses as the date through which management has evaluated subsequent events being the same date as the auditor's report. This is because section 700 requires the auditor's report to be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed; that all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including related notes, have been prepared; and that management has asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements.⁸ Also, the auditor is concerned with subsequent events that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements through the date of the auditor's report or as near as practicable thereto. Therefore, management's representations concerning events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which the applicable financial reporting framework requires adjustment or disclosure are required to be made as of the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements.⁹ To align the date disclosed by management in the financial statements, the representation letter date, and the auditor's report date, the auditor may discuss the dating requirements with management and may also include, in the terms of the audit engagement,¹⁰ that management will not date the subsequent event disclosure earlier than the date of the representation letter (also the date of the auditor's report).

Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor Before the Report Release Date (Ref: par. .12–.14)

Dating the Auditor's Report on the Revised Financial Statements (Ref: par. .13)

.A11 The auditor has two methods available for dating the auditor's report when the financial statements are revised after the original date of the auditor's report. The auditor may include an additional date limited to the revision (that is, dual-date the auditor's report for that revision) or date the auditor's report as of a later date. In the former instance, the auditor's responsibility for events occurring subsequent to the original date of the auditor's report is limited to the specific event described in the relevant note to the financial statements. In the latter instance, the auditor's responsibility for subsequent events extends to the new date of the auditor's report on the revised financial statements.

.A12 Generally, when the revision of the financial statements is specifically limited to the effects of the specific event described in the relevant note to the financial statements, the auditor may decide to limit the audit procedures to that revision, as provided by paragraph .13b. Even when the financial statements are revised and disclosure of the revision is made, the auditor is not precluded from extending the audit procedures referred to in paragraphs .09–.10 to the new date of the auditor's report on the revised financial statements, as provided by paragraph .13a.

.A13 When, in the circumstances described in paragraph .13b, the auditor includes an additional date limited to the revision (a dual date), the original date of the auditor's report on the financial statements prior to their subsequent revision by management remains unchanged because this date informs the reader about when the auditor obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to those financial statements prior to their subsequent revision. However, an additional date is included in the auditor's report to inform users that the auditor's procedures

⁸ Paragraph .41 of section 700.

⁹ Paragraph .20 of section 580.

¹⁰ Paragraph .A23 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

420 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

subsequent to the original date of the auditor's report were limited to the subsequent revision of the financial statements. The following is an illustration of such wording:

(Date of auditor's report), except as to note Y, which is as of (date of completion of audit procedures limited to revision described in note Y).

.A14 As discussed in paragraph .A10, section 700 requires the auditor's report to be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements.¹¹ When management revises the financial statements and the auditor reports on the revised financial statements, the new date (or the dual date) included in the auditor's report cannot be earlier than the date on which the auditor carried out the audit procedures necessary in the circumstances on the revision, including that the documentation has been reviewed and management has prepared and asserted that they have taken responsibility for the revised financial statements.

Updated Written Representations

.A15 Section 580 requires the date of the written representations to be as of the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements.¹² If management revises the financial statements and, in accordance with paragraph .13a, the auditor dates the auditor's report on the revised financial statements as of a later date, written representations from management are required as of the later date to comply with section 580. The auditor may request management to provide a new representation letter or may agree with management on a form of written representations that update the written representations previously provided by addressing whether there are any changes to such written representations and, if so, what they are. An updated written representation letter may be in the form of the representations required by paragraph .13b when the auditor dual-dates the auditor's report for the revision.

Unaudited Events

.A16 To prevent the financial statements from being misleading, management may revise the financial statements by disclosing an event that arose after the original date of the auditor's report. When such event is included in a separate financial statement note that is labeled as unaudited (for example, when the event is captioned "Event (Unaudited) Subsequent to the Date of the Independent Auditor's Report"), the auditor is not required to perform any procedures on the revision, and the auditor's report carries the original date of the auditor's report.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .14)

.A17 In audits of governmental entities in which management does not revise the financial statements, the actions taken in accordance with paragraph .14 may also include reporting separately to the legislative or governing body, or other relevant regulatory or oversight body, on the implications of the subsequent event for the financial statements and the auditor's report and, if applicable, for the entity's internal control over financial reporting and compliance with law or regulation.

Subsequently Discovered Facts That Become Known to the Auditor After the Report Release Date (Ref: par. .15–.18)***Auditor's Responsibility After the Report Release Date (Ref: par. .15)***

.A18 New information may come to the auditor's attention that, had such information been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report. When such information becomes known to the auditor after the report release date, the requirements in paragraphs .15–.18 apply, even if the auditor has withdrawn or been discharged.

¹¹ Paragraph .41 of section 700.

¹² Paragraph .20 of section 580.

.A19 Because of the variety of conditions that might be encountered, the specific procedures or actions to be taken in a particular case may vary somewhat in light of the circumstances. For example, in determining whether the financial statements need revision, as required by paragraph .15b, the auditor may consider, in addition to the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, whether the auditor believes there are persons currently relying or likely to rely on the financial statements who would attach importance to the subsequently discovered facts. Consideration may be given, among other things, to the issuance of audited financial statements for a subsequent period, the time elapsed since the financial statements were issued and the auditor's report released, and any legal implications.

.A20 Section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's evaluation of the consistency of the financial statements, including changes to previously issued financial statements, and the effect of that evaluation on the auditor's report.

Revision of Financial Statements by Management (Ref: par. .16b and .17b)

.A21 The steps taken by management to ensure that anyone in receipt of the audited financial statements is informed of the situation, including that the audited financial statements are not to be relied upon, depend on the circumstances. Management's steps may include the following:

- Notification to anyone who is known to be relying or who is likely to rely on the financial statements and the auditor's report that they are not to be relied upon and that revised financial statements, together with a new auditor's report, will be issued. This may be necessary when the issuance of revised financial statements and a new auditor's report is not imminent.
- Issuing, as soon as practicable, revised financial statements with appropriate disclosure of the matter.
- Issuing the subsequent period's financial statements with appropriate disclosure of the matter. This may be appropriate when issuance of the subsequent period's audited financial statements is imminent.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A22 For audits performed under *Government Auditing Standards*, additional requirements exist, such as those pertaining to the evaluation of the timeliness and appropriateness of management's disclosure and actions to determine and correct misstatements in previously issued financial statements, reporting on the revised financial statements, and reporting directly to appropriate officials when management does not take the necessary steps.

Auditor Action to Seek to Prevent Reliance on the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .18)

.A23 If management made the audited financial statements available to third parties despite the auditor's notification not to do so, or if the auditor believes that management or those charged with governance have failed to take the necessary steps to prevent reliance on the auditor's report on the previously issued audited financial statements despite the auditor's prior notification that the auditor will take action to seek to prevent such reliance, the auditor's course of action depends upon the auditor's legal rights and obligations. Consequently, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice.

.A24 The actions that the auditor may take to seek to prevent reliance on the auditor's report may depend upon the degree of certainty of the auditor's knowledge that persons or entities exist who are currently relying or who will rely on the audited financial statements, and who would attach importance to the information, and the auditor's ability as a practical matter to communicate with them. Unless the auditor's legal counsel recommends a different course of action, the auditor may take the following steps to the extent applicable:

- Notify management and those charged with governance that the auditor's report is not to be relied upon.
- Notify regulatory agencies having jurisdiction over the entity that the auditor's report is not to be relied upon, including a request that the agency take whatever steps it may deem appropriate to accomplish the necessary disclosure.

422 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Notify anyone known to the auditor to be relying on the financial statements that the auditor's report is not to be relied upon. In some instances, it will not be practicable for the auditor to give appropriate individual notification to stockholders or investors at large whose identities are unknown to the auditor; notification to a regulatory agency having jurisdiction over the entity will usually be the only practical means for the auditor to provide appropriate disclosure, together with a request that the agency take whatever steps it may deem appropriate to accomplish the necessary disclosure.

.A25 Depending on the circumstances, if the auditor is able to determine that the financial statements need revision, the auditor's notification to anyone in receipt of the audited financial statements may

- include a description of the nature of the matter and of its effect on the financial statements, avoiding comments concerning the conduct or motives of any person.
- describe the effect that the matter would have had on the auditor's report if it had been known to the auditor at the date of the report and had not been reflected in the financial statements.

.A26 If the auditor was not able to determine whether the financial statements need revision, the notification to anyone in receipt of the audited financial statements may indicate that information became known to the auditor and that, if the information is true, the auditor believes that the auditor's report is not to be relied upon. The specific matter need not be detailed in the notification.

Predecessor Auditor's Reissuance of the Auditor's Report in Comparative Financial Statements (Ref: par. .19–.20)

.A27 An auditor may be requested by management or those charged with governance to furnish additional copies of the auditor's report after the report release date. Providing additional copies of the auditor's report is not a report reissuance. In such cases, the auditor has no responsibility to make further investigation or inquiry about events that may have occurred during the period between the date of the auditor's report and the date of the release of the additional copies.

.A28 Additional responsibilities relating to the reissuance of a previously issued auditor's report in connection with financial statements of a nonissuer included in a registration statement filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as discussed in paragraph .A1, are addressed in section 925.

Predecessor Auditor's Report Reissued

.A29 A predecessor auditor may be requested to reissue the auditor's report by a former client when prior period financial statements audited by the predecessor auditor are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period. A predecessor auditor's knowledge of the current affairs of the former client is limited in the absence of a continuing relationship. Accordingly, a predecessor auditor may be in a position to reissue the report if the predecessor auditor is able to make satisfactory arrangements with the former client to perform this service and if the predecessor auditor complies with paragraph .19 to determine whether the previous auditor's report is still appropriate. A predecessor auditor is not required to reissue the auditor's report. Either the current form or manner of presentation of the financial statements of the prior period or one or more events might make a predecessor auditor's previous report inappropriate.

.A30 Section 700 addresses the auditor's responsibilities when the auditor is engaged to audit and report on a revision to prior period financial statements audited by the predecessor auditor.¹³ It also addresses the auditor's responsibilities when the predecessor auditor's report will not be presented.¹⁴

¹³ Paragraph .A52 of section 700.

¹⁴ Paragraph .54 of section 700.

.A31

Exhibit—Comparison of Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, and International Standard on Auditing 560, *Subsequent Events*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 560, *Subsequent Events*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Paragraph 5 of ISA 560 defines *subsequent events* to include both events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report and facts that become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report. Section 560 includes separate definitions for *subsequent events* and *subsequently discovered facts* to clearly distinguish the auditor's responsibilities for each. The definition of *subsequently discovered facts* was also expanded to use language that is consistent with language in the objectives and requirements of ISA 560 (paragraphs 4(b) and 14) but that is not specifically included in the definition in ISA 560.

Paragraph 5 of ISA 560 further defines *the date the financial statements are issued*, which is the date the auditor's report and audited financial statements are made available to third parties. This term was deleted from section 560 because the applicable financial reporting framework may define the financial statement issuance date. In addition, because GAAS define the report release date, the ASB believes the definition could cause confusion with respect to the release versus the issuance of the auditor's report. Although the definition was deleted, the requirements in section 560 were modified to use terms that are well understood in the United States and to be consistent with the intent of the requirements in ISA 560.

Paragraph 12 of ISA 560 permits the auditor to dual date the auditor's report when law or regulation does not prohibit management from restricting the revision of the financial statements to the effects of the subsequent event or events causing that revision and those responsible for approving the financial statements are not prohibited from restricting their approval to that revision. In the United States, no such prohibition by law or regulation exists. Accordingly, paragraph .13*b* of section 560 omits the reference to law or regulation.

Because the date of the auditor's report and the report release date are within the auditor's control, the requirements in paragraphs .12–.18 of section 560 were restructured with reference to the report release date in lieu of reference to the date that the financial statements were issued. Similar changes were made to the related application and other explanatory material.

Paragraph 15(b) of ISA 560 requires the auditor to review the steps taken by management to ensure that anyone in receipt of the previously issued financial statements, together with the auditor's report thereon, is informed of the situation. Paragraphs .16*b* and .17*b* of section 560 require the auditor to determine whether management's steps are timely and appropriate. The ASB believes this is consistent with the intent of the requirements of ISA 560.

424 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

The ASB believes these changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 560 and the application of section 560.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Certain requirements in ISA 560 also require the auditor to provide the auditor's report or a new or revised auditor's report. These references were eliminated from the requirements in section 560 because the ASB believes that it is not necessary to require the auditor to provide the auditor's report.

Paragraph 12(b) of ISA 560, which is an optional form of dual dating, was not included in section 560 because it is uncommon in the United States to provide a new or revised auditor's report that includes a statement in an emphasis-of-matter paragraph that conveys that the auditor's procedures on subsequent events are restricted solely to the revision of the financial statements, as described in the relevant note to the financial statements.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Section 560 includes an additional objective in paragraph .06, requirements in paragraphs .19–.20, and application and other explanatory material in paragraphs .A27–.A30 related to a predecessor auditor's responsibilities when reissuing the auditor's report on previously issued financial statements that are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period. ISA 560 does not include such requirements.

Paragraph 9 of ISA 560 requires the auditor to request that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance provide written representations regarding subsequent events. This requirement is included in paragraph .18 of section 580, *Written Representations*. However, if the financial statements are subsequently revised, paragraph .13a–b of section 560 includes additional requirements for the auditor to request management to provide certain representations when the auditor either dates the auditor's report as of a later date or includes an additional date limited to the revision (that is, dual dates the auditor's report for that revision). These representations are not included in ISA 560.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

Paragraph 5 of ISA 560 defines *the date of approval of the financial statements*. This definition was deleted from the definitions of section 560 because the ASB did not believe it was necessary to its application and because the term is described in paragraph .A41 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

Paragraphs 11(b)(ii) and 15(c)(i) of ISA 560 require that the new auditor's report not be dated earlier than the date of approval of the revised financial statements. This requirement is not included in section 560 because the requirements for dating the report are addressed in section 700.

As noted above, the requirement in paragraph 9 of ISA 560 regarding written representations has been moved to section 580.

Paragraph 16 of ISA 560 requires the auditor to include in the new or revised auditor's report an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph in situations when the financial statements are revised after the financial statements have been issued. Paragraph 16 of ISA 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*, includes a similar requirement related to comparative financial statements and the auditor's opinion on prior period financial statements, when reporting on prior period financial statements in connection with the current period's audit, differs from the opinion previously expressed. Requirements have been placed in paragraph .16c of section 560 and paragraphs .13–.14 of section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, that when considered together, achieve the intent of the requirements in paragraph 16 of ISA 560 and paragraph 16 of ISA 710.

The ASB believes such placements do not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 570*

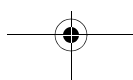
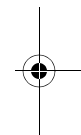
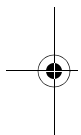
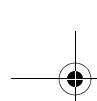
[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 59, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, as amended]

NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, which is currently codified as AU section 341 in *AICPA Professional Standards*.

SAS No. 122 designates section 570 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of a subsequent clarified SAS that will be issued to supersede SAS No. 59, as amended, when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board.

-
- * This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.



AU-C Section 580*

Written Representations

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to obtain written representations from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance in an audit of financial statements.

.02 Exhibit C, "List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Written Representations," lists other AU-C sections containing subject matter-specific requirements for written representations. The specific requirements for written representations of other AU-C sections do not limit the application of this section.

Written Representations as Audit Evidence

.03 *Audit evidence* is the information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based.¹ Written representations are necessary information that the auditor requires in connection with the audit of the entity's financial statements. Accordingly, similar to responses to inquiries, written representations are audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A1)

.04 Although written representations provide necessary audit evidence, they complement other auditing procedures and do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on their own about any of the matters with which they deal. Furthermore, obtaining reliable written representations does not affect the nature or extent of other audit procedures that the auditor applies to obtain audit evidence about the fulfillment of management's responsibilities or about specific assertions.

Effective Date

.05 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.06 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. obtain written representations from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance that they believe that they have fulfilled their responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements and for the completeness of the information provided to the auditor;
- b. support other audit evidence relevant to the financial statements or specific assertions in the financial statements by means of written representations if determined necessary by the auditor or required by other AU-C sections; and
- c. respond appropriately to written representations provided by management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance or if management or, when appropriate, those charged with governance do not provide the written representations requested by the auditor.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .05 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

428 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Definition**

.07 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Written representation. A written statement by management provided to the auditor to confirm certain matters or to support other audit evidence. Written representations in this context do not include financial statements, the assertions therein, or supporting books and records.

.08 For purposes of this section, references to *management* are to be read as “management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance” unless the context suggests otherwise.

Requirements**Management From Whom Written Representations Are Requested**

.09 The auditor should request written representations from management with appropriate responsibilities for the financial statements and knowledge of the matters concerned. (Ref: par. .A2–.A6)

Written Representations About Management’s Responsibilities***Preparation and Fair Presentation of the Financial Statements***

.10 The auditor should request management to provide a written representation that it has fulfilled its responsibility, as set out in the terms of the audit engagement,

- a. for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; and
- b. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.² (Ref: par. .A7–.A10, .A22, and .A29)

Information Provided and Completeness of Transactions

.11 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that

- a. it has provided the auditor with all relevant information and access, as agreed upon in the terms of the audit engagement, and
- b. all transactions have been recorded and are reflected in the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A7–.A10, .A22, and .A29)

Other Written Representations***Fraud***

.12 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that it

- a. acknowledges its responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal controls to prevent and detect fraud;
- b. has disclosed to the auditor the results of its assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud;
- c. has disclosed to the auditor its knowledge of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving
 - i. management,
 - ii. employees who have significant roles in internal control, or
 - iii. others when the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements; and
- d. has disclosed to the auditor its knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity’s financial statements communicated by employees, former employees, regulators, or others. (Ref: par. .A11)

² Paragraph .06b(i–ii) of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

Laws and Regulations

.13 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that all instances of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered by management when preparing financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor.³

Uncorrected Misstatements

.14 The auditor should request management to provide written representations about whether it believes the effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements as a whole. A summary of such items should be included in, or attached to, the written representation. (Ref: par. .A12)

Litigation and Claims

.15 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered by management when preparing the financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor and accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Estimates

.16 The auditor should request management to provide written representations about whether it believes significant assumptions used by it in making accounting estimates are reasonable. (Ref: par. .A13–.A14)

Related Party Transactions

.17 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that (Ref: par. .A15–.A16)

- a. it has disclosed to the auditor the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which it is aware and
- b. it has appropriately accounted for and disclosed such relationships and transactions.

Subsequent Events

.18 The auditor should request management to provide written representations that all events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which the applicable financial reporting framework requires adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed. (Ref: par. .A17)

Additional Written Representations About the Financial Statements

.19 Other AU-C sections require the auditor to request written representations. If, in addition to such required representations, the auditor determines that it is necessary to obtain one or more written representations to support other audit evidence relevant to the financial statements or one or more specific assertions in the financial statements, the auditor should request such other written representations. (Ref: par. .A18–.A22 and .A29)

Date of, and Period(s) Covered by, Written Representations

.20 The date of the written representations should be as of the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements. The written representations should be for all financial statements and period(s) referred to in the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A23–.A26)

Form of Written Representations

.21 The written representations should be in the form of a representation letter addressed to the auditor. (Ref: par. .A27–.A28)

³ Paragraph .A18 of section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

430 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations and Requested Written Representations Not Provided*****Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations***

.22 If the auditor has concerns about the competence, integrity, ethical values, or diligence of management or about management's commitment to, or enforcement of, these, the auditor should determine the effect that such concerns may have on the reliability of representations (oral or written) and audit evidence in general. (Ref: par. .A30)

.23 In particular, if written representations are inconsistent with other audit evidence, the auditor should perform audit procedures to attempt to resolve the matter. If the matter remains unresolved, the auditor should reconsider the assessment of the competence, integrity, ethical values, or diligence of management or of management's commitment to, or enforcement of, these and should determine the effect that this may have on the reliability of representations (oral or written) and audit evidence in general. (Ref: par. .A31)

.24 If the auditor concludes that the written representations are not reliable, the auditor should take appropriate action, including determining the possible effect on the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, considering the requirement in paragraph .25 of this section.

Written Representations About Management's Responsibilities

.25 The auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements in accordance with section 705 or withdraw from the engagement if (Ref: par. .A32–.A33)

- a. the auditor concludes that sufficient doubt exists about the integrity of management such that the written representations required by paragraphs .10–.11 are not reliable or
- b. management does not provide the written representations required by paragraphs .10–.11.

Requested Written Representations Not Provided

.26 If management does not provide one or more of the requested written representations, the auditor should

- a. discuss the matter with management;
- b. reevaluate the integrity of management and evaluate the effect that this may have on the reliability of representations (oral or written) and audit evidence in general; and
- c. take appropriate actions, including determining the possible effect on the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705, considering the requirement in paragraph .25 of this section. (Ref: par. .A34)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Written Representations as Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .03)**

.A1 Written representations are an important source of audit evidence. If management modifies or does not provide the requested written representations, it may alert the auditor to the possibility that one or more significant issues may exist. Further, a request for written rather than oral representations, in many cases, may prompt management to consider such matters more rigorously, thereby enhancing the quality of the representations.

Management From Whom Written Representations Are Requested (Ref: par. .09)

.A2 Written representations are requested from those with overall responsibility for financial and operating matters whom the auditor believes are responsible for, and knowledgeable about, directly or through others in the organization, the matters covered by the representations, including the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements. Those individuals may vary depending on the governance structure of the entity; however, management (rather than those charged with governance) is often the responsible party. Written representations may therefore be requested from the entity's chief executive officer and chief financial officer or other equiva-

lent persons in entities that do not use such titles. In some circumstances, however, other parties, such as those charged with governance, also are responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements.

.A3 Due to its responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements and its responsibility for the conduct of the entity's business, management would be expected to have sufficient knowledge of the process followed by the entity in preparing the financial statements and the assertions therein on which to base the written representations.

.A4 In some cases, however, management may decide to make inquiries of others who participate in preparing the financial statements and assertions therein, including individuals who have specialized knowledge relating to the matters about which written representations are requested. Such individuals may include the following:

- An actuary responsible for actuarially determined accounting measurements
- Staff engineers who may have responsibility for environmental liability measurements
- Internal counsel who may provide information essential to provisions for legal claims

.A5 To reinforce the need for management to make informed representations, the auditor may request that management include in the written representations confirmation that it has made such inquiries as it considered appropriate to place it in the position to be able to make the requested written representations. It is not expected that such inquiries would usually require a formal internal process beyond those already established by the entity.

.A6 In some cases, management may include in the written representations qualifying language to the effect that representations are made to the best of its knowledge and belief. It is reasonable for the auditor to accept such wording if, in the auditor's professional judgment, the representations are being made by those with appropriate responsibilities and knowledge of the matters included in the representations.

Written Representations About Management's Responsibilities (Ref: par. .10-.11)

.A7 Audit evidence obtained during the audit that management has fulfilled the responsibilities referred to in paragraphs .10-.11 is not sufficient without obtaining confirmation from management that it believes that it has fulfilled those responsibilities. This is because the auditor is not able to judge solely on other audit evidence whether management has prepared and fairly presented the financial statements and provided information to the auditor on the basis of the agreed acknowledgment and understanding of its responsibilities. For example, the auditor could not conclude that management has provided the auditor with all relevant information agreed upon in the terms of the audit engagement without asking management whether, and receiving confirmation that, such information has been provided.

.A8 The written representations required by paragraphs .10-.11 draw on the agreed acknowledgment and understanding of management of its responsibilities in the terms of the audit engagement by requesting confirmation that it has fulfilled them. In addition to requesting management to confirm that it has fulfilled its responsibilities, the auditor also may ask management to reconfirm its acknowledgment and understanding of those responsibilities in written representations. This is common but, in any event, may be particularly appropriate when

- those who signed the terms of the audit engagement on behalf of the entity no longer have the relevant responsibilities,
- the terms of the audit engagement were prepared in a previous year,
- any indication exists that management misunderstands those responsibilities, or
- changes in circumstances make it appropriate to do so.

Consistent with the requirement of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, such reconfirmation of management's acknowledgment and understanding of its responsibilities is unconditional and is not made subject to the best of management's knowledge and belief (as discussed in paragraph .A6 of this section).

432 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A9 Relevant information may include such matters as the following:

- Completeness and availability of all minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared
- Communications from regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with, or deficiencies in, financial reporting practices

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A10 The legal or regulatory requirements for audits of the financial statements of governmental entities may be broader than those of other entities. As a result, the premise, relating to management's responsibilities, on which an audit of the financial statements of a governmental entity is conducted may give rise to additional written representations. These may include written representations confirming that transactions and events have been carried out in accordance with applicable law or regulation.

Other Written Representations***Fraud (Ref: par. .12)***

.A11 The written representations relating to fraud required by paragraph .12 are important for the auditor to obtain, regardless of the size of the entity, because of the nature of fraud and the difficulties encountered by auditors in detecting material misstatements in the financial statements resulting from fraud.

Uncorrected Misstatements (Ref: par. .14)

.A12 Because the preparation of the financial statements requires management to adjust the financial statements to correct material misstatements, the auditor is required to request management to provide a written representation about uncorrected misstatements. In some circumstances, management may not believe that certain uncorrected misstatements are misstatements. For that reason, management may want to add to their written representation words such as "We do not agree that items ... and ... constitute misstatements because [description of reasons]." Obtaining this representation does not, however, relieve the auditor of the need to form a conclusion on the effect of uncorrected misstatements in accordance with section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

Estimates (Ref: par. .16)

.A13 Depending on the nature, materiality, and extent of estimation uncertainty, written representations about accounting estimates recognized or disclosed in the financial statements may include representations

- about the appropriateness of the measurement processes, including related assumptions and models, used by management in determining accounting estimates in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework and the consistency in the application of the processes.
- that the assumptions appropriately reflect management's intent and ability to carry out specific courses of action on behalf of the entity when relevant to the accounting estimates and disclosures.
- that disclosures related to accounting estimates are complete and appropriate under the applicable financial reporting framework.
- that no subsequent event has occurred that would require adjustment to the accounting estimates and disclosures included in the financial statements.

.A14 For those accounting estimates not recognized or disclosed in the financial statements, written representations also may include representations about the following:

- The appropriateness of the basis used by management for determining that the criteria of the applicable financial reporting framework for recognition or disclosure have not been met⁴
- The appropriateness of the basis used by management to overcome a presumption relating to the use of fair value set forth under the entity's applicable financial reporting framework for those accounting estimates not measured or disclosed at fair value

Related Parties (Ref: par. .17)

.A15 Circumstances in which it may be appropriate to obtain written representations about related parties from those charged with governance in addition to management include the following:

- When they have approved specific related party transactions that (a) materially affect the financial statements or (b) involve management
- When they have made specific oral representations to the auditor on details of certain related party transactions
- When they have financial or other interests in the related parties or the related party transactions

.A16 The auditor also may decide to obtain written representations regarding specific assertions that management may have made, such as a representation that specific related party transactions do not involve undisclosed side agreements.

Subsequent Events (Ref: par. .18)

.A17 Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, addresses circumstances when the auditor includes an additional date on the auditor's report (that is, dual-dates the auditor's report for a revision relating to a subsequent event).⁵ In such circumstances, the auditor may determine that obtaining additional representations relating to the subsequent event is appropriate.

Additional Written Representations About the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .19)

.A18 In addition to the written representations required by paragraphs .10–.18, the auditor may consider it necessary to request other written representations about the financial statements. Such written representations may supplement, but do not form part of, the written representations required by paragraphs .10–.18. They may include representations about the following:

- Whether the selection and application of accounting policies are appropriate
- Whether matters such as the following, when relevant under the applicable financial reporting framework, have been recognized, measured, presented, or disclosed in accordance with that framework:
 - Plans or intentions that may affect the carrying value or classification of assets and liabilities
 - Liabilities, both actual and contingent
 - Title to, or control over, assets and the liens or encumbrances on assets and assets pledged as collateral
- Aspects of laws, regulations, and contractual agreements that may affect the financial statements, including noncompliance

Exhibit B, "Illustrative Specific Written Representations," contains illustrations of additional representations that may be appropriate in certain situations.

⁴ Paragraph .A121 of section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*.

⁵ Paragraph .13 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

434 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Additional Written Representations About Information Provided to the Auditor***

.A19 In addition to the written representation required by paragraph .11, the auditor may consider it necessary to request management to provide a written representation that it has communicated to the auditor all deficiencies in internal control of which management is aware.

Written Representations About Specific Assertions

.A20 When obtaining evidence about or evaluating judgments and intentions, the auditor may consider one or more of the following:

- The entity's past history in carrying out its stated intentions
- The entity's reasons for choosing a particular course of action
- The entity's ability to pursue a specific course of action
- The existence, or lack thereof, of any other information obtained during the course of the audit that may be inconsistent with management's judgment or intent

.A21 In addition, the auditor may consider it necessary to request management to provide written representations about specific assertions in the financial statements; in particular, to support an understanding that the auditor has obtained from other audit evidence of management's judgment or intent regarding, or the completeness of, a specific assertion. For example, if the intent of management is important to the valuation basis for investments, it may not be possible to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence without a written representation from management about its intentions. Although such written representations provide necessary audit evidence, they do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on their own for that assertion.

Communicating a Threshold Amount (Ref: par. .10–.11 and .19)

.A22 Management's representations may be limited to matters that are considered either individually or collectively material to the financial statements, provided management and the auditor have reached an understanding on materiality for this purpose. Materiality may be different for different representations. A discussion of materiality may be included explicitly in the representation letter in either qualitative or quantitative terms. Materiality considerations do not apply to those representations that are not directly related to amounts included in the financial statements (for example, management's representations about the premise underlying the audit). In addition, because of the possible effects of fraud on other aspects of the audit, materiality would not apply to management's acknowledgment regarding its responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control to prevent and detect fraud.

Date of, and Period(s) Covered by, Written Representations (Ref: par. .20)

.A23 Because written representations are necessary audit evidence, the auditor's opinion cannot be expressed, and the auditor's report cannot be dated, before the date of the written representations. Furthermore, because the auditor is concerned with events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report that may require adjustment to, or disclosure in, the financial statements, the written representations are dated as of the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements.

.A24 In some circumstances, it may be appropriate for the auditor to obtain a written representation about a specific assertion in the financial statements during the course of the audit. When this is the case, it may be necessary to request an updated written representation.

.A25 The written representations cover all periods referred to in the auditor's report because management needs to reaffirm that the written representations it previously made with respect to the prior periods remain appropriate. The auditor and management may agree to a form of written representation that updates written representations relating to the prior periods by addressing whether there are any changes to such written representations and, if so, what they are.

.A26 Situations may arise in which current management was not present during all periods referred to in the auditor's report. Such persons may assert that they are not in a position to provide some or all of the written representations because they were not in place during the period. This fact, however, does not diminish such persons' responsibilities for the financial statements as

a whole. Accordingly, the requirement for the auditor to request from them written representations that cover the whole of the relevant period(s) still applies.

Form of Written Representations (Ref: par. .21)

.A27 Occasionally, circumstances may prevent management from signing the representation letter and returning it to the auditor on the date of the auditor's report. In those circumstances, the auditor may accept management's oral confirmation, on or before the date of the auditor's report, that management has reviewed the final representation letter and will sign the representation letter without exception as of the date of the auditor's report thereby providing sufficient appropriate audit evidence for the auditor to date the report. However, possession of the signed management representation letter prior to releasing the auditor's report is necessary because paragraph .21 requires that the representations be in the form of a written letter from management. Furthermore, when there are delays in releasing the report, a fact may become known to the auditor that, had it been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, might affect the auditor's report and result in the need for updated representations. Section 560 addresses the auditor's responsibilities in such circumstances.

.A28 Exhibit A, "Illustrative Representation Letter," provides an illustrative example of a representation letter.

Communication With Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .10-.11 and .19)

.A29 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, requires the auditor to communicate with those charged with governance the written representations that the auditor has requested from management.⁶

Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations and Requested Written Representations Not Provided

Doubt About the Reliability of Written Representations (Ref: par. .22-.23)

.A30 Concerns about the competence, integrity, ethical values, or diligence of management or about its commitment to, or enforcement of, these may cause the auditor to conclude that the risk of management misrepresentation in the financial statements is such that an audit cannot be conducted. In such a case, the auditor may consider withdrawing from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, unless those charged with governance put in place appropriate corrective measures. Such measures, however, may not be sufficient to enable the auditor to issue an unmodified audit opinion.

.A31 In the case of identified inconsistencies between one or more written representations and audit evidence obtained from another source, the auditor may consider whether the risk assessment remains appropriate and, if not, may revise the risk assessment and determine the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks.

Written Representations About Management's Responsibilities (Ref: par. .25)

.A32 As explained in paragraph .A7, the auditor is not able to judge solely on other audit evidence whether management has fulfilled the responsibilities referred to in paragraphs .10-.11. Therefore, if, as described in paragraph .25a, the auditor concludes that the written representations about these matters are unreliable or if management does not provide those written representations, the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. The possible effects on the financial statements of such inability are not confined to specific elements, accounts, or items of the financial statements and are hence pervasive. Section 705 requires the auditor to disclaim an opinion on the financial statements in such circumstances.⁷

.A33 A written representation that has been modified from that requested by the auditor does not necessarily mean that management did not provide the written representation. However, the

⁶ Paragraph .14d of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

⁷ Paragraph .10 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

436 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

underlying reason for such modification may affect the opinion in the auditor's report. For example

- the written representation about management's fulfillment of its responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements may state that management believes that, except for material noncompliance with a particular requirement of the applicable financial reporting framework, the financial statements are prepared and fairly presented in accordance with that framework. The requirement in paragraph .25 does not apply because the auditor concluded that management has provided reliable written representations. However, the auditor is required to consider the effect of the noncompliance on the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705.
- the written representation about the responsibility of management to provide the auditor with all relevant information agreed upon in the terms of the audit engagement may state that management believes that, except for information destroyed in a fire, it has provided the auditor with such information. The requirement in paragraph .25 does not apply because the auditor concluded that management has provided reliable written representations. However, the auditor is required to consider the effects of the pervasiveness of the information destroyed in the fire on the financial statements and the effect thereof on the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705.

Requested Written Representations Not Provided (Ref: par. .26)

.A34 Management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit. Such refusal is often sufficient to preclude an unmodified opinion and, in particular with respect to the representations in paragraphs .12–.18, may cause an auditor to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the auditor may conclude that a qualified opinion is appropriate.

.A35**Exhibit A—Illustrative Representation Letter**

The following illustrative letter includes written representations that are required by this and other AU-C sections in effect for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. It is assumed in this illustration that the applicable financial reporting framework is accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, that the requirement in section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),* to obtain a written representation is not relevant, and that no exceptions exist to the requested written representations. If there were exceptions, the representations would need to be modified to reflect the exceptions.

(Entity Letterhead)

(To Auditor)

(Date)

This representation letter is provided in connection with your audit of the financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20XX, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, for the purpose of expressing an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (U.S. GAAP).

Certain representations in this letter are described as being limited to matters that are material. Items are considered material, regardless of size, if they involve an omission or misstatement of accounting information that, in the light of surrounding circumstances, makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would be changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement.

Except where otherwise stated below, immaterial matters less than \$[insert amount] collectively are not considered to be exceptions that require disclosure for the purpose of the following representations. This amount is not necessarily indicative of amounts that would require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements.

We confirm that [, to the best of our knowledge and belief, having made such inquiries as we considered necessary for the purpose of appropriately informing ourselves] [as of (date of auditor's report),]:

Financial Statements

- We have fulfilled our responsibilities, as set out in the terms of the audit engagement dated [insert date], for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP. (par. .10a)
- We acknowledge our responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. (par. .10b)
- We acknowledge our responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control to prevent and detect fraud. (par. .12a)

* SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

438 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Significant assumptions used by us in making accounting estimates, including those measured at fair value, are reasonable. (par. .16)
- Related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the requirements of U.S. GAAP. (par. .17b)
- All events subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which U.S. GAAP requires adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed. (par. .18)
- The effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements as a whole. A list of the uncorrected misstatements is attached to the representation letter. (par. .14)
- The effects of all known actual or possible litigation and claims have been accounted for and disclosed in accordance with U.S. GAAP. (par. .15)

[Any other matters that the auditor may consider appropriate (see paragraph .A21).]

Information Provided

- We have provided you with:
 - Access to all information, of which we are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements such as records, documentation and other matters; (par. .11a)
 - Additional information that you have requested from us for the purpose of the audit; (par. .11a) and
 - Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom you determined it necessary to obtain audit evidence. (par. .11a)
- All transactions have been recorded in the accounting records and are reflected in the financial statements. (par. .11b)
- We have disclosed to you the results of our assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud. (par. .12b)
- We have [no knowledge of any] [disclosed to you all information that we are aware of regarding] fraud or suspected fraud that affects the entity and involves:
 - Management;
 - Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
 - Others when the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements (par. .12c)
- We have [no knowledge of any] [disclosed to you all information that we are aware of regarding] allegations of fraud, or suspected fraud, affecting the entity's financial statements communicated by employees, former employees, analysts, regulators or others. (par. .12d)
- We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing financial statements. (par. .13)
- We [have disclosed to you all known actual or possible] [are not aware of any pending or threatened] litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements [and we have not consulted legal counsel concerning litigation or claims] (par. .15)
- We have disclosed to you the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which we are aware. (par. .17a)

[Any other matters that the auditor may consider necessary (see paragraph .A21).]

[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]

[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]

.A36

Exhibit B—Illustrative Specific Written Representations

As discussed in paragraph .19, the auditor may determine that a specific written representation is necessary to corroborate other audit evidence. Certain AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides recommend that the auditor obtain written representations concerning matters that are unique to a particular industry. The following is a list of additional representations that may be appropriate in certain situations. This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. The existence of a condition listed subsequently does not mean that the representation is required; professional judgment is necessary to determine whether corroborative audit evidence in the form of a specific written representation is necessary.

Condition	<i>Illustrative Specific Written Representation</i>
General	
Unaudited interim information accompanies the financial statements.	The unaudited interim financial information accompanying [<i>presented in Note X to</i>] the financial statements for the [<i>identify all related periods</i>] has been prepared and fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to interim financial information. The accounting principles used to prepare the unaudited interim financial information are consistent with those used to prepare the audited financial statements.
The effect of a new accounting principle is not known.	We have not completed the process of evaluating the effect that will result from adopting the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Update 20YY-XX, as discussed in Note [X]. The company is therefore unable to disclose the effect that adopting the guidance in FASB Accounting Standards Update 20YY-XX will have on its financial position and the results of operations when such guidance is adopted.
Financial circumstances are strained, with disclosure of management's intentions and the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.	Note [X] to the financial statements discloses all of the matters of which we are aware that are relevant to the company's ability to continue as a going concern, including significant conditions and events, and management's plans.
The possibility exists that the value of specific significant long-lived assets or certain identifiable intangibles may be impaired.	We have reviewed long-lived assets and certain identifiable intangibles to be held and used for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances have indicated that the carrying amount of the assets might not be recoverable and have appropriately recorded the adjustment.

440 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Condition	Illustrative Specific Written Representation
General	
The entity has a variable interest in another entity.	Variable interest entities (VIEs) and potential VIEs and transactions with VIEs and potential VIEs have been properly recorded and disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. We have considered both implicit and explicit variable interests in (a) determining whether potential VIEs should be considered VIEs, (b) calculating expected losses and residual returns, and (c) determining which party, if any, is the primary beneficiary. We have provided you with lists of all identified variable interests in (i) VIEs, (ii) potential VIEs that we considered but judged not to be VIEs, and (iii) entities that were afforded the scope exceptions of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) <i>Accounting Standards Codification</i>TM (ASC) 810, Consolidation. We have advised you of all transactions with identified VIEs, potential VIEs, or entities afforded the scope exceptions of FASB ASC 810. We have made available all relevant information about financial interests and contractual arrangements with related parties, de facto agents and other entities, including but not limited to, their governing documents, equity and debt instruments, contracts, leases, guarantee arrangements, and other financial contracts and arrangements. The information we provided about financial interests and contractual arrangements with related parties, de facto agents and other entities includes information about all transactions, unwritten understandings, agreement modifications, and written and oral side agreements. Our computations of expected losses and expected residual returns of entities that are VIEs and potential VIEs are based on the best information available and include all reasonably possible outcomes. Regarding entities in which the company has variable interests (implicit and explicit), we have provided all information about events and changes in circumstances that could potentially cause reconsideration about whether the entities are VIEs or whether the company is the primary beneficiary or has a significant variable interest in the entity. We have made and continue to make exhaustive efforts to obtain information about entities in which the company has an implicit or explicit interest but that were excluded from complete analysis under FASB ASC 810 due to lack of essential information to determine one or more of the following: whether the entity is a VIE, whether the company is the primary beneficiary, or the accounting required to consolidate the entity.

Condition	Illustrative Specific Written Representation
General	
The work of a specialist has been used by the entity.	We agree with the findings of specialists in evaluating the [describe assertion] and have adequately considered the qualifications of the specialist in determining the amounts and disclosures used in the financial statements and underlying accounting records. We did not give or cause any instructions to be given to specialists with respect to the values or amounts derived in an attempt to bias their work, and we are not otherwise aware of any matters that have had an effect on the independence or objectivity of the specialists.
Assets	
Cash Disclosure is required of compensating balances or other arrangements involving restrictions on cash balances, lines of credit, or similar arrangements.	Arrangements with financial institutions involving compensating balances or other arrangements involving restrictions on cash balances, line of credit, or similar arrangements have been properly disclosed.
Financial Instruments Management intends to and has the ability to hold to maturity debt securities classified as held-to-maturity.	Debt securities that have been classified as held-to-maturity have been so classified due to the company's intent to hold such securities, to maturity and the company's ability to do so. All other debt securities have been classified as available-for-sale or trading.
Management considers the decline in value of debt or equity securities to be temporary.	We consider the decline in value of debt or equity securities classified as either available-for-sale or held-to-maturity to be temporary.
Management has determined the fair value of significant financial instruments that do not have readily determinable market values.	The methods and significant assumptions used to determine fair values of financial instruments are as follows: [describe methods and significant assumptions used to determine fair values of financial instruments]. The methods and significant assumptions used result in a measure of fair value appropriate for financial statement measurement and disclosure purposes.

442 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Condition	Illustrative Specific Written Representation
Assets	
Financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and financial instruments with concentrations of credit risk exist.	The following information about financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and financial instruments with concentrations of credit risk has been properly disclosed in the financial statements. 1. The extent, nature, and terms of financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk 2. The amount of credit risk of financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and information about the collateral supporting such financial instruments 3. Significant concentrations of credit risk arising from all financial instruments and information about the collateral supporting such financial instruments
Investments Unusual considerations are involved in determining the application of equity accounting.	<i>[For investments in common stock that are either nonmarketable or of which the entity has a 20 percent or greater ownership interest, select the appropriate representation from the following:]</i> • The equity method is used to account for the company's investment in the common stock of [investee] because the company has the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies. • The cost method is used to account for the company's investment in the common stock of [investee] because the company does not have the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies.
The entity had loans to executive officers, nonaccrued loans or zero interest rate loans.	Loans to executive officers have been properly accounted for and disclosed.
Liabilities	
Debt Short-term debt could be refinanced on a long-term basis and management intends to do so.	The company has excluded short-term obligations totaling \$[amount] from current liabilities because it intends to refinance the obligations on a long-term basis. <i>[Complete with appropriate wording detailing how amounts will be refinanced as follows:]</i> • The company has issued a long-term obligation [debt security] after the date of the balance sheet but prior to the issuance of the financial statements for the purpose of refinancing the short-term obligations on a long-term basis. • The company has the ability to consummate the refinancing, by using the financing agreement referred to in Note [X] to the financial statements.

Condition	Illustrative Specific Written Representation
Liabilities	
Tax-exempt bonds have been issued.	Tax-exempt bonds issued have retained their tax-exempt status.
<i>Taxes</i> Management intends to reinvest undistributed earnings of a foreign subsidiary.	We intend to reinvest the undistributed earnings of [name of foreign subsidiary].
<i>Pension and Postretirement Benefits</i> An actuary has been used to measure pension liabilities and costs.	We believe that the actuarial assumptions and methods used to measure pension liabilities and costs for financial accounting purposes are appropriate in the circumstances.
Involvement with a multi-employer plan exists.	We are unable to determine the possibility of a withdrawal liability in a multiemployer benefit plan. or We have determined that there is the possibility of a withdrawal liability in a multiemployer plan in the amount of \$[XX].
Postretirement benefits have been eliminated.	We do not intend to compensate for the elimination of postretirement benefits by granting an increase in pension benefits. or We plan to compensate for the elimination of postretirement benefits by granting an increase in pension benefits in the amount of \$[XX].
Employee layoffs that would otherwise lead to a curtailment of a benefit plan are intended to be temporary.	Current employee layoffs are intended to be temporary.
Management intends to either continue to make or not make frequent amendments to its pension or other postretirement benefit plans, which may affect the amortization period of prior service cost, or has expressed a substantive commitment to increase benefit obligations.	We plan to continue to make frequent amendments to the pension or other postretirement benefit plans, which may affect the amortization period of prior service cost. or We do not plan to make frequent amendments to the pension or other postretirement benefit plans.



444 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Specific Written Representation</i>
<i>Equity</i>	
Capital stock repurchase options or agreements or capital stock reserved for options, warrants, conversions, or other requirements exist.	Capital stock repurchase options or agreements or capital stock reserved for options, warrants, conversions, or other requirements have been properly disclosed.

.A37**Exhibit C—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Written Representations**

This exhibit identifies paragraphs in other AU-C sections that require specific written representations that may not be required for every audit. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in AU-C sections.

- Paragraph .19 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*
- Paragraph .52 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*
- Paragraph .23 of section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)

In addition, certain AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides suggest written representations concerning matters that are unique to a particular industry.

.A38

Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 580, *Written Representations*, and International Standard on Auditing 580, *Written Representations*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 580, *Written Representations*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 580, *Written Representations*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Paragraph 8 of ISA 580 describes management's responsibility in the case of a fair presentation framework. The ASB believes that all the acceptable financial reporting frameworks in the United States are fair presentation frameworks and, thus, the requirements of section 580 reflect this perspective.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraph 15 of ISA 580 contains a requirement related to situations in which law or regulation requires management to make written public statements about its responsibilities. The ASB believes that these situations are not applicable to nonissuers in the United States and, accordingly, such requirements are not included in section 580.

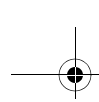
Differences Between Requirements

Paragraph 14 of ISA 580 requires that the date of the written representations be as near as practicable to, but not after, the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements. Paragraph .20 of section 580 requires that the date of the written representations be as of the date of the auditor's report, which is consistent with Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85, *Management Representations*, as amended. Paragraph .A27 of section 580 states that, occasionally, circumstances may prevent management from signing the representation letter and returning it to the auditor on the date of the auditor's report. In these circumstances, the auditor may accept management's oral confirmation, on or before the date of the representations, that management has reviewed the final representation letter and will sign the representation letter without exception as providing sufficient appropriate audit evidence for the auditor to date the report. However, possession of the signed management representation letter prior to releasing the auditor's report is necessary because paragraph .21 of section 580 requires that the representations be in the form of a written letter from management.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

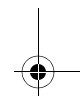
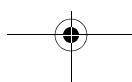
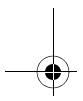
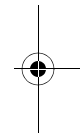
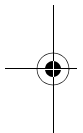
The following ISAs contain requirements for requesting written representations:

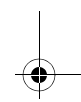
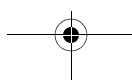
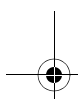
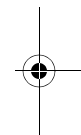
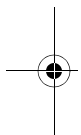
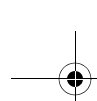
- Paragraph 39 of ISA 240, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements*
- Paragraph 16 of ISA 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements*
- Paragraph 14 of ISA 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*
- Paragraph 12 of ISA 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*



- Paragraph 22 of ISA 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*
- Paragraph 26 of ISA 550, *Related Parties*
- Paragraph 9 of ISA 560, *Subsequent Events*

Such requirements have been included in paragraphs .12–.19 of section 580. The ASB believes these requirements, which relate to representations that would be obtained for every audit engagement, are more appropriately placed in section 580. The placement of these requirements does not create differences between the ISAs as a whole and GAAS as a whole.





AU-C Section 585*

Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities when, subsequent to the report release date, the auditor becomes aware that one or more auditing procedures that the auditor considered necessary in the circumstances existing at the time of the audit were omitted from the audit of the financial statements. Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, is applicable when a fact becomes known to the auditor after the report release date that, had it been known to the auditor at that date, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report.

.02 The provisions of this section do not apply to an engagement in which an auditor's work is at issue in a threatened or pending legal proceeding or regulatory investigation. A *threatened legal proceeding* means that a potential claimant has manifested to the auditor an awareness of, and a present intention to assert, a possible claim.

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.04 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. assess the effect of omitted procedures of which the auditor becomes aware on the auditor's present ability to support the previously expressed opinion on the financial statements, and
- b. respond appropriately.

Definition

.05 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Omitted procedure. An auditing procedure that the auditor considered necessary in the circumstances existing at the time of the audit of the financial statements but which was not performed.

Requirements

.06 If, subsequent to the report release date, the auditor becomes aware of an omitted procedure, the auditor should assess the effect of the omitted procedure on the auditor's present ability to support the previously expressed opinion on the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A1–.A4)

.07 If the auditor concludes that an omitted procedure of which the auditor has become aware impairs the auditor's present ability to support a previously expressed opinion on the financial statements and the auditor believes that there are users currently relying, or likely to rely, on the

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

450 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

previously released report, the auditor should promptly perform the omitted procedure, or alternative procedures, to determine whether there is a satisfactory basis for the auditor's previously expressed opinion. The auditor should include in the audit documentation the procedures performed, in accordance with the provisions of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.¹ (Ref: par. .A3–.A5)

.08 When, as a result of the subsequent performance of an omitted procedure or alternative procedures, the auditor becomes aware of facts regarding the financial statements that existed at the report release date that, had they been known to the auditor at that date, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report, the auditor should apply the provisions of section 560.²

Application and Other Explanatory Material

.A1 The auditor's present ability to support the previously expressed opinion on the financial statements is dependent on whether the omitted procedure affects the auditor's conclusion that sufficient appropriate audit evidence was obtained. In accordance with section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, the auditor is required to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level and thereby enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.³ (Ref: par. .06)

.A2 After the report release date, the auditor has no responsibility to carry out any retrospective review of the audit work performed. However, situations may arise in which the auditor becomes aware that an auditing procedure considered necessary by the auditor in the circumstances existing at the time of the audit was omitted. For example, after the report release date, reports and supporting audit documentation for particular engagements may be subjected to review in connection with a firm's inspection or monitoring process,⁴ or otherwise, and the omission of a necessary audit procedure may be identified. (Ref: par. .06)

.A3 Procedures that the auditor may perform in connection with assessing the effect of an omitted procedure on the auditor's present ability to support a previously expressed opinion on financial statements include the following:

- Review of the audit documentation
- Discussion of the circumstances with engagement personnel and others within the firm
- Reevaluation of the overall scope of the audit

The results of other audit procedures that were performed may tend to compensate for the omitted procedure or make the effect of its omission less significant. Additionally, subsequent audits may provide audit evidence in support of the previously expressed opinion. (Ref: par. .06–.07)

.A4 The period of time during which the auditor considers whether this section applies to the circumstances of a particular engagement and then takes the actions, if any, that are required hereunder may be important. Because of the legal implications that may be involved in taking the actions contemplated herein, the auditor may decide to seek legal advice in determining an appropriate course of action. (Ref: par. .06–.07)

.A5 If, in the circumstances addressed in paragraph .07, the auditor is unable to perform a previously omitted procedure, or alternative procedures, to determine that there is a satisfactory basis for the auditor's previously expressed opinion, the auditor may decide to seek legal advice to

¹ Paragraph .14 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

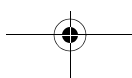
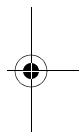
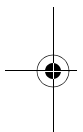
² Paragraphs .15–.18 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

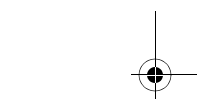
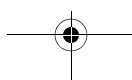
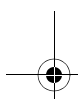
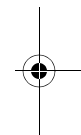
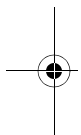
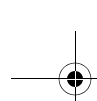
³ Paragraph .17 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

⁴ See Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10), regarding inspection in the context of the monitoring element of quality control.



determine an appropriate course of action concerning the auditor's responsibilities to the entity; regulatory authorities, if any, having jurisdiction over the entity; and users relying, or likely to rely, on the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .07)





AU-C Section 600* **USING THE WORK OF OTHERS**

AU-C Section 600*

Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) apply to group audits. This section addresses special considerations that apply to group audits, in particular those that involve component auditors.

.02 An auditor may find this section, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, useful when that auditor involves other auditors in the audit of financial statements that are not group financial statements. For example, an auditor may involve another auditor to observe the inventory count or inspect physical fixed assets at a remote location.

.03 A component auditor may be required by law or regulation or may have been engaged by component management for another reason to express an audit opinion on the financial statements of a component. The requirements of this section apply, nonetheless, regardless of whether the group engagement partner decides to make reference to the component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements or to assume responsibility for the work of component auditors.

.04 Governmental entities frequently prepare group financial statements. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides guidance to assist auditors in auditing and reporting on those financial statements in accordance with GAAS, including the requirements of this section.

.05 In accordance with section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, the group engagement partner is required to be satisfied that those performing the group audit engagement, including component auditors, collectively possess the appropriate competence and capabilities.¹ The group engagement partner also is responsible for the direction, supervision, and performance of the group audit engagement. In this section, requirements to be undertaken by the group engagement partner are addressed to the group engagement partner. When the group engagement team may assist the group engagement partner in fulfilling a requirement, the requirement is addressed to the group engagement team. When it may be appropriate in the circumstances for the firm to fulfill a requirement, the requirement is addressed to the auditor of the group financial statements.

.06 The requirements of section 220 apply regardless of whether the group engagement team or a component auditor performs the work on the financial information of a component. This section assists the group engagement partner to meet the requirements of section 220 when component auditors perform work on the financial information of components.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .16 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

454 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.07 Audit risk is a function of the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements and the risk that the auditor will not detect such misstatements.² In a group audit, detection risk includes the risk that a component auditor may not detect a misstatement in the financial information of a component that could cause a material misstatement of the group financial statements and the risk that the group engagement team may not detect this misstatement. This section explains the matters that the group engagement team considers when determining the nature, timing, and extent of its involvement in the risk assessment procedures and further audit procedures performed by the component auditors on the financial information of the components. The purpose of this involvement is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion on the group financial statements.

.08 The group engagement partner is responsible for deciding, individually for each component, to either

- assume responsibility for, and thus be required to be involved in, the work of a component auditor, insofar as that work relates to the expression of an opinion on the group financial statements, or
- not assume responsibility for, and accordingly make reference to, the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements.

The requirements in paragraphs .50–.64 are applicable only when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of component auditors. All other requirements in this section apply to all audits of group financial statements.

Effective Date

.09 This section is effective for audits of group financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.10 The objectives of the auditor are to determine whether to act as the auditor of the group financial statements and, if so, to

- a. determine whether to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements;
- b. communicate clearly with component auditors; and
- c. obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the components and the consolidation process to express an opinion about whether the group financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Definitions

.11 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Component. An entity or business activity for which group or component management prepares financial information that is required by the applicable financial reporting framework to be included in the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A1–.A5)

Component auditor. An auditor who performs work on the financial information of a component that will be used as audit evidence for the group audit. A component auditor may be part of the group engagement partner's firm, a network firm of the group engagement partner's firm, or another firm. (Ref: par. .A9–.A11)

Component management. Management responsible for preparing the financial information of a component.

² Paragraph .A35 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

Component materiality. The materiality for a component determined by the group engagement team for the purposes of the group audit.

Group. All the components whose financial information is included in the group financial statements. A group always has more than one component.

Group audit. The audit of group financial statements.

Group audit opinion. The audit opinion on the group financial statements.

Group engagement partner. The partner or other person in the firm³ who is responsible for the group audit engagement and its performance and for the auditor's report on the group financial statements that is issued on behalf of the firm. When joint auditors conduct the group audit, the joint engagement partners and their engagement teams collectively constitute the group engagement partner and the group engagement team. This section does not, however, address the relationship between joint auditors or the work that one joint auditor performs in relation to the work of the other joint auditor.

Group engagement team. Partners, including the group engagement partner, and staff who establish the overall group audit strategy, communicate with component auditors, perform work on the consolidation process, and evaluate the conclusions drawn from the audit evidence as the basis for forming an opinion on the group financial statements.

Group financial statements. Financial statements that include the financial information of more than one component. The term *group financial statements* also refers to combined financial statements aggregating the financial information prepared by components that are under common control.

Group management. Management responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the group financial statements.

Group-wide controls. Controls designed, implemented, and maintained by group management over group financial reporting.

Significant component. A component identified by the group engagement team (i) that is of individual financial significance to the group, or (ii) that, due to its specific nature or circumstances, is likely to include significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A6–.A8)

.12 Reference to *the applicable financial reporting framework* means the financial reporting framework that applies to the group financial statements. Reference to *the consolidation process* includes the following:

- a. The recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of the financial information of the components in the group financial statements by way of inclusion, consolidation, proportionate consolidation, or the equity or cost methods of accounting (Ref: par. .A12)
- b. The aggregation in combined financial statements of the financial information of components that are under common control

Requirements

Responsibility

.13 In accordance with section 220, the group engagement partner is responsible for (1) the direction, supervision, and performance of the group audit engagement in compliance with professional standards, applicable regulatory and legal requirements, and the firm's policies and procedures; and (2) determining whether the auditor's report that is issued is appropriate in the circumstances.⁴ (Ref: par. .A13–.A14)

³ *Group engagement partner* and *firm* refer to their governmental equivalents when relevant.

⁴ Paragraph .17 of section 220.

456 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Acceptance and Continuance**

.14 The group engagement partner should determine whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence can reasonably be expected to be obtained regarding the consolidation process and the financial information of the components on which to base the group audit opinion. For this purpose, the group engagement team should obtain an understanding of the group, its components, and their environments that is sufficient to identify components that are likely to be significant components. (Ref: par. .A15–.A17)

.15 The group engagement partner should evaluate whether the group engagement team will be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence through the group engagement team's work or use of the work of component auditors (that is, through assuming responsibility for the work of component auditors or through making reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report), to act as the auditor of the group financial statements and report as such on the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A18–.A21)

.16 In some circumstances, the group engagement partner may conclude that it will not be possible, due to restrictions imposed by group management, for the group engagement team to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence through the group engagement team's work or use of the work of component auditors, and the possible effect of this inability, will result in a disclaimer of opinion on the group financial statements.⁵ In such circumstances, the auditor of the group financial statements should

- in the case of a new engagement, not accept the engagement, or, in the case of a continuing engagement, withdraw from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, or
- when the entity is required by law or regulation to have an audit, having performed the audit of the group financial statements to the extent possible, disclaim an opinion on the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A22–.A27)

Terms of Engagement

.17 The auditor of the group financial statements is required, in accordance with section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, to agree upon the terms of the group audit engagement.⁶ (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)

Overall Audit Strategy and Audit Plan

.18 The group engagement team should establish an overall group audit strategy and should develop a group audit plan. In developing the group audit plan, the group engagement team should assess the extent to which the group engagement team will use the work of component auditors and whether the auditor's report on the group financial statements will make reference to the audit of a component auditor, as discussed in paragraphs .24–.29.

.19 The group engagement partner should review and approve the overall group audit strategy and group audit plan. (Ref: par. .A30)

Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments

.20 The auditor is required to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement through obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment.⁷ The group engagement team should

- a. enhance its understanding of the group, its components, and their environments, including group-wide controls, obtained during the acceptance or continuance stage.
- b. obtain an understanding of the consolidation process, including the instructions issued by group management to components. (Ref: par. .A31–.A37)

⁵ Paragraphs .11–.14 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

⁶ Paragraph .09 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

⁷ See section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

- .21** The group engagement team should obtain an understanding that is sufficient to
- confirm or revise its initial identification of components that are likely to be significant.
 - assess the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, whether due to fraud or error.⁸ (Ref: par. .A38–.A39)

Understanding a Component Auditor

.22 Regardless of whether reference will be made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor, the group engagement team should obtain an understanding of the following: (Ref: par. .A40–.A44)

- Whether a component auditor understands and will comply with the ethical requirements that are relevant to the group audit and, in particular, is independent (Ref: par. .A46)
- A component auditor's professional competence (Ref: par. .A47–.A48)
- The extent, if any, to which the group engagement team will be able to be involved in the work of the component auditor
- Whether the group engagement team will be able to obtain information affecting the consolidation process from a component auditor
- Whether a component auditor operates in a regulatory environment that actively oversees auditors (Ref: par. .A45)

.23 When a component auditor does not meet the independence requirements that are relevant to the group audit or the group engagement team has serious concerns about the other matters listed in paragraph .22a–b, the group engagement team should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence relating to the financial information of the component without making reference to the audit of that component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements or otherwise using the work of that component auditor. (Ref: par. .A49–.A51)

Determining Whether to Make Reference to a Component Auditor in the Auditor's Report on the Group Financial Statements

.24 Having gained an understanding of each component auditor, the group engagement partner should decide whether to make reference to a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A52)

.25 Reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements should not be made unless

- the component's financial statements are prepared using the same financial reporting framework as the group financial statements; (Ref: par. .A53)
- the component auditor has performed an audit on the financial statements of the component in accordance with GAAS or, when required by law or regulation, with auditing standards promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) (Ref: par. .A54); and
- the component auditor has issued an auditor's report that is not restricted as to use.⁹

.26 When the group engagement partner decides to make reference in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor, the group engagement team

⁸ See section 315.

⁹ See section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

458 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence with regard to such components by performing the following procedures:

- a. The procedures required by this section, except for those required by paragraphs .50–.64
- b. Reading the component's financial statements and the component auditor's report thereon to identify significant findings and issues and, when considered necessary, communicating with the component auditor in this regard

Making Reference in the Auditor's Report

.27 When the group engagement partner decides to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, the report on the group financial statements should clearly indicate that the component was not audited by the auditor of the group financial statements but was audited by the component auditor, and should include the magnitude of the portion of the financial statements audited by the component auditor. (Ref: par. .A55–.A57)

.28 If the group engagement partner decides to name a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements

- a. the component auditor's express permission should be obtained.
- b. the component auditor's report should be presented together with that of the auditor's report on the group financial statements.

.29 If the opinion of a component auditor is modified or that report includes an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph, the auditor of the group financial statements should determine the effect that this may have on the auditor's report on the group financial statements. When deemed appropriate, the auditor of the group financial statements should modify the opinion on the group financial statements or include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report on the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A58)

.30 If the group engagement partner decides to assume responsibility for work of a component auditor, no reference should be made to the component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A59)

Materiality

.31 The group engagement team should determine the following: (Ref: par. .A60)

- a. Materiality, including performance materiality, for the group financial statements as a whole when establishing the overall group audit strategy.¹⁰
- b. Whether, in the specific circumstances of the group, particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures in the group financial statements exist for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the group financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the group financial statements. In such circumstances, the group engagement team should determine materiality to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures.
- c. Component materiality for those components on which the group engagement team will perform, or request a component auditor to perform, an audit or review. Component materiality should be determined taking into account all components, regardless of whether reference is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor. To reduce the risk that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements in the group financial statements exceeds the materiality for the group financial statements as a whole, component materiality should be lower than the materiality for the group financial statements as a whole, and component performance materiality should be lower than performance materiality for the group financial statements as a whole. (Ref: par. .A61–.A63)

¹⁰ See section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

- d. The threshold above which misstatements cannot be regarded as clearly trivial to the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A64)

See paragraph .50 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor.

Responding to Assessed Risks

.32 The auditor is required to design and implement appropriate responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement of the financial statements.¹¹ If the nature, timing, and extent of the work to be performed on the consolidation process or the financial information of the components is based on an expectation that group-wide controls are operating effectively or when substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the assertion level, the group engagement team should test, or have a component auditor test on the group engagement team's behalf, the operating effectiveness of those controls. See paragraphs .51–.57 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor. (Ref: par. .A65)

Consolidation Process

.33 In accordance with paragraph .20, the group engagement team obtains an understanding of group-wide controls and the consolidation process, including the instructions issued by group management to components. In accordance with paragraph .32, the group engagement team, or component auditor at the request of the group engagement team, tests the operating effectiveness of group-wide controls if the nature, timing, and extent of the work to be performed on the consolidation process are based on an expectation that group-wide controls are operating effectively or when substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the assertion level.

.34 The group engagement team should design and perform further audit procedures on the consolidation process to respond to the assessed risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements arising from the consolidation process. This should include evaluating whether all components have been included in the group financial statements.

.35 The group engagement team should evaluate the appropriateness, completeness, and accuracy of consolidation adjustments and reclassifications and should evaluate whether any fraud risk factors or indicators of possible management bias exist. (Ref: par. .A66)

.36 If the financial information of a component has not been prepared in accordance with the same accounting policies applied to the group financial statements, the group engagement team should evaluate whether the financial information of that component has been appropriately adjusted for purposes of the preparation and fair presentation of the group financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A53)

.37 The group engagement team should determine whether the financial information identified in a component auditor's communication (see paragraph .41b) is the financial information that is incorporated in the group financial statements.

.38 If the group financial statements include the financial statements of a component with a financial reporting period-end that differs from that of the group, the group engagement team should evaluate whether appropriate adjustments have been made to those financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Subsequent Events

.39 When the group engagement team or component auditors perform audits on the financial information of components, the group engagement team or the component auditors should perform procedures designed to identify events at those components that occur between the dates of the

¹¹ See section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

460 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

financial information of the components and the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements and that may require adjustment to, or disclosure in, the group financial statements. See paragraph .58 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor. (Ref: par. .A67)

Communication With a Component Auditor

.40 The group engagement team should communicate its requirements to a component auditor on a timely basis. This communication should include the following:

- a. A request that the component auditor, knowing the context in which the group engagement team will use the work of the component auditor, confirm that the component auditor will cooperate with the group engagement team.
- b. The ethical requirements that are relevant to the group audit and, in particular, the independence requirements.
- c. A list of related parties prepared by group management and any other related parties of which the group engagement team is aware. The group engagement team should request the component auditor to communicate on a timely basis related parties not previously identified by group management or the group engagement team. The group engagement team should identify such additional related parties to other component auditors.
- d. Identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, due to fraud or error, that are relevant to the work of the component auditor.

.41 The group engagement team should request a component auditor to communicate matters relevant to the group engagement team's conclusion, with regard to the group audit. Such communication should include the following:

- a. Whether the component auditor has complied with ethical requirements relevant to the group audit, including independence and professional competence
- b. Identification of the financial information of the component on which the component auditor is reporting
- c. The component auditor's overall findings, conclusions, or opinion

See paragraphs .59–.60 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence Obtained***Evaluating a Component Auditor's Communication and Adequacy of Their Work***

.42 The group engagement team should evaluate a component auditor's communication (see paragraph .41). The group engagement team should discuss significant findings and issues arising from that evaluation with the component auditor, component management, or group management, as appropriate. See paragraphs .59–.62 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor.

Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence

.43 The auditor is required to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion.¹² The group engagement team should evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion has been obtained from the audit procedures performed on the consolidation process and the work performed by the group engagement team and the component auditors on the financial information of the components. (Ref: par. .A68)

.44 The group engagement partner should evaluate the effect on the group audit opinion of any uncorrected misstatements (either identified by the group engagement team or communicated by component auditors) and any instances in which there has been an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A69)

¹² Paragraph .17 of section 200.

Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance of the Group
Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance

.45 The group engagement team should communicate to group management and those charged with governance of the group material weaknesses and significant deficiencies in internal control that are relevant to the group (either identified by the group engagement team or brought to its attention by a component auditor during the audit), in accordance with section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*.

.46 If fraud has been identified by the group engagement team or brought to its attention by a component auditor or information indicates that a fraud may exist, the group engagement team should communicate this on a timely basis to the appropriate level of group management in order to inform those with primary responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud of matters relevant to their responsibilities. (Ref. par. .A70)

.47 When a component auditor has been engaged to express an audit opinion on the financial statements of a component, the group engagement team should request group management to inform component management of any matter of which the group engagement team becomes aware that may be significant to the financial statements of the component, but of which component management may be unaware. If group management refuses to communicate the matter to component management, the group engagement team should discuss the matter with those charged with governance of the group. If the matter remains unresolved, the group engagement team, subject to legal and professional confidentiality considerations, should consider whether to advise the component auditor not to issue the auditor's report on the financial statements of the component until the matter is resolved and whether to withdraw from the engagement. (Ref: par. .A71)

Communication With Those Charged With Governance of the Group

.48 The group engagement team should communicate the following matters with those charged with governance of the group, in addition to those required by section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, and other AU-C sections: (Ref: par. .A72)

- a. An overview of the type of work to be performed on the financial information of the components, including the basis for the decision to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements
- b. An overview of the nature of the group engagement team's planned involvement in the work to be performed by the component auditors on the financial information of significant components
- c. Instances in which the group engagement team's evaluation of the work of a component auditor gave rise to a concern about the quality of that auditor's work
- d. Any limitations on the group audit (for example, when the group engagement team's access to information may have been restricted)
- e. Fraud or suspected fraud involving group management, component management, employees who have significant roles in group-wide controls, or others in which a material misstatement of the group financial statements has or may have resulted from fraud

Documentation

.49 The group engagement team should include in the audit documentation the following.¹³

- a. An analysis of components indicating those that are significant and the type of work performed on the financial information of the components
- b. Those components for which reference to the reports of component auditors is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements
- c. Written communications between the group engagement team and the component auditors about the group engagement team's requirements

¹³ Paragraphs .08–.12 and .A8 of section 230, *Audit Documentation*.

462 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- d. For those components for which reference is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor, the financial statements of the component and the report of the component auditor thereon

See paragraph .64 for additional requirements that apply when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor.

Additional Requirements Applicable When Assuming Responsibility for the Work of a Component Auditor

Materiality (See paragraph .31)

.50 In the case of an audit of the financial information of a component in which the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the component auditor's work, the group engagement team should evaluate the appropriateness of performance materiality at the component level. (Ref: par. .A73–.A74)

Determining the Type of Work to Be Performed on the Financial Information of Components (See paragraph .32)

.51 For components for which the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of component auditors, the group engagement team should determine the type of work to be performed by the group engagement team or by component auditors on its behalf on the financial information of the components (see paragraphs .52–.55). The group engagement team also should determine the nature, timing, and extent of its involvement in the work of component auditors.

Significant Components

.52 For a component that is significant due to its individual financial significance to the group, the group engagement team, or a component auditor on its behalf, should perform an audit of the financial information of the component, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, using component materiality. (Ref: par. .A75)

.53 For a component that is significant not due to its individual financial significance but because it is likely to include significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements due to its specific nature or circumstances, the group engagement team, or a component auditor on its behalf, should perform one or more of the following: (Ref: par. .A76)

- a. An audit, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, of the financial information of the component, using component materiality
- b. An audit, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, of one or more account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures relating to the likely significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements (Ref: par. .A77)
- c. Specified audit procedures relating to the likely significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements (Ref: par. .A78)

Components That Are Not Significant Components

.54 For components that are not significant components, the group engagement team should perform analytical procedures at the group level. (Ref: par. .A79)

.55 In some circumstances, the group engagement team may determine that sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion will not be obtained from the following:

- a. The work performed on the financial information of significant components
- b. The work performed on group-wide controls and the consolidation process
- c. The analytical procedures performed at group level

In such circumstances, the group engagement team should select additional components that are not significant components and should perform or request a component auditor to perform one or

more of the following on the financial information of the individual components selected: (Ref: par. .A80–.A83)

- An audit, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, of the financial information of the component, using component materiality
- An audit, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, of one or more account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures
- A review of the financial information of the component, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, using component materiality
- Specified audit procedures

The group engagement team should vary the selection of such individual components over a period of time.

Involvement in the Work Performed by Component Auditors (Ref: par. .A84–.A85)

Significant Components—Risk Assessment

.56 When a component auditor performs an audit or other specified audit procedures of the financial information of a significant component for which the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the component auditor's work, the group engagement team should be involved in the risk assessment of the component to identify significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements. The nature, timing, and extent of this involvement are affected by the group engagement team's understanding of the component auditor but, at a minimum, should include the following:

- a. Discussing with the component auditor or component management the component's business activities of significance to the group.
- b. Discussing with the component auditor the susceptibility of the component to material misstatement of the financial information due to fraud or error.
- c. Reviewing the component auditor's documentation of identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements. Such documentation may take the form of a memorandum that reflects the component auditor's conclusion with regard to the identified significant risks.

Identified Significant Risks of Material Misstatement of the Group Financial Statements—Further Audit Procedures

.57 When significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements have been identified in a component for which the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor, the group engagement team should evaluate the appropriateness of the further audit procedures to be performed to respond to the identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements. Based on its understanding of the component auditor, the group engagement team should determine whether it is necessary to be involved in the further audit procedures.

Subsequent Events (See paragraph .39)

.58 When component auditors perform work other than audits of the financial information of components at the request of the group engagement team, the group engagement team should request the component auditors to notify the group engagement team if they become aware of events at those components that occur between the dates of the financial information of the components and the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements that may require an adjustment to, or disclosure in, the group financial statements.

Communication With a Component Auditor (See paragraph .41)

.59 When the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor, the communication required in paragraph .40 should set out the work to be performed and the form and content of the component auditor's communication with the group engagement team. It also should include, in the case of an audit or review of the financial information of the component, component materiality (and the amount or amounts lower than

464 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

the materiality for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures, if applicable) and the threshold above which misstatements cannot be regarded as clearly trivial to the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A86–.A89)

.60 When the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor, the communication requested from the component auditor, as required in paragraph .41, also should include the following:

- a. Whether the component auditor has complied with the group engagement team's requirements.
- b. Information on instances of noncompliance with laws or regulations at the component or group level that could give rise to a material misstatement of the group financial statements.
- c. Significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, due to fraud or error, identified by the component auditor in the component and the component auditor's responses to such risks. The group engagement team should request the component auditor to communicate such significant risks on a timely basis.
- d. A list of corrected and uncorrected misstatements of the financial information of the component (the list need not include misstatements that are below the threshold for clearly trivial misstatements communicated by the group engagement team).
- e. Indicators of possible management bias regarding accounting estimates and the application of accounting principles.
- f. Description of any identified material weaknesses and significant deficiencies in internal control at the component level.
- g. Other significant findings and issues that the component auditor communicated or expects to communicate to those charged with governance of the component, including fraud or suspected fraud involving component management, employees who have significant roles in internal control at the component level, or others that resulted in a material misstatement of the financial information of the component.
- h. Any other matters that may be relevant to the group audit or that the component auditor wishes to draw to the attention of the group engagement team, including exceptions noted in the written representations that the component auditor requested from component management.

Evaluating a Component Auditor's Communication and Adequacy of Their Work (See paragraph .42)

.61 The group engagement team should determine, based on the evaluation required in paragraph .42, whether it is necessary to review other relevant parts of a component auditor's audit documentation. (Ref: par. .A90)

.62 If the group engagement team concludes that the work of a component auditor is insufficient, the group engagement team should determine additional procedures to be performed and whether they are to be performed by the component auditor or by the group engagement team.

Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance of the Group (See paragraphs .45–.48)

.63 The group engagement team should determine which material weaknesses and significant deficiencies in internal control that component auditors have brought to the attention of the group engagement team should be communicated to group management and those charged with governance of the group.

Documentation (See paragraph .49)

.64 The group engagement team should include in the audit documentation the nature, timing, and extent of the group engagement team's involvement in the work performed by the component auditors on significant components, including, when applicable, the group engagement team's review of relevant parts of the component auditors' audit documentation and conclusions thereon.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Component (Ref: par. .11)

.A1 The structure of a group affects how components are identified. For example, the group financial reporting system may be based on an organizational structure that provides for financial information to be prepared by a parent and one or more subsidiaries, joint ventures, or investees accounted for by the equity or cost methods of accounting; by a head office and one or more divisions or branches; or by a combination of both. Some groups, however, may organize their financial reporting system by function, process, product or service (or by groups of products or services), or geographical locations. In these cases, the entity or business activity for which group or component management prepares financial information that is included in the group financial statements may be a function, process, product or service (or group of products or services), or geographical location.

.A2 An investment accounted for under the equity method constitutes a component for purposes of this section. Investments accounted for under the cost method may be analogous to a component for purposes of this section when the work and reports of other auditors constitute a major element of evidence for such investments.

.A3 Various levels of components may exist within the group financial reporting system, in which case it may be more appropriate to identify components at certain levels of aggregation rather than individually.

.A4 Components aggregated at a certain level may constitute a component for purposes of the group audit; however, such a component also may prepare group financial statements that incorporate the financial information of the components it encompasses (that is, a subgroup). This section may, therefore, be applied by different group engagement partners and teams for different subgroups within a larger group.

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A5 In audits of state and local governments, a component may be a separate legal entity reported as a component unit or part of the governmental entity, such as a business activity, department, or program.

Significant Component (Ref: par. .11)

.A6 As the individual financial significance of a component increases, the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements ordinarily increase. The group engagement team may apply a percentage to a chosen benchmark as an aid to identify components that are of individual financial significance. Identifying a benchmark and determining a percentage to be applied to it involve the exercise of professional judgment. Depending on the nature and circumstances of the group, appropriate benchmarks might include group assets, liabilities, cash flows, revenues, expenditures, or net income. For example, the group engagement team may consider that components exceeding a specified percentage of the chosen benchmark are significant components.

.A7 The group engagement team also may identify a component as likely to include significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements due to its specific nature or circumstances (that is, risks that require special audit consideration).¹⁴ For example, a component could be responsible for foreign exchange trading and, thus, expose the group to a significant risk of material misstatement, even though the component is not otherwise of individual financial significance to the group.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A8 In audits of governmental entities, appropriate quantitative benchmarks for identifying significant components might include net costs or total budget. Qualitative considerations in audits of governmental entities may involve matters of heightened public sensitivity, such as national security issues, donor funded projects, or reporting of tax revenue.

¹⁴ Paragraphs .28–.30 of section 315.

466 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Component Auditor (Ref: par. .11)**

.A9 For purposes of this section, auditors who do not meet the definition of a member of the group engagement team are considered to be component auditors. However, an auditor who performs work on a component when the group engagement team will not use that work to provide audit evidence for the group audit is not considered a component auditor.

.A10 When two or more component auditors exist, the provisions of this section are applicable to each component auditor.

.A11 A member of the group engagement team may perform work on the financial information of a component for the group audit at the request of the group engagement team. When this is the case, such a member of the group engagement team also is a component auditor.

Consolidation Process (Ref: par. .12)**Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities**

.A12 In audits of state and local governments, the applicable financial reporting framework may be based on multiple reporting units. Therefore, the consolidation process may involve the inclusion, but separate presentation, of the financial statements of each reporting unit in the governmental entity.

Responsibility (Ref: par. .13)

.A13 Component auditors may perform work on the financial information of the components for the group audit and, as such, are responsible for their overall findings, conclusions, or opinions. However, regardless of whether reference is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the report of a component auditor, the auditor of the group financial statements is responsible for the group audit opinion.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A14 When the auditor of the group financial statements is engaged to express opinions on both the group financial statements and the separate financial statements of the components presented in the group financial statements, the auditor's reporting responsibilities with respect to the separate financial statements are the same as the auditor's responsibilities with respect to the group financial statements.

Acceptance and Continuance**Obtaining an Understanding at the Acceptance or Continuance Stage (Ref: par. .14)**

.A15 In the case of a new engagement, the group engagement team's understanding of the group, its components, and their environments may be obtained from the following:

- Information provided by group management
- Communication with group management
- When applicable, communication with the previous group engagement team, component management, or component auditors

.A16 The group engagement team's understanding may include matters such as the following:

- The group structure, including both the legal and organizational structure (that is, how the group financial reporting system is organized)
- Components' business activities that are significant to the group, including the industry and regulatory, economic, and political environments in which those activities take place
- The use of service organizations, including shared service centers
- A description of group-wide controls
- The complexity of the consolidation process
- Whether component auditors that are not from the group engagement partner's firm or network will perform work on the financial information of any of the components and group management's rationale for engaging more than one auditor, if applicable

- Whether the group engagement team
 - will have unrestricted access to those charged with governance of the group, group management, those charged with governance of the component, component management, component information, and the component auditors (including relevant audit documentation sought by the group engagement team)
 - will be able to perform necessary work on the financial information of the components

.A17 In the case of a continuing engagement, the group engagement team's ability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence may be affected by significant changes, such as the following:

- Changes in the group structure (for example, acquisitions, disposals, reorganizations, or changes in how the group financial reporting system is organized)
- Changes in components' business activities that are significant to the group
- Changes in the composition of those charged with governance of the group, group management, or key management of significant components
- Concerns the group engagement team has with regard to the integrity and competence of group or component management
- Changes in group-wide controls
- Changes in the applicable financial reporting framework

Expectation to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .15)

.A18 Relevant factors in determining whether to act as the auditor of the group financial statements include, among other things, the following:

- The individual financial significance of the components, as determined in accordance with the guidance in paragraph .A6, for which the auditor of the group financial statements will be assuming responsibility
- The extent to which significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements are included in the components for which the auditor of the group financial statements will be assuming responsibility
- The extent of the group engagement team's knowledge of the overall financial statements

.A19 A group may consist only of components not considered significant components. In these circumstances, the group engagement partner can reasonably expect to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion if the group engagement team will be able to

- a. perform the work on the financial information of some of these components.
- b. use the work performed by component auditors on the financial information of other components to the extent necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.A20 When the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work performed by a component auditor, the group engagement team is required by the provisions of this section to be involved in the work of the component auditor. Paragraph .26 describes the procedures to be followed to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence when the group engagement partner decides to make reference in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A21 Additional factors in determining whether to act as the auditor of the group financial statements in audits of state and local governments include, the following:

- Engagement by the primary government as the auditor of the financial reporting entity
- Responsibility for auditing the primary government's general fund (or other primary operating fund)

Access to Information (Ref: par. .16)

.A22 The group engagement team's access to information may be restricted by group management, or it may be restricted by circumstances that cannot be overcome by group management

468 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

(for example, laws relating to confidentiality and data privacy or denial by a component auditor of access to relevant audit documentation sought by the group engagement team).

.A23 When access to information is restricted by circumstances, the group engagement team may still be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence; however, this is less likely as the significance of the component increases. For example, the group engagement team may not have access to those charged with governance, management, or the auditor (including relevant audit documentation sought by the group engagement team) of a component that is accounted for by the equity method of accounting. If the component is not a significant component and the group engagement team has a complete set of financial statements of the component, including the auditor's report thereon, and has access to information kept by group management regarding that component, the group engagement team may conclude that this information constitutes sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding that component. If the component is a significant component, however, and the auditor of the group financial statements is not making reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, then the group engagement team will not be able to comply with the requirements of this section that are relevant in the circumstances of the group audit. For example, the group engagement team will not be able to comply with the requirement in paragraphs .56–.57 to be involved in the work of a component auditor. Therefore, the group engagement team will not be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding that component. The effect on the auditor's report of the group engagement team's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is considered in terms of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.A24 The group engagement team will not be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence if group management restricts the access of the group engagement team or a component auditor to the information of a significant component.

.A25 Although the group engagement team may be able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence if such restriction relates to a component considered not a significant component, the reason for the restriction may affect the group audit opinion. For example, it may affect the reliability of group management's responses to the group engagement team's inquiries and group management's representations to the group engagement team.

.A26 Section 210 addresses circumstances when an entity is required by law or regulation to have an audit.¹⁵ In these circumstances, this section still applies to the group audit, and the effect of the group engagement team's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is considered in terms of section 705.

.A27 Exhibit A, "Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Group Financial Statements," contains an example of an auditor's report containing a qualified opinion based on the group engagement team's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding a significant component accounted for by the equity method of accounting when, in the group engagement team's professional judgment, the effect is material but not pervasive.

Terms of Engagement (Ref: par. .17)

.A28 The terms of engagement identify the applicable financial reporting framework.¹⁶ Additional matters that may be included in the terms of a group audit engagement include whether reference will be made to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, when relevant, or arrangements to facilitate the following:

- Unrestricted communication between the group engagement team and component auditors to the extent permitted by law or regulation
- Communication to the group engagement team of important communications between

¹⁵ Paragraphs .07 and .A19 of section 210.

¹⁶ Paragraph .10 of section 210.

- the component auditors, those charged with governance of the component, and component management, including communications on significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control
- regulatory authorities and components related to financial reporting matters
- To the extent the group engagement team considers necessary
 - access to component information, those charged with governance of components, component management, and the component auditors (including relevant audit documentation sought by the group engagement team)
 - permission to perform work, or request a component auditor to perform work, on the financial information of the components

.A29 Certain restrictions imposed after acceptance of the group audit engagement result in an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that may affect the group audit opinion including, specifically, restrictions imposed on the following:

- The group engagement team's access to component information, those charged with governance of components, component management, or the component auditors (including relevant audit documentation sought by the group engagement team)
- The work to be performed on the financial information of the components

These restrictions may even lead to withdrawal from the engagement unless that is not possible under law or regulation. Section 705 addresses the auditor's responsibilities when management has imposed a limitation on the scope of the audit after the auditor has accepted the engagement.¹⁷

Overall Audit Strategy and Audit Plan (Ref: par. .19)

.A30 The group engagement partner's review of the overall group audit strategy and group audit plan is an important part of fulfilling the group engagement partner's responsibility for the direction of the group audit engagement.

Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments

Matters About Which the Group Engagement Team Obtains an Understanding (Ref: par. .20)

.A31 Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, contains guidance on matters the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the industry, regulatory, and other external factors that affect the entity, including the applicable financial reporting framework; the nature of the entity; objectives and strategies and related business risks; and measurement and review of the entity's financial performance.¹⁸ Appendix A, "Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments—Examples of Matters About Which the Group Engagement Team Obtains an Understanding," of this section contains guidance on matters specific to a group, including the consolidation process.

Instructions Issued by Group Management to Components (Ref: par. .20)

.A32 To achieve uniformity and comparability of financial information, group management ordinarily issues instructions to components. Such instructions specify the requirements for financial information of the components to be included in the group financial statements and often include financial reporting procedures manuals and a reporting package. A reporting package ordinarily consists of standard formats for providing financial information for incorporation in the group financial statements. Reporting packages generally do not, however, take the form of complete financial statements prepared and presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A33 The instructions ordinarily cover the following:

- The accounting policies to be applied

¹⁷ Paragraphs .11–.14 and .A15–.A16 of section 705.

¹⁸ Paragraphs .A17–.A41 of section 315.

470 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Statutory and other disclosure requirements applicable to the group financial statements, including the following:
 - The identification and reporting of segments
 - Related party relationships and transactions
 - Intragroup transactions and unrealized profits or losses
 - Intragroup account balances
 - A reporting timetable
- .A34** The group engagement team's understanding of the instructions may include the following:
- The clarity and practicality of the instructions for completing the reporting package
 - Whether the instructions
 - adequately describe the characteristics of the applicable financial reporting framework
 - provide for disclosures that are sufficient to comply with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework (for example, disclosure of related party relationships, related party transactions, and segment information)
 - provide for the identification of consolidation adjustments (for example, intragroup account balances, transactions, and unrealized profits or losses)
 - provide for the approval of the financial information by component management

Fraud (Ref: par. .20)

.A35 The auditor is required to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud and to design and implement appropriate responses to the assessed risks.¹⁹ Information used to identify the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements due to fraud may include the following:

- Group management's assessment of the risks that the group financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud
- Group management's process for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the group, including any specific fraud risks identified by group management or account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures for which a risk of fraud is likely
- Whether particular components exist for which a risk of fraud is likely
- How those charged with governance of the group monitor group management's processes for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the group and the controls group management has established to mitigate these risks
- Responses of those charged with governance of the group, group management, and internal audit (and, if considered appropriate, component management, the component auditors, and others) to the group engagement team's inquiry whether they have knowledge of any actual, suspected, or alleged fraud affecting a component or the group

Discussion Among Group Engagement Team Members and Component Auditors Regarding the Risks of Material Misstatement of the Group Financial Statements, Including Risks of Fraud (Ref: par. .20)

.A36 The key members of the engagement team are required to discuss the susceptibility of an entity to material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud or error, specifically emphasizing the risks due to fraud. In a group audit, these discussions also may include the component auditors.^{20, 21} The group engagement partner's determination of who to include in the discussions, how and when they occur, and their extent is affected by factors, such as prior experience with the group.

¹⁹ See section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

²⁰ Paragraph .15 of section 240.

²¹ Paragraph .11 of section 315.

.A37 The discussions provide an opportunity to

- share knowledge of the components and their environments, including group-wide controls.
- exchange information about the business risks of the components or the group.
- exchange ideas about how and where the group financial statements may be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud or error; how group management and component management could perpetrate and conceal fraudulent financial reporting; and how assets of the components could be misappropriated.
- identify practices followed by group or component management that may be biased or designed to manage earnings that could lead to fraudulent financial reporting (for example, revenue recognition practices that do not comply with the applicable financial reporting framework).
- consider known external and internal factors affecting the group that may create an incentive or pressure for group management, component management, or others to commit fraud; provide the opportunity for fraud to be perpetrated; or indicate a culture or environment that enables group management, component management, or others to rationalize committing fraud.
- consider the risk that group or component management may override controls.
- consider whether uniform accounting policies are used to prepare the financial information of the components for the group financial statements and, if not, how differences in accounting policies are identified and adjusted (when required by the applicable financial reporting framework).
- discuss fraud that has been identified in components or information that indicates the existence of a fraud in a component.
- share information that may indicate noncompliance with laws or regulations (for example, payments of bribes and improper transfer pricing practices).

Risk Factors (Ref: par. .21)

.A38 Appendix B, “Examples of Conditions or Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement of the Group Financial Statements,” sets out examples of conditions or events that, individually or together, may indicate risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, including risks due to fraud.

Risk Assessment (Ref: par. .21)

.A39 The group engagement team’s assessment at group level of the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements is based on information, such as the following:

- Information obtained from the understanding of the group, its components, and their environments and of the consolidation process, including audit evidence obtained in evaluating the design and implementation of group-wide controls and controls that are relevant to the consolidation
- Information obtained from the component auditors

Understanding a Component Auditor (Ref: par. .22)

Group Engagement Team’s Procedures to Obtain an Understanding of a Component Auditor and Sources of Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .22)

.A40 Factors that may affect the group engagement partner’s decisions whether to use the work of a component auditor to provide audit evidence for the group audit and whether to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor’s report on the group financial statements include the following:

- Differences in the financial reporting framework applied in preparing the financial statements of the component and that applied in preparing the group financial statements
- Whether the audit of the financial statements of the component will be completed in time to meet the group reporting timetable

472 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Differences in the auditing and other standards applied by the component auditor and those applied in the audit of the group financial statements
- Whether it is impracticable for the group engagement team to be involved in the work of a component auditor

.A41 It will not be necessary to obtain an understanding of the auditors of those components for which the group engagement team plans to perform analytical procedures at group level only.

.A42 The nature, timing, and extent of the group engagement team's procedures to obtain an understanding of a component auditor are affected by factors, such as previous experience with, or knowledge of, the component auditor and the degree to which the group engagement team and the component auditor are subject to common policies and procedures, such as the following:

- Whether the group engagement team and a component auditor share the following:
 - Common policies and procedures for performing the work (for example, audit methodologies)
 - Common quality control policies and procedures
 - Common monitoring policies and procedures
- The consistency or similarity of the following:
 - Laws and regulations or legal system
 - Professional oversight, discipline, and external quality assurance
 - Education and training
 - Professional organizations and standards
 - Language and culture

.A43 These factors interact and are not mutually exclusive. For example, the extent of the group engagement team's procedures to obtain an understanding of component auditor A, who consistently applies common quality control and monitoring policies and procedures and a common audit methodology or operates in the same jurisdiction as the auditor of the group financial statements, may be less than the extent of the group engagement team's procedures to obtain an understanding of component auditor B, who does not consistently apply common quality control and monitoring policies and procedures and a common audit methodology or operates in a different jurisdiction. The nature of the procedures performed regarding component auditors A and B also may be different.

.A44 The group engagement team may obtain an understanding of a component auditor in a number of ways. In the first year of involving a component auditor, the group engagement team may, for example

- determine through communication with a component auditor that
 - the component auditor is aware that
 - the financial statements of the component are to be included in the group financial statements on which the auditor of the group financial statements will report.
 - the component auditor's report thereon will be relied upon by the auditor of the group financial statements.
 - either the auditor of the group financial statements will make reference to the component auditor's report in the opinion on the group financial statements or the group engagement team will be involved in the work of the component auditor.
 - a review will be made of matters affecting elimination of intercompany transactions and accounts and, if appropriate in the circumstances, the uniformity of accounting practices among the components included in the financial statements.

- evaluate the results of the quality control monitoring system when the group engagement team and component auditor are from a firm or network that operates under, and complies with, common monitoring policies and procedures.²²
- visit a component auditor to discuss the matters in paragraph .22a–d.
- request a component auditor to confirm the matters referred to in paragraph .22a–d in writing. Exhibit B, “Illustrative Component Auditor’s Confirmation Letter,” contains an example of written confirmations by a component auditor.
- request a component auditor to complete questionnaires about the matters in paragraph .22a–d.
- discuss a component auditor with colleagues in the group engagement partner’s firm or with a reputable third party that has knowledge of the component auditor, such as other practitioners or bankers and other credit grantors.

In subsequent years, the understanding of a component auditor may be based on the group engagement team’s previous experience with that component auditor. The group engagement team may request the component auditor to confirm whether anything regarding the matters listed in paragraph .22a–d has changed since the previous year.

.A45 Where independent oversight bodies have been established to oversee the auditing profession and monitor the quality of audits, awareness of the regulatory environment may assist the group engagement team in evaluating the independence and competence of a component auditor. Information about the regulatory environment and the public results of any inspections performed by oversight bodies may be obtained from the component auditor or information provided by the independent oversight bodies.

Ethical Requirements That Are Relevant to the Group Audit (Ref: par. .22a)

.A46 When performing work on the financial information of a component for a group audit, the component auditor is subject to ethical requirements that are relevant to the group audit. Such requirements may be different or in addition to those applying to the component auditor when performing an audit in the component auditor’s jurisdiction. The group engagement team, therefore, obtains an understanding about the component auditor’s understanding of, and compliance with, the ethical requirements that are relevant to the group audit and whether that is sufficient to fulfill the component auditor’s responsibilities in the group audit. When the component auditor is not subject to the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, compliance by the component auditor with the ethics and independence requirements set forth in the International Federation of Accountants *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* is sufficient to fulfill the component auditor’s ethical responsibilities in the group audit.²³

A Component Auditor’s Professional Competence (Ref: par. .22b)

.A47 Inquiries about the professional reputation and standing of a component auditor may be made of the AICPA, the state board of accountancy by which the component auditor is licensed, the applicable state society of CPAs, or the local chapter, or, in the case of an auditor from a foreign jurisdiction, the corresponding professional organization, and if applicable, the PCAOB. The group engagement team may obtain the peer review report, if available, on the component auditor’s firm. Exhibit C, “Sources of Information,” provides information about specific inquiries that may be directed to the AICPA.

²² Paragraph 57 of Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 8, *A Firm’s System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).

²³ At its May 25–26, 2010 meeting, the AICPA Professional Ethics Executive Committee (PEEC) agreed that an AICPA member who is the group engagement partner of a U.S. consolidated entity should be considered to have performed an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, and in compliance with the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, provided that component auditors that are not subject to the AICPA Code are in compliance with the ethics and independence requirements set forth in the International Federation of Accountants Code of Ethics. PEEC adopted a nonenforcement policy to this effect and agreed to pursue a revision to ET section 91, Applicability (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), of the Code to make it authoritative.

474 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A48 The group engagement team's understanding of a component auditor's professional competence may include whether the component auditor

- possesses an understanding of the auditing and other standards applicable to the group audit, such as U.S. GAAS, that is sufficient to fulfill the component auditor's responsibilities.
- possesses the special skills (for example, industry-specific knowledge or knowledge of relevant financial reporting requirements for statements and schedules to be filed with regulatory agencies) necessary to perform the work on the financial information of the particular component.
- when relevant, possesses an understanding of the applicable financial reporting framework that is sufficient to fulfill the component auditor's responsibilities in the group audit (instructions issued by group management to components often describe the characteristics of the applicable financial reporting framework).

Application of the Group Engagement Team's Understanding of a Component Auditor (Ref: par. .23)

.A49 The group engagement team cannot overcome the fact that a component auditor is not independent by being involved in the work of the component auditor or by performing additional risk assessment or further audit procedures on the financial information of the component or by making reference in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of the component auditor.

.A50 However, the group engagement team may be able to overcome less than serious concerns about a component auditor's professional competency (for example, lack of industry-specific knowledge) or the fact that a component auditor does not operate in an environment that actively oversees auditors by being involved in the work of that component auditor or by performing additional risk assessment or further audit procedures on the financial information of the component.

.A51 When law or regulation prohibits access to relevant parts of the audit documentation of a component auditor, the group engagement team may request the component auditor to overcome this by preparing a memorandum that covers the relevant information.

Determining Whether to Make Reference to a Component Auditor in the Auditor's Report on the Group Financial Statements (Ref: par. .24)

.A52 In group audits involving two or more component auditors, the decision to make reference to the audit of a component auditor is made individually for each component auditor, regardless of the decision whether to refer to any other component auditor. The auditor of the group financial statements may make reference to any, all, or none of the component auditors. For example, if significant components are audited by a component auditor from a network firm and one component is audited by another firm, the group engagement partner may decide to assume responsibility for the work of the component auditor from the network firm and to make reference to the work of the component auditor from the other firm.

Determining Whether the Financial Reporting Framework Is the Same

Consideration for Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .25a)

.A53 When the applicable financial reporting framework provides for the inclusion of component financial statements that are prepared in accordance with a different financial reporting framework, the component financial statements are deemed to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, both the financial reporting framework established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and the financial reporting framework established by the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board have such provisions. Accordingly, the auditor of the group financial statements is permitted to refer to an audit performed by a component auditor on financial statements that are prepared in accordance with a different financial reporting framework when the provisions established by the applicable financial reporting framework for inclusion of those component financial statements have been followed.

Determining Whether the Audit Was Conducted in Accordance With GAAS (Ref: par. .25b)

.A54 A component auditor's report stating that the audit was conducted in accordance with GAAS (or, if applicable, the auditing standards promulgated by the PCAOB) is sufficient to make the determination required by paragraph .25b. When the component auditor has performed an audit of the component financial statements in accordance with auditing standards other than GAAS (or, if applicable, the auditing standards promulgated by the PCAOB), the group engagement partner may evaluate, exercising professional judgment, whether the audit performed by the component auditor meets the relevant requirements of GAAS. Audits performed in accordance with International Standards on Auditing promulgated by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) are more likely to meet the relevant requirements of GAAS than audits performed in accordance with auditing standards promulgated by bodies other than the IAASB. The group engagement partner, having determined that all relevant requirements of GAAS have been met by the component auditor, may decide to make reference to the audit of that component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements.

Making Reference in the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .27–.30)

.A55 The disclosure of the magnitude of the portion of the financial statements audited by a component auditor may be achieved by stating the dollar amounts or percentages of one or more of the following: total assets, total revenues, or other appropriate criteria, whichever most clearly describes the portion of the financial statements audited by a component auditor. When two or more component auditors participate in the audit, the dollar amounts or the percentages covered by the component auditors may be stated in the aggregate.

.A56 Reference in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the fact that part of the audit was conducted by a component auditor is not to be construed as a qualification of the opinion, but rather is intended to communicate (1) that the auditor of the group financial statements is not assuming responsibility for the work of the component auditor, and (2) the source of the audit evidence with respect to those components for which reference to the audit of component auditors is made.

.A57 Exhibit A contains an example of appropriate reporting in the auditor's report on the group financial statements when reference is made to the audit of a component auditor.

.A58 If the modified opinion, emphasis-of-matter paragraph, or other-matter paragraph in the component auditor's report does not affect the report on the group financial statements and the component auditor's report is not presented, the auditor of the group financial statements need not make reference to those paragraphs in the auditor's report on the group financial statements. If the component auditor's report is presented, the auditor of the group financial statements may make reference to those paragraphs and their disposition.

.A59 When the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of a component auditor, no reference is made to the component auditor in the report on the group audit because to do so may cause a reader to misinterpret the degree of responsibility being assumed.

Materiality (Ref: par. .31)

.A60 The auditor is required.²⁴

- a. when establishing the overall audit strategy
 - i. to determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole.
 - ii. to consider whether, in the specific circumstances of the entity, particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures exist for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the financial statements. In such circumstances, the auditor determines materiality to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures.

²⁴ Paragraphs .10–.11 of section 320.

476 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- b. to determine performance materiality for purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement and designing further audit procedures to respond to assessed risks.

In the context of a group audit, materiality is established for both the group financial statements as a whole and the financial information of those components on which the group engagement team will perform, or request a component auditor to perform, an audit or review. Materiality for the group financial statements as a whole is used when establishing the overall group audit strategy.

.A61 Different materiality may be established for different components. The aggregate of component materiality may exceed group materiality.

.A62 Consideration of all components, regardless of whether reference is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of a component auditor, is necessary when determining component materiality to reduce the risk that the aggregate of detected and undetected misstatements in the group financial statements exceeds materiality for the group financial statements as a whole. Determining component materiality is necessary for the group engagement team to determine the overall group audit plan for the components for which the auditor of the group financial statements is not making reference to the component auditor.

.A63 When the component is subject to an audit required by law or regulation or performed for another reason, the materiality used by the component auditor for purposes of such audit ordinarily can be expected to be less than the group materiality and, accordingly, be acceptable for purposes of the group audit. In the case of an equity method investment, the investee may be larger than the investor, and the auditor's evidence to support the investor's share of earnings from the investment may consist largely of the audited financial statements of the investee. In such cases, the materiality used by the investee's auditor may be larger than the materiality used by the investor's auditor. When such circumstances exist, the group engagement team may take into consideration matters such as the group's ownership percentage and its share of the investee's profits and losses when determining whether the component materiality used by the investee's auditor is appropriate for purposes of the audit of the group financial statements.

.A64 A threshold for misstatements is determined in addition to component materiality. Misstatements identified in the financial information of the component that are above the threshold for misstatements of the group are communicated to the group engagement team.

Responding to Assessed Risks (Ref: par. .32)

.A65 In an audit of group financial statements, appropriate responses to assessed risks of material misstatement for some or all accounts or classes of transactions may be implemented at the group level, without the involvement of component auditors.

Consolidation Process**Consolidation Adjustments and Reclassifications (Ref: par. .35)**

.A66 The consolidation process may require adjustments to amounts reported in the group financial statements that do not pass through the usual transaction processing systems and may not be subject to the same internal controls to which other financial information is subject. The group engagement team's evaluation of the appropriateness, completeness, and accuracy of the adjustments may include the following:

- Evaluating whether significant adjustments appropriately reflect the events and transactions underlying them
- Determining whether significant adjustments have been correctly calculated, processed, and authorized by group management and, when applicable, by component management
- Determining whether significant adjustments are properly supported and sufficiently documented
- Checking the reconciliation and elimination of intragroup account balances, transactions, and unrealized profits or losses
- Communicating with the component auditor, regardless of whether reference is made in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the audit of the component auditor.

Subsequent Events (Ref: par. .39)

.A67 When the auditor's report on the group financial statements will make reference to the audit of a component auditor, procedures designed to identify subsequent events between the date of the component auditor's report and the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements may include

- obtaining an understanding of any procedures that group management has established to ensure that such subsequent events are identified.
- requesting the component auditor to update subsequent events procedures to the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements.
- requesting written representation from component management regarding subsequent events.
- reading available interim financial information of the component and making inquiries of group management.
- reading minutes of meetings of the governing board, or any other administrative board with management oversight, held since the financial statement date.
- reading the subsequent year's capital and operating budgets.
- inquiring of group management regarding currently known facts, decisions, or conditions that are expected to have a significant effect on financial position or results of operations for items that represent subsequent events.
- considering the implications for the auditor's report on the group financial statements if the group engagement team has been unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding subsequent events.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence Obtained***Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .43–.44)***

.A68 If the group engagement team concludes that sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion has not been obtained, the group engagement team may request a component auditor to perform additional procedures. Alternatively, the group engagement team may perform its own procedures on the financial information of the component.

.A69 The group engagement partner's evaluation of the aggregate effect of any misstatements (either identified by the group engagement team or communicated by component auditors) allows the group engagement partner to determine whether the group financial statements as a whole are materially misstated.

Communication With Group Management and Those Charged With Governance of the Group***Communication With Group Management (Ref: par. .45–.47)***

.A70 Section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, contains requirements and guidance on communication of fraud to management and, when management may be involved in the fraud, those charged with governance.²⁵

.A71 Group management may need to keep certain material sensitive information confidential. Examples of matters that may be significant to the financial statements of the component of which component management may be unaware include the following:

- Potential litigation
- Plans for abandonment of material operating assets
- Subsequent events
- Significant legal agreements

Communication With Those Charged With Governance of the Group (Ref: par. .48)

.A72 The matters the group engagement team communicates to those charged with governance of the group may include those brought to the attention of the group engagement team by component

²⁵ Paragraphs .39–.41 of section 240.

478 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

auditors that the group engagement team judges to be significant to the responsibilities of those charged with governance of the group. Communication with those charged with governance of the group takes place at various times during the group audit. For example, the matters referred to in paragraph .48a–b may be communicated after the group engagement team has determined the work to be performed on the financial information of the components. On the other hand, the matter referred to in paragraph .48c may be communicated at the end of the audit, and the matters referred to in paragraph .48d–e may be communicated when they occur.

Additional Requirements Applicable When Assuming Responsibility for the Work of a Component Auditor

Materiality (Ref: par. .50)

.A73 Component materiality for those components whose financial information will be audited or reviewed as part of the group audit in accordance with paragraphs .52, .53a, and .55, is communicated to the component auditor and is used by the component auditor to evaluate whether uncorrected detected misstatements are material, individually or in the aggregate.

.A74 In the case of an audit of the financial information of a component, section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, requires the component auditor (or group engagement team) to determine performance materiality for purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement of the financial information of the component and to design further audit procedures in response to assessed risks.²⁶ This is necessary to reduce the risk that the aggregate of detected and undetected misstatements in the financial information of the component exceeds component materiality. In practice, the group engagement team may set component materiality at the level of performance materiality for the component. When this is the case, the component auditor uses component materiality for purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement of the financial information of the component and to design further audit procedures in response to assessed risks, as well as for evaluating whether detected misstatements are material individually or in the aggregate.

Determining the Type of Work to Be Performed on the Financial Information of Components Significant Components (Ref: par. .52–.53)

.A75 Adapting an audit of the financial information of a significant component to meet the specific needs of the group engagement team may include requesting the component auditor to

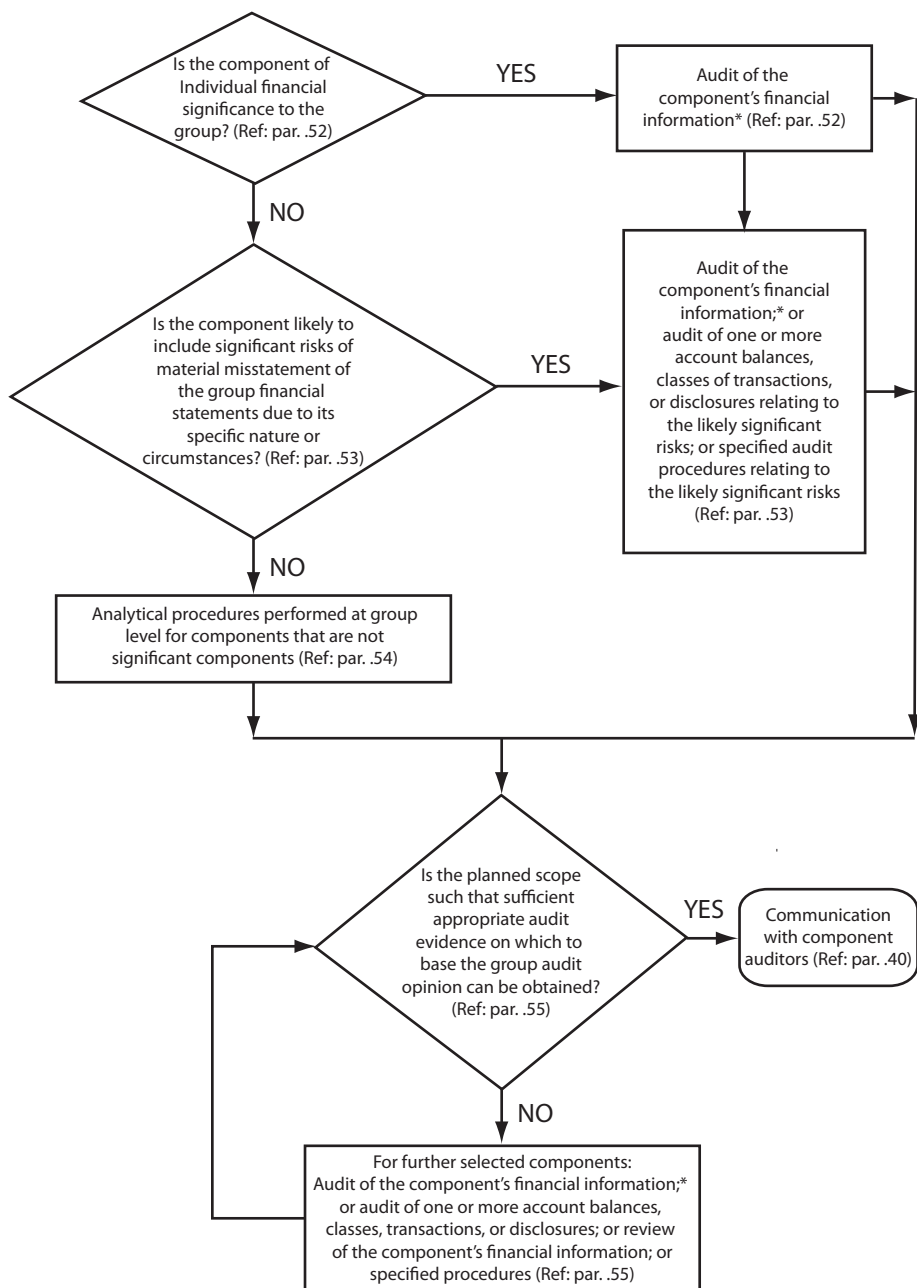
- perform an audit, using component materiality, in accordance with GAAS, with the exception of performing audit procedures on, for example, tax accounts or litigation, claims, and assessments because those procedures are performed at the group level.
- communicate the results of the audit in a form that is responsive to the needs of the group engagement team.

.A76 The group engagement team's determination of the type of work to be performed on the financial information of a component and its involvement in the work of the component auditor is affected by the following:

- a. The significance of the component
- b. The identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements
- c. The group engagement team's evaluation of the design of group-wide controls and the determination of whether they have been implemented
- d. The group engagement team's understanding of the component auditor

The following diagram shows how the significance of the component affects the group engagement team's determination of the type of work to be performed on the financial information of the component.

²⁶ Paragraph .11 of section 320.



*Adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team using component materiality.

480 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A77 The group engagement team may identify a component as a significant component because that component is likely to include significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements due to its specific nature or circumstances. In that case, the group engagement team may be able to identify the account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures affected by the likely significant risks. When this is the case, the group engagement team may decide to perform or request a component auditor to perform an audit, adapted as necessary to meet the needs of the group engagement team, of only those account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures. For example, in the situation described in paragraph .A7, the work on the financial information of the component may be limited to an audit of the account balances, classes of transactions, and disclosures affected by the foreign exchange trading of that component. When the group engagement team requests a component auditor to perform an audit of one or more specific account balances, classes of transactions, or disclosures, the communication of the group engagement team (see paragraph .40) takes account of the fact that many financial statement items are interrelated.

.A78 The group engagement team may design audit procedures that respond to a likely significant risk of material misstatement of the group financial statements. For example, in the case of a likely significant risk of inventory obsolescence, the group engagement team may perform or request a component auditor to perform specified audit procedures on the valuation of inventory at a component that holds a large volume of potentially obsolete inventory but that is not otherwise significant.

Components That Are Not Significant Components (Ref: par. .54–.55)

.A79 Depending on the circumstances of the engagement, the financial information of the components may be aggregated at various levels for purposes of the analytical procedures. The results of the analytical procedures corroborate the group engagement team's conclusions that no significant risks of material misstatement exist of the aggregated financial information of components that are not significant components.

.A80 The group engagement team's decision about how many components to select in accordance with paragraph .55, which components to select, and the type of work to be performed on the financial information of the individual components selected may be affected by factors, such as the following:

- The extent of audit evidence expected to be obtained on the financial information of the significant components
- Whether the component has been newly formed or acquired
- Whether significant changes have taken place in the component
- Whether internal audit has performed work at the component and any effect of that work on the group audit
- Whether the components apply common systems and processes
- The operating effectiveness of group-wide controls
- Abnormal fluctuations identified by analytical procedures performed at group level
- The individual financial significance of, or the risk posed by, the component in comparison with other components within this category
- Whether the component is subject to an audit required by law or regulation or performed for another reason

Including an element of unpredictability in selecting components in this category may increase the likelihood of identifying material misstatement of the components' financial information. The selection of components is often varied on a cyclical basis.

.A81 An audit of a component that is not a significant component may have already been performed. Once the group engagement team decides to use that work to provide audit evidence for the group audit, the provisions of this section apply.

.A82 A review of the financial information of a component may be performed in accordance with Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, adapted as necessary in the circumstances. A review is designed to obtain only limited assurance that there are no material

modifications that should be made to the financial statements in order for the statements to be in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework. The group engagement team also may specify additional procedures to supplement this work.

.A83 As explained in paragraph .A19, a group may consist only of components that are not significant components. In these circumstances, the group engagement team can obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion by determining the type of work to be performed on the financial information of the components, in accordance with paragraph .55. It is unlikely that the group engagement team will obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion if the group engagement team or a component auditor only tests group-wide controls and performs analytical procedures on the financial information of the components.

Involvement in the Work Performed by Component Auditors (Ref: .56–.57)

.A84 Factors that may affect the group engagement team's involvement in the work of a component auditor include the following:

- a. The significance of the component
- b. The identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements
- c. The group engagement team's understanding of the component auditor

In the case of a significant component or identified significant risks, the group engagement team performs the procedures described in paragraphs .56–.57. In the case of a component that is not a significant component, the nature, timing, and extent of the group engagement team's involvement in the work of the component auditor will vary based on the group engagement team's understanding of that component auditor. The fact that the component is not a significant component becomes secondary. For example, even though a component is not considered a significant component, the group engagement team, nevertheless, may decide to be involved in the component auditor's risk assessment because it has concerns (although less than serious concerns) about the component auditor's professional competency (for example, lack of industry-specific knowledge), or the component auditor does not operate in an environment that actively oversees auditors.

.A85 Forms of involvement in the work of a component auditor other than those described in paragraphs .42 and .56–.57 may, based on the group engagement team's understanding of the component auditor, include one or more of the following:

- Meeting with component management or the component auditor to obtain an understanding of the component and its environment.
- Reviewing the component auditor's overall audit strategy and audit plan.
- Performing risk assessment procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at the component level. These may be performed with the component auditor or by the group engagement team.
- Designing and performing further audit procedures. These may be designed and performed with the component auditor or by the group engagement team.
- Participating in the closing and other key meetings between the component auditor and component management.
- Reviewing other relevant parts of the component auditor's audit documentation.

Communication With a Component Auditor (Ref: par. .59)

.A86 If effective two-way communication does not exist between the group engagement team and component auditors, whose work the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for, a risk exists that the group engagement team may not obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the group audit opinion. Clear and timely communication of the group engagement team's requirements forms the basis of effective two-way communication between the group engagement team and a component auditor. This two-way communication also may be initiated by the component auditor regarding matters that may be significant to the component audit such as

482 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- transactions, adjustments, or other matters that have come to the group engagement team's attention that it believes require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements of the component being audited by the component auditor.
- any relevant limitation on the scope of the audit performed by the group engagement team.

.A87 The group engagement team's requirements often are communicated in a letter of instruction. Appendix C, "Required and Additional Matters Included in the Group Engagement Team's Letter of Instruction," contains guidance on required and additional matters that may be included in such a letter of instruction. A component auditor's communication with the group engagement team often takes the form of a memorandum or report of work performed. Communication between the group engagement team and a component auditor, however, may not necessarily be in writing. For example, the group engagement team may visit the component auditor to discuss identified significant risks or review relevant parts of the component auditor's audit documentation. Nevertheless, the documentation requirements of this section and other AU-C sections apply.

.A88 In cooperating with the group engagement team, a component auditor, for example, would provide the group engagement team with access to relevant audit documentation, if not prohibited by law or regulation.

.A89 When a member of the group engagement team is also a component auditor, the objective for the group engagement team to communicate clearly with the component auditor often can be achieved by means other than specific written communication. For example

- access by the component auditor to the overall audit strategy and audit plan may be sufficient to communicate the group engagement team's requirements set out in paragraph .40.
- a review of the component auditor's audit documentation by the group engagement team may be sufficient to communicate matters relevant to the group engagement team's conclusion set out in paragraph .41.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Audit Evidence Obtained***Reviewing a Component Auditor's Audit Documentation (Ref. par. .61)***

.A90 The parts of the audit documentation of a component auditor that will be relevant to the group audit may vary depending on the circumstances. Often, the focus is on audit documentation that is relevant to the significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements. The extent of the review may be affected by the fact that a component auditor's audit documentation has been subjected to the review procedures of the component auditor's firm.

.A91

Appendix A—Understanding the Group, Its Components, and Their Environments—Examples of Matters About Which the Group Engagement Team Obtains an Understanding (Ref: par. .A31)

The examples provided cover a broad range of matters; however, not all matters are relevant to every group audit engagement, and the list of examples is not necessarily complete.

Group-Wide Controls

Group-wide controls may include a combination of the following:

- Regular meetings between group and component management to discuss business developments and review performance
- Monitoring of components' operations and their financial results, including regular reporting routines, which enables group management to monitor components' performance against budgets and take appropriate action
- Group management's risk assessment process (that is, the process for identifying, analyzing, and managing business risks, including the risk of fraud, that may result in material misstatement of the group financial statements)
- Monitoring, controlling, reconciling, and eliminating intragroup account balances, transactions, and unrealized profits or losses at group level
- A process for monitoring the timeliness and assessing the accuracy and completeness of financial information received from components
- A central IT system controlled by the same general IT controls for all or part of the group
- Control activities within an IT system that are common for all or some components
- Monitoring of controls, including activities of internal audit and self-assessment programs
- Consistent policies and procedures, including a group financial reporting procedures manual
- Group-wide programs, such as codes of conduct and fraud prevention programs
- Arrangements for assigning authority and responsibility to component management

Internal audit may be regarded as part of group-wide controls, for example, when the internal audit function is centralized. Section 610, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the group engagement team's evaluation of the competence and objectivity of the internal auditors when it plans to use their work.¹

Consolidation Process

The group engagement team's understanding of the consolidation process may include matters such as the following:

- Matters relating to the applicable financial reporting framework, such as the following:
 - The extent to which component management has an understanding of the applicable financial reporting framework
 - The process for identifying and accounting for components, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework

¹ Paragraphs .10–.11 of section 610, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 65 has been included in section 610 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

484 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- The process for identifying reportable segments for segment reporting, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework
- The process for identifying related party relationships and related party transactions for reporting, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework
- The accounting policies applied to the group financial statements, changes from those of the previous financial year, and changes resulting from new or revised standards under the applicable financial reporting framework
- The procedures for dealing with components with financial year-ends different from the group's year-end
- Matters relating to the consolidation process, such as the following:
 - Group management's process for obtaining an understanding of the accounting policies used by components and, when applicable, ensuring that uniform accounting policies are used to prepare the financial information of the components for the group financial statements and that differences in accounting policies are identified and adjusted, when required, in terms of the applicable financial reporting framework. Uniform accounting policies are the specific principles, bases, conventions, rules, and practices adopted by the group, based on the applicable financial reporting framework, that the components use to report similar transactions consistently. These policies are ordinarily described in the financial reporting procedures manual and reporting package issued by group management.
 - Group management's process for ensuring complete, accurate, and timely financial reporting by the components for the consolidation.
 - The process for translating the financial information of foreign components into the currency of the group financial statements.
 - How IT is organized for the consolidation, including the manual and automated stages of the process and the manual and programmed controls in place at various stages of the consolidation process.
 - Group management's process for obtaining information on subsequent events.
- Matters relating to consolidation adjustments, such as the following:
 - The process for recording consolidation adjustments, including the preparation, authorization, and processing of related journal entries and the experience of personnel responsible for the consolidation
 - The consolidation adjustments required by the applicable financial reporting framework
 - Business rationale for the events and transactions that gave rise to the consolidation adjustments
 - Frequency, nature, and size of transactions between components
 - Procedures for monitoring, controlling, reconciling, and eliminating intragroup account balances, transactions, and unrealized profits or losses
 - Steps taken to arrive at the fair value of acquired assets and liabilities, procedures for amortizing goodwill (when applicable), and impairment testing of goodwill, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework
 - Arrangements with a controlling interest or noncontrolling interest regarding losses incurred by a component (for example, an obligation of the noncontrolling interest to compensate such losses)

.A92**Appendix B—Examples of Conditions or Events That May Indicate Risks of Material Misstatement of the Group Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A38)**

The examples provided cover a broad range of conditions or events; however, not all conditions or events are relevant to every group audit engagement, and the following list of examples is not necessarily complete:

- A complex group structure, especially when there are frequent acquisitions, disposals, or reorganizations
- Poor corporate governance structures, including decision-making processes, that are not transparent
- Nonexistent or ineffective group-wide controls, including inadequate group management information on monitoring of components' operations and their results
- Components operating in foreign jurisdictions that may be exposed to factors, such as unusual government intervention in areas such as trade and fiscal policy, restrictions on currency and dividend movements, and fluctuations in exchange rates
- Business activities of components that involve high risk, such as long-term contracts or trading in innovative or complex financial instruments
- Uncertainties regarding which components' financial information requires incorporation in the group financial statements, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework (for example, whether any special purpose entities or nontrading entities exist and require incorporation)
- Unusual related party relationships and transactions
- Prior occurrences of intragroup account balances that did not balance or reconcile on consolidation
- The existence of complex transactions that are accounted for in more than one component
- Components' application of accounting policies that differ from those applied to the group financial statements
- Components with different financial year-ends, which may be utilized to manipulate the timing of transactions
- Prior occurrences of unauthorized or incomplete consolidation adjustments
- Aggressive tax planning within the group or large cash transactions with entities in tax havens
- Frequent changes of auditors engaged to audit the financial statements of components

.A93

Appendix C—Required and Additional Matters Included in the Group Engagement Team’s Letter of Instruction (Ref: par. .A87)

The following matters are relevant to the planning of the work of a component auditor:

[Required matters are italicized.]

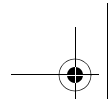
- *A request for the component auditor, knowing the context in which the group engagement team will use the work of the component auditor, to confirm that the component auditor will cooperate with the group engagement team*
- The timetable for completing the audit
- Dates of planned visits by group management and the group engagement team and dates of planned meetings with component management and the component auditor
- A list of key contacts
- *The work to be performed by the component auditor, the use to be made of that work, and arrangements for coordinating efforts at the initial stage of and during the audit, including the group engagement team’s planned involvement in the work of the component auditor*
- *The ethical requirements that are relevant to the group audit and, in particular, the independence requirements*
- *In the case of an audit or review of the financial information of the component, component materiality*
- *In the case of an audit or review of, or specified audit procedures performed on, the financial information of the component, the threshold above which misstatements cannot be regarded as clearly trivial to the group financial statements*
- *A list of related parties prepared by group management and any other related parties of which the group engagement team is aware and a request that the component auditor communicates on a timely basis to the group engagement team related parties not previously identified by group management or the group engagement team*
- Work to be performed on intragroup account balances, transactions, and unrealized profits or losses
- Guidance on other statutory reporting responsibilities (for example, reporting on group management’s assertion on the effectiveness of internal control)
- When a time lag between completion of the work on the financial information of the components and the group engagement team’s conclusion on the group financial statements is likely, specific instructions for a subsequent events review

The following matters are relevant to the conduct of the work of the component auditor:

- The findings of the group engagement team’s tests of control activities of a processing system that is common for all or some components and tests of controls to be performed by the component auditor
- *Identified significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, due to fraud or error, that are relevant to the work of the component auditor and a request that the component auditor communicates on a timely basis any other significant risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, due to fraud or error, identified in the component and the component auditor’s response to such risks*
- The findings of internal audit, based on work performed on controls at or relevant to components
- A request for timely communication of audit evidence obtained from performing work on the financial information of the components that contradicts the audit evidence on which the group engagement team originally based the risk assessment performed at group level
- A request for a written representation on component management’s compliance with the applicable financial reporting framework or a statement that differences between the accounting policies applied to the financial information of the component and those applied to the group financial statements have been disclosed
- Matters to be documented by the component auditor

Other information, such as the following:

- A request that the following be reported to the group engagement team on a timely basis:
 - Significant accounting, financial reporting, and auditing matters, including accounting estimates and related judgments
 - Matters relating to the going concern status of the component
 - Matters relating to litigation and claims
 - Material weaknesses in controls that have come to the attention of the component auditor during the performance of the work on the financial information of the component and information that indicates the existence of fraud
- A request that the group engagement team be notified of any significant or unusual events as early as possible
- A request that the matters listed in paragraph .48 be communicated to the group engagement team when the work on the financial information of the component is completed



.A94

Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Group Financial Statements

Illustration 1: A Report With a Qualified Opinion When the Group Engagement Team Is Not Able to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence on Which to Base the Group Audit Opinion (Ref: par. .A27)

Illustration 2: A Report in Which the Auditor of the Group Financial Statements Is Making Reference to the Audit of a Component Auditor (Ref: par. .A57)

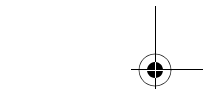
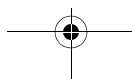
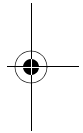
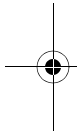


Illustration 1: A Report With a Qualified Opinion When the Group Engagement Team Is Not Able to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence on Which to Base the Group Audit Opinion

In this example, the group engagement team is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence relating to a significant component accounted for by the equity method because the group engagement team was unable to obtain the audited financial statements of the component as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, including the auditor's report thereon. In this example, the auditor of the group financial statements is not making reference to the report of a component auditor.

In the auditor's professional judgment, the effect on the group financial statements of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is material but not pervasive.

If, in the auditor's professional judgment, the effect on the group financial statements of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is material and pervasive, the auditor would disclaim an opinion, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.¹ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting

¹ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.



490 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122



estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

We were unable to obtain audited financial statements supporting the Company's investment in a foreign affiliate stated at \$_____ and \$_____ at December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, respectively, or its equity in earnings of that affiliate of \$_____ and \$_____, which is included in net income for the years then ended as described in Note X to the consolidated financial statements; nor were we able to satisfy ourselves as to the carrying value of the investment in the foreign affiliate or the equity in its earnings by other auditing procedures.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



Illustration 2: A Report in Which the Auditor of the Group Financial Statements Is Making Reference to the Audit of a Component Auditor

In this example, the auditor of the group financial statements is making reference to the audit of a component auditor.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We did not audit the financial statements of B Company, a wholly-owned subsidiary, which statements reflect total assets constituting 20 percent and 22 percent, respectively, of consolidated total assets at December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and total revenues constituting 18 percent and 20 percent, respectively, of consolidated total revenues for the years then ended. Those statements were audited by other auditors, whose report has been furnished to us, and our opinion, insofar as it relates to the amounts included for B Company, is based solely on the report of the other auditors. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.¹ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

¹ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.



492 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

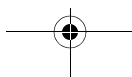
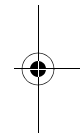
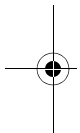
Opinion

In our opinion, based on our audit and the report of the other auditors, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[*Auditor's signature*]

[*Auditor's city and state*]

[*Date of the auditor's report*]



.A95**Exhibit B—Illustrative Component Auditor's Confirmation Letter (Ref: par. .A44)**

The following is not intended to be a standard letter. Confirmations may vary from one component auditor to another and from one period to the next. In this example, confirmations expected only when the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility have been italicized.

Confirmations often are obtained before work on the financial information of the component commences.

[Component Auditor Letterhead]

[Date]

[To Audit Firm]

This letter is provided in connection with your audit of the group financial statements of [name of parent] as of and for the year ended [date] for the purpose of expressing an opinion on whether the group financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the group as of [date] and of the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with [indicate applicable financial reporting framework].

We acknowledge receipt of your instructions dated [date], requesting us to perform the specified work on the financial information of [name of component] as of and for the year ended [date].

We confirm that:

1. *We will be able to comply with the instructions. / We advise you that we will not be able to comply with the following instructions [specify instructions] for the following reasons [specify reasons].*
2. *The instructions are clear, and we understand them. / We would appreciate it if you could clarify the following instructions [specify instructions].*
3. *We will cooperate with you and provide you with access to relevant audit documentation.*

We acknowledge that:

1. The financial information of [name of component] will be included in the group financial statements of [name of parent].
2. *You may consider it necessary to be further involved in the work you have requested us to perform on the financial information of [name of component] as of and for the year ended [date].*
3. *You intend to evaluate and, if considered appropriate, use our work for the audit of the group financial statements of [name of parent].*

In connection with the work that we will perform on the financial information of [name of component], a [describe component, e.g., wholly-owned subsidiary, subsidiary, joint venture, investee accounted for by the equity or cost methods of accounting] of [name of parent], we confirm the following:

1. We have an understanding of [indicate relevant ethical requirements] that is sufficient to fulfill our responsibilities in the audit of the group financial statements and will comply therewith. In particular, and with respect to [name of parent] and the other components in the group, we are independent within the meaning of [indicate relevant ethical requirements] and comply with the applicable requirements of [refer to rules] promulgated by [name of regulatory agency].
2. We have an understanding of auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and [indicate other auditing standards applicable to the audit of the group financial statements, such as Government Auditing Standards] that is sufficient to fulfill our responsibilities in the audit of the group financial statements and will conduct our



494 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

work on the financial information of [*name of component*] as of and for the year ended [*date*] in accordance with those standards.

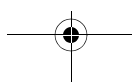
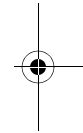
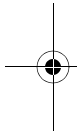
3. We possess the special skills (e.g., industry specific knowledge) necessary to perform the work on the financial information of the particular component.
4. We have an understanding of [*indicate applicable financial reporting framework or group financial reporting procedures manual*] that is sufficient to fulfill our responsibilities in the audit of the group financial statements.

We will inform you of any changes in the above representations during the course of our work on the financial information of [*name of component*].

[*Auditor's signature*]

Illustration of Potential Component Auditor Representations in Governmental Entities and Not-for-Profit Organizations

1. We have an understanding of relevant laws and regulations that may have a direct and material effect on the financial statements of [*name of component*]. In particular, we have an understanding of [*indicate relevant laws and regulations*].



.A96**Exhibit C—Sources of Information (Ref: par. .A47)**

The AICPA Professional Ethics Team can respond to inquiries about whether individuals are members of the AICPA and whether complaints against members have been adjudicated by the Joint Trial Board. The team cannot respond to inquiries about public accounting firms or provide information about letters of required corrective action issued by the team or pending disciplinary proceedings or investigations. The AICPA Peer Review Program staff or the applicable state CPA society administering entity can respond to inquiries about whether specific public accounting firms are enrolled in the AICPA Peer Review Program and the date of acceptance and the period covered by the firm's most recently accepted peer review.

.A97

Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, and International Standard on Auditing 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

All the requirements in ISA 600 are addressed to either the group engagement partner or the group engagement team. In section 600, requirements that, in the circumstances, may be appropriately fulfilled by the firm are addressed to the auditor of the group financial statements. These requirements, in paragraphs .16 and .29, relate to engagement acceptance and modification of the auditor's opinion on the group financial statements. The ASB believes that this does not create a substantive difference between the requirements of ISA 600 and the requirements of section 600.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

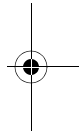
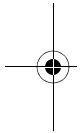
ISA 600 does not permit the auditor's report on the group financial statements to make reference to a component auditor unless required by law or regulation to include such reference. Section 600, consistent with Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, as amended, permits the auditor, in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, to make reference to the audit of a component auditor.

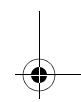
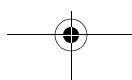
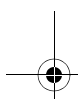
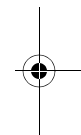
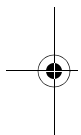
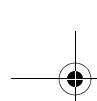
The ASB believes that the ability to make reference to the report of another auditor is appropriate in the United States for several reasons. No compelling practice issues suggest a need to change an approach that has always been permitted by GAAS in the United States. The size, complexity, and diversity of some audits, in particular the audit of the federal government in which withdrawing from the engagement or disclaiming an opinion are not viable options, make eliminating the option to make reference to a component auditor problematic. In addition, the ASB believes that there will be considerable practical problems with access issues, particularly with equity investments, under the approach in ISA 600. The ASB believes that there is no difference in the effectiveness of the audit in either approach when the audits are conducted in accordance with GAAS. Accordingly, section 600 contains requirements and application and other explanatory material relating to making reference to the report of another auditor that are not in ISA 600, which results in substantive differences in the wording of the objectives, requirements, and application material between ISA 600 and section 600. A group audit conducted in accordance with GAAS when the group engagement partner determines to make reference to the audit performed by a component auditor would not comply with the ISAs. As such, in an audit conducted under both GAAS and the ISAs, the auditor of the group financial statements would need to assume responsibility for



the work of all component auditors and, therefore, plan the audit accordingly to comply with both sets of standards.

When no reference is made to a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, no substantive differences exist between the requirements of ISA 600 and the requirements of section 600.





AU-C Section 610*

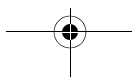
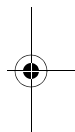
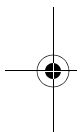
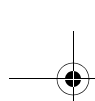
[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 65, The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements]

NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, which is currently codified as AU section 322 in *AICPA Professional Standards*.

SAS No. 122 designates section 610 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of a subsequent clarified SAS that will be issued to supersede SAS No. 65 when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board.

-
- * This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.



AU-C Section 620*

Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to the work of an individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing when that work is used to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.02 This section does not address

- a. situations in which the engagement team includes a member or consults an individual or organization with expertise in a specialized area of accounting or auditing, which are addressed in section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and section 300, *Planning an Audit*,^{1, 2} or
- b. the auditor's use of the work of an individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements (a management's specialist), which is addressed in section 500, *Audit Evidence*.³

The Auditor's Responsibility for the Audit Opinion

.03 The auditor has sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed, and that responsibility is not reduced by the auditor's use of the work of an auditor's specialist. Nonetheless, if the auditor using the work of an auditor's specialist, having followed this section, concludes that the work of that specialist is adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor may accept that specialist's findings or conclusions in the specialist's field as appropriate audit evidence.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.05 The objectives of the auditor are

- a. to determine whether to use the work of an auditor's specialist and
- b. if using the work of an auditor's specialist, to determine whether that work is adequate for the auditor's purposes.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA Professional Standards. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraphs .A10 and .A20–.A22 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

² Paragraph .12 of section 300, *Planning an Audit*.

³ Paragraphs .A35–.A49 of section 500, *Audit Evidence*.

502 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Auditor's specialist. An individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the auditor to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. An auditor's specialist may be either an auditor's internal specialist (who is a partner⁴ or staff, including temporary staff, of the auditor's firm or a network firm) or an auditor's external specialist. (Ref: par. .A1–.A4)

Expertise. Skills, knowledge, and experience in a particular field.

Management's specialist. An individual or organization possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used by the entity to assist the entity in preparing the financial statements.

Requirements

Determining the Need for an Auditor's Specialist

.07 If expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should determine whether to use the work of an auditor's specialist. (Ref: par. .A5–.A10)

Nature, Timing, and Extent of Audit Procedures

.08 The nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures with respect to the requirements in paragraphs .09–.13 will vary depending on the circumstances. In determining the nature, timing, and extent of those procedures, the auditor should consider matters including (Ref: par. .A11)

- a. the nature of the matter to which the work of the auditor's specialist relates;
- b. the risks of material misstatement in the matter to which the work of the auditor's specialist relates;
- c. the significance of the work of the auditor's specialist in the context of the audit;
- d. the auditor's knowledge of, and experience with, previous work performed by the auditor's specialist; and
- e. whether the auditor's specialist is subject to the auditor's firm's quality control policies and procedures. (Ref: par. .A12–.A14)

The Competence, Capabilities, and Objectivity of the Auditor's Specialist

.09 The auditor should evaluate whether the auditor's specialist has the necessary competence, capabilities, and objectivity for the auditor's purposes. In the case of an auditor's external specialist, the evaluation of objectivity should include inquiry regarding interests and relationships that may create a threat to the objectivity of the auditor's specialist. (Ref: par. .A15–.A22)

Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor's Specialist

.10 The auditor should obtain a sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the auditor's specialist to enable the auditor to (Ref: par. .A23–.A24)

- a. determine the nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the auditor's specialist for the auditor's purposes and
- b. evaluate the adequacy of that work for the auditor's purposes.

Agreement With the Auditor's Specialist

.11 The auditor should agree, in writing when appropriate, with the auditor's specialist regarding (Ref: par. .A25–.A29)

- a. the nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the auditor's specialist; (Ref: par. .A30)
- b. the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist; (Ref: par. .A31–.A32)

⁴ *Partner and firm* should be read as referring to their governmental equivalents when relevant.

- c. the nature, timing, and extent of communication between the auditor and the auditor's specialist, including the form of any report to be provided by the auditor's specialist; and (Ref: par. .A33)
- d. the need for the auditor's specialist to observe confidentiality requirements. (Ref: par. .A34)

Evaluating the Adequacy of the Work of the Auditor's Specialist

.12 The auditor should evaluate the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist for the auditor's purposes, including

- a. the relevance and reasonableness of the findings and conclusions of the auditor's specialist and their consistency with other audit evidence. (Ref: par. .A35–.A37)
- b. If the work of the auditor's specialist involves the use of significant assumptions and methods,
 - i. obtaining an understanding of those assumptions and methods and
 - ii. evaluating the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods in the circumstances, giving consideration to the rationale and support provided by the specialist, and in relation to the auditor's other findings and conclusions. (Ref: par. .A38–.A40)
- c. If the work of the auditor's specialist involves the use of source data that is significant to the work of the auditor's specialist, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data. (Ref: par. .A41–.A42)

.13 If the auditor determines that the work of the auditor's specialist is not adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor should (Ref: par. .A43)

- a. agree with the auditor's specialist on the nature and extent of further work to be performed by the auditor's specialist or
- b. perform additional audit procedures appropriate to the circumstances.

Reference to the Auditor's Specialist in the Auditor's Report

.14 The auditor should not refer to the work of an auditor's specialist in an auditor's report containing an unmodified opinion.

.15 If the auditor makes reference to the work of an auditor's external specialist in the auditor's report because such reference is relevant to an understanding of a modification to the auditor's opinion, the auditor should indicate in the auditor's report that such reference does not reduce the auditor's responsibility for that opinion. (Ref: par. .A44)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .06)

.A1 Expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing may include expertise regarding such matters as the following:

- The valuation of complex financial instruments and nonfinancial assets and liabilities measured at fair value such as land and buildings, plant and machinery, jewelry, works of art, antiques, intangible assets, assets acquired and liabilities assumed in business combinations, and assets that may have been impaired
- The actuarial calculation of liabilities associated with insurance contracts or employee benefit plans
- The estimation of oil and other mineral reserves
- The valuation of environmental liabilities and site cleanup costs
- The interpretation of contracts, laws, and regulations
- The analysis of complex or unusual tax compliance issues
- The determination of physical characteristics relating to quantity on hand or condition (for example, quantity or condition of minerals, or materials stored in stockpiles)

504 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A2 In many cases, distinguishing between expertise in accounting or auditing and expertise in another field will be straightforward, even when this involves a specialized area of accounting or auditing.⁵ For example, an individual with expertise in applying methods of accounting for deferred income tax can often be easily distinguished from a specialist in taxation law. The former is not a specialist for the purposes of this section because this constitutes accounting expertise; the latter is a specialist for the purposes of this section because this constitutes legal expertise. Similar distinctions also may be able to be made in other areas (for example, between expertise in methods of accounting for financial instruments and expertise in complex modeling for the purpose of valuing financial instruments). However, in some cases, particularly those involving an emerging area of accounting or auditing expertise, distinguishing between specialized areas of accounting or auditing and expertise in another field will be a matter of professional judgment. Applicable professional rules and standards regarding education and competency requirements for accountants and auditors may assist the auditor in exercising that judgment.

.A3 An individual may possess expertise in accounting or auditing, as well as expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing (for example, an actuary also may be an accountant). In that circumstance, the determination of whether that individual is an auditor or an auditor's specialist depends on the nature of the work performed by that individual that the auditor is using for purposes of the audit.

.A4 It is necessary to apply professional judgment when considering how the requirements of this section are affected by the fact that an auditor's specialist may be either an individual or an organization. For example, when evaluating the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of an auditor's specialist, it may be that the specialist is an organization the auditor has previously used, but the auditor has no prior experience with the individual specialist assigned by the organization for the particular engagement, or it may be the reverse (that is, the auditor may be familiar with the work of an individual specialist but not with the organization that specialist has joined). In either case, both the personal attributes of the individual and the managerial attributes of the organization (such as systems of quality control the organization implements) may be relevant to the auditor's evaluation.

Determining the Need for an Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .07)

.A5 An auditor's specialist may be needed to assist the auditor in one or more of the following:

- Obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control
- Identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement
- Determining and implementing overall responses to assessed risks at the financial statement level
- Designing and performing additional audit procedures to respond to assessed risks at the relevant assertion level, which may comprise tests of controls or substantive procedures
- Evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained in forming an opinion on the financial statements

.A6 The risks of material misstatement may increase when expertise in a field other than accounting is needed for management to prepare the financial statements, for example, because this may indicate some complexity or because management may not possess knowledge of the field of expertise. If, in preparing the financial statements, management does not possess the necessary expertise, a management's specialist may be used in addressing those risks. Relevant controls, including controls that relate to the work of a management's specialist, if any, also may reduce the risks of material misstatement.

.A7 If the preparation of the financial statements involves the use of expertise in a field other than accounting, the auditor, who is skilled in accounting and auditing, may not possess the necessary expertise to audit those financial statements. The engagement partner is required by section

⁵ Paragraphs .A18–.A19 of section 300 address the auditor's determination of the extent of involvement of professionals possessing specialized skills.

220 to be satisfied that the engagement team and any external auditor's specialists who are not part of the engagement team, collectively, have the appropriate competence and capabilities to perform the audit engagement.⁶ Further, the auditor is required by section 300 to ascertain the nature, timing, and extent of resources necessary to perform the engagement.⁷ The auditor's determination of whether to use the work of an auditor's specialist, and, if so, when and to what extent, assists the auditor in meeting these requirements. As the audit progresses or as circumstances change, the auditor may need to revise earlier decisions about using the work of an auditor's specialist.

.A8 An auditor who is not a specialist in a relevant field other than accounting or auditing may nevertheless be able to obtain a sufficient understanding of that field to perform the audit without an auditor's specialist. This understanding may be obtained through, for example

- experience in auditing entities that require such expertise in the preparation of their financial statements.
- education or professional development in the particular field. This may include formal courses or discussion with individuals possessing expertise in the relevant field for the purpose of enhancing the auditor's own capacity to deal with matters in that field. Such discussion differs from consultation with an auditor's specialist regarding a specific set of circumstances encountered on the engagement in which that specialist is given all the relevant facts that will enable the specialist to provide informed advice about the particular matter (see section 220).⁸

.A9 In other cases, however, the auditor may determine that it is necessary, or may choose, to use an auditor's specialist to assist in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Considerations when deciding whether to use an auditor's specialist may include the following:

- Whether management has used a specialist in preparing the financial statements (see paragraph .A10)
- The nature and significance of the matter, including its complexity
- The risks of material misstatement of the matter
- The expected nature of procedures to respond to identified risks, including the auditor's knowledge of, and experience with, the work of specialists regarding such matters and the availability of alternative sources of audit evidence

.A10 When management uses a management specialist in preparing the financial statements, the auditor's decision on whether to use an auditor's specialist also may be influenced by such factors as the following:

- The nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the management's specialist
- Whether the management's specialist is employed by the entity or is a party engaged by it to provide relevant services
- The extent to which management can exercise control or influence over the work of the management's specialist
- The competence and capabilities of the management's specialist
- Whether the management's specialist is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements
- Any controls within the entity over the work of the management's specialist
- The auditor's ability to evaluate the work and findings of the management's specialist without the assistance of an auditor's specialist.

Section 500 addresses the effect of the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of management's specialists on the reliability of audit evidence.⁹

⁶ Paragraph .16 of section 220.

⁷ Paragraph .08e of section 300.

⁸ Paragraph .A21 of section 220.

⁹ Paragraphs .A38–.A44 of section 500.

506 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Nature, Timing, and Extent of Audit Procedures (Ref: par. .08)**

.A11 The following factors may suggest the need for different or more extensive procedures than would otherwise be the case:

- The work of the auditor's specialist relates to a significant finding or issue that involves subjective and complex judgments.
- The auditor has not previously used the work of the auditor's specialist and has no prior knowledge of that specialist's competence, capabilities, and objectivity.
- The auditor's specialist is performing procedures that are integral to the audit rather than being consulted to provide advice on an individual matter.
- The specialist is an auditor's external specialist and is not, therefore, subject to the firm's quality control policies and procedures.

The Auditor's Firm's Quality Control Policies and Procedures (Ref: par. .08e)

.A12 An auditor's internal specialist may be a partner or staff, including temporary staff, of the auditor's firm and, therefore, subject to the quality control policies and procedures of that firm in accordance with Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).¹⁰ An auditor's internal specialist also may be a partner or staff, including temporary staff, of a network firm, which may share common quality control policies and procedures with the auditor's firm.

.A13 In accordance with section 220, engagement teams are entitled to rely on the firm's system of quality control unless the engagement partner determines that it is inappropriate to do so based on information provided by the firm or other parties.¹¹ The extent of that reliance will vary with the circumstances and may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures with respect to such matters as the following:

- Competence and capabilities through recruitment and training programs.
- Objectivity. The auditor's internal specialists are subject to relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence.
- Agreement with the auditor's specialist.
- The auditor's evaluation of the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist. For example, the firm's training programs may provide the auditor's internal specialists with an appropriate understanding of the interrelationship of their expertise with the audit process. Reliance on such training and other firm processes, such as protocols for scoping the work of the auditor's internal specialists, may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures to evaluate the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist.
- Adherence to regulatory and legal requirements through monitoring processes.

Such reliance does not reduce the auditor's responsibility to meet the requirements of this section.

.A14 An auditor's external specialist is not a member of the engagement team and is not subject to quality control policies and procedures in accordance with SQCS No. 8.¹²

The Competence, Capabilities, and Objectivity of the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .09)

.A15 The competence, capabilities, and objectivity of an auditor's specialist are factors that significantly affect whether the work of the auditor's specialist will be adequate for the auditor's purposes. Competence relates to the nature and level of expertise of the auditor's specialist. Capability relates to the ability of the auditor's specialist to exercise that competence in the circumstances of the engagement. Factors that influence capability may include, for example, geographic location and the availability of time and resources. Objectivity relates to the possible

¹⁰ Paragraph 13 of Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10).

¹¹ Paragraph .05 of section 220.

¹² Paragraph 13 of SQCS No. 8.

effects that bias, conflict of interest, or the influence of others may have on the professional or business judgment of the auditor's specialist.

.A16 Information regarding the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of an auditor's specialist may come from a variety of sources, such as the following:

- Personal experience with previous work of that specialist
- Discussions with that specialist
- Discussions with other auditors or others who are familiar with that specialist's work
- Knowledge of that specialist's qualifications, membership in a professional body or industry association, license to practice, or other forms of external recognition
- Published papers or books written by that specialist
- The quality control policies and procedures of the auditor's firm and such other procedures the auditor considers necessary in the circumstances (see paragraphs .A12–.A13).

.A17 Matters relevant to evaluating the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of the auditor's specialist include whether that specialist's work is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements (for example, ethical standards and other membership requirements of a professional body or industry association, accreditation standards of a licensing body, or requirements imposed by law or regulation).

.A18 Other matters that may be relevant include the following:

- The relevance of the competence of the auditor's specialist to the matter for which that specialist's work will be used, including any areas of specialty within that specialist's field. For example, a particular actuary may specialize in property and casualty insurance but have limited expertise regarding pension calculations.
- The competence of the auditor's specialist with respect to relevant accounting and auditing requirements (for example, knowledge of assumptions and methods, including models, when applicable, that are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework).
- Whether unexpected events, changes in conditions, or the audit evidence obtained from the results of audit procedures indicate that it may be necessary to reconsider the initial evaluation of the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of the auditor's specialist as the audit progresses.

.A19 A broad range of circumstances may threaten objectivity (for example, self-interest threats, advocacy threats, familiarity threats, self-review threats, and intimidation threats). Safeguards may eliminate or reduce such threats and may be created by external structures (for example, the profession, legislation, or regulation of the auditor's specialist) or by the work environment of the auditor's specialist (for example, quality control policies and procedures). There also may be safeguards specific to the audit engagement.

.A20 The evaluation of the significance of threats to objectivity and of whether a need exists for safeguards may depend upon the role of the auditor's specialist and the significance of the specialist's work in the context of the audit. There may be some circumstances in which safeguards cannot reduce threats to an acceptable level (for example, if a proposed auditor's specialist is an individual who has played a significant role in preparing the information that is being audited [that is, if the proposed auditor's specialist is a management's specialist]).

.A21 When evaluating the objectivity of an auditor's external specialist, the auditor may

- a. inquire of the entity and the auditor's specialist about any known interests or relationships that the entity has with the auditor's external specialist that may affect that specialist's objectivity or
- b. discuss with that specialist any applicable safeguards, including any professional requirements that apply to that specialist, and evaluate whether the safeguards are adequate to reduce threats to an acceptable level. Interests and relationships that may be relevant to discuss with the auditor's specialist include the following:
 - i. Financial interests
 - ii. Business and personal relationships

508 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- iii. Provision of other services by the specialist, including by the organization in the case of an external specialist that is an organization

In some cases, the auditor may obtain a written representation from the auditor's external specialist about any interests or relationships with the entity of which that specialist is aware.

.A22 If the auditor believes a relationship between the entity and the auditor's specialist might impair the objectivity of the auditor's specialist, the auditor may perform additional procedures with respect to some or all of the assumptions, methods, or findings of the auditor's specialist to determine that the findings are reasonable or may engage another auditor's specialist for that purpose.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Field of Expertise of the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .10)

.A23 The auditor may obtain an understanding of the field of expertise of the auditor's specialist through the means described in paragraph .A8 or through discussion with the auditor's specialist.

.A24 Aspects of the field of the auditor's specialist relevant to the auditor's understanding may include the following:

- Whether that field of the auditor's specialist has areas of specialty within it that are relevant to the audit (see paragraph .A18)
- Whether any professional or other standards and regulatory or legal requirements apply
- What assumptions and methods, including models, when applicable, are used by the auditor's specialist, and whether they are generally accepted within that field of the auditor's specialist and appropriate for financial reporting purposes
- The nature of internal and external data or information the auditor's specialist uses

Agreement With the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .11)

.A25 The following matters may vary considerably with the circumstances:

- a. The nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the auditor's specialist
- b. The respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist
- c. The nature, timing, and extent of communication between the auditor and the auditor's specialist.

Therefore, it is required that these matters are agreed between the auditor and the auditor's specialist regardless of whether the specialist is an auditor's external specialist or internal specialist.

.A26 The matters noted in paragraph .08 may affect the level of detail and formality of the agreement between the auditor and the auditor's specialist, including whether it is appropriate that the agreement be in writing. For example, the following factors may suggest the need for a more detailed agreement than would otherwise be the case or for the agreement to be in writing:

- The auditor's specialist will have access to sensitive or confidential entity information.
- The respective roles or responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist are different from those normally expected.
- Multijurisdictional legal or regulatory requirements apply.
- The matter to which the work of the auditor's specialist relates is highly complex.
- The auditor has not previously used work performed by the auditor's specialist.
- The auditor's use of the work of the auditor's specialist and its significance in the context of the audit is extensive.

.A27 In establishing the agreement with the auditor's specialist, an important consideration is whether the work of the auditor's specialist is subject to any reservation, limitation, or restriction and whether this has implications for the auditor.

.A28 The agreement between the auditor and an auditor's external specialist is generally in the form of an engagement letter. The appendix, "Considerations for Agreement Between the Auditor and an Auditor's External Specialist," lists matters that the auditor may consider for inclusion in such an engagement letter or in any other form of agreement with an auditor's external specialist.

.A29 When no written agreement exists between the auditor and the auditor's specialist, evidence of the agreement may be included in, for example

- planning memoranda or related working papers, such as the audit program.
- the policies and procedures of the auditor's firm. In the case of an auditor's internal specialist, the established policies and procedures to which the auditor's specialist is subject may include particular policies and procedures regarding the work of the auditor's specialist. The extent of documentation in the auditor's working papers depends on the nature of such policies and procedures. For example, no documentation may be required in the auditor's working papers if the auditor's firm has detailed protocols covering the circumstances in which the work of such an auditor's specialist is used.

Nature, Scope, and Objectives of Work (Ref: par. .11a)

.A30 It often may be relevant when agreeing on the nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the auditor's specialist to include discussion of any relevant technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements that the auditor's specialist will follow.

Respective Roles and Responsibilities (Ref: par. .11b)

.A31 Agreement on the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist may include the following:

- Whether the auditor or the auditor's specialist will perform detailed testing of source data
- Consent for the auditor to discuss the findings or conclusions of the auditor's specialist with the entity and others and to include details of the findings or conclusions of the auditor's specialist in the basis for a modified opinion in the auditor's report, if necessary (see paragraph .A44)
- Any agreement to inform the auditor's specialist of the auditor's conclusions concerning the work of the auditor's specialist

Working Papers

.A32 Agreement on the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist also may include agreement about access to, and retention of, each other's working papers. When the auditor uses the work of an internal specialist, the working papers of the auditor's specialist form part of the audit documentation. Subject to any agreement to the contrary, the auditor's external specialist's working papers are its own and do not form part of the audit documentation.

Communication (Ref: par. .11c)

.A33 Effective two way communication facilitates the proper integration of the nature, timing, and extent of the procedures of the auditor's specialist with other work on the audit and appropriate modification of the objectives of the auditor's specialist during the course of the audit. For example, when the work of the auditor's specialist relates to the auditor's conclusions regarding a significant risk, both a formal written report at the conclusion of the work of the auditor's specialist and oral reports as the work progresses may be appropriate. Identification of specific partners or staff who will interact with the auditor's specialist and procedures for communication between the auditor's specialist and the entity assist timely and effective communication, particularly on larger engagements.

Confidentiality (Ref: par. .11d)

.A34 It is necessary for the confidentiality provisions of relevant ethical requirements that apply to the auditor also to apply to the auditor's specialist.¹³ Additional requirements may be imposed by law or regulation. The entity also may have requested that specific confidentiality provisions be agreed with the auditor's external specialists.

¹³ See also paragraph .001 of ET section 391, *Ethics Rulings on Responsibilities to Clients* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

510 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Evaluating the Adequacy of the Work of the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .12)**

.A35 The auditor's evaluation of the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of the auditor's specialist; the auditor's familiarity with the field of expertise of the auditor's specialist; and the nature of the work performed by the auditor's specialist affect the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to evaluate the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist for the auditor's purposes.

The Findings and Conclusions of the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .12a)

.A36 Specific procedures to evaluate the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist for the auditor's purposes may include the following:

- Making inquiries of the auditor's specialist
- Reviewing the working papers and reports of the auditor's specialist
- Performing corroborative procedures, such as
 - observing the work of the auditor's specialist;
 - examining published data, such as statistical reports from reputable, authoritative sources;
 - confirming relevant matters with third parties;
 - performing detailed analytical procedures; and
 - reperforming calculations
- Engaging in discussion with another specialist with relevant expertise when, for example, the findings or conclusions of the auditor's specialist are not consistent with other audit evidence
- Discussing the report of the auditor's specialist with management

.A37 Relevant factors when evaluating the relevance and reasonableness of the findings or conclusions of the auditor's specialist, whether in a report or other form, may include whether they are

- presented in a manner that is consistent with any standards of the profession or industry of the auditor's specialist;
- clearly expressed, including reference to the objectives agreed with the auditor, the scope of the work performed, and standards applied;
- based on an appropriate period and take into account subsequent events, when relevant; and
- based on appropriate consideration of errors or deviations encountered by the auditor's specialist.

Assumptions, Methods, and Source Data**Assumptions and Methods (Ref: par. .12b)**

.A38 When the purpose of the work of the auditor's specialist is to evaluate underlying assumptions and methods, including models, when applicable, used by management in developing an accounting estimate, the auditor's procedures are likely to be primarily directed to evaluating whether the auditor's specialist has adequately reviewed those assumptions and methods. When the purpose of the work of the auditor's specialist is to develop an auditor's point estimate or an auditor's range for comparison with management's point estimate, the auditor's procedures may be primarily directed to evaluating the assumptions and methods, including models, when appropriate, used by the auditor's specialist.

.A39 Section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, discusses the assumptions and methods used by management in making accounting estimates, including the use, in some cases, of highly specialized, entity-developed models.¹⁴ Although that discussion is written in the context of the auditor obtaining sufficient

¹⁴ Paragraphs .08, .13, and .15 of section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*.

appropriate audit evidence regarding management's assumptions and methods, it also may assist the auditor when evaluating the assumptions and methods of an auditor's specialist.

.A40 When the work of an auditor's specialist involves the use of significant assumptions and methods, the appropriateness and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods used and their application are the responsibility of the auditor's specialist. Factors relevant to the auditor's evaluation of those assumptions and methods include whether they are

- generally accepted within the field of the auditor's specialist;
- consistent with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework;
- dependent on the use of specialized models;¹⁵ and
- consistent with those of management and, if not, the reason for, and effects of, the differences.

Source Data Used by the Auditor's Specialist (Ref: par. .12c)

.A41 When the work of an auditor's specialist involves the use of source data that is significant to the work of the auditor's specialist, procedures such as the following may be used to test that data:

- Verifying the origin of the data, including obtaining an understanding of and, when applicable, testing the internal controls over the data and, when relevant, its transmission to the auditor's specialist
- Reviewing the data for completeness and internal consistency

.A42 In many cases, the auditor may test source data. However, in other cases, when the nature of the source data used by an auditor's specialist is highly technical in relation to the field of the auditor's specialist, that specialist may test the source data. If the auditor's specialist has tested the source data, inquiry of the auditor's specialist by the auditor or supervision or review of the test of the auditor's specialist may be an appropriate way for the auditor to evaluate that data's relevance, completeness, and accuracy.

Inadequate Work (Ref: par. .13)

.A43 If the auditor concludes that the work of the auditor's specialist is not adequate for the auditor's purposes and the auditor cannot resolve the matter through the additional audit procedures required by paragraph .13, which may involve additional work being performed by both the auditor's specialist and the auditor or include employing or engaging another specialist, it may be necessary to express a modified opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

Reference to the Auditor's Specialist in the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .14–.15)

.A44 It may be appropriate to refer to the auditor's external specialist in an auditor's report containing a modified opinion to explain the nature of the modification. In such circumstances, the auditor may need the permission of the auditor's specialist before making such a reference.

¹⁵ Paragraph .14 of section 540 addresses the auditor's consideration of whether specialized skills or knowledge with regard to one or more aspects of the accounting estimates is required in order to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.A45**Appendix—Considerations for Agreement Between the Auditor and an Auditor's External Specialist (Ref: par. .A28)**

This appendix lists matters that the auditor may consider for inclusion in any agreement with an auditor's external specialist. The following list is illustrative and is not exhaustive; it is intended only to be a guide that may be used in conjunction with the considerations outlined in this section. Whether to include particular matters in the agreement depends on the circumstances of the engagement. The list also may be of assistance in considering the matters to be included in an agreement with an auditor's internal specialist.

Nature, Scope, and Objectives of the Auditor's External Specialist's Work

The following matters are examples of the nature, scope, and objectives of the auditor's external specialist's work:

- The nature and scope of the procedures to be performed by the auditor's external specialist
- The objectives of the auditor's external specialist's work in the context of materiality and risk considerations concerning the matter to which the auditor's external specialist's work relates and, when relevant, the applicable financial reporting framework
- Any relevant technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements the auditor's external specialist will follow
- The assumptions and methods, including models, when applicable, the auditor's external specialist will use and their authority
- The effective date of, or, when applicable, the testing period for, the subject matter of the auditor's external specialist's work and requirements regarding subsequent events

The Respective Roles and Responsibilities of the Auditor and the Auditor's External Specialist

The following matters are examples of the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's external specialist:

- Relevant auditing and accounting standards and relevant regulatory or legal requirements
- The consent of the auditor's external specialist to the auditor's intended use of the report of the auditor's specialist, including any reference to it or disclosure of it to others (for example, reference to it in the basis for a modified opinion in the auditor's report, if necessary, or disclosure of it to management or an audit committee)
- The nature and extent of the auditor's review of the auditor's external specialist's work
- Whether the auditor or the auditor's external specialist will test source data
- The auditor's external specialist's access to the entity's records, files, personnel, and specialists engaged by the entity
- Procedures for communication between the auditor's external specialist and the entity
- The auditor's and the auditor's external specialist's access to each other's working papers
- Ownership and control of working papers during and after the engagement, including any file retention requirements
- The auditor's external specialist's responsibility to perform work with due skill and care
- The auditor's external specialist's competence and capability to perform the work
- The expectation that the auditor's external specialist will use all knowledge that the specialist has that is relevant to the audit or, if not, will inform the auditor
- Any restriction on the auditor's external specialist's association with the auditor's report
- Any agreement to inform the auditor's external specialist of the auditor's conclusions concerning the work of the auditor's external specialist

Communications and Reporting

The following matters are examples of communications and reporting:

- Methods and frequency of communications, including the following:
 - How the auditor's external specialist's findings or conclusions will be reported (for example, written report, oral report, ongoing input to the engagement team)
 - Identification of specific persons within the engagement team who will liaise with the auditor's external specialist
- When the auditor's external specialist will complete the work and report findings or conclusions to the auditor
- The auditor's external specialist's responsibility to communicate promptly any potential delay in completing the work and any potential reservation or limitation on the findings and conclusions of the auditor's specialist
- The auditor's external specialist's responsibility to communicate promptly instances in which the entity restricts the access to records, files, personnel of the auditor's external specialist, or management's specialists engaged by the entity
- The auditor's external specialist's responsibility to communicate to the auditor all information that the auditor's external specialist believes may be relevant to the audit, including any changes in circumstances previously communicated
- The auditor's external specialist's responsibility to communicate circumstances that may create threats to the objectivity of the auditor's external specialist and any relevant safeguards that may eliminate or reduce such threats to an acceptable level.

Confidentiality

The following matters are examples of confidentiality:

- The need for the auditor's specialist to observe confidentiality requirements, including the following:
 - The confidentiality provisions of relevant ethical requirements that apply to the auditor
 - Additional requirements that may be imposed by law or regulation, if any (for example, specific confidentiality provisions requested by the entity)

.A46**Exhibit—Comparison of Section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, and International Standard on Auditing 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist*, and *International Standard on Auditing* (ISA) 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Paragraph 12(b) of ISA 620 requires the auditor to evaluate the significant assumptions and methods of the auditor's specialist. The ASB expanded the wording of this requirement to more clearly articulate the auditor's responsibility in this regard. The ASB believes this does not create a difference between the application of ISA 620 and the application of section 620.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraph 14 of ISA 620 contains a conditional requirement regarding the auditor's reference to the auditor's specialist in the auditor's report when such reference is required by law or regulation. Because such reference is not required by law or regulation in the United States, such requirement is not included in section 620.

AU-C Section 700* **AUDIT CONCLUSIONS AND REPORTING**

AU-C Section 700

Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to form an opinion on the financial statements. It also addresses the form and content of the auditor's report issued as a result of an audit of financial statements.

.02 This section is written in the context of a complete set of general purpose financial statements.

.03 Section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, address how the form and content of the auditor's report are affected when the auditor expresses a modified opinion (a qualified opinion, an adverse opinion, or a disclaimer of opinion) or includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report.

.04 Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, addresses special considerations when financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.¹ Section 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, addresses special considerations relevant to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement. (Ref: par. .A1)

.05 Section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, applies when an auditor is engaged to report separately on summary financial statements² derived from financial statements audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) by the same auditor. Section 730, *Required Supplementary Information (AICPA, Professional Standards)*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to information supplementary to the basic financial statements that is required by a designated accounting standards setter to accompany such financial statements.

.06 Section 910, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries (AICPA, Professional Standards)*,[†] applies when an auditor practicing in the United States is engaged to report on financial statements that have been prepared in accordance with a financial

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA Professional Standards. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ See section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, for a definition of *special purpose framework*.

² Paragraph .06 of section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, defines the term *summary financial statements*.

[†] SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 534 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 51 has been included in section 910 in AICPA Professional Standards, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 910 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

516 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

reporting framework generally accepted in another country not adopted by a body designated by the Council of the AICPA (Council) to establish generally accepted accounting principles that are intended for use outside the United States.

.07 Section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, applies when the financial statements of the prior period have been audited by a predecessor auditor or were not audited.

.08 This section promotes consistency in the auditor's report. Consistency in the auditor's report, when the audit has been conducted in accordance with GAAS, promotes credibility in the marketplace by making more readily identifiable those audits that have been conducted in accordance with recognized standards. Consistency also helps promote users' understanding and identification of unusual circumstances when they occur.

Effective Date

.09 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.10 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. form an opinion on the financial statements based on an evaluation of the audit evidence obtained, including evidence obtained about comparative financial statements or comparative financial information, and
- b. express clearly that opinion on the financial statements through a written report that also describes the basis for that opinion. (Ref: par. .A2)

Definitions

.11 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Comparative financial statements. A complete set of financial statements³ for one or more prior periods included for comparison with the financial statements of the current period.

Comparative information. Prior period information presented for purposes of comparison with current period amounts or disclosures that is not in the form of a complete set of financial statements. Comparative information includes prior period information presented as condensed financial statements or summarized financial information.

Condensed financial statements. Historical financial information⁴ that is presented in less detail than a complete set of financial statements, in accordance with an appropriate financial reporting framework. Condensed financial statements may be separately presented as unaudited financial information or may be presented as comparative information.

General purpose financial statements. Financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework. (Ref: par. .A3)

General purpose framework. A financial reporting framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users.

Unmodified opinion. The opinion expressed by the auditor when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.⁵

³ See section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, for a definition of *financial statements*.

⁴ Paragraph .13 of section 200 defines the term *historical financial information*.

⁵ See section 200 for a definition of *applicable financial reporting framework*.

.12 Reference to *financial statements* in this section means a complete set of general purpose financial statements, including the related notes. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements and what constitutes a complete set of financial statements.

Requirements

Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements

.13 The auditor should form an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.14 In order to form that opinion, the auditor should conclude whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. That conclusion should take into account the following: (Ref: par. .A4)

- a. The auditor's conclusion, in accordance with section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*, about whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained.⁶
- b. The auditor's conclusion, in accordance with section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, about whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate.⁷
- c. The evaluations required by paragraphs .15–.18

.15 The auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. This evaluation should include consideration of the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including indicators of possible bias in management's judgments. (Ref: par. .A5–.A7)

.16 In particular, the auditor should evaluate whether, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework

- a. the financial statements adequately disclose the significant accounting policies selected and applied;
- b. the accounting policies selected and applied are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and are appropriate;
- c. the accounting estimates made by management are reasonable;
- d. the information presented in the financial statements is relevant, reliable, comparable, and understandable;
- e. the financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements; and (Ref: par. .A8)
- f. the terminology used in the financial statements, including the title of each financial statement, is appropriate.

.17 The auditor's evaluation about whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation should also include consideration of the following:

- a. The overall presentation, structure, and content of the financial statements
- b. Whether the financial statements, including the related notes, represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation (Ref: par. .A9)

.18 The auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A10–.A13)

⁶ Paragraph .28 of section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained*.

⁷ Paragraph .11 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

518 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Form of Opinion**

.19 The auditor should express an unmodified opinion when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.20 The auditor should modify the opinion in the auditor's report, in accordance with section 705, if the auditor

- a. concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated or
- b. is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

.21 If the auditor concludes that the financial statements do not achieve fair presentation, the auditor should discuss the matter with management and, depending on how the matter is resolved, should determine whether it is necessary to modify the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with section 705. (Ref: par. .A14–.A15)

Auditor's Report

.22 The auditor's report should be in writing. (Ref: par. .A16–.A17)

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With GAAS**Title**

.23 The auditor's report should have a title that includes the word *independent* to clearly indicate that it is the report of an independent auditor. (Ref: par. .A18)

Addressee

.24 The auditor's report should be addressed as required by the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: par. .A19)

Introductory Paragraph

.25 The introductory paragraph in the auditor's report should (Ref: par. .A20–.A23)

- a. identify the entity whose financial statements have been audited,
- b. state that the financial statements have been audited,
- c. identify the title of each statement that the financial statements comprise, and
- d. specify the date or period covered by each financial statement that the financial statements comprise.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

.26 The auditor's report should include a section with the heading "Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements."

.27 The auditor's report should describe management's responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements. The description should include an explanation that management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. (Ref: par. .A24)

.28 The description about management's responsibility for the financial statements in the auditor's report should not be referenced to a separate statement by management about such responsibilities if such a statement is included in a document containing the auditor's report. (Ref: par. .A25)

Auditor's Responsibility

.29 The auditor's report should include a section with the heading "Auditor's Responsibility."

.30 The auditor's report should state that the responsibility of the auditor is to express an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit. (Ref: par. .A26)

.31 The auditor's report should state that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and should identify the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. The auditor's report should also explain that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement. (Ref: par. .A27–.A28)

.32 The auditor's report should describe an audit by stating that

- a. an audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.
- b. the procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.
- c. an audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of the accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as the overall presentation of the financial statements.

In circumstances when the auditor also has a responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, the auditor should omit the phrase required in paragraph .32b that the auditor's consideration of internal control is not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.

.33 The auditor's report should state whether the auditor believes that the audit evidence the auditor has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion.

Auditor's Opinion

.34 The auditor's report should include a section with the heading "Opinion."

.35 When expressing an unmodified opinion on financial statements, the auditor's opinion should state that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the entity as of the balance sheet date and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the period then ended, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A9 and .A29–.A30)

.36 The auditor's opinion should identify the applicable financial reporting framework and its origin. (Ref: par. .A31)

Other Reporting Responsibilities

.37 If the auditor addresses other reporting responsibilities in the auditor's report on the financial statements that are in addition to the auditor's responsibility under GAAS to report on the financial statements, these other reporting responsibilities should be addressed in a separate section in the auditor's report that should be subtitled "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" or otherwise, as appropriate to the content of the section. (Ref: par. .A32–.A33)

.38 If the auditor's report contains a separate section on other reporting responsibilities, the headings, statements, and explanations referred to in paragraphs .25–.36 should be under the subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements." The "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" should follow the "Report on the Financial Statements." (Ref: par. .A34)

Signature of the Auditor

.39 The auditor's report should include the manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm. (Ref: par. .A35–.A36)

520 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Auditor's Address***

.40 The auditor's report should name the city and state where the auditor practices. (Ref: par. .A37)

Date of the Auditor's Report

.41 The auditor's report should be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that

- a. the audit documentation has been reviewed;
- b. all the statements that the financial statements comprise, including the related notes, have been prepared; and
- c. management has asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements. (Ref: par. .A38–.A41)

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With Both GAAS and Another Set of Auditing Standards

.42 Paragraph .31 requires that the auditor's report state that the audit was conducted in accordance with GAAS and identify the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. However, an auditor may indicate that the audit was also conducted in accordance with another set of auditing standards (for example, International Standards on Auditing (ISAs), the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, or *Government Auditing Standards*). The auditor should not refer to having conducted an audit in accordance with another set of auditing standards in addition to GAAS, unless the audit was conducted in accordance with both sets of standards in their entirety. (Ref: par. .A42)

.43 When the auditor's report refers to both GAAS and another set of auditing standards, the auditor's report should identify the other set of auditing standards, as well as their origin.

Comparative Financial Statements and Comparative Information

.44 Comparative financial statements may be required by the applicable financial reporting framework, or management may elect to provide such information. When comparative financial statements are presented, the auditor's report should refer to each period for which financial statements are presented and on which an audit opinion is expressed. (Ref: par. .A43–.A44)

.45 When expressing an opinion on all periods presented, a continuing auditor should update the report on the financial statements of one or more prior periods presented on a comparative basis with those of the current period. The auditor's report on comparative financial statements should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to support the opinion for the most recent audit. (Ref: par. .A45–.A46)

.46 If comparative information is presented but not covered by the auditor's opinion, the auditor should clearly indicate in the auditor's report the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking. (Ref: par. .A47–.A48)

.47 If comparative information is presented and the entity requests the auditor to express an opinion on all periods presented, the auditor should consider whether the information included for the prior period(s) contains sufficient detail to constitute a fair presentation in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A49)

Audit Procedures

.48 The auditor should perform the procedures required by paragraphs .49–.51 if comparative financial statements or comparative information is presented for the prior period(s).

.49 The auditor should determine whether the comparative financial statements or comparative information has been presented in accordance with the relevant requirements, if any, of the applicable financial reporting framework.

.50 The auditor should evaluate whether

- a. the comparative financial statements or comparative information agree with the amounts and other disclosures presented in the prior period or, when appropriate, has been restated for the correction of a material misstatement or adjusted for the retrospective application of an accounting principle, and
- b. the accounting policies reflected in the comparative financial statements or comparative information are consistent with those applied in the current period or if there have been changes in accounting policies, whether those changes have been properly accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed.⁸

.51 If the auditor becomes aware of a possible material misstatement in the comparative financial statements or comparative information while performing the current period audit, the auditor should perform such additional audit procedures as are necessary in the circumstances to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to determine whether a material misstatement exists. If the auditor audited the prior period's financial statements and becomes aware of a material misstatement in those financial statements, the auditor should also follow the relevant requirements of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*. If the prior period financial statements are restated, the auditor should determine that the comparative financial statements or comparative information agree with the restated financial statements.

.52 As required by section 580, *Written Representations*, the auditor should request written representations for all periods referred to in the auditor's opinion. The auditor also should obtain a specific written representation regarding any restatement made to correct a material misstatement in a prior period that affects the comparative financial statements. (Ref: par. .A50)

.53 When reporting on prior period financial statements in connection with the current period's audit, if the auditor's opinion on such prior period financial statements differs from the opinion the auditor previously expressed, the auditor should disclose the following matters in an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph, in accordance with section 706:

- a. The date of the auditor's previous report
- b. The type of opinion previously expressed
- c. The substantive reasons for the different opinion
- d. That the auditor's opinion on the amended financial statements is different from the auditor's previous opinion (Ref: par. .A51)

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor

.54 If the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor, and the predecessor auditor's report on the prior period's financial statements is not reissued⁹ in addition to expressing an opinion on the current period's financial statements, the auditor should state the following in an other-matter paragraph¹⁰

- a. That the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor
- b. The type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefore
- c. The nature of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph included in the predecessor auditor's report, if any
- d. The date of that report

⁸ See section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*.

⁹ Paragraphs .19–.20 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

¹⁰ See section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

522 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.55 If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists that affects the prior period financial statements on which the predecessor auditor had previously reported without modification, the auditor should follow the communication requirements in section 510.¹¹ If the prior period financial statements are restated, and the predecessor auditor agrees to issue a new auditor's report on the restated financial statements of the prior period, the auditor should express an opinion only on the current period. (Ref: par. .A52)

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited

.56 When current period financial statements are audited and presented in comparative form with compiled or reviewed financial statements for the prior period, and the report on the prior period is not reissued, the auditor should include an other-matter paragraph¹² in the current period auditor's report that includes the following:

- a. The service performed in the prior period
- b. The date of the report on that service
- c. A description of any material modifications noted in that report
- d. A statement that the service was less in scope than an audit and does not provide the basis for the expression of an opinion on the financial statements (Ref: par. .A53–.A54)

.57 If the prior period financial statements were not audited, reviewed, or compiled, the financial statements should be clearly marked to indicate their status, and the auditor's report should include an other-matter paragraph to indicate that the auditor has not audited, reviewed, or compiled the prior period financial statements and that the auditor assumes no responsibility for them. (Ref: par. .A55)

Information Presented in the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A56–.A57)

.58 Information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework but is nevertheless presented as part of the basic financial statements should be covered by the auditor's opinion if it cannot be clearly differentiated.

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .04)**

.A1 Section 800 also addresses the auditor's responsibilities when the auditor is reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework and is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report. When reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework, and law or regulation requires a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report, the auditor may adapt and apply the requirements in section 800.

Objectives**Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .10)**

.A2 For audits of governmental entities, the objectives of a financial statement audit are often broader than forming and expressing an opinion on the financial statements. Law, regulation, and *Government Auditing Standards* require that the auditor satisfy additional objectives. These additional objectives include audit and reporting responsibilities, for example, relating to reporting instances of noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations or reporting material weaknesses and significant deficiencies in internal control noted during the audit. Such reporting on compliance and internal control is an integral part of a *Government Auditing Standards* audit.

¹¹ Paragraphs .12–.13 of section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*.

¹² See section 706.

Definitions**General Purpose Financial Statements****Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities (Ref: par. .11)**

.A3 For audits of governmental entities, the term *general purpose financial statements*, in the context of this section, would be considered or referred to as basic financial statements using the terms in the governmental entity's applicable financial reporting framework.

Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .14)**Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities**

.A4 For most state or local governmental entities, the applicable financial reporting framework is based on multiple reporting units and, therefore, requires the presentation of financial statements for its activities in various reporting units. Consequently, a reporting unit, or aggregation of reporting units, of the governmental entity represents an opinion unit to the auditor. In the context of this section, the auditor is responsible for forming an opinion on the financial statements for each opinion unit within a governmental entity.

Qualitative Aspects of the Entity's Accounting Practices (Ref: par. .15)

.A5 Management makes a number of judgments about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

.A6 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, contains a discussion of the qualitative aspects of accounting practices.¹³ In considering the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, the auditor may become aware of possible bias in management's judgments. The auditor may conclude that the cumulative effect of a lack of neutrality, together with the effect of uncorrected misstatements, causes the financial statements as a whole to be materially misstated. Indicators of a lack of neutrality that may affect the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated include the following:

- The selective correction of misstatements brought to management's attention during the audit (for example, correcting misstatements with the effect of increasing reported earnings but not correcting misstatements that have the effect of decreasing reported earnings)
- Possible management bias in the making of accounting estimates

.A7 Section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures*, addresses possible management bias in making accounting estimates. Indicators of possible management bias, themselves, do not constitute misstatements for purposes of drawing conclusions on the reasonableness of individual accounting estimates. They may, however, affect the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

Disclosure of the Effect of Material Transactions and Events on the Information Conveyed in the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .16e)

.A8 It is common for financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework to present an entity's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows. In such circumstances, paragraph .16e requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the entity's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows.

Evaluation of Whether the Financial Statements Achieve Fair Presentation (Ref: par. .17b)

.A9 As described in section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, a financial reporting

¹³ The appendix, "Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices," of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

524 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

framework is a set of criteria used to determine measurement, recognition, presentation, and disclosure of all material items appearing in the financial statements. The auditor's professional judgment concerning the fairness of the presentation of the financial statements is applied within the context of the financial reporting framework. Without that framework, the auditor would have no consistent standard for evaluating the presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in financial statements.

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .18)

.A10 As explained in section 200, the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements by management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance requires the inclusion of an adequate description of the applicable financial reporting framework in the financial statements.¹⁴ That description is important because it advises users of the financial statements of the framework on which the financial statements are based.

.A11 A description that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a particular applicable financial reporting framework is appropriate only if the financial statements comply with all the requirements of that framework that are effective during the period covered by the financial statements.

.A12 A description of the applicable financial reporting framework that contains imprecise qualifying or limiting language (for example, "the financial statements are in substantial compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards") is not an adequate description of that framework because it may mislead users of the financial statements.

.A13 Financial statements that are prepared in accordance with one financial reporting framework and that contain a note or supplementary statement reconciling the results to those that would be shown under another framework are not prepared in accordance with that other framework. This is because the financial statements do not include all the information in the manner required by that other framework. The financial statements may, however, be prepared in accordance with one applicable financial reporting framework and, in addition, describe in the notes to the financial statements the extent to which the financial statements comply with another framework. Such information may not be required by the applicable financial reporting framework but may be presented as part of the basic financial statements. As discussed in paragraph .58, such information is considered an integral part of the financial statements if it cannot be clearly differentiated and, accordingly, is covered by the auditor's opinion.

Form of Opinion (Ref: par. .21)

.A14 There may be cases when the financial statements, although prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework, do not achieve fair presentation. When this is the case, it may be possible for management to include additional disclosures in the financial statements beyond those specifically required by the framework or, in unusual circumstances, to depart from a requirement in the framework in order to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, which would be extremely rare.

.A15 Rule 203, Accounting Principles (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct states the following:

A member shall not (1) express an opinion or state affirmatively that the financial statements or other financial data of any entity are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or (2) state that he or she is not aware of any material modifications that should be made to such statements or data in order for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by bodies designated by Council to establish such principles that has a material effect on the statements or data taken as a whole. If, however, the statements or data contain such a departure and the member can demonstrate that due

¹⁴ Paragraphs .A2–.A3 of section 200.

to unusual circumstances the financial statements or data would otherwise have been misleading, the member can comply with the rule by describing the departure, its approximate effects, if practicable, and the reasons why compliance with the principle would result in a misleading statement.

Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .22)

.A16 A written report encompasses reports issued in hard copy format and those using an electronic medium.

.A17 Exhibit A, "Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements," contains illustrations of auditor's reports on financial statements incorporating the elements required by paragraphs .23–.41.

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With GAAS**Title (Ref: par. .23)**

.A18 A title indicating the report is the report of an independent auditor (for example, "Independent Auditor's Report") affirms that the auditor has met all of the relevant ethical requirements regarding independence and, therefore, distinguishes the independent auditor's report from reports issued by others. Section 200 provides guidance on reporting when the auditor is not independent.

Addressee (Ref: par. .24)

.A19 The auditor's report is normally addressed to those for whom the report is prepared. The report may be addressed to the entity whose financial statements are being audited or to those charged with governance. A report on the financial statements of an unincorporated entity may be addressed as circumstances dictate (for example, to the partners, general partner, or proprietor). Occasionally, an auditor may be retained to audit the financial statements of an entity that is not a client; in such a case, the report may be addressed to the client and not to those charged with governance of the entity whose financial statements are being audited.

Introductory Paragraph (Ref: par. .25)

.A20 The introductory paragraph states, for example, that the auditor has "audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements." If the financial statements include a separate statement of changes in stockholders' equity accounts or a separate statement of comprehensive income, paragraph .25c requires such statements to be identified in the introductory paragraph of the report as a statement to which the financial statements are comprised, but they need not be reported on separately in the opinion paragraph because changes in stockholders' equity accounts and comprehensive income are considered part of the presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows.

.A21 When the auditor is aware that the audited financial statements will be included in a document that contains other information, such as an annual report, the auditor may consider, if the form of presentation allows, identifying the page numbers on which the audited financial statements are presented. This helps users identify the financial statements to which the auditor's report relates.

.A22 The auditor's opinion covers the complete set of financial statements, as defined by the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, in the case of many general purpose frameworks, the financial statements include a balance sheet; an income statement; a statement of changes in equity; and a cash flow statement, including related notes. In some circumstances, additional or different statements, schedules, or information also might be considered to be an integral part of the financial statements.

.A23 The identification of the title for each statement that the financial statements comprise may be achieved by referencing the table of contents.

526 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .27-.28)*

.A24 Section 200 explains the premise relating to the responsibilities of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance on which an audit in accordance with GAAS is conducted.¹⁵ Management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance accept responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including their fair presentation. Management also accepts responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. The description of management's responsibilities in the auditor's report includes reference to both responsibilities because it helps explain to users the premise on which an audit is conducted.

.A25 In some instances, a document containing the auditor's report may include a separate statement by management regarding its responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements. Any elaboration in the auditor's report about management's responsibilities regarding the preparation of the financial statements, or reference to a separate statement by management about such responsibilities if one is included in a document containing the auditor's report, may lead users to erroneously believe that the auditor is providing assurances about representations made by management about their responsibility for financial reporting, internal control, and other matters that might be discussed in the management report.

Auditor's Responsibility (Ref: par. .30-.31)

.A26 The auditor's report states that the auditor's responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit in order to contrast it to management's responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements.

.A27 The reference to the standards used conveys to the users of the auditor's report that the audit has been conducted in accordance with established standards. For example, the auditor's report may refer to auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards.

.A28 In accordance with section 200, the auditor does not represent compliance with GAAS in the auditor's report, unless the auditor has complied with the requirements of section 200 and all other AU-C sections relevant to the audit.¹⁶

*Auditor's Opinion (Ref: par. .35)**Description of Information That the Financial Statements Present*

.A29 The auditor's opinion states that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the information that the financial statements are designed to present.

.A30 The title of the financial statements identified in the introductory paragraph of the auditor's report (see paragraph .25) describes the information that is the subject of the auditor's opinion.

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework and How It May Affect the Auditor's Opinion (Ref: par. .36)

.A31 The identification of the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor's opinion is intended to advise users of the auditor's report of the context in which the auditor's opinion is expressed; it is not intended to limit the evaluation required in paragraph .17. For example, the applicable financial reporting framework may be identified as accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted accounting principles or International Financial Reporting Standards promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) or *International Financial Reporting Standard for Small and Medium-Sized Entities* promulgated by the IASB.

¹⁵ Paragraphs .04 and .A2 of section 200.

¹⁶ Paragraph .20 of section 200.

Other Reporting Responsibilities (Ref: par. .37–.38)

.A32 In some circumstances, the auditor may have additional responsibilities to report on other matters that are supplementary to the auditor's responsibility under GAAS to report on the financial statements. The form and content of the "Other Reporting Responsibilities" section of the auditor's report described in paragraph .37 will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities. For example, for audits conducted under *Government Auditing Standards*, the auditor may be required to report on internal control over financial reporting and compliance with laws, regulations, and provisions of contracts or grant agreements, which may be included in the "Other Reporting Responsibilities" section of the auditor's report.¹⁷ However, when the auditor is engaged or required by law or regulation to perform a compliance audit in accordance with GAAS, *Government Auditing Standards*, and a governmental audit requirement, reporting requirements in section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), apply.

.A33 In some cases, the relevant law or regulation may require or permit the auditor to report on these other responsibilities within the auditor's report on the financial statements. In other cases, the auditor may be required or permitted to report on them in a separate report.

.A34 These other reporting responsibilities are addressed in a separate section of the auditor's report in order to clearly distinguish them from the auditor's responsibility under GAAS to report on the financial statements. When relevant, this section may contain subheading(s) that describe(s) the content of the other reporting responsibility paragraph(s).

Signature of the Auditor (Ref: par. .39)

.A35 In certain situations, the auditor's report may be required by law or regulation to include the personal name and signature of the auditor, in addition to the auditor's firm. In addition to the auditor's signature, in certain circumstances, the auditor may be required to declare in the auditor's report the auditor's professional accountancy designation or the fact that the auditor or firm, as appropriate, has been recognized by the appropriate licensing authority.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A36 This section would not preclude a governmental auditor from including the personal name and signature of the auditor in the auditor's report when, in certain situations, the governmental auditor is required by law or regulation or chooses to do so.

Auditor's Address (Ref: par. .40)

.A37 In the United States, the location of the issuing office is the city and state. In another country, it may be the city and country.

Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .41)

.A38 The date of the auditor's report informs the user of the auditor's report that the auditor has considered the effect of events and transactions of which the auditor became aware and that occurred up to that date. The auditor's responsibility for events and transactions after the date of the auditor's report is addressed in section 560.

.A39 Section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, requires that on or before the date of the auditor's report, the engagement partner, through a review of the audit documentation and discussion with the engagement team, be satisfied that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to support the conclusions reached and for the auditor's report to be issued¹⁸ Section 220 also requires that the auditor's report not be released prior to the completion of the engagement quality control review.¹⁹

¹⁷ See the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* for illustrative auditor reports.

¹⁸ See paragraphs .19 and .A17 of section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, for further discussion.

¹⁹ Paragraph .21 of section 220.

528 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A40 Because the auditor's opinion is provided on the financial statements, and the financial statements are the responsibility of management, the auditor is not in a position to conclude that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained until evidence is obtained that all the statements that the financial statements comprise, including the related notes, have been prepared, and management has accepted responsibility for them.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A41 In some circumstances, final approval of the financial statements by governmental legislative bodies (or subsets of such legislative bodies) is required before the financial statements are issued. In these circumstances, final approval by such legislative bodies (or subsets of such legislative bodies) is not necessary for the auditor to conclude that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained. The date of approval of the financial statements, for purposes of GAAS, is the earlier date on which those with the recognized authority determine that all the statements that the financial statements comprise, including the related notes, have been prepared and that those with the recognized authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for them.

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With Both GAAS and Another Set of Auditing Standards (Ref: par. .42)

.A42 If the audit is performed in accordance with both GAAS and ISAs, the auditor may find it helpful to refer to AU-C appendix B, "Substantive Differences Between the International Standards on Auditing and Generally Accepted Auditing Standards," of AICPA *Professional Standards*. This appendix summarizes substantive differences between the ISAs and GAAS to assist the auditor in planning and performing an engagement in accordance with ISAs.

Comparative Financial Statements and Comparative Information***Comparative Financial Statements (Ref: par. .44-.45)***

.A43 The level of information included for the prior periods in comparative financial statements is comparable with that of the financial statements of the current period.

.A44 Because the auditor's report on comparative financial statements applies to the financial statements for each of the periods presented, the auditor may express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, disclaim an opinion, or include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph with respect to one or more financial statements for one or more periods while expressing a different auditor's opinion on one or more financial statements of another period presented.

Updating the Report

.A45 An updated report on prior period financial statements is distinguished from a reissuance of a previous report.²⁰ When issuing an updated report, the information considered by the continuing auditor is that which the auditor has become aware of during the audit of the current period financial statements. In addition, an updated report is issued in conjunction with the auditor's report on the current period financial statements.

Other Considerations Relating to Comparative Financial Statements

.A46 If one firm of independent auditors merges with another firm, and the new firm becomes the auditor of a former client of one of the two former firms, the new firm may accept responsibility and express an opinion on the financial statements for the prior period(s), as well as for those of the current period. In such circumstances, paragraphs .44-.57 apply. The new firm may indicate in the auditor's report or as part of the signature that a merger took place and may name the firm of independent auditors that was merged with it. If the new firm decides not to express an opinion on the prior period financial statements, the guidance for the reissuance of reports in section 560 would apply.

²⁰ See section 560.

Comparative Information (Ref: par. .46–.47)

.A47 Comparative information, which may be condensed financial statements or prior period summarized financial information, is not considered comparative financial statements because it is not a complete set of financial statements. For example, entities such as state and local governmental units frequently present total-all-funds information for the prior periods rather than information by individual funds because of space limitations or to avoid cumbersome or confusing formats. Also, not-for-profit organizations frequently present certain summarized financial information for the prior period(s) in total rather than by net asset class. Accordingly, the auditor need not opine on comparative information in accordance with this section.

.A48 Paragraph .46 requires the auditor to clearly indicate the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking in the auditor's report when comparative information is presented but not covered by the auditor's opinion on the financial statements of the current period. The requirements and guidance in section 930, *Interim Financial Information*, may be adapted to report on condensed financial statements or prior period summarized financial information that is derived from audited financial statements and is presented comparatively with the complete set of financial statements of the current period.^{21,22} Exhibit A provides examples of auditor's reports when comparative summarized financial information for the prior period is presented.²³

.A49 If an entity requests the auditor to express an opinion on all periods presented, and comparative information is presented for one or more prior periods, in most cases, this will necessitate including additional columns or separate detail by fund or net asset class, or the auditor may need to modify the auditor's opinion, as required by section 705.

Written Representations (Ref: par. .52)

.A50 In the case of comparative financial statements, the written representations are requested for all periods referred to in the auditor's opinion because management needs to reaffirm that the written representations it previously made with respect to the prior period remain appropriate.

Opinion on Prior Period Financial Statements Different From Previous Opinion (Ref: par. .53)

.A51 When reporting on the prior period financial statements in connection with the current period's audit, the opinion expressed on the prior period financial statements may be different from the opinion previously expressed if the auditor becomes aware of circumstances or events that materially affect the financial statements of a prior period during the course of the audit of the current period. In some circumstances, the auditor may have additional reporting responsibilities designed to prevent future reliance on the auditor's previously issued report on the prior period financial statements.²⁴

Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor (Ref: par. .55)

.A52 The predecessor auditor may be unable or unwilling to reissue the auditor's report on the prior period financial statements that have been restated. In this situation, provided that the auditor has audited the adjustments to the prior period financial statements, the auditor may include an other-matter paragraph²⁵ in the auditor's report indicating that the predecessor auditor reported on the financial statements of the prior period before restatement. In addition, if the

²¹ Paragraph .33 of section 930, *Interim Financial Information*.

²² See the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides State and Local Governments and Not-for-Profit Entities for further guidance on reporting on summarized comparative financial information.

²³ Illustration 4, "An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance with Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When Comparative Summarized Financial Information for the Prior Year is Presented," of exhibit A, "Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements."

²⁴ See section 560.

²⁵ See section 706.

530 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

auditor is engaged to audit and obtains sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be satisfied about the appropriateness of the restatement, the auditor's report may also include the following paragraph within the other-matter paragraph section:

As part of our audit of the 20X2 financial statements, we also audited the adjustments described in Note X that were applied to restate the 20X1 financial statements. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X1 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to the adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X1 financial statements as a whole.

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited (Ref: par. .56–.57)

.A53 If the prior period financial statements were reviewed, the following is an example of an other-matter paragraph:

Other Matter

The 20X1 financial statements were reviewed by us (other accountants) and our (their) report thereon, dated March 1, 20X2, stated we (they) were not aware of any material modifications that should be made to those statements for them to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. However, a review is substantially less in scope than an audit and does not provide a basis for the expression of an opinion on the financial statements.

.A54 If the prior period financial statements were compiled, the following is an example of an other-matter paragraph:

Other Matter

The 20X1 financial statements were compiled by us (other accountants) and our (their) report thereon, dated March 1, 20X2, stated we (they) did not audit or review those financial statements and, accordingly, express no opinion or other form of assurance on them.

.A55 If the prior period financial statements were not audited, reviewed, or compiled, the following is an example of an other-matter paragraph:

Other Matter

The accompanying balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income and cash flows for the year then ended were not audited, reviewed, or compiled by us and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on them.

Information Presented in the Financial Statements (Ref: par. .58)

.A56 In some circumstances, the entity may be required by law, regulation, or standards, or may voluntarily choose, to include in the basic financial statements information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework. The auditor's opinion covers information that cannot be clearly differentiated from the financial statements because of its nature and how it is presented.

.A57 If the information included in the basic financial statements is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework and is not necessary for fair presentation but is clearly differentiated, then such information may be identified as *unaudited* or as *not covered by the auditor's report*.

.A58**Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements
(Ref: par. .A17)**

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on Consolidated Comparative Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America

Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on Consolidated Comparative Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When the Audit Has Been Conducted in Accordance With Both Auditing Standards Generally Accepted in the United States of America and International Standards on Auditing

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When Comparative Summarized Financial Information Derived From Audited Financial Statements for the Prior Year Is Presented

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When Comparative Summarized Financial Information Derived From Unaudited Financial Statements for the Prior Year Is Presented

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on Consolidated Comparative Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose consolidated financial statements (comparative).
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

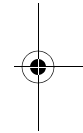
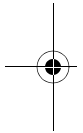
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



534 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America**

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year).
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

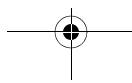
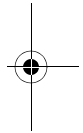
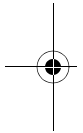


Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on Consolidated Comparative Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When the Audit Has Been Conducted in Accordance With Both Auditing Standards Generally Accepted in the United States of America and International Standards on Auditing

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative).
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The financial statements are audited in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and International Standards on Auditing.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and in accordance with International Standards on Auditing. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

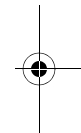
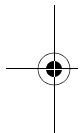
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



538 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When Comparative Summarized Financial Information Derived From Audited Financial Statements for the Prior Year Is Presented**

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year).
- Prior year summarized comparative financial information derived from audited financial statements is presented.
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of XYZ Not-for-Profit Organization, which comprise the statement of financial position as of September 30, 20X1, and the related statements of activities and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the organization's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the organization's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the organization's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Not-for-Profit Organization as of September 30, 20X1, and the changes in its net assets and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Summarized Comparative Information

We have previously audited the XYZ Not-for-Profit Organization's 20X0 financial statements, and we expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those audited financial statements in our report dated December 15, 20X0. In our opinion, the summarized comparative information presented herein as of and for the year ended September 30, 20X0 is consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which it has been derived.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

540 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on a Single Year Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America When Comparative Summarized Financial Information Derived From Unaudited Financial Statements for the Prior Year Is Presented**

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year).
- Prior year summarized comparative financial information derived from unaudited financial statements is presented.
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of XYZ Not-for-Profit Organization, which comprise the statement of financial position as of September 30, 20X1, and the related statements of activities and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

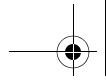
Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the organization's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the organization's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the organization's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.



We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Not-for-Profit Organization as of September 30, 20X1, and the changes in its net assets and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Summarized Comparative Information

The summarized comparative information presented herein as of and for the year ended September 30, 20X0, derived from those unaudited financial statements, has not been audited, reviewed, or compiled and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

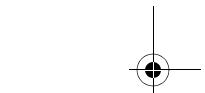
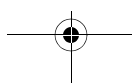
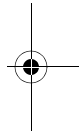
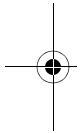
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



542 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A59

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS**Compliance Framework**

Paragraphs 7(b), 19, and 36 of ISA 700 discuss financial statements prepared in accordance with a compliance framework. GAAS do not include any references to compliance frameworks because the ASB believes that all financial reporting frameworks used in the United States are fair presentation frameworks. Accordingly, section 700 is written in the context of a complete set of general purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework.

Definitions

Paragraph 7(b) of ISA 700 defines *fair presentation framework*. Section 700 does not include this definition because fair presentation framework is already defined in section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. As noted previously, section 700 does not include any references to compliance frameworks; therefore, there is no need to emphasize the differences between a fair presentation framework and a compliance framework in section 700.

Use of True and Fair View

Paragraphs 27, 32, and 35(b) of ISA 700 indicate that the description in the auditor's report can refer either to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements or the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view. GAAS do not include any references to "true and fair view" because such wording has not historically been used in the United States; GAAS continues to require the use of "present fairly, in all material respects" in the auditor's opinion. The ASB believes this does not result in a difference in the application of the ISAs and the application of GAAS.

Introductory Paragraph

Paragraph 23(d) of ISA 700 requires the introductory paragraph in the auditor's report to refer to the summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. Section 700 does not include this requirement because the ASB believes the notes to the financial statements are an integral part of the financial statements, and specific notes need not be identified in the introductory paragraph. Because the notes to the financial statements are an integral part of the financial statements, the ASB has included a reference to the related notes to the financial state-

ments in the illustrative auditor's reports in exhibit A, "Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements," of section 700. The ASB believes this does not create a difference between the application of ISA 700 and the application of section 700.

Paragraph 24 of ISA 700 requires the report to use a term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the relevant jurisdiction when the auditor's report discusses management's responsibilities. Section 700 does not include this requirement because the ASB believes this paragraph relates to jurisdictions where the structure of the boards and corporate law are different than in the United States. In the United States, the ASB believes reference to management is sufficient. The ASB believes this does not create a difference between the application of ISA 700 and the application of section 700.

Auditor's Responsibility

Paragraph 30 of ISA 700 requires the auditor's report to include in the "Auditor's Responsibilities" section a statement that the auditing standards require that the auditor comply with ethical requirements. Paragraph .31 of section 700 does not contain this requirement because in the United States, auditors must comply with the ethical standards contained in the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Accordingly, the ASB believes that the title indicating that it is the report of an independent auditor affirms that the auditor has met the ethical requirements and, therefore, need not make an additional reference in the auditor's report. Further, the ASB was mindful to minimize the differences between the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board form of the auditor's report and section 700. The ASB believes a reference to ethical requirements in one report and not the other would cause confusion in the United States and that such differentiation between the two reports is not necessary.

Information Presented in the Financial Statements

Paragraph 46 of ISA 700 contains requirements when supplementary information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework is presented with the audited financial statements. If such supplementary information is not clearly differentiated from the audited financial statements, ISA 700 requires the auditor to ask management to change how the unaudited supplementary information is presented and if management refuses to do so, the auditor should explain in the auditor's report that such supplementary information has not been audited. In the United States, section 725, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the auditor's responsibility when engaged to report on supplementary information. At the present time, no ISAs exist that correspond to section 725 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). GAAS do not include the requirement for the auditor to ask management to change how the unaudited supplementary information is presented when the supplementary information is not clearly differentiated from the audited financial statements.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Management's Responsibilities

Paragraph .28 of section 700 adds a requirement that the description of management's responsibilities for the financial statements in the auditor's report should not be referenced to a separate statement by management about such responsibilities if such a statement is included in a document containing the auditor's report.

Paragraph .41 of section 700 includes a requirement that sufficient appropriate audit evidence includes evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed.

ISA 700 does not contain these requirements, which the ASB believes are appropriate for inclusion in GAAS to retain existing requirements.

544 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Differences Between Requirements*****Management's Responsibilities***

Paragraph 26 of ISA 700 requires the report to describe management's responsibilities for the preparation of the financial statements. The description should include an explanation that management is responsible for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and for such internal control as it determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Section 700 requires the auditor's report to state that this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements. The ASB believes section 700 better conveys management's responsibility in the United States.

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With Both Auditing Standards of a Specific Jurisdiction and ISAs

Paragraphs 44–45 of ISA 700 contain requirements when an auditor is required to conduct an audit in accordance with the auditing standards of a specific jurisdiction but may additionally have complied with the ISAs in the conduct of the audit. Paragraphs .42–.43 of section 700 have been revised to reflect reporting conventions in the United States.

The ASB believes these differences do not create a difference between the application of ISA 700 and the application of section 700.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS***Comparative Financial Statements***

Section 700 addresses comparative financial statements and comparative information, which are not addressed in ISA 700 but are addressed in ISA 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*. See exhibit C, "Comparison of Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*," for a comparison of the requirements of section 700 and the requirements of ISA 710. ISA 710 addresses reporting in other jurisdictions that are not common to the United States, including corresponding figures that are not covered by the auditor's report. For simplicity, the ASB decided to include those requirements and application material that apply in the United States in section 700 rather than have a separate AU-C section.

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation

Paragraph 43 of ISA 700 discusses the auditor's report prescribed by law or regulation. Section 700 does not contain this section because it does not pertain to general purpose financial statements in the United States. Auditor's reports prescribed by law or regulation are addressed in section 800, *Special Considerations*—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks.

The ASB believes that the placement of these requirements does not create differences between the application of the ISAs as a whole and the application of GAAS as a whole.

.A60

Exhibit C—Comparison of Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

The definitions of *comparative information* and *comparative financial statements* in paragraph 6(a) and (c) of ISA 710 have been revised to reflect U.S. conventions.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

ISA 710 addresses reporting in other jurisdictions that are not common in the United States, including corresponding figures that are not covered by the auditor's report. GAAS do not include any references to corresponding figures because these are not common in the United States.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs***Comparative Information***

Paragraph .45 of section 700 requires that when expressing an opinion on all periods presented, the auditor should update the report on the individual financial statements of one or more prior periods presented on a comparative basis with those of the current period. The auditor's report on comparative financial statements should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to support the opinion for the most recent audit.

Paragraph .47 of section 700 contains a requirement that if comparative information is presented, and the entity requests the auditor to express an opinion on all periods presented, the auditor should consider whether the information included for the prior period contains sufficient detail to constitute a fair presentation in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Audit Procedures

Paragraph .48 of section 700 contains a requirement that the audit procedures in paragraphs .49–.51 of section 700 should apply regardless of whether comparative financial statements or comparative information is presented for the prior period.

Prior Period Financial Statements

Paragraph .53 of section 700 includes requirements on what to disclose in an other-matter paragraph when reporting on prior period financial statements in connection with the current period's audit, and the auditor's opinion on such prior period financial statements differs from the opinion the auditor previously expressed.

546 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Paragraph .54 of section 700 adds “and the predecessor auditor’s report on the prior period’s financial statements is not reissued” to the requirement. This was added to clarify that if the report was reissued, section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, would apply. In addition, a requirement was added to include in the other-matter paragraph the nature of any emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph included in the predecessor auditor’s report, if any.

Prior Period Financial Statements Not Audited

Paragraphs .56–.57 of section 700 include requirements on how to report when prior period financial statements were not audited, reviewed, or compiled, to better clarify what is covered in section 700 related to comparative financial statements and comparative information.

ISA 710 does not contain these requirements. The ASB believes these requirements and related application material are appropriate for inclusion in GAAS.

Placement of Certain Requirements Within GAAS

ISA 710 addresses reporting in other jurisdictions that are not common to the United States, including corresponding figures that are not covered by the auditor’s report. For simplicity, the ASB decided to include certain requirements and application material for comparative financial statements and comparative information in section 700 rather than having a separate AU-C section. The ASB believes that the requirements in section 700 related to comparative financial statements and comparative information are consistent with the intent of ISA 710 and that the placement of these requirements does not create differences between the application of the ISAs as a whole and the application of GAAS as a whole.

AU-C Section 705*

Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility to issue an appropriate report in circumstances when, in forming an opinion in accordance with section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, the auditor concludes that a modification to the auditor's opinion on the financial statements is necessary.

Types of Modified Opinions

.02 This section establishes three types of modified opinions: namely, a qualified opinion, an adverse opinion, and a disclaimer of opinion. The decision regarding which type of modified opinion is appropriate depends upon the following: (Ref: par. .A1)

- a. The nature of the matter giving rise to the modification (that is, whether the financial statements are materially misstated or, in the case of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, may be materially misstated)
- b. The auditor's professional judgment about the pervasiveness of the effects or possible effects of the matter on the financial statements

.03 Section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, addresses situations when the auditor considers it necessary, or is required, to include additional communications in the auditor's report that are not modifications to the auditor's opinion.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.05 The objective of the auditor is to express clearly an appropriately modified opinion on the financial statements that is necessary when

- a. the auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated or
- b. the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Modified opinion. A qualified opinion, an adverse opinion, or a disclaimer of opinion.

Pervasive. A term used in the context of misstatements to describe the effects on the financial statements of misstatements or the possible effects on the financial statements of

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

548 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

misstatements, if any, that are undetected due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Pervasive effects on the financial statements are those that, in the auditor's professional judgment

- are not confined to specific elements, accounts, or items of the financial statements;
- if so confined, represent or could represent a substantial proportion of the financial statements; or
- with regard to disclosures, are fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements.

Requirements**Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor's Opinion Is Required**

.07 The auditor should modify the opinion in the auditor's report when

- a. the auditor concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated or (Ref: par. .A2–.A7)
- b. the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement. (Ref: par. .A8–.A12)

Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor's Opinion**Qualified Opinion**

.08 The auditor should express a qualified opinion when

- a. the auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are material but not pervasive to the financial statements or
- b. the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, but the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive.

Adverse Opinion

.09 The auditor should express an adverse opinion when the auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the financial statements.

Disclaimer of Opinion

.10 The auditor should disclaim an opinion when the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive. (Ref: par. .A13–.A14)

Consequence of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence Due to a Management-Imposed Limitation After the Auditor Has Accepted the Engagement

.11 If, after accepting the engagement, the auditor becomes aware that management has imposed a limitation on the scope of the audit that the auditor considers likely to result in the need to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor should request that management remove the limitation.

.12 If management refuses to remove the limitation referred to in paragraph .11, the auditor should communicate the matter to those charged with governance, unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity,¹ and determine whether it is possible to perform alternative procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

¹ Paragraph .09 of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*.

.13 If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence due to a management-imposed limitation, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive, the auditor should either disclaim an opinion on the financial statements or, when practicable, withdraw from the audit.

.14 If the auditor withdraws, as contemplated by paragraph .13, before withdrawing, the auditor should communicate to those charged with governance any matters regarding misstatements identified during the audit that would have given rise to a modification of the opinion. (Ref: par. .A15–.A16)

Other Considerations Relating to an Adverse Opinion or Disclaimer of Opinion

.15 When the auditor considers it necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements as a whole, the auditor's report should not also include an unmodified opinion with respect to the same financial reporting framework on a single financial statement or one or more specific elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement.² To include such an unmodified opinion in the same report in these circumstances would contradict the auditor's adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

Form and Content of the Auditor's Report When the Opinion Is Modified

Basis for Modification Paragraph

.16 When the auditor modifies the opinion on the financial statements, the auditor should, in addition to the specific elements required by section 700, include a paragraph in the auditor's report that provides a description of the matter giving rise to the modification. The auditor should place this paragraph immediately before the opinion paragraph in the auditor's report and use a heading that includes "Basis for Qualified Opinion," "Basis for Adverse Opinion," or "Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion," as appropriate. (Ref: par. .A19)

.17 If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to specific amounts in the financial statements (including quantitative disclosures), the auditor should include in the basis for modification paragraph a description and quantification of the financial effects of the misstatement, unless impracticable. If it is not practicable to quantify the financial effects, the auditor should so state in the basis for modification paragraph. (Ref: par. .A20–.A22)

.18 If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to narrative disclosures, the auditor should include in the basis for modification paragraph an explanation of how the disclosures are misstated.

.19 If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to the omission of information required to be presented or disclosed, the auditor should

- a. discuss the omission of such information with those charged with governance;
- b. describe in the basis for modification paragraph the nature of the omitted information; and
- c. include the omitted information, provided that it is practicable to do so and the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the omitted information. (Ref: par. .A23–.A24)

.20 If the modification results from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should include in the basis for modification paragraph the reasons for that inability. (Ref: par. .A25)

² Paragraph .21 of section 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*.

550 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.21 Even if the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor should

- a. describe in the basis for modification paragraph any other matters of which the auditor is aware that would have required a modification to the opinion and the effects thereof and (Ref: par. .A26)
- b. consider the need to describe in an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph(s)³ any other matters of which the auditor is aware that would have resulted in additional communications in the auditor's report on the financial statements that are not modifications of the auditor's opinion.

Opinion Paragraph

.22 When the auditor modifies the audit opinion, the auditor should use a heading that includes "Qualified Opinion," "Adverse Opinion," or "Disclaimer of Opinion," as appropriate, for the opinion paragraph. (Ref: par. .A27)

.23 When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion due to a material misstatement in the financial statements, the auditor should state in the opinion paragraph that, in the auditor's opinion, except for the effects of the matter(s) described in the basis for qualified opinion paragraph, the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. When the modification arises from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should use the corresponding phrase "except for the possible effects of the matter(s) ..." for the modified opinion. (Ref: par. .A28–.A29)

.24 When the auditor expresses an adverse opinion, the auditor should state in the opinion paragraph that, in the auditor's opinion, because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the basis for adverse opinion paragraph, the financial statements are not presented fairly in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.25 When the auditor disclaims an opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should state in the opinion paragraph that

- a. because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the basis for disclaimer of opinion paragraph, the auditor has not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion and
- b. accordingly, the auditor does not express an opinion on the financial statements.

Description of the Auditor's Responsibility When the Auditor Expresses a Qualified or an Adverse Opinion

.26 When the auditor expresses a qualified or an adverse opinion, the auditor should amend the description of the auditor's responsibility to state that the auditor believes that the audit evidence the auditor has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's modified audit opinion.

Description of the Auditor's Responsibility When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion

.27 When the auditor disclaims an opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor should amend the introductory paragraph of the auditor's report to state that the auditor was engaged to audit the financial statements. The auditor should also amend the description of the auditor's responsibility and the description of the scope of the audit to state only the following: "Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements based on conducting the audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Because of the matter(s) described in the basis for disclaimer of opinion paragraph, however, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion."

³ See section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

Communication With Those Charged With Governance

.28 When the auditor expects to modify the opinion in the auditor's report, the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance the circumstances that led to the expected modification and the proposed wording of the modification. (Ref: par. .A30)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Types of Modified Opinions (Ref: par. .02)

.A1 The following table illustrates how the auditor's professional judgment about the nature of the matter giving rise to the modification and the pervasiveness of its effects or possible effects on the financial statements affects the type of opinion to be expressed:

<i>Nature of Matter Giving Rise to the Modification</i>	<i>Auditor's Professional Judgment About the Pervasiveness of the Effects or Possible Effects on the Financial Statements</i>	
	<i>Material but Not Pervasive</i>	<i>Material and Pervasive</i>
Financial statements are materially misstated	Qualified opinion	Adverse opinion
Inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence	Qualified opinion	Disclaimer of opinion

Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor's Opinion Is Required

Nature of Material Misstatements (Ref: par. .07a)

.A2 Section 700 requires the auditor, in order to form an opinion on the financial statements, to conclude whether reasonable assurance has been obtained about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.⁴ This conclusion takes into account the auditor's evaluation of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements, in accordance with section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

.A3 Section 450 defines a *misstatement* as a difference between the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure of a reported financial statement item and the amount, classification, presentation, or disclosure that is required for the item to be presented fairly in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Accordingly, a material misstatement of the financial statements may arise in relation to the following:

- The appropriateness of the selected accounting policies
- The application of the selected accounting policies
- The appropriateness of the financial statement presentation or the appropriateness or adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements

Appropriateness of the Selected Accounting Policies

.A4 With regard to the appropriateness of the accounting policies management has selected, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise when

- the selected accounting policies are not in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework or
- the financial statements, including the related notes, do not represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

⁴ Paragraph .14 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

552 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A5 Financial reporting frameworks often contain requirements for the accounting for, and disclosure of, changes in accounting policies. When the entity has changed its selection of significant accounting policies, a material misstatement of the financial statements may arise when the entity has not complied with these requirements. If a change in accounting policy does not meet the conditions described in section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, then a material misstatement of the financial statements may arise.

Application of the Selected Accounting Policies

.A6 With regard to the application of the selected accounting policies, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise

- a. when management has not applied the selected accounting policies in accordance with the financial reporting framework, including when management has not applied the selected accounting policies consistently between periods or to similar transactions and events (consistency in application), or
- b. due to the method of application of the selected accounting policies (such as an unintentional error in application).

Appropriateness of the Financial Statement Presentation or Appropriateness or Adequacy of Disclosures in the Financial Statements

.A7 With regard to the appropriateness of the financial statement presentation or the appropriateness or adequacy of disclosures in the financial statements, material misstatements of the financial statements may arise when

- a. the financial statements do not include all of the disclosures required by the applicable financial reporting framework;
- b. the disclosures in the financial statements are not presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- c. the financial statements do not provide the disclosures necessary to achieve fair presentation; or
- d. information required to be presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework is omitted either because a required statement (for example, a statement of cash flows) has not been included or the information has not otherwise been disclosed in the financial statements.

Nature of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence (Ref: par. .07b)

.A8 The auditor's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence (also referred to as a limitation on the scope of the audit) may arise from the following:

- a. Circumstances beyond the control of the entity
- b. Circumstances relating to the nature or timing of the auditor's work
- c. Limitations imposed by management

.A9 An inability to perform a specific procedure does not constitute a limitation on the scope of the audit if the auditor is able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative procedures. If this is not possible, the requirement in paragraph .08b applies. Limitations imposed by management may have other implications for the audit, such as for the auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement due to fraud and consideration of engagement continuance.

.A10 Examples of circumstances beyond the control of the entity include the following:

- The entity's accounting records have been destroyed.
- The accounting records of a significant component have been seized indefinitely by governmental authorities.

.A11 Examples of circumstances relating to the nature or timing of the auditor's work include the following:

- The entity is required to use the equity method of accounting for an associated entity, and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the latter's

financial information to evaluate whether the equity method has been appropriately applied.

- The timing of the auditor's engagement is such that the auditor is unable to observe the counting of the physical inventories, and the auditor is unable to perform a rollback of the inventory or other appropriate procedures.
- The auditor determines that performing substantive procedures alone is not sufficient, but the entity's controls are not effective.
- When accounting for long-term investments, the auditor is unable to obtain audited financial statements of an investee.

.A12 Examples of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence arising from a limitation on the scope of the audit imposed by management include the following:

- Management prevents the auditor from observing the counting of the physical inventory.
- Management prevents the auditor from requesting external confirmation of specific account balances.

Determining the Type of Modification to the Auditor's Opinion

Effect of Uncertainties (Ref: par. .10)

.A13 Conclusive audit evidence concerning the ultimate outcome of uncertainties cannot be expected to exist at the time of the audit because the outcome and related audit evidence are prospective. In these circumstances, management is responsible for estimating the effect of future events on the financial statements or determining that a reasonable estimate cannot be made and making the required disclosures, all in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, based on management's analysis of existing conditions. An audit includes an assessment of whether the audit evidence is sufficient to support management's analysis. Absence of the existence of information related to the outcome of an uncertainty does not necessarily lead to a conclusion that the audit evidence supporting management's assertion is not sufficient. Rather, the auditor's professional judgment regarding the sufficiency of the audit evidence is based on the audit evidence that is, or should be, available. If, after considering the existing conditions and available evidence, the auditor concludes that sufficient appropriate audit evidence supports management's assertions about the nature of a matter involving an uncertainty and its presentation or disclosure in the financial statements, an unmodified opinion ordinarily is appropriate.

.A14 In cases involving multiple uncertainties, the auditor may conclude that it is not possible to form an opinion on the financial statements as a whole due to the interaction and possible cumulative effects of the uncertainties.

Consequence of an Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence Due to a Management-Imposed Limitation After the Auditor Has Accepted the Engagement (Ref: par. .14)

.A15 The practicality of withdrawing from the audit may depend on the stage of completion of the engagement at the time that management imposes the scope limitation. If the auditor has substantially completed the audit, the auditor may decide to complete the audit to the extent possible, disclaim an opinion, and explain the scope limitation in the basis for disclaimer of opinion paragraph.

.A16 In certain circumstances, withdrawal from the audit may not be possible if the auditor is required by law or regulation to continue the audit engagement. This may be the case for an auditor who is appointed to audit the financial statements of governmental entities. It may also be the case in circumstances when the auditor is appointed to audit the financial statements covering a specific period, or appointed for a specific period, and is prohibited from withdrawing before the completion of the audit of those financial statements or before the end of that period, respectively. In these circumstances, the auditor may also consider it necessary to include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report.⁵

⁵ Paragraph .A6 of section 706.

554 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Other Considerations Relating to a Disclaimer of Opinion (Ref: par. .15)***

.A17 In an initial audit, it is acceptable for the auditor to express an unmodified opinion regarding the financial position and disclaim an opinion regarding the results of operations and cash flows, when relevant.⁶ In this case, the auditor has not disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements as a whole.

Considerations Specific to Audits of Governmental Entities

.A18 Because the auditor of a state and local government entity expresses an opinion or disclaims an opinion for each opinion unit,⁷ an auditor's report in these circumstances may include an unmodified opinion with respect to one or more opinion units and a modified opinion for one or more other opinion units.

Form and Content of the Auditor's Report When the Opinion Is Modified***Basis for Modification Paragraph (Ref: par. .16–.17, .19c, and .20–.21)***

.A19 Consistency in the auditor's report helps promote users' understanding and identify unusual circumstances when they occur. Accordingly, although uniformity in the wording of a modified opinion and the description of the basis for the modification may not be possible, consistency in both the form and content of the auditor's report is desirable.

.A20 An example of the financial effects of material misstatements that the auditor may describe in the basis for modification paragraph in the auditor's report is the quantification of the effects on income before taxes, income taxes, net income, and equity if inventory is overstated. If such disclosures are made in a note to the financial statements, the basis for modification paragraph may be shortened by referring to it.

.A21 Adequate disclosures relate to the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements and their related notes, including, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given, the classification of items in the statements, and the bases of amounts set forth. An auditor considers the disclosure of a particular matter in light of the circumstances and facts of which the auditor is aware at the time.

.A22 In considering the adequacy of disclosure, and in other aspects of the audit, the auditor uses information received in confidence from management. Without such confidence, the auditor would find it difficult to obtain information necessary to form an opinion on the financial statements. Rule 301, *Confidential Client Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 301 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct states that the auditor should not disclose any confidential client information without the specific consent of the client. Accordingly, the auditor may not make available, without management's consent, information that is not required to be disclosed in the financial statements to comply with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A23 *Practicable*, as used in the context of paragraphs .17 and .19c, means that the information is reasonably obtainable from management's accounts and records and that providing the information in the report does not require the auditor to assume the position of a preparer of financial information. For example, the auditor would not be expected to prepare a basic financial statement or segment information and include it in the auditor's report when management omits such information.

.A24 Disclosing the omitted information in the basis for modification paragraph would not be practicable if

- a. the information has not been prepared by management or the information is otherwise not readily available to the auditor or
- b. in the auditor's professional judgment, the information would be unduly voluminous in relation to the auditor's report.

⁶ Paragraph .A17 of section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*.

⁷ Paragraph .A4 of section 700.

.A25 When the auditor modifies the opinion due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, it is not appropriate for the scope of the audit to be explained in a note to the financial statements because the description of the audit scope is the responsibility of the auditor and not that of management.

.A26 An adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion relating to a specific matter described in the basis for qualification paragraph does not justify the omission of a description of other identified matters that would have otherwise required a modification of the auditor's opinion. In such cases, the disclosure of such other matters of which the auditor is aware may be relevant to users of the financial statements.

Opinion Paragraph (Ref: par. .22–.23)

.A27 Inclusion of the paragraph heading required by paragraph .22 makes it clear to the user that the auditor's opinion is modified and indicates the type of modification.

.A28 When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion, it would not be appropriate to use phrases such as *with the foregoing explanation* or *subject to* in the opinion paragraph because these are not sufficiently clear or forceful. Because accompanying notes are part of the financial statements, wording such as "fairly presented, in all material respects, when read in conjunction with note 1" is likely to be misunderstood and would also not be appropriate.

.A29 When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion due to a scope limitation, paragraph .23 requires that the auditor state in the opinion paragraph that the qualification pertains to the possible effects of the matter on the financial statements and not to the scope limitation itself. Wording such as "In our opinion, except for the above-mentioned limitation on the scope of our audit ..." bases the exception on the restriction itself rather than on the possible effects on the financial statements and, therefore, is unacceptable.

Communication With Those Charged With Governance (Ref: par. .28)

.A30 Communicating with those charged with governance the circumstances that lead to an expected modification to the auditor's opinion and the proposed wording of the modification enables

- a. the auditor to give notice to those charged with governance of the intended modification(s) and the reasons (or circumstances) for the modification(s);
- b. the auditor to seek the concurrence of those charged with governance regarding the facts of the matter(s) giving rise to the expected modification(s) or to confirm matters of disagreement with management as such; and
- c. those charged with governance to have an opportunity, when appropriate, to provide the auditor with further information and explanations in respect of the matter(s) giving rise to the expected modification(s).

.A31

Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports With Modifications to the Opinion

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion for Inadequate Disclosure

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report Containing an Adverse Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report Containing a Disclaimer of Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence About a Single Element of the Financial Statements

Illustration 6: An Auditor's Report Containing a Disclaimer of Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence About Multiple Elements of the Financial Statements

Illustration 7: An Auditor's Report in Which the Auditor Is Expressing an Unmodified Opinion in the Prior Year and a Modified Opinion (Qualified Opinion) in the Current Year

Illustration 8: An Auditor's Report in Which the Auditor Is Expressing an Unmodified Opinion in the Current Year and a Disclaimer of Opinion on the Prior-Year Statements of Income, Changes in Stockholders' Equity, and Cash Flows

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- Inventories are misstated. The misstatement is deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor's report contains a qualified opinion.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



558 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company has stated inventories at cost in the accompanying balance sheets. Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require inventories to be stated at the lower of cost or market. If the Company stated inventories at the lower of cost or market, a write down of \$XXX and \$XXX would have been required as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, respectively. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by \$XXX and \$XXX, and net income, income taxes, and stockholders' equity would have been reduced by \$XXX, \$XXX, and \$XXX, and \$XXX, \$XXX, and \$XXX, as of and for the years ended December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, respectively.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

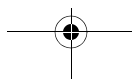
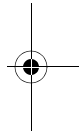
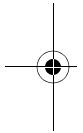


Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion for Inadequate Disclosure

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The financial statements have inadequate disclosures. The auditor has concluded that (a) it is not practicable to present the required information and (b) the effects are such that an adverse opinion is not appropriate. Accordingly, the auditor's report contains a qualified opinion.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



560 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company's financial statements do not disclose [*describe the nature of the omitted information that is not practicable to present in the auditor's report*]. In our opinion, disclosure of this information is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the omission of the information described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[*Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.*]

[*Auditor's signature*]

[*Auditor's city and state*]

[*Date of the auditor's report*]

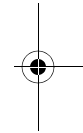
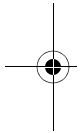


Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report Containing an Adverse Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The financial statements are materially misstated due to the nonconsolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor's report contains an adverse opinion. The effects of the misstatement on the financial statements have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Consolidated Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting esti-

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Consolidated Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

562 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

mates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse audit opinion.

Basis for Adverse Opinion

As described in Note X, the Company has not consolidated the financial statements of subsidiary XYZ Company that it acquired during 20X1 because it has not yet been able to ascertain the fair values of certain of the subsidiary's material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis by the Company. Under accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the subsidiary should have been consolidated because it is controlled by the Company. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying consolidated financial statements would have been materially affected. The effects on the consolidated financial statements of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

Adverse Opinion

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the Basis for Adverse Opinion paragraph, the consolidated financial statements referred to above do not present fairly the financial position of ABC Company and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X1, or the results of their operations or their cash flows for the year then ended.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign affiliate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor's report contains a qualified opinion.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

564 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

ABC Company's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign affiliate acquired during the year and accounted for under the equity method, is carried at \$XXX on the balance sheet at December 31, 20X1, and ABC Company's share of XYZ Company's net income of \$XXX is included in ABC Company's net income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC Company's investment in XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X1 and ABC Company's share of XYZ Company's net income for the year then ended because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ Company. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report Containing a Disclaimer of Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence About a Single Element of the Financial Statements

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a single element of the financial statements. That is, the auditor was unable to obtain audit evidence about the financial information of a joint venture investment accounted for under the proportionate consolidation approach. The investment represents over 90 percent of the Company's net assets. The possible effects of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be both material and pervasive to the financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor's report contains a disclaimer of opinion.
- The auditor concluded that it was unnecessary to include in the auditor's report specific amounts for the Company's proportional share of the assets, liabilities, income, and expenses of the joint venture investment because the investment represents over 90 percent of the Company's net assets, and that fact is disclosed in the auditor's report.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We were engaged to audit the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

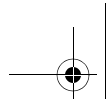
Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on conducting the audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Because of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, however, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion

The Company's investment in XYZ Company, a joint venture, is carried at \$XXX on the Company's balance sheet, which represents over 90 percent of the Company's net assets as of December 31, 20X1. We were not allowed access to the management and the auditors of XYZ Company. As a result, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments were necessary relating to the Company's proportional share of XYZ Company's assets that it controls jointly, its proportional

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.



566 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

share of XYZ Company's liabilities for which it is jointly responsible, its proportional share of XYZ Company's income and expenses for the year, and the elements making up the statements of changes in stockholders' equity and cash flows.

Disclaimer of Opinion

Because of the significance of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on these financial statements.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

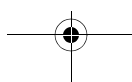
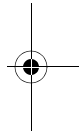
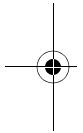


Illustration 6: An Auditor's Report Containing a Disclaimer of Opinion Due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence About Multiple Elements of the Financial Statements

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about multiple elements of the financial statements. That is, the auditor was unable to obtain audit evidence about the entity's inventories and accounts receivable. The possible effects of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be both material and pervasive to the financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor's opinion contains a disclaimer of opinion.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We were engaged to audit the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

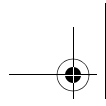
Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on conducting the audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Because of the matters described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, however, we were not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion

We were not engaged as auditors of the Company until after December 31, 20X1, and, therefore, did not observe the counting of physical inventories at the beginning or end of the year. We were unable to satisfy ourselves by other auditing procedures concerning the inventory held at December 31, 20X1, which is stated in the balance sheet at \$XXX. In addition, the introduction of a new computerized accounts receivable system in September 20X1 resulted in numerous misstatements in accounts receivable. As of the date of our audit report, management was still in the process of rectifying the system deficiencies and correcting the misstatements. We were unable to confirm or verify by alternative means accounts receivable included in the balance sheet at a total amount of \$XXX at December 31, 20X1. As a result of these matters, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments might have been found necessary in respect of recorded or unre-

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.



568 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

corded inventories and accounts receivable, and the elements making up the statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows.

Disclaimer of Opinion

Because of the significance of the matters described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on these financial statements.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

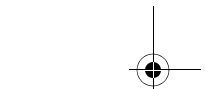
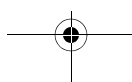
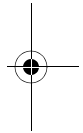
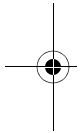


Illustration 7: An Auditor's Report in Which the Auditor Is Expressing an Unmodified Opinion in the Prior Year and a Modified Opinion (Qualified Opinion) in the Current Year

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- Certain lease obligations have been excluded from the financial statements in the current year. The effect of the exclusion is material but not pervasive. The auditor expressed an unmodified opinion in the prior year and is expressing a modified opinion (qualified opinion) in the current year.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

570 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company has excluded, from property and debt in the accompanying 20X1 balance sheet, certain lease obligations that were entered into in 20X1 which, in our opinion, should be capitalized in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. If these lease obligations were capitalized, property would be increased by \$XXX, long-term debt by \$XXX, and retained earnings by \$XXX as of December 31, 20X1, and net income and earnings per share would be increased (decreased) by \$XXX and \$XXX, respectively, for the year then ended.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the effects on the 20X1 financial statements of not capitalizing certain lease obligations as described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 8: An Auditor's Report in Which the Auditor Is Expressing an Unmodified Opinion in the Current Year and a Disclaimer of Opinion on the Prior-Year Statements of Income, Changes in Stockholders' Equity, and Cash Flows

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The auditor was unable to observe the physical inventory as at December 31, 20X0, as at that time the auditor had not been engaged. Accordingly, the auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the net income and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1. The effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed material and pervasive.
- The auditor expressed an unmodified opinion on December 31, 20X1 and 20X0 balance sheets and a disclaimer of opinion on the 20X0 statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. Except as explained in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, we conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

572 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions on the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X2.

Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion on 20X1 Operations and Cash Flows

We did not observe the taking of the physical inventory as of December 31, 20X0, since that date was prior to our engagement as auditors for the Company, and we were unable to satisfy ourselves regarding inventory quantities by means of other auditing procedures. Inventory amounts as of December 31, 20X0 enter into the determination of net income and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1.

Disclaimer of Opinion on 20X1 Operations and Cash Flows

Because of the significance of the matter described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion paragraph, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the results of operations and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the results of operations and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1.

Opinion

In our opinion, the balance sheets of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X2, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X2 in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.

.A32

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and International Standard on Auditing 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS***Compliance Framework***

GAAS do not include any references to compliance frameworks because the ASB believes that all financial reporting frameworks used in the United States are fair presentation frameworks. Accordingly, the reference to compliance frameworks in paragraph 23(b) of ISA 705 has not been included in paragraph .24 of section 705.

Use of True and Fair View

GAAS do not include any references to “true and fair view” because such wording has not historically been used in the United States; GAAS continues to require the use of “present fairly, in all material respects” in the auditor’s opinion. Accordingly, the references to “true and fair view” in paragraphs 23(a) and 24(a) of ISA 705 are not included in paragraphs .23–.24 of section 705. The ASB believes this does not result in a difference in the application of the ISAs and the application of GAAS.

Multiple Uncertainties

Paragraph 10 of ISA 705 requires the auditor to disclaim an opinion when, in extremely rare circumstances involving multiple uncertainties, the auditor concludes that, notwithstanding having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding each of the individual uncertainties, it is not possible to form an opinion on the financial statements due to the potential interaction of the uncertainties and their possible cumulative effect on the financial statements. Section 705 does not include this requirement because the ASB believes that a disclaimer of opinion is appropriate only when the auditor is not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. The ASB believes the guidance in paragraph 30 of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, as amended, is appropriate in these circumstances; therefore, paragraph .A13 of section 705 includes this guidance.

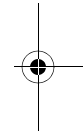
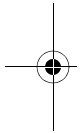
Differences Between Requirements***Management-Imposed Scope Limitation***

Paragraph 13(b)(i) of ISA 705 requires the auditor to withdraw from the audit when the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material



574 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

and pervasive so that a qualification of the opinion would be inadequate to communicate the gravity of the situation. Paragraph .13 of section 705 changes this requirement so that the auditor should consider withdrawal from the engagement under such circumstances. The ASB believes that in the United States, the auditor should not be required to withdraw from an engagement but, rather, should consider whether to withdraw or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements. The ASB believes this does not create differences between the application of ISA 705 and the application of section 705.



AU-C Section 706*

Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses additional communications in the auditor's report when the auditor considers it necessary to

- a. draw users' attention to a matter or matters presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are of such importance that they are fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements (emphasis-of-matter paragraph) or
- b. draw users' attention to any matter or matters other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are relevant to users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities, or the auditor's report (other-matter paragraph).

.02 Exhibit B, "List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs," and exhibit C, "List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Other-Matter Paragraphs," identify AU-C sections containing specific requirements for the auditor to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph, respectively, in the auditor's report. Accordingly, the requirements in this section regarding the form and placement of such paragraphs apply. (Ref: par. .A1)

Effective Date

.03 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.04 The objective of the auditor, having formed an opinion on the financial statements, is to draw users' attention, when in the auditor's judgment it is necessary to do so, by way of clear additional communication in the auditor's report, to

- a. a matter, although appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements, that is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements or
- b. as appropriate, any other matter that is relevant to users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities, or the auditor's report.

Definitions

.05 For the purposes of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Emphasis-of-matter paragraph. A paragraph included in the auditor's report that is required by GAAS, or is included at the auditor's discretion, and that refers to a matter appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements.

-
- * This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

576 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Other-matter paragraph. A paragraph included in the auditor's report that is required by GAAS, or is included at the auditor's discretion, and that refers to a matter other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgment, is relevant to users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities, or the auditor's report.

Requirements

Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report

.06 If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users' attention to a matter appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report, provided that the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the matter is not materially misstated in the financial statements. Such a paragraph should refer only to information presented or disclosed in the financial statements. (Ref: par. .A2–.A3)

.07 When the auditor includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report, the auditor should

- a. include it immediately after the opinion paragraph in the auditor's report,
- b. use the heading "Emphasis of Matter" or other appropriate heading, (Ref: par. .A4)
- c. include in the paragraph a clear reference to the matter being emphasized and to where relevant disclosures that fully describe the matter can be found in the financial statements, and
- d. indicate that the auditor's opinion is not modified with respect to the matter emphasized. (Ref: par. .A5)

Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report

.08 If the auditor considers it necessary to communicate a matter other than those that are presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgment, is relevant to users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities, or the auditor's report, the auditor should do so in a paragraph in the auditor's report with the heading "Other Matter" or other appropriate heading. The auditor should include this paragraph immediately after the opinion paragraph and any emphasis-of-matter paragraph or elsewhere in the auditor's report if the content of the other-matter paragraph is relevant to the "Other Reporting Responsibilities" section. (Ref: par. .A6–.A11)

Communication With Those Charged With Governance

.09 If the auditor expects to include an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report, the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance regarding this expectation and the proposed wording of this paragraph. (Ref: par. .A12)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .02)

.A1 The AU-C sections identified in exhibits B and C require the auditor to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph, respectively, in the auditor's report relating to certain matters. The nature of these matters is such that they are brought to the attention of users of the auditor's report in all instances rather than at the discretion of the auditor. The explanatory language provided by such required paragraphs achieves the same objective as an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph that is included based on the professional judgment of the auditor (that is, to provide additional communication to the users of the auditor's report). Therefore, the auditor follows the requirements in this section regarding the form and placement of these required paragraphs.

Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report***Circumstances in Which an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph May Be Necessary (Ref: par. .06)***

.A2 In addition to the required emphasis-of-matter paragraphs listed in exhibit B, the following are examples of circumstances when the auditor may consider it necessary to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph:

- An uncertainty relating to the future outcome of unusually important litigation or regulatory action
- A major catastrophe that has had, or continues to have, a significant effect on the entity's financial position
- Significant transactions with related parties
- Unusually important subsequent events

.A3 Paragraph .06 requires that an emphasis-of-matter paragraph refer only to matters appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements. To include information in an emphasis-of-matter paragraph about a matter beyond what is presented or disclosed in the financial statements may raise questions about the appropriateness of such presentation or disclosure.

Including an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .07)

.A4 If the heading "Emphasis of Matter" is not used, another heading may be considered appropriate if it adequately describes the nature of the matter being disclosed or communicated.

.A5 The inclusion of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report does not affect the auditor's opinion. An emphasis-of-matter paragraph is not a substitute for either

- a. the auditor expressing a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, or disclaiming an opinion, when required by the circumstances of a specific audit engagement (see section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*) or
- b. disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make.

Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .08)***Circumstances in Which an Other-Matter Paragraph May Be Necessary******Relevant to Users' Understanding of the Audit***

.A6 In the rare circumstance when the auditor is unable to withdraw from an engagement even though the possible effect of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence due to a limitation on the scope of the audit imposed by management is pervasive,¹ the auditor may consider it necessary to include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report to explain why it is not possible for the auditor to withdraw from the engagement.

Relevant to Users' Understanding of the Auditor's Responsibilities or the Auditor's Report

.A7 Law, regulation, or generally accepted practice may require or permit the auditor to elaborate on matters that provide further explanation of the auditor's responsibilities in the audit of the financial statements or the auditor's report thereon. When relevant, one or more subheadings may be used that describe the content of the other-matter paragraph.

.A8 An other-matter paragraph does not address circumstances when the auditor has other reporting responsibilities that are in addition to the auditor's responsibility under GAAS to report on the financial statements (see the "Other Reporting Responsibilities" section in section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*) or when the auditor has been asked to perform and report on additional specified procedures or to express an opinion on specific matters.

¹ See paragraph .13 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, for a discussion of this circumstance.

578 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Reporting on More Than One Set of Financial Statements*

.A9 An entity may prepare one set of financial statements in accordance with a general purpose framework (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America) and another set of financial statements in accordance with another general purpose framework (for example, International Financial Reporting Standards promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board) and engage the auditor to report on both sets of financial statements. If the auditor has determined that the frameworks are acceptable in the respective circumstances, the auditor may include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report referring to the fact that another set of financial statements has been prepared by the same entity in accordance with another general purpose framework and that the auditor has issued a report on those financial statements.

Including an Other-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor's Report

.A10 The content of an other-matter paragraph reflects clearly that such other matter is not required to be presented and disclosed in the financial statements. An other-matter paragraph does not include information that the auditor is prohibited from providing by law, regulation, or other professional standards (for example, ethical standards relating to the confidentiality of information). An other-matter paragraph also does not include information that is required to be provided by management.

.A11 The placement of an other-matter paragraph depends on the nature of the information to be communicated. When an other-matter paragraph is included to draw users' attention to a matter relevant to their understanding of the audit of the financial statements, the paragraph is included immediately after the opinion paragraph and any emphasis-of-matter paragraph. When an other-matter paragraph is included to draw users' attention to a matter relating to other reporting responsibilities addressed in the auditor's report, the paragraph may be included in the section subtitled "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements." Alternatively, when relevant to all the auditor's responsibilities or users' understanding of the auditor's report, the other-matter paragraph may be included as a separate section following the "Report on the Financial Statements" and the "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements."

Communication With Those Charged With Governance (Ref. par. .09)

.A12 The auditor's communication with those charged with governance, as described in paragraph .09, enables those charged with governance to be made aware of the nature of any specific matters that the auditor intends to highlight in the auditor's report and provides them with an opportunity to obtain further clarification from the auditor, when necessary. When the inclusion of an other-matter paragraph on a particular matter in the auditor's report recurs on each successive engagement, the auditor may determine that it is unnecessary to repeat the communication on each engagement.

.A13

Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports With Emphasis-of-Matter or Other-Matter Paragraphs

Illustration 1: An Auditor’s Report With an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Because There Is Uncertainty Relating to a Pending Unusually Important Litigation Matter

Illustration 2: An Auditor’s Report With an Other-Matter Paragraph That May Be Appropriate When an Auditor Issues an Updated Report on the Financial Statements of a Prior Period That Contains an Opinion Different From the Opinion Previously Expressed

Illustration 3: An Auditor’s Report With a Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements and an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Because There Is Uncertainty Relating to a Pending Unusually Important Litigation Matter

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report With an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Because There Is Uncertainty Relating to a Pending Unusually Important Litigation Matter

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- There is uncertainty relating to a pending unusually important litigation matter.
- The auditor's report includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence that we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.



Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company is a defendant in a lawsuit [*briefly describe the nature of the litigation consistent with the Company's description in the note to the financial statements*]. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[*Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.*]

[*Auditor's signature*]

[*Auditor's city and state*]

[*Date of the auditor's report*]

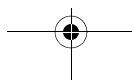
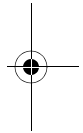
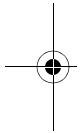


Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report With an Other-Matter Paragraph That May Be Appropriate When an Auditor Issues an Updated Report on the Financial Statements of a Prior Period That Contains an Opinion Different From the Opinion Previously Expressed

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (comparative) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The auditor's report on the prior period financial statements expressed an adverse opinion due to identified departures from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America that resulted in the financial statements being materially misstated. The entity has elected to change its method of accounting for the matters that gave rise to the adverse opinion in the prior period, and has restated the prior period financial statements. Therefore, the auditor has expressed an unmodified opinion on the comparative financial statements.
- The auditor's report includes an other-matter paragraph indicating that the updated report on the financial statements of the prior period contains an opinion different from the opinion previously expressed, as required by section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.
- Although the entity changed its method of accounting for the matters that gave rise to the adverse opinion in the prior period, the principal objective of the communication in the other-matter paragraph is to draw users' attention to the change in the auditor's opinion on the prior period financial statements. The other-matter paragraph also refers to the change in accounting principle and the related disclosure in the financial statements. Therefore, the other-matter paragraph also meets the objective of communicating the change in accounting principle as required by section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*, and a separate emphasis-of-matter paragraph is not considered necessary.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence that we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matter

In our report dated March 1, 20X1, we expressed an opinion that the 20X0 financial statements did not fairly present the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of ABC Company in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America because of two departures from such principles: (1) ABC Company carried its property, plant, and equipment at appraisal values, and provided for depreciation on the basis of such values, and (2) ABC Company did not provide for deferred income taxes with respect to differences between income for financial reporting purposes and taxable income. As described in Note X, the Company has changed its method of accounting for these items and restated its 20X0 financial statements to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Accordingly, our present opinion on the restated 20X0 financial statements, as presented herein, is different from that expressed in our previous report.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.

584 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report With a Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements and an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Because There Is Uncertainty Relating to a Pending Unusually Important Litigation Matter**

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements (single year) prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- Inventories are misstated. The misstatement is deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial statements.
- There is uncertainty relating to a pending unusually important litigation matter.
- The auditor's report includes a qualified opinion and also includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements¹

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.² Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company has stated inventories at cost in the accompanying balance sheet. Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require inventories to be stated at the lower of cost or market. If the Company stated inventories at the lower of cost or market, a write down of \$XXX would have been required as of December 31, 20X1. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by \$XXX and net income, income taxes, and stockholders' equity would have been reduced by \$XXX, \$XXX, and \$XXX, as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1, respectively.

Qualified Opinion

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company is a defendant in a lawsuit [*briefly describe the nature of the litigation consistent with the Company's description in the note to the financial statements*]. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[*Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.*]

[*Auditor's signature*]

[*Auditor's city and state*]

[*Date of the auditor's report*]

.A14**Exhibit B—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs (Ref: par. .02)**

This exhibit identifies paragraphs in other AU-C sections that require the auditor to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report in certain circumstances. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in AU-C sections.

- Paragraph .16c of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*
- Paragraphs .12 and .16 of section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)*
- Paragraphs .08–.09 and .11–.13 of section 708, *Consistency of Financial Statements*
- Paragraphs .19 and .21 of section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*

* SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

.A15**Exhibit C—List of AU-C Sections Containing Requirements for Other-Matter Paragraphs (Ref: par. .02)**

This exhibit identifies paragraphs in other AU-C sections that require the auditor to include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report in certain circumstances. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in AU-C sections.

- Paragraph .16c of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*
- Paragraphs .53–.54 and .56–.57 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*
- Paragraph .11 of section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- Paragraph .09 of section 725, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- Paragraph .07 of section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- Paragraph .20 of section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*
- Paragraph .13 of section 806, *Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements*
- Paragraph .19 of section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)*

* SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

.A16**Exhibit D—Comparison of Section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and International Standard on Auditing 706, *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report***

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 706, *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

In converging with ISA 706, the ASB has made various changes to the language of ISA 706 throughout section 706. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make section 706 easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 706 and the application of section 706.

AU-C Section 708*

Consistency of Financial Statements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's evaluation of the consistency of the financial statements between periods, including changes to previously issued financial statements and the effect of that evaluation on the auditor's report on the financial statements.

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.03 The objectives of the auditor are to

- a. evaluate the consistency of the financial statements for the periods presented and
- b. communicate appropriately in the auditor's report when the comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by a change in accounting principle or by adjustments to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements.

Definition

.04 For purposes of generally accepted auditing standards, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Current period. The most recent period upon which the auditor is reporting.

Requirements

Evaluating Consistency

.05 The auditor should evaluate whether the comparability of the financial statements between periods has been materially affected by a change in accounting principle or by adjustments to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements. (Ref: par. .A1)

.06 The periods included in the auditor's evaluation of consistency depend on the periods covered by the auditor's opinion on the financial statements. When the auditor's opinion covers only the current period, the auditor should evaluate whether the current-period financial statements are consistent with those of the preceding period, regardless of whether financial statements for the preceding period are presented. When the auditor's opinion covers two or more periods, the auditor should evaluate consistency between such periods and the consistency of the earliest period covered by the auditor's opinion with the period prior thereto, if such prior period is presented with the financial statements being reported upon. The auditor also should evaluate whether the financial statements for the periods being reported upon are consistent with previously issued financial statements for the relevant periods. (Ref: par. .A2–.A3)

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

590 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Change in Accounting Principle**

.07 The auditor should evaluate a change in accounting principle to determine whether (Ref: par. .A4–.A6)

- a. the newly adopted accounting principle is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework,
- b. the method of accounting for the effect of the change is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework,
- c. the disclosures related to the accounting change are appropriate and adequate, and
- d. the entity has justified that the alternative accounting principle is preferable.

.08 If the auditor concludes that the criteria in paragraph .07 have been met, and the change in accounting principle has a material effect on the financial statements, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph¹ in the auditor's report that describes the change in accounting principle and provides a reference to the entity's disclosure. If the criteria in paragraph .07 are not met, the auditor should evaluate whether the accounting change results in a material misstatement and whether the auditor should modify the opinion accordingly.² (Ref: par. .A7–.A9)

.09 The auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph relating to a change in accounting principle in reports on financial statements in the period of the change, and in subsequent periods, until the new accounting principle is applied in all periods presented. If the change in accounting principle is accounted for by retrospective application to the financial statements of all prior periods presented, the emphasis-of-matter paragraph is needed only in the period of such change.

.10 The auditor should evaluate and report on a change in accounting estimate that is inseparable from the effect of a related change in accounting principle like other changes in accounting principle, as required by paragraphs .08–.09. (Ref: par. .A10)

.11 When a change in the reporting entity results in financial statements that, in effect, are those of a different reporting entity, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report that describes the change in the reporting entity and provides a reference to the entity's disclosure, unless the change in reporting entity results from a transaction or event. The requirements in paragraph .09 also apply. (Ref: par. .A11)

.12 If an entity's financial statements contain an investment accounted for by the equity method, the auditor's evaluation of consistency should include consideration of the investee. If the investee makes a change in accounting principle that is material to the investing entity's financial statements, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report to describe the change in accounting principle. The requirements in paragraph .09 also apply.

Correction of a Material Misstatement in Previously Issued Financial Statements

.13 The auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report when there are adjustments to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements. The auditor should include this type of emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report when the related financial statements are restated to correct the prior material misstatement. The paragraph need not be repeated in subsequent periods. (Ref: par. .A12–.A13)

.14 The emphasis-of-matter paragraph should include

- a. a statement that the previously issued financial statements have been restated for the correction of a material misstatement in the respective period and
- b. a reference to the entity's disclosure of the correction of the material misstatement. (Ref: par. .A14)

¹ Paragraphs .06–.07 of section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

² See section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.15 If the financial statement disclosures relating to the restatement to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements are not adequate, the auditor should address the inadequacy of disclosure as described in section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

Change in Classification

.16 The auditor should evaluate a material change in financial statement classification and the related disclosure to determine whether such a change is also either a change in accounting principle or an adjustment to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements. If so, the requirements of paragraphs .07–.15 apply. (Ref: par. .A15–.A16)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Evaluating Consistency (Ref: par. .05–.06)

.A1 Unless the auditor's report explicitly states otherwise, the auditor's report implies that the auditor is satisfied that the comparability of financial statements between periods has not been materially affected by a change in accounting principle or by adjustments to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements. There may be no effect on comparability between or among periods because either (a) no change in an accounting principle has occurred, or (b) there has been a change in an accounting principle or in the method of application, but the effect of the change on the comparability of the financial statements is not material. When no material effect on comparability results from a change in accounting principle or an adjustment to previously issued financial statements, the auditor need not refer to consistency in the auditor's report.

.A2 The periods covered in the auditor's evaluation of consistency depend on the periods covered by the auditor's opinion on the financial statements. If an entity presents comparative financial statements and has a change in auditors in the current year, the auditor evaluates consistency between the year covered by the auditor's opinion and the immediately preceding year in accordance with the requirements in paragraph .06.

.A3 When an entity accounts for a change in accounting principle by applying the principle to one or more prior periods that were included in previously issued financial statements, as if that principle had always been used (commonly referred to as *retrospective application*), the financial statements presented generally will be consistent. However, the previous periods' financial statements presented with the current period's financial statements will reflect the change in accounting principle and, therefore, will appear different from those previous periods' financial statements on which the auditor previously reported. The evaluation required by paragraph .06 encompasses previously issued financial statements for the relevant periods.

Change in Accounting Principle (Ref: par. .07)

.A4 A change in accounting principle is a change from one accounting principle in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework to another accounting principle in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework when (1) two or more accounting principles apply or (2) the accounting principle formerly used is no longer in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. A change in the method of applying an accounting principle also is considered a change in accounting principle.

.A5 The applicable financial reporting framework usually sets forth the method of accounting for the effects of a change in accounting principle and the related disclosures.

.A6 The issuance of an accounting pronouncement that requires use of a new accounting principle, interprets an existing principle, expresses a preference for an accounting principle, or rejects a specific principle is sufficient justification for a change in accounting principle, as long as the change in accounting principle is made in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

592 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Reporting on Changes in Accounting Principles (Ref: par. .08–.11)**

.A7 The following is an example of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph for a change in accounting principle resulting from the adoption of a new accounting pronouncement:

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, in [insert year(s) of financial statements that reflect the accounting method change], the entity adopted new accounting guidance [insert description of new accounting guidance]. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

.A8 The following is an example of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph when the entity has made a voluntary change in accounting principle (that is, other than a change due to the adoption of a new accounting pronouncement).

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the entity has elected to change its method of accounting for [describe accounting method change] in [insert year(s) of financial statements that reflect the accounting method change]. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

.A9 If a change in accounting principle does not have a material effect on the financial statements in the current year but the change is expected to have a material effect in later years, the auditor is not required to recognize the change in the auditor's report in the current year. The applicable financial reporting framework may include a requirement for the entity to disclose such situations in the notes to the financial statements. Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and section 705 require the auditor to evaluate the appropriateness and adequacy of disclosures in connection with forming an opinion and reporting on the financial statements.³

.A10 Paragraph .10 requires the auditor to evaluate and report on a change in accounting estimate that is inseparable from the effect of a related change in accounting principle like other changes in accounting principle. It is sometimes difficult to differentiate between a change in an accounting estimate and a change in an accounting principle because the change in accounting estimate may be inseparable from the effect of a related change in accounting principle. For example, when a change is made to the method of depreciation of an asset to reflect a change in the estimated future benefit of the asset or the pattern of consumption for those benefits, such change in accounting may be inseparable from a change in estimate.

Change in Reporting Entity

.A11 A change in reporting entity that results from a transaction or event, such as the creation, cessation, or complete or partial purchase or disposition of a subsidiary or other business unit, does not require recognition in the auditor's report. Examples of a change in the reporting entity that is not a result of a transaction or event include

- a. presenting consolidated or combined financial statements in place of financial statements of individual entities.
- b. changing specific subsidiaries that make up the group of entities for which consolidated financial statements are presented.
- c. changing the entities included in combined financial statements.

³ Paragraph .16 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and paragraphs .07 and .A7 of section 705.

Correction of a Material Misstatement in Previously Issued Financial Statements (Ref: par. .13–.14)

.A12 A change from an accounting principle that is not in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework to one that is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework is a correction of a misstatement.

.A13 Section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, addresses the auditor's responsibilities when adjustments have been made to correct a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements.

Reporting on a Correction of a Material Misstatement in Previously Issued Financial Statements

.A14 The following is an example of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph when there has been a correction of a material misstatement in previously issued financial statements:

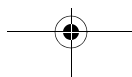
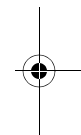
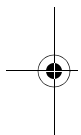
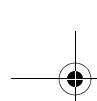
Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the 20X2 financial statements have been restated to correct a misstatement. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Change in Classification (Ref: par. .16)

.A15 Changes in classification in previously issued financial statements do not require recognition in the auditor's report unless the change represents the correction of a material misstatement or a change in accounting principle. For example, certain reclassifications in previously issued financial statements, such as reclassifications of debt from long-term to short-term or reclassifications of cash flows from the operating activities category to the financing activities category, might occur because those items were classified incorrectly in the previously issued financial statements. In such situations, the reclassification also is the correction of a misstatement.

.A16 In some cases, changes in classification in previously issued financial statements may result from changes in the entity's business or operating structure. The auditor may need to obtain a further understanding of the underlying rationale for such reclassifications to determine whether the requirements of paragraph .16 apply.





AU-C Section 720*

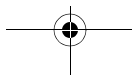
[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 118, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements]

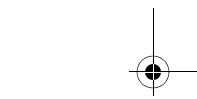
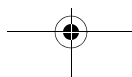
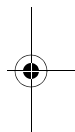
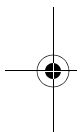
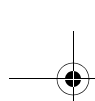
NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, which is currently codified as AU section 550 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 designates section 720 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of SAS No. 118.



-
- * This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.





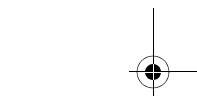
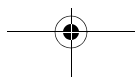
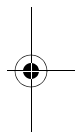
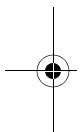
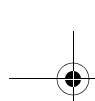
AU-C Section 725*

[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 119, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole]

NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 119, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole*, which is currently codified as AU section 551 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 designates section 725 in AICPA Professional Standards for codification of SAS No. 119

* This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA Professional Standards. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.



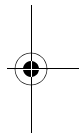
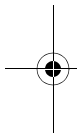


AU-C Section 730*

[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 120, Required Supplementary Information]

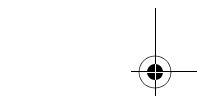
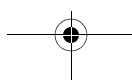
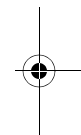
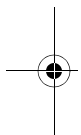
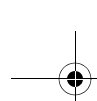
NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 120, *Required Supplementary Information*, which is currently codified as AU section 558 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 designates section 730 in AICPA *Professional Standards* for codification of SAS No. 120.



-
- * This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.





AU-C Section 800* **SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS**

AU-C Section 800*

Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 AU-C sections 100–700 apply to an audit of financial statements. This section addresses special considerations in the application of those AU-C sections to an audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, which is a cash, tax, regulatory, or contractual basis of accounting. This section does not purport to address all special considerations that may be relevant in the circumstances.

.02 This section is written in the context of a complete set of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. Section 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, addresses special considerations relevant to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement.

.03 Section 910, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries* (AICPA, Professional Standards),[†] addresses circumstances in which an auditor practicing in the United States is engaged to report on financial statements that have been prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country not adopted by a body designated by the Council of the AICPA (Council) to promulgate generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) when such audited financial statements are intended for use outside the United States.

.04 Section 806, *Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's responsibility and the form and content of the report when the auditor is requested to report on the entity's compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements in connection with the audit of financial statements.

Effective Date

.05 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

[†] SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 534 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 51 has been included in section 910 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 910 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

602 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Objective**

.06 The objective of the auditor, when applying generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) in an audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, is to address appropriately the special considerations that are relevant to

- a. the acceptance of the engagement,
- b. the planning and performance of that engagement, and
- c. forming an opinion and reporting on the financial statements.

Definitions

.07 For purposes of GAAS, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Special purpose financial statements. Financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. (Ref: par. .A1)

Special purpose framework. A financial reporting framework other than GAAP that is one of the following bases of accounting: (Ref: par. .A2–.A5)

- a. **Cash basis.** A basis of accounting that the entity uses to record cash receipts and disbursements and modifications of the cash basis having substantial support (for example, recording depreciation on fixed assets).
- b. **Tax basis.** A basis of accounting that the entity uses to file its income tax return for the period covered by the financial statements.
- c. **Regulatory basis.** A basis of accounting that the entity uses to comply with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a regulatory agency to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject (for example, a basis of accounting that insurance companies use pursuant to the accounting practices prescribed or permitted by a state insurance commission).
- d. **Contractual basis.** A basis of accounting that the entity uses to comply with an agreement between the entity and one or more third parties other than the auditor.

The cash, tax, and regulatory bases of accounting are commonly referred to as *other comprehensive bases of accounting*.

.08 Reference to *financial statements* in this section means “a complete set of special purpose financial statements, including the related notes.”¹ The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements and what constitutes a complete set of financial statements.

.09 Reference to GAAP in GAAS means generally accepted accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by Council pursuant to Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, and Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01 and 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Requirements**Considerations When Accepting the Engagement****Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .A6–.A9)**

.10 Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, requires the auditor to determine the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements.² In an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor should obtain an understanding of

¹ Paragraphs .13 and .A9 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

² Paragraph .06a of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

- a. the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared,
- b. the intended users, and
- c. the steps taken by management to determine that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

Preconditions for an Audit (Ref: par. .A10)

.11 Section 210 requires the auditor to establish whether the preconditions for an audit are present.³ In an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor should obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility to include all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the special purpose framework used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including

- a. a description of the special purpose framework, including a summary of significant accounting policies, and how the framework differs from GAAP, the effects of which need not be quantified.
- b. informative disclosures similar to those required by GAAP, in the case of special purpose financial statements that contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP.
- c. a description of any significant interpretations of the contract on which the special purpose financial statements are based, in the case of special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting.
- d. additional disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework that may be necessary for the special purpose financial statements to achieve fair presentation. (Ref: par. .A11)

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit (Ref: par. .A12–.A15)

.12 Section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, requires the auditor to comply with all AU-C sections relevant to the audit.⁴ In planning and performing an audit of special purpose financial statements, the auditor should adapt and apply all AU-C sections relevant to the audit as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement.

.13 Section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity's selection and application of accounting policies.⁵ In the case of special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting, the auditor should obtain an understanding of any significant interpretations of the contract that management made in the preparation of those financial statements. An interpretation is significant when adoption of another reasonable interpretation would have produced a material difference in the information presented in the financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations

.14 When forming an opinion and reporting on special purpose financial statements, the auditor should apply the requirements in section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*. When, in forming an opinion, the auditor concludes that a modification to the auditor's opinion on the financial statements is necessary, the auditor should apply the requirements in section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*. (Ref: par. .A16)

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

.15 Section 700 requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework.⁶ In an audit of special purpose

³ Paragraph .06 of section 210.

⁴ Paragraph .18 of section 200.

⁵ Paragraph .12c of section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

⁶ Paragraph .18 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

604 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

financial statements, the auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements are suitably titled, include a summary of significant accounting policies, and adequately describe how the special purpose framework differs from GAAP. The effects of these differences need not be quantified.

.16 In the case of special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting, the auditor should also evaluate whether the financial statements adequately describe any significant interpretations of the contract on which the financial statements are based.

Fair Presentation (Ref: par. .A19–.A23)

.17 Section 700 requires the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation.⁷ In an audit of special purpose financial statements when the special purpose financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP, the auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements include informative disclosures similar to those required by GAAP. The auditor should also evaluate whether additional disclosures, beyond those specifically required by the framework, related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements or other disclosures are necessary for the financial statements to achieve fair presentation.

Auditor's Report

.18 Section 700 addresses the form and content of the auditor's report. In the case of an auditor's report on special purpose financial statements

- a. The explanation of management's responsibility for the financial statements should also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances, when management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks in the preparation of such financial statements.
- b. The auditor's report should also describe the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared or refer to a note in the special purpose financial statements that contains that information, when the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a regulatory or contractual basis of accounting. (Ref: par. .A24)

Alerting Readers in an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph That the Financial Statements Are Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework (Ref: par. .A25)

.19 Except for the circumstances described in paragraph .21, the auditor's report on special purpose financial statements should include an *emphasis-of-matter* paragraph,⁸ under an appropriate heading, that

- a. indicates that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applicable special purpose framework,
- b. refers to the note to the financial statements that describes that framework, and
- c. states that the special purpose framework is a basis of accounting other than GAAP.

Restricting the Use of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .A26–.A27)

.20 Except for the circumstances described in paragraph .21, the auditor's report on special purpose financial statements should include an *other-matter* paragraph,⁹ under an appropriate heading, that restricts¹⁰ the use of the auditor's report to those within the entity, the parties to the

⁷ Paragraph .17 of section 700.

⁸ Paragraphs .06–.07 of section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

⁹ Paragraph .08 of section 706.

¹⁰ See section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as (footnote continued)

contract or agreement, or the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject when the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with either

- a. a contractual basis of accounting or
- b. a regulatory basis of accounting.

Regulatory Basis Financial Statements Intended for General Use (Ref: par. .A28)

.21 If the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with a regulatory basis of accounting, and the special purpose financial statements together with the auditor's report are intended for general use, the auditor should not include the *emphasis-of-matter* or *other-matter* paragraphs required by paragraphs .19–.20. Instead, the auditor should express an opinion about whether the special purpose financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with GAAP. The auditor should also, in a separate paragraph, express an opinion about whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the special purpose framework.

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: par. .A29–.A32)

.22 If the auditor is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report, the auditor's report should refer to GAAS only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum, each of the following elements:

- a. A title
- b. An addressee
- c. An introductory paragraph that identifies the special purpose financial statements audited
- d. A description of the responsibility of management for the preparation and fair presentation of the special purpose financial statements
- e. A reference to management's responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances when required by paragraph .18a
- f. A description of the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared when required by paragraph .18b
- g. A description of the auditor's responsibility to express an opinion on the special purpose financial statements and the scope of the audit, that includes
 - i. A reference to GAAS and, if applicable, the law or regulation
 - ii. A description of an audit in accordance with those standards
- h. An opinion paragraph containing an expression of opinion on the special purpose financial statements and a reference to the special purpose framework used to prepare the financial statements (including identifying the origin of the framework) and, if applicable, an opinion on whether the special purpose financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with GAAP when required by paragraph .21
- i. An *emphasis-of-matter* paragraph that indicates that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework when required by paragraph .19
- j. An *other-matter* paragraph that restricts the use of the auditor's report when required by paragraph .20
- k. The auditor's signature
- l. The auditor's city and state
- m. The date of the auditor's report

.23 If the prescribed specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report is not acceptable or would cause an auditor to make a statement that the auditor has no basis to make, the auditor should reword the prescribed form of report or attach an appropriately worded separate report.

(continued)

designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Special Purpose Financial Statements and Special Purpose Frameworks (Ref: par. .07)

.A1 Special purpose financial statements may be prepared for use by regulatory bodies, the parties to a contract or agreement, or other specified parties. For example, a loan agreement may require the borrower to prepare consolidated financial statements for the lender presented on a contractual basis of accounting, which is not in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) or International Financial Reporting Standards promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board.

.A2 There may be circumstances when a regulatory or contractual basis of accounting is based on a general purpose framework, such as U.S. GAAP, but does not comply with all the requirements of that framework.¹¹ An example is a contract that requires financial statements to be prepared in accordance with most, but not all, of U.S. GAAP. If the financial statements purport to be prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework and such financial statements are materially misstated due to a departure from that framework, section 705 applies.

.A3 When it is acceptable in the circumstances of the engagement to report, in accordance with this section, on special purpose financial statements that purport to be prepared in accordance with a regulatory or contractual basis of accounting that is based on a general purpose framework, it is inappropriate for the description of the applicable financial reporting framework in the special purpose financial statements to imply full compliance with the general purpose framework. In the example of the contract in paragraph .A2, the description of the applicable financial reporting framework would refer to the financial reporting provisions of the contract, rather than make reference to U.S. GAAP. The requirements in paragraphs .19–.21 are designed to avoid misunderstandings about compliance with the general purpose framework.

.A4 Financial statements prepared in accordance with a cash or tax basis of accounting may be the only financial statements an entity prepares. Such special purpose financial statements may be used by users other than those for whom the financial reporting framework is designed. Despite the broad distribution of the financial statements, the financial statements are still considered to be special purpose financial statements for purposes of GAAS. The requirement in paragraph .19 is designed to avoid misunderstandings about the framework used to prepare the financial statements.

.A5 Certain regulators, including state and local government legislators, regulatory agencies, or departments, require financial statements to be prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework that is based on U.S. GAAP but does not comply with all of the requirements of U.S. GAAP. Such frameworks are regulatory bases of accounting, as defined in paragraph .07. In some circumstances, however, the cash or tax basis of accounting may be prescribed by a regulator. For purposes of this section, the cash and tax bases of accounting are not regulatory bases of accounting.

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .10)

.A6 In the case of special purpose financial statements, the financial information needs of the intended users are a factor in determining the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements.

.A7 The applicable financial reporting framework may encompass the financial reporting standards established by an organization that is authorized or recognized to promulgate standards for special purpose financial statements. In that case, those standards will be presumed acceptable for that purpose if the organization follows an established and transparent process involving deliberation and consideration of the views of relevant stakeholders. In some circumstances, law or

¹¹ The term *general purpose framework* is defined in paragraph .11 of section 700.

regulation may prescribe the financial reporting framework to be used by management in the preparation of special purpose financial statements for a certain type of entity. For example, a regulator may establish financial reporting provisions to meet the requirements of that regulator. In the absence of indications to the contrary, such a financial reporting framework is presumed acceptable for special purpose financial statements prepared by such an entity.

.A8 The acceptability of the financial reporting framework in the circumstances of the engagement is determined by considering whether the framework exhibits attributes normally exhibited by acceptable financial reporting frameworks. In the case of a special purpose framework, the relative importance to a particular engagement of each of the attributes normally exhibited by acceptable financial reporting frameworks is a matter of professional judgment. For example, for purposes of establishing the value of net assets of an entity at the date of its sale, the vendor and the purchaser may have agreed that conservative estimates of allowances for uncollectible accounts receivable are appropriate for their needs, even though such financial information may be biased when compared with financial information prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework.

.A9 In the case of financial statements prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting, the parties to the contract or agreement may need to agree on the significant interpretations of the contract on which the special purpose financial statements are based. If agreement cannot be reached, the auditor may determine that the framework is not acceptable.

Preconditions for an Audit (Ref: par. .11)

.A10 Section 210 also requires the agreed-upon terms of the audit engagement to include references to the expected form and content of any reports to be issued by the auditor and a statement that there may be circumstances in which a report may differ from its expected form and content.¹² The auditor may discuss with management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance how an audit report on financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework differs from an audit report on financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework. Discussing the expected form and content of the auditor's report may assist management in understanding its responsibilities related to the audit engagement.

Achieving Fair Presentation (Ref: par. .11d)

.A11 In accordance with section 700, the auditor's evaluation of whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework requires consideration of¹³

- a. the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements and
- b. whether the financial statements, including the related notes, represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

Also see paragraphs .A19–.A23 of this section.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit (Ref: par. .12–.13)

.A12 Section 200 requires the auditor to comply with (a) relevant ethical requirements relating to financial statement audit engagements and (b) all AU-C sections relevant to the audit. It also requires the auditor to comply with each requirement of an AU-C section unless, in the circumstances of the audit, the entire AU-C section is not relevant or the requirement is not relevant because it is conditional and the condition does not exist. In rare circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement in an AU-C section by performing alternative audit procedures to achieve the intent of that requirement.¹⁴

¹² Paragraph .10f of section 210.

¹³ Paragraph .17 of section 700.

¹⁴ Paragraphs .14, .18, and .22–.24 of section 200.

608 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A13 An AU-C section is relevant to the audit when the AU-C section is in effect and the circumstances addressed by the AU-C section exist.¹⁵ In an audit of special purpose financial statements, some of the requirements within the relevant AU-C sections may need to be adapted by the auditor. For example, in section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, judgments about matters that are material to users of the financial statements are based on a consideration of the common financial information needs of users as a group.¹⁶ In an audit of special purpose financial statements, those judgments may be based on a consideration of the financial information needs of the intended users.

.A14 In the case of special purpose financial statements, such as those prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting, management may agree with the intended users on a threshold below which misstatements identified during the audit will not be corrected or otherwise adjusted. The existence of such a threshold does not relieve the auditor from the requirement to determine materiality in accordance with section 320 for purposes of planning and performing the audit of the special purpose financial statements. With respect to interpretations of the contract on which the special purpose financial statements are based, the auditor may determine that an interpretation is significant based on qualitative considerations.

.A15 Communication with those charged with governance in accordance with GAAS is based on the relationship between those charged with governance and the financial statements subject to audit, in particular, whether those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the preparation of those financial statements. In the case of special purpose financial statements, those charged with governance may not have such a responsibility; for example, when the financial information is prepared solely for management's use. In such cases, the requirements of section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, may not be relevant to the audit of the special purpose financial statements, except when the auditor is also responsible for the audit of the entity's general purpose financial statements or, for example, has agreed to communicate with those charged with governance of the entity relevant matters identified during the audit of the special purpose financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations (Ref: par. .14)

.A16 Appendix A, "Overview of Reporting Requirements," provides an overview of the reporting requirements depending on the special purpose framework. Exhibit A, "Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Special Purpose Financial Statements," contains illustrations of auditor's reports on special purpose financial statements.

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .15–.16)

.A17 Terms such as *balance sheet*, *statement of financial position*, *statement of income*, *statement of operations*, and *statement of cash flows*, or similar unmodified titles, are generally understood to be applicable only to financial statements that are intended to present financial position, results of operations, or cash flows in accordance with GAAP. Accordingly, the auditor is required by paragraph .15 to evaluate whether the financial statements are suitably titled. For example, cash basis financial statements might be titled as a statement of assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions or as a statement of revenue collected and expenses paid; a financial statement prepared on a regulatory basis of accounting might be titled as a statement of income—regulatory basis.

.A18 The description of how the special purpose framework differs from GAAP ordinarily only includes the material differences between GAAP and the special purpose framework. For example, if several items are accounted for differently under the special purpose framework than they would be under U.S. GAAP, but only the differences in how depreciation is calculated are material, a brief description of the depreciation differences is all that would be necessary, and the remaining differences need not be described. The differences need not be quantified.

¹⁵ Paragraph .18 of section 200.

¹⁶ Paragraph .02 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

Fair Presentation (Ref: par. .17)

.A19 Financial statements, including the related notes, that achieve a fair presentation include all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the applicable financial reporting framework, including matters that affect their use, understanding, and interpretation. Also refer to paragraph .A11.

.A20 When the special purpose financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP, informative disclosures similar to those required by GAAP are necessary to achieve fair presentation. For example, financial statements prepared on a tax basis or on a modified cash basis of accounting usually reflect depreciation, long-term debt, and owners' equity. Thus, the informative disclosures for depreciation, long-term debt, and owners' equity in such financial statements would be comparable to those in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP.

.A21 Disclosures in special purpose financial statements may substitute qualitative information for some of the quantitative information required by GAAP or may provide information that communicates the substance of those requirements. For example, disclosing estimated percentages of revenues, rather than amounts that GAAP presentations would require, may sufficiently convey the significance of sales or leasing to related parties or major customers.

.A22 The auditor is required by paragraph .17 to evaluate whether additional disclosures, beyond those specifically required by the framework, related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements or other disclosures may be necessary for the special purpose financial statements to achieve fair presentation. For example, these disclosures may include matters about related party transactions, restrictions on assets and owners' equity, subsequent events, and significant uncertainties. In such circumstances, the special purpose financial statements would include the same disclosure required by GAAP or disclosure that communicates the substance of those requirements.

.A23 Appendix B, "Fair Presentation and Adequate Disclosures," provides additional guidance on evaluating the adequacy of disclosures in financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, including matters related to the presentation of financial statements.

Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .18b)

.A24 When the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with a regulatory or contractual basis of accounting, the auditor is required by paragraph .18b to describe the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared or refer to a note in the financial statements that contains that information. This is necessary to avoid misunderstandings when the special purpose financial statements are used for purposes other than those for which they were intended. The note to the financial statements may also describe any significant interpretations of the contract on which the financial statements are based.

Alerting Readers in an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph That the Financial Statements Are Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework (Ref: par. .19)

.A25 Special purpose financial statements may be used for purposes other than those for which they were intended. To avoid misunderstandings, paragraph .19 requires the auditor to include an *emphasis-of-matter* paragraph in the auditor's report that alerts users of the auditor's report that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework and that the basis of accounting is a basis of accounting other than GAAP.

Restricting the Use of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .20)

.A26 When use of the auditor's report is restricted, the intended users are the specified parties. The restriction on use of the auditor's report is necessary due to the nature of the report and the potential for the report to be misunderstood when taken out of the context in which it was intended to be used. For example, special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting are developed for and directed only to the parties to the

610 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

contract or agreement. Section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] addresses adding other parties as specified parties.

.A27 In the case of special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a cash or tax basis of accounting, the auditor may consider it necessary in the circumstances of the engagement to restrict the use of the auditor's report.

Regulatory Basis Financial Statements Intended for General Use (Ref: par. .21)

.A28 Special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with a regulatory basis of accounting may be intended for general use. Such special purpose financial statements are intended for general use when the financial statements together with the auditor's report are intended for use by parties other than those within the entity and the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject or when the financial statements together with the auditor's report are distributed by the entity to parties other than the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject, either voluntarily or upon specific request. In such circumstances, the *emphasis-of-matter* and *other-matter* paragraphs described in paragraphs .19–.20 are not required because the auditor is required, in accordance with paragraph .21, to express an opinion about whether the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with GAAP and an opinion about whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the special purpose framework.

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: par. .22–.23)

.A29 The auditor may be required to comply with legal or regulatory requirements in addition to GAAS. When this is the case, the auditor may be required to use a layout, form, or wording in the auditor's report that differs from that described in this section, such as when printed forms or schedules designed or adopted by the bodies with which they are to be filed prescribe the wording of the auditor's report.

.A30 When the differences between the legal or regulatory requirements and GAAS relate only to the layout, form, and wording of the auditor's report and, at a minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph .22 are included in the auditor's report, the auditor's report may refer to GAAS. Accordingly, in such circumstances the auditor is considered to have complied with the requirements of GAAS, even when the layout, form, and wording used in the auditor's report are specified by legal or regulatory reporting requirements. Section 210 addresses circumstances in which law or regulation prescribes the layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report in terms that are significantly different from the requirements of GAAS.¹⁷

.A31 Some report forms can be made acceptable by inserting additional wording to include the elements identified in paragraph .22. Other report forms can be made acceptable only by complete revision because the prescribed language of the report calls for statements by the auditor that are not consistent with the auditor's function or responsibility; for example, a report form that requests the auditor to certify the financial statements.

.A32 This guidance can be applied to other circumstances, for example, reports on financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework for which a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report is required.

[†] SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁷ Paragraph .18 of section 210.

.A33

Appendix A—Overview of Reporting Requirements

The following table provides an overview of the reporting requirements depending on the special purpose framework:

	Cash Basis	Tax Basis	Regulatory Basis	Regulatory Basis (General Use)	Contractual Basis
<i>Opinion(s)</i>	Single opinion on special purpose framework	Single opinion on special purpose framework	Single opinion on special purpose framework	Dual opinion on special purpose framework and generally accepted accounting principles ^a	Single opinion on special purpose framework
<i>Description of purpose for which special purpose financial statements are prepared^b</i>	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
<i>Emphasis-of-matter paragraph alerting readers about the preparation in accordance with a special purpose framework^c</i>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
<i>Other-matter paragraph restricting the use of the auditor's report^d</i>	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
<i>Exhibit A Illustrations</i>	1	2	3	4	5

^a Paragraph .21.

^b Paragraph .18b.

^c Paragraphs .19 and .21.

^d Paragraphs .20–.21.

.A34

Appendix B—Fair Presentation and Adequate Disclosures (Ref. par. .A19–.A22)

When special purpose financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), paragraph .17 requires the auditor to evaluate whether, the financial statements include informative disclosures similar to those required by GAAP. The auditor is also required to evaluate whether additional disclosures, beyond those specifically required by the framework, related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements or other disclosures are necessary for the financial statements to achieve fair presentation. This appendix provides guidance, in addition to paragraphs .A19–.A22, on evaluating the adequacy of disclosures in financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, including matters related to the presentation of financial statements.

If special purpose financial statements contain items for which GAAP would require disclosure, the financial statements may either provide the relevant disclosure that would be required for those items in a GAAP presentation or provide information that communicates the substance of that disclosure. Likewise, if GAAP sets forth requirements that apply to the presentation of financial statements, special purpose financial statements may either comply with those requirements or provide information that communicates the substance of those requirements, without modifying the format of the special purpose financial statements. This may result in substituting qualitative information for some of the quantitative information required for GAAP presentations. For example:

- Disclosure of the repayment terms of significant long-term borrowings may sufficiently communicate information about future principal reduction without providing the summary of principal reduction during each of the next five years.
- Information about the effects of accounting changes, discontinued operations, and extraordinary items could be disclosed in a note to the financial statements without following the GAAP presentation requirements in the statement of results of operations, using those terms, or disclosing net-of-tax effects.
- Instead of showing expenses by their functional classifications in certain industries, a statement of activities could present expenses according to their natural classifications, and a note to the statement could use estimated percentages to communicate information about expenses incurred by the major program and supporting services.
- Instead of showing the amounts of, and changes in, the unrestricted and temporarily and permanently restricted classes of net assets in certain industries, a statement of assets and liabilities could report total net assets or fund balances, a related statement of activities could report changes in those totals, and a note to the financial statements could provide information, using estimated or actual amounts or percentages, about the restrictions on those amounts and on any deferred restricted amounts, describe the major restrictions, and provide information about significant changes in restricted amounts.

For special purpose financial statements, GAAP disclosure requirements that are not relevant to the measurement of the item need not be considered. To illustrate:

- Fair value disclosures for debt and equity securities would not be relevant when the basis of presentation does not adjust the cost of such securities to their fair value.
- Disclosures related to actuarial calculations for contributions to defined benefit plans would not be relevant in financial statements prepared in accordance with the cash or tax basis of accounting.
- Disclosures related to the use of estimates would not be relevant in a presentation that has no estimates, such as the cash basis of accounting.

Special purpose financial statements may not include a statement of cash flows. If a presentation of cash receipts and disbursements is presented in a format similar to a statement of cash flows or if the entity chooses to present such a statement, the statement would either conform to the requirements for a GAAP presentation or communicate their substance. As an example, the statement of cash flows might disclose noncash acquisitions through captions on its face.

.A35**Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Special Purpose Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A16)**

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With the Cash Basis of Accounting

Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With the Tax Basis of Accounting

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Regulatory Basis of Accounting (the Financial Statements Together With the Auditor's Report Are Not Intended for General Use)

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Regulatory Basis of Accounting (the Financial Statements Together With the Auditor's Report Are Intended for General Use)

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Contractual Basis of Accounting

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With the Cash Basis of Accounting

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the cash basis of accounting (that is, a special purpose framework).
- Management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks.¹

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Partnership, which comprise the statement of assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statement of revenue collected and expenses paid for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with the cash basis of accounting described in Note X; this includes determining that the cash basis of accounting is an acceptable basis for the preparation of the financial statements in the circumstances. Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the partnership's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the partnership's internal control.³ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ If management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks, the auditor is not required by paragraph .18a to make reference to management's responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions of ABC Partnership as of December 31, 20X1, and its revenue collected and expenses paid during the year then ended in accordance with the cash basis of accounting described in Note X.

Basis of Accounting⁴

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statements are prepared on the cash basis of accounting, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁴ Another appropriate heading may be used.

Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With the Tax Basis of Accounting

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of a partnership in accordance with the basis of accounting the partnership uses for income tax purposes (that is, a special purpose framework).
- Based on the partnership agreement, management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.¹

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Partnership, which comprise the statements of assets, liabilities, and capital-income tax basis as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of revenue and expenses-income tax basis and of changes in partners' capital accounts-income tax basis for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with the basis of accounting the Partnership uses for income tax purposes; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the partnership's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the partnership's internal control.³ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

¹ If management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks, paragraph .18a requires that the explanation of management's responsibility for the financial statements also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets, liabilities, and capital of ABC Partnership as of December 31, 20X1, and its revenue and expenses and changes in partners' capital accounts for the year then ended in accordance with the basis of accounting the Partnership uses for income tax purposes described in Note X.

Basis of Accounting⁴

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statements are prepared on the basis of accounting the Partnership uses for income tax purposes, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁴ Another appropriate heading may be used.

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Regulatory Basis of Accounting (the Financial Statements Together With the Auditor's Report Are Not Intended for General Use)

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the financial reporting provisions established by a regulatory agency (that is, a special purpose framework).
- The financial statements together with the auditor's report are not intended for general use.
- Based on the regulatory requirements, management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.¹

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC City, Any State, which comprise cash and unencumbered cash for each fund as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of cash receipts and disbursements and disbursements-budget and actual for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State. Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.³ Accordingly,

¹ If management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks, paragraph .18a requires that the explanation of management's responsibility for the financial statements also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the cash and unencumbered cash of each fund of ABC City as of December 31, 20X1, and their respective cash receipts and disbursements, and budgetary results for the year then ended in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State described in Note X.

Basis of Accounting⁴

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. As described in Note X to the financial statements, the financial statements are prepared by ABC City on the basis of the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, to meet the requirements of Any State. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Restriction on Use⁵

Our report is intended solely for the information and use of ABC City and Any State and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁴ Another appropriate heading may be used.

⁵ Another appropriate heading may be used.

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Regulatory Basis of Accounting (the Financial Statements Together With the Auditor's Report Are Intended for General Use)

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the financial reporting provisions established by a regulatory agency (that is, a special purpose framework).
- The financial statements together with the auditor's report are intended for general use.
- Based on the regulatory requirements, management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.¹
- The variances between the regulatory basis of accounting and accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) are not reasonably determinable and are presumed to be material.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of XYZ City, Any State, which comprise cash and unencumbered cash for each fund as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of cash receipts and disbursements and disbursements-budget and actual for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State. Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the

¹ If management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks, paragraph .18a requires that the explanation of management's responsibility for the financial statements also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

effectiveness of the entity's internal control.³ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Basis for Adverse Opinion on U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

As described in Note X of the financial statements, the financial statements are prepared by XYZ City on the basis of the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, to meet the requirements of Any State.

The effects on the financial statements of the variances between the regulatory basis of accounting described in Note X and accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, although not reasonably determinable, are presumed to be material.

Adverse Opinion on U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the "Basis for Adverse Opinion on U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles" paragraph, the financial statements referred to above do not present fairly, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial position of each fund of XYZ City as of December 31, 20X1, or changes in financial position or cash flows thereof for the year then ended.

Opinion on Regulatory Basis of Accounting

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the cash and unencumbered cash of each fund of XYZ City as of December 31, 20X1, and their respective cash receipts and disbursements, and budgetary results for the year then ended in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Y of Regulation Z of Any State described in Note X.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion." would not be included.

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on a Complete Set of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Contractual Basis of Accounting

Circumstances include the following:

- The financial statements have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting (that is, a special purpose framework) to comply with the provisions of that contract.
- Based on the provisions of the contract, management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.¹

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements²

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the assets and liabilities-contractual basis as of December 31, 20X1, and the revenues and expenses-contractual basis, changes in equity-contractual basis, and cash flows-contractual basis for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the contract between ABC Company and DEF Company dated January 1, 20X1 (the contract). Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.³ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting

¹ If management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks, paragraph .18a requires that the explanation of management's responsibility for the financial statements also make reference to its responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

² The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

³ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets and liabilities of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and revenues, expenses, changes in equity, and cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the contract.

Basis of Accounting⁴

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statements are prepared by ABC Company on the basis of the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the contract, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, to comply with the financial reporting provisions of the contract referred to above. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Restriction on Use⁵

Our report is intended solely for the information and use of ABC Company and DEF Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁴ Another appropriate heading may be used.

⁵ Another appropriate heading may be used.

.A36

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, and International Standard on Auditing 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language**Definitions**

Paragraph 6 of ISA 800 defines a *special purpose framework* as a financial reporting framework (a fair presentation framework or a compliance framework) designed to meet the financial information needs of specific users. Section 800 defines a *special purpose framework* as one of the following bases of accounting: cash, tax, regulatory, and contractual bases of accounting, all of which are fair presentation frameworks in the United States.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit

Paragraph 9 of ISA 800 requires the auditor to determine whether application of the ISAs requires special consideration in the circumstances of the engagement. However, paragraph .12 of section 800 requires the auditor to adapt all AU-C sections relevant to the audit as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement. The ASB believes that the requirement in section 800 is consistent with the intent of ISA 800 and that such changes do not create differences between the application of ISA 800 and the application of section 800.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs**Considerations When Accepting the Engagement**

Paragraph .11 of section 800 includes a requirement for the auditor, when accepting the engagement, to obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility to include all informative disclosures, including specified disclosures, that are appropriate for the special purpose framework used to prepare the entity's financial statements.

Description of the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

Paragraph .15 of section 800 includes a requirement for the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements are suitably titled, include a summary of significant accounting policies, and adequately describe how the special purpose framework differs from generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

Fair Presentation

If the special purpose financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP, paragraph .17 of section 800 includes a requirement for the auditor to evaluate whether the financial statements include informative disclosures similar to those required by GAAP. Paragraph .17 of section 800 also requires the auditor to evaluate whether additional disclosures, beyond those specifically required by the framework, related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements or other disclosures may be necessary for the financial statements to achieve fair presentation.

Restricting the Use of the Auditor's Report

Paragraph .20 of section 800 requires the auditor's report to include an other-matter paragraph that restricts the use of the auditor's report to those within the entity, the parties to the contract or agreement, or the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject when the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with a contractual or regulatory basis of accounting, except for the circumstances described in paragraph .21 of section 800. In accordance with paragraph .21 of section 800, the other-matter paragraph is not required when the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with a regulatory basis of accounting and the special purpose financial statements together with the auditor's report are intended for general use. In this circumstance, the auditor is required to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with GAAP and, in a separate paragraph, an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the special purpose framework.

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation

Paragraphs .22–.23 of section 800 include requirements when the auditor is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report.

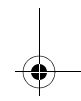
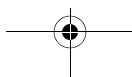
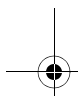
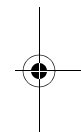
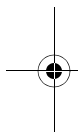
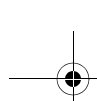
These requirements are not included in ISA 800.

Differences Between Requirements***Auditor's Report***

Paragraph 13 of ISA 800 requires the auditor's report to describe the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared and, if necessary, the intended users, or refer to a note in the special purpose financial statements that contains that information. Section 800 does not require this description when the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with the cash or tax basis of accounting.

Alerting Readers That the Financial Statements Are Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework

Paragraph 14 of ISA 800 requires the auditor's report to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph alerting users of the auditor's report that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework and that, as a result, the financial statements may not be suitable for another purpose. Section 800 does not require the auditor's report to state that the "financial statements may not be suitable for another purpose." However, paragraph .19c of section 800 requires the emphasis-of-matter paragraph to state that the special purpose framework is a basis of accounting other than GAAP. In accordance with paragraph .21 of section 800, the emphasis-of-matter paragraph is not required when the special purpose financial statements are prepared in accordance with a regulatory basis of accounting and the special purpose financial statements together with the auditor's report are intended for general use.



AU-C Section 805*

Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 AU-C sections 100–700 apply to an audit of financial statements and are to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to audits of other historical financial information. This section addresses special considerations in the application of those AU-C sections to an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement. The single financial statement or the specific element, account, or item of a financial statement may be prepared in accordance with a general or special purpose framework. If prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, also applies to the audit. (Ref: par. .A1–.A3)

.02 This section does not apply to the report of a component auditor issued as a result of work performed on the financial information of a component at the request of a group engagement team for purposes of an audit of group financial statements (see section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*).

.03 This section does not override the requirements of the other AU-C sections nor does it purport to address all special considerations that may be relevant in the circumstances of the engagement.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of single financial statements or specific elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement as of or for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.05 The objective of the auditor, when applying generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) in an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement, is to address appropriately the special considerations that are relevant to

- a. the acceptance of the engagement;
- b. the planning and performance of that engagement; and
- c. forming an opinion and reporting on the single financial statement or the specific element, account, or item of a financial statement.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of this section, reference to

- a. an *element of a financial statement* or an *element* means an *element, account, or item of a financial statement*. (Ref: par. .A4)
- b. a *single financial statement* or a *specific element of a financial statement* includes the related notes. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information relevant to the financial statement or the specific element.

* This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

628 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.07 Reference to *generally accepted accounting principles* (GAAP) in GAAS means generally accepted accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by the Council of the AICPA pursuant to Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, and Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01 and 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Requirements

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Application of GAAS (Ref: par. .A5–.A7)

.08 Section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, requires the auditor to comply with all AU-C sections relevant to the audit.¹ In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, this requirement applies irrespective of whether the auditor is also engaged to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements.

.09 If the auditor is not also engaged to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements, the auditor should determine whether the audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of those financial statements in accordance with GAAS is practicable. The auditor should also determine whether the auditor will be able to perform procedures on interrelated items, as required by paragraph .13.

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .A8–.A11)

.10 Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, requires the auditor to determine the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements.² In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor should obtain an understanding of

- a. the purpose for which the single financial statement or specific element of a financial statement is prepared,
- b. the intended users, and
- c. the steps taken by management to determine that the application of the financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

.11 The auditor's determination required by paragraph .10 should include consideration of whether the application of the financial reporting framework will result in a presentation that provides adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the information conveyed in the financial statement or the specific element and the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statement or the specific element.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit

.12 Section 200 states that GAAS is written in the context of an audit of financial statements; it is to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to audits of other historical financial information.³ In planning and performing the audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor should adapt all AU-C sections relevant to the audit as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: par. .A12–.A14)

.13 In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor should perform procedures on interrelated items as necessary to meet the objective of the audit. In the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement (Ref: par. .A15)

¹ Paragraph .18 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

² Paragraph .06a of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

³ Paragraph .02 of section 200.

- a. the auditor should, if the specific element is, or is based upon, the entity's stockholders' equity or the equivalent, perform procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to enable the auditor to express an opinion about financial position, excluding matters related to classification or disclosure that are not relevant to the audit of the specific element.
- b. the auditor should, if the specific element is, or is based upon, the entity's net income or the equivalent, perform procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to enable the auditor to express an opinion about financial position and results of operations, excluding matters related to classification or disclosure that are not relevant to the audit of the specific element.

Materiality (Ref: par. .A16)

.14 Section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, requires the auditor to determine, when establishing the overall audit strategy, materiality for the financial statements as a whole.⁴ In the case of an audit of a single financial statement, the auditor should determine materiality for the single financial statement being reported on rather than for the complete set of financial statements. In the case of an audit of one or more specific elements of a financial statement, the auditor should determine materiality for each individual element reported on rather than the aggregate of all elements or the complete set of financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations

.15 When forming an opinion and reporting on a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor should apply the requirements in section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, adapted as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

Reporting on the Entity's Complete Set of Financial Statements and a Single Financial Statement or a Specific Element of Those Financial Statements

.16 If, in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements, the auditor undertakes an engagement to audit a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor should

- a. issue a separate auditor's report and express a separate opinion for each engagement.
- b. indicate in the report on a specific element of a financial statement the date of the auditor's report on the complete set of financial statements and the nature of opinion expressed on those financial statements under an appropriate heading.

.17 Except as required by paragraph .21, an audited single financial statement or an audited specific element of a financial statement may be published together with the entity's audited complete set of financial statements, provided that the presentation of the single financial statement or the specific element is sufficiently differentiated from the complete set of financial statements. The auditor should also differentiate the report on the single financial statement or the specific element of a financial statement from the report on the complete set of financial statements.

.18 If the auditor concludes that the presentation of the audited single financial statement or the audited specific element does not differentiate it sufficiently from the complete set of financial statements, as described in paragraph .17, the auditor should ask management to remedy the situation. The auditor should not release the auditor's report containing the opinion on the single financial statement or the specific element of a financial statement until satisfied with the differentiation.

⁴ Paragraph .10 of section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*.

Modified Opinion, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph, or Other-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor's Report on the Entity's Complete Set of Financial Statements

.19 If the opinion in the auditor's report on an entity's complete set of financial statements is modified, the auditor should determine the effect that this may have on the auditor's opinion on a single financial statement or a specific element of those financial statements, in accordance with section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

.20 In the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement, if the auditor's modified opinion on the entity's complete set of financial statements as a whole is relevant to the audit of the specific element, the auditor should (Ref: par. .A19–.A20)

- a. express an adverse opinion on the specific element when the modification of the auditor's opinion on the complete set of financial statements as a whole arises from a material misstatement in such financial statements.
- b. disclaim an opinion on the specific element when the modification of the auditor's opinion on the complete set of financial statements as a whole arises from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

.21 If the auditor concludes that it is necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the entity's complete set of financial statements as a whole, an unmodified opinion on a specific element in the same auditor's report would contradict the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion on the entity's complete set of financial statements as a whole and would be tantamount to expressing a piecemeal opinion. In the context of a separate audit of a specific element that is included in those financial statements, when the auditor nevertheless considers it appropriate to express an unmodified opinion on that specific element, the auditor should only do so if

- a. that opinion is expressed in an auditor's report that is neither published together with nor otherwise accompanies the auditor's report containing the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion and
- b. the specific element does not constitute a major portion of the entity's complete set of financial statements or the specific element is not, or is not based upon, the entity's stockholders' equity or net income or the equivalent.

.22 A single financial statement is deemed to constitute a major portion of a complete set of financial statements. Therefore, the auditor should not express an unmodified opinion on a single financial statement of a complete set of financial statements if the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the complete set of financial statements as a whole, even if the auditor's report on the single financial statement is neither published together with nor otherwise accompanies the auditor's report containing the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion. (Ref: par. .A21)

.23 If the auditor's report on an entity's complete set of financial statements includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or an other-matter paragraph that is relevant to the audit of the single financial statement or the specific element, the auditor should include a similar emphasis-of-matter paragraph or an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report on the single financial statement or the specific element, in accordance with section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*. (Ref: par. .A20)

Reporting on an Incomplete Presentation but One That Is Otherwise in Accordance With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (Ref: par. .A22–.A23)

.24 When the auditor reports on an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in accordance with GAAP, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph⁵ in the auditor's report that

- a. states the purpose for which the presentation is prepared and refers to a note in the financial statements that describes the basis of presentation and

⁵ Paragraphs .06–.07 of section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

- b. indicates that the presentation is not intended to be a complete presentation of the entity's assets, liabilities, revenues, or expenses.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)

.A1 Section 200 defines the term *historical financial information* as information expressed in financial terms regarding a particular entity, derived primarily from that entity's accounting system, about economic events occurring in past time periods or about economic conditions or circumstances at points in time in the past. It also defines the term *financial statements* as a structured representation of historical financial information, including related notes, intended to communicate an entity's economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time in accordance with a financial reporting framework. The term *financial statements* ordinarily refers to a complete set of financial statements as determined by the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, but can also refer to a single financial statement.⁶

.A2 Paragraph .A9 of section 200 provides guidance on what constitutes a complete set of financial statements and also provides the following examples of single financial statements, each of which would include related notes:

- Balance sheet
- Statement of income or statement of operations
- Statement of retained earnings
- Statement of cash flows
- Statement of assets and liabilities
- Statement of changes in owner's equity
- Statement of revenue and expenses
- Statement of operations by product lines

.A3 An attest engagement other than an audit of historical financial information is performed in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements. For example, AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), applies when reporting on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to one or more specific elements of a financial statement, and AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance when reporting on a review of one or more specific elements of a financial statement.

Definitions

Element of a Financial Statement (Ref: par. .06)

.A4 The appendix, "Examples of Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement," lists examples of an element of a financial statement.

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement

Application of GAAS (Ref: par. .08–.09)

.A5 Section 200 requires the auditor to comply with (a) relevant ethical requirements relating to financial statement audit engagements and (b) all AU-C sections relevant to the audit. It also requires the auditor to comply with each requirement of an AU-C section, unless, in the circumstances of the audit, the entire AU-C section is not relevant or the requirement is not relevant because it is conditional and the condition does not exist. In rare circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement in an AU-C section by performing alternative audit procedures to achieve the intent of that requirement.⁷

⁶ Paragraph .13 of section 200.

⁷ Paragraphs .14, .18, and .22–.24 of section 200.

632 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Complying With Relevant Requirements***

.A6 Compliance with the requirements of AU-C sections relevant to the audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement may not be practicable when the auditor is not also engaged to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements. In such cases, the auditor often does not have the same understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, as an auditor who also audits the entity's complete set of financial statements. The auditor also does not have the audit evidence about the general quality of the accounting records or other accounting information that would be acquired in an audit of the entity's complete set of financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor may need further evidence to corroborate audit evidence acquired from the accounting records. Also see paragraph .A15.

.A7 In the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement, certain AU-C sections require audit work that may be disproportionate to the specific element being audited. For example, although the requirements of section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),[†] are likely to be relevant in the circumstances of an audit of a schedule of accounts receivable (see paragraph .A12), complying with those requirements may not be practicable because of the audit effort required. If the auditor concludes that an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement in accordance with GAAS may not be practicable, the auditor may discuss with management whether another type of engagement might be more practicable, as described in paragraph .A3.

Acceptability of the Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .10-.11)

.A8 In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the financial information needs of the intended users are relevant in determining the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the single financial statement or the specific element.

.A9 A single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement may be prepared in accordance with relevant requirements of a financial reporting framework established by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization for the preparation of a complete set of financial statements (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America [U.S. GAAP] or International Financial Reporting Standards promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board). If this is the case, determination of the acceptability of the applicable framework may involve considering whether that framework includes all the requirements of the framework that are relevant to the presentation of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement that provides adequate disclosures. The determination of the acceptability of the applicable framework may also include consideration of the following:

- Whether the applicable financial reporting framework is explicitly or implicitly restricted to the preparation of a complete set of financial statements.
- Whether the single financial statement or the specific element of a financial statement will
 - comply fully with each of those requirements of the framework relevant to the particular financial statement or the particular element and the presentation of the financial statement or the specific element, including the related notes. For example, when reporting on a schedule of long-term debt prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP relevant to that schedule, the schedule of long-term debt, including the related notes, would be comparable to such information in financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

[†] SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

- provide, if necessary to achieve fair presentation, disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework or, in extremely rare circumstances, depart from a requirement of the framework.⁸ A single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, including the related notes, that achieves a fair presentation includes all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the applicable financial reporting framework, including matters that affect their use, understanding, and interpretation.

.A10 The auditor may be requested to audit an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in accordance with GAAP. For example, an entity wishing to sell a division or product line may present certain assets and liabilities, revenues, and expenses relating to the division or product line being sold. Incomplete presentations may also be required by a regulatory agency or a contract or an agreement. For example, a regulatory agency may require a schedule of gross income and certain expenses of an entity's real estate operation in which income and expenses are measured in accordance with GAAP, but *expenses* are defined to exclude certain items, such as interest, depreciation, and income taxes. Also, an acquisition agreement may specify a schedule of gross assets and liabilities of the entity measured in accordance with GAAP but limited to the assets to be sold and liabilities to be transferred pursuant to the agreement. These types of presentations are generally regarded as single financial statements, even though certain items may be excluded only to the extent necessary to meet the purpose for which they were prepared. The requirement in paragraph .24 is designed to avoid misunderstandings about the purpose for which the presentation is prepared.

.A11 As indicated in paragraph .A10, incomplete presentations may be required by a regulatory agency or a contract or an agreement. Paragraphs .A2–.A3 of section 800 provide guidance on the acceptability of the financial reporting framework when the regulatory or contractual basis of accounting is based on a general purpose framework, such as GAAP. The auditor may determine that it is more appropriate for the description of the applicable financial reporting framework to refer to the regulatory or contractual basis of accounting, rather than make reference to GAAP. As indicated in paragraph .01, if the presentation is prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, which includes the regulatory and contractual bases of accounting, section 800 also applies to the audit.

Considerations When Planning and Performing the Audit (Ref: par. .12–.13)

.A12 An AU-C section is relevant to the audit when the AU-C section is in effect and the circumstances addressed by the AU-C section exist.⁹ Even when only a specific element of a financial statement is the subject of the audit, AU-C sections such as section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, section 550, *Related Parties*, and section 570 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)[†] are, in principle, relevant. This is because the specific element could be misstated as a result of fraud, the effect of related party transactions, or the incorrect application of the going concern assumption under the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A13 Furthermore, GAAS is written in the context of an audit of financial statements; it is to be adapted as necessary in the circumstances when applied to the audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement.¹⁰ For example, written representations

⁸ See paragraph .13 of section 200 for a definition of *financial reporting framework*.

⁹ Paragraph .18 of section 200.

[†] SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁰ Paragraph .02 of section 200.

634 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

from management about the complete set of financial statements would be replaced by written representations about the presentation of the single financial statement or the specific element, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A14 When auditing a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement in conjunction with the audit of the entity's complete set of financial statements, the auditor may use audit evidence obtained as part of the audit of the entity's complete set of financial statements in the audit of the single financial statement or the specific element. GAAS, however, requires the auditor to plan and perform the audit of the single financial statement or specific element to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion on the single financial statement or the specific element.

.A15 The individual financial statements that comprise a complete set of financial statements, and many of the elements of those financial statements, including their related notes, are interrelated. For example, sales and receivables, inventory and payables, and buildings and equipment and depreciation each are interrelated. Accordingly, when auditing a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, the auditor may not be able to consider the single financial statement or the specific element in isolation. Consequently, paragraph .13 requires the auditor to perform procedures on interrelated items as necessary to meet the objective of the audit. In the case of an audit of a specific element that is, or is based upon, the entity's stockholders' equity or net income (or the equivalents thereto), paragraph .13 requires the auditor to perform procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about financial position, or financial position and results of operations, respectively, because of the interrelationship between the specific element and the balance sheet accounts and the income statement accounts. However, matters related to classification or disclosure may not be relevant to the audit of the specific element; therefore, audit procedures on such matters may not be necessary in an audit of a specific element.

Materiality (Ref: par. .14)

.A16 The materiality determined for a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement differs from the materiality determined for the entity's complete set of financial statements; this will affect the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures and the evaluation of uncorrected misstatements. In the case of an audit of a single financial statement, paragraph .14 requires the auditor to determine materiality for the single financial statement being reported on rather than for the complete set of financial statements. In the case of an audit of one or more specific elements of a financial statement, the auditor's opinion is on each of the specific elements; therefore, paragraph .14 requires the auditor to determine materiality for each individual element reported on rather than the aggregate of all elements or the complete set of financial statements. Consequently, an audit of one or more specific elements of a financial statement is usually more extensive than if the same information was being considered in conjunction with an audit of the complete set of financial statements.

Forming an Opinion and Reporting Considerations (Ref: par. .15)

.A17 Section 700 requires the auditor, in forming an opinion, to evaluate whether the financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements.¹¹ In the case of an audit of a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement, it is important, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, that the disclosures enable the intended users to understand

- the information conveyed in the financial statement or the specific element and
- the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statement or the specific element.

¹¹ Paragraph .16e of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

.A18 Exhibit A, “Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on a Single Financial Statement and a Specific Element of a Financial Statements,” contains illustrations of auditor’s reports.

Modified Opinion, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph, or Other-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor’s Report on the Entity’s Complete Set of Financial Statements (Ref: par. .19–.23)

.A19 In the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement, if the opinion in the auditor’s report on an entity’s complete set of financial statements is modified and the modification is relevant to the audit of the specific element, the modification is material and pervasive with respect to the specific element. Modifications related to an interrelated item of the specific element may also be relevant to the audit of the specific element. Conversely, modifications related solely to classification or disclosure may not be relevant to the audit of the specific element.

.A20 Even when the modified opinion, emphasis-of-matter paragraph, or other-matter paragraph in the auditor’s report on the entity’s complete set of financial statements does not relate to the audited single financial statement or the audited element, the auditor may nevertheless deem it appropriate to refer to the modification in an other-matter paragraph in an auditor’s report on the single financial statement or the specific element because the auditor judges it to be relevant to the users’ understanding of the audited single financial statement or the audited element or the related auditor’s report (see section 706).

.A21 In the auditor’s report on an entity’s complete set of financial statements, the expression of a disclaimer of opinion regarding the results of operations and cash flows, when relevant, and an unmodified opinion regarding the financial position are permitted because the disclaimer of opinion is being issued on the results of operations and cash flows only and not on the financial statements as a whole.¹²

Reporting on an Incomplete Presentation but One That Is Otherwise in Accordance With GAAP (Ref: par. .24)

.A22 As described in paragraph .A10, the auditor may be requested to audit an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in accordance with GAAP. When the auditor reports on an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in accordance with GAAP, paragraph .24 requires the auditor to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, which alerts users as to the purpose of the presentation and that the presentation is incomplete. Exhibit A illustrates such a paragraph.

.A23 If the presentation is prepared in accordance with a regulatory or contractual basis of accounting, the requirement in paragraph .24 does not apply. In such circumstances, refer to section 800. See also paragraph .A11 of this section.

¹² Paragraph .A17 of section 510, *Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements*, and paragraph .A17 of section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report*.

.A24**Appendix—Examples of Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement (Ref: par. .A4)**

The following are examples of specific elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement:

- Accounts receivable; allowance for doubtful accounts receivable; inventory; the liability for accrued benefits of a private benefit plan; the recorded value of identified intangible assets; or the liability for incurred but not reported claims in an insurance portfolio, including related notes
- A schedule of externally managed assets and income of a private benefit plan, including related notes
- A schedule of disbursements regarding a lease property, including related notes
- A schedule of profit participation or employee bonuses, including related notes

.A25**Exhibit A—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on a Single Financial Statement and a Specific Element of a Financial Statement (Ref: par. .A18 and .A22)**

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on a Single Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a General Purpose Framework

Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Single Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on a Specific Element, Account, or Item of a Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a General Purpose Framework

Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Specific Element, Account, or Item of a Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on an Incomplete Presentation but One That Is Otherwise in Accordance With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Illustration 1: An Auditor's Report on a Single Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a General Purpose Framework

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a balance sheet (that is, a single financial statement).
- The balance sheet has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statement¹

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the related notes (the financial statement).²

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statement

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this financial statement in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statement based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statement is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statement. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statement, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statement.

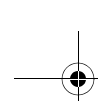
We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statement referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statement" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² The auditor may refer to the financial statement as the *balance sheet*.



Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

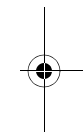
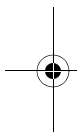


Illustration 2: An Auditor's Report on a Single Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a statement of cash receipts and disbursements (that is, a single financial statement).
- The financial statement has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the cash basis of accounting (a special purpose framework) to respond to a request for cash flow information received from a creditor.¹
- Management has a choice of financial reporting frameworks.²

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statement³

We have audited the accompanying statement of cash receipts and disbursements of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, and the related notes (the financial statement).⁴

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statement

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this financial statement in accordance with the cash basis of accounting described in Note X; this includes determining that the cash basis of accounting is an acceptable basis for the preparation of the financial statement in the circumstances. Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statement based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statement is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statement. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statement, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statement.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

¹ Section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks*, contains requirements and guidance on the form and content of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.

² Paragraph .18a of section 800.

³ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statement" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

⁴ The auditor may refer to the financial statement as the *statement of cash receipts and disbursements*.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statement referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the cash receipts and disbursements of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, in accordance with the cash basis of accounting described in Note X.

Basis of Accounting⁵

We draw attention to Note X to the financial statement, which describes the basis of accounting. The financial statement is prepared on the cash basis of accounting, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁵ Another appropriate heading may be used.

Illustration 3: An Auditor's Report on a Specific Element, Account, or Item of a Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a General Purpose Framework

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a schedule of accounts receivable (that is, a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement).
- The schedule of accounts receivable has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- The audit of the schedule of accounts receivable was performed in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements. The opinion on those financial statements was not modified, and the report did not include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Schedule¹

We have audited the accompanying schedule of accounts receivable of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the related notes (the schedule).²

Management's Responsibility for the Schedule

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this schedule in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the schedule that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the schedule based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the schedule. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the schedule, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the schedule in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the schedule.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Schedule" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² The auditor may refer to the schedule as the *schedule of accounts receivable*.



Opinion

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the accounts receivable of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matter

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1, and our report thereon, dated March 15, 20X2, expressed an unmodified opinion on those financial statements.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

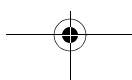
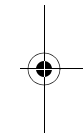
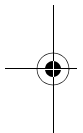


Illustration 4: An Auditor's Report on a Specific Element, Account, or Item of a Financial Statement Prepared in Accordance With a Special Purpose Framework

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a schedule of royalties applicable to engine production (that is, a specific element, account, or item of a financial statement)
- The financial information has been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with a contractual basis of accounting (that is, a special purpose framework) to comply with the provisions of that contract.¹
- Based on the provisions of the contract, management does not have a choice of financial reporting frameworks.²
- The audit of the schedule was not performed in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements.³

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Schedule⁴

We have audited the accompanying schedule of royalties applicable to engine production of the Q Division of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, and the related notes (the schedule).⁵

Management's Responsibility for the Schedule

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the schedule in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the license agreement between ABC Company and XYZ Corporation dated January 1, 20X1 (the contract). Management is also responsible for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the schedule that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the schedule based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the schedule. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the schedule, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the schedule in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate

¹ Section 800 contains requirements and guidance on the form and content of financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.

² Paragraph .18a of section 800.

³ If the auditor undertakes an engagement to audit a specific element of a financial statement in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements, paragraph .16 requires the auditor to indicate in the report on the specific element of a financial statement the date of the auditor's report on the complete set of financial statements and the nature of opinion expressed on those financial statements under an appropriate heading.

⁴ The subtitle "Report on the Schedule" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

⁵ The auditor may refer to the schedule as the *schedule of royalties*.

in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the schedule.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above, presents fairly, in all material respects, the royalties applicable to engine production of the Q Division of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the contract.

Basis of Accounting⁶

We draw attention to Note X to the schedule, which describes the basis of accounting. The schedule was prepared by ABC Company on the basis of the financial reporting provisions of Section Z of the contract, which is a basis of accounting other than accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, to comply with the financial reporting provisions of the contract referred to above. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Restriction on Use⁷

Our report is intended solely for the information and use of ABC Company and XYZ Corporation and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁶ Another appropriate heading may be used.

⁷ Another appropriate heading may be used.

Illustration 5: An Auditor's Report on an Incomplete Presentation but One That Is Otherwise in Accordance With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of the historical summaries of gross income and direct operating expenses (that is, a single financial statement).
- The historical summaries have been prepared by management of the entity in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America but are an incomplete presentation of revenues and expenses.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Historical Summaries¹

We have audited the accompanying Historical Summaries of Gross Income and Direct Operating Expenses of ABC Apartments for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X1, and the related notes (the historical summaries).²

Management's Responsibility for the Historical Summaries

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these historical summaries in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the historical summaries that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the historical summaries based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the historical summaries are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the historical summaries. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the historical summaries, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the historical summaries in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the historical summaries.

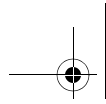
We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the historical summaries referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the gross income and direct operating expenses described in Note X of ABC Apartments for each

¹ The subtitle "Report on the Historical Summaries" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.

² The auditor may refer to the historical summaries as the *financial statement*.



of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X1, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

We draw attention to Note X to the historical summaries, which describes that the accompanying historical summaries were prepared for the purpose of complying with the rules and regulations of Regulator DEF (for inclusion in the filing of Form Z of ABC Company) and are not intended to be a complete presentation of the Company's revenues and expenses. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

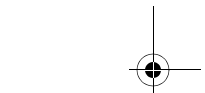
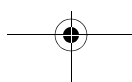
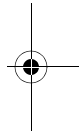
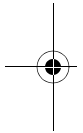
Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



.A26

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, and International Standard on Auditing 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 805, *Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS***Form of Opinion***

Paragraph 9 of ISA 805 requires the auditor to consider whether the expected form of opinion is appropriate in the circumstances. This requirement was not included in section 805 because the circumstances to which it relates are not applicable in the United States.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs***Considerations When Accepting the Engagement and Planning and Performing the Audit***

Paragraph .10 of section 805 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of (a) the purpose for which the single financial statement or specific element of a financial statement is prepared, (b) the intended users, and (c) the steps taken by management to determine that the application of the financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances. The ASB believes this requirement is necessary in determining the acceptability of the financial reporting framework that is applicable to a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement.

Paragraph .09 of section 805 requires the auditor to determine whether the auditor will be able to perform procedures on interrelated items as a consideration when accepting the engagement. Paragraph .13 of section 805 includes a requirement for the auditor to perform procedures on interrelated items as necessary to meet the objective of the audit. In the case of an audit of a specific element that is, or is based upon, the entity's stockholders' equity or net income (or the equivalents thereto), paragraph .13 of section 805 further requires the auditor to perform procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about financial position, or financial position and results of operations, respectively, because of the interrelationship between the element and the balance sheet accounts and the income statement accounts.

Materiality

Paragraph .14 of section 805 requires the auditor to determine materiality for the single financial statement being reported on, and in the case of an audit of one or more specific elements of a financial statement, materiality for each individual element reported on.

Reporting on an Incomplete Presentation but One That Is Otherwise in Accordance With GAAP

When the auditor reports on an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in accordance with GAAP, paragraph .24 of section 805 requires the auditor to include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report, alerting users as to the purpose of the presentation and that the presentation is incomplete. ISA 805 does not address reporting on incomplete presentations that are otherwise in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

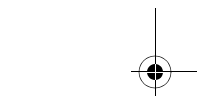
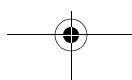
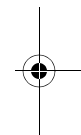
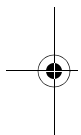
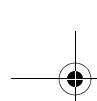
ISA 805 does not contain these requirements.

Differences Between Requirements***Reporting on the Entity's Complete Set of Financial Statements and a Single Financial Statement or a Specific Element of Those Financial Statements***

Paragraph 12 of ISA 805 requires the auditor to express a separate opinion for each engagement when undertaking an engagement to report on a single financial statement or a specific element of a financial statement in conjunction with an engagement to audit the entity's complete set of financial statements. Paragraph .16 of section 805 requires that the separate opinions be in separate auditor's reports and that the report on a specific element include certain information about the auditor's report on the entity's complete set of financial statements.

Paragraph .20 of section 805 address the case of an audit of a specific element of a financial statement when the opinion in the auditor's report on an entity's complete set of financial statements is modified and the modification of the auditor's opinion is relevant to the audit of the specific element. In such cases, the auditor is required to express either an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the specific element, depending on the reasons for the modification of the auditor's opinion on the complete set of financial statements. ISA 805 does not specifically require an adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion in such circumstances.

Paragraph 16 of ISA 805 addresses situations when the auditor concludes that it is necessary to express an adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on the entity's complete set of financial statements as a whole, but in the context of a separate audit of a specific element that is included in those financial statements, the auditor nevertheless considers it appropriate to express an unmodified opinion on that element. In addition to the matters in ISA 805, paragraph .21 of section 805 precludes such reporting when the specific element is, or is based upon, the entity's stockholders' equity or net income (or the equivalent thereto).



AU-C Section 806*

Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibility when the auditor is requested to report on an entity's compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements, insofar as they relate to accounting matters, in connection with an audit of financial statements (referred to hereinafter as a report on compliance). Such a report is commonly referred to as a by-product report. (Ref: par. .A1–.A2)

.02 Entities may be required by contractual agreements, such as certain bond indentures and loan agreements, or regulatory agencies to provide an auditor's report on compliance. For example, loan agreements may impose a variety of obligations on borrowers involving matters such as payments into sinking funds, payments of interest, maintenance of current ratios, and restrictions of dividend payments. Loan agreements may also require the borrower to provide annual financial statements that have been audited. In some instances, the lenders or their trustees may request the auditor to report that the borrower has complied with certain covenants of the agreement relating to accounting matters. The auditor may satisfy this request by issuing a report on compliance in accordance with the requirements of this section.

.03 As described in paragraph .01, this section addresses reporting on an entity's compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements in connection with an audit of financial statements. When the auditor is engaged or required by law or regulation to perform a compliance audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), the standards for financial audits under *Government Auditing Standards*, and a governmental audit requirement that requires the auditor to express an opinion on compliance with applicable compliance requirements, section 935, *Compliance Audits* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), applies.

.04 When the auditor is engaged to perform a separate attest engagement on (a) an entity's compliance with requirements of specific laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants or (b) the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance with specified requirements, AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), applies.

Effective Date

.05 This section is effective for reports on compliance issued in connection with audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.06 The objective of the auditor is to report appropriately on an entity's compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements, in connection with the audit of financial statements, when the auditor is requested to report on such matters.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

Requirements

Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements

.07 The auditor's report on compliance should include a statement that nothing came to the auditor's attention that caused the auditor to believe that the entity failed to comply with specified aspects of the contractual agreements or regulatory requirements, insofar as they relate to accounting matters, only when

- a. the auditor has not identified any instances of noncompliance,
- b. the auditor has expressed an unmodified or qualified opinion on the financial statements to which the applicable covenants of such contractual agreements or regulatory requirements relate, and
- c. the applicable covenants or regulatory requirements relate to accounting matters that have been subjected to the audit procedures applied in the audit of financial statements.

.08 When the auditor has identified one or more instances of noncompliance, the report on compliance should describe such noncompliance (see paragraphs .12*f* and .13*b*).

.09 When the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor should issue a report on compliance only when instances of noncompliance are identified. Therefore, the requirement in paragraph .08 also applies in such circumstances. The auditor should modify the wording of the report on compliance, as appropriate to the circumstances. (Ref: par. .A3)

.10 Notwithstanding the requirements in paragraphs .07–.09, the auditor is not precluded from issuing a report on compliance if such report is required by another set of auditing standards (for example, *Government Auditing Standards*), and the auditor has been engaged to audit the financial statements in accordance with both GAAS and those other standards.

.11 The report on compliance should be in writing and should be provided either in a separate report (see paragraph .12) or in one or more paragraphs included in the auditor's report on the financial statements (see paragraph .13).

Separate Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements

.12 When the auditor reports on compliance in a separate report, the report should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent* to clearly indicate that it is the report of an independent auditor.
- b. An appropriate addressee.
- c. A paragraph that states that the financial statements were audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards) and the date of the auditor's report on those financial statements.
- d. If the auditor expressed a modified opinion¹ on the financial statements, a statement describing the nature of the modification. (Ref: par. .A4)
- e. When no instances of noncompliance are identified by the auditor, a reference to the specific covenants or paragraphs of the contractual agreement or regulatory requirement and a statement that nothing came to the auditor's attention that caused the auditor to believe that the entity failed to comply with specified aspects of the contractual agreements or regulatory requirements, insofar as they relate to accounting matters (see paragraphs .07 and .10).
- f. When instances of noncompliance are identified by the auditor, a reference to the specific covenants or paragraphs of the contractual agreement or regulatory requirement, insofar

¹ See section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

- as they relate to accounting matters, and a description of the identified instances of non-compliance. (Ref: par. .A5)
- g. A statement that the report is being provided in connection with the audit of the financial statements.
 - h. A statement that the audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge regarding compliance, and accordingly, had the auditor performed additional procedures, other matters may have come to the auditor's attention regarding noncompliance with the specific covenants or paragraphs of the contractual agreement or regulatory requirement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.
 - i. A paragraph that includes a description and the source of significant interpretations, if any, made by the entity's management relating to the provisions of the relevant contractual agreement or regulatory requirement.
 - j. A paragraph that restricts the use² of the report to management, those charged with governance, others within the organization, the regulatory agency responsible for the provisions, or other parties to the contract or agreement. (Ref: par. .A6–.A7)
 - k. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm and the city and state where the auditor practices.
 - l. The date of the report, which should be the same date as the auditor's report on the financial statements.³

Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements Included in the Auditor's Report

.13 When a report on compliance is included in the auditor's report on the financial statements, the auditor's report should include an other-matter paragraph⁴ that includes a reference to the specific covenants or paragraphs of the contractual agreement or regulatory requirement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters, and also should include the following:

- a. When no instances of noncompliance are identified by the auditor, a statement that nothing came to the auditor's attention that caused the auditor to believe that the entity failed to comply with specified aspects of the contractual agreements or regulatory requirements, insofar as they relate to accounting matters (see paragraphs .07 and .10).
- b. When instances of noncompliance are identified by the auditor, a description of the identified instances of noncompliance. (Ref: par. .A5)
- c. A statement that the communication is being provided in connection with the audit of the financial statements.
- d. A statement that the audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge regarding compliance, and accordingly, had the auditor performed additional procedures, other matters may have come to the auditor's attention regarding noncompliance with the specific covenants or paragraphs of the contractual agreement or regulatory requirement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.
- e. A paragraph that includes a description and the source of significant interpretations, if any, made by the entity's management relating to the provisions of the relevant contractual agreement or regulatory requirement.

² See section 905, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

³ Paragraph .41 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

⁴ See section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, for guidance on other-matter paragraphs.

654 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- f. A paragraph that restricts the use⁵ of the report to management, those charged with governance, others within the organization, the regulatory agency responsible for the provisions, or other parties to the contract or agreement. (Ref: par. .A6–.A7)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)

.A1 The financial statements being audited and to which the applicable covenants of the contractual agreements or regulatory requirements relate may be either general purpose or special purpose financial statements.

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A2 For most state or local governmental entities, the applicable financial reporting framework is based on multiple reporting units and, therefore, requires the presentation of financial statements for its activities in various reporting units. Consequently, a reporting unit or aggregation of reporting units of the governmental entity represents an opinion unit to the auditor. In the context of this section, the auditor is responsible for reporting on compliance for each opinion unit within a governmental entity, when requested.

Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements (Ref: par. .09)

.A3 The exhibit, “Illustrations of Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements,” provides an example of the wording of the report on compliance when the auditor has disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements.⁶

Separate Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements (Ref: par. .12d)

.A4 The auditor may include certain additional communications in the separate report on compliance when the auditor included such additional communications in the auditor’s report on the financial statements⁷ that are not modifications to the auditor’s opinion. For example, if the auditor included an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor’s report on the financial statements because of an uncertainty about the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time,⁸ the auditor may also include this in the separate report on compliance.

⁵ See section 905 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor’s Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁶ Illustration 4, “A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified, and the Auditor Has Disclaimed an Opinion on the Financial Statements,” in the exhibit, “Illustrations of Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements.”

⁷ See section 706.

⁸ See section 570, *The Auditor’s Consideration of an Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 59, *The Auditor’s Consideration of an Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

Reporting When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified (Ref: par. .12f and .13b)

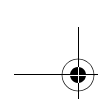
.A5 When instances of noncompliance are identified, and the entity has obtained a waiver for such noncompliance, the auditor may include a statement in the report on compliance that a waiver has been obtained. The determination of whether to include such a statement is based on the procedures performed by the auditor to evaluate the waiver for the purposes of obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence in connection with the audit of the financial statements. All instances of noncompliance are required to be described in the report on compliance, in accordance with paragraph .08, including those for which a waiver has been obtained.

Restrictions on the Use of the Auditor's Report⁹ (Ref: par. .12j and .13f)

.A6 A restriction on the use of the report on compliance to the specified parties, as discussed in paragraphs .12j and .13f, is necessary because the basis, assumptions, or purpose of the provisions in contractual agreements or regulatory requirements to which the report on compliance relates are developed for, and directed only to, the parties to the contractual agreement or the regulatory agency responsible for the requirements.

.A7 If the auditor's report on compliance is included in the auditor's report on the financial statements, the restriction on the use of the report on compliance to specified parties, as required by paragraph .13f, would apply to the entire auditor's report. If a separate report is issued, as described in paragraph .11, then only the report on compliance need be restricted as to use by the specified parties.

⁹ See section 905 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 87 has been included in section 905 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.



.A8

Exhibit—Illustrations of Reports on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .12–.13)

Illustration 1: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When No Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified

Illustration 2: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified

Illustration 3: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified, and a Waiver Has Been Obtained

Illustration 4: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified, and the Auditor Has Disclaimed an Opinion on the Financial Statements

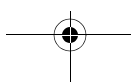
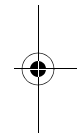
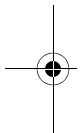


Illustration 1: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When No Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified**INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT**

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated February 16, 20X3.

In connection with our audit, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that XYZ Company failed to comply with the terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of sections XX to YY, inclusive, of the Indenture dated July 21, 20X0, with ABC Bank, insofar as they relate to accounting matters. However, our audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge of such noncompliance. Accordingly, had we performed additional procedures, other matters may have come to our attention regarding the Company's noncompliance with the above-referenced terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of the Indenture, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Company and ABC Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

658 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 2: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified****INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT**

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated March 5, 20X3.

In connection with our audit, we noted that XYZ Company failed to comply with the "Working Capital" provision of section XX of the Loan Agreement dated March 1, 20X2, with ABC Bank. Our audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge as to whether XYZ Company failed to comply with the terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of sections XX to YY, inclusive, of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters. Accordingly, had we performed additional procedures, other matters may have come to our attention regarding non-compliance with the above-referenced terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Company and ABC Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 3: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified, and a Waiver Has Been Obtained

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated March 5, 20X3.

In connection with our audit, we noted that XYZ Company failed to comply with the "Working Capital" provision of section XX of the Loan Agreement dated March 1, 20X2, with ABC Bank. The Company has received a waiver dated February 5, 20X3, from ABC Bank. Our audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge as to whether XYZ Company failed to comply with the terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of sections XX to YY, inclusive, of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters. Accordingly, had we performed additional procedures, other matters may have come to our attention regarding noncompliance with the above-referenced terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Company and ABC Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 4: A Report on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements Provided in a Separate Report When Instances of Noncompliance Are Identified, and the Auditor Has Disclaimed an Opinion on the Financial Statements

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

We were engaged to audit, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated March 5, 20X3. Our report disclaims an opinion on such financial statements because of *[describe the scope limitation or matter causing the disclaimer]*.

In connection with our engagement, we noted that XYZ Company failed to comply with the "Working Capital" provision of section XX of the Loan Agreement dated March 1, 20X2, with ABC Bank. Our engagement was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge as to whether XYZ Company failed to comply with the terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of sections XX to YY, inclusive, of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters. Accordingly, had we been able to complete the audit, other matters may have come to our attention regarding noncompliance with the above-referenced terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of the Loan Agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Company and ABC Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

AU-C Section 810*

Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to an engagement to report separately on summary financial statements derived from financial statements audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) by the same auditor. In such an engagement, the auditor forms an opinion about whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, in accordance with the applied criteria.

.02 This section does not apply to condensed financial statements or summarized financial information presented as comparative information.¹ Section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's responsibility for comparative information.² (Ref: par. .A1)

.03 Summary financial statements may be required by a designated accounting standards setter (for example, the Governmental Accounting Standards Board) to accompany the basic financial statements. This section does not apply in such circumstances. Section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to information supplementary to the basic financial statements that is required by a designated accounting standards setter to accompany such financial statements.

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objectives

.05 The objectives of the auditor are

- a. to determine whether it is appropriate to accept the engagement to report on summary financial statements and,
- b. if engaged to report on summary financial statements, to
 - i. perform the procedures necessary as the basis for the auditor's opinion on the summary financial statements;
 - ii. form an opinion on whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, in accordance with the applied criteria, based on an evaluation of the conclusions drawn from the evidence obtained; and
 - iii. express clearly that opinion through a written report that also describes the basis for that opinion.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Paragraph .11 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, defines the terms *condensed financial statements* and *comparative information*.

² Paragraphs .44–.51 of section 700.

Definitions

.06 For purposes of this section, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Applied criteria. The criteria applied by management in the preparation of the summary financial statements.

Summary financial statements. Historical financial information³ that is derived from financial statements but that contains less detail than the financial statements, while still providing a structured representation consistent with that provided by the financial statements of the entity's economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time. Summary financial statements are separately presented and are not presented as comparative information.

.07 In this section, the term *audited financial statements* refers to those financial statements⁴ audited by the auditor in accordance with GAAS and from which the summary financial statements are derived.

Requirements

Engagement Acceptance

.08 The auditor should not accept an engagement to report on summary financial statements in accordance with this section unless the auditor has been engaged to conduct an audit in accordance with GAAS of the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived. (Ref: par. .A2)

.09 Before accepting an engagement to report on summary financial statements, the auditor should

- a. determine whether the applied criteria are acceptable, including determining that the applied criteria (Ref: par. .A3–.A5)
 - i. are free from bias so that the summary financial statements are not misleading.
 - ii. permit reasonably consistent qualitative or quantitative measurements so that the information in the summary financial statements agrees with or can be recalculated from the related information in the audited financial statements.
 - iii. are sufficiently complete so that the summary financial statements contain the information necessary and are at an appropriate level of aggregation, so that they are not misleading in the circumstances.
 - iv. are relevant to the summary financial statements in view of their purpose.
- b. obtain the agreement of management, in writing, that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility
 - i. for the preparation of the summary financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria.
 - ii. to clearly describe in the summary financial statements where the audited financial statements are available and to make the audited financial statements readily available to the intended users of the summary financial statements when the summary financial statements will not be accompanied by the audited financial statements. (Ref: par. .A6–.A7)
 - iii. to provide the auditor with written representations, as described in paragraph .12.
 - iv. to include the auditor's report on the summary financial statements in any document that contains the summary financial statements and indicates the auditor has reported on them.

³ Paragraph .13 of section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, defines the term *historical financial information*.

⁴ Paragraph .13 of section 200 defines the term *financial statements*.

- c. obtain the agreement of management, in writing, about the expected form and content of the report on the summary financial statements, including the agreement that there may be circumstances in which the report may differ from its expected form and content. (Ref: par. .A8)

.10 If the auditor concludes that the applied criteria are unacceptable or is unable to obtain the agreement of management set out in paragraph .09b–c, the auditor should not accept the engagement to report on the summary financial statements.

Nature of Procedures

.11 The auditor should perform the following procedures, and any other procedures that the auditor may consider necessary, as the basis for the auditor's opinion on the summary financial statements:

- a. Evaluate whether the summary financial statements adequately disclose their summarized nature and identify the audited financial statements. (Ref: par. .A9)
- b. When the summary financial statements are not accompanied by the audited financial statements, evaluate
 - i. whether the summary financial statements clearly describe where the audited financial statements are available and
 - ii. whether the audited financial statements are readily available to the intended users of the summary financial statements. (Ref: par. .A7)
- c. Evaluate whether the summary financial statements adequately disclose the applied criteria.
- d. Compare the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements to determine whether the summary financial statements agree with or can be recalculated from the related information in the audited financial statements.
- e. Evaluate whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applied criteria.
- f. Evaluate, in view of the purpose of the summary financial statements, whether the summary financial statements contain the information necessary, and are at an appropriate level of aggregation, so that they are not misleading in the circumstances.

Written Representations

.12 The auditor should request management to provide written representations, in the form of a representation letter addressed to the auditor, for the following matters:

- a. Management has fulfilled its responsibility for the preparation of the summary financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria and believes the applied criteria are acceptable
- b. Management has made the audited financial statements readily available to the intended users of the summary financial statements, when the summary financial statements will not be accompanied by the audited financial statements
- c. If the date of the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements,
 - i. whether any information has come to management's attention that would cause management to believe that any of the previous representations on the audited financial statements need to be modified
 - ii. whether any events have occurred subsequent to the date of the audited financial statements that may require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the audited financial statements

.13 The date of the written representations should be as of the date of the auditor's report on the summary financial statements. The written representations should be for all summary financial statements and period(s) referred to in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements.

664 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Form of Opinion (Ref: par. .A10–.A11)**

.14 When the auditor has concluded that an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements is appropriate, the auditor's opinion should state that the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, in accordance with the applied criteria.

.15 If the summary financial statements are not consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria, and management does not agree to make the necessary changes, the auditor should express an adverse opinion on the summary financial statements. The auditor should state in the opinion paragraph that, in the auditor's opinion, because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the basis for adverse opinion paragraph, the summary financial statements are not consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, in accordance with the applied criteria.

.16 When the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, the auditor should withdraw from the engagement to report on the summary financial statements, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. If it is not possible for the auditor to withdraw from the engagement, the auditor's report on the summary financial statements should

- a. state that the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion.
- b. describe the basis for that adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion.
- c. state that, as a result of the adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion, it is inappropriate to express, and the auditor does not express, an opinion on the summary financial statements.
- d. include the reporting elements in paragraph .17, except for paragraph .17c(iv–v) and e–f.

Auditor's Report on Summary Financial Statements**Elements of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .A12)**

.17 The auditor's report on summary financial statements should include the following elements:

- a. Title that includes the word *independent* to clearly indicate that it is the report of an independent auditor (Ref: par. .A13)
- b. Addressee
- c. Introductory paragraph that
 - i. identifies the summary financial statements on which the auditor is reporting, including the title of each statement included in the summary financial statements (Ref: par. .A14)
 - ii. identifies the audited financial statements from which the summary financial statements have been derived
 - iii. refers to the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the date of that report, and, subject to paragraphs .15–.16, the fact that an unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements
 - iv. if the date of the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, states that the summary financial statements and the audited financial statements do not reflect the effects of events, if any, that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements (see paragraph .19) (Ref: par. .A15)
 - v. indicates that the summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by the [financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements] and that reading the summary financial statements is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements
- d. Description of management's responsibility for the summary financial statements, explaining that management is responsible for the preparation of the summary financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria

- e. Statement that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion about whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements based on the procedures required by GAAS and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards, including the following:
 - i. The procedures consisted principally of comparing the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements from which the summary financial statements have been derived and evaluating whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applied criteria
 - ii. If the date of the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the auditor did not perform any audit procedures regarding the audited financial statements after the date of the report on those financial statements.
- f. A paragraph that clearly expresses an opinion, as described in paragraphs .14–.15
- g. Auditor's signature
- h. Auditor's city and state
- i. Date of the auditor's report

.18 The auditor should date the auditor's report on the summary financial statements no earlier than

- a. the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the opinion, including evidence that the summary financial statements have been prepared and that management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, have asserted that they have taken responsibility for them; and
- b. the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements.

.19 When the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the auditor may become aware of *subsequently discovered facts* as defined in section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*. In such cases, the auditor should not release the auditor's report on the summary financial statements until the auditor's consideration of subsequently discovered facts in relation to the audited financial statements, in accordance with section 560, has been completed.

Modifications to the Opinion, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph, or Other-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor's Report on the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A16)

.20 If the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, or an other-matter paragraph, and the auditor expresses an unmodified opinion (see paragraph .14) or an adverse opinion (see paragraph .15) on the summary financial statements, in addition to the elements in paragraph .17, the auditor's report on the summary financial statements should

- a. state that the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, or an other-matter paragraph and
- b. describe
 - i. the basis for the qualified opinion on the audited financial statements and that qualified opinion; or the emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report on the audited financial statements and
 - ii. the effect on the summary financial statements, if any.

Restriction on Use or Alerting Readers to the Basis of Accounting

.21 When use of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements is restricted or the auditor's report on the audited financial statements alerts readers that the audited financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework, the auditor should include a similar restriction or alert in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements.

666 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Comparatives**

.22 If the audited financial statements contain comparative financial statements but the summary financial statements do not, the auditor should determine whether such omission is reasonable in the circumstances of the engagement. The auditor should determine the effect of an unreasonable omission on the auditor's report on the summary financial statements. (Ref: par. .A17–.A18)

.23 Unless the predecessor auditor's report on the prior period's summary financial statements is reissued with the summary financial statements, if the summary financial statements contain comparatives that were reported on by another auditor, the auditor's report on the summary financial statements should state

- a. that the summary financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor.
- b. the type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefore.
- c. the date of that report.

.24 If the summary financial statements contain comparatives that were not reported on by the auditor or another auditor, the auditor's report on the summary financial statements should state that the comparative summary financial statements were not reported on by the auditor and, accordingly, the auditor does not express an opinion on the comparative summary financial statements.

Unaudited Information Presented With Summary Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A19)

.25 The auditor should evaluate whether any unaudited information presented with the summary financial statements is clearly differentiated from the summary financial statements. If the auditor concludes that the entity's presentation of the unaudited information is not clearly differentiated from the summary financial statements, the auditor should ask management to change the presentation of the unaudited information. If management refuses to do so, the auditor should explain in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements that such information is not covered by that report and accordingly, the auditor does not express an opinion on the information.

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary Financial Statements (Ref: par. .A20)

.26 The auditor should read other information included in a document containing the summary financial statements and related auditor's report to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the summary financial statements and the audited financial statements.

.27 If, upon reading the other information, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency or becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact, the auditor should discuss the matter with management and should consider appropriate further action in the circumstances. For an identified material inconsistency, the auditor should also determine whether the summary financial statements or the other information needs to be revised.

Auditor Association (Ref: par. .A21)

.28 If the auditor becomes aware that the entity plans to state that the auditor has reported on summary financial statements in a document containing the summary financial statements, but does not plan to include the related auditor's report, the auditor should request management to include the auditor's report in the document. If management does not do so, the auditor should determine and carry out other appropriate actions designed to prevent management from inappropriately associating the auditor with the summary financial statements in that document.

.29 The auditor may be engaged to report on the financial statements of an entity, while not engaged to report on the summary financial statements. If, in this case, the auditor becomes aware that the entity plans to make a statement in a document that refers to the auditor and the fact that summary financial statements are derived from the financial statements audited by the auditor, the auditor should be satisfied that

- a. the reference to the auditor is made in the context of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, and

- b.* the statement does not give the impression that the auditor has reported on the summary financial statements.

If either *a* or *b* is not met, the auditor should request management to change the statement to meet both of the criteria in *a* and *b*, or not to refer to the auditor in the document. Alternatively, the entity may engage the auditor to report on the summary financial statements and include the related auditor's report in the document. If management does not change the statement, delete the reference to the auditor, or include an auditor's report on the summary financial statements in the document containing the summary financial statements, the auditor should advise management that the auditor disagrees with the reference to the auditor, and the auditor should determine and carry out other appropriate actions designed to prevent management from inappropriately associating the auditor with the summary financial statements in that document.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .02)

.A1 Financial statements may present comparative information in the form of condensed financial statements or summarized financial information. For example, entities such as state and local governmental units may present prior period financial information in their government-wide financial statements only for the total reporting entity rather than disaggregated by governmental activities, business-type activities, total primary government, and discretely presented component units. Also, not-for-profit organizations frequently present certain information for the prior period in total rather than by net asset class. As described in paragraph .02, this section does not apply to reporting on financial statements containing such comparative information. Summary financial statements differ from comparative information. Summary financial statements may be presented in a document containing financial statements or in a separate document, whereas comparative information is presented within the financial statements. Refer to section 700 for the auditor's responsibilities for reporting on comparative information.⁵

Engagement Acceptance

.A2 The audit of the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived provides the auditor with the necessary knowledge to discharge the auditor's responsibilities regarding the summary financial statements, in accordance with this section. Application of this section will not provide sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the opinion on the summary financial statements if the auditor also has not audited the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived. (Ref: par. .08)

Criteria (Ref: par. .09a)

.A3 The preparation of summary financial statements requires management to determine the information that needs to be reflected in the summary financial statements so that they are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements. Because summary financial statements by their nature contain aggregated information and limited disclosure, there is an increased risk that they may not contain the information necessary so that they are not misleading in the circumstances. This risk increases when established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements do not exist.

.A4 Factors that may affect the auditor's determination of the acceptability of the applied criteria include the following:

- The nature of the entity
- The purpose of the summary financial statements
- The information needs of the intended users of the summary financial statements
- Whether the applied criteria will result in summary financial statements that are not misleading in the circumstances

⁵ Paragraphs .44–.51 of section 700.

668 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A5 The criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements may be established by an authorized or recognized standards-setting organization or by law or regulation. In many such cases, the auditor may presume that such criteria are acceptable. When established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements do not exist, criteria may be developed by management, for example, based on practice in a particular industry.

Availability of the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .09b(ii) and .11b(ii))

.A6 Summary financial statements are presented in considerably less detail than the complete set of financial statements and do not contain all the disclosures required by the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the complete set of financial statements. In addition, reading the summary financial statements is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements. Accordingly, before accepting an engagement to report on summary financial statements, the auditor is required by paragraph .09b(ii) to obtain management's agreement that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility to make the audited financial statements readily available to the intended users of the summary financial statements, when the summary financial statements will not be accompanied by the audited financial statements.

.A7 Audited financial statements are deemed to be readily available if a third-party user can obtain the audited financial statements without any further action by the entity (for example, financial statements on an entity's website may be considered readily available but being available upon request is not considered readily available).

Agreement on the Expected Form and Content of the Report (Ref: par. .09c)

.A8 Agreement with management about the expected form and content of the report on the summary financial statements may include a description of the types of opinions the auditor may express. It is not necessary to describe the type of opinion expected to be issued. The auditor also may indicate that circumstances may arise in which it is necessary for the auditor to withdraw from the engagement.

Nature of Procedures (Ref: par. .11)

.A9 Adequate disclosure of the summarized nature of summary financial statements and the identity of the audited financial statements, as referred to in paragraph .11 The auditor should perform the following procedures, and any other procedures that the auditor may consider necessary, as the basis for the auditor's opinion on the summary financial statements:.11a, may, for example, be provided by a title such as "Summary Financial Statements Prepared From the Audited Financial Statements as of and for the Year Ended December 31, 20X1."

Form of Opinion (Ref: par. .14-.16)

.A10 If the summary financial statements are not consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements in accordance with the applied criteria, and management does not agree to make the necessary changes, the auditor is required by paragraph .15 to express an adverse opinion on the summary financial statements. Due to the summarized nature of the summary financial statements, a qualified opinion would not be appropriate; the summary financial statements either are or are not consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria.

.A11 When the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, paragraph .16 requires the auditor to withdraw from the engagement to report on the summary financial statements, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. When an entity is required by law or regulation to provide a report on summary financial statements, the auditor is neither precluded from withdrawing, nor required to withdraw, from the engagement.

Auditor's Report on Summary Financial Statements***Elements of the Auditor's Report (Ref: par. .17)***

.A12 An auditor who is engaged to report on summary financial statements does not report in the same manner as the auditor reported on the complete set of financial statements from which they are derived. To do so might lead users to assume, erroneously, that the summary financial statements include all the disclosures necessary for the complete set of financial statements. For the same reason, summary financial statements need to adequately disclose their summarized nature, as referred to in paragraphs .11a and .A9.

Title (Ref: par. .17a)

.A13 A title that includes the word *independent* to clearly indicate the report is the report of an independent auditor (for example, *Report of the Independent Auditor*) affirms that the auditor has met all of the relevant ethical requirements regarding independence. This distinguishes the report of the independent auditor from reports issued by others.

Introductory Paragraph (Ref: par. .17c(i))

.A14 When the auditor is aware that the summary financial statements will be included in a document that contains other information, the auditor may consider, if the form of presentation allows, identifying the page numbers on which the summary financial statements are presented. This helps readers identify the summary financial statements that relate to the auditor's report.

Date of the Auditor's Report on the Summary Financial Statements and Events Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor's Report on the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .17c(iv))

.A15 The auditor's report on the summary financial statements may be dated as of the same date or later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, depending on when the procedures in paragraph .11 are performed and, as required by paragraph .18, when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the opinion. When the auditor reports on the summary financial statements after the completion of the financial statement audit, the auditor is not required to obtain additional audit evidence on the audited financial statements, or report on the effects of events that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements because the summary financial statements are derived from the audited financial statements and do not update them. In such cases, however, paragraph .17c(iv) requires the auditor's report to state that the summary financial statements and the audited financial statements do not reflect the effects of events, if any, that occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements.

Modifications to the Opinion, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph, or Other-Matter Paragraph in the Auditor's Report on the Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .20)

.A16 If the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, the auditor may determine that, due to the effect on the summary financial statements, it is inappropriate to express an opinion on the summary financial statements. In such circumstances, the auditor may adapt and apply the requirement in paragraph .16.

Comparatives (Ref: par. .22)

.A17 If the audited financial statements contain comparative financial statements, a presumption exists that the summary financial statements also would contain comparatives. Section 700 addresses the auditor's responsibilities regarding comparative financial statements in an audit of financial statements.⁶

⁶ Paragraphs .44–.51 of section 700.

670 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A18 Circumstances that may affect the auditor's determination whether an omission of comparatives is reasonable include:

- The nature and objective of the summary financial statements
- The applied criteria
- The information needs of the intended users of the summary financial statements

Unaudited Information Presented With Summary Financial Statements (Ref: par. .25)

.A19 Section 700 contains a requirement and guidance related to information presented in the financial statements that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework.⁷ Such requirement and guidance, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph .25.

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary Financial Statements (Ref: par. .26–.27)

.A20 Section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), contains requirements and guidance relating to reading other information included in a document containing the audited financial statements and related auditor's report and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact. Adapted as necessary in the circumstances, these requirements and related guidance may be helpful in applying the requirements in paragraphs .26–.27.

Auditor Association (Ref: par. .28–.29)

.A21 Other appropriate actions the auditor may take when management does not take the requested action may include informing the intended users and other known third-party users of the inappropriate reference to the auditor, including that the auditor did not report, and does not express an opinion on, the summary financial statements. The auditor's course of action depends on the auditor's association with misleading information and the auditor's legal rights and obligations. Consequently, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice.

⁷ Paragraph .58 of section 700.

.A22**Exhibit A—Illustrations of Reports on Summary Financial Statements**

Illustration 1: An Unmodified Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements (the Auditor's Report on the Summary Financial Statements Is Dated Later Than the Date of the Auditor's Report on the Financial Statements From Which the Summary Financial Statements Are Derived)

Illustration 2: An Unmodified Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements and a Qualified Opinion Is Expressed on the Audited Financial Statements

Illustration 3: An Adverse Opinion Is Expressed on the Audited Financial Statements (as a Result of the Adverse Opinion on the Audited Financial Statements, It Is Inappropriate to Express, and the Auditor Does Not Express, an Opinion on the Summary Financial Statements)

Illustration 4: An Adverse Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements Because They Are Not Consistent, in All Material Respects, With the Audited Financial Statements, in Accordance With the Applied Criteria

672 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 1: An Unmodified Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements (the Auditor's Report on the Summary Financial Statements Is Dated Later Than the Date of the Auditor's Report on the Financial Statements From Which the Summary Financial Statements Are Derived)**

Circumstances include all of the following:

- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Criteria are developed by management for the preparation of the summary financial statements and are adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.
- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the summary financial statements.
- The auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements from which the summary financial statements are derived.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, the summary income statement, summary statement of changes in stockholders' equity, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and the related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. We expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those audited financial statements in our report dated February 15, 20X2. The audited financial statements, and the summary financial statements derived therefrom, do not reflect the effects of events, if any, that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on the audited financial statements.

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by [describe financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements of ABC Company]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company.

Management's Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of the summary financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion about whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. The procedures consisted principally of comparing the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements from which the summary financial statements have been derived, and evaluating whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the basis described in Note X. We did not perform any audit procedures regarding the audited financial statements after the date of our report on those financial statements.

Opinion

In our opinion, the summary financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1 referred to above are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, on the basis described in Note X.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 2: An Unmodified Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements and a Qualified Opinion Is Expressed on the Audited Financial Statements

Circumstances include all of the following:

- A qualified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Criteria are developed by management for the preparation of the summary financial statements and are adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.
- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the summary financial statements.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, the summary income statement, summary statement of changes in stockholders' equity, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and the related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. We expressed a qualified audit opinion on those audited financial statements in our report dated February 15, 20X2 (see below).¹

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by [*describe financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements of ABC Company*]. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company.

Management's Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of the summary financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion about whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. The procedures consisted principally of comparing the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements from which the summary financial statements have been derived, and evaluating whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the basis described in Note X.²

Opinion

In our opinion, the summary financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1 referred to above are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, on the basis described in Note X.

The summary financial statements are misstated to the equivalent extent as the audited financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. The misstatement

¹ When the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: "The audited financial statements, and the summary financial statements derived therefrom, do not reflect the effects of events, if any, that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on the audited financial statements."

² When the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: "We did not perform any audit procedures regarding the audited financial statements after the date of our report on those financial statements."



674 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

of the audited financial statements is described in our qualified audit opinion in our report dated February 15, 20X2. Our qualified audit opinion is based on the fact that the Company's inventories are carried in the balance sheet in those audited financial statements at \$XXX. Management has not stated the inventories at the lower of cost or net realizable value but has stated them solely at cost, which constitutes a departure from *[describe financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements of ABC Company]*. The Company's records indicate that, had management stated the inventories at the lower of cost or net realizable value, an amount of \$XXX would have been required to write the inventories down to their net realizable value. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by \$XXX, and income tax, net income, and stockholders' equity would have been reduced by \$XXX, \$XXX, and \$XXX, respectively. Our qualified audit opinion states that, except for the effects of the described matter, those financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with *[describe financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements of ABC Company]*.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

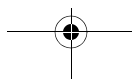
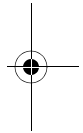
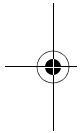


Illustration 3: An Adverse Opinion Is Expressed on the Audited Financial Statements (as a Result of the Adverse Opinion on the Audited Financial Statements, It Is Inappropriate to Express, and the Auditor Does Not Express, an Opinion on the Summary Financial Statements)

Circumstances include both of the following:

- An adverse opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements. As a result of the adverse opinion on the audited financial statements, it is inappropriate to express, and the auditor does not express, an opinion on the summary financial statements, as described in paragraph .16.
- Criteria are developed by management for the preparation of the summary financial statements and are adequately disclosed in Note X. The auditor has determined that the criteria are acceptable in the circumstances.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

Management derived the accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, the summary income statement, summary statement of changes in stockholders' equity, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and the related notes, from the audited financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. Management is responsible for the preparation of these summary financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

In our report dated February 15, 20X2, we expressed an adverse audit opinion on the financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. The basis for our adverse audit opinion was *[describe basis for adverse audit opinion]*. Our adverse audit opinion stated that *[describe adverse audit opinion]*.

Because of the significance of the matter discussed above, it is inappropriate to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the summary financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 4: An Adverse Opinion Is Expressed on the Summary Financial Statements Because They Are Not Consistent, in All Material Respects, With the Audited Financial Statements, in Accordance With the Applied Criteria

Circumstances include all of the following:

- An unmodified opinion is expressed on the audited financial statements.
- Established criteria for the preparation of summary financial statements exist.
- The auditor expresses an adverse opinion on the summary financial statements because they are not consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON SUMMARY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

[Appropriate Addressee]

The accompanying summary financial statements, which comprise the summary balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, the summary income statement, summary statement of changes in stockholders' equity, and summary cash flow statement for the year then ended, and the related notes, are derived from the audited financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1. We expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those audited financial statements in our report dated February 15, 20X2.³

The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by *[describe financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements of ABC Company]*. Reading the summary financial statements, therefore, is not a substitute for reading the audited financial statements of ABC Company.

Management's Responsibility for the Summary Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation of the summary financial statements on the basis described in Note X.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion about whether the summary financial statements are consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements based on our procedures, which were conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. The procedures consisted principally of comparing the summary financial statements with the related information in the audited financial statements from which the summary financial statements have been derived, and evaluating whether the summary financial statements are prepared in accordance with the basis described in Note X.⁴

Basis for Adverse Opinion

[Describe matter that caused the summary financial statements not to be consistent, in all material respects, with the audited financial statements, in accordance with the applied criteria.]

Adverse Opinion

³ When the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: "The audited financial statements, and the summary financial statements derived therefrom, do not reflect the effects of events, if any, that occurred subsequent to the date of our report on the audited financial statements."

⁴ When the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the following sentence is added to this paragraph: "We did not perform any audit procedures regarding the audited financial statements after the date of our report on those financial statements."

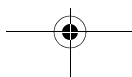
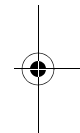
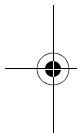


In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* paragraph, the summary financial statements of ABC Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X1 referred to above are not consistent with the audited financial statements from which they have been derived, on the basis described in Note X.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]



.A23

Exhibit B—Comparison of Section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*

This analysis was prepared by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff to highlight substantive differences between section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, and International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, and the rationale therefore. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on, or reviewed by, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB).

General

In converging with the ISAs, the ASB has made various changes to the language of the ISAs throughout the AU-C sections. Such changes have been made to use terms applicable in the United States and to make the AU-C sections easier to read and apply in the United States. The ASB believes that such changes do not create differences between the application of the ISAs and the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

Differences in Language

Paragraph .05 of section 810 includes more specificity than is in paragraph 3 of ISA 810, including an objective to perform the procedures necessary as the basis for the auditor's opinion on the summary financial statements, and a description of the opinion. The ASB believes that these changes do not create differences between the intent of ISA 810 and the intent of section 810.

Paragraph 6(b)(ii) of ISA 810 requires that management make the audited financial statements available to the intended users of the summary financial statements without undue difficulty. Section 810 requires in paragraph .09b(ii) that management make the audited financial statements readily available. This is not a substantive difference between ISA 810 and section 810. The terminology in section 810 aligns with section 930, *Interim Financial Information*.

If the summary financial statements contain comparatives that were reported on by another auditor, both ISA 810 and section 810 require the auditor's report on the summary financial statements to contain certain matters. Such matters are included directly in paragraph .23 of section 810 and incorporated in paragraph 22 of ISA 810 by reference to ISA 710, *Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*.

Requirements in the ISAs Not in GAAS

Paragraphs 6–7 of ISA 810 include requirements pertaining to (a) criteria established by law or regulation, (b) situations in which law or regulation does not require the audited financial statements to be made available, and (c) accepting the engagement when required by law or regulation to do so. These requirements were not included in section 810 because they are not applicable to the United States.

Paragraph 9 of ISA 810 permits the use of two different phrases when opining on summary financial statements. Paragraph .14 of section 810 only includes one of these phrases, which is consistent with existing practice.

Paragraphs 10–11 of ISA 810 address situations when regulation prescribes the wording of the opinion on the summary financial statements in terms that are different from those described in ISA 810. These requirements were not included in section 810 as they are not applicable in the United States.

Paragraph 15 of ISA 810 requires the auditor to evaluate the appropriateness of using a different addressee, if the addressee of the summary financial statements is not the same as the addressee of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements. Section 810 does not include this requirement because the ASB believes having different addressees is never appropriate.

Requirements in GAAS Not in the ISAs

Paragraph 6(a) of ISA 810 requires the auditor to determine whether the applied criteria are acceptable. The requirement in paragraph .09a of section 810 was expanded to clarify what constitutes acceptable criteria.

Paragraph .09b(iii) of section 810 requires the auditor to obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility to provide the auditor with written representations, as described in paragraph .12 of section 810. ISA 810 does not include such a requirement.

Paragraphs .12–.13 of section 810 include requirements for the auditor to request management to provide written representations related to the summary financial statements. Such representations are necessary in the United States, particularly in situations when the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is dated later than the auditor's report on the audited financial statements. ISA 810 does not include any requirements for written representations.

Paragraph .16 of section 810 was expanded to require the auditor to withdraw from the engagement to report on the summary financial statements when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation and when the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion. Paragraph .16d of section 810 further clarifies the reporting elements when the auditor issues a report on the summary financial statements in those situations when it is not possible to withdraw from the engagement.

Paragraph .17e(i–ii) of section 810 includes additional elements for the auditor's report on the summary financial statements with regard to the nature of the procedures that were performed by the auditor on the summary financial statements, including that the auditor did not perform audit procedures regarding the audited financial statements after the date of the report on those financial statements if the date of the auditor's report on the summary financial statements is later than the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements.

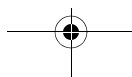
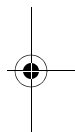
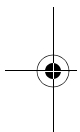
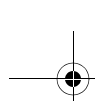
Paragraph .24 of section 810 includes an additional reporting requirement if the summary financial statements contain comparatives that were not reported on by the auditor or another auditor.

Paragraph .27 of section 810 includes additional requirements related to other information, which require the auditor to discuss the matter with management if the auditor identifies a material inconsistency and to consider appropriate further action in the circumstances if the auditor identifies a material inconsistency or becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact.

Differences Between Requirements

Paragraph 17 of ISA 810 addresses the reporting elements when the auditor's report on the audited financial statements contains a qualified opinion, an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, or an other-matter paragraph. In ISA 810, the requirement in this paragraph only applies when the auditor expresses an unmodified opinion on the summary financial statements. In section 810, the requirement in paragraph .20 applies when the auditor expresses either an unmodified opinion or an adverse opinion on the summary financial statements.

Section 810, in paragraph .21, eliminated the reference to the restriction on distribution of the auditor's report in paragraph 20 of ISA 810. In the United States, use of an auditor's report is restricted, not its distribution. An auditor is not responsible for controlling management's distribution of restricted-use reports.





AU-C Section 900* **SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS IN THE UNITED STATES**

AU-C Section 905*

[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 87, Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report]

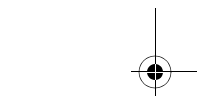
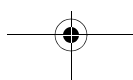
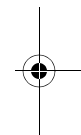
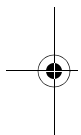
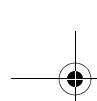
NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, which is currently codified as AU section 532 in *AICPA Professional Standards*.

SAS No. 122 designates section 905 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of a subsequent clarified SAS that will be issued to supersede SAS No. 87 when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board.



-
- * This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.





AU-C Section 910*

[Designated for Subsequent Clarified SAS to Supersede SAS No. 51, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries]

NOTE

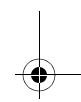
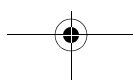
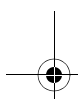
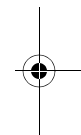
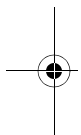
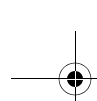
SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, which is currently codified as AU section 534 in *AICPA Professional Standards*.

SAS No. 122 designates section 910 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of a subsequent clarified SAS that will be issued to supersede SAS No. 51 when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board.



* This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements..





AU-C Section 915****Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*****Introduction****Scope of This Section**

.01 This section addresses the reporting accountant's responsibilities when requested to issue a written report on

- a. the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction or
- b. the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements. (Ref: par. .A1)

.02 This section also applies to oral advice provided by the reporting accountant

- a. that the reporting accountant concludes is intended to be used by a principal to the transaction as an important factor considered in reaching a decision on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction or
- b. on the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements.

.03 Differing interpretations may exist concerning whether and, if so, how existing accounting policies in an applicable financial reporting framework apply to new transactions or how new accounting policies in an applicable financial reporting framework apply to existing transactions. Management and others may consult with accountants on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to those transactions or to increase their knowledge of specific financial reporting issues. Such consultations may provide relevant information and insights not otherwise available.

.04 This section does not apply to

- a. a continuing accountant with respect to the specific entity whose financial statements the continuing accountant has been engaged to report on,
- b. engagements either to assist in litigation involving accounting or auditing matters or to provide expert testimony in connection with such litigation, or
- c. professional advice provided to another accountant in public practice.

.05 This section also does not apply to communications such as position papers prepared by an accountant for the purpose of presenting views on an issue involving the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework, provided that these communications are not intended to provide guidance on the application of these requirements to a specific transaction. Position papers include newsletters, articles, speeches, and texts thereof; lectures and other forms of public presentations; and letters for the public record to professional and governmental standards-setting bodies.

Effective Date

.06 This section is effective for engagements that end on or after December 15, 2012.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

Objective

.07 The objective of the reporting accountant, when engaged to issue a written report or provide oral advice on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction or on the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements, is to address appropriately

- a. the acceptance of the engagement.
- b. the planning and performance of the engagement.
- c. reporting on the specific transaction or type of report.

Definitions

.08 For purposes of this section, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Continuing accountant. An accountant who has been engaged to report on the financial statements of a specific entity or entities of which the specific entity is a component.

Hypothetical transaction. A transaction or financial reporting issue that does not involve facts or circumstances of a specific entity.

Reporting accountant. An accountant, other than a continuing accountant, in the practice of public accounting, as described in ET section 92, *Definitions* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), who prepares a written report or provides oral advice on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction or on the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements.¹ (A reporting accountant who is also engaged to provide accounting and reporting advice to a specific entity on a recurring basis is commonly referred to as an advisory accountant.) (Ref: par. A4)

Specific transaction. A completed or proposed transaction or group of related transactions or a financial reporting issue involving facts and circumstances of a specific entity.

Written report. Any written communication that provides a conclusion on the appropriate application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction or on the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements.

Requirements

Engagement Acceptance

.09 In determining whether to accept the engagement, the reporting accountant should consider

- a. the circumstances under which the written report or oral advice is requested,
- b. the purpose of the request, and
- c. the intended use of the written report or oral advice.

.10 The reporting accountant should accept an engagement to issue a written report on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction only when the transaction involves facts or circumstances of a specific entity. The reporting accountant should not accept an engagement to issue a written report on hypothetical transactions.

.11 If the reporting accountant has determined in accordance with paragraphs .09–.10 that it is appropriate to accept an engagement to be performed in accordance with this section, the reporting accountant should establish an understanding with the requesting party that

- a. responsibility for the proper accounting treatment rests with management, who is expected to consult with its continuing accountant;

¹ Paragraph .27 of ET section 92, *Definitions* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

- b. management acknowledges that the reporting accountant may need to consult with the continuing accountant and that, upon request, management will authorize the continuing accountant to respond fully to the reporting accountant's inquiries; and
- c. management will notify those charged with governance and the continuing accountant concerning the nature of the engagement.

If management refuses to agree to authorize the continuing accountant to respond fully to the reporting accountant's inquiries, the reporting accountant should inquire about the reasons and consider the implications of that refusal when determining whether to accept the engagement.

Engagement Planning and Performance

.12 The reporting accountant should

- a. obtain an understanding of the form and substance of the specific transaction(s) or the conditions relevant to the type of report that may be issued on a specific entity's financial statements;
- b. review the relevant requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, if appropriate;
- c. consult with other professionals, experts, or regulatory authorities, if appropriate;
- d. perform research or other procedures, as appropriate, to identify and consider existing creditable precedents or analogies;
- e. except as provided in paragraph .13, request permission from the entity's management to consult with the continuing accountant and request the entity's management to authorize the continuing accountant to respond fully to the reporting accountant's inquiries; and
- f. except as provided in paragraph .13, consult with the continuing accountant to determine the available facts relevant to forming a conclusion. (Ref: par. .A2–.A3)

Consulting With the Continuing Accountant

.13 The reporting accountant should consult with the continuing accountant to determine whether the reporting accountant has obtained the available facts relevant to form a conclusion, unless

- a. the reporting accountant is engaged to issue a written report or provide oral advice on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to a specific transaction, as described in paragraphs .01a and .02a, and
- b. the reporting accountant is engaged to provide recurring accounting and reporting advice (for example, bookkeeping or assistance in formulating accounting positions in selected matters, which are services commonly performed by an advisory accountant) and
 - i. does not believe that a second opinion is being requested,
 - ii. has full access to management, and
 - iii. believes that the relevant information has been obtained in order to issue a written report or provide oral advice regarding the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to an entity's specific transaction.

If the reporting accountant determines in accordance with the preceding *a–b* that it is not necessary to consult with the continuing accountant, the reporting accountant should document the rationale for not consulting. (Ref: par. .A2–.A4)

Written Report (Ref: par. .A5–.A7)

.14 The reporting accountant's written report should be addressed to the requesting party (for example, management or those charged with governance) and should include the following:

- a. A brief description of the nature of the engagement and a statement that the engagement was performed in accordance with this section
- b. Identification of the specific entity; a description of the specific transaction(s), if applicable; a statement of the relevant facts, circumstances, and assumptions; and a statement about the source of such information

688 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- c. A statement describing the appropriate application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework (including the country of origin) to the specific transaction or type of report that may be issued on the entity's financial statements and, if appropriate, a description of the reasons for the reporting accountant's conclusion
- d. A statement that the responsibility for the proper accounting treatment rests with the preparers of the financial statements, who should consult with their continuing accountant
- e. A statement that any difference in the facts, circumstances, or assumptions presented may change the report
- f. A separate paragraph at the end of the report that includes the following elements:
 - i. A statement indicating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of the specified parties
 - ii. An identification of the specified parties to whom use is restricted
 - iii. A statement that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01b)

.A1 Examples of the types of reports or illustrative report wording that a reporting accountant may provide include the following:

- A report expressing a modified opinion versus a report expressing an unmodified opinion
- A report prepared in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America versus a report prepared in accordance with international auditing standards
- Wording that might be included in a modified opinion

Engagement Planning and Performance

.A2 The responsibilities of an entity's continuing accountant to respond to inquiries by the reporting accountant are the same as the responsibilities of a predecessor auditor to respond to inquiries by the auditor. Section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, addresses the responsibilities of a predecessor auditor.² (Ref: par. .12f-.13)

.A3 The continuing accountant may provide information related to the form and substance of the specific transaction that is not otherwise available to the reporting accountant regarding, for example, the following:

- How management has applied the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to similar transactions
- Whether the method of accounting recommended by the continuing accountant is disputed by management
- The continuing accountant's conclusion on the application of the requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework to the specific transaction or the type of report that may be issued on the entity's financial statements (Ref: par. .12f-.13)

.A4 When determining whether the criteria in paragraph .13 are satisfied such that consultation with the continuing accountant is not necessary, the reporting accountant may consider the following:

- The nature of the engagement
- Whether the reporting accountant believes that full knowledge of the form and substance of the transaction has been obtained
- How management has applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework to similar transactions in the past
- Whether management has discussed the method of accounting with the continuing accountant

² Paragraph .A30 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

A recurring engagement for a reporting accountant may constitute the effective outsourcing of certain controllership or other financial reporting functions or involve financial reporting advisory services. Such an engagement may allow the reporting accountant to have complete access to management. (Ref: par. .08 and .13)

Written Report (Ref: par. .14)

.A5 Although the reporting requirements in paragraph .14 only apply to written reports, reporting accountants may find the requirements useful when providing oral advice.

.A6 The restriction of the use of the reporting accountant's written report referred to in paragraph .14f is not intended to preclude distribution of the report to the continuing accountant.

.A7 The exhibit, "Illustrative Written Report to the Requesting Entity," provides an example of a written report to the requesting party.

.A8**Exhibit—Illustrative Written Report to the Requesting Party**

The following is an illustration of the reporting accountant's written report to the requesting party (for example, management or those charged with governance) on the application of the requirements of accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America to a specific transaction.

Introduction

We have been engaged to report on the appropriate application of the requirements of accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America to the specific transaction described below. This report is being issued to ABC Company for assistance in evaluating accounting policies for the described specific transaction. Our engagement has been conducted in accordance with Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122 section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*.

Description of Transaction

The facts, circumstances, and assumptions relevant to the specific transaction as provided to us by the management of ABC Company are as follows:

[Text discussing the facts, circumstances, and assumptions relevant to the specific transaction]

Appropriate Accounting Principles

[Text discussing accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America and how they apply to the described transaction]

Concluding Comments

The ultimate responsibility for the decision on the appropriate application of the requirements of accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America for an actual transaction rests with the preparers of financial statements, who should consult with their continuing accountant. Our conclusion on the appropriate application of the requirements of accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America for the described specific transaction is based solely on the facts provided to us as previously described; should these facts and circumstances differ, our conclusion may change.

Restricted Use

This report is intended solely for the information and use of those charged with governance and management of ABC Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

AU-C Section 920*

Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities when engaged to issue letters (commonly referred to as *comfort letters*) to requesting parties in connection with a nonissuer entity's financial statements included in registration statements filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) under the Securities Act of 1933 (the 1933 Act) (for example, inclusion of the nonissuer entity's financial statements as required by either Rule 3-05 or 3-09 of Regulation S-X) or included in other securities offerings.

.02 Auditors' services include audits or reviews of financial statements included in securities offerings. In connection with the securities offerings, auditors are often requested to issue comfort letters to certain requesting parties. The auditor is not required by generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) to accept an engagement to issue a comfort letter.

.03 The service of providing letters for underwriters developed following the passing of the 1933 Act. Section 11 of the 1933 Act provides that underwriters, among others, could be liable if any part of a registration statement contains material omissions or misstatements. The 1933 Act also provides for an affirmative defense for underwriters if it can be demonstrated that, after a reasonable investigation, the underwriter has reasonable grounds to believe that no material omissions or misstatements existed in a securities offering. An auditor issuing a comfort letter is one of a number of procedures that may be used to establish that an underwriter has conducted a reasonable investigation. Consequently, underwriters may request auditors to assist them in developing a record of reasonable investigation.

.04 The subjects that may be covered in a comfort letter include

- the independence of the auditor.
- whether the audited financial statements included in the securities offering comply regarding form, in all material respects, with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- unaudited financial statements, condensed interim financial information, capsule financial information, pro forma financial information, financial forecasts, management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), and changes in selected financial statement items during a period subsequent to the date and period of the latest financial statements included in the securities offering.
- tables, statistics, and other financial information included in the securities offering.
- negative assurance about whether certain nonfinancial statement information included in the securities offering complies regarding form, in all material respects, with Regulation S-K.¹

Effective Date

.05 This section is effective for comfort letters issued on or after December 15, 2012.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

¹ Regulation S-K, "Standard Instructions for Filing Forms Under Securities Act of 1933, Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and Energy Policy and Conservation Act of 1975."

Objectives

.06 The objectives of the auditor, when engaged to issue a letter to a requesting party in connection with an entity's financial statements included in a securities offering, are to

- a. address appropriately the acceptance of the engagement and the scope of services; and
- b. issue a letter with the appropriate form and content.

Definitions

.07 For purposes of this section, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Capsule financial information. Unaudited summarized interim financial information for periods subsequent to the periods covered by the audited financial statements or unaudited interim financial information included in the securities offering. Capsule financial information may be presented in narrative or tabular form and is often provided for the most recent interim period and for the corresponding period of the prior year.

Change period. The period ending on the cut-off date and ordinarily beginning, for balance sheet items, immediately after the date of the latest balance sheet in the securities offering and, for income statement items, immediately after the latest period for which such items are presented in the securities offering.

Closing date. The date on which the issuer of the securities or selling security holder delivers the securities to the underwriter in exchange for the proceeds of the offering.

Comfort letter. A letter issued by an auditor in accordance with this section to requesting parties in connection with an entity's financial statements included in a securities offering.

Comparison date and comparison period. The date as of which, and period for which, data at the cut-off date and data for the change period are to be compared.

Cut-off date. The date through which certain procedures described in the comfort letter are to relate.

Effective date. The date on which the securities offering becomes effective.

Entity. The party whose financial statements are the subject of the engagement.

Negative assurance. A statement that, based on the procedures performed, nothing has come to the auditor's attention that caused the auditor to believe that specified matters do not meet specified criteria (for example, that nothing came to the auditor's attention that caused the auditor to believe that any material modifications should be made to the unaudited interim financial information for it to be in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles).

Requesting party. One of the following specified parties requesting a comfort letter, which has negotiated an agreement with the entity:

- An underwriter
- Other parties that are conducting a review process that is, or will be, substantially consistent with the due diligence process performed when the securities offering is, or if the securities offering was, being registered pursuant to the 1933 Act, as follows:
 - A selling shareholder, sales agent, or other party with a statutory due diligence defense under Section 11 of the 1933 Act
 - A broker-dealer or other financial intermediary acting as principal or agent in a securities offering in connection with the following types of securities offerings:
 - Foreign offerings, including Regulation S, Eurodollar, and other offshore offerings
 - Transactions that are exempt from the registration requirements of Section 5 of the 1933 Act, including those pursuant to Regulation A, Regulation D, and Rule 144A
 - Offerings of securities issued or backed by governmental, municipal, banking, tax-exempt, or other entities that are exempt from registration under the 1933 Act

- The buyer or seller in connection with acquisition transactions in which there is an exchange of stock (Ref: par. .A1)

Securities offerings. One of the following types of securities offerings:

- Registration of securities with the SEC under the 1933 Act
- Foreign offerings, including Regulation S, Eurodollar, and other offshore offerings
- Transactions that are exempt from the registration requirements of Section 5 of the 1933 Act, including those pursuant to Regulation A, Regulation D, and Rule 144A
- Offerings of securities issued or backed by governmental, municipal, banking, tax-exempt, or other entities that are exempt from registration under the 1933 Act
- Acquisition transactions in which there is an exchange of stock

Underwriter. As defined in the 1933 Act

any person who has purchased from an issuer with a view to, or offers or sells for an issuer in connection with, the distribution of any security, or participates or has a direct or indirect participation in any such undertaking, or participates or has a participation in the direct or indirect underwriting of any such undertaking; but such term shall not include a person whose interest is limited to a commission from an underwriter or dealer not in excess of the usual and customary distributors' or sellers' commission. As used in this paragraph, the term "issuer" shall include, in addition to an issuer, any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, or any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer.

Except when the context otherwise requires, the word *underwriter*, as used in this section, refers to the managing, or lead, underwriter, who typically negotiates the underwriting agreement or purchase agreement (hereafter referred to as the *underwriting agreement*) for a group of underwriters whose exact composition is not determined until shortly before a securities offering becomes effective.

.08 References in this section to information that is *included* in a document are to be read to also encompass information that is *incorporated by reference* in that document.

Requirements

Engagement Acceptance

.09 The auditor should determine whether to accept an engagement to issue a comfort letter in connection with financial statements included in a securities offering. The auditor is not required to accept such an engagement.

.10 The auditor should provide a comfort letter in connection with financial statements included in a securities offering only to

- a. underwriters.
- b. other parties meeting the definition of a *requesting party* in paragraph .07.

.11 The auditor should request the requesting party to provide either

- a. a written opinion from external legal counsel that the requesting party has a statutory due diligence defense under Section 11 of the 1933 Act; or
- b. a representation letter that
 - i. is addressed to the auditor;
 - ii. contains the statement, "The review process applied to the information relating to the issuer, is, or will be, substantially consistent with the due diligence process that we would perform if this securities offering were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933. We are knowledgeable with respect to that due diligence process."; and (Ref: par. .A3–.A4)
 - iii. is signed by the requesting party.

694 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.12 If a requesting party, other than an underwriter, requests a comfort letter but does not provide the legal opinion or representation letter described in paragraph .11, the auditor should not provide negative assurance on the financial statements as a whole, or on any of the specified elements, accounts, or items thereof. In such circumstances, the comfort letter should include the following statements: (Ref: par. .A5)

- a. It should be understood that we have no responsibility for establishing (and did not establish) the scope and nature of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs; rather, the procedures enumerated therein are those that the requesting party asked us to perform. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages previously listed as set forth in the *[offering circular]*. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosures or whether any material facts have been omitted. This letter relates only to the financial statement items previously specified and does not extend to any financial statement of the company as a whole. (Ref: par. .A6)
- b. The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Had we performed additional procedures or had we conducted an audit or a review of the company's *[give dates of any interim financial statements]* consolidated financial statements in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.
- c. These procedures should not be taken to supplant any additional inquiries or procedures that you would undertake in your consideration of the proposed offering.
- d. This letter is solely for your information and to assist you in your inquiries in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the *[offering circular]*. It is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any other purpose, including but not limited to, the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the offering document or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the offering document.
- e. We have no responsibility to update this letter for events and circumstances occurring after *[cut-off date]*.

.13 The auditor should not provide a comfort letter to any parties other than a requesting party as defined in this section. (Ref: par. .A7)

.14 When issuing a letter in accordance with this section, the auditor should not circumvent the requirements of this section by issuing any additional letters or reports to a requesting party in connection with the securities offering in which the auditor comments on items for which commenting is otherwise precluded by this section.

Agreeing Upon the Scope of Services

.15 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the specific matters to be addressed in the comfort letter. (Ref: par. .A8)

.16 The auditor should ask to meet with the requesting party and the entity to discuss the procedures to be followed in connection with an engagement to issue a comfort letter. (Ref: par. .A9–.A10)

.17 The auditor should clearly state in any discussion of procedures that the auditor cannot provide any assurance regarding the sufficiency of the procedures for the requesting party's purposes. (Ref: par. .A11–.A14)

.18 The auditor should provide a draft of the form of the letter the auditor expects to furnish. To the extent possible, the draft should deal with all matters to be covered in the final letter and should use exactly the same terms as those to be used in the final letter, subject to the understanding that the comments in the final letter cannot be determined until the procedures underlying it

have been performed. The draft letter should be identified as a draft to avoid giving the impression that the procedures described therein have been performed. (Ref: par. .A15)

.19 In both the draft and final forms of the comfort letter, the auditor should clearly describe the procedures performed by the auditor. The auditor should not state or imply that the auditor is carrying out such procedures as the auditor considers necessary because such statements or implications may lead to misunderstanding about the responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for the requesting party purposes.

.20 If the auditor has been unable to have a discussion with the requesting party about the auditor's planned procedures, the auditor should describe in the draft letter those procedures specified in the draft underwriting agreement that the auditor is willing to perform. (Ref: par. .A16–.A17)

.21 When the comfort letter relates to group financial statements, the auditor of the group financial statements should read the comfort letters of the component auditors reporting on significant components. The auditor should state in the comfort letter that

- a. reading the component auditors' letters was one of the procedures followed, and
- b. the procedures, other than reading the component auditors' letters, performed by the auditor of the group financial statements, relate solely to entities audited by the auditor of the group financial statements and to the group financial statements. (Ref: par. .A18)

.22 When comfort letters are requested from more than one auditor, the requirements of this section apply to each auditor. (Ref: par. .A19)

.23 In competitive bidding situations in which legal counsel for the requesting party acts as the requesting party's representative prior to opening and acceptance of the bid, the auditor should carry out the discussions and other communications required by this section with the legal counsel until the requesting party is selected. In such circumstances, the auditor should not agree to provide a comfort letter addressed to the entity, legal counsel, or a nonspecific addressee, such as "any or all underwriters to be selected." If the auditor agrees to provide a draft comfort letter, the draft comfort letter should include a legend describing the letter's purpose and limitations. (Ref: par. .A20–.A23)

Format and Contents of Comfort Letters

Dating

.24 The letter should state that the inquiries and other procedures described in the letter did not cover the period from the cut-off date to the date of the letter. (Ref: par. .A24–.A25)

.25 When an additional letter, dated at or shortly before the closing date, is requested, the auditor should carry out the specified procedures and inquiries as of the cut-off date for each letter. The subsequent letter should relate only to information in the securities offering as most recently amended. (Ref: par. .A26)

Addressee

.26 The letter should be addressed only to the requesting party, or both the requesting party and the entity, and should not be provided to any other parties. (Ref: par. .A27)

Introductory Paragraph

.27 The letter should contain an introductory paragraph that identifies the financial statements and the securities offering.

Auditor's Report

.28 The auditor should, in the comfort letter, make reference to, but not repeat, the report on the audited financial statements included in the securities offering. (Ref: par. .A28)

.29 When the auditor's report on the audited financial statements included in the securities offering contains an emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraph addressing matters other than

696 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

consistency of application of accounting policies² the auditor should refer to that fact in the comfort letter and discuss the subject matter of the paragraph. In those instances in which the SEC accepts a modified opinion on historical financial statements, the auditor should refer to the modification in the opening paragraph of the comfort letter and discuss the subject matter of the modification. (Ref: par. .A29–.A30)

.30 The auditor should not provide negative assurance regarding the auditor's report or regarding financial statements that have been audited and are reported on in the securities offering by other auditors. (Ref: par. .A31)

.31 In the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter, if the auditor refers to reports that the auditor has previously issued other than the report on the audited financial statements included in the securities offering, the auditor should not repeat the reports in the comfort letter or otherwise imply that the auditor is reporting as of the date of the comfort letter or assuming responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for the requesting party's purposes. (Ref: par. .A32–.A33)

.32 The auditor should not mention in a comfort letter reports issued in accordance with section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, or any restricted use reports issued to the entity in connection with procedures performed on the entity's internal control over financial reporting in accordance with AT section 501, *An Examination of an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With an Audit of Its Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

.33 The auditor should not refer to, or attach, any restricted use report to the comfort letter. (Ref: par. .A34)

Representations

.34 The auditor should refer in the comfort letter to the requesting party's representations when the representation letter described in paragraph .11 has been provided. (Ref: par. .A35)

Independence

.35 The auditor should state in the comfort letter that the auditor is independent, or the date through which the auditor was independent, with respect to the entity, and identify the applicable independence rules. (Ref: par. .A36–.A38)

Compliance With SEC Requirements

.36 If the auditor is requested to include an opinion in the comfort letter on whether the financial statements covered by the auditor's report comply as to form with the pertinent accounting requirements adopted by the SEC, the auditor's opinion should refer to compliance as to form, in all material respects, with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. (Ref: par. .A39–.A41)

.37 Certain financial statements may be incorporated in a registration statement under the 1933 Act by reference to filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act). If the auditor is requested to include an opinion in the comfort letter on whether the financial statements covered by the auditor's report comply as to form with the pertinent accounting requirements adopted by the SEC, the auditor's opinion should refer to whether the audited financial statements incorporated by reference in the registration statement comply as to form, in all material respects, with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1934 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. However, the auditor should not opine on compliance with the provisions of the 1934 Act regarding internal control over financial reporting.

.38 If the auditor has been requested to include an opinion in the comfort letter on whether the financial statements covered by the auditor's report comply as to form with the pertinent accounting requirements adopted by the SEC, and a material departure from the pertinent rules and reg-

² See section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

ulations adopted by the SEC exists, the auditor should disclose the departure in the comfort letter. (Ref: par. .A42)

.39 The auditor should express an opinion on compliance as to form with requirements under the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC only with respect to those rules and regulations applicable to the form and content of financial statements that the auditor has audited. When the financial statements or financial statement schedules have not been audited, the auditor is limited to providing negative assurance on compliance as to form.

.40 The auditor should not comment in a comfort letter on compliance as to form of MD&A with rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. (Ref: par. .A43)

Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements

General

.41 When commenting in a comfort letter on information other than audited financial statements, the auditor should

- a. describe the procedures performed by the auditor, as required by paragraph .19. (Ref: par. .A44–.A46)
- b. describe the criteria specified by the requesting party.
- c. state that the procedures performed with respect to interim periods may not disclose matters of significance regarding certain matters about which negative assurance is requested. (Ref: par. .A47–.A48)

.42 The auditor should not, in the comfort letter

- a. make any statements, or imply, that the auditor has applied procedures that the auditor determined to be necessary or sufficient for the requesting party's purposes.
- b. use terms of uncertain meaning (such as *general review*, *limited review*, *reconcile*, *check*, or *test*) in describing the work unless the procedures encompassed by these terms are described in the comfort letter.
- c. make a statement that nothing else has come to the auditor's attention that would be of interest to the requesting party as a result of carrying out the specified procedures. (Ref: par. .A49)

.43 When the report on the audited financial statements in the securities offering is a modified report, the auditor should consider the effect on providing negative assurance in the comfort letter regarding subsequent interim financial information included in the securities offering or regarding an absence of specified subsequent changes. The auditor should also follow the requirements of paragraph .29. (Ref: par. .A50)

Knowledge of Internal Control

.44 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the entity's internal control over financial reporting for both annual and interim periods when commenting in a comfort letter on

- a. unaudited interim financial information, including unaudited condensed interim financial information;
- b. capsule financial information;
- c. a financial forecast when historical financial statements provide a basis for one or more significant assumptions for the forecast; or
- d. subsequent changes in specified financial statement items. (Ref: par. .A51)

Unaudited Interim Financial Information

.45 The auditor should provide negative assurance on unaudited interim financial information included in the securities offering only if the auditor has conducted a review of the interim financial information in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information. If the auditor has not conducted a review in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained. (Ref: par. .A52)

698 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.46 The negative assurance provided regarding such unaudited interim information should be about whether

- a. any material modifications should be made to the unaudited interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, and
- b. the unaudited interim financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, if applicable.

.47 If the auditor states in the comfort letter that the auditor has performed a review of the unaudited interim financial information, the auditor should attach the review report to the letter unless the review report is already included in the securities offering. (Ref: par. .A53)

.48 The auditor should specifically identify, in the comfort letter, any unaudited interim financial information and should state that the auditor has not audited the interim financial information in accordance with GAAS and does not express an opinion concerning such information. (Ref: par. .A54–.A55)

.49 When the auditor is requested by the requesting party to provide negative assurance on the unaudited interim financial information, or information extracted therefrom, for a monthly period ending after the latest financial statements included in the securities offering, the requirements in paragraphs .45–.48 apply. In such a circumstance, a copy of the unaudited interim financial information should be attached to the comfort letter.

Capsule Financial Information

.50 The auditor should not provide negative assurance regarding whether the selected capsule financial information is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework unless

- a. the auditor has performed a review of the financial statements underlying the capsule financial information in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information, and
- b. the selected capsule financial information is in accordance with minimum disclosure requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework for interim financial information.

If these conditions have not been met, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained. (Ref: par. .A56)

.51 The auditor should not provide negative assurance on selected capsule financial information regarding whether the dollar amounts were determined on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited financial statements unless the auditor has performed a review of the financial statements underlying the capsule financial information in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information. Otherwise, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained. (Ref: par. .A57)

Pro Forma Financial Information

.52 The auditor should not comment in a comfort letter on pro forma financial information unless the auditor has an appropriate level of knowledge of the accounting and financial reporting practices of the entity. (Ref: par. .A58)

.53 The auditor should not provide negative assurance in a comfort letter on pro forma financial information, including negative assurance on

- the application of pro forma adjustments to historical amounts,
- the compilation of pro forma financial information, or
- whether the pro forma financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of Rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X,³

³ Regulation S-X, “Form and Content of and Requirements for Financial Statements, Securities Act of 1933, Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, Investment Company Act of 1940, and Energy Policy and Conservation Act of 1975.”

unless the auditor has obtained the required knowledge described in paragraph .52 and has performed

- a. an audit of the annual financial statements, or
- b. a review, in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information,

of the interim financial information of the entity (or, in the case of a business combination, of a significant constituent part of the combined entity) to which the pro forma adjustments were applied. If these conditions are not met, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained. (Ref: par. .A59)

Financial Forecasts

.54 When performing procedures agreed to with the requesting party on a financial forecast and commenting thereon in a comfort letter, the auditor should

- a. obtain an understanding of the entity's internal control over financial reporting for both annual and interim periods, as required by paragraph .44;
- b. perform procedures required by AT section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), for reporting on the compilation of a forecast;⁴
- c. issue a report on the compilation of prospective financial information in accordance with AT section 301 and attach the report thereon to the comfort letter;⁵ and
- d. perform additional procedures as requested by the requesting party and report the findings in the comfort letter. (Ref: par. .A60–.A61)

.55 The auditor should not provide negative assurance on the results of procedures performed on a financial forecast.

.56 The auditor should not provide negative assurance with respect to compliance of the financial forecast with Rule 11-03 of Regulation S-X unless the auditor has performed an examination of the financial forecast in accordance with AT section 301.

.57 If the financial forecast is included in the securities offering, the auditor should not issue a comfort letter unless the financial forecast is accompanied by an indication that the auditor has not examined the financial forecast and, therefore, does not express an opinion on it. (Ref: par. .A62)

Subsequent Changes

.58 The auditor should base comments regarding subsequent changes in specified financial statement items solely on the limited procedures performed with respect to the change period as determined by the requesting party. (Ref: par. .A63–.A65)

.59 The auditor should provide negative assurance in the comfort letter regarding subsequent changes in specified financial statement items only as of a date less than 135 days from the end of the most recent period for which the auditor has performed an audit or a review. (Ref: par. .A66)

.60 When the requesting party requests negative assurance regarding subsequent changes in specified financial statement items as of a date 135 days or more from the end of the most recent period for which the auditor has performed an audit or a review, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained.

.61 In commenting on subsequent changes, the auditor should not characterize subsequent changes using ambiguous terms, such as referring to the change as “adverse.” The auditor should note in the comfort letter if there has been a change in the application of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A67–.A68)

.62 The auditor should comment only on the occurrence of subsequent changes in specified financial statement items that are not disclosed in the securities offering. Accordingly, the auditor should include the phrase *except for changes, increases, or decreases that the securities offering*

⁴ Paragraph .69 of AT section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

⁵ Paragraphs .18–.19 of AT section 301.

700 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

discloses have occurred or may occur in the comfort letter when it has come to the auditor's attention that a change, increase, or decrease has occurred during the change period, and the amount of such change, increase, or decrease is disclosed in the securities offering. This phrase need not be included in the letter when no changes, increases, or decreases in the specified financial statement items are disclosed in the securities offering. (Ref: par. .A69–.A70)

.63 The auditor should identify in the comfort letter in both draft and final form the dates as of which, and periods for which, data at the cut-off date and data for the change period are to be compared, whether or not specified in the underwriting agreement. (Ref: par. .A71–.A72)

.64 If the requesting party requests the use of a change period or periods other than those described in paragraph .07, the auditor should explain to the requesting party the implications of using an earlier date. If the requesting party, nonetheless, requests the use of a change period or periods other than those described in paragraph .07, the auditor is permitted to use the period or periods requested. (Ref: par. .A73)

Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information

.65 The auditor should not comment in a comfort letter on tables, statistics, and other financial information appearing in the securities offering unless the information

- a. is expressed in dollars (or percentages derived from such dollar amounts) and has been obtained from accounting records that are subject to internal control over financial reporting, or
- b. has been derived directly from such accounting records by analysis or computation. (Ref: par. .A74)

.66 The auditor should not comment in a comfort letter on quantitative information that has been obtained from accounting records unless the information is subject to the same controls over financial reporting as the dollar amounts.

.67 The auditor should not comment in a comfort letter on tables, statistics, and other financial information relating to an unaudited period unless the auditor has

- a. performed an audit of the entity's financial statements for a period including, or immediately prior to, the unaudited period or completed an audit for a later period, or
- b. otherwise obtained knowledge of the entity's internal control over financial reporting.

.68 The auditor should not use the term *presents fairly* in comments concerning tables, statistics, and other financial information (Ref: par. .A75) and should not comment on

- a. information subject to legal interpretation, such as beneficial share ownership;
- b. nonfinancial data presented in MD&A, unless the auditor has conducted an examination or review of MD&A in accordance with AT section 701, *Management's Discussion and Analysis* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*); or (Ref: par. .A76)
- c. matters merely because the auditor is capable of reading, counting, measuring, or performing other functions that might be applicable.

.69 The auditor's comments in the comfort letter concerning tables, statistics, and other financial information included in the securities offering should include

- a. a clear identification of the specific information commented on;
- b. a description of the procedures performed; and
- c. the findings, expressed in terms of agreement between items compared. (Ref: par. .A77–.A78)

.70 With respect to the acceptability of methods of allocation used in deriving the figures commented on, the auditor should comment only to the extent to which such allocation is made in, or can be derived directly by analysis or computation from, the entity's accounting records. Such comments, if made, should make clear that

- a. such allocations may be, to a substantial extent, arbitrary.
- b. the method of allocation used is not the only acceptable method.
- c. other acceptable methods of allocation might produce significantly different results.

.71 The comfort letter should state that the auditor makes no representations regarding

- a. any matter of legal interpretation;
- b. the completeness or adequacy of disclosure; and
- c. the adequacy of the procedures followed, and that such procedures would not necessarily disclose material misstatements or omissions in the information to which the comments relate. (Ref: par. .A79–.A80)

Compliance as to Form With Regulation S-K

.72 The auditor should not provide negative assurance about whether certain financial information in registration statements, included because of specific requirements of Regulation S-K, is in conformity with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K unless the following conditions are met:

- a. The information is derived, directly or by analysis or computation, from the accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting.
- b. The information is capable of evaluation against reasonable criteria that have been established by the SEC. (Ref: par. .A81 and .A84–.A87)

.73 The auditor should not express an opinion on conformity with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K. (Ref: par. .A82–.A83)

Concluding Paragraph

.74 The comfort letter should include a concluding paragraph restricting the use of the comfort letter for the information of the addressees and to assist the requesting parties in connection with the securities offering. (Ref: par. .A88)

Disclosure of Subsequently Discovered Matters

.75 The auditor should inform the entity when the auditor has discovered matters that require mention in the final comfort letter but were not mentioned in the draft letter that has been furnished to the requesting party. If the entity decides that disclosure will not be made in the securities offering, the auditor should inform the entity that the matters will be mentioned in the comfort letter and should recommend that the requesting party be informed promptly. (Ref: par. .A89–.A90)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions (Ref: par. .07)

.A1 An example of a comfort letter in connection with an acquisition transaction in which there is an exchange of stock is a cross-comfort letter related to a typical Form S-4 or merger proxy situation. An auditor's report on a preliminary investigation in connection with a proposed transaction (for example, a merger, an acquisition, or a financing) is not covered by this section; the guidance in AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), may apply to such engagements.

Engagement Acceptance (Ref: par. .09–.13)

.A2 An attorney's letter indicating that a party "may" be deemed to be an underwriter or has liability substantially equivalent to that of an underwriter under the securities laws would not meet this requirement.

.A3 What is "substantially consistent" may vary from situation to situation and may not be the same as that done in a registered offering of the same securities for the same issuer. Whether the procedures being, or to be, followed will be "substantially consistent" is determined by the requesting party on a case-by-case basis.

.A4 Exhibit A, "Illustration of Representation Letter From Requesting Party," contains illustrative wording for a representation letter when the requesting party is not an underwriter.

702 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A5 Exhibit B, “Examples of Comfort Letters,” contains examples of comfort letters. Example Q, “Letter to a Requesting Party That Has Not Provided the Legal Opinion or the Representation Letter Required by Paragraph .11,” of this exhibit provides an example of a comfort letter issued to a requesting party that has not provided the representation letter described in paragraph .11.

.A6 Interpretation No. 2, “Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency,” of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AT sec. 9101 par. .23–.33), contains guidance on additional statements to be included if this comfort letter is requested in connection with a secured debt offering.

.A7 Although the auditor is not permitted to provide a comfort letter other than to requesting parties, the auditor, instead, may provide a report on agreed-upon procedures. AT section 201 provides guidance on such reports.

Agreeing Upon the Scope of Services (Ref: par. .15–.23)

.A8 The underwriting agreement may specify the matters to be addressed in the comfort letter. If the underwriting agreement or draft underwriting agreement is not available or does not specify the matters to be addressed, the understanding of the scope of the comfort letter may be obtained from a description furnished by the entity or requesting party. Obtaining this understanding as early as possible, and before the auditor provides a draft of the form of the letter the auditor expects to furnish, assists the auditor in determining whether the auditor will be able to furnish a letter in acceptable form.

.A9 If the requesting party refuses to meet together with the entity, the auditor may consider the implications in determining whether to accept the engagement.

.A10 During this meeting, the auditor may describe procedures that are frequently followed. Exhibit B provides examples of comfort letters that include these procedures. Because of the auditor’s knowledge of the entity, such a meeting may assist the requesting party in reaching a decision about procedures to be followed by the auditor.

.A11 When financial information in a securities offering has not been audited in accordance with GAAS and, accordingly, is not covered by an auditor’s opinion, the nature of the comments that the auditor can properly make with respect to that financial information is limited. As noted in paragraph .03, obtaining a comfort letter from an auditor is one procedure used by a requesting party to establish that the requesting party has conducted a “reasonable investigation,” as a defense against possible claims under Section 11 of the 1933 Act. What constitutes a reasonable investigation of unaudited financial information sufficient to satisfy a requesting party’s purposes is a matter of legal interpretation. Consequently, only the requesting party can determine what is sufficient for the requesting party’s purposes.

.A12 The assistance that the auditor can provide by way of a comfort letter is subject to limitations. One limitation is that auditors can properly comment in their professional capacity only on matters to which their professional expertise is relevant. Another limitation is that procedures contemplated in a comfort letter, which do not constitute an audit of financial statements, do not provide the auditor with a basis for expressing an opinion. Such limited procedures may bring to the auditor’s attention significant findings or issues affecting the financial information, but they do not provide assurance that the auditor will become aware of any or all significant findings or issues that would be disclosed in an audit. Accordingly, a risk exists that the auditor may have provided negative assurance on the absence of conditions or matters that may prove to have existed.

.A13 Comfort letters are not required under the 1933 Act, and copies are not filed with the SEC. Nonetheless, it is a common condition of an underwriting agreement in connection with the offering for sale of securities registered with the SEC under the 1933 Act that the auditor is to furnish a comfort letter. Some underwriters do not make the receipt of a comfort letter a condition of the underwriting agreement but, nevertheless, ask for such a letter.

.A14 Exhibit B, example A-1, “Typical Comfort Letter for a 1933 Act Offering,” provides an illustration of an appropriate way of expressing that the auditor cannot provide any assurance regarding the sufficiency of the procedures for the requesting party’s purposes.⁶

.A15 By providing a draft letter early in the process, the auditor has the opportunity to clearly show the requesting party what they may expect to receive from the auditor. Thus, the requesting party has the opportunity to discuss further with the auditor the procedures that the auditor expects to perform and to request any additional procedures that the requesting party may desire. If the additional procedures pertain to matters relevant to the auditor’s professional competence and the auditor is willing to perform them, a revised draft may be prepared.

.A16 Acceptance by the requesting party of the draft comfort letter (and subsequently by acceptance of the comfort letter in final form) is an indication to the auditor that the requesting party considers the procedures described to be sufficient for the requesting party’s purposes. Clearly describing the procedures to be followed by the auditor in the comfort letter avoids misunderstanding about the basis on which the auditor’s comments have been made and assists the requesting party in deciding whether the procedures performed are sufficient for the requesting party’s purposes.

.A17 The following is an example of a paragraph that may be placed on the draft letter for identification and explanation of its purposes and limitations.

This draft is furnished solely for the purpose of indicating the form of letter that we would expect to be able to furnish [*name of requesting party*] in response to their request, the matters expected to be covered in the letter, and the nature of the procedures that we would expect to carry out with respect to such matters. Based on our discussions with [*name of requesting party*], it is our understanding that the procedures outlined in this draft letter are those they wish us to follow. Unless [*name of requesting party*] informs us otherwise, we shall assume that there are no additional procedures they wish us to follow. The text of the letter itself will depend, of course, on the results of the procedures, which we would not expect to complete until shortly before the letter is given and in no event before the cut-off date indicated therein.

If the auditor has not had any discussions with the requesting party about the auditor’s planned procedures, the second sentence in this paragraph would be revised as follows: “In the absence of any discussions with [*name of requesting party*], we have set out in this draft letter those procedures referred to in the draft underwriting agreement (of which we have been furnished a copy) that we are willing to follow.”

.A18 Situations may exist in which more than one auditor is involved in the audit of the financial statements of a business and in which the reports of more than one auditor appear in the registration statement. For example, certain significant divisions, branches, or subsidiaries may be audited by component auditors.

.A19 Comfort letters are requested occasionally from more than one auditor, for example, in connection with securities offerings to be used in the subsequent sale of shares issued in recently effected mergers and from predecessor auditors. In such circumstances, it is the entity’s responsibility, at the earliest practicable date, to inform any other auditors who may be involved about any letter that may be requested of them and arrange for them to receive a draft of the underwriting agreement so that they may make arrangements at an early date for the preparation of a draft of their letter and for the performance of their procedures. The entity or requesting party is also responsible for arranging for a copy of the comfort letters of component auditors in draft and final form to be provided to the auditor of the group financial statements.

⁶ Paragraph 4 of example A-1, “Typical Comfort Letter for a 1933 Act Offering,” in exhibit B, “Examples of Comfort Letters.”

704 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.A20 In certain circumstances, regulations under the 1933 Act permit companies to register a designated amount of securities for continuous or delayed offerings during an extended period by filing one “shelf” registration statement. At the effective date of a shelf registration statement, the registrant may not yet have selected an underwriter. An entity or the legal counsel designated to represent the underwriting group may, however, ask the auditor to issue a comfort letter at the effective date of a shelf registration statement to expedite the due diligence activities of the underwriter when subsequently designated and to avoid later corrections of financial information included in an effective prospectus. However, as stated in paragraph .A11, only the underwriter can determine the procedures that will be sufficient for the underwriter’s purposes.

.A21 The auditor may agree to furnish the entity or legal counsel for the underwriting group with a draft comfort letter describing the procedures that the auditor has performed and the comments that the auditor is willing to express as a result of those procedures.

.A22 The following is an example of a legend describing the letter’s purpose and limitations.

This draft describes the procedures that we have performed and represents a letter we would be prepared to sign if the managing underwriter had been chosen and requested such a letter. The text of the final letter will depend, of course, on whether the managing underwriter who is selected requests that these and other procedures be performed to meet his or her needs and whether the managing underwriter requests that any of the procedures be updated to the date of issuance of the signed letter.

.A23 A signed comfort letter may be issued to the underwriter selected for the portion of the issue then being offered when the underwriting agreement for an offering is signed and on each closing date.

Format and Contents of Comfort Letters***Dating (Ref: par. .24–.25)***

.A24 The letter ordinarily is dated on, or shortly after, the underwriting agreement is signed.

.A25 The underwriting agreement ordinarily specifies the date, often referred to as the *cut-off date*, to which certain procedures described in the letter are to relate, for example, a date five days before the date of the letter. A factor in considering whether to accept the engagement is whether the period between the cut-off date and the date of the letter provides sufficient time to allow the auditor to perform the procedures and prepare the letter.

.A26 Comments included in an earlier letter that relate to information in the securities offering as most recently amended may be incorporated by reference in a subsequent letter. Exhibit B, example C, “Letter Reaffirming Comments in Example A as of a Later Date,” provides an example of such reference.

Addressee (Ref: par. .26)

.A27 An example of an appropriate form of address for this purpose is “The Blank Company and XYZ & Company, as Representative of the Several Underwriters.” Copies of a comfort letter addressed in accordance with the requirements in paragraph .26 may be provided to the auditor of the group financial statements when a comfort letter related to a component included in group financial statements is issued by a component auditor.

Auditor’s Report (Ref: par. .28–.33)

.A28 The requesting party occasionally requests that the auditor repeat in the comfort letter the report on the audited financial statements included in the registration statement. Because of the significance of the date of the auditor’s report, the auditor is not permitted to agree to this request.

.A29 Examples of matters addressed in emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraphs in the auditor’s report that do not affect the opinion on the basic financial statements are

- interim financial information accompanying or included in the notes to audited financial statements,⁷ or
- required supplementary information described in section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).⁸

.A30 A requesting party may request that the auditor comment in the comfort letter on

- unaudited interim financial information required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K, or
- required supplementary information.

Section 930, *Interim Financial Information*, applies to unaudited interim financial information, and section 730 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*) applies to required supplementary information. These sections require the auditor to modify the auditor's report on the audited financial statements to refer to such information when

- the scope of the procedures with regard to the information was restricted, or
- when the information appears not to be presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework or, for required supplementary information, applicable guidelines.

Such modifications of the auditor's report in the registration statement would ordinarily be referred to in the opening paragraph of the comfort letter (see also paragraph .43). Additional comments on such unaudited information are, therefore, unnecessary. However, if the requesting party requests that the auditor perform procedures with regard to such information in addition to those procedures performed in connection with the review or audit as prescribed by section 930 and section 730 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), the auditor may do so and report the findings.

.A31 The requesting party occasionally requests negative assurance regarding the auditor's report. Because auditors have a statutory responsibility with respect to their opinion as of the effective date of a securities offering and because the additional significance, if any, of negative assurance is unclear and such assurance may, therefore, give rise to misunderstanding, the auditor is not permitted to provide such negative assurance.

.A32 In the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter, the auditor may refer to the fact that the auditor has issued reports on

- summary financial statements that are derived from audited financial statements.⁹
- interim financial information.¹⁰
- pro forma financial information.¹¹
- a financial forecast.¹²
- MD&A.¹³

.A33 If the reports are not included in the securities offering, they may be attached to the comfort letter.

.A34 An example of a restricted use report that is not permitted to be referred to or attached to the comfort letter is a report on agreed-upon procedures.

⁷ Paragraphs .40–.41 of section 930, *Interim Financial Information*.

⁸ Paragraphs .07–.09 of section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

⁹ See section 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*.

¹⁰ See section 930.

¹¹ See AT section 401, *Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

¹² See AT section 301.

¹³ See AT section 701, *Management's Discussion and Analysis* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

706 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Representations (Ref: par. .34)**

.A35 Exhibit B, example A-2, “Typical Comfort Letter for a Non-1933 Act Offering When the Required Representation Letter Has Been Obtained,” contains a reference to the requesting party’s representations.

Independence (Ref: par. .35)

.A36 Exhibit B, example A-1 contains an illustration of an appropriate statement confirming the auditor’s independence under SEC rules and regulations in conjunction with SEC filings.

.A37 Exhibit B, example A-2 includes an illustration of an appropriate statement confirming the auditor’s independence in conjunction with a securities offering when the auditor is independent under AICPA standards.

.A38 The auditors for previously nonaffiliated entities recently acquired by the registrant would not be required to have been independent with respect to the entity whose shares are being registered. Exhibit B, example B, “Letter When a Short-Form Registration Statement Is Filed Incorporating Previously Filed Form 8-K by Reference,” includes an illustration of an appropriate statement concerning the auditor’s independence in such a case.

Compliance With SEC Requirements (Ref: par. .36–.40)

.A39 Although the guidance in this section generally addresses comfort letters issued in connection with securities offerings registered pursuant to the 1933 Act, it also provides guidance on comfort letters issued in other securities transactions. However, the guidance that specifically refers to compliance of the information commented on with SEC rules and regulations, such as compliance with Regulation S-X or S-K, generally applies only to comfort letters issued in connection with securities offerings registered pursuant to the 1933 Act.

.A40 The phrase *rules and regulations adopted by the SEC* is used because auditors are not expected to be familiar with, or express opinions on compliance with, informal positions of the SEC staff.

.A41 An illustration of an appropriate opinion regarding compliance as to form with pertinent accounting requirements adopted by the SEC is as follows:

In our opinion [*include phrase except as disclosed in the registration statement if applicable*], the [*identify the financial statements and financial statement schedules*] audited by us and included in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

.A42 Exhibit B, example K, “Alternate Wording When the SEC Has Agreed to a Departure From Its Accounting Requirements,” illustrates an appropriate manner of disclosing a material departure from the pertinent rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

.A43 The auditor may agree to examine or review MD&A in accordance with AT section 701.

Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements**General (Ref: par. .41–.43)**

.A44 Comments included in the letter will often concern

- unaudited interim financial information.
- capsule financial information.
- pro forma financial information.
- financial forecasts.
- subsequent changes in specified financial statement items.

When the auditor has been requested to provide negative assurance on interim financial information or capsule financial information, the procedures involved in a review performed in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information need not be specified.

.A45 Exhibit B, example A-1 contains an illustration of how the procedures performed by the auditor may be described.¹⁴

.A46 If the auditor states that the auditor has performed a review in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information, this does not imply that those procedures are sufficient for the requesting party's purposes. The requesting party may ask the auditor to perform additional procedures. For example, the requesting party may request that the auditor apply additional procedures and specify items of financial information to be reviewed and the materiality level for changes in those items that would necessitate further inquiry by the auditor.

.A47 The procedures performed with respect to interim periods may not disclose subsequent changes in the specified financial statement items, inconsistencies in the application of the applicable financial reporting framework, instances of noncompliance as to form with accounting requirements of the SEC, or other matters about which negative assurance is requested.

.A48 An illustration of an appropriate manner of noting the limitations of procedures performed is shown in example A-1 of exhibit B.¹⁵

.A49 Because there is no way for the auditor to anticipate other matters that would be of interest to a requesting party, the auditor is precluded, in accordance with paragraph .42, from making a statement that nothing else has come to the auditor's attention that would be of interest to the requesting party.

.A50 Exhibit B, example I, "Alternate Wording When Auditor's Report on Audited Financial Statements Contains an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph," contains an illustration of alternate wording when the auditor's report on audited financial statements is a modified report.

Knowledge of Internal Control (Ref: par. .44)

.A51 The auditor may have obtained a sufficient understanding of an entity's internal control over financial reporting for both annual and interim periods through performing an audit on the entity's financial statements for one or more periods.

Unaudited Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .45--.49)

.A52 The SEC requirements specify condensed financial statements. However, the requirements in paragraphs .45-.49 also apply to complete financial statements. For purposes of this section, interim financial statements may be for a 12-month period ending on a date other than the entity's normal year-end.

.A53 The auditor may, but is not required to, state in the comfort letter that the auditor has performed a review of interim financial information in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information, and has issued a report on the review.

.A54 Exhibit B, example A-1 provides an illustration of a description related to the procedures specified for a review in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information.¹⁶ Exhibit B, example O, "Alternate Wording When the Procedures That the Requesting Party Has Requested the Auditor to Perform on Interim Financial Information Are Less Than a Review in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards Applicable to Reviews of Interim Financial Information," provides an illustration of alternate wording when the procedures that the requesting party has requested the auditor to perform on interim financial information are less than a review in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information.

.A55 Exhibit B, example A-1 includes an illustration of an appropriate manner of making clear that the auditor is not expressing an opinion on unaudited interim financial information.¹⁷

¹⁴ Paragraph 4 of example A-1 in exhibit B.

¹⁵ See the last three sentences in paragraph 4 of example A-1 in exhibit B.

¹⁶ Paragraphs 4a and 5a of example A-1 in exhibit B.

¹⁷ Paragraph 3 of example A-1 in exhibit B.

708 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Capsule Financial Information (Ref: par. .50–.51)***

.A56 In some securities offerings, supplementary capsule financial information comprising unaudited summarized interim financial information for subsequent periods accompanies the information shown in the audited financial statements or unaudited interim financial information. This capsule financial information (either in narrative or tabular form) often is provided for the most recent interim period and for the corresponding period of the prior year.

.A57 The requesting party may ask the auditor to provide negative assurance with respect to the unaudited interim financial information, or unaudited condensed interim financial information that underlie the capsule financial information, and ask the auditor to state that the capsule financial information agrees with amounts set forth in such financial information. Exhibit B, example L, “Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form,” provides an illustration of the auditor’s comments in these circumstances.¹⁸

Pro Forma Financial Information (Ref: par. .52–.53)

.A58 An appropriate level of knowledge of the accounting and financial reporting practices of the entity may be obtained by the auditor auditing or reviewing, in accordance with GAAS, historical financial statements of the entity (or, in the case of a business combination, of a significant constituent part of the combined entity) for the most recent annual or interim period for which the pro forma financial information is presented.

.A59 Exhibit B, example D, “Comments on Pro Forma Financial Information,” provides an illustration of wording regarding procedures performed on pro forma financial information.

Financial Forecasts (Ref: par. .54–.57)

.A60 When an entity’s securities are subject to regulation by the SEC and the auditor agrees to perform a compilation of a financial forecast, the SEC’s views regarding independence are relevant. Independence may be deemed to be impaired when services include preparation or assembly of financial forecasts.

.A61 Exhibit B, example E, “Comments on a Financial Forecast,” provides illustrations of appropriate wording describing procedures performed on a financial forecast.

.A62 The attestation standards that apply to financial forecasts provide for examinations or compilations of financial forecasts but not reviews. If a compilation report on the financial forecast has been issued in connection with the comfort letter, the report need not be included in the securities offering.

Subsequent Changes (Ref: par. .58–.64)

.A63 Comments regarding subsequent changes typically relate to whether, during the change period, there has been any

- change in capital stock;
- increase in long-term debt; or
- decreases in other specified financial statement items.

These comments might also address such matters as subsequent changes in the amounts of

- net current assets or stockholders’ equity attributable to the entity.
- net sales and the income before continuing operations and of net income or net income attributable to the entity.

.A64 Procedures may include

- reading minutes and discussing with those charged with governance those meetings for which minutes have not been approved, and

¹⁸ Paragraphs 4b and 5b of example L, “Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form,” in exhibit B.

- making inquiries of entity officials relating to the whole of the change period and obtaining appropriate written representations of the entity officials to support the answers to the inquiries.

.A65 Exhibit B, example A-1 provides an illustration of a description of procedures related to subsequent changes.¹⁹

.A66 Examples of the application of the requirements of paragraph .59 are as follows:

- When the auditor has audited the December 31, 20X0 financial statements, the auditor may provide negative assurance about changes in specified financial statement items as of any date through May 14, 20X1 (134 days subsequent to December 31).
- When the auditor has audited the December 31, 20X0 financial statements and has also conducted a review of the interim financial information as of and for the quarter ended March 31, 20X1, in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information, the auditor may provide negative assurance about changes in specified financial statement items as of any date through August 12, 20X1 (134 days subsequent to March 31).

.A67 An appropriate manner of expressing negative assurance regarding subsequent changes is shown in exhibit B, in example A-1 if there has been no decrease, and in example M, "Alternate Wording When Auditors Are Aware of a Decrease in a Specified Financial Statement Item," if there has been a decrease.²⁰ Exhibit B, example O provides an illustration of reporting procedures performed and findings obtained when the procedures that the requesting party has requested the auditor to perform on interim financial information are less than a review performed in accordance with GAAS applicable to reviews of interim financial information.

.A68 In commenting on subsequent changes, the auditor may use terms such as *change*, *increase*, or *decrease*. Terms such as *adverse* are not clearly understood and may cause the comments on subsequent changes to be ambiguous.

.A69 The comparison for the change period relates to the entire period and not to portions of that period. A decrease during one part of the period may be offset by an equal or larger increase in another part of the period; however, because no decrease for the period as a whole existed, the comfort letter would not report the decrease occurring during one part of the period.

.A70 When more than one auditor is involved, the auditor of the group financial statements may comment that there were no decreases in the consolidated financial statement items, when appropriate, despite the possibility that decreases have been mentioned in a comfort letter issued by a component auditor. Exhibit B, example J, "Alternate Wording When More Than One Auditor Is Involved," contains an illustration of wording when more than one auditor is involved.

.A71 The underwriting agreement usually specifies the dates as of which, and periods for which, data at the cut-off date and data for the change period are to be compared. For balance sheet items, the comparison date is normally that of the latest balance sheet included in the securities offering (that is, immediately prior to the beginning of the change period). For income statement items, the comparison period or periods might be, but are not limited to, the corresponding period of the preceding year or a period of corresponding length immediately preceding the change period.

.A72 The reasons for identifying the date and period used for comparison are to avoid misunderstandings about the matters being compared, and so that the requesting party can determine whether the comparison period is suitable for the requesting party's purposes.

.A73 The requesting party occasionally requests that the change period begin immediately after the date of the latest audited balance sheet (which is, ordinarily, also the closing date of the latest audited statement of income) in the securities offering, even though the securities offering

¹⁹ Paragraph 6 of example A-1 in exhibit B.

²⁰ Paragraphs 5b and 6 of example A-1 in exhibit B.

710 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

includes a more recent unaudited balance sheet and statement of income. The use of the earlier date may defeat the requesting party's purpose because it is possible that an increase in one of the items referred to in paragraph .A63 occurring between the dates of the latest audited and unaudited balance sheets included in the securities offering might more than offset a decrease occurring after the latter date. A similar situation might arise in the comparison of income statement items. In these circumstances, the decrease occurring after the date of the latest unaudited interim financial statements included in the securities offering would not be reported in the comfort letter.

Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information (Ref: par. .65–.71)

.A74 Other financial information appearing in the securities offering does not include financial information that is covered by the auditor's opinion on the financial statements.

.A75 Because the term *presents fairly*, when used by independent auditors, ordinarily relates to presentations of financial statements, the use of the term in commenting on other types of information may be misleading.

.A76 When the auditor has conducted an examination or a review of MD&A in accordance with AT section 701, the auditor may agree to trace nonfinancial data presented outside MD&A to similar data included in the MD&A presentation. When the auditor does not perform a review or an examination of MD&A or does not attach or refer to a report on MD&A, the auditor may perform procedures agreed to with the requesting party with respect to items in MD&A subject to internal control over financial reporting.

.A77 Options for describing the procedures performed and the findings obtained include

- describing them individually for each item of specific information commented on.
- grouping or summarizing some or all of the descriptions, as long as
 - the procedures and findings are adequately described,
 - the applicability of the descriptions to items in the securities offering is clear, and
 - the descriptions do not imply that the auditor assumes responsibility for the adequacy of the procedures.
- presenting a matrix listing the financial information and common procedures employed and indicating the procedures applied to the specific items.
- identifying procedures performed with specified symbols and identifying items to which those procedures have been applied directly on a copy of the prospectus, which is attached to the comfort letter.

.A78 Exhibit B, examples F, “Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings,” G, “Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Summarized Description of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information,” and H, “Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Securities Offering (or Selected Pages) Identifies Items to Which Procedures Were Applied Through the Use of Designated Symbols,” provide illustrations of appropriate ways of expressing comments on tables, statistics, and other financial information.

.A79 Except with respect to requirements for financial statements and certain Regulation S-K items discussed in paragraph .72, the question of what constitutes appropriate information for compliance with the requirements of a particular item of the securities offering form is a matter of legal interpretation outside the competence of auditors.

.A80 Exhibit B, example F contains an illustration of an appropriate way of stating the limitations regarding the sufficiency of the auditor's procedures.²¹

²¹ Paragraph 9 of example F, “Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings,” in exhibit B.

Compliance as to Form With Regulation S-K (Ref: par. .72–.73)

.A81 The following are the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K that generally meet the criteria in paragraph .72:

- Item 301, “Selected Financial Data”
- Item 302, “Supplementary Financial Information”
- Item 402, “Executive Compensation”
- Item 503(d), “Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges”

.A82 Because information relevant to Regulation S-K disclosure requirements other than those noted previously is generally not derived from the accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting, it is not appropriate for the auditor to comment on conformity of this information with Regulation S-K.

.A83 The auditor’s inability to comment on conformity with Regulation S-K does not preclude the auditor from performing procedures and reporting findings with respect to this information.

.A84 Item 305, “Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk,” of Regulation S-K does not meet the criteria in paragraph .65 for the auditor to provide comments on the Item 305 qualitative disclosures because the disclosures are not derived from the accounting records but are descriptive and hypothetical or forward-looking in nature.

.A85 Item 305 does not meet the criteria in paragraph .72 for the auditor to provide negative assurance on conformity with Item 305. Although some information needed to comply with Item 305 is derived from the accounting records, registrants must also provide a substantial amount of information that is not derived from accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting.

.A86 Item 305 requires quantitative disclosures that may be presented in the form of a tabular presentation, sensitivity analysis, or value-at-risk disclosures. The auditor may perform limited procedures related to tabular presentations to the extent that such information is derived from the accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting.

.A87 The appendix, “Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K,” provides guidance on providing comments on Item 305 quantitative disclosures and examples of very simplified procedures, findings, and limitations related to Item 305 tabular presentation disclosures.

Concluding Paragraph (Ref: par. .74)

.A88 An illustration of an appropriate concluding paragraph is shown in exhibit B, examples A-1, A-2, and B.

Disclosure of Subsequently Discovered Matters (Ref: par. .75)

.A89 Subsequently discovered matters may include changes in specified items not disclosed in the securities offering, as discussed in paragraph .62.

.A90 The auditor’s participation in the meeting may be helpful when the entity and requesting party discuss such matters.

.A91

Appendix—Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K

.A91-1 Regulation S-K, Item 305, Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk, requires certain quantitative and qualitative disclosures with respect to derivative financial instruments, generally as defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification*TM glossary.

.A91-2 In addition to qualitative (that is, descriptive) disclosures, Item 305 requires quantitative disclosures that may be presented in the form of a tabular presentation, sensitivity analysis, or value-at-risk disclosures. Disclosures generally include a combination of historical and fair value data and the hypothetical effects on such data of assumed changes in interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates, commodity prices, and other relevant market rates. The quantitative and qualitative information required by Item 305 are disclosed outside the financial statements and related notes thereto.

.A91-3 Item 305 does not meet the criteria in paragraph .65 for the auditor to provide comments on the Item 305 qualitative disclosures because the disclosures are descriptive and are not derived from the accounting records because they are hypothetical or forward-looking in nature.

.A91-4 Although some information needed to comply with Item 305 is derived from the accounting records, registrants must also provide a substantial amount of information that is not derived from accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting. As a result, Item 305 does not meet the criteria in paragraph .72 for the auditor to provide negative assurance on conformity with Item 305 of Regulation S-K.

.A91-5 The three alternative forms of quantitative disclosures under Item 305 reflect hypothetical effects on market risk sensitive instruments and result in differing presentations. The forward-looking information used to prepare these presentations may be substantially removed from the accounting records that are subject to internal control over financial reporting. Further, paragraph .68 also states that the auditor should not comment on matters merely because the auditor is capable of reading, counting, measuring, or performing other functions that might be applicable. Accordingly, an auditor's ability to comment on these disclosures is largely dependent upon the degree to which the forward-looking information used to prepare these disclosures is linked to such accounting records.

.A91-6 The tabular presentation includes the fair values of market risk sensitive instruments and contract terms to determine the future cash flows from those instruments that are categorized by expected maturity dates. This approach may require the use of yield curves and implied forward rates to determine expected maturity dates, as well as assumptions regarding prepayments and weighted average interest rates.

.A91-7 The term *sensitivity analysis* describes a general class of models that are designed to assess the risk of loss in market risk sensitive instruments, based upon hypothetical changes in market rates or prices. Sensitivity analysis does not refer to any one, specific model and may include duration analysis or other "sensitivity" measures. The disclosures are dependent upon assumptions about theoretical future market conditions and, therefore, are not derived from the accounting records.

.A91-8 The term *value at risk* describes a general class of models that provide a probabilistic assessment of the risk of loss in market risk sensitive instruments over a selected period of time, with a selected likelihood of occurrences based upon selected confidence intervals. Value-at-risk disclosures are extremely aggregated and, in addition to the assumptions made for sensitivity analyses, may include additional assumptions regarding correlation between asset classes and future market volatilities. As a result, these disclosures are not derived from the accounting records.

.A91-9 Of the three disclosure alternatives, the tabular presentation contains the most limited number of assumptions and least complex mathematical calculations. Furthermore, certain information, such as contractual terms, included in a tabular presentation is derived from the accounting records. Accordingly, auditors may perform limited procedures related to tabular presentations to the extent that such information is derived from the accounting records subject to internal control over financial reporting.

.A91-10 The modeling techniques and underlying assumptions utilized for sensitivity analysis and value-at-risk disclosures generally will be highly complex. The resultant disclosures may be substantially different from the basic historical financial input derived directly from the accounting records. Due to the hypothetical and forward-looking nature of these disclosures and the potentially limited usefulness of any procedures that may be performed, sensitivity analysis or value-at-risk disclosures do not meet the criteria in paragraph .65 for the auditor to agree to make any comments or perform any procedures related to sensitivity analysis or value-at-risk disclosures.

.A91-11 When performing procedures related to tabular presentation disclosures, the auditor is required by paragraph .65 to consider whether the entity's documentation of its contractual positions in derivatives, commodities, and other financial instruments is subject to internal control over financial reporting and whether it provides a complete record of the entity's market risk sensitive instruments. In addition, the auditor is not permitted to express positive or negative assurance about the reasonableness of the assumptions underlying the disclosures.

.A91-12 Item 305 requires registrants to stratify financial instruments according to market risk category, that is, interest rate risk, foreign exchange risk, and equity price risk. Item 305 stipulates that if an instrument is at risk in more than one category, the instrument should be included in the disclosures for each applicable category. The stratifications and the company's determination of market risk categories are not derived from the company's accounting records. Accordingly, the auditor is not permitted to provide any findings that the company's stratifications are complete or comply as to form with Item 305 requirements and should disclaim with respect to the company's determination of market risk categories.

.A91-13 Item 305 encourages registrants to provide quantitative and qualitative information about market risk in terms of, among other things, the magnitude of actual past market movements and estimates of possible near-term market movements. As market data is not derived from the company's accounting records, the auditor is not permitted to agree to perform any procedures related to such market data.

.A91-14 Further, the auditor may need to utilize a specialist in performing procedures related to those disclosures.

.A91-15 The following examples, based on example H, "Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Securities Offering (or Selected Pages) Identifies Items to Which Procedures Were Applied Through the Use of Designated Symbols," of exhibit B, "Examples of Comfort Letters," provide very simplified procedures, findings, and limitations related to Item 305 tabular presentation disclosures. In practice, the procedures generally will be substantially more complex.

714 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122SymbolProcedures and Findings

Ö Compared with a schedule prepared by the Company from its accounting records. We (a) compared the amounts on the schedule to corresponding amounts appearing in the accounting records and found such amounts to be in agreement, and (b) determined that the schedule was mathematically correct. However, we make no comment as to the appropriateness or completeness of the Company's classification of its market-risk-sensitive instruments into market risk categories, nor as to its determination of the expected maturity dates or amounts. (Note: This is an example of procedures related to tabular presentations of face amounts, carrying amounts, fair values, and notional amounts, which stratify such amounts as to interest rate risk.)

Ä Compared with a schedule prepared by the Company from its accounting records to calculate weighted average fixed interest rates and weighted average fixed pay and receive rates and found such percentages to be in agreement. We (a) compared the amounts on the schedule to corresponding amounts appearing in the accounting records and found such amounts to be in agreement, and (b) determined that the schedule was mathematically correct. However, we make no comment as to the appropriateness of the Company's methodology in calculating weighted average fixed rates.

(Note: It may be necessary to provide a more complete description of the procedures performed in other circumstances.)

We make no comment as to the appropriateness or completeness of the Company's determination of the Regulation S-K requirements for quantitative and qualitative disclosures about market risks or with respect to the reasonableness of the assumptions underlying the disclosures.

[The following is an extract from a registration statement that illustrates how an auditor can document procedures performed on a tabular presentation of market risk disclosures made in accordance with Item 305 of Regulation S-K.]

INTEREST RATE SENSITIVITY

The following table provides information about the Company's derivative financial instruments and other financial instruments that are sensitive to changes in interest rates, including interest rate swaps and debt obligations. For debt obligations, the table presents principal cash flows and related weighted average interest rates by expected maturity dates. For interest rate swaps, the table presents notional amounts and weighted average interest rates by expected maturity dates. Notional amounts are used to calculate the contractual payments to be exchanged under the contract. Weighted average variable rates are based on implied forward rates in the yield curve at the reporting date. The information is presented in U.S. dollar equivalents, which is the Company's reporting currency. The instrument's actual cash flows are denominated in both U.S. dollars (\$US) and German deutschmarks (DM), as indicated in parentheses.

	Expected maturity dates							
	20X2 ¹	20X3 ¹	20X4 ¹	20X5 ¹	Thereafter ¹	Total	Fair Value	
Liabilities								
Long-Term Debt:	(\$US equivalent in millions)							
Fixed Rate (\$US)	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX Ö	\$XXX Ö	
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% Ä		
Fixed Rate (DM)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX Ö	XXX Ö	
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% Ä		
Variable Rate (\$US)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX Ö	XXX Ö	
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ¹		
Interest Rate Derivatives (\$US equivalent in millions)								
Interest Rate Swaps:								
Variable to fixed (\$US)	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX Ö	\$XXX Ö	
Average pay rate-fixed	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% Ä		
Average receive rate-variable	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ¹		
Fixed to Variable (\$US)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX Ö	XXX Ö	
Average pay rate-variable	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ¹		
Average receive rate-fixed	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% Ä		

¹ Because these disclosures include either management's expectations of future cash flows or the use of implied forward rates applied to such expected cash flows, such information does not meet the criteria of paragraph .65. Accordingly, the auditor is not permitted to express findings on amounts in these columns.



.A92

Exhibit A—Illustration of Representation Letter From Requesting Party (Ref: par. .A4)

The following is an example of a letter from a nonunderwriter when the securities offering is not being registered under the Securities Act of 1933.

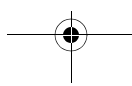
[Date]

Dear ABC Accountants:

[Name of requesting party], as principal or agent, in the placement of [identify securities] to be issued by [name of issuer], will be reviewing certain information relating to [issuer] that will be included (incorporated by reference) in the document [if appropriate, identify the document], which may be delivered to investors and utilized by them as a basis for their investment decision. This review process, applied to the information relating to the issuer, is (will be) substantially consistent with the due diligence review process that an underwriter would perform if this placement [issuance] of securities were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act). We are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that would be performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Act. We hereby request that you deliver to us a “comfort” letter concerning the financial statements of the issuer and certain statistical and other data included in the offering document. We will contact you to identify the procedures we wish you to follow and the form we wish the comfort letter to take.

Very truly yours,

[Name of Requesting Party]



.A93**Exhibit B—Examples of Comfort Letters**

	<i>Paragraph</i>
Example A: Typical Comfort Letters	.A93-3–.A93-4
Example A-1: Typical Comfort Letter for a 1933 Act Offering	.A93-3
Example A-2: Typical Comfort Letter for a Non-1933 Act Offering When the Required Representation Letter Has Been Obtained	.A93-4
Example B: Letter When a Short-Form Registration Statement Is Filed Incorporating Previously Filed Form 8-K by Reference	.A93-5
Example C: Letter Reaffirming Comments in Example A-1 as of a Later Date	.A93-6
Example D: Comments on Pro Forma Financial Information	.A93-7
Example E: Comments on a Financial Forecast	.A93-8
Example F: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings	.A93-9
Example G: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Summarized Description of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information	.A93-10
Example H: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Securities Offering (or Selected Pages) Identifies Items to Which Procedures Were Applied Through the Use of Designated Symbols	.A93-11
Example I: Alternate Wording When Auditor's Report on Audited Financial Statements Contains an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph	.A93-12
Example J: Alternate Wording When More Than One Auditor Is Involved	.A93-13
Example K: Alternate Wording When the SEC Has Agreed to a Departure From Its Accounting Requirements	.A93-14
Example L: Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form	.A93-15
Example M: Alternate Wording When Auditors Are Aware of a Decrease in a Specified Financial Statement Item	.A93-16
Example N: Alternate Wording of the Letter for Companies That Are Permitted to Present Interim Earnings Data for a 12-Month Period	.A93-17
Example O: Alternate Wording When the Procedures That the Requesting Party Has Requested the Auditor to Perform on Interim Financial Information Are Less Than a Review in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards Applicable to Reviews of Interim Financial Information	.A93-18
Example P: Intentionally Omitted (See example A-2)	
Example Q: Letter to a Requesting Party That Has Not Provided the Legal Opinion or the Representation Letter Required by Paragraph .11	.A93-19
Example R: Alternate Wording When Reference to Examination of Annual Management's Discussion and Analysis and Review of Interim Management's Discussion and Analysis Is Made	.A93-20

718 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Introduction**

.A93-1 The contents of comfort letters vary depending on the extent of the information in the securities offering and the wishes of the requesting party. Shelf registration statements may have several closing dates and different underwriters. Descriptions of procedures and findings regarding interim financial statements, tables, statistics, or other financial information that is incorporated by reference from previous Securities Exchange Act of 1934 filings may have to be repeated in several comfort letters. To avoid restating these descriptions in each comfort letter, the auditor may initially issue the comments in a format (such as an appendix) that can be referred to in, and attached to, subsequently issued comfort letters.

.A93-2 A typical comfort letter includes

- a. a statement regarding the independence of the auditor. (Ref: par. .15)
- b. if applicable, an opinion regarding whether the audited financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the securities offering comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 (the 1933 Act) and related rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). (Ref: par. .16–.20)
- c. negative assurance on whether
 - i. if applicable, the unaudited interim financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (Ref: par. .25–.26) complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
 - ii. any material modifications should be made to the unaudited financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the securities offering for them to be in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- d. negative assurance on whether, during a specified period following the date of the latest financial statements in the securities offering and prospectus, there has been any change in capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decrease in other specified financial statement items. (Ref: par. .38–.44)

Example A-1 contains a typical comfort letter for a 1933 Act offering and example A-2 contains a typical comfort letter for a non-1933 Act offering. Letters that cover some of the items may be developed by omitting inapplicable portions of these examples. Examples B, D—O, and R contain additional or alternate wording for examples A-1 or A-2, as applicable, for various scenarios.

Although the illustrations in this exhibit describe procedures that may be followed by auditors as a basis for their comments, this section does not necessarily prescribe such procedures.

Example A: Typical Comfort Letters**Example A-1: Typical Comfort Letter for a 1933 Act Offering**

.A93-3 Example A-1 is an example of a letter that the auditor of a nonissuer may provide when a registrant is including the nonissuer's financial statements in the securities offering to be filed with the SEC. Appropriate modifications would be made if additional financial information is covered by the comfort letter. Example A-1 assumes the following circumstances:

- The prospectus includes audited consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and audited consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each year in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5. Note that the example assumes all the net income is attributable to the company. If that were not the case, the references to net income would be modified, or additional references would be included as appropriate.
- The prospectus also includes an unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, reviewed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable to reviews of interim financial information but not previously reported on by the auditor. The exam-

ple also assumes that the auditor has not previously reported on the interim financial information. If the auditor has previously reported on the interim financial information, that fact may be referred to in the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter as follows:

Also, we have reviewed the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the three-month periods then ended, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 20X6, which is included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement.

The cut-off date is June 23, 20X6, and the letter is dated June 28, 20X6. The effective date is June 28, 20X6.

- The auditors are reporting independence under the SEC rules and regulations. If the auditors were not required to be independent under the SEC rules and regulations in conjunction with an SEC filing, paragraph 1 in example A-1 would be replaced with paragraph 1 in example A-2.

The auditor may agree to comment in the comfort letter on whether the interim financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

The example also assumes that there has been no change in the application of a requirement of generally accepted accounting principles during the interim period. If there has been such a change, a reference to that change would be included in paragraph 5 of example A-1.

Each of the comments in the letter is in response to a requirement of the underwriting agreement. For purposes of example A-1, the income statement items of the current interim period are to be compared with those of the corresponding period of the preceding year.

June 28, 20X6

[Addressee]

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and the related notes to the consolidated financial statements, all included in The Issuer Company's (the registrant) registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-1 filed by the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our report with respect thereto is also included in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 20X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement.

In connection with the registration statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company within the meaning of the 1933 Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.
2. In our opinion [*include the phrase* except as disclosed in the registration statement *if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements audited by us and included in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5; although, we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 20X5, the purpose (and, therefore, the

720 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 20X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5.

4. For purposes of this letter we have read the 20X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and *[include other appropriate committees, if any]* of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein and having discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on *[dates]*; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 20X6 to June 28, 20X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Performed the procedures specified for a review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registration statement.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in *a(i)* comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited consolidated financial statements of the company and subsidiaries for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6 furnished us by the company, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6, were available. *[If applicable: The financial information for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6 is incomplete in that it omits the statements of cash flows and other disclosures.]*
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in *b(i)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- a. (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i), included in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹
- (ii) The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i) do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i) At May 31, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or
- (ii) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared to the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

6. As mentioned in 4b, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6 are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 20X6 have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or (b) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 23, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or in income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

7. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

¹ Section 930, *Interim Financial Information*, does not require the auditor to modify the report on a review of interim financial information for a lack of consistency in the application of accounting policies provided that the interim financial information appropriately discloses such matters.

722 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Example A-2: Typical Comfort Letter for a Non-1933 Act Offering When the Required Representation Letter Has Been Obtained**

.A93-4 Example A-2 is applicable when a comfort letter is issued in a non-1933 Act offering. Example A-2 assumes the following:

- The offerer is not an SEC registrant.
- The requesting party has given the auditor a representation letter as required by paragraph .10 and described in paragraph .11.
- Interim financial information is included in the offering document, and the auditor has performed review procedures in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable to reviews of interim financial information.
- The auditor did not perform an audit of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting in any period.
- There has not been a change in the application of a requirement of generally accepted accounting principles during the interim period. If there has been such a change, a reference to that change would be included in paragraph 4 of example A-2.

The cut-off date is June 23, 20X6, and the letter is dated June 28, 20X6.

Each of the comments in the letter is in response to a request from the requesting party. For purposes of example A-2, the income statement items of the current interim period are to be compared with those of the corresponding period of the preceding year.

June 28, 20X6

[Addressee]

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and the related notes to the consolidated financial statements, all included [*or incorporated by reference*] in the offering memorandum for \$30,000,000 of Senior Debt due May 30, 20Z6. Our report with respect thereto is included in the offering memorandum. This offering memorandum, dated June 28, 20X6, is herein referred to as the Offering Memorandum.

This letter is being furnished in reliance upon your representation to us that—

- a. You are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that would be performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act).
- b. In connection with the offering of Senior Debt, the review process you have performed is substantially consistent with the due diligence review process that you would have performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Act.

In connection with the Offering Memorandum—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company under Rule 101 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct and its interpretations and rulings.
2. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5; although, we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 20X5, the purpose (and, therefore, the

scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 20X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, of cash flows, and of changes in stockholders' equity for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X5 and 20X6, included in the Offering Memorandum, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5.

3. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 20X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and *[include other appropriate committees, if any]* of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein and having discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on *[dates]*; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 20X6 to June 28, 20X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Performed the procedures specified for a review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the Offering Memorandum.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited consolidated financial statements of the company and subsidiaries for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6 furnished us by the company, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6, were available. *[If applicable: The financial information for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6 is incomplete in that it omits the statement of cash flows and other disclosures.]*
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in *b(i)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the Offering Memorandum.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

4. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- a. (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in *3a(i)*, included in

724 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

the Offering Memorandum, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.²

- b. (i) At May 31, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the Offering Memorandum, or
- (ii) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared to the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or in income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the Offering Memorandum discloses have occurred or may occur.

5. As mentioned in 3*b*, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6 are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 20X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 3. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the Offering Memorandum, or (b) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 23, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 3, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the Offering Memorandum discloses have occurred or may occur.

6. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the requesting party in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the Offering Memorandum, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the Offering Memorandum or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the Purchase Contract or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the Offering Memorandum.

Example B: Letter When a Short-Form Registration Statement Is Filed Incorporating Previously Filed Form 8-K by Reference

.A93-5 Example B is an example of modifications to the letter that the auditor of a nonissuer may provide when a registrant has acquired the nonissuer, and the registrant uses a short-form registration statement (for example, Form S-3), which incorporates a previously filed Form 8-K that includes the nonpublic company's financial statements. The auditor was independent of the nonissuer but is not independent with respect to the registrant.

² Section 930 does not require the auditor to modify the report on a review of interim financial information for a lack of consistency in the application of accounting policies provided that the interim financial information appropriately discloses such matters.

June 28, 20X6

[Addressee]

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and the related notes to the consolidated financial statements, all included in The Issuer Company's (the registrant) current report on Form 8-K dated May 15, 20X6, and incorporated by reference in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-3 filed by the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our report with respect thereto is also incorporated by reference in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 20X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement.

In connection with the registration statement—

1. As of *[insert date of the auditor's most recent report on the financial statements of the entity]* and during the period covered by the financial statements on which we reported, we were independent certified public accountants with respect to the company under Rule 101 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct and its interpretations and rulings.
2. In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements audited by us and incorporated by reference in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 20X5, the purpose (and, therefore, the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 20X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the consolidated financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to, and do not express any opinion on, the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registrant's current report on Form 8-K dated May 15, 20X6, incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5.
4. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 20X6 minutes of the meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and *[include other appropriate committees, if any]* of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein, and having discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on *[dates]*; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 20X6 to June 28, 20X6, inclusive):

With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—

726 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- (i) Performed a review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registrant's current report on Form 8-K dated May 15, 20X6, incorporated by reference in the registration statement.
- (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in (i) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations about the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4(i), incorporated by reference in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- (ii) The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4(i) do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

6. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and for use of the auditors of the registrant in furnishing their letter to the underwriters, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to, in whole or in part, in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example C: Letter Reaffirming Comments in Example A-1 as of a Later Date

.A93-6 If more than one comfort letter is requested, the later letter may, in appropriate situations, refer to information appearing in the earlier letter without repeating such information (see paragraph .25 of this section and paragraph .A93-1 of this exhibit). Example C reaffirms and updates the information in example A-1.

July 25, 20X6

[Addressee]

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

We refer to our letter of June 28, 20X6, relating to the registration statement (no. 33-00000) of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company). We reaffirm as of the

date hereof (and as though made on the date hereof) all statements made in that letter except that, for the purposes of this letter

- a. The registration statement to which this letter relates is as amended on July 13, 20X6 [*effective date*].
- b. The reading of minutes described in paragraph 4 of that letter has been carried out through July 20, 20X6 [*the new cut-off date*].
- c. The procedures and inquiries covered in paragraph 4 of that letter were carried out to July 20, 20X6 [*the new cut-off date*] (our work did not extend to the period from July 21, 20X6 to July 25, 20X6 [*date of letter*], inclusive).
- d. The period covered in paragraph 4b of that letter is changed to the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 30, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 20X6, were available.
- e. The references to May 31, 20X6 in paragraph 5b of that letter are changed to June 30, 20X6.
- f. The references to May 31, 20X6 and June 23, 20X6 in paragraph 6 of that letter are changed to June 30, 20X6 and July 20, 20X6, respectively.

This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to, in whole or in part, in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example D: Comments on Pro Forma Financial Information

.A93-7 Example D is applicable when the auditor is asked to provide negative assurance on (a) whether the pro forma financial information included in a registration statement complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of Rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X, and (b) the application of pro forma adjustments to historical amounts in the compilation of the pro forma financial information (see paragraphs .52–.53). The material in this example is intended to be inserted between paragraphs 6 and 7 in example A-1. The example assumes that the auditor has not previously reported on the pro forma financial information. If the auditor did previously report on the pro forma financial information, they may refer in the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter to the fact that they have issued a report, and the report may be attached to the comfort letter (see paragraph .A32–.A33). Therefore, in that circumstance, the procedures in 6b(i) and 6c ordinarily would not be performed, and the auditor would not separately comment on the application of pro forma adjustments to historical financial information because that assurance is encompassed in the auditors' report on pro forma financial information. The auditor may, however, agree to comment on compliance as to form with the applicable accounting requirements of Rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.

6. At your request, we have—

- a. Read the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statements of income for the year ended December 31, 20X5, and the three-month period ended March 31, 20X6, included in the registration statement.

728 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- b. Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters about
 - (i) the basis for their determination of the pro forma adjustments and
 - (ii) whether the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in 6a comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of Rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.
- c. Proved the arithmetic accuracy of the application of the pro forma adjustments to the historical amounts in the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements.

The foregoing procedures are substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assumptions, the pro forma adjustments, and the application of those adjustments to historical financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The foregoing procedures would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representation about the sufficiency of such procedures for your purposes.

7. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the procedures specified in paragraph 6, however, that caused us to believe that the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in 6a included in the registration statement have not been properly compiled on the pro forma bases described in the notes thereto. Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

Example E: Comments on a Financial Forecast

.A93-8 Example E is applicable when an auditor is asked to comment on a financial forecast (see paragraph .54). The material in this example is intended to be inserted between paragraphs 6 and 7 in example A-1 and 5 and 6 in example A-2. The example assumes that the auditor has previously reported on the compilation of the financial forecast and that the report is attached to the letter (see paragraph .A33 and example O).

7. At your request, we performed the following procedure with respect to the forecasted consolidated balance sheet and consolidated statements of income and cash flows as of December 31, 20X6, and for the year then ending. With respect to forecasted rental income, we compared the occupancy statistics about expected demand for rental of the housing units to statistics for existing comparable properties and found them to be the same.

8. Because the procedure described above does not constitute an examination of prospective financial statements in accordance with standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, we do not express an opinion on whether the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines or on whether the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the presentation.

Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the forecast in accordance with standards promulgated by the AICPA, matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you. Furthermore, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material.

Example F: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings

.A93-9 Example F is applicable when the auditor is asked to comment on tables, statistics, or other compilations of information appearing in a registration statement (paragraphs .65–.71). Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraphs in example F are intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A-1 or paragraph 5 in example A-2.

In some cases, the auditor may wish to combine in one paragraph the substance of paragraphs 6 and 8 shown as follows. This may be done by expanding the identification of items in paragraph 8 to provide the identification information included in paragraph 6. In such cases, the introductory sentences in paragraphs 6 and 8 and the text of paragraph 7 might be combined as follows: “For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following information and have performed the additional procedures stated below with respect to such information. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements. . .”

6. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following, set forth in the securities offering on the indicated pages.

<i>Item</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>a</i>	4	“Capitalization.” The amounts under the captions “Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6” and “As Adjusted.” The related notes, except the following in Note 2: “See Transactions With Interested Persons.” From the proceeds of this offering the company intends to prepay \$900,000 on these notes, pro rata. See “Use of Proceeds.”
<i>b</i>	13	“History and Business—Sales and Marketing.” The table following the first paragraph.
<i>c</i>	33	“Selected Financial Data.”

7. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, or any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

8. However, for purposes of this letter, we have performed the following additional procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the items enumerated above.

<i>Item in 6</i>	<i>Procedures and Findings</i>
<i>a</i>	We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption, “Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6,” with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company’s general ledger and found them to be in agreement. We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption, “Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6,” adjusted for the issuance of the debentures to be offered by means of the securities offering and for the proposed use of a portion of the proceeds thereof to prepay portions of certain notes, as described under “Use of Proceeds,” with the amounts and numbers of shares shown under the caption, “As Adjusted,” and found such amounts and numbers of shares to be in agreement. (However, we make no comments regarding the reasonableness of the “Use of Proceeds” or whether such use will actually take place.)

730 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- b* We compared the amounts of military sales, commercial sales, and total sales shown in the securities offering with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's accounting records for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods and found them to be in agreement. We proved the arithmetic accuracy of the percentages of such amounts of military sales and commercial sales to total sales for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods. We compared such computed percentages with the corresponding percentages appearing in the registration statement and found them to be in agreement.
- c* We compared the amounts of net sales and income from continuing operations for the years ended December 31, 20X5, 20X4, and 20X3, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements for 20X2 and 20X1 and found them to be in agreement.

We compared the amounts of total assets, long-term obligations, and redeemable preferred stock at December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts at December 31, 20X3, 20X2, and 20X1, with the corresponding amounts in the consolidated financial statements for 20X3, 20X2, and 20X1 and found them to be in agreement.

We compared the information included under the heading "Selected Financial Data" with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K. We also inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether this information conforms in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures that caused us to believe that this information does not conform in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K.

9. It should be understood that we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraph; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data as set forth in the registration statement and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosure or regarding whether any material facts have been omitted.

Example G: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Summarized Description of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information

.A93-10 Example G illustrates, in paragraph 8a, a method of summarizing the descriptions of procedures and findings regarding tables, statistics, and other financial information in order to avoid repetition in the comfort letter. Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraphs in example G are intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A-1 or paragraph 5 in example A-2.

Other methods of summarizing the descriptions may also be appropriately used. For example, the letter may present a matrix listing the financial information and common procedures employed and indicating the procedures applied to specific items.

6. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following, set forth in the registration statement on the indicated pages.

<i>Item</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>a</i>	4	"Capitalization." The amounts under the captions "Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6" and "As Adjusted." The related notes, except the following in Note 2: "See Transactions With Interested Persons." From the proceeds of this offering the company intends to prepay \$900,000 on these notes, pro rata. See "Use of Proceeds."
<i>b</i>	13	"History and Business—Sales and Marketing." The table following the first paragraph.
<i>c</i>	33	"Selected Financial Data."

7. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, or any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions, such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

8. However, for purposes of this letter and with respect to the items enumerated in 6 above.

- a.* Except for item 6*a*, we have (i) compared the dollar amounts either with the amounts in the audited consolidated financial statements described in the introductory paragraph of this letter or, for prior years, included in the company's accounting records, or with amounts in the unaudited consolidated financial statements described in paragraph 3 to the extent such amounts are included in or can be derived from such statements and found them to be in agreement; (ii) compared the amounts of military sales, commercial sales, and total sales with amounts in the company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement; (iii) compared other dollar amounts with amounts shown in analyses prepared by the company and found them to be in agreement; and (iv) proved the arithmetic accuracy of the percentages based on the data in the above-mentioned financial statements, accounting records, and analyses.

We compared the information in item 6*c* with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K. We also inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether this information conforms in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures that caused us to believe that this information does not conform in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of Item 301 of Regulation S-K.

- b.* With respect to item 6*a*, we compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6" with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's general ledger at May 31, 20X6, and found them to be in agreement. We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of May 31, 20X6," adjusted for the issuance of the debentures to be offered by means of the securities offering and for the proposed use of a portion of the proceeds thereof to prepay portions of certain notes, as described under "Use of Proceeds," with the amounts and numbers of shares shown under the caption, "As Adjusted" and found such amounts and numbers of shares to be in agreement. (However, we make no comments regarding the reasonableness of "Use of Proceeds" or whether such use will actually take place.)

732 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

9. It should be understood that we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraph; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data as set forth in the registration statement and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosure or regarding whether any material facts have been omitted.

Example H: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Securities Offering (or Selected Pages) Identifies Items to Which Procedures Were Applied Through the Use of Designated Symbols

.A93-11 This example illustrates an alternate format, which could facilitate reporting when the auditor is requested to perform procedures on numerous statistics included in a securities offering. Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraph in example H is intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A-1 or paragraph 5 in example A-2.

7. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the items identified by you on the attached copy of the registration statement and have performed the following procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the symbols explained below:

- ✓ Compared the amount with ABC Company's financial statements for the period indicated included in the securities offering and found them to be in agreement.

8. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, nor any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions, such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

9. It should be understood that we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraph; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data as set forth in the registration statement and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosure or regarding whether any material facts have been omitted.

[The following is an extract from a securities offering that illustrates how an auditor can document procedures performed on numerous statistics included in the securities offering.]

Summary Financial Information of ABC Company
(In thousands)

	ABC Company Year Ended December 31,		
<i>Income statement data</i>	20X3	20X4	20X5
Revenue from home sales	\$104,110 ✓	\$115,837 ✓	\$131,032 ✓
Gross profit from sales	23,774 ✓	17,099 ✓	22,407 ✓
Income from home building net of tax	7,029 ✓	1,000 ✓	3,425 ✓

Example I: Alternate Wording When Auditor's Report on Audited Financial Statements Contains an Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph

.A93-12 Example I is applicable when the auditor's report on the audited financial statements included in the securities offering contains an emphasis-of-matter paragraph regarding a matter that would also affect the unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial statements included in the securities offering. The introductory paragraph would be revised as follows:

Our reports with respect thereto (which contain an emphasis-of-matter paragraph that describes a lawsuit to which the Company is a defendant, discussed in note 8 to the consolidated financial statements), are also included in the securities offering.

The matter described in the emphasis-of-matter paragraph would also be evaluated to determine whether it also requires mention in the comments on the unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial information (paragraph 5*b* of example A-1). If it is concluded that mention of such a matter in the comments on unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements is appropriate, a sentence would be added at the end of paragraph 5*b* in example A-1 and paragraph 4*b* of example A-2:

Reference should be made to the introductory paragraph of this letter, which states that our audit report covering the consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X5, includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph that describes a lawsuit to which the company is a defendant, discussed in note 8 to the consolidated financial statements.

Example J: Alternate Wording When More Than One Auditor Is Involved

.A93-13 Example J applies when more than one auditor is involved in the audit of the financial statements of a business, and the group engagement team has obtained a copy of the comfort letter of the component auditors (see paragraph .21). Example J consists of an addition to paragraph 4, a substitution for the applicable part of paragraph 5, and an addition to paragraph 6 of example A-1 and paragraph 3, 4, and 5 of example A-2, respectively.

[4]c. We have read the letter dated _____ of [*the other auditors*] with regard to [*the related company*].

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures (which, so far as [*the related company*] is concerned, consisted solely of reading the letter referred to in 4c), however, that caused us to believe that...

6. . . .On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes and the letter dated _____ of [*the other auditors*] with regard to [*the related company*], as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

Example K: Alternate Wording When the SEC Has Agreed to a Departure From Its Accounting Requirements

.A93-14 Example K is applicable when (a) there is a departure from the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, and (b) representatives of the SEC have agreed to the departure. Paragraph 2 of example A-1 would be revised to read as follows:

2. In our opinion [*include the phrase except as disclosed in the registration statement if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC; however, as agreed to by representatives of the SEC, separate financial statements and financial statement schedules of ABC Company (an equity investee) as required by Rule 3-09 of Regulation S-X have been omitted.

734 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Example L: Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form**

.A93-15 Example L is applicable when (a) the statement of income in the securities offering is supplemented by later information regarding sales and earnings (capsule financial information), (b) the auditor is asked to comment on that information (paragraphs .50–.51), and (c) the auditor has conducted a review in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable to reviews of interim financial information of the financial statements from which the capsule financial information is derived. The same facts exist as in example A-1, except for the following:

- Sales and net income (no extraordinary items) share for the six-month periods ended June 30, 20X6 and 20X5 (both unaudited), are included in capsule form more limited than that specified by Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 270, *Interim Reporting*.
- No financial statements later than those for June 20X6 are available.
- The letter is dated July 25, 20X6, and the cut-off date is July 20, 20X6.

Paragraphs 4, 5, and 6 of example A-1 would be revised to read as follows:

4. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 20X6 minutes of the meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at July 20, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein and discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on [*dates*]; we have carried out other procedures to July 20, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from July 21, 20X6 to July 25, 20X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Performed the procedures specified for a review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registration statement.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. With respect to the six-month periods ended June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited amounts for sales, net income, and earnings per share for the six-month periods ended June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, as set forth in paragraph [*identify location*].
 - (ii) Performed the procedures specified for a review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, applicable to reviews of interim financial information, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of June 30, 20X6 and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the six-month periods ended June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, from which the unaudited amounts referred to in b(i) are derived.

- (iii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited amounts referred to in *b(i)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited consolidated statements of income.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- a. (i)* Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in *4a(i)*, included in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
 - (ii)* The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in *4a(i)* do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i)* The unaudited amounts for sales and net income for the six-month periods ended June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, referred to in *4b(i)* do not agree with the amounts set forth in the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements for those same periods.
- (ii)* The unaudited amounts referred to in *4b(i)* were not determined on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited consolidated statements of income.
- c.* At June 30, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

6. Company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 20X6 are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after June 30, 20X6 have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether *(a)* at July 20, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement; or *(b)* for the period from July 1, 20X6 to July 20, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or in income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

736 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Example M: Alternate Wording When Auditors Are Aware of a Decrease in a Specified Financial Statement Item**

.A93-16 Example M covers a situation in which auditors are aware of a decrease in a financial statement item on which they are requested to comment (see paragraphs .58–.64). The same facts exist as in example A-1, except for the decrease covered in the following change in paragraph 5*b*.

- b.* (i) At May 31, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decrease in consolidated stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or
- (ii) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur and except that the unaudited consolidated balance sheet as of May 31, 20X6, which we were furnished by the company, showed a decrease from March 31, 20X6 in consolidated net current assets as follows (in thousands of dollars):

	<i>Current Assets</i>	<i>Current Liabilities</i>	<i>Net Current Assets</i>
March 31, 20X6	\$4,251	\$1,356	\$2,895
May 31, 20X6	3,986	1,732	2,254

6. As mentioned in 4*b*, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 20X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement; or (b) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 23, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur and except as described in the following sentence: We have been informed by officials of the company that there continues to be a decrease in net current assets that is estimated to be approximately the same amount as set forth in 5*b* [or whatever other disclosure fits the circumstances].

Example N: Alternate Wording of the Letter for Companies That Are Permitted to Present Interim Earnings Data for a 12-Month Period

.A93-17 Certain types of companies are permitted to include earnings data for a 12-month period to the date of the latest balance sheet furnished in lieu of earnings data for both the interim period between the end of the latest fiscal year and the date of the latest balance sheet and the corresponding period of the preceding fiscal year. The following would be substituted for the applicable part of paragraph 3 of example A-1.

3. . . was to enable us to express our opinion on the financial statements as of December 31, 20X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any period included in part within that year. Therefore, we are unable to, and do not express any opinion on, the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the related unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the 12 months then ended included in the securities offering.

Example O: Alternate Wording When the Procedures That the Requesting Party Has Requested the Auditor to Perform on Interim Financial Information Are Less Than a Review in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards Applicable to Reviews of Interim Financial Information

.A93-18 The example assumes that the requesting party has asked the auditor to perform specified procedures on the interim financial information and report thereon in the comfort letter. The letter is dated June 28, 20X6; procedures were performed through June 23, 20X6, the cut-off date. Because a review in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable to reviews of interim financial information was not performed on the interim financial information as of March 31, 20X6, and for the quarter then ended, the auditor is limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained on the interim financial information. The following would be substituted for paragraph 4a of example A-1. Example O assumes there has not been a change in the application of a requirement of generally accepted accounting principles during the interim period. If there has been such a change, a reference to that change would be included in subparagraph a(ii) that follows.

4. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 20X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and *[include other appropriate committees, if any]* of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein and having discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on *[dates]*; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 20X6 to June 28, 20X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the registration statement, and agreed the amounts included therein with the company's accounting records as of March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the three-month periods then ended.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i): (1) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement, and (2) comply as to form, in all material respects, with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Those officials stated that the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements (1) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements, and (2) comply as to form, in all material respects, with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

Example P: Intentionally Omitted (See example A-2)³**Example Q: Letter to a Requesting Party That Has Not Provided the Legal Opinion or the Representation Letter Required by Paragraph .11**

.A93-19 This example illustrates the letter to be provided in accordance with paragraph .11 in which the auditor does not provide negative assurance. This example assumes that these procedures are being performed at the request of the placement agent on information included in an offering circular in connection with a private placement of unsecured notes. The letter is dated June 30, 20X6; procedures were performed through June 25, 20X6, the cut-off date. The statements in paragraphs 4–8 of the example are illustrative of the statements required to be included by paragraph .12.

This example may also be used in connection with a filing under the 1933 Act when a party other than a named underwriter (for example, a selling shareholder) has not provided the auditor with the representation letter described in paragraph .11. In such a situation, this example may be modified to include the auditor's comments on independence and compliance as to form of the audited financial statements and financial statements schedules with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1933 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Paragraph 1a(ii) may include an inquiry, and the response of company officials, on compliance as to form of the unaudited condensed interim financial statements.

June 30, 20X6

[Addressee]

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and the related notes to the consolidated financial statements, all included in the offering circular for \$30,000,000 of notes due June 30, 20Z6. Our report with respect thereto is included in the offering circular. The offering circular dated June 30, 20X6, is herein referred to as the offering circular.

We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company under Rule 101 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct and its interpretations and rulings.

We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5; although, we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 20X5, the purpose (and, therefore, the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 20X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to, and do not express any opinion on, the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the

³ Example P, "A Typical Comfort Letter in a Non-1933 Act Offering, Including the Required Underwriter Representations," in AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), was moved to example A-2, "Typical Comfort Letter for a Non-1933 Act Offering When the Required Representation Letter Has Been Obtained," in this section when AU section 634 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*) was redrafted for clarity, and is intentionally blank to retain the letters assigned to the other examples.

three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the offering circular, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5.

1. At your request, we have read the 20X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company as set forth in the minute books at June 25, 20X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings through that date were set forth therein and having discussed with us the unapproved minutes of meetings held on [*dates*]; we have carried out other procedures to June 25, 20X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 26, 20X6 to June 30, 20X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 20X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, stockholders' equity, and cash flows of the company for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, included in the offering circular, and agreed the amounts included therein with the company's accounting records as of March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the three-month periods then ended.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular. Those officials stated that the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements of the company for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6, furnished us by the company, and agreed the amounts included therein with the company's accounting records. Officials of the company have advised us that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6 were available. [*if applicable: The financial information for April and May of both 20X5 and 20X6 is incomplete in that it omits the statements of cash flows and other disclosures.*]
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (1) the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in b(i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular, (2) at May 31, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the offering circular, and (3) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or in income before extraordinary items or of net income.

740 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Those officials stated that (1) the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in *b(ii)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular, (2) at May 31, 20X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt, and no decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the offering circular, and (3) there were no decreases for the period from April 1, 20X6 to May 31, 20X6, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales, or in income before extraordinary items or of net income.

- c. As mentioned in *1b*, company officials have advised us that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 20X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 20X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in *1a* and *1b*. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (i) at June 25, 20X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the offering circular or (ii) for the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 25, 20X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in income before extraordinary items or of net income.

Those officials referred to above stated that (i) at June 25, 20X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt, and no decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 20X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet, and (ii) there were no decreases for the period from April 1, 20X6 to June 25, 20X6, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in income before extraordinary items or of net income.

2. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the items identified by you on the attached copy of the offering circular and have performed the following procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the symbols explained below:

- ☒ Compared the amount with the company's financial statements for the period indicated and found them to be in agreement.
- ☒ Compared the amount with the company's financial statements for the period indicated included in the offering circular and found them to be in
- ☐ Compared with a schedule or report prepared by the company and found them to be in agreement.

3. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, nor for any

other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions, such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

4. It should be understood that we have no responsibility for establishing (and did not establish) the scope and nature of the procedures enumerated in paragraphs 1–3 above; rather, the procedures enumerated therein are those the requesting party asked us to perform. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation⁴ or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above as set forth in the offering circular. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosures or whether any material facts have been omitted. This letter relates only to the financial statement items specified above and does not extend to any financial statement of the company as a whole.

5. The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Had we performed additional procedures or had we conducted an audit or a review of the company's March 31, April 30, or May 31, 20X6 and 20X5 condensed consolidated financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

6. These procedures should not be taken to supplant any additional inquiries or procedures that you would undertake in your consideration of the proposed offering.

7. This letter is solely for your information and to assist you in your inquiries in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the offering circular, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to, in whole or in part, in the offering circular or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the offering document.

8. We have no responsibility to update this letter for events and circumstances occurring after June 25, 20X6.

Example R: Alternate Wording When Reference to Examination of Annual Management's Discussion and Analysis and Review of Interim Management's Discussion and Analysis Is Made

.A93-20 This example is applicable when the auditor is making reference to an examination of annual MD&A and a review of interim MD&A. The same facts exist as in example A-1, except for the following:

- The auditor has examined the company's Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) for the year ended December 31, 20X5, in accordance with AT section 701, *Management's Discussion and Analysis* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).
- The auditor has also performed reviews of the company's unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable to reviews of interim financial information and the company's MD&A for the three-month period ended March 31, 20X6, in accordance with AT section 701.
- The accountant's reports on the examination and review of MD&A have been previously issued, but not distributed publicly; none of these reports is included in the securities offering. In this example, the auditor has elected to attach the previously issued reports to the comfort letter (see paragraph .A33).

⁴ Paragraph .A6 of this section.

742 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Appropriate modifications would be made to the opening paragraph of the comfort letter if the auditor has performed a review of the company's annual MD&A.

The following would be substituted for the first paragraph of example A-1.

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of The Nonissuer Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, the related notes to the consolidated financial statements, and the related financial statement schedules, all included in The Issuer Company's (the registrant) registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-1 filed by the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our reports with respect thereto are also included in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 20X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement. Also, we have examined the company's Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) for the year ended December 31, 20X5, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated March 28, 20X6; our report with respect thereto is attached. We have also reviewed the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the three-month periods then ended, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 20X6, and have also reviewed the company's MD&A for the three-month period ended March 31, 20X6, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 20X6; our reports with respect thereto are attached.

The following paragraph would be added after paragraph 3 of example A-1:

4. We have not examined any MD&A of the company as of or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X5; although we have made an examination of the company's MD&A for the year ended December 31, 20X5, included in the registration statement, the purpose (and, therefore, the scope) of the examination was to enable us to express our opinion on such MD&A, but not on the MD&A for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the MD&A for the three-month period ended March 31, 20X6, included in the registration statement, or for any period subsequent to March 31, 20X6.

AU-C Section 925*

Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933

Introduction

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .A1)

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities in connection with financial statements of a nonissuer included or incorporated by reference in a registration statement filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. Exhibit A, "Background," provides background information on certain liability provisions of Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933, including Section 11(b)(3)(B).

Effective Date

.02 This section is effective for filings under the Securities Act of 1933 that include audited financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

.03 The objective of the auditor, in connection with audited financial statements of a nonissuer that are separately included or incorporated by reference in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933, is to perform specified procedures at or shortly before the effective date of the registration statement to sustain the burden of proof that the auditor has performed a reasonable investigation, as referred to in Section 11(b)(3)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933.

Definitions

.04 For purposes of this section, the following terms have the meanings attributed as follows:

Auditor's consent. A statement signed and dated by the auditor that indicates that the auditor consents to the use of the auditor's report, and other references to the auditor, in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933.

Awareness letter. A letter signed and dated by the auditor to acknowledge the auditor's awareness that the auditor's review report on unaudited interim financial information is being used in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. This letter is not considered to be part of the registration statement and is also commonly referred to as an *acknowledgment letter*.

Effective date of the registration statement. The date on which the registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 becomes effective for purposes of evaluating the auditor's liability under Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933. (Ref: par. .A2 and .A14)

.05 References to *included* or *the inclusion of* in a registration statement in this section means *included* or *incorporated by reference* in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

744 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Requirements****Effective Date of the Registration Statement (Ref: par. .A3)**

.06 Because the effective date of a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 may not necessarily coincide with the filing date, the auditor should request management to keep the auditor advised of the progress of the registration proceedings through the effective date of the registration statement.

The Prospectus and Other Information (Ref: par. .A4–.A8)

.07 When the auditor's report on audited financial statements is included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933, the auditor should perform the procedures described in section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), on the prospectus and pertinent portions of the registration statement (including material that is incorporated by reference).

.08 In connection with the procedures required by paragraph .07, the auditor should determine that the auditor's name is not being used in a way that indicates that the auditor's responsibility is greater than the auditor intends.

Subsequent Events Procedures (Ref: par. .A9–.A11)

.09 When the most recent separate financial statements of the entity and related auditor's report are included in the registration statement, the auditor should perform the following procedures described in section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*, at or shortly before the effective date of the registration statement:¹

- a. Audit procedures designed to identify events occurring between the date of the auditor's report and the effective date of the registration statement that require adjustment to, or disclosure in, the financial statements. Such procedures, which take into account the auditor's risk assessment in determining the nature and extent of such audit procedures, should include
 - i. obtaining an understanding of any procedures that management has established to ensure that such events are identified.
 - ii. inquiring of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether any such events have occurred that might affect the financial statements.
 - iii. reading minutes, if any, of the meetings of the entity's owners, management, and those charged with governance that have been held after the date of the financial statements and inquiring about matters discussed at any such meetings for which minutes are not yet available.
 - iv. reading the entity's latest subsequent interim financial statements, if any.
- b. Obtain updated written representations from management at or shortly before the effective date of the registration statement, about whether
 - i. any information has come to management's attention that would cause management to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified.
 - ii. any events have occurred subsequent to the date of the financial statements that would require adjustment to, or disclosure in, those financial statements.

.10 When the auditor has audited the most recent period for which separate audited financial statements of the entity are included in the registration statement and

- a. the entity has been acquired by another entity,
- b. the acquirer's audited financial statements included in the registration statement reflect a period that includes the date of acquisition, and
- c. the auditor is a predecessor auditor because the auditor is not the continuing auditor of the entity,

¹ Paragraphs .09–.10 of section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

the auditor may be unable to perform all of the procedures in paragraph .09. In such circumstances, the auditor should obtain written representations from management and the successor auditor as described in section 560 at or shortly before the effective date of the registration statement.²

.11 If a predecessor auditor audited the entity's separate financial statements for a prior period included in the registration statement but has not audited the entity's separate financial statements for the most recent audited period for which the entity's audited financial statements are included in the registration statement, then the predecessor auditor should perform the following procedures described in section 560 through a date at or shortly before the effective date of the registration statement:³

- a. Read the financial statements of the subsequent period to be presented on a comparative basis
- b. Compare the prior period financial statements that the predecessor auditor reported on with the financial statements of the subsequent period to be presented on a comparative basis
- c. Obtain written representations from management at or shortly before the effective date
- d. Obtain a representation letter from the successor auditor stating whether the successor auditor's audit revealed any matters that, in the successor auditor's opinion, might have a material effect on, or require disclosure in, the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor

.12 If the auditor becomes aware of subsequently discovered facts, the auditor should not provide the auditor's consent until the auditor's consideration of subsequently discovered facts, including the effect on the auditor's report on the financial statements, has been satisfactorily completed in accordance with section 560.⁴ If management does not revise the audited financial statements in circumstances in which the auditor believes they need to be revised, then the auditor should determine whether to withhold the auditor's consent (and the awareness letter, if applicable). (Ref: par. .A11)

Unaudited Annual Financial Statements or Unaudited Interim Financial Information

.13 If the auditor concludes, based on known facts, that unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 is not in conformity with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, then the auditor should request that management revise the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information appropriately.

.14 If management does not revise the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information appropriately and

- a. the auditor has reported on a review of the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information,
- b. the auditor's review report is included in the registration statement, and
- c. the subsequently discovered facts are such that they would have affected the report had they been known to the auditor at the date of the report,

the auditor should perform the applicable procedures described in section 560.⁵

.15 If management does not revise the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information appropriately and

- a. the auditor has not reported on a review of the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information or
- b. the auditor's review report is not included in the registration statement,

² Paragraph .19c-d of section 560.

³ Paragraph .19 of section 560.

⁴ Paragraphs .15-.18 of section 560.

⁵ Paragraphs .14 and .17-.18 of section 560.

746 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

the auditor should modify the report on the audited financial statements to describe the departure from the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework contained in the unaudited annual financial statements or unaudited interim financial information, as described in section 930, *Interim Financial Information*.⁶

.16 Additionally, the auditor should determine whether to withhold the auditor's consent (and the awareness letter, if applicable). (Ref: par. .A11)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .01)

.A1 This section is written from the perspective of a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. The liability provisions under the Securities Act of 1933 differ from those (Section 10[b] and Rule 10[b][5], in particular) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Definitions

Effective Date of the Registration Statement (Ref: par. .04)

.A2 Exhibit A describes the process commonly referred to as *shelf registration*. Exhibit A also provides additional guidance about the effective date of a registration statement, including situations in which a posteffective amendment is made or a prospectus supplement is filed.⁷ Both of these situations may create a new effective date. Exhibit A also discusses the auditor's liability under Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933 with regard to these situations.

Effective Date of the Registration Statement (Ref: par. .06)

.A3 Requesting management to keep the auditor advised of the progress of the registration proceedings through the effective date is important so that the auditor's consideration of events occurring after the date of the auditor's report up to the effective date, or as close thereto as reasonable and practicable, can be completed by the effective date of the registration statement. Generally, the filing date of a registration statement will precede the effective date. In addition to performing the procedures required by this section at or shortly before the effective date, the auditor may also perform some or all of the procedures in this section at or shortly before the filing date.

The Prospectus and Other Information (Ref: par. .07–.08)

.A4 The reading of the entire prospectus (including any supplemental prospectuses and documents incorporated by reference—such as forms 10-K, 10-Q, and 8-K) assists the auditor in fulfilling the auditor's statutory responsibilities to perform a reasonable investigation, as described in Section 11(c) of the Securities Act of 1933.

References to the Auditor as an Expert in Connection With a Securities Act of 1933 Registration Statement

.A5 The requirements in paragraphs .07–.08 assist the auditor in determining that the references to the auditor in the Securities Act of 1933 registration statement are appropriate. For example, management's disclosure in the "experts" section cannot imply that the financial statements have been prepared by the auditor or that the financial statements are not the direct representations of management.

.A6 The SEC does not require an entity to include an auditor's review report on unaudited interim financial information in the registration statement unless the registration statement states that the unaudited interim financial information has been reviewed by an independent auditor. If the registration statement includes the auditor's review report on interim financial information, then the requirements in paragraphs .07–.08 assist the auditor in determining that the issuer dis-

⁶ Paragraph .35 of section 930, *Interim Financial Information*.

⁷ Paragraphs 8–12 of exhibit A, "Background."

closes the fact that an interim review report is not a report on, or a part of, the registration statement prepared or certified by the auditor, within the meaning of Section 7 and Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933, and that the auditor's liability under Section 11 does not extend to the auditor's review report.

.A7 The auditor is not considered an expert with respect to the auditor's review report on interim financial information and, therefore, it is important that this fact is clearly described. For example, the disclosures relating to the auditor's report on the audited financial statements may be included under a heading titled "Experts," and the disclosures in paragraph .A6 would then be included under a heading titled "Independent Auditors." Alternatively, the disclosures described in paragraph .A6 may be included under an "experts" section together with language stating the fact that an interim review report is not a report on, or a part of, the registration statement prepared or certified by the auditor, within the meaning of Section 7 and Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933, and that the auditor's liability under Section 11 does not extend to the auditor's review report.

.A8 Exhibit A describes the disclosures relating to the auditor's report on the audited financial statements. Exhibit B, "Illustrative Disclosures and Reports," provides an illustration of this disclosure.

Subsequent Events Procedures (Ref: par. .09-.12)

.A9 An example of the conditions described in paragraphs .09-.11 would be a situation in which an issuer recently acquired a nonissuer that is considered significant to the issuer based on quantitative thresholds specified in the SEC's rules and regulations. In this case, the issuer's registration statement may need to include the separate audited financial statements of the acquired nonissuer for one or more periods.

.A10 In addition to the procedures required by paragraph .09, the auditor may consider it necessary and appropriate to inquire of, or extend previous oral or written inquiries to, the entity's legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments, as described in section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*.

.A11 In making the determination whether to withhold the auditor's consent, the auditor may consider it appropriate to obtain legal advice. (Ref: par. .12 and .16)

Exhibits

.A12 Exhibit A provides detailed background guidance on the following: (Ref: par. .04)

- The liability provisions of Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933
- The auditor's consent and awareness letter
- The effective date of the registration statement
- References to the auditor as an expert in connection with a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement
- References to the auditor as an expert in a document other than a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement
- Letters similar to a consent prepared in connection with a document that is not a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement

.A13 Exhibit B provides illustrative disclosures and reports.

.A14**Exhibit A—Background**

Exhibit A is intended to provide limited background information only.

Exhibit A is not intended to be, and does not constitute, a comprehensive or complete discussion of the liability provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. Exhibit A is not legal advice and reading it as such is inappropriate. Auditors are advised to consult with their legal counsel regarding the information provided in Exhibit A and the entire content of Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933.

1. When an auditor's report is included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933, the auditor's responsibility, generally, is in substance no different from that involved in other types of reporting. However, the nature and extent of this responsibility are specified in some detail in the applicable statutes and the related rules and regulations.

Liability Provisions of Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933

2. Liability under the Securities Act of 1933 is defined in several sections of that act. One important section for auditors is Section 11.

3. Section 11(a) imposes civil liability on a number of parties that are involved in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. One of the parties specifically mentioned in Section 11(a) is an auditor who has consented to the use of the auditor's report on audited financial statements in connection with a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 (Section 11[a][4]).

4. Section 11(b)(3)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933 provides that the auditor is not liable under Section 11(a) if the auditor

sustain[s] the burden of proof . . . that . . . as regards any part of the registration statement purporting to be made upon his authority as an expert or purporting to be a copy of or extract from a report or valuation of himself as an expert, (i) he had, after reasonable investigation, reasonable ground to believe and did believe, at the time such part of the registration statement became effective, that the statements therein were true and that there was no omission to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, or (ii) such part of the registration statement did not fairly represent his statement as an expert or was not a fair copy of or extract from his report or valuation as an expert.

5. Section 11(c) of the Securities Act of 1933 indicates that for the purpose of determining what constitutes reasonable investigation and reasonable ground to believe, "the standard of reasonableness shall be that required of a prudent man in the management of his own property."

Auditor's Consent and Awareness Letter

6. Section 7 of the Securities Act of 1933 requires an issuer to provide the consent of any auditor whose report on audited financial statements is included in a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement. The issuer's responsibility to file the auditor's consent is further discussed in Rule 436 of the Securities Act of 1933.

7. Rule 436(c) of the Securities Act of 1933 indicates that an auditor's report based on a review of interim financial information is not a report within the meaning of Section 11. Thus, the auditor does not have a similar statutory responsibility for such reports as of the effective date of the registration statement. Accordingly, the auditor's consent would not refer to the auditor's report on interim financial statements. However, the issuer is required to file an awareness letter from an auditor if the auditor's review report on interim financial information is included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933.

Effective Date of the Registration Statement

8. The information in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 is evaluated as of its effective date. Accordingly, the auditor who has consented to the inclusion of the auditor's report on audited financial statements in such a registration statement has a statutory responsibility that is determined in light of the circumstances on that date. The effective date for purposes of evaluating liability under Section 11 may be different for different parties. For instance, the effective date for determining liability under Section 11 for the issuer or for an underwriter may be later than the effective date for determining Section 11 liability for the auditor.

9. Certain Securities Act of 1933 rules and forms (for example, Rule 415 and Form S-3) permit issuers to register offerings of securities to be offered and sold on a delayed or continuous basis. This process is commonly referred to as *shelf registration*.

10. The prospectus included in a shelf registration statement at the time it becomes effective is commonly referred to as a *base prospectus*. Many issuers follow a "bare bones" approach to preparing the base prospectus by relying entirely on the documents incorporated by reference (for example, forms 10-K, 10-Q, and 8-K) to provide most, if not all, of the issuer-related disclosures. The base prospectus also generally omits information relating to the specific amount of each security to be offered and pricing information. That information is typically provided through a prospectus supplement filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 at the time the securities are sold (commonly referred to as *taken off the shelf* or a *shelf takedown*).

11. At the time of filing a shelf registration statement, the issuer undertakes to update the prospectus for a number of items. The issuer's undertakings are set forth in Item 512 of Regulation S-K. Information omitted from the base prospectus, as well as the information that the issuer has undertaken to provide at a later date, may be conveyed to investors

- by a posteffective amendment to the registration statement,
- by a prospectus supplement filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act of 1933, or
- through the incorporation by reference of the information from a report filed under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (for example, Form 10-K or Form 8-K).

12. As previously discussed, liability under Section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933 is assessed based on the information included in the registration statement as of its effective date. As also previously noted, the effective date for purposes of evaluating liability under Section 11 as it relates to the auditor may differ from the effective date as it relates to other parties (for example, the issuer or any underwriters). From the auditor's perspective, the effective date in connection with a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement is the latest of the following:

- The date the original registration statement (for example, on Form S-3) becomes effective
- The effective date of any posteffective amendment
- The filing date of a prospectus supplement if the filing of the prospectus supplement creates a new effective date for the auditor (for example, the prospectus supplement may contain new or revised audited financial statements or other information about which the auditor is an expert and for which a new consent is required, as described in Rule 430B[f][3] of the Securities Act of 1933)
- The filing date of any report (for example, under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that includes or amends audited financial statements and is incorporated by reference into the already effective registration statement

For example, assume an issuer with an already effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3 acquires a private company, and the issuer is required to file the acquired company's audited financial statements pursuant to the requirements of Form 8-K. In this case, the issuer will be required to file an auditor's consent from the acquired company's auditor as an exhibit to Form 8-K. The guidance in this section is applicable to the acquired company's auditor in connection with providing the auditor's consent to the issuer.

750 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**References to the Auditor as an Expert in Connection With a Securities Act of 1933
Registration Statement**

13. Although not required, most Securities Act of 1933 registration statements relating to underwritten offerings contain a section titled “Experts.” This section can be defined as management’s disclosure in a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement that states that audited financial statements are included in the registration statement in reliance upon the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements. The “experts” section also typically indicates that the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements has been given on the auditor’s authority as an expert in accounting and auditing.

14. Exhibit B, “Illustrative Disclosures and Reports,” provides an example of a typical “experts” section.

15. As with all sections of the registration statement, the disclosures in the “experts” section are the issuer’s responsibility. However, Rule 436(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 requires the issuer to file an auditor’s consent to being named as an expert.

**References to the Auditor as an Expert in a Document Other Than a Securities Act of 1933
Registration Statement**

16. The term *expert* has a specific statutory meaning under the Securities Act of 1933. Outside the Securities Act of 1933 context, the term *expert* is typically undefined. Accordingly, except as described in paragraph 18 of this exhibit, when an issuer wishes to make reference to the auditor’s role in an offering document in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933, the caption to that section of the document would generally be titled “Independent Auditors” (or something similar) rather than “Experts,” with no reference to the auditor as an expert anywhere in the document.

17. Exhibit B provides an example of a typical description of the auditor’s role when an issuer wishes to make reference to the auditor in an offering document in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933.

18. There may be situations in which the term *expert* is sufficiently defined such that the auditor may agree to be referred to as an expert outside the context of a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. For example, if the term *expert* is defined under applicable state law, the auditor may agree to be named as an expert in an offering document in an intrastate securities offering. The auditor may also agree to be named as an expert, as that term is used by the Office of Thrift Supervision (OTS), in securities offering documents that are subject to the jurisdiction of the OTS. An understanding of any auditor liability provisions that may be included in the applicable federal or state statutes is an important consideration.

**Letters Similar to Consents Prepared in Connection With a Document That Is Not a Securities
Act of 1933 Registration Statement**

19. When an auditor’s report is used in connection with an offering transaction that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933, it is not usually necessary for the auditor to provide any type of written consent. If the auditor is asked to provide a written consent for use in connection with a document other than a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement, then the auditor may provide a letter indicating that the auditor agrees to the inclusion of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements in the offering materials. This letter would typically not be included in the offering materials.

20. Exhibit B provides an example of language the auditor might use to indicate that the auditor agrees to the inclusion of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements in the offering materials when the auditor’s report is used in connection with an offering transaction that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933.

.A15**Exhibit B—Illustrative Disclosures and Reports**

The following is an example of a typical “experts” section in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933:

Experts

The consolidated balance sheets of Company X as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related consolidated statements of income and comprehensive income, changes in stockholders’ equity, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X2, included in this prospectus, have been so included in reliance on the report of ABC & Co, independent auditors, given on the authority of that firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

The following is an example of a disclosure for a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 that includes the auditor’s review report on unaudited interim financial information when such disclosure is included in a separate section. This disclosure may also be included under a section titled “Experts”:

Independent Auditors

With respect to the unaudited interim financial information of Company X for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X3 and 20X2, included in this prospectus, ABC & Co. has reported that they have applied limited procedures in accordance with professional standards for a review of such information. However, their separate report dated May XX, 20X3, included herein, states that they did not audit and they do not express an opinion on that interim financial information. Accordingly, the degree of reliance on their report on such information should be restricted in light of the limited nature of the review procedures applied. ABC & Co. is not subject to the liability provisions of section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933 for their report on the unaudited interim financial information because that report is not a “report” or a “part” of the registration statement prepared or certified by the accountants within the meaning of Sections 7 and 11 of the Act.

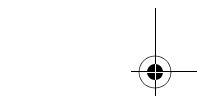
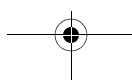
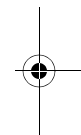
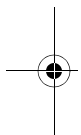
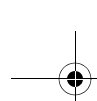
The following is an example of a typical description of the auditor’s role when an issuer wishes to make reference to the auditor in an offering document prepared in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933:

Independent Auditors

The financial statements of Company X as of December 31, 20X2 and for the year then ended, included in this offering circular, have been audited by ABC & Co., independent auditors, as stated in their report appearing herein.

Although generally not necessary, the following is an example of language the auditor might use indicating that the auditor agrees to the inclusion of the auditor’s report on the audited financial statements in offering materials prepared in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933:

We agree to the inclusion in the offering circular of our report, dated February 5, 20X3, on our audit of the financial statements of Company X.



AU-C Section 930*

Interim Financial Information

Introduction

Scope of This Section

.01 This section addresses the auditor's responsibilities when engaged to review interim financial information under the conditions specified in this section. The term auditor is used throughout this section, not because the auditor is performing an audit but because the scope of this section is limited to a review of interim financial information performed by an auditor of the financial statements of the entity.

.02 This section applies to a review of interim financial information when

- a. the entity's latest annual financial statements have been audited by the auditor or a predecessor auditor;
- b. the auditor either
 - i. has been engaged to audit the entity's current year financial statements or
 - ii. audited the entity's latest annual financial statements, and in situations in which it is expected that the current year financial statements will be audited, the engagement of another auditor to audit the current year financial statements is not effective prior to the beginning of the period covered by the review; (Ref: par. .A1)
- c. the entity prepares its interim financial information in accordance with the same financial reporting framework as that used to prepare the annual financial statements; and
- d. all of the following conditions are met if the interim financial information is condensed:
 - i. The condensed interim financial information purports to be prepared in accordance with an appropriate financial reporting framework, which includes appropriate form and content of interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A2)
 - ii. The condensed interim financial information includes a note that the financial information does not represent complete financial statements and is to be read in conjunction with the entity's latest audited annual financial statements.
 - iii. The condensed interim financial information accompanies the entity's latest audited annual financial statements, or such audited annual financial statements are made readily available by the entity. (Ref: par. .A3)

Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services provide guidance for review engagements for which this section is not applicable.

.03 An auditor may find this section, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, useful when that auditor has not been engaged to perform a review of interim financial information but has nonetheless decided to perform review procedures on such financial information (for example, in connection with the inclusion of the auditor's report on the annual financial statements in an unregistered securities offering document).

Effective Date

.04 This section is effective for reviews of interim financial information for interim periods of fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2012.

* This section contains an "AU-C" identifier instead of an "AU" identifier. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.

754 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Objective**

.05 The objective of the auditor when performing an engagement to review interim financial information is to obtain a basis for reporting whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework through performing limited procedures. (Ref: par. .A4–.A5)

Definition

.06 For purposes of this section, the following term has the meaning attributed as follows:

Interim financial information. Financial information prepared and presented in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework that comprises either a complete or condensed set of financial statements covering a period or periods less than one full year or covering a 12-month period ending on a date other than the entity's fiscal year end.

Requirements**Acceptance**

.07 Before accepting an engagement to review an entity's interim financial information for a new client, the auditor should follow the procedures for initial engagements required by section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.¹

.08 Before accepting an engagement to perform a review of interim financial information, the auditor should

- a. determine whether the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the interim financial information is acceptable and
- b. obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility
 - i. for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
 - ii. for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
 - iii. to provide the auditor with
 - (1) access to all information of which management is aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information, such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - (2) additional information that the auditor may request from management for the purpose of the review; and
 - (3) unrestricted access to persons within the entity of whom the auditor determines it necessary to make inquiries;² and
 - iv. to include the auditor's review report in any document containing interim financial information that indicates that such information has been reviewed by the entity's auditor.

.09 The auditor should not accept an engagement to review interim financial information if

- a. the auditor has determined that the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the interim financial information is unacceptable.
- b. the agreement referred to in paragraph .08b has not been obtained.

¹ Paragraphs .11–.12 of section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

² Paragraph .06 of section 210.

Agreement on Engagement Terms

.10 The auditor should agree upon the terms of the engagement with management or those charged with governance, as appropriate. The agreed-upon terms of the engagement should be recorded in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement and should include the following: (Ref: par. .A6)

- a. The objectives and scope of the engagement
- b. The responsibilities of management set forth in paragraph .08b
- c. The responsibilities of the auditor
- d. The limitations of a review engagement
- e. Identification of the applicable financial reporting framework for the preparation of the interim financial information

Procedures for a Review of Interim Financial Information***Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including Its Internal Control***

.11 To plan and conduct the engagement, the auditor should have an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information, sufficient to be able to

- a. identify the types of potential material misstatements in the interim financial information and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
- b. select the inquiries and analytical procedures that will provide the auditor with a basis for reporting whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.12 To update or, in the case of an auditor who has not yet performed an audit of the entity's annual financial statements, obtain the understanding required by paragraph .11, the auditor should perform the following procedures: (Ref: par. .A7–.A8)

- a. Read available documentation of the preceding year's audit and of reviews of the prior interim period(s) of the current year and the corresponding interim period(s) of the prior year to the extent necessary, based on the auditor's judgment, to enable the auditor to identify matters that may affect the current period interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A9–.A10) In reading such documents, the auditor should specifically consider the nature of any
 - i. corrected material misstatements;
 - ii. matters identified in any summary of uncorrected misstatements;
 - iii. identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud, including the risk of management override of controls; and
 - iv. significant financial accounting and reporting matters that may be of continuing significance, such as significant deficiencies and material weaknesses.
- b. Read the most recent annual and comparable prior interim period financial information.
- c. Consider the results of any audit procedures performed with respect to the current year's financial statements.
- d. Inquire of management about changes in the entity's business activities.
- e. Inquire of management about the identity of, and nature of transactions with, related parties.
- f. Inquire of management about whether significant changes in internal control, as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information, have occurred subsequent to the preceding annual audit or prior review of interim financial information, including changes in the entity's policies, procedures, and personnel, as well as the nature and extent of such changes.

756 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Analytical Procedures, Inquiries, and Other Review Procedures******Analytical Procedures***

.13 The auditor should apply analytical procedures to the interim financial information to identify and provide a basis for inquiry about the relationships and individual items that appear to be unusual and that may indicate a material misstatement. Such analytical procedures should include the following: (Ref: par. .A11–.A13)

- a. Comparing the interim financial information with comparable information for the immediately preceding interim period, if applicable, and with the corresponding period(s) in the previous year, giving consideration to knowledge about changes in the entity's business and specific transactions
- b. Considering plausible relationships among both financial and, when relevant, nonfinancial information (Ref: par. .A14)
- c. Comparing recorded amounts or ratios developed from recorded amounts to expectations developed by the auditor through identifying and using relationships that are reasonably expected to exist, based on the auditor's understanding of the entity and the industry in which the entity operates
- d. Comparing disaggregated revenue data (Ref: par. .A15)

Inquiries and Other Review Procedures

.14 The auditor should make the following inquiries and perform the following other review procedures when conducting a review of interim financial information:

- a. Read the available minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees and inquire about matters dealt with at meetings for which minutes are not available to identify matters that may affect the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A16)
- b. Obtain reports from component auditors, if any, related to reviews performed of the interim financial information of significant components of the reporting entity, including its investees, or inquire of those auditors if reports have not been issued. (Ref: par. .A17)
- c. Inquire of management about
 - i. whether the interim financial information has been prepared and fairly presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework consistently applied.
 - ii. unusual or complex situations that may have an effect on the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A18)
 - iii. significant transactions occurring or recognized in the interim period, particularly those in the last several days of the interim period.
 - iv. the status of uncorrected misstatements identified during the previous audit and interim review (that is, whether adjustments had been recorded subsequent to the periods covered by the prior audit or interim review and, if so, the amounts recorded and period in which such adjustments were recorded).
 - v. matters about which questions have arisen in the course of applying the review procedures.
 - vi. events subsequent to the date of the interim financial information that could have a material effect on the fair presentation of such information.
 - vii. its knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving (1) management, (2) employees who have significant roles in internal control, or (3) others when the fraud could have a material effect on the financial information.
 - viii. whether management is aware of allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity communicated by employees, former employees, regulators, or others.
 - ix. significant journal entries and other adjustments.
 - x. communications from regulatory agencies.
 - xi. significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information.
 - xii. changes in related parties or significant new related party transactions.

- d. Obtain evidence that the interim financial information agrees or reconciles with the accounting records. In addition, the auditor should inquire of management about the reliability of the records to which the interim financial information was compared or reconciled. (Ref: par. .A19)
- e. Read the interim financial information to consider whether, based on the results of the review procedures performed and other information that has come to the auditor's attention, the information to be reported is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- f. Read other information in documents containing the interim financial information to consider whether such information or the manner of its presentation is materially inconsistent with the interim financial information. If the auditor concludes that a material inconsistency exists or becomes aware of information that the auditor believes is a material misstatement of fact, the auditor should take action based on the auditor's professional judgment. (Ref: par. .A20–.A21)

Inquiry Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments

.15 If information comes to the auditor's attention regarding litigation, claims, or assessments that leads the auditor to question whether the interim financial information has been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, and the auditor believes that the entity's internal or external legal counsel may have relevant information, the auditor should inquire of such legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. (Ref: par. .A22)

Inquiry Concerning an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

.16 If (1) conditions or events that may indicate substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern existed at the date of prior period financial statements, regardless of whether the substantial doubt was alleviated by the auditor's consideration of management's plans, or (2) in the course of performing review procedures on the current period interim financial information, the auditor becomes aware of conditions or events that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern, the auditor should

- a. inquire of management about its plans for dealing with the adverse effects of the conditions and events, and (Ref: par. .A23)
- b. consider the adequacy of the disclosure about such matters in the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A24)

Consideration of Management's Responses and Extension of Interim Review Procedures

.17 The auditor should consider the reasonableness and consistency of management's responses in light of the results of other review procedures and the auditor's knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control. However, the auditor is not required to corroborate management's responses with other evidence.

.18 When a matter comes to the auditor's attention that leads the auditor to question whether the interim financial information has been prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework in all material respects, the auditor should make additional inquiries of management or others or perform other procedures to provide a basis for reporting whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A25)

Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures

.19 The auditor should accumulate misstatements, including inadequate disclosure, identified by the auditor in performing the review procedures or brought to the auditor's attention during the performance of the review. (Ref: par. .A26)

.20 The auditor should evaluate, individually and in the aggregate, misstatements, including inadequate disclosure, accumulated in accordance with paragraph .19 to determine whether material modification should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A27–.A28)

758 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Written Representations From Management**

.21 For all interim financial information presented and for all periods covered by the review, the auditor should request management to provide written representations, as of the date of the auditor's review report (Ref: par. .A29–.A30)

- a. that management has fulfilled its responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, as set out in the terms of the engagement.
- b. that management acknowledges its responsibility for designing, implementing, and maintaining internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial statements, including its responsibility to prevent and detect fraud.
- c. that management has disclosed to the auditor all significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control of which management is aware as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information.
- d. that management has provided the auditor with all relevant information and access, as agreed upon in the terms of the engagement.
- e. that all transactions have been recorded and are reflected in the interim financial information.
- f. that management has disclosed to the auditor the results of its assessment of the risk that the interim financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.
- g. that management has disclosed to the auditor its knowledge of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving
 - i. management,
 - ii. employees who have significant roles in internal control, or
 - iii. others when the fraud could have a material effect on the interim financial information.
- h. that management has disclosed to the auditor its knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity's interim financial information communicated by employees, former employees, regulators, or others.
- i. that management has disclosed to the auditor all known instances of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing interim financial information.
- j. about whether management believes that the effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information as a whole. A summary of such items should be included in, or attached to, the written representation. (Ref: par. .A31)
- k. that management has disclosed to the auditor all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the interim financial information, and it has appropriately accounted for and disclosed such litigation and claims in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- l. about whether management believes that significant assumptions used by it in making accounting estimates are reasonable.
- m. that management has disclosed to the auditor the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which it is aware, and it has appropriately accounted for and disclosed such relationships and transactions.
- n. that all events occurring subsequent to the date of the interim financial information and for which the applicable financial reporting framework requires adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed.

.22 If the auditor has concerns about the reliability of the representations or if management does not provide the requested written representations, the auditor should take appropriate action. When management does not provide the written representations described in paragraph .21a–e, the auditor should withdraw from the engagement to review the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A32)

Communications With Management and Those Charged With Governance***Matters Affecting the Completion of the Review***

.23 If the auditor cannot complete the review, the auditor should communicate to the appropriate level of management and those charged with governance

- a.* the reason why the review cannot be completed;
- b.* that an incomplete review does not provide a basis for reporting and, accordingly, that the auditor is precluded from issuing a review report; and
- c.* any material modifications of which the auditor has become aware that should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, in accordance with paragraphs .24–.26. (Ref: par. .A33)

.24 The auditor should communicate to the appropriate level of management, as soon as practicable, matters that come to the auditor's attention during the conduct of the review that cause the auditor to believe that

- a.* material modification should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, or
- b.* the entity issued the interim financial information before the completion of the review.

.25 If, in the auditor's judgment, management does not respond appropriately to the auditor's communication within a reasonable period of time, the auditor should inform those charged with governance of the matters as soon as practicable.

.26 If, in the auditor's judgment, those charged with governance do not respond appropriately to the auditor's communication within a reasonable period of time, the auditor should consider whether to withdraw (*a*) from the engagement to review the interim financial information and (*b*) if applicable, from serving as the entity's auditor. (Ref: par. .A34)

Other Matters

.27 If the auditor becomes aware that fraud may have occurred, the auditor should communicate the matter as soon as practicable to the appropriate level of management. If the fraud involves senior management or results in a material misstatement of the interim financial information, the auditor should communicate the matter directly to those charged with governance. If the auditor becomes aware of matters involving identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing interim financial information, the auditor should communicate the matters to those charged with governance, other than when the matters are clearly inconsequential.

.28 The auditor should communicate relevant matters of governance interest arising from the review of interim financial information to those charged with governance, including the following:

- a.* Significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of annual and interim financial information (Ref: par. .A35)
- b.* Any of the matters described in section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, that have been identified, as they relate to the interim financial information (Ref: par. .A36–.A38)

The Auditor's Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information***Form of the Auditor's Review Report***

.29 The auditor's review report should be in writing. (Ref: par. .A39)

.30 The written review report should include the following: (Ref: par. .A40–.A41)

- a.* A title that includes the word *independent* to clearly indicate that it is the report of an independent auditor.
- b.* An addressee as appropriate for the circumstances of the engagement.

760 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- c. An introductory paragraph that
 - i. identifies the entity whose interim financial information has been reviewed,
 - ii. states that the interim financial information identified in the report was reviewed,
 - iii. identifies the interim financial information, and
 - iv. specifies the date or period covered by each financial statement comprising the interim financial information.
- d. A section with the heading “Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements” that includes an explanation that management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- e. A section with the heading “Auditor’s Responsibility” that includes the following statements:
 - i. The auditor’s responsibility is to conduct the review of interim financial information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information.
 - ii. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters.
 - iii. A review of interim financial information is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is an expression of an opinion regarding the financial information as a whole, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.
- f. A concluding section with an appropriate heading that includes a statement about whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and that identifies the country of origin of those accounting principles, if applicable.
- g. The manual or printed signature of the auditor’s firm.
- h. The city and state where the auditor practices.
- i. The date of the review report, which should be dated as of the date of completion of the review procedures.

.31 The auditor should determine that management has clearly marked as unaudited each page of the interim financial information accompanying the review report.

Comparative Interim Financial Information That Has Not Been Reviewed Presented With Reviewed Interim Financial Information

.32 If an auditor is engaged to perform a review of the most recent interim period in accordance with this section, and such financial information will be presented in comparative form with interim financial information of a prior period that has not been reviewed, such interim financial information should be accompanied by an indication in the auditor’s review report that the auditor has not reviewed the prior period interim financial information and that the auditor assumes no responsibility for it. (Ref: par. .A42)

Interim Financial Information Presented With Condensed Balance Sheet Information for the Most Recent Year End

.33 When a condensed balance sheet derived from audited financial statements is presented on a comparative basis with the interim financial information, the auditor should report on the condensed balance sheet only when the auditor audited the financial statements from which the condensed balance sheet was derived. The auditor should compare the condensed balance sheet with the related information in the audited financial statements to determine whether the condensed balance sheet agrees with, or can be recalculated from, the related information in the audited

financial statements. The auditor's report on the interim financial information should include a paragraph addressing the condensed balance sheet that

- a. identifies the condensed balance sheet on which the auditor is reporting.
- b. identifies the audited financial statements from which the condensed balance sheet was derived and indicates that such financial statements are not separately presented.
- c. refers to the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, the date of that report, and the type of opinion expressed and, if the opinion is modified, the basis for the modification.
- d. describes the nature of any emphasis-of-matter paragraph or other-matter paragraph included in the auditor's report.
- e. includes an opinion about whether the condensed balance sheet is consistent, in all material respects, in relation to the audited financial statements from which it has been derived. (Ref: par. .A43)

Modification of the Auditor's Review Report

.34 When the interim financial information has not been prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework in all material respects, the auditor should consider whether modification of the auditor's review report on the interim financial information is sufficient to address the departure from the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A44–.A47)

.35 If the auditor concludes that modification of the standard review report is sufficient to address the departure, the auditor should modify the review report. The modification should describe the nature of the departure and, if practicable, should state the effects on the interim financial information. If the departure is due to inadequate disclosure, the auditor should, if practicable, include the information in the report that the auditor believes is necessary for adequate disclosure in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. (Ref: par. .A48)

.36 If the auditor believes that modification of the review report is not sufficient to address the deficiencies in the interim financial information, the auditor should withdraw from the review engagement and provide no further services with respect to such interim financial information.

Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Review Report

.37 If, subsequent to the date of the auditor's review report, the auditor becomes aware that facts existed at the date of the review report that might have affected the auditor's review report had the auditor then been aware of those matters, the auditor should apply the requirements and guidance, adapted as necessary, in section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*.

Other Considerations

.38 If management does not include the auditor's review report in a report, document, or written communication containing the reviewed interim financial information that indicates that such information has been reviewed by the entity's auditor, despite having agreed in the terms of the engagement to do so, the auditor should perform the following procedures:

- Request that management amend the report, document, or written communication to include the auditor's review report and reissue the report, document, or written communication
- If management does not comply with the request to amend and reissue the report, document, or written communication, request that the auditor's name not be associated with the interim financial information or referred to in the report, document, or written communication because the auditor will not permit either the use of the auditor's name or reference to the auditor unless the auditor's review report is included with the reviewed interim financial information in these circumstances
- Communicate management's noncompliance with the requests to those charged with governance
- When appropriate, recommend that the entity consult with its legal counsel about the application of relevant laws and regulations to the circumstances
- Consider what other actions might be appropriate (Ref: par. .A49)

762 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

.39 If the auditor has issued a modified review report due to a departure from the applicable financial reporting framework, and management issues the interim financial information without including the review report in the document containing the interim financial information, the auditor should determine the appropriate course of action in the circumstances, including whether to withdraw from the engagement to audit the annual financial statements.

Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements

.40 The auditor should include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report on the audited financial statements when all the following conditions exist:

- a. The interim financial information that has been reviewed in accordance with this section is included in a document containing audited financial statements.
- b. The interim financial information accompanying audited financial statements does not appear to be presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- c. The auditor's separate review report, which refers to the departure from the applicable financial reporting framework, is not presented with the interim financial information.

.41 The auditor is required by section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, to address in the auditor's report on the audited financial statements information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework but is nevertheless presented as part of the basic financial statements if it cannot be clearly differentiated.³ When the interim financial information included in a note to the financial statements, including information that has been reviewed in accordance with this section, is not appropriately marked as unaudited, the auditor should, in the auditor's report on the audited financial statements, disclaim an opinion on the interim financial information. (Ref: par. .A50–.A51)

Documentation

.42 The auditor should prepare documentation in connection with a review of interim financial information that will enable an experienced auditor, having no previous connection to the review, to understand

- a. the nature, timing, and extent of the review procedures performed;
- b. the results of the review procedures performed and the evidence obtained; and
- c. significant findings or issues arising during the review, the conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgments made in reaching those conclusions.

.43 The documentation should include the communications required by this section, whether written or oral. (Ref: par. .A52–.A53)

Application and Other Explanatory Material**Scope of This Section (Ref: par. .02)**

.A1 The ability to apply this section even when the auditor does not expect to be engaged to audit the current year financial statements provides for appropriate transitions between the predecessor auditor and the auditor of the current year financial statements.

.A2 Appropriate financial reporting frameworks for condensed interim financial information may include, for example, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 270, *Interim Reporting*, and Article 10 of Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Regulation S-X, with respect to accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or International Accounting Standard 34, *Interim Financial Reporting*, with respect to International Financial Reporting Standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. FASB ASC 270 outlines the application of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) to the determination of income when interim financial information is presented, provides for the use of estimated effective income tax rates, and specifies certain dis-

³ Paragraph .58 of section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

closure requirements for condensed interim financial information issued by public companies and may be adapted by nonissuers as a fair presentation framework for condensed interim financial information. In addition to FASB ASC 270, other FASB ASC topics also include disclosure requirements for interim financial information.

The Meaning of Readily Available (Ref: par. .02d(iii))

.A3 Audited financial statements are deemed to be readily available if a third-party user can obtain the financial statements without any further action by the entity (for example, financial statements on an entity's website may be considered readily available, but being available upon request is not considered readily available).

Objective (Ref: par. .05)

.A4 The objective of a review of interim financial information differs significantly from that of an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. A review of interim financial information does not provide a basis for expressing an opinion about whether the interim financial information is presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A5 A review, in contrast to an audit, is not designed to provide the auditor with a basis for obtaining reasonable assurance that the interim financial information is free from material misstatement. A review consists principally of performing analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters and does not contemplate (a) tests of accounting records through inspection, observation, or confirmation; (b) tests of controls to evaluate their effectiveness; (c) the obtainment of corroborating evidence in response to inquiries; or (d) the performance of certain other procedures ordinarily performed in an audit. A review may bring to the auditor's attention significant findings or issues affecting the interim financial information, but it does not provide assurance that the auditor will become aware of all significant findings or issues that would be identified in an audit.

Acceptance

Agreement on Engagement Terms (Ref: par. .10)

.A6 The engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement documenting the agreed-upon terms of the engagement with the entity regarding a review of interim financial information may use the following wording to include the information necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph .10:

Objectives and scope of the engagement

- The objective of a review of interim financial information is to provide the auditor with a basis for reporting whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to be in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- A review includes obtaining sufficient knowledge of the entity's business and internal control, as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information, to enable the auditor to
 - identify the types of potential material misstatements in the interim financial information and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
 - select the inquiries and analytical procedures that will provide the auditor with a basis for reporting whether the auditor is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Management's responsibilities

- Management is responsible for the following:
 - Preparing and presenting the interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

764 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

- Designing, implementing, and maintaining internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
 - Providing the auditor with (1) access to all information of which management is aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information, such as records, documentation, and other matters; (2) additional information that the auditor may request from management for the purpose of the review; and (3) unrestricted access to persons within the entity of whom the auditor determines it necessary to make inquiries.
 - Including the auditor's review report in any document containing interim financial information that indicates that such information has been reviewed by the entity's auditor.
 - Identifying and ensuring that the entity complies with the laws and regulations applicable to its activities.
 - Providing the auditor, at the conclusion of the engagement, with a letter confirming certain representations made during the review.
 - Adjusting the interim financial information to correct material misstatements.
- Although a review of interim financial information is not designed to provide the auditor with reasonable assurance that the interim financial information is free from material misstatement, management nonetheless is responsible for affirming in its representation letter to the auditor that the effects of any uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the auditor during the current engagement and pertaining to the current year period(s) under review are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information as a whole.

The auditor's responsibilities

- The auditor is responsible for conducting the review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information. A review of interim financial information consists principally of performing analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial information as a whole. Accordingly, the auditor will not express an opinion on the interim financial information.

Limitations of the engagement

- A review does not provide a basis for expressing an opinion about whether the interim financial information is presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- A review does not provide the auditor with a basis for obtaining reasonable assurance that the auditor will become aware of all significant findings or issues that would be identified in an audit.
- A review is not designed to provide the auditor with a basis for obtaining reasonable assurance on internal control or to identify significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control; however, the auditor is responsible for communicating to management and those charged with governance any significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control that the auditor identifies during the performance of review procedures.

Procedures for a Review of Interim Financial Information***Understanding the Entity and Its Environment, Including Its Internal Control (Ref: par. .11–.12)***

.A7 As required by section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*, the auditor who has audited the entity's financial statements for one or more annual periods would have obtained an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of

annual financial information, that was sufficient to conduct the audit. Internal control over the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information may differ from internal control over the preparation and fair presentation of annual financial statements because certain accounting principles and practices used for interim financial information may differ from those used for the preparation of annual financial statements (for example, the use of estimated effective income tax rates for the preparation of interim financial information).

.A8 The auditor is unable to complete the review if the entity's internal control appears to contain deficiencies so significant that it would be impracticable for the auditor to effectively perform review procedures that would achieve the objective stated in paragraph .05. Paragraph .23 addresses the auditor's responsibilities when the review cannot be completed.

.A9 In an initial review of interim financial information, when performing the procedures for a new client required by paragraph .07, the auditor also may consider requesting access to review the predecessor auditor's documentation related to reviews of an interim period or interim periods in the prior year. However, the inquiries made and analytical procedures performed, or other procedures performed in the initial review, and the conclusions reached are solely the responsibility of the auditor. Therefore, the auditor is not permitted to make reference to the report or work of the predecessor auditor as the basis, in part, for the auditor's own report.

.A10 If the predecessor auditor does not respond to the auditor's inquiries or does not allow the auditor to review the predecessor auditor's documentation, the auditor may inquire why and use alternative procedures to obtain the understanding required by paragraph .11.

Analytical Procedures, Inquiries, and Other Review Procedures

Analytical Procedures (Ref: par. .13)

.A11 Procedures for conducting a review of interim financial information generally are limited to analytical procedures, inquiries, and other procedures that address significant accounting and disclosure matters relating to the interim financial information. The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, the results of the risk assessments relating to the preceding audit, and the auditor's consideration of materiality as it relates to the interim financial information, influences the nature and extent of the inquiries made and analytical procedures performed. For example, if the auditor becomes aware of a significant change in the entity's control activities at a particular location, the auditor may consider the following procedures:

- Making additional inquiries, such as whether management monitored the changes and considered whether they were operating as intended
- Employing analytical procedures with a more precise expectation

.A12 Examples of analytical procedures that an auditor may consider performing when conducting a review of interim financial information are contained in appendix A, "Analytical Procedures the Auditor May Consider Performing When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information." The auditor also may find the guidance in section 520, *Analytical Procedures*, useful in conducting a review of interim financial information.

.A13 Expectations developed by the auditor in performing analytical procedures in connection with a review of interim financial information ordinarily are less precise than those developed in an audit. Also, in a review, the auditor is not required to corroborate management's responses with other evidence.

.A14 In considering plausible relationships, the auditor may wish to consider information developed and used by the entity (for example, analyses prepared for management or those charged with governance).

.A15 To compare disaggregated revenue data, the auditor may compare, for example, revenue reported by month and product line or operating segment during the current interim period with that of comparable prior periods.

766 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122*Inquiries and Other Review Procedures (Ref: par. .14)*

.A16 Many of the inquiries and review procedures can be performed before, or simultaneously with, the entity's preparation of the interim financial information. For example, the auditor may update the understanding of the entity's internal control and begin reading applicable minutes before the end of an interim period. Performing some of the review procedures earlier in the interim period also permits early identification and consideration of significant findings and issues affecting the interim financial information. In addition, when the auditor performing the review of interim financial information is also engaged to perform an audit of the annual financial statements of the entity, certain auditing procedures associated with the annual audit of the financial statements may be performed concurrently with the review of interim financial information. For example, information gained from reading the minutes of meetings of the board of directors in connection with the review also may be relevant to the annual audit. Also, there may be significant or unusual transactions occurring during an interim period (for example, business combinations, restructurings, or significant revenue transactions) for which the procedures that would need to be performed for purposes of the audit of the annual financial statements could be performed, to the extent practicable, at the time of the review of the interim period in which the transactions are first recorded.

.A17 The auditor may find the guidance in section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*, useful in conducting a review of interim financial information for an entity that prepares group financial statements.

.A18 Examples of unusual or complex situations about which the auditor may inquire of management are contained in appendix B, "Unusual or Complex Situations to Be Considered by the Auditor When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information."

.A19 To obtain evidence that the interim financial information agrees or reconciles with the accounting records, the auditor may compare the interim financial information to (a) the accounting records, such as the general ledger; (b) a consolidating schedule derived from the accounting records; or (c) other supporting data in the entity's records.

.A20 The auditor may find the guidance in section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards)*, useful in considering other information included in documents containing interim financial information.

.A21 The auditor may request component auditors involved in the engagement, if any, to read the other information.

Inquiry Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments (Ref: par. .15)

.A22 A review of interim financial information does not contemplate obtaining corroborating evidence for responses to inquiries, such as those concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. Consequently, the auditor is not required to send an inquiry letter to an entity's legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.

Inquiry Concerning an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (Ref: par. .16)

.A23 A review of interim financial information is not designed to identify conditions or events that may indicate substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern. However, conditions or events that may cast substantial doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern may have existed at the date of the prior period financial statements or may be identified as a result of inquiries of management or in the course of performing other review procedures. When performing a review engagement, the auditor is not required to obtain evidence in support of the information that mitigates the effects of the conditions and events.

.A24 Section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (AICPA, Professional Standards)*, may provide useful guidance to the auditor when con-

sidering whether there is adequate and appropriate disclosure in the interim financial information about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern.⁴ When

- a. conditions or events exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern, or
- b. the auditor's report for the prior year end contained an emphasis-of-matter paragraph indicating the existence of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, and the conditions that raised such doubt continued to exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review,

the auditor is not required to modify the report if there is adequate and appropriate disclosure about these conditions or events in the interim financial information. However, if the auditor determines that the disclosure about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern is inadequate, resulting in a departure from the applicable financial reporting framework, the auditor is required by paragraph .34 to modify the report.

Consideration of Management's Responses and Extension of Interim Review Procedures (Ref: par. .18)

.A25 The auditor's interim review procedures may lead the auditor to make additional inquiries, such as questioning whether, for example, a significant sales transaction is recorded in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Additional procedures that the auditor may perform to resolve such questions include discussing the terms of the transaction with senior sales and accounting personnel, reading the sales contract, or both.

Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures (Ref: par. .19–.20)

.A26 The auditor may designate an amount below which misstatements would be clearly trivial and would not need to be accumulated because the auditor expects that the accumulation of such amounts would not have a material effect on the interim financial information.⁵

.A27 As noted in paragraph .A2, appropriate financial reporting frameworks for interim financial information may include, for example, FASB ASC 270 and Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X. FASB ASC 270 describes the applicability of GAAP to interim financial information and indicates the types of disclosures necessary to report on a meaningful basis for a period of less than one full year. FASB ASC 270-10-45-16 provides guidance on assessing materiality in interim periods. For example, it states that in determining materiality for the purpose of reporting the correction of an error, amounts shall be related to the estimated income for the full fiscal year and also to the effect on the trend of earnings. Further, Rule 10-01(a)(5) of SEC Regulation S-X states the following:

The interim financial information shall include disclosures either on the face of the financial statements or in accompanying footnotes sufficient so as to make the interim information presented not misleading. Registrants may presume that users of the interim financial information have read or have access to the audited financial statements for the preceding fiscal year and that the adequacy of additional disclosure needed for a fair presentation, except in regard to material contingencies may be determined in that context. Accordingly, footnote disclosure which would substantially duplicate the disclosure contained in the most recent

⁴ Paragraph .10 of section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 59 has been included in section 570 in *AICPA Professional Standards*, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board. Until such time, section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁵ Paragraph .A2 of section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*.

768 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

annual report to security holders or latest audited financial statements, such as a statement of significant accounting policies and practices, details of accounts which have not changed significantly in amount or composition since the end of the most recently completed fiscal year, and detailed disclosures prescribed by Rule 4-08 of this Regulation, may be omitted. However, disclosure shall be provided where events subsequent to the end of the most recent fiscal year have occurred which have a material impact on the registrant. Disclosures should encompass for example, significant changes since the end of the most recently completed fiscal year in such items as: accounting principles and practices; estimates inherent in the preparation of the financial statements; status of long-term contracts; capitalization including significant new borrowings or modification of existing financing arrangements; and the reporting entity resulting from business combinations or dispositions. Notwithstanding the above, where material contingencies exist, disclosure of such matters shall be provided even though a significant change since year end may not have occurred.

.A28 Considerations that may affect the evaluation of whether uncorrected misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are material include the following:

- The nature, cause (if known), and amount of the misstatements
- Whether the misstatements originated in the preceding year or interim periods of the current year
- Materiality judgments made in conjunction with the current or prior year's annual audit
- The potential effect of the misstatements on future interim or annual periods
- The appropriateness of offsetting a misstatement of an estimated amount with a misstatement of an item capable of precise measurement
- Recognition that an accumulation of immaterial misstatements in the balance sheet could contribute to material misstatements in future periods

Section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, provides guidance regarding qualitative considerations in evaluating whether misstatements are material.

Written Representations From Management (Ref: par. .21–.22)

.A29 Exhibit A, "Illustrative Management Representation Letters for a Review of Interim Financial Information," contains illustrative representation letters for engagements to review interim financial information.

.A30 The auditor may request additional representations regarding matters specific to the entity's business or industry.

.A31 If no uncorrected misstatements were identified, the representation regarding uncorrected misstatements is not relevant and, accordingly, is not required.

.A32 Appropriate action when management does not provide one or more requested written representations or when the auditor has concerns about the reliability of the representations may include

- discussing the matter with management and, when relevant, those charged with governance;
- reevaluating the integrity of management and evaluating the effect that this may have on the reliability of representations (oral or written) and evidence in general; and
- considering whether to withdraw from the engagement to review the interim financial information and, if applicable, as the entity's auditor.

Communications With Management and Those Charged With Governance***Matters Affecting the Completion of the Review (Ref: par. .23–.26)***

.A33 When an auditor is unable to perform the procedures that the auditor considers necessary to achieve the objective of a review of interim financial information, or management does not pro-

vide the auditor with the written representations that the auditor believes are necessary, the review will be incomplete.

.A34 The auditor may seek legal advice when considering whether to withdraw from the engagement to review the interim financial information and as the entity's auditor.

Other Matters (Ref: par. .27–.28)

.A35 Section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit*, provides guidance on identifying and communicating deficiencies in internal control.

.A36 As a result of performing the review of the interim financial information, the auditor may become aware of matters that, in the opinion of the auditor, are both significant and relevant to those charged with governance in overseeing the financial reporting and disclosure process. Examples of such matters include the following:

- A change in a significant accounting policy affecting the interim financial information
- Adjustments that either individually or in the aggregate could have a significant effect on the entity's financial reporting process
- Uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the auditor that were determined by management to be immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information as a whole

.A37 The objective of a review of interim financial information differs significantly from that of an audit. Therefore, any communication that the auditor may make about the quality, not just the acceptability, of the entity's accounting principles as applied to its interim financial reporting generally is limited to the effect of significant events, transactions, and changes in accounting estimates that the auditor considered when conducting the review of interim financial information. Further, interim review procedures do not provide assurance that the auditor will become aware of all matters that might affect the auditor's judgments about the quality of the entity's accounting principles that would be identified as a result of an audit.

.A38 The communications required by paragraphs .23–.28 may be oral or written. The communications are most helpful when made on a sufficiently timely basis to enable management or those charged with governance to take appropriate action.

The Auditor's Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information

Form of the Auditor's Review Report (Ref: par. .29–.30)

.A39 Entities may be required by third parties to engage auditors to perform a review of interim financial information, but such third parties may choose to not require that a written auditor's review report on such information be provided to users of the entity's interim financial information. For example, entities that trade unregistered private equity securities on electronic trading platforms, often referred to as private equity exchanges, may be required to provide financial and other information to the qualified investors on the exchange's website. The ongoing reporting requirements of these exchanges are substantially similar to the reporting required of issuers, wherein entities trading securities on such exchanges are required to engage auditors to review their interim financial information but are not required to include written review reports with interim financial information provided to qualified investors. Nonetheless, in accordance with paragraph .29, the auditor's report on the review of the interim financial information is required to be in writing.

.A40 Reporting considerations related to the dating of reports or subsequent events encountered during a review are similar to those encountered in an audit of financial statements. Section 560 and section 700 provide guidance on these issues.

.A41 Exhibit B, "Illustrations of Auditor's Review Reports on Interim Financial Information," contains illustrations of review reports.

770 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122***Comparative Interim Financial Information That Has Not Been Reviewed Presented With Reviewed Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .32)***

.A42 The indication that the auditor has not reviewed the prior period interim financial information and that the auditor assumes no responsibility for it may be worded, for example, as follows:

The accompanying [*describe the interim financial information or statements*] of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1, and for the three-month period then ended were not reviewed by us, and accordingly, we do not express any form of assurance on it.

Interim Financial Information Presented With Condensed Balance Sheet Information for the Most Recent Year End (Ref: par. .33)

.A43 Because interim financial reporting is intended to be an update to year-end reporting, condensed balance sheet information as of the most recent year end often is presented for comparative purposes with the corresponding information as of the latest interim period. Appendix B includes an illustration of a review report on comparative interim financial information that includes a condensed balance sheet derived from audited financial statements.

Modification of the Auditor's Review Report (Ref: par. .34-.35)

.A44 Departures from the applicable financial reporting framework include inadequate disclosure and changes in accounting policies that are not in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

.A45 Section 700 addresses the reporting requirements when the circumstances contemplated by Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct are present.

.A46 If the interim financial information adequately discloses the existence of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern (see paragraph .16) or a lack of consistency in the application of accounting principles affecting the interim financial information, the auditor may, but is not required to, include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's review report.

.A47 Exhibit C, "Illustrations of Example Modifications to the Auditor's Review Report Due to Departures From the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework," contains illustrative examples of paragraphs modifying the auditor's review report.

.A48 The information necessary for adequate disclosure is influenced by the form and context in which the interim financial information is presented. For example, the disclosures considered necessary for interim financial information presented in accordance with the minimum disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 270-10-50-1, which is applicable to condensed financial statements of public companies, are considerably less extensive than those necessary for annual financial statements that present financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. FASB ASC 270-10-50-3 states that a presumption exists that users of summarized interim financial data will have read the latest published annual report, including the financial disclosures required by GAAP and management's commentary concerning the annual financial results, and that the summarized interim data will be viewed in that context.

Other Considerations (Ref: par. .38)

.A49 The auditor may seek legal advice in considering what actions, if any, may be appropriate in these circumstances.

Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements (Ref: par. .40-.41)

.A50 Interim financial information may accompany audited financial statements. If management chooses or is required to present interim financial information in a note to the audited financial statements, management is responsible for clearly marking the information as unaudited in the note.

.A51 Because the interim financial information has not been audited and is not required for the audited financial statements to be fairly stated in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, the auditor ordinarily need not modify the auditor's report on the audited financial statements to refer to the interim financial information accompanying the audited financial statements, including when the auditor has performed a review in accordance with this section.

Documentation (Ref: par. .42–.43)

.A52 The auditor may find the guidance in section 230, *Audit Documentation*, useful in determining the form and content of the review documentation, including guidance on the timing of the final assembly of the engagement documentation.

.A53 Examples of findings or issues that, in the auditor's judgment, are significant include the results of review procedures that indicate that the interim financial information could be materially misstated, including actions taken to address such findings, and the basis for the final conclusions reached.

.A54**Appendix A—Analytical Procedures the Auditor May Consider Performing When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .A12)**

Analytical procedures are designed to identify relationships and individual items that appear to be unusual and that may reflect a material misstatement of the interim financial information. Examples of analytical procedures that an auditor may consider performing in a review of interim financial information include the following:

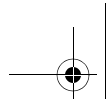
- Comparing current interim financial information with the interim financial information of the immediately preceding interim period, the interim financial information of the corresponding interim period of the preceding financial year, and the most recent audited annual financial statements.
- Comparing current interim financial information with anticipated results, such as budgets or forecasts (for example, comparing tax balances and the relationship between the provision for income taxes and pretax income in the current interim financial information with corresponding information in (a) budgets, using expected rates, and (b) financial information for prior periods). Caution is necessary when comparing and evaluating current interim financial information with budgets, forecasts, or other anticipated results because of the inherent lack of precision in estimating the future and the susceptibility of such information to manipulation and misstatement by management to reflect desired interim results.
- Comparing current interim financial information with relevant nonfinancial information.
- Comparing ratios and indicators for the current interim period with expectations based on prior periods (for example, performing gross profit analysis by product line and operating segment using elements of the current interim financial information and comparing the results with corresponding information for prior periods). Examples of key ratios and indicators are the current ratio, receivable turnover or days sales outstanding, inventory turnover, depreciation to average fixed assets, debt to equity, gross profit percentage, net income percentage, and plant operating rates.
- Comparing ratios and indicators for the current interim period with those of entities in the same industry.
- Comparing relationships among elements in the current interim financial information with corresponding relationships in the interim financial information of prior periods (for example, expense by type as a percentage of sales, assets by type as a percentage of total assets, and percentage of change in sales to percentage of change in receivables).
- Comparing disaggregated data. The following are examples of how data may be disaggregated:
 - By period (for example, interim financial information items disaggregated into quarterly, monthly, or weekly amounts)
 - By product line or operating segment
 - By location (for example, subsidiary, division, or branch)

Analytical procedures may include such statistical techniques as trend analysis or regression analysis and may be performed manually or with the use of computer-assisted techniques.

.A55**Appendix B—Unusual or Complex Situations to Be Considered by the Auditor When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .A18)**

The following are examples of situations about which the auditor may inquire of management:

- Business combinations
- New or complex revenue recognition methods
- Impairment of assets
- Disposal of a segment of a business
- Use of derivative instruments and hedging activities
- Sales and transfers that may call into question the classification of investments in securities, including management's intent and ability with respect to the remaining securities classified as held to maturity
- Adoption of new stock compensation plans or changes to existing plans
- Restructuring charges taken in the current and prior quarters
- Significant, unusual, or infrequently occurring transactions
- Changes in litigation or contingencies
- Changes in major contracts with customers or suppliers
- Application of new accounting principles
- Changes in accounting principles or the methods of applying them
- Trends and developments affecting accounting estimates, such as allowances for bad debts and excess or obsolete inventories, provisions for warranties and employee benefits, and realization of unearned income and deferred charges
- Compliance with debt covenants
- Changes in related parties or significant new related party transactions
- Material off-balance-sheet transactions, special purpose entities, and other equity investments
- Unique terms for debt or capital stock that could affect classification



.A56

Exhibit A—Illustrative Management Representation Letters for a Review of Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .A29)

The following management representation letters, which relate to a review of interim financial information, are presented for illustrative purposes only.

- Illustration 1: Short Form Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information
- Illustration 2: Detailed Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information

It is assumed in these illustrations that the applicable financial reporting framework is accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, that no conditions or events exist that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern, and that no exceptions exist to the requested written representations. If circumstances differ from these assumptions, the representations would need to be modified to reflect the actual circumstances.

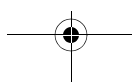
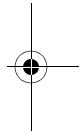
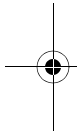


Illustration 1: Short Form Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information

This representation letter is to be used in conjunction with the representation letter for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year. Management confirms the representations made in the representation letter for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year end, as they apply to the interim financial information, and makes additional representations that may be needed for the interim financial information.

[Date]

To [Independent Auditor]:

This representation letter is provided in connection with your review of the [consolidated] balance sheet as of June 30, 20X1 and the related [consolidated] statements of income, changes in equity, and cash flows for the six-month period then ended of ABC Company for the purpose of reporting whether any material modifications should be made to the [consolidated] interim financial information for it to be in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) [including, if appropriate, an indication as to the appropriate form and content of interim financial information (for example, Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X)].

We confirm that [, to the best of our knowledge and belief, having made such inquiries as we considered necessary for the purpose of appropriately informing ourselves] [as of (date of auditor's review report)]:

Interim Financial Information

1. We have fulfilled our responsibilities, as set out in the terms of the engagement letter dated [insert date] for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with U.S. GAAP; in particular the interim financial information is presented in accordance therewith.
2. We acknowledge our responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.
3. The interim financial information has been adjusted or includes disclosures for all events subsequent to the date of the interim financial information for which U.S. GAAP requires adjustment or disclosure.
4. The effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information as a whole. A list of the uncorrected misstatements is attached to the representation letter.

[Any other matters that the auditor may consider appropriate]

Information Provided

5. We have provided you with:
 - Access to all information of which we are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - Minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors, or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared;
 - Additional information that you have requested from us for the purpose of the review; and
 - Unrestricted access to persons within the entity of whom you determined it necessary to make inquiries.
6. We have disclosed to you all significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control of which we are aware, as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information.



776 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122



7. We have disclosed to you the results of our assessment of the risk that the interim financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.

8. We have *[no knowledge of any]**[disclosed to you all information of which we are aware in relation to]* fraud or suspected fraud that affects the entity and involves:

- Management;
- Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
- Others when the fraud could have a material effect on the interim financial information.

9. We have *[no knowledge of any]**[disclosed to you all information in relation to]* allegations of fraud, or suspected fraud, affecting the entity's interim financial information communicated by employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, or others.

10. We have disclosed to you the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which we are aware.

[Any other matters that the auditor may consider necessary]

11. We have reviewed our representation letter to you dated *[date of representation letter relating to most recent audit]* with respect to the audited consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended *[prior year-end date]*. We believe that representations *[references to applicable representations]* within that representation letter do not apply to the interim financial information referred to above. We now confirm those representations *[references to applicable representations]*, as they apply to the interim financial information referred to above, and incorporate them herein, with the following changes:

[Indicate any changes.]

12. *[Add any representations related to new accounting or auditing standards that are being implemented for the first time.]*

[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]

[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]

[Name of Chief Accounting Officer and Title]

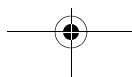


Illustration 2: Detailed Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information

This representation letter is similar in detail to the management representation letter used for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year and, thus, need not refer to the written management representations received in the most recent audit.

[Date]

To [Independent Auditor]:

This representation letter is provided in connection with your review of the [consolidated] balance sheet as of June 30, 20X1 and the related [consolidated] statements of income, changes in equity, and cash flows for the six-month period then ended of ABC Company for the purpose of reporting whether any material modifications should be made to the [consolidated] interim financial information for it to be in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) [including, if appropriate, an indication as to the appropriate form and content of interim financial information (for example, Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X)].

We confirm that [, to the best of our knowledge and belief, having made such inquiries as we considered necessary for the purpose of appropriately informing ourselves] [as of (date of auditor's review report),]:

Interim Financial Information

1. We have fulfilled our responsibilities, as set out in the terms of the engagement letter dated [insert date] for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with U.S. GAAP; in particular the interim financial information is presented in accordance therewith.
2. We acknowledge our responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.
3. Significant assumptions used by us in making accounting estimates, including those measured at fair value, are reasonable.
4. Related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the requirements of U.S. GAAP.
5. The interim financial information has been adjusted or includes disclosures for all events subsequent to the date of the interim financial information for which U.S. GAAP requires adjustment or disclosure.
6. The effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information as a whole. A list of the uncorrected misstatements is attached to the representation letter.

[Any other matters that the auditor may consider appropriate]

Information Provided

7. We have provided you with:
 - Access to all information of which we are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information such as records, documentation, and other matters;
 - Minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors, or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared;
 - Additional information that you have requested from us for the purpose of the review; and
 - Unrestricted access to persons within the entity of whom you determined it necessary to make inquiries.

778 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

8. All transactions have been recorded in the accounting records and are reflected in the interim financial information.

9. We have disclosed to you all significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control of which we are aware, as it relates to the preparation and fair presentation of both annual and interim financial information.

10. We have disclosed to you the results of our assessment of the risk that the interim financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.

11. We have [*no knowledge of any*][*disclosed to you all information of which we are aware in relation to*] fraud or suspected fraud that affects the entity and involves:

- Management;
- Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
- Others when the fraud could have a material effect on the interim financial information.

12. We have [*no knowledge of any*][*disclosed to you all information in relation to*] allegations of fraud, or suspected fraud, affecting the entity's interim financial information communicated by employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, or others.

13. We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing interim financial information.

14. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in financial reporting practices.

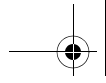
15. We have disclosed to you the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which we are aware.

[*Any other matters that the auditor may consider necessary*]

[*Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title*]

[*Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title*]

[*Name of Chief Accounting Officer and Title*]



.A57

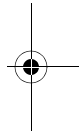
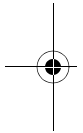
Exhibit B—Illustrations of Auditor’s Review Reports on Interim Financial Information (Ref: par. .A41)

Illustration 1: A Review Report on Interim Financial Information

Illustration 2: A Review Report on Condensed Comparative Interim Financial Information

Illustration 3: A Review Report That Refers to a Component Auditor’s Review Report on the Interim Financial Information of a Significant Component of a Reporting Entity

Illustration 4: A Review Report on Comparative Interim Financial Information When the Prior Period Was Reviewed by Another Auditor



780 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 1: A Review Report on Interim Financial Information**

Circumstances include the following:

- A review of interim financial information presented as a complete set of financial statements, including disclosures

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REVIEW REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements

We have reviewed the accompanying [*describe the interim financial information or statements reviewed*] of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1, and for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended.

Management's Responsibility

The Company's management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with [*identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America*]; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to conduct our review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Conclusion

Based on our review, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to be in accordance with [*identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America*].

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 2: A Review Report on Condensed Comparative Interim Financial Information

The following is an example of a review report on a condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 20X1; the related condensed statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X1 and 20X0; and a condensed balance sheet derived from audited financial statements as of December 31, 20X0. If the auditor's report on the preceding year-end financial statements was other than unmodified or included an emphasis-of-matter paragraph because of a going concern matter or an inconsistency in the application of accounting principles, the last paragraph of the illustrative report would be appropriately modified.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REVIEW REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements

We have reviewed the condensed consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and subsidiaries, which comprise the balance sheet as of March 31, 20X1, and the related condensed consolidated statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X1 and 20X0.

Management's Responsibility

The Company's management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the condensed financial information in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to conduct our reviews in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Conclusion

Based on our reviews, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the condensed financial information referred to above for it to be in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*.

Report on Condensed Balance Sheet as of [Date]

We have previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein); and we expressed an unmodified audit opinion on those audited consolidated financial statements in our report dated February 15, 20X1. In our opinion, the accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X0, is consistent, in all material respects, with the audited consolidated financial statements from which it has been derived.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

782 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Illustration 3: A Review Report That Refers to a Component Auditor's Review Report on the Interim Financial Information of a Significant Component of a Reporting Entity**

Circumstances include the following:

- A review of interim financial information presented as a complete set of financial statements, including disclosures.
- The auditor is making reference to another auditor's review report on the interim financial information of a significant component of a reporting entity.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REVIEW REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements

We have reviewed the accompanying [describe the interim financial information or statements reviewed] of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1, and for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended.

Management's Responsibility

The Company's management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with [identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to conduct our review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

We were furnished with the report of other auditors on their review of the interim financial information of DEF subsidiary, whose total assets as of September 30, 20X1, and whose revenues for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended, constituted 15 percent, 20 percent, and 22 percent, respectively, of the related consolidated totals.

Conclusion

Based on our review and the review report of other auditors, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to be in accordance with [identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America].

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Illustration 4: A Review Report on Comparative Interim Financial Information When the Prior Period Was Reviewed by Another Auditor

Circumstances include the following:

- A review of interim financial information presented as a complete set of financial statements, including disclosures as of March 31, 20X1, and for the three-month period then ended.
- Comparative information is presented for the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, and for the statements of income and cash flows for the comparable interim period.
- The December 31, 20X0, financial statements were audited, and the March 31, 20X0, interim financial information was reviewed, by another auditor.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REVIEW REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Financial Statements

We have reviewed the accompanying [describe the interim financial information or statements reviewed] of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of March 31, 20X1, and for the three-month period then ended. The consolidated statements of income and cash flows of ABC Company and subsidiaries for the three-month period ended March 31, 20X0, were reviewed by other auditors whose report dated June 1, 20X0, stated that based on their review, they were not aware of any material modifications that should be made to those statements in order for them to be in conformity with [identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]. The consolidated balance sheet of the Company as of December 31, 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein), were audited by other auditors whose report dated March 15, 20X1, expressed an unmodified opinion on that statement.

Management's Responsibility

The Company's management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the interim financial information in accordance with [identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]; this responsibility includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for the preparation and fair presentation of interim financial information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to conduct our review in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America applicable to reviews of interim financial information. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Conclusion

Based on our review, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information as of and for the three months ended March 31, 20X1, for it to be in accordance with [identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America].

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

.A58

Exhibit C—Illustrations of Example Modifications to the Auditor’s Review Report Due to Departures From the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (Ref: par. .A47)

Illustration 1: Modification Due to a Departure From the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

Illustration 2: Modification Due to Inadequate Disclosure

Illustration 3: Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph When a Going Concern Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Was Included in the Prior Year’s Audit Report, and Conditions Giving Rise to the Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Continue to Exist

Illustration 4: Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph When a Going Concern Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Was Not Included in the Prior Year’s Audit Report, and Conditions or Events Exist as of the Interim Reporting Date Covered by the Review That Might Be Indicative of the Entity’s Possible Inability to Continue as a Going Concern

Illustration 1: Modification Due to a Departure From the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

The following is an example of a modification of the auditor's review report due to a departure from the applicable financial reporting framework:

[Basis for Modification Paragraph]

Based on information furnished to us by management, we believe that the Company has excluded from property and debt in the accompanying balance sheet certain lease obligations that we believe should be capitalized to be in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*. This information indicates that if these lease obligations were capitalized at September 30, 20X1, property would be increased by \$_____, long-term debt would be increased by \$_____, and net income would be increased (decreased) by \$_____ and \$_____, respectively, for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended.

[Conclusion]

Based on our review, with the exception of the matter(s) described in the preceding paragraph(s), we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to be in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*.



786 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

Illustration 2: Modification Due to Inadequate Disclosure

The following is an example of a modification of the auditor's review report due to inadequate disclosure:

[Basis for Modification Paragraph]

Management has informed us that the Company is presently defending a claim regarding *[describe the nature of the loss contingency]* and that the extent of the Company's liability, if any, and the effect on the accompanying interim financial information is not determinable at this time. The interim financial information fails to disclose these matters, which we believe are required to be disclosed in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*.

[Conclusion]

Based on our review, with the exception of the matter(s) described in the preceding paragraph(s), we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to be in accordance with *[identify the applicable financial reporting framework; for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America]*.



Illustration 3: Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph When a Going Concern Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Was Included in the Prior Year's Audit Report, and Conditions Giving Rise to the Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Continue to Exist

The following is an example of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph when a going concern emphasis-of-matter paragraph was included in the prior year's audit report, and conditions giving rise to the emphasis-of-matter paragraph continue to exist:

[Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph]

Note 4 of the Company's audited financial statements as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended, discloses that the Company was unable to renew its line of credit or obtain alternative financing at December 31, 20X1. Our auditor's report on those financial statements includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph referring to the matters in note 4 of those financial statements and indicating that these matters raised substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. As indicated in note 3 of the Company's unaudited interim financial information as of March 31, 20X2, and for the three months then ended, the Company was still unable to renew its line of credit or obtain alternative financing as of March 31, 20X2. The accompanying interim financial information does not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

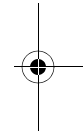
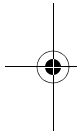


Illustration 4: Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph When a Going Concern Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph Was Not Included in the Prior Year's Audit Report, and Conditions or Events Exist as of the Interim Reporting Date Covered by the Review That Might Be Indicative of the Entity's Possible Inability to Continue as a Going Concern

The following is an example of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph when a going concern emphasis-of-matter paragraph was not included in the prior year's audit report, and conditions or events exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern:

[Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph]

As indicated in note 3, certain conditions indicate that the Company may be unable to continue as a going concern. The accompanying interim financial information does not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.



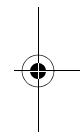
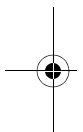


AU-C Section 935*

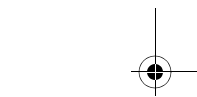
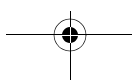
[Designated for Clarified SAS No. 117, Compliance Audits]

NOTE

SAS No. 122 does not supersede SAS No. 117, *Compliance Audits*, which is currently codified as AU section 801 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 designates section 935 in *AICPA Professional Standards* for codification of SAS No. 117.



-
- * This section contains an “AU-C” identifier instead of an “AU” identifier. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in *AICPA Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this section becomes fully effective for all engagements.



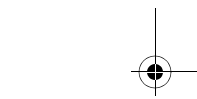
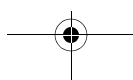
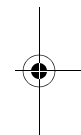
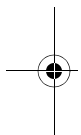
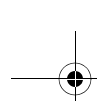


Exhibit — List of AU-C Sections Designated by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122, Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification, Cross Referenced to List of AU Sections in AICPA Professional Standards

Part I — AU-C Section to AU Section Cross References

<u>AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122¹</u>		<u>AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122</u>	
<u>AU-C Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>AU Section</u>	<u>Title</u>
Preface	<i>Principles Underlying an Audit Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>		
200	General Principles and Responsibilities		
200	<i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	110	<i>Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor</i>
		120	<i>Defining Professional Requirements in Statements on Auditing Standards</i>
		150	<i>Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>
		201	<i>Nature of the General Standards</i>
		210	<i>Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor</i>
		220	<i>Independence</i>
210	<i>Terms of Engagement</i>	230	<i>Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work</i>
		311	<i>Planning and Supervision</i>
		315	<i>Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors</i>

¹ Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, contains "AU-C" section numbers instead of "AU" section numbers. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time this Statement becomes fully effective for all engagements.

792 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1-121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117-120)	
220	<i>Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	161	<i>The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards</i>
230	<i>Audit Documentation</i>	339	<i>Audit Documentation</i>
240	<i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>	316	<i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>
250	<i>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	317	<i>Illegal Acts by Clients</i>
260	<i>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>	380	<i>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>
265	<i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>	325	<i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>
300-499	Risk Assessment and Response to Assessed Risks		
300	<i>Planning an Audit</i>	311	<i>Planning and Supervision</i>
315	<i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>	314	<i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>
320	<i>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</i>	312 ²	<i>Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit</i>
330	<i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>	318	<i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>
402	<i>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</i>	324 ³	<i>Service Organizations</i>
450	<i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</i>	312 ⁴	<i>Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit</i>

² AU-C section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit*, also supersedes AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*.

³ Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 16, *Reporting on Controls at a Service Organization* (AICPA, Professional Standards, AT sec. 801), also supersedes AU section 324, *Service Organizations*.

⁴ AU-C section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, also supersedes AU section 312.

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)	
500	Audit Evidence		
500	Audit Evidence	326	Audit Evidence
		331	Inventories
		332	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities
501	Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items	337	Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments
		901 ⁶	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held
505	External Confirmations	330	The Confirmation Process
510	Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements	315	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors
520	Analytical Procedures	329	Analytical Procedures
530	Audit Sampling	350	Audit Sampling
540	Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures	328	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures
		342	Auditing Accounting Estimates
550	Related Parties	334	Related Parties
		508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements
560	Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts	530	Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report
		560	Subsequent Events
		561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report

⁵ AU-C section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*, withdraws AU section 337B, Exhibit I—*Excerpts From Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, Contingencies*.

⁶ AU-C section 501 withdraws AU section 901, *Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held*.

794 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1-121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117-120)	
570 ⁷	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i>	341	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i> All
580	<i>Written Representations</i>	333	<i>Management Representations</i> All
585	<i>Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date</i>	390	<i>Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date</i> All
600	Using the Work of Others		
600	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>	508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> .12-.13
		543	<i>Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors</i> All
610 ⁸	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	322	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements</i> All
620	<i>Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</i>	336	<i>Using the Work of a Specialist</i> All

⁷ SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 341 as AU-C section 570 in AICPA Professional Standards, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board (ASB). Until such time, AU-C section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁸ SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 322 as AU-C section 610 in AICPA Professional Standards, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122	
700	Audit Conclusions and Reporting	(SAS Nos. 1-121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117-120)	
700	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>	410	<i>Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i> All
		530	<i>Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report</i> .01-.02
		508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 ⁹
705	<i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	431	<i>Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements</i> All
		508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 ¹⁰
706	<i>Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 ¹¹
708	<i>Consistency of Financial Statements</i>	420	<i>Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i> All
		508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> .16-.18 and .53-.57

⁹ AU-C section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and AU-C section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, also supersede paragraphs .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*.

¹⁰ AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, and AU-C section 706 also supersede paragraphs .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 of AU section 508.

¹¹ AU-C section 700 and AU-C section 705 also supersede paragraphs .01-.11, .14-.15, .19-.32, .35-.52, .58-.70, and .74-.76 of AU section 508.

796 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)	
720 ¹²	<i>Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</i>	550	<i>Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</i>
725 ¹³	<i>Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</i>	551	<i>Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</i>
730 ¹⁴	<i>Required Supplementary Information</i>	558	<i>Required Supplementary Information</i>
800	Special Considerations		
800	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statement Frameworks</i>	544	<i>Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>
		623	<i>Special Reports</i>
805	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement</i>	508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i>
		623	<i>Special Reports</i>
806	<i>Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements</i>	623	<i>Special Reports</i>
810	<i>Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements</i>	552	<i>Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data</i>

¹² To address practice issues, SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 118 was originally codified as AU section 550 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 550 as AU-C section 720 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 118. AU-C section 720 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

¹³ To address practice issues, SAS No. 119, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 119 was originally codified as AU section 551 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 551 as AU-C section 725 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 119. AU-C section 725 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

¹⁴ To address practice issues, SAS No. 120, *Required Supplementary Information*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 120 was originally codified as AU section 558 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 558 as AU-C section 730 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 120. AU-C section 730 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122		AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1-121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117-120)	
900	Special Considerations in the United States		
905 ¹⁵	<i>Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report</i>	532	<i>Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report</i>
910 ¹⁶	<i>Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries</i>	534	<i>Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries</i>
915	<i>Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework</i>	625	<i>Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles</i>
920	<i>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>	634	<i>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>
925	<i>Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933</i>	711	<i>Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes</i>
930	<i>Interim Financial Information</i>	722	<i>Interim Financial Information</i>
935 ¹⁷	<i>Compliance Audits</i>	801	<i>Compliance Audits</i>
		504 ¹⁸	<i>Association With Financial Statements</i>

¹⁵ SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 532 as AU-C section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁶ SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 534 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 534 as AU-C section 910 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 910 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

¹⁷ To address practice issues, SAS No. 117, *Compliance Audits*, was issued in December 2009 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for compliance audits for fiscal periods ending on or after June 15, 2010. SAS No. 117 was originally codified as AU section 801 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 801 as AU-C section 935 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 117. AU-C section 935 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

¹⁸ The ASB has withdrawn AU section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, and addressed its content through amendments to Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services to the extent needed, and to certain AU-C sections. As a result, amendments are currently proposed to AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, AU-C section 230, *Audit Documentation*, AU-C section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, AU-C section 705, and AU-C section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*.

798 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122**Part II—AU Section to AU-C Section Cross References**

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)			AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122¹	
<u>AU Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Paragraph</u>	<u>AU-C Section</u>	<u>Title</u>
100	Introduction			
110	<i>Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor</i>	All	200	<i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>
120	<i>Defining Professional Requirements in Statements on Auditing Standards</i>	All		
150	<i>Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	All		
161	<i>The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards</i>	All	220	<i>Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>
200	The General Standards			
201	<i>Nature of the General Standards</i>	All	200	<i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>
210	<i>Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor</i>	All		
220	<i>Independence</i>	All		
230	<i>Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work</i>	All		
300	The Standards of Field Work			
311	<i>Planning and Supervision</i>	All except .08–.10	300	<i>Planning an Audit</i>
		.08–.10	210	<i>Terms of Engagement</i>
312	<i>Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit</i>	All	320	<i>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</i>
			450	<i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</i>

¹ Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, contains “AU-C” section numbers instead of “AU” section numbers. “AU-C” is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing “AU” sections, which remain effective through 2013, in AICPA *Professional Standards*. The “AU-C” identifier will revert to “AU” in 2014, by which time this Statement becomes fully effective for all engagements.

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)			AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
314	<i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>	All	315	<i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>
315	<i>Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors</i>	All except .03–.10 and .14	510	<i>Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements</i>
316	<i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>	.03–.10 and .14	210	<i>Terms of Engagement</i>
317	<i>Illegal Acts by Clients</i>	All	240	<i>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>
318	<i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>	All	250	<i>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>
322	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	All	330	<i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>
324 ³	<i>Service Organizations</i>	All	610 ²	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>
325	<i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>	All	402	<i>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</i>
326	<i>Audit Evidence</i>	All	265	<i>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>
328	<i>Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures</i>	All	500	<i>Audit Evidence</i>
			540	<i>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</i>

² SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 322 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 322 as AU-C section 610 in AICPA Professional Standards, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board (ASB). Until such time, AU-C section 610 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

³ AU section 324, *Service Organizations*, is also superseded by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 16, *Reporting on Controls at a Service Organization* (AICPA, Professional Standards, AT sec. 801).

800 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)		AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
329	<i>Analytical Procedures</i>	All	520
330	<i>The Confirmation Process</i>	All	505
331	<i>Inventories</i>	All	
332	<i>Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities</i>	All	501
333	<i>Management Representations</i>	All	580
334	<i>Related Parties</i>	All	550
336	<i>Using the Work of a Specialist</i>	All	620
337	<i>Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments</i>	All except AU 337B ⁴	501
339	<i>Audit Documentation</i>	All	230
341	<i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i>	All	570 ⁵
342	<i>Auditing Accounting Estimates</i>	All	540
350	<i>Audit Sampling</i>	All	530
380	<i>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>	All	260
390	<i>Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date</i>	All	585

⁴ AU section 337B, Exhibit I—Excerpts From Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, *Contingencies*, is withdrawn by AU-C section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items*.

⁵ SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 341 as AU-C section 570 in AICPA Professional Standards, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with ISA 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)		AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
400	The First, Second, and Third Standards of Reporting		
410	<i>Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	All	700 <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>
420	<i>Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	All	708 <i>Consistency of Financial Statements</i>
431	<i>Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements</i>	All	705 <i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>
500	The Fourth Standard of Reporting		
504 ⁶	<i>Association With Financial Statements</i>	All	
508	<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i>	.01–.11, .14–.15, .19–.32, .35–.52, .58–.70, and .74–.76	700 <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>
			705 <i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>
			706 <i>Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>
		.12–.13	600 <i>Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>
		.16–.18 and .53–.57	708 <i>Consistency of Financial Statements</i>
		.33–.34	805 <i>Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement</i>
		.71–.73	560 <i>Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts</i>

⁶ The ASB has withdrawn AU section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, and addressed its content through amendments to Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services to the extent needed, and to certain AU-C sections. As a result, amendments are currently proposed to AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, AU-C section 230, *Audit Documentation*, AU-C section 280, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, AU-C section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and AU-C section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*.

802 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)		AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
	<i>Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	.01–.02	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>
530			700
		.03–.08	<i>Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts</i>
532	<i>Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report</i>	All	905 ⁷
534	<i>Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries</i>	All	910 ⁸
543	<i>Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors</i>	All	600
544	<i>Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	All	800
550	<i>Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</i>	All	720 ⁹

⁷ SAS No. 87, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 532 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 532 as AU-C section 905 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 905 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁸ SAS No. 51, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, is currently effective and codified as AU section 534 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 534 as AU-C section 910 in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence as part of the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB. Until such time, AU-C section 910 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

⁹ To address practice issues, SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 118 was originally codified as AU section 550 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 550 as AU-C section 720 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 118. AU-C section 720 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)		AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
551	<i>Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</i>	All	725 ¹⁰
552	<i>Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data</i>	All	810
558	<i>Required Supplementary Information</i>	All	730 ¹¹
560	<i>Subsequent Events</i>	All	560
561	<i>Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report</i>	All	560
600	Other Types of Reports		
623	<i>Special Reports</i>	.01–.10 and .22–.34	800
		.11–.18	805
		.19–.21	806

¹⁰ To address practice issues, SAS No. 119, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 119 was originally codified as AU section 551 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 551 as AU-C section 725 in *AICPA Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 119. AU-C section 725 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

¹¹ To address practice issues, SAS No. 120, *Required Supplementary Information*, was issued in February 2010 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2010. SAS No. 120 was originally codified as AU section 558 in *AICPA Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 558 as AU-C section 730 in *AICPA Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 120. AU-C section 730 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

804 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122

AU Sections Superseded by SAS No. 122 (SAS Nos. 1–121 except SAS Nos. 51, 59, 65, 87, and 117–120)			AU-C Sections Designated by SAS No. 122	
625	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	All	915	Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework
634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	All	920	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties
700	Special Topics			
711	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	All	925	Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933
722	Interim Financial Information	All	930	Interim Financial Information
800	Compliance Auditing			
801	Compliance Audits	All	935 ¹²	Compliance Audits
900	Special Reports of the Committee on Auditing Procedure			
901 ¹³	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held	All	501	Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items

¹² To address practice issues, SAS No. 117, *Compliance Audits*, was issued in December 2009 as a Statement on Auditing Standards resulting from the Clarification and Convergence project of the ASB, and is effective for compliance audits for fiscal periods ending on or after June 15, 2010. SAS No. 117 was originally codified as AU section 801 in AICPA *Professional Standards*. SAS No. 122 redesignates AU section 801 as AU-C section 935 in AICPA *Professional Standards* but does not supersede SAS No. 117. AU-C section 935 contains conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 122.

¹³ AU section 901, *Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held*, is withdrawn by AU-C section 501.

Statement on Auditing Standards

Issued by the Auditing Standards Board

123

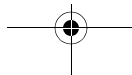
October 2011

Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards— 2011

(Amendments to Statement on Auditing Standards [SAS] No. 117, Compliance Audits [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 935]; SAS No. 118, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 720]; SAS No. 122 section 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 200]; SAS No. 122 section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 705]; SAS No. 122 section 915, Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 915]; SAS No. 122 section 260, The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 260]; and SAS No. 122 section 230, Audit Documentation [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 230])

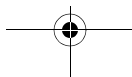
This Statement on Auditing Standards has been codified in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which contains a complete codification of the Statements on Auditing Standards and is available in the AICPA Store at www.cpa2biz.com/AST/Main/CPA2BIZ_Primary/Ethics/PRDOVR~PC-005102/PC-005102.jsp.

AICPA®



Contents

	Paragraph
Amendment to SAS No. 117	1–2
Amendment to SAS No. 118	3–4
Amendment to SAS No. 122 section 200, <i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	5–8
Amendment to SAS No. 122 section 705, <i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report</i>	9–11
Amendment to SAS No. 122 section 915, <i>Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework</i>	12–13
Amendment to SAS No. 122 section 260, <i>The Auditor’s Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i> (Redrafted) ...	14–15
Amendment to SAS No. 122 section 230, <i>Audit Documentation</i> (Redrafted)	16–17
Exhibit—Audit Documentation: Auditing Interpretations of SAS No. 122 Section 230, <i>Audit Documentation</i>	18



Statement on Auditing Standards Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2011

Boldface italic denotes new language. Deleted text is in ~~strikethrough~~.

Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 117

1. Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 117, *Compliance Audits*, addresses the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) to a compliance audit. This amendment conforms the auditor's report on compliance with the requirements of SAS No. 122 section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*. In addition, the amendment revises the appendix, "AU-C Sections That Are Not Applicable to Compliance Audits," in SAS No. 117 to reflect conforming changes to affected references to AU-C sections as a result of the Auditing Standards Board's (ASB's) clarity project.

30. The auditor's report on compliance should ***be in writing and*** include the following elements:

a. A title that includes the word *independent*

b. An addressee appropriate for the circumstances of the engagement

~~*cb. An introductory paragraph that includes the following:*~~

- i.* Identification of the one or more government programs covered by the compliance audit or reference to a separate schedule containing that information
- ~~*ii.*~~ *e.* Identification of the applicable compliance requirements or a reference to where they can be found
- ~~*iii.*~~ *d.* Identification of the period covered by the report

ed. A section with the heading "Management's Responsibility" that includes a statement that compliance with the applicable compliance requirements is the responsibility of the entity's management. If the document containing the auditor's report contains a separate statement by management about its responsibility for the applicable compliance requirements, the auditor's report should not include a reference to such statement by management.

fe. A section with the heading "Auditor's Responsibility" that includes the following statements:

- i.* A statement that the auditor's responsibility is to express an opinion on the entity's compliance with the applicable compliance requirements based on the compliance audit
- ~~*ii.*~~ *g.* A statement that the compliance audit was conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, and the governmental audit requirement
- ~~*iii.*~~ *h.* A statement that the compliance audit included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the entity's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as the auditor considered necessary in the circumstances
- ~~*iv.*~~ *i.* A statement that the auditor believes the compliance audit provides a reasonable basis for ~~his or her~~ ***the auditor's*** opinion
- ~~*v.*~~ *j.* A statement that the compliance audit does not provide a legal determination of the entity's compliance

lf. If noncompliance results in ~~an a modified~~ ***an a modified*** opinion ~~modification is identified, a~~ ***modification is identified, a*** ***section with an appropriate heading, indicating the basis for the modified opinion that includes*** a description of such noncompliance, or a reference to a description of such noncompliance in an accompanying schedule⁵ (Ref: par. A34)

810 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

k.g. A section with the heading “Opinion” that includes the auditor’s opinion, at the level specified by the governmental audit requirement, on whether the entity complied, in all material respects, with the applicable compliance requirements

mh. If other noncompliance that is required to be reported by the governmental audit requirement is identified (that is, noncompliance that does not result in ~~an~~ a modified opinion ~~modification~~), an other-matter paragraph⁶ that includes a description of such noncompliance or a reference to a description of such noncompliance in an accompanying schedule (Ref: par. A34)

ni. If the criteria used to evaluate compliance are

- i. established or determined by contractual agreement or regulatory provisions that are developed solely for the parties to the agreement or regulatory agency responsible for the provisions or
- ii. available only to the specified parties, a separate paragraph at the end of the report that includes (1) a statement indicating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of the specified parties, (2) an identification of the specified parties to whom use is restricted, and (3) a statement that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties (Ref: par. A33)

ej. The manual or printed signature of the auditor’s firm

k. The city and state where the auditor practices

pl. The date of the auditor’s report

⁵ *Paragraph .16 of SAS No. 122 section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report.*

⁶ *Paragraph .08 of SAS No. 122 section 706, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report.*

Combined Report on Compliance and Internal Control Over Compliance

31. If the governmental audit requirement requires the auditor to report on internal control over compliance and the auditor combines the auditor’s report on compliance with a report on internal control over compliance, the following should be added to the report elements listed in paragraph 30, ***in a section with the heading “Internal Control Over Compliance” that appears before the section required by paragraph 30(i), if any:***

[No changes to paragraphs 31(a)–A40.]

A41. Appendix: ~~Clarified SASs and AU~~ AU-C Sections That Are Not Applicable to Compliance Audits¹

The following ~~clarified SASs and AU~~ ***AU-C sections and individually enumerated requirement paragraphs of specific AU-C sections of AICPA Professional Standards*** are not applicable to a compliance audit performed under ~~AU~~ ***section 801935, Compliance Audits (AICPA, Professional Standards)***, either because (1) they are not relevant to a compliance audit environment, (2) the procedures and guidance would not contribute to meeting the objectives of a compliance audit, or (3) the subject matter is specifically covered in ~~AU~~ ***section 801935. Where the table in this appendix specifies individual requirement paragraphs, rather than an entire AU-C section, the application and other explanatory material paragraphs related to such requirement paragraphs also do not apply.*** However, ~~nothing precludes an auditor from applying~~ ***may apply*** these ***AU-C sections and paragraphs*** if the auditor believes ~~they doing so~~ ***they doing so*** will provide appropriate audit evidence in the specific circumstances to support the auditor’s opinion on compliance.

AU-C Section of AICPA Professional Standards	Paragraphs Not Applicable to Compliance Audits
210, Terms of Engagement	<i>Paragraphs .06a and .08a</i>
240, Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	<i>Paragraphs .26 and .32b</i>
250, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements	<i>All</i>
315, Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement	<i>Paragraphs .12c, .26-.27, and .33c</i>
330, Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained	<i>Paragraphs .13-.14, .19-.21, .26, and .31-.32</i>
501, Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items	<i>All</i>
505, External Confirmations	<i>All</i>
510, Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements	<i>Paragraphs .06, .08-.13, and .15-.17</i>
540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates and Related Disclosures	<i>All</i>
550, Related Parties	<i>All</i>
560, Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts	<i>Paragraphs .09-.11 and .19-.20</i>
570, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	<i>All</i>
600, Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)	<i>Paragraphs .25a, .38, .40c, .54, and .55c</i>
700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements	<i>Paragraphs .14-.18, .21-.41, and .44-.58</i>
705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report	<i>Paragraphs .17-.19</i>
706, Emphasis-of-Matter and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report	<i>Paragraphs .06-.07</i>
708, Consistency of Financial Statements	<i>All</i>
720, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	<i>All</i>
725, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole	<i>All</i>
730, Required Supplementary Information	<i>All</i>
800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks	<i>All</i>

812 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement	<i>All</i>
806, Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements	<i>All</i>
810, Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements	<i>All</i>
910, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	<i>All</i>
915, Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework	<i>All</i>
920, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	<i>All</i>
925, Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933	<i>All</i>
930, Interim Financial Information	<i>All</i>
Paragraph .01 of section 110, <i>Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor</i>	
Standards of reporting in paragraph .02 of section 150, <i>Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	
Paragraphs .09, .44, .45, .83, .86, and .102 of section 314, <i>Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>	
Paragraphs .12, .13 and .21, .22 of section 315, <i>Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors</i>	
Section 317, <i>Illegal Acts by Clients</i>	
Paragraphs .40, .45, .52, .68, .69, and the appendix of section 318, <i>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>	
Paragraphs .22, .60 of section 324, <i>Service Organizations</i>	
Paragraphs .14, .19 of section 326, <i>Audit Evidence</i>	
Section 328, <i>Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures</i>	
Section 330, <i>The Confirmation Process</i>	
Section 331, <i>Inventories</i>	
Section 332, <i>Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities</i>	
Paragraph .12 of section 333, <i>Management Representations</i>	
Section 334, <i>Related Parties</i>	
Section 337, <i>Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments</i>	
Section 341, <i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i>	
Section 342, <i>Auditing Accounting Estimates</i>	
Section 410, <i>Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	
Section 420, <i>Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	
Section 431, <i>Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements</i>	

<i>Section 504, Association With Financial Statements</i>
<i>Paragraphs .05, .08, .09, .11(b) (h), .14, .18, .27, .28, .33, .34, .38, .41, .57, and .64 of section 508, Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i>
<i>Section 534, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries</i>
<i>Paragraphs .14 and .16 of section 543, Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors</i>
<i>Section 544, Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>
<i>Section 550, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</i>
<i>Section 551, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</i>
<i>Section 552, Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data</i>
<i>Section 558, Required Supplementary Information</i>
<i>Section 560, Subsequent Events</i>
<i>Section 623, Special Reports</i>
<i>Section 625, Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles</i>
<i>Section 634, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>
<i>Section 711, Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes</i>
<i>Section 722, Interim Financial Information</i>
<i>Section 901, Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held</i>

¹ As part of its clarity project, the Auditing Standards Board is revising Statements on Auditing Standards, which will result in conforming changes to the affected references to AU sections in appendix A.

* SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, as amended, is currently effective and codified as AU section 341 in AICPA Professional Standards. SAS No. 59 has been included in AU-C section 570 in AICPA Professional Standards, as designated by SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification*, and will be superseded when it is redrafted for clarity and convergence with International Standard on Auditing 570, *Going Concern*, as part of the *Clarification and Convergence project of the Auditing Standards Board*. Until such time, AU-C section 570 has been conformed to reflect updated section and paragraph cross references but has not otherwise been subjected to a comprehensive review or revision.

2. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 118

3. SAS No. 118, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, addresses the auditor's responsibility in relation to other information in documents containing audited financial statements and the auditor's report thereon. This amendment categorizes the requirements with respect to identified material inconsistencies based on when the inconsistencies are identified: prior to the date of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements; after the date of the auditor's report but prior to the report release date; and after the report release date, to align with SAS No. 122 section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts*. The amendment also adds application material addressing electronic sites to include guidance from Interpretation No. 4, "Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing

814 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

Audited Financial Statements,” of AU section 9550A, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 550A* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU sec. 9550A par. .16–.18). The ASB determined that this guidance was appropriate to include in SAS No. 118.

[No changes to paragraphs 1–9.]

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Subsequent Prior to the ~~Report Release Date~~ of the Auditor’s Report That Require Revision of the Audited Financial Statements

10. When the auditor identifies a material inconsistency prior to the ***date of the auditor’s report release date*** that requires revision of the audited financial statements and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor should modify the auditor’s opinion in accordance with ~~*Reports on Audited Financial Statements*~~ ***SAS No. 122 section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report.***

Material Inconsistencies Identified After the Date of the Auditor’s Report But Prior to the Report Release Date That Require Revision of the Audited Financial Statements

11. *When the auditor identifies a material inconsistency after the date of the auditor’s report but prior to the report release date that requires revision of the audited financial statements, the auditor should apply the relevant requirements in SAS No. 122 section 560, Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts.*³

³ *Paragraphs .12–.14 of SAS No. 122 section 560, Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts.*

[Paragraphs 11–17 will be renumbered as paragraphs 12–18. No changes to paragraphs A1–A3.]

A4. For purposes of GAAS, other information does not encompass, for example, the following:

- A press release or similar memorandum or cover letter accompanying the document containing audited financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon
- Information contained in analyst briefings
- Information contained on the entity’s website. ***Websites are a means of distributing information and are not, themselves, documents containing audited financial statements.***

[No changes to paragraphs A5–A14.]

4. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 122 Section 200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

5. SAS No. 122 section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, addresses the independent auditor’s overall responsibilities when conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with GAAS. The ASB believes that guidance addressing the concept of association with financial statements, currently included in SAS No. 26, *Association With Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU sec. 504), is most appropriately placed in SAS No. 122 section 200.

6. SAS No. 122 section 200 supersedes AU section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), which includes the second general standard: “The auditor must maintain independence in mental attitude in all matters relating to the audit.” In place of this requirement, SAS No. 122 section 200 requires the auditor to comply with relevant ethical requirements relating to financial statements audit engagements. However, the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires a member in public practice to be independent in the performance of professional services as required by standards promulgated by bodies designated by the AICPA Council. Thus, the inclusion of a requirement for the auditor to be independent is necessary within the SASs.

7. This amendment addresses the concept of association with financial statements as a result of the ASB’s decision to withdraw SAS No. 26 from the auditing standards and to incorporate its relevant content into the appropriate AU-C sections or Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARS). The amendment also adds a requirement that the auditor be independent of the entity when performing an engagement in accordance with GAAS.

[No changes to paragraphs .01–.02.]

Association With Financial Statements

.03 An auditor is associated with financial information when the auditor has applied procedures sufficient to permit the auditor to report in accordance with GAAS. Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services address the accountant’s considerations when the accountant prepares and presents financial statements to the entity or to third parties.*

* *The proposed Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARS) The Use of the Accountant’s Name in a Document or Communication Containing Unaudited Financial Statements That Have Not Been Compiled or Reviewed, which proposes to amend SSARS No. 19, Compilation and Review Engagements, to address the accountant’s association with unaudited financial statements that the accountant has not compiled or reviewed, was issued for exposure in November 2010.*

[Paragraphs .03–.13 will be renumbered as paragraphs .04–.14.]

.15 The auditor must be independent of the entity when performing an engagement in accordance with GAAS unless (a) GAAS provides otherwise or (b) the auditor is required by law or regulation to accept the engagement and report on the financial statements. When the auditor is not independent and neither (a) nor (b) are applicable, the auditor is precluded from issuing a report under GAAS.

[Paragraphs .14–.27 will be renumbered as paragraphs .16–.29. No changes to paragraphs .A1–.A16.]

.A17 In the case of an audit engagement, it is in the public interest and, therefore, required by ~~the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct (ET)~~ **this section**, that the auditor be independent of the entity subject to the audit. The concept of independence refers to both independence in fact and independence in appearance. The auditor’s independence from the entity safeguards the auditor’s ability to form an audit opinion without being affected by influences that might compromise that opinion. Independence enhances the auditor’s ability to act with integrity, to be objective, and to maintain an attitude of professional skepticism. Independence implies an impartiality that recognizes an obligation to be fair not only to management and those charged with governance of an entity but also users of the financial statements who may rely upon the independent auditor’s report. Guidance on threats to independence is set forth in ET section 100.01, *Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

816 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

.A18 When the auditor is not independent but is required by law or regulation to report on the financial statements, SAS No. 122 section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report, applies.

[Paragraphs .A18–.A86 will be renumbered as paragraphs .A19–.A87.]

8. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 122 Section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report

9. SAS No. 122 section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, addresses the auditor's responsibility to issue an appropriate report in circumstances when, in forming an opinion in accordance with SAS No. 122 section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, the auditor concludes that a modification to the auditor's opinion on the financial statements is necessary.

10. This amendment addresses the auditor's responsibility to issue an appropriate report when the auditor is not independent but is required by law or regulation to report on the financial statements. This amendment is necessary as a result of the ASB's decision to withdraw SAS No. 26 from the auditing standards and to incorporate its relevant content into the appropriate AU-C sections or SSARs.

[No changes to paragraphs .01–.15.]

Auditor Is Not Independent but Is Required by Law or Regulation to Report on the Financial Statements

.16 When the auditor is not independent but is required by law or regulation to report on the financial statements, the auditor should disclaim an opinion and should specifically state that the auditor is not independent. The auditor is neither required to provide, nor precluded from providing, the reasons for the lack of independence; however, if the auditor chooses to provide the reasons for the lack of independence, the auditor should include all the reasons therefor. (Ref: par. .A19)

[Paragraphs .16–.28 will be renumbered as paragraphs .17–.29. No changes to paragraphs .A1–.A18.]

Considerations Specific to Governmental Entities

.A19 The nature of a government auditor's lack of independence may have a limited effect because the impairment may result from the government auditor's association with only a component of the overall governmental entity. A government auditor may determine that the lack of independence only affects one or more, but not all, of the governmental entity's opinion units and, in such circumstances, the auditor may disclaim an opinion on the affected opinion units while expressing unmodified, qualified, or adverse opinions on other opinion units. The more significant the affected opinion units are to the overall governmental entity, the more likely that it will be appropriate for the auditor to disclaim an opinion on the financial statements of the overall governmental entity.

[Paragraphs .A19–.A32 will be renumbered as paragraphs .A20–.A33.]

11. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 122 Section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*

12. SAS No. 122 section 915, *Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*, addresses the reporting accountant's responsibilities when requested to issue a written report on the application of requirements of an applicable financial reporting framework. This amendment provides that for purposes of SAS No. 122 section 915, the reporting accountant is not required to be independent of the entity, but is required to indicate the lack of independence in the reporting accountant's report. This amendment is necessary due to the inclusion of the requirement in SAS No. 122 section 200, that the auditor be independent of the entity when performing an engagement in accordance with GAAS, unless GAAS provides otherwise.

[No changes to paragraphs .01–.08.]

.09 In determining whether to accept the engagement, the reporting accountant should consider

- a. the circumstances under which the written report or oral advice is requested,
- b. the purpose of the request, and
- c. the intended use of the written report or oral advice.

For purposes of this section, the reporting accountant is not required to be independent of the entity.

[No changes to paragraphs .10–.13.]

.14 The reporting accountant's written report should be addressed to the requesting party (for example, management or those charged with governance) and should include the following:

[No changes to (a)–(f).]

g. If the reporting accountant is not independent of the entity, a statement indicating the reporting accountant's lack of independence. The reporting accountant is neither required to provide, nor precluded from providing, the reasons for the lack of independence; however, if the reporting accountant chooses to provide the reasons for the lack of independence, the reporting accountant should include all the reasons therefor.

[No changes to paragraphs .15–.A8.]

13. This amendment is effective for engagements that end on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 122 Section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*

14. SAS No. 122 section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance*, addresses the auditor's responsibility to communicate with those charged with governance in an audit of financial statements. This amendment adds application material addressing situations when the auditor becomes aware that the entity is subject to an audit requirement that is not encompassed in the terms of the engagement. This requirement was previously in SAS No. 74, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, which was superseded by SAS No. 117. This requirement was not included in SAS No. 117 because the ASB believed the requirement to be better located in SAS No. 122 section 260.

818 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

[No changes to paragraphs .01–.11.]

.12 The auditor should communicate with those charged with governance (Ref: par. .A23)

[No change to (a)–(c).]

d. other findings or issues, if any, arising from the audit that are, in the auditor's professional judgment, significant and relevant to those charged with governance regarding their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process. (**Ref: par. .A27**)

[No changes to paragraphs .13–.A26.]

Other Findings or Issues

.A27 *The auditor may become aware that the entity is subject to an audit requirement that is not encompassed in the terms of the engagement. The communication to those charged with governance that an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS may not satisfy the relevant legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements may be necessary if, for example, an entity engages an auditor to perform an audit of its financial statements in accordance with GAAS and the auditor becomes aware that by law, regulation, or contractual agreement the entity also is required to have an audit performed in accordance with one or more of the following:*

- a.* Government Auditing Standards
- b.* OMB Circular A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations
- c.* Other compliance audit requirements, such as state or local laws or program-specific audits under federal audit guides

[Paragraphs .A27–.A49 will be renumbered as paragraphs .A28–.A50.]

15. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Amendment to SAS No. 122 Section 230, Audit Documentation

16. SAS No. 122 section 230, *Audit Documentation*, addresses the auditor's responsibility to prepare audit documentation for an audit of financial statements. This amendment places a requirement for the auditor to maintain the confidentiality of client information into GAAS. SAS No. 103, *Audit Documentation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU sec. 339), which will be superseded by SAS No. 122 section 230, contains this requirement, which is the subject of Interpretation No. 1, "Providing Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation to a Regulator," of AU section 9339, *Audit Documentation: Auditing Interpretations of Section 339* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU sec. 9339 par. .01–.15), which addresses the auditor's responsibilities when required by law, regulation, or audit contract to provide a regulator access to audit documentation. This interpretation is included in the exhibit to this SAS. This requirement was not originally included in the SAS No. 122 section 230 because the firm's responsibility to maintain the confidentiality of client information is addressed in Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 8, *A Firm's System of Quality Control* (Redrafted) (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, QC sec. 10). However, in order to maintain the interpretation as part of GAAS, there is a need to repeat the requirement for the auditor to maintain the confidentiality of client information in SAS No. 122 section 230.

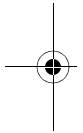
[No changes to paragraphs .01–.18.]



19. The auditor should adopt reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of client information.

[No changes to paragraphs .A1–.A31.]

17. This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.



18.

Exhibit—Audit Documentation: Auditing Interpretations of SAS No. 122 Section 230, *Audit Documentation* (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 9230 par. .01–.15)**1. Providing Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation to a Regulator^{1,2}**

.01 Question—Paragraph .19 of SAS No. 122 section 230, *Audit Documentation*, states that “the auditor should adopt reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of client information.” However, auditors are sometimes required by law, regulation, or audit contract³ to provide a regulator, or a duly appointed representative, access to audit documentation. For example, a regulator may request access to the audit documentation to fulfill a quality review requirement or to assist in establishing the scope of a regulatory examination. Furthermore, as part of the regulator’s review of the audit documentation, the regulator may request copies of all or selected portions of the audit documentation during or after the review. The regulator may intend, or decide, to make copies (or information derived from the audit documentation) available to others, including other governmental agencies, for their particular purposes, with or without the knowledge of the auditor or the client. When a regulator requests the auditor to provide access to (and possibly copies of) audit documentation pursuant to law, regulation, or audit contract, what steps may the auditor take?

.02 Interpretation—When a regulator requests access to audit documentation pursuant to law, regulation, or audit contract, the auditor may take the following steps:

- a. Consider advising the client that the regulator has requested access to (and possibly copies of) the audit documentation and that the auditor intends to comply with such request.⁴
- b. Make appropriate arrangements with the regulator for the review.
- c. Maintain control over the audit documentation, and
- d. Consider submitting the letter described in paragraph .05 of this interpretation to the regulator.

.03 Making appropriate arrangements with the regulator may include establishing the specific details such as the date, time, and location of the review. The audit documentation may be made available to a regulator at the offices of the client, the auditor, or a mutually agreed-upon location. However, maintaining control of audit documentation is necessary in order for the auditor to maintain the integrity of the audit documentation and the confidentiality of client information. For example, the auditor (or the auditor’s representative) may be present when the audit documentation is reviewed by the regulator.

.04 Ordinarily, the auditor may not agree to transfer ownership of the audit documentation to a regulator. Furthermore, the auditor may not agree, without client authorization, that the information contained therein about the client may be communicated to or made available to any other party. In this regard, the action of an auditor providing access to, or copies of, the audit documentation shall not constitute transfer of ownership or authorization to make them available to any other party.

.05 An audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is not intended to, and does not, satisfy a regulator’s oversight responsibilities. To avoid any misunderstanding, prior to allowing a regulator access to the audit documentation, the auditor may submit a letter to the regulator that

- a. Sets forth the auditor’s understanding of the purpose for which access is being requested;
- b. Describes the audit process and the limitations inherent in a financial statement audit;
- c. Explains the purpose for which the audit documentation was prepared, and that any individual conclusions must be read in the context of the auditor’s report on the financial statements;

- d. States, except when not applicable, that the audit was not planned or conducted in contemplation of the purpose for which access is being granted or to assess the entity's compliance with laws and regulations;
- e. States that the audit and the audit documentation should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the regulator for its purposes;
- f. Requests confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations,⁵ when a request for the audit documentation is made, and that written notice be given to the auditor before transmitting any information contained in the audit documentation to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such transfer is required by law or regulation; and
- g. States that if any copies are to be provided, they will be identified as "Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of auditor, address, telephone number*)."

The auditor may wish to obtain a signed acknowledgment copy of the letter as evidence of the regulator's receipt of the letter.

.06 An example of a letter containing the elements described in paragraph .05 of this interpretation is presented as follows:

Illustrative Letter to Regulator⁶

(*Date*)

(*Name and Address of Regulatory Agency*)

Your representatives have requested access to our audit documentation in connection with our audit of the December 31, 20XX, financial statements of (*name of client*). It is our understanding that the purpose of your request is (*state purpose: for example, "to facilitate your regulatory examination"*).⁷

Our audit of (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX, financial statements was conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America,⁸ the objective⁹ of which is to form an opinion as to whether the financial statements, which are the responsibility and representations of management, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹⁰ Under generally accepted auditing standards, we have the responsibility, within the inherent limitations of the auditing process, to design our audit to provide reasonable assurance that errors and fraud that have a material effect on the financial statements will be detected, and to exercise due care in the conduct of our audit. The concept of selective testing of the data being audited, which involves judgment both as to the number of transactions to be audited and as to the areas to be tested, has been generally accepted as a valid and sufficient basis for an auditor to express an opinion on financial statements. Thus, our audit, based on the concept of selective testing, is subject to the inherent risk that material errors or fraud, if they exist, would not be detected. In addition, an audit does not address the possibility that material errors or fraud may occur in the future. Also, our use of professional judgment and the assessment of materiality for the purpose of our audit means that matters may have existed that would have been assessed differently by you.

The audit documentation was prepared for the purpose of providing a sufficient and appropriate record of the basis for our report on (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX, financial statements and to aid in the conduct and supervision of our audit. The audit documentation is the principal record of auditing procedures performed, evidence obtained, and conclusions reached in the engagement. The auditing procedures that we performed were limited to those we considered necessary under generally accepted auditing standards¹¹ to enable us to formulate and express an opinion on the financial statements¹² taken as a whole. Accordingly, we make no representation as to the sufficiency or appropriateness, for your purposes, of either the information contained in our audit documentation or our auditing procedures. In addition, any notations, comments, and individual conclusions appearing on

822 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

any of the audit documents do not stand alone, and should not be read as an opinion on any individual amounts, accounts, balances or transactions.

Our audit of (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX, financial statements was performed for the purpose stated above and has not been planned or conducted in contemplation of your (*state purpose: for example, "regulatory examination"*) or for the purpose of assessing (*name of client*) compliance with laws and regulations.¹³ Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Accordingly, our audit and the audit documentation prepared in connection therewith, should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the (*name of regulatory agency*) for the purpose of monitoring and regulating the financial affairs of the (*name of client*). In addition, we have not audited any financial statements of (*name of client*) since (*date of audited balance sheet referred to in the first paragraph above*) nor have we performed any auditing procedures since (*date*), the date of our auditor's report, and significant events or circumstances may have occurred since that date.

The audit documentation constitutes and reflects work performed or evidence obtained by (*name of auditor*) in its capacity as independent auditor for (*name of client*). The documents contain trade secrets and confidential commercial and financial information of our firm and (*name of client*) that is privileged and confidential, and we expressly reserve all rights with respect to disclosures to third parties. Accordingly, we request confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations¹⁴ when requests are made for the audit documentation or information contained therein or any documents created by the (*name of regulatory agency*) containing information derived therefrom. We further request that written notice be given to our firm before distribution of the information in the audit documentation (or copies thereof) to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such distribution is required by law or regulation.

[If it is expected that copies will be requested, add:

Any copies of our audit documentation we agree to provide you will be identified as "Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of auditor, address, telephone number*)."]

Firm signature

.07 Question—A regulator may request access to the audit documentation before the audit has been completed and the report released. May the auditor allow access in such circumstances?

.08 Interpretation—When the audit has not been completed, the audit documentation is necessarily incomplete because (*a*) additional information may be added as a result of further tests and review by supervisory personnel and (*b*) any audit results and conclusions reflected in the incomplete audit documentation may change. Accordingly, it is preferable that access be delayed until all auditing procedures have been completed and all internal reviews have been performed. If access is provided prior to completion of the audit, the auditor may issue the letter referred to in paragraph .05 of this interpretation, appropriately modified, and including additional language along the following lines:

We have been engaged to audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America the December 31, 20XX, financial statements of XYZ Company, but have not as yet completed our audit. Accordingly, at this time we do not express any opinion on the Company's financial statements. Furthermore, the contents of the audit documentation may change as a result of additional auditing procedures and review of the audit documentation by supervisory personnel of our firm. Accordingly, our audit documentation is incomplete.

Because the audit documentation may change prior to completion of the audit, it is preferable that the auditor not provide copies of the audit documentation until the audit has been completed.

.09 Question—Some regulators may engage an independent party, such as another independent public accountant, to perform the audit documentation review on behalf of the regulatory agency. Are there any special precautions the auditor may observe in these circumstances?

.10 Interpretation—The auditor may obtain acknowledgment, preferably in writing, from the regulator stating that the third party is acting on behalf of the regulator and agreement from the third party that he or she is subject to the same restrictions on disclosure and use of audit documentation and the information contained therein as the regulator.

.11 Question—When a regulator requests the auditor to provide access to (and possibly copies of) audit documentation and the auditor is not otherwise required by law, regulation, or audit contract to provide such access, what steps may the auditor take?

.12 Interpretation—The auditor may obtain an understanding of the reasons for the regulator's request for access to the audit documentation and may wish to consider consulting with legal counsel regarding the request. If the auditor decides to provide such access, reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of client information include obtaining the client's consent, preferably in writing, to provide the regulator access to the audit documentation.

.13 Following is an example of language that may be used in the written communication to the client:

The audit documentation for this engagement is the property of *(name of auditor)* and constitutes confidential information. However, we have been requested to make certain audit documentation available to *(name of regulator)* for *(describe the regulator's basis for its request)*. Access to such audit documentation will be provided under the supervision of *(name of auditor)* personnel. Furthermore, upon request, we may provide copies of selected audit documentation to *(name of regulator)*.

You have authorized *(name of auditor)* to allow *(name of regulator)* access to the audit documentation in the manner discussed above. Please confirm your agreement to the above by signing below and returning to *(name of auditor, address)*.

Firm signature

Agreed and acknowledged:

(Name and title)

(Date)

.14 If the client requests to review the audit documentation before allowing the regulator access, the auditor may provide the client with the opportunity to obtain an understanding of the nature of the information about its financial statements contained in the audit documentation that is being made available to the regulator. When a client reviews the audit documentation, the need to maintain control of the audit documentation is as discussed in paragraph .03 of this interpretation.

.15 The guidance in paragraphs .03–.10 of this interpretation, which provide guidance on making arrangements with the regulator for access to the audit documentation, maintaining control over the audit documentation, and submitting a letter describing various matters to the regulator, is also applicable.

824 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 123

- ¹ The term “regulator(s)” includes federal, state, and local government officials with legal oversight authority over the entity. Examples of regulators who may request access to audit documentation include, but are not limited to, state insurance and utility regulators, various health care authorities, and federal agencies such as the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Office of Thrift Supervision, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Department of Labor, and the Rural Electrification Administration.
- ² The guidance in this interpretation does not apply to requests from the IRS, firm practice-monitoring programs to comply with AICPA or state professional requirements such as peer or quality reviews, proceedings relating to alleged ethics violations, or subpoenas.
- ³ Paragraphs .11–.15 of this interpretation address situations in which the auditor is not required by law, regulation, or audit contract to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation.
- ⁴ The auditor may wish (and in some cases may be required by law, regulation, or audit contract) to confirm in writing with the client that the auditor may be required to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation. Sample language that may be used follows:

The audit documentation for this engagement is the property of *(name of auditor)* and constitutes confidential information. However, we may be requested to make certain audit documentation available to *(name of regulator)* pursuant to authority given to it by law or regulation. If requested, access to such audit documentation will be provided under the supervision of *(name of auditor)* personnel. Furthermore, upon request, we may provide copies of selected audit documentation to *(name of regulator)*. The *(name of regulator)* may intend, or decide, to distribute the copies or information contained therein to others, including other governmental agencies.

- ⁵ The auditor may need to consult the regulations of individual agencies and, if necessary, consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements necessary to gain confidential treatment.
- ⁶ This letter may be modified appropriately when the audit has been performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and also in accordance with additional auditing requirements specified by a regulatory agency (for example, the requirements specified in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States).
- ⁷ If the auditor is not required by law, regulation, or audit contract to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation but otherwise intends to provide such access (see paragraphs .11–.15 of this interpretation), the letter may include a statement that “Management of *(name of client)* has authorized us to provide you access to our audit documentation for *(state purpose)*.”
- ⁸ Refer to footnote 6.
- ⁹ In an audit performed in accordance with the Single Audit Act of 1984, the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, and certain other federal audit requirements, an additional objective of the audit is to assess compliance with laws and regulations applicable to federal financial assistance. Accordingly, in these situations, the illustrative letter provided in this interpretation may be modified to include the additional objective.
- ¹⁰ If the financial statements have been prepared in conformity with regulatory accounting practices, the phrase “financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles” may be replaced with appropriate wording such as, in the case of an insurance company, the “admitted assets, liabilities ... of the XYZ Insurance Company in conformity with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the state of ... insurance department.”
- ¹¹ Refer to footnote 6.
- ¹² Refer to footnote 9.
- ¹³ Refer to footnote 9.
- ¹⁴ This illustrative paragraph may not in and of itself be sufficient to gain confidential treatment under the rules and regulations of certain regulatory agencies. The auditor may tailor this paragraph to the circumstances after consulting the regulations of each applicable regulatory agency and, if necessary, may consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements to gain confidential treatment.

[Issue Date: July, 1994; Revised: June, 1996; Revised: October, 2000; Revised: January, 2002; Revised: December, 2005; Revised: August, 2011, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.]

Auditing Standards Board**(2010–2011)**

Darrel R. Schubert, *Chair*
Ernest F. Baugh, Jr.
Brian R. Bluhm
Robert E. Chevalier
Samuel K. Cotterell
James R. Dalkin
David D. Duree
Edwin G. Jolicoeur
David M. Morris
Kenneth R. Odom

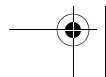
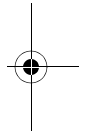
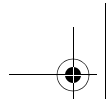
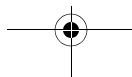
Thomas A. Ratcliffe
Brian R. Richson
Thomas M. Stenlar
Mark H. Taylor
Kim L. Tredinnick
H. Steven Vogel
Phil D. Wedemeyer
Kurtis A. Wolff
Megan F. Zietsman

AICPA Staff

Charles E. Landes
Vice President
Professional Standards and Services
Richard I. Miller
General Counsel and Secretary

Ahava Goldman
Senior Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards

Note: *Statements on Auditing Standards are issued by the Auditing Standards Board, the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters. Rule 202, Compliance With Standards, of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires compliance with these standards in an audit of a nonissuer.*



Statement on Auditing Standards

Issued by the Auditing Standards Board

124

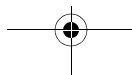
October 2011

Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country

(Supersedes SAS No. 51, Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries)

This Statement on Auditing Standards has been codified in AICPA *Professional Standards*, which contains a complete codification of the Statements on Auditing Standards and is available in the AICPA Store at www.cpa2biz.com/AST/Main/CPA2BIZ_Primary/Ethics/PRDOVR~PC-005102/PC-005102.jsp.

AICPA®



Contents

Paragraph

Introduction

Scope of This Statement on Auditing Standards	1–4
Effective Date	5

Objective	6

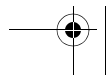
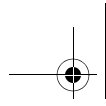
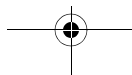
Requirements

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement.....	7–8
Performance	9–10
Application of Auditing Standards of Another Country	11
Reporting.....	12–13

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement.....	A1
Performance	A2–A3
Application of Auditing Standards of Another Country	A4–A6
Reporting.....	A7–A10

Exhibit—Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country.....	A11



Statement on Auditing Standards *Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country*

Introduction

Scope of This Statement on Auditing Standards

1. This Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) addresses circumstances in which an auditor practicing in the United States is engaged to report on financial statements that have been prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country not adopted by a body designated by the Council of the AICPA (Council) to establish generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) (hereinafter referred to as a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country) when such audited financial statements are intended for use outside the United States. This SAS is not intended to preclude the use of such audited financial statements in the United States.

2. Pursuant to Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01), and Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01), the Council designates the bodies to establish GAAP. This SAS does not apply to financial statements prepared in accordance with financial reporting frameworks established by the bodies designated by the Council. AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, applies to engagements to report on such financial statements, including financial statements prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).

3. This SAS is applicable to engagements to report on financial statements prepared in accordance with a jurisdictional variation of IFRS such that the entity's financial statements do not contain an explicit and unreserved statement in an appropriate note to the financial statements that its financial statements are in compliance with IFRS as promulgated by the IASB.

4. This SAS does not apply to engagements to report on financial statements of a U.S. subsidiary of a foreign registrant parent company that are presented in the parent company's filing with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission when the subsidiary's financial statements have been prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework used by the parent company and audited in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (GAAS).

Effective Date

5. This SAS is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Objective

6. The objective of the auditor, when engaged to report on financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, when such audited financial statements are intended for use outside the United States, is to address appropriately the special considerations that are relevant to

- a. the acceptance of the engagement,
- b. the planning and performance of the engagement, and
- c. forming an opinion and reporting on the financial statements.

832 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124**Requirements****Considerations When Accepting the Engagement (Ref: par. A1)**

7. AU-C section 210, *Terms of Engagement*, requires the auditor, as part of establishing whether the preconditions for an audit are present prior to accepting the engagement, to determine the acceptability of the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements.¹ In an audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, the auditor should obtain an understanding of

- a. The purpose for which the financial statements are prepared and whether the financial reporting framework applied in the preparation of the financial statements is a fair presentation framework.
- b. The intended users of the financial statements.
- c. The steps taken by management to determine that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances.

8. When the auditor plans to use the form and content of the auditor's report of another country, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the applicable legal responsibilities involved. (Ref: par. A8)

Performance (Ref: par. A2–A3)

9. When auditing financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country that are intended for use only outside the United States, the auditor should comply with GAAS, except for requirements related to the form and content of the report in the situation described in paragraph 12. The auditor should determine whether the application of GAAS requires special consideration in the circumstances of the engagement.

10. AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatements*, requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the entity's selection and application of accounting policies.² When reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, the auditor should obtain an understanding of such framework.

Application of Auditing Standards of Another Country

11. If the auditor is engaged to audit financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, and the agreed-upon terms of engagement require the auditor to apply either the auditing standards of that country or International Standards on Auditing (ISAs), the auditor should obtain an understanding of and apply those relevant auditing standards, as well as GAAS, except for requirements related to the form and content of the report in the situation described in paragraph 12. (Ref: par. A4–A6)

Reporting**Reporting—Use Only Outside the United States**

12. If the auditor is reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country that are intended for use only outside the United States, the auditor should report using either

- a. a U.S. form of report that reflects that the financial statements being reported on have been prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country, including (Ref: par. A7)

¹ See paragraph .06 of AU-C section 210, *Terms of Engagement*.

² See paragraph .12(c) of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*.

- i. the elements required by AU-C section 700 and
- ii. a statement that refers to the note to the financial statements that describes the basis of presentation of the financial statements on which the auditor is reporting, including identification of the country of origin of the accounting principles, or
- b. the report form and content of the other country (or, if applicable, as set forth in the ISAs), provided that
 - i. such a report would be issued by auditors in the other country in similar circumstances,
 - ii. the auditor understands and has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the statements contained in such a report, and
 - iii. the auditor has complied with the reporting standards of that country and identifies the other country in the report. (Ref: par. A8–A9)

Reporting—Use in the United States

13. If financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country also are intended for use in the United States, the auditor should report using the U.S. form of report.³ In addition, the auditor should include in the auditor's report an emphasis-of-matter paragraph⁴ that

- a. identifies the financial reporting framework used in the preparation of the financial statements,
- b. refers to the note to the financial statements that describes that framework, and
- c. indicates that such framework differs from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. (Ref: par. A7 and A10)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Considerations When Accepting the Engagement (Ref: par. 7–8)

A1. In obtaining an understanding of the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared and of the intended users, the auditor may consider whether the intended users are likely to be familiar with the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, if the financial statements are to be used in the United States in addition to the other country(ies) for which they are intended, the auditor may consider whether intended users within the United States deal directly with the entity and whether the financial statements are to be used in a manner that permits such users to discuss with the entity differences from accounting and reporting practices in the United States and their significance. Accordingly, an auditor may conclude that financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country are not appropriate for use in a private placement memorandum to be distributed widely in the United States.

Performance (Ref: par. 9–10)

A2. The accounting principles used to prepare financial statements in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country may differ from those used to prepare financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, and such differences may affect the auditor's risk assessment and design of further audit procedures. For example, the financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country may require that certain assets be revalued to adjust for the effects of inflation—in which case, the auditor may find it necessary to perform procedures to test the revaluation adjustments. As another example, a particular country's financial reporting framework may not require or permit recognition of deferred taxes; consequently, procedures for testing deferred tax balances would not be applicable.

³ See AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*.

⁴ See AU-C section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

834 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124

A3. An understanding of the financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country may be obtained by reading the statutes or professional literature, or codifications thereof, which establish or describe the financial reporting framework generally accepted in the other country. Often, the application of accounting principles to a particular situation requires practical experience, and accordingly, the auditor may consult with persons having expertise in applying the financial reporting framework of the other country.

Application of Auditing Standards of Another Country (Ref: par. 11)

A4. Applying either the auditing standards of another country or the ISAs may require the auditor to perform procedures in addition to those procedures required by GAAS.

A5. An understanding of the auditing standards of another country or the ISAs may be obtained by reading the statutes or professional literature, or codifications thereof, which establish or describe such standards.

A6. Statutes or professional literature, or codifications thereof, however, may not include a complete description of the auditing practices in another country. The auditor may consult with persons having expertise in, including practical experience in applying, the auditing standards of the other country or the ISAs, as relevant.

Reporting (Ref: par. 8 and 12–13)

A7. The exhibit, “Illustrations of Auditor’s Reports on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country,” contains illustrations of auditor’s reports on financial statements incorporating the elements required by paragraphs 12 and 13.

Reporting—Use Only Outside the United States (Ref: par. 8 and 12)

A8. Even when the form and content of the auditor’s report used in another country appears similar to that used in the United States, the report may convey a different meaning and entail different legal responsibilities for the auditor due to custom or culture. Issuing a report of another country may require the auditor to report on statutory compliance or otherwise require understanding of local laws and regulations. When issuing the auditor’s report of another country, the auditor is required by paragraph 8 to obtain an understanding of applicable legal responsibilities, in addition to the auditing standards and the financial reporting framework generally accepted in the other country, as required by paragraphs 7, 10, and 11. Accordingly, depending on the nature and extent of the auditor’s knowledge and experience, the auditor may consult with persons having expertise in the audit reporting practices of the other country and associated legal responsibilities to obtain the understanding needed to issue that country’s report.

A9. An entity that prepares financial statements in accordance with GAAP also may prepare financial statements in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country for use outside the United States (for example, financial statements prepared in accordance with a jurisdictional variation of IFRS such that the entity’s financial statements do not contain an explicit and unreserved statement of compliance with IFRS as issued by the IASB). In such circumstances, the auditor may report on the financial statements that are in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country by reporting in accordance with paragraph 12. The auditor may include in one or both of the reports a statement that another report has been issued on the financial statements for the entity that have been prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country. The auditor’s statement may also reference any note disclosure in the financial statements that describes significant differences between the accounting principles used and GAAP. An example of such a statement, which may be included in an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, is as follows:

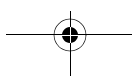
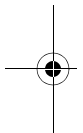
We also have reported separately on the financial statements of ABC Company for the same period presented in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*. (The significant differences between the *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in



[*name of country*] and accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America are summarized in Note X.)

Reporting—Use in the United States (Ref: par. 13)

A10. When reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework generally accepted in another country that will be used in the United States and outside the United States, the auditor may issue two reports: one of the reports described in paragraph 12 for use outside the United States and the U.S. form of report with an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, as described in paragraph 13, for use in the United States.



836 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124

A11.

**Exhibit—Illustrations of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements
Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework
Generally Accepted in Another Country (Ref: par. A7)**

Illustration 1: U.S. Form of Independent Auditor's Report to Report on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country That Are Intended for Use Only Outside the United States

Illustration 2: U.S. Form of Independent Auditor's Report To Report on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country That Also Are Intended for Use in the United States

Illustration 1: U.S. Form of Independent Auditor's Report to Report on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country That Are Intended for Use Only Outside the United States

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, which, as described in note X to the financial statements, have been prepared on the basis of *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (and *[in name of country]*). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

838 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 124**Illustration 2: U.S. Form of Independent Auditor's Report To Report on Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country That Also Are Intended for Use in the United States****INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT**

[Appropriate Addressee]

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of ABC Company, which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the related statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements, which, as described in note X to the financial statements, have been prepared on the basis of *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (and *[in name of country]*). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*.

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company prepares its financial statements in accordance with *[specify the financial reporting framework generally accepted]* in *[name of country]*, which differ(s) from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

Auditing Standards Board**(2010–2011)**

Darrel R. Schubert, *Chair*
Ernest F. Baugh, Jr.
Brian R. Bluhm
Robert E. Chevalier
Samuel K. Cotterell
James R. Dalkin
David D. Duree
Edwin G. Jolicoeur
David M. Morris
Kenneth R. Odom

Thomas A. Ratcliffe
Brian R. Richson
Thomas M. Stemplar
Mark H. Taylor
Kim L. Tredinnick
H. Steven Vogel
Phil D. Wedemeyer
Kurtis A. Wolff
Megan F. Zietsman

AU 534 Task Force

Walton T. Conn, Jr. *Chair*
Andrew M. Mintzer

Robert D. Dohrer

AICPA Staff

Charles E. Landes
Vice President
Professional Standards and Services

Richard I. Miller
General Counsel
and Secretary

The Auditing Standards Board gratefully acknowledges the contributions of Michael Adascizk and Michael Neller in the development of this Statement on Auditing Standards.

Note: *Statements on Auditing Standards are issued by the Auditing Standards Board, the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters. Rule 202, Compliance With Standards, of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct requires compliance with these standards in an audit of a nonissuer.*

